

Caesar's Campaigns
J. Roms. v. Chr.
I 696 58
II 697 57
III 698 56
IV 699 55
V 700 54
VI 701 53
VII 702 52
703 51
BRITANNIA
TRINOBANTES
CASSI
Tamesis F.
ANCALITES
SEGONTIACI
BIBROCI
CANTIUM
Itius portus
MORINI
ATREBATES
Nemetacum
Bagacum
NERVII
MENAPII
AMBIANI
Samarobriva
VIROMANDUI
Bratuspantium
BELLOVACI
SUESSIONES
REMI
Axona F.
Durocortorum
Matrona
CALETI
VELIOCASSES
Sequana
VENELLI
LEXOVII
AUL. EBUROVICES
PARISII
Lutetia
MELDI
ESUBII
OSISMI
AMBIALITI
CORIOSOLITES
REDONES
AUL. DIABLINTES
AULERCI
AUL. CENOMANI
CARNUTES
Autricum
Metiosedum (Melodunum)
SENONES
Agedincum
TRICASSES
VENETI
Quiberon
NAMNETES
ANDES
And. opp.
Cenabum
Vellaunodunum
Liger F.
Tur. opp.
TURONI
Noviodunum
MANDUBII
Alesia
AMBILARITI
PICTONES
Avaricum
Gorgobina
Decetia
HAEDUI
Bibracte
Cavillonum
Matisco
Lemonum
BITURIGES CUBI
BOII
SEGUSIAVI
SANTONES
LEMOVICES
ARVERNI
Gergovia
Lugudunum
BITURIGES VIBISCI
PETROCORII
Uxellodunum
CADURCI
GABALI
VELLAVI
HELVII
NITIOBROGES
Duranius F.
Divona
Oltis F.
RUTENI
Segodunum
Garumna
AQUITANI
VOCATES
COCOSATES
SOTTIATES
ELUSATES
GATES
Elimberris
AUSCI
SIBUZATES
TARBELLI
TARUSATES
Aturius F.
Tolosa
VOLCAE
TECTOSAGES
Nemausus
ARECOMICI
GALLIA ULTERIOR
PROVINCIA
CEVENNA
Narbo
Ruscino
Gallicus sinus
CANTABRI
VASCONES
PYRENAEI MONTES
GARUMNI
HISPANIA
OCEANUS
GALLIA
BELGAE
Rhodanus
A. Zeese & Co.



GERMANY
AUSTRIA
SWITZERLAND
ITALY
Wesel
Leipzig
Dresden
Marburg
Cologne
Tongres
Frankfort
Würzburg
Prague
Carlsruhe
Stuttgart
Metz
Ratisbon
Danube R.
Linz
VIENNA
Salzburg
Lake of Constance
Zurich
Innsbruck
Neumarket
Berne
Rhine
Rhine R.
Moselle
Meuse R.
VOSGES MTS.
JURA MTS.
Geneva
Rhone
Martigny
Milan
Venice
Trieste
Pavia
Cremona
Turin
ALPS MTS.
Po R.
Bologna
APPENNINE MTS.
Genoa
Florence
Adriatic Sea
Nice
Marseilles
Viterbo
Tiber R.
ROME
CORSICA
MEDITERRANEAN SEA
A. Zeese & Co., Engr's, Chi.
10
15
50
45

15—

W. E. McLeod

Inter-Collegiate Latin Series.

DE BELLO GALLICO LIBRI VII.

CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR

WITH A LIFE OF CAESAR,
GEOGRAPHY AND PEOPLE OF
GAUL, HISTORY OF THE MILITARY ART IN
CAESAR'S COMMENTARIES; SPECIAL VOCABULARIES
ON THE INDUCTIVE PLAN; HISTORICAL AND GRAMMATICAL
NOTES, A GENERAL REFERENCE VOCABULARY, AND AN INDEX

BY

C. M. LOWE, Ph. D.
HEIDELBERG UNIVERSITY

AND

J. T. EWING, M. A.
ALMA COLLEGE

THE TEXT OF KRANER.

CHICAGO:
SCOTT, FORESMAN & CO.
1897.

PRESS OF
THE HENRY O. SHEPARD CO.,
CHICAGO.

PREFACE.

The Commentaries of Caesar are widely used as the best introduction to the study of classical Latin. The purity and simplicity of the diction and the importance of the subject matter justify this usage. This new edition has been prepared to meet the student's needs in attaining a thorough knowledge of the principles of the Latin language and a familiarity with Caesar's writings commensurate with their great historical and literary importance.

The vocabularies, notes, illustrations and explanatory matter have been placed on the same page with the text, thus saving the student's time, which is uselessly spent in turning leaves and searching for explanations which are here placed immediately before him. At the same time, self reliance is secured by the use of a separate text in the class room, without either notes or vocabulary. The special vocabularies have been arranged so that the first four books and the rest of the annotated text may be read consecutively, or the war with Ariovistus (Bk. I. chaps. 30–54) may be omitted and the valuable, and less familiar, matter substituted from the annotated chapters of Bks. V–VII. An opportunity for sight reading is afforded in the unannotated parts of these latter books.

To insure correct pronunciation the quantity of all long vowels has been marked throughout the text, notes, and vocabularies. In this we have followed the exceptionally correct and complete marking of Lewis' Elementary Latin Dictionary. This plan has been adopted at the suggestion of Dr. W. G. Hale of Chicago University, who has inaugurated this system, so helpful to Latin students in acquiring a correct pronunciation.

The application of the inductive method to the notes with the system of references adopted has enabled us to furnish a constant review of necessary facts and principles without unduly increasing the size of the book.

The text of Kraner is given without alteration as it seems better to present the exact results of the ablest textual critic of the commentaries, free from the preferences and prejudices which mark certain collated texts.

The special vocabularies, based on the lexicons of Lewis, Harper, and Gepp and Haigh, are made with reference to the derivation and relation of the words defined, to their special use in the text treated, and to their later use by the student. The General Reference vocabulary encourages thoroughness by directing the student to the passage where the word is first found and fully explained. In the preparation of the notes free use has been made of the latest and best English, French, and German authorities. The editions of Brackenbury, Compton, Bond and Walpole, Long, Peskitt, Moberly, Benoist and Dosson, Menge, Rheinhard, Kraner, and Procksch, have given much valuable assistance. The valuable lives of Caesar, by Col. Dodge, Warde Fowler, Froude, Napoleon III; Rustow's Heerwesen and Kriegfuhrung; and the histories of Duruy, Long, Merivale, Mommsen, etc., have been constantly consulted.

Much credit is due to Mr. H. F. Scott, who has given the advance sheets and proofs his careful revision, and to Mr. E. W. Dresser and his associates of the Wheaton College Press, for the mechanical execution of the work.

Dr. H. W. Johnston of Illinois College, revised the earlier chapters and to him and Dr. Wm. G. Hale, the editors are under obligations for valuable suggestions. Friendly criticism is invited that the book may most completely serve its purpose.

C. M. LOWE. J. T. EWING.

PUBLISHERS' NOTICE.

The authors finding their time so thoroughly taken up with professional and other literary labors have made an arrangement whereby a thorough revision of their work should be made to rid it of some small mistakes that are likely to appear in the first edition of any book.

This work has been committed to a thorough scholar who has been for many years a successful teacher of preparatory Latin, and a new set of plates throughout has been made. The book is therefore commended to teachers with entire confidence in its accuracy and thoroughness. The attention of teachers is called to the figures or star following the definitions in the page vocabularies. The figures indicate the number of times a word is used in the first four books of the Gallic War, while the star follows all words used five times or more.

August 10th, 1894. THE PUBLISHERS.

SUGGESTIONS TO THE STUDENT OF CAESAR'S COMMENTARIES.

1. Caesar's De Bello Gallico is a masterpiece in literature and classic Latin which demands and repays the most earnest study.

2. Learn thoroughly each new word as it occurs in the special vocabularies as it is not repeated and valuable time should not be required to hunt it up again in the general vocabulary. Observe carefully the root meaning of each word and the force of the various words and syllables used in compounding words and you will be able to define many new words for yourself and to add to the definitions given.

3. Familiarize yourself with the system of references employed throughout this book and explained on page 65 Make sure of the principle explained by the reference to the grammars and thereafter only use the reference when in doubt, but do not leave any word until its form and construction are entirely clear.

4. You will best and most really learn the Latin by receiving the thought in the order of the Latin words, just as they stand in the sentence. The meaning of a Latin sentence is not certain until its close. You must therefore suspend your judgment until the sentence is ended. Establish, as far as possible, the meaning of each word as presented. If the word is inflected and several constructions are possible, select the one most likely and then modify this judgment, if required, by the thought as developed in the succeeding words. It will soon become natural to receive the thought of a simple sentence like *pater fīlium cārē amat,* 'the father his son dearly loves,' without translating into English at all. The more complex and difficult sentences will yield to the same method and the language will become to you replete with the interest felt by the Romans themselves, when received in its own natural and significant order. You will thus learn to think in Latin which is essential to oral or written Latin composition as well as to a living knowledge of the language.

5. When required to translate, let your translation be in the best English you can command. If you retain the Latin idioms by a so-called 'literal' translation, you make but half a translation and do violence to both tongues. A barbarous, corrupt English style is formed by such 'literal' translations, while this exercise should be most helpful in en-

riching and refining your forms of expression. Thus, in the transfer into English, the frequent use of the participle is to be avoided and a clause may be substituted. Test each ablative absolute and if it denotes time, render by a clause with *when*; or if it denotes cause render by a clause with *since*, and so on. We must, however, vary the 'when' with *after* and the 'since' with *because*, *etc.* We will translate *mīlite mīssō*, 'when he had sent the soldier,' 'after he had sent—,' 'though he sent—,' 'on sending—,' 'because he sent—,' or otherwise, as variety of expression and the connection may require. The Latin sometimes drops words which are required in English or inserts or repeats them contrary to our usage. Thus Caesar says *duo itinera erant, quibus itineribus*, where good English requires the omission of *itineribus* in the translation. The use of the demonstrative and relative pronoun and of the connectives in the Latin differs from the English. In all these cases the comprehensive rule for the translator is, while noting the structure of the Latin, to follow the English idiom. Particular words are also to be rendered by terms appropriate to their connection. *Haec* or *hae rēs* is not truly translated by the spiritless term, 'these *things*,' but we will say 'these events, dangers, obstacles, accidents, advantages, means, supplies, plans" as we observe what kind of 'things, matters, or circumstances is really meant.

6. Note the favorite forms of expression in Caesar and commit some of these to memory. Such memorized passages will be helpful in all your future course.

7. In the preparation of your lesson read aloud the Latin text, receiving the thought according to suggestion 4. You will thus not merely practice the pronunciation but the words will be more vividly fixed in the mind.

8. Employ the words used by Caesar in forming new sentences, either in conversation or in composition. This practice will be found a valuable aid in acquiring the ability to write or speak Latin.

9. Possess at least one of the works on Caesar mentioned in the 'References for Reading' or in the Preface of this book and read it in connection with the particular part of the Commentaries assigned for your study.

CONTENTS.



CAESAR AND HIS TIMES.

Birth and Family.

B. C. On July 12, 102 B. C., was born Caius Julius Caesar, destined to make for himself "the greatest name in history." The Julian *gēns* had a lofty lineage, and numbered a long line of distinguished sons. The branch to which Caesar belonged had been prominent in the Republic for more than a hundred years. A Caesar had been consul in 157, the uncle of Gaius Julius in 91, and still another of the family in 90. His grandfather and father, however, reached the praetorship only. The prestige of the family was increased by the marriage of Caesar's aunt to the great Marius. Aurelia, the mother of Caesar, belonged to a prominent plebeian family of the Aurelian *gēns*, the Cottas. **1**

Education and Political Training.

The year of Caesar's birth was signalized by the defeat of the Germans by Marius at Aquae Sextiae. The greatest danger that had threatened Rome since Hannibal's invasion was averted, and Marius was the hero of the hour. Then followed years of "storm and stress" in the political world, during which Caesar was living a quiet home life under the careful discipline of his mother, Aurelia. She appears to have been a woman of strong character and to have exerted **2**

a powerful influence over her son. His academic training, B. C.
3 which was under the supervision of M. Antonius Gnipho, a learned Gaul, seems to have been of the conventional sort, and can hardly have been very stimulating or attractive to a mind as original as that of Caesar. He was, indeed, fortunate in having for his tutor a man of intellectual culture and courteous manners, instead of the customary slave who, we are informed by Plutarch, was usually a drunkard or a glutton, and unfit for any other occupation. Daily contact with such a man as Gnipho doubtless did much to develop that love of knowledge which made Caesar a learner all his life.

4 The genesis of Caesar's political opinions can easily be traced. Brought up in a household of democratic sympathies, his earliest impressions were doubtless those of the greatness of his uncle Marius, the leader of the democracy. When the civil war broke out, he was already old enough to be familiar with its origin and meaning, and his political opinions crystallized rapidly while his relatives and friends were fleeing before Sulla, the aristocrat. The democratic bias thus given to his views was strengthened by reflection upon the relative titles of the two parties to the support of the Romans of his generation; and the two, bias and reflection, bred in him a sober conviction to which he was ever true. His zeal and promise were soon recognized by
5 Marius, who made him *flāmen diālis*, or priest of Jupiter,
at the age of fourteen. Soon after the death of his 88
father, Caesar broke off an engagement with a wealthy 84
heiress of equestrian rank, and deliberately identified himself with the Marian party by marrying Cornelia, the daughter of Cinna, the dictator. It cannot be doubted that he was cognizant of the purposes of his father-in-law as the arbiter of the policy of the popular party.

The Sullan Government.

B. C. In 82, Sulla returned in triumph to Italy. After a severe struggle, the popular party was again driven out of power, and the victor, determined to make a revival of it impossible, proscribed its prominent men and so reorganized the government as to render the position of the Senate impregnable. Briefly, this was done by destroying the independent power of the tribunate, and by taking the judges in criminal cases exclusively from the ruling aristocracy. The effect of this legislation was to bind the Roman people hand and foot; and had the nobles been reasonable and at all patriotic, the elaborate defenses erected for them might long have served their purpose. But such was their venality that the effort was a hopeless one from the beginning. Such a thing as disinterested action was not to be expected from a class chiefly interested in keeping the ill-gotten gains which they had made under the wing of the Dictator. 6

Caesar's career was cut short by the revolution in affairs, and he necessarily sank into obscurity for a time. One incident shows the spirit of the youth. Sulla commanded him to divorce his wife Cornelia. He refused, although deprived of his wife's dowry, his own inheritance, and the office of *flāmen.* Finally, he fled from Rome with a price set on his head, and his life was saved only by the entreaties of powerful relatives and of the College of Vestals, who won for him a reluctant pardon from the Dictator, accompanied, however, by a warning "to beware of the youth 7
81 with the loose girdle." It is probable that Caesar still felt unsafe in Rome, for he sailed soon after into Asia Minor,
80 where he served with credit, winning the civic crown of oak leaves at the storming of Mytilene. The death of Sulla put an
78 end to his voluntary exile, and he at once returned to Rome.

8 The Sullan constitution was now to be tested, with its B. C.
originator and supporter no longer at hand. Scarcely had Sulla ceased to breathe, when the consul, Lepidus, began the attack. He sought the support of Caesar, but without success. Lepidus failed, and things went on in the old way. That Caesar, however, had not forgotten his party was proved
by his bold prosecution of Cornelius Dolabella, an 77
optimate, for extortion while proconsul of Macedonia. The senatorial court acquitted Dolabella, but Caesar triumphed in that he reaped a harvest of popular applause. The next
year he attacked in the same way Caius Antonius, one of 76
Sulla's lieutenants, for extortion in Greece, and with the same result. The popular party was beginning to take heart again, and nothing was more natural than that Caesar, the bold
9 young orator, with manifest gifts and the prestige of close relationship to Marius and Cinna, should be looked upon as its leader. Caesar, however, probably felt that it would be prudent to leave, until a riper time, the scenes where he was becoming dangerously prominent. In the same year he sailed for Rhodes to study the art of rhetoric under Apollonius Molo. One of the pirate bands that infested the seas swooped down upon his vessel off the coast of Caria, and carried him as a captive to the little island of Pharmacusa, where he was held for over a month, while a large ransom was being collected for his release. He coolly informed the robbers while held by them that he would return and crucify them all; and he kept his word. He then proceeded to Rhodes, where he pursued his studies under Molo for two years.

10 When Caesar returned to Rome, eight years of senatorial 74
misrule had prepared the way for a democratic reaction. He at once plunged into the political conflicts of the hour, furthering zealously the movement to restore the tribunes to their former power, and also to reform the senatorial courts.

B.C. He was made military tribune and member of the college
of pontiffs in place of his uncle, Aurelius Cotta, who had
recently died. In the pursuit of his aims he paid assiduous
court to the people and spent money with a lavish hand,
supplementing his slender fortune by borrowing enormous
sums. He was nearly thirty years of age, with standing
and some experience, and was undoubtedly a rising man.
But it was not through him and his party that the Sullan
constitution was to be overthrown. Help came from an
70 unexpected quarter in 70. Pompeius and Crassus were the
consuls, and were the most powerful men in Rome. Through **11**
influences which are not known, they were induced to pull
down the defenses of the Senate and give the *populāres* a
chance. Whether Caesar was instrumental in bringing about
this result or not, it was certainly of the greatest moment to
him. All obstacles were removed from his path of political
advancement at the moment when he was ready to put his
foot upon the lowest round of the official ladder.

The Rising Politician.

69 At the age of thirty-two, Caesar was elected quaestor and **12**
went out to Spain, where he served with honor. His wife
67 Cornelia having died, he married Pompeia, cousin of the
great Pompeius, and quietly supported the proposal to
clothe that general with extraordinary power to put down
the pirates that infested the Mediterranean Sea, and to finish
65 the Mithridatic war. Two years later he was curule aedile
along with Bibulus, a wealthy, but obstinate and stupid
optimate. They entertained the populace with magnificent
shows, prepared with a lavishness of expenditure such as had
never been witnessed before. While the favor of the people
was active in his behalf, Caesar took the bold step of
restoring to the Capitol the statue of Marius and the trophies

of his victories over the enemies of Rome which Sulla had B. C.
removed. The nobles were enraged; the people delighted.

13 If the story of Suetonius is true, that Caesar induced the
tribunes to propose for him an extraordinary command in
Egypt, it shows how the precedent established in Pompeius'
case was bearing fruit. It is certain that he supported the 63
agrarian law of Servilius Rullus, a democratic tribune, the
provisions of which were so important that it became a test
of party fealty. Cicero won a victory over Caesar in
successfully opposing this law, and by his opposition
definitely broke with the popular party and joined the
optimātēs. In another direction, Cicero, however, was not
14 so easily successful. Caesar brought to trial and convicted
one of the agents in the murder of the tribune, Saturninus,
which had occurred nearly forty years before, and only the
resort by Cicero to an ancient and absurd custom saved him.
These bold yet well-considered acts naturally won the hearts
of the masses, who soon after showed in a signal way their
partiality toward their favorite. The office of *pōntifex
māximus* falling vacant, Caesar was elected over the
strongest candidates the Senate could put forward. The
victory was a signal one both for Caesar personally and for
the cause he represented. It revealed the strength of that
cause and shook the hitherto firm seat of the nobility.

15 In the fall of this year the plot of Catiline was laid bare 63
by the consul, Cicero, and such of the conspirators as fell into
the hands of the government were put to death without trial.
Caesar, as well as Crassus, was charged with complicity in the
plot, but the proof was lacking, and he was exonerated by the
consul himself. It is probably true that these leaders of the
populārēs knew something about the movement of Catiline,
but they gave it no personal support. They simply held aloof,
not proposing to help the party in power, so long as the

B.C. matter remained a political one. Caesar's speech in the Senate opposing the execution of the death penalty, was an 16
appeal to the law against the violence of a frightened oligarchy. He warned his hearers against resorting to an unconstitutional penalty, which would certainly create a dangerous precedent, and after all remedy nothing. He advised life imprisonment for the culprits and confiscation of their property. In this great speech Caesar is seen at his best as the calm and dispassionate advocate of the principles of constitutional liberty for which he and his party had so long fought. The wisdom of his warning to Cicero and his supporters was shown by the issue.

Jan. 1 62 Caesar was at this time praetor-elect, and his political 17
movements, from the moment of his induction into office, indicated his purpose to maintain a good understanding with Pompeius, whose return from the East with the laurels of a conqueror was awaited with painful suspense by all parties. Rome expected another Sullan despotism with Pompeius in the principal role. This was the supreme moment in his career when he needed only to put forth his hand to grasp the prize of universal rule. The *populārēs*, though of late his allies, feared him, for he was by nature and training a Sullan. The *optimātēs* feared him but little in view of their former jealous opposition to his ambitious designs. Pompeius, however, dispelled all their fears by dismissing 18
his army as soon as he landed on Italian soil. He then descended to the station of a private citizen, with leanings toward Caesar which grew stronger as time went on. Says Mommsen: "If it is a piece of good fortune to gain a crown without trouble, fortune never did more for mortal than it did for Pompeius; but on those who lack courage the gods lavish every favor and every gift in vain."

At the end of his praetorship, Caesar went out to farther

Spain, where he won distinction in military and civil affairs. B. C.
19 In recognition of his brilliant successes in the field the 61
Senate voted him a triumph, but refused to let him stand for the consulship while absent from Rome, hoping thus to prevent his election. He at once relinquished the triumph, and, hastening to the capital, entered upon an active canvass.
His candidacy had the support of both Pompeius and 60
Crassus, and his election was compassed without difficulty, although the Senate succeeded in electing Bibulus, his old enemy, as the other consul.

Caesar's Consulship.

20 Caesar had been uniformly successful from a politician's standpoint. Still there is to be noticed a certain reserve and caution in his movements, due probably to the overshadowing influence, first of Sulla, and afterward of Pompeius. With the virtual abdication of the latter, Caesar's path became plainer and his policy bolder. Released from the necessity of self-repression, the qualities of the coming leader began to appear. His first movement showed consummate political sagacity. The most prominent men in the Republic were Caesar himself, Pompeius and Crassus—the able politician, the talented general, and the cautious financier. The popularity of Caesar, the military prestige of Pompeius, and the
21 wealth of Crassus would be invincible if united, and to the accomplishment of this end Caesar addressed himself. Pompeius and Crassus were enemies, but each had a grievance against the Senate. Caesar succeeded in reconciling them and forming with them a political combination of vast power, which he made still stronger by giving his daughter Julia in marriage to Pompeius. The "First Triumvirate" was not a conspiracy against the constitution, but a skilful attempt to forestall the opposition of the

. C. Senate. Thus fortified, Caesar entered upon his office. Always
59 self-controlled, he began with great moderation. He held out the olive branch to the Senate, but it was rejected with scorn, and the great Council, hoping to block legislation, practically refused to perform its functions in the state. A weak man would have yielded, but Caesar simply ignored 22
the Senate and carried his propositions to the popular assembly, where they were enacted without difficulty. Bibulus struggled in vain against the superior address of Caesar, and finally retired from the contest. The democratic consul had no further opposition, and rapidly pushed through a large amount of legislation. Pompeius' arrangements in the East were ratified, and his veterans provided for. Crassus and the monied class were gratified by the reduction of certain tax contracts in Asia. In addition to 23
this personal legislation, many laws were passed which looked towards much-needed reforms. The *Leges Juliae* and other legislative enactments of this complexion show the strong common sense of Caesar, his love of order, and his broad political views. But all this was sure to be destroyed if the Senate returned to power; so the efforts of the consul during the latter part of his term of office were directed toward the perpetuation of his influence. The people were induced to offer him the united command of Cisalpine Gaul and Illyricum for five years. The humbled Senate, at Pompeius' suggestion, added the pro- 24
vince in Transalpine Gaul with an army and the power to take such measures as should be needed for the defence of the Republic against attacks in that quarter. This extraordinary commission gave Caesar a power in the West similar in nature and extent to that of Pompeius in the East; but the circumstances under which they undertook their commissions were widely different. Pompeius had the

practically unanimous support of all classes; Caesar had that of a powerful political combination, but the intense hatred of the Senate, which never forgot an injury, and stood ready to destroy him if the chance ever came.

Caesar's Personality.

25 The recipient of this remarkable proof of popular favor was just turned forty-four and in the prime of life. From Suetonius and the numerous extant busts and coins, we learn that he was tall and spare in figure, with dark, keen eyes, a high forehead, a fair complexion, a mouth large but well-formed, and lips firmly set together. His hair was scanty, and he wore no beard. His expression was alert and thoughtful. His naturally weak constitution had been made strong by devotion to athletic sports. He was a skilful horseman and swordsman and an excellent swimmer. His tastes were simple, though he had an inbred fondness for elegance, and was particular about the care of his person.

26 His firm self-control, courteous bearing, gentleness and clemency are mentioned by all the authorities. The moral standard of Roman society was very low, and he had doubtless sounded the depths of fashionable dissipation. In this respect he was no worse than his contemporaries; but in generosity, humaneness and freedom from animosity, he was vastly superior to them. He was a constant friend, and had the power to inspire the most enthusiastic personal devotion.

The Gallic War.

27 Caesar began his career in Gaul in 58, and for eight years was incessantly engaged in war and conquest. The following summary of his campaigns, adapted from Dinter's *Vīta Caesaris*, illustrates his extraordinary military genius

B. C. and marvellous activity: In the first year he defeated the
58 Helvetii in two battles, and drove the German king, Ario-
57 vistus, out of Gaul. The next summer was devoted to the **28**
subjugation of the Belgae, which was followed by a winter
56 campaign against the Alpine tribes. In the spring of the
next year, Caesar met Pompeius and Crassus at Lucca in
Cisalpine Gaul, and arranged with them for an extension of
his command for another period of five years, they to have
in return his support for the consulship in 55, and in
the following year proconsular commands similar to his.
The Veneti, Aquitani and the coast tribes from Brittany to
the mouth of the Rhine were subdued in a single campaign.
55 In the next campaign he measured strength a second time
with the Germans, defeated them, and crossed the Rhine.
Late in the fall he made an experimental trip to Britain, and **29**
ravaged the territory of the Morini and Menapii on his
54 return. After subduing the Treviri and Aedui the next
spring, he invaded Britain with only moderate success.
A conspiracy of the Eburones and other tribes of northern
Gaul was crushed during the fall and winter with the loss of
53 a legion and a half under Sabinus. The next summer he
was employed in punishing the tribes engaged in the revolt
52 of the previous year. In desperation the Gauls revolted
once more under Vercingetorix. After a severe struggle the **30**
last hope of Gallic independence was destroyed by the capture
51 of Alesia. One year more sufficed to complete the conquest
and reorganize the country as a Roman province. Caesar
then passed over into Cisalpine Gaul, intending to remain
there until the termination of his proconsulship on March
1, 49.

Caesar's Work in Gaul.

It is not necessary to ascribe to Caesar the remote intention of making himself master of Rome in order to

account for his actions in Gaul. The glory to be obtained
31 by adding such a magnificent region to the territory of the Republic was a sufficient incentive. The threatened invasion of the Helvetii furnished him with the coveted opportunity, and the tyranny of Ariovistus rendered inevitable the appeal to him for aid by the Gauls.

Having determined on conquest, he never hesitated about the means. His conduct in many particulars excites our abhorrence, but it is only just to remember that it was strictly in accordance with Roman ideas. The lack of political unity in Gaul gave him an advantage, which he used with great tact and skill. This was offset, however, by the fact that the tribes were so isolated as to make the work of conquest tedious and incomplete. He was from the first
32 independent of the home government. He levied troops, concluded treaties, laid tribute, all on his own responsibility. He was led to do thus by the necessities of the situation and by the conviction that nothing could safely be referred to the hostile Senate. Caesar felt equal to his enormous task, and trusted to the splendid success of his achievements in Gaul to justify him in the eyes of the Roman people. And he was not mistaken. Repeated thanksgivings were decreed on account of his victories. He steadily
33 rose in public estimation as the evidences of his matchless abilities as a conqueror multiplied. The camp, as well as the forum, rang with his praises. Those who knew him best were the most enthusiastic. His legions adored him and were devoted to his personal fortunes. Caesar's work in Gaul was thoroughly done, and the results were permanent. The Gauls themselves were the gainers, and in this fact lies Caesar's justification.

Quarrel with the Senate.

B. C. During these years of campaigning, Caesar had kept
himself advised of the drift of public opinion through his
agents in Rome. The winters he spent in Cisalpine Gaul,
ostensibly engaged in the discharge of the civil duties of **34**
his office, but neglecting no opportunity to strengthen
himself at home against the machinations of his enemies.
Their hatred of him had grown with his success, which
threatened to eclipse their supremacy in political affairs,
and they were impatiently awaiting the moment when the
laying aside of his proconsular power would leave him
defenseless. The only pledge of political stability was the
friendship between Caesar and Pompeius. But the relations
between the two had changed. The successes of Caesar had
no doubt excited Pompeius' latent jealousy. The death of **35**
Julia in 54 had severed a strong personal tie, and the
death of Crassus the next year had dissolved the coalition.
These events made Pompeius feel free to become the centre
52 of senatorial intrigue. He was made sole consul to restore
public order, and was practically dictator of Rome during
this year. Indebted to the Senate for this honor, he was
naturally drawn into closer relations with those determined
to compass the downfall of Caesar, and finally united
with them.

Two things were essential to Caesar's safety, first, that he **36**
retain his proconsular command until after the election of
consuls in the summer of 49; second, that he be permitted
to sue for the consulship without going to Rome. Both of
these safeguards had been accorded him by law with the
approval of Pompeius. But now Pompeius and the Senate
unfairly abrogated these laws, leaving Caesar without
defense. With great moderation, Caesar offered to give up
his command if Pompeius would do the same, and the Senate

in a lucid interval approved this by vote. Shortly after, B. C.
however, it voted that Caesar should be recalled and Pompeius be allowed at the same time to retain his powers. Caesar, determined to put his enemies in the wrong, was studiously fair in his proposals. On January 1, a letter 49
37 from him was read to the Senate, in which he offered to give up the Transalpine province and eight legions, provided the Senate would allow him to retain Cisalpine Gaul with two legions or Illyricum with one until after he had been elected consul. The Senate, urged to decisive action by Pompeius, would listen to no compromise, and passed a decree which required Caesar to surrender his command by a certain date under penalty of being declared a public enemy. This was followed a few days later by a virtual declaration of war, the levying of troops and the appointment of Pompeius as general. These decisive
38 measures were intended to force Caesar to submit, with a certainty before him of impeachment and judicial murder. The only alternative was to fight. He promptly crossed the Jan.
Rubicon, which formed part of the boundary between his 49
province and Italy, and the Civil War began.

Conquest of Rome.

In the course of a few months Pompeius was driven out of Italy into Greece, the whole peninsula was reduced and
39 the administration of home affairs was temporarily reorganized. Caesar then went in search of his enemies. He proceeded to Spain, wrested it from Pompeius' officers in forty days, completed the reduction of Massilia on his return march, and after spending only eleven days in Rome followed his rival across the Adriatic. The passage was attended with much danger, on account of the presence of Pompeius' powerful fleet; nevertheless Caesar essayed

B. C. it, trusting to the very audacity of his act for its success. Landing in safety, he advanced toward Pompeius' strongly fortified position at Dyrrhachium (Durazzo). After suffering a severe reverse in attempting to hem in Pompeius, Caesar retreated into Thessaly, whither he was leisurely followed by the enemy. After much manœuvering the two 40
rivals faced each other at Pharsalia, Pompeius with fifty thousand men besides foreign allies, Caesar with not more
Aug. 9 than thirty thousand. A hard fought battle ensued, and
48 Caesar was victorious. The enemy's camp was stormed, and the remnant of the army captured. Pompeius, however, succeeded in escaping from the field, and reaching the coast, crossed the Aegean into Asia Minor and finally fled to Egypt, where he was slain by order of King Ptolemy. Caesar followed in haste, and on landing he was presented with the head of his unfortunate rival. He turned away from the ghastly sight with horror.

The state of Egyptian affairs at this juncture called for 41
his interference as the representative of Rome. After restoring order in a campaign known as the Alexandrian War, he repaired to Rome by way of Asia Minor. At the capital the herculean task of reorganizing the government awaited him; but from this he was soon called away to Africa, where Cato still held out with an army of malcon-
April 16 tents from all quarters. Over this force Caesar gained a
46 complete victory at Thapsus. Cato shut himself up in Utica, and preferred a self-inflicted death to the pardon which the victor freely offered.

In the belief that opposition was crushed, Caesar entered 42
upon the work of reform. The Senate was purified; social and political vices were made the subjects of legal enactments; the calendar was reformed, and a general amnesty was proclaimed. In the midst of these beneficent labors

Caesar was called to Spain, because of the revolt under B.C.
Labienus, his recreant lieutenant, and the two sons of Pom- March 17
peius, Sextus and Gnaeus. At Munda he won a great 45
victory and crushed the last hope of the opposition.

Caesar was now the undisputed master of Rome. He
43 projected a vast scheme of social, political and financial reform, the details of which he began to work out with prodigious energy. His enemies were freely forgiven and invited to unite with him in securing the stability of the new order of things. Respect for law returned, the people were satisfied with their new ruler, and the murmurs of dissent were lost in the chorus of acclaim. Caesar's enemies, however, were incapable of change. His generosity touched no responsive chord in their hearts, and immunity from punishment encouraged them in concerting measures against his life, to which his own fearlessness made him fall an easy victim.
Accordingly, on the Ides of March, he was slain in the March 15
Senate House by a band of conspirators, among whom were 44
some of his most trusted associates.

Thus by a foolish and criminal act the one man whose qualities fitted him for the task of building up a new
44 Rome was removed from the scene. But enough had been done to make it certain that he who had proved himself great in the field would have been equally great in the chair of state. The same perfection of endowment that made him a successful general made him a great statesman. The same firm grasp of principles and the same power of adapting means to ends were joined to a daring conception of the magnificent possibilities of a new Rome—such as were realized under the Empire. He clearly saw that the old form of government had outlived its usefulness and had become an instrument of injustice in the hands of an unprincipled aristocracy. Rome no longer had anything in

common with her glorious past. Patriotism was dead; faction was rife. The rule of the people was a fiction. In putting an end to this intolerable state of things, Caesar performed an unpleasant but necessary service, for which
he received the thanks of all men of discernment and right **45**
feeling. With consummate ability he raised on that old foundation a new structure, whose utility and permanence showed it to be the work of a master of statecraft.

The Writings of Caesar.

A place among the "Immortals" has by common consent been assigned to Caesar, the author and orator. His extant
writings are the "Commentaries" upon the Gallic War in **46**
seven books, and upon the Civil War in three books. The works that have not come down to us comprised poems, a treatise on grammar, a digest of the auspices, works on divination and astronomy, letters and speeches.

The history of the Gallic War was written to influence public opinion at the critical moment in Caesar's career, when rupture with the Senate was imminent. He wrote in haste, depending upon his memory, refreshed by the perusal
of the files of military despatches and letters, and with little **47**
opportunity for revision; yet the "Commentaries" stands first among Latin historical works both in style and authority. Though written to place his acts in the best light, they are candid in spirit and moderate in language. There is a remarkable absence of self-consciousness on the author's part. On the whole he gives little occasion for the suspicion
that facts have been suppressed or given a false coloring. As **48**
a record of his work they are invaluable. Their presentation of the details of battles and sieges, of military tactics and manœuvres, is admirably clear and concise. The causes of the war and the justification of Caesar's conduct are presented

calmly and forcibly. The scientific value of his inquiries into the political and social characteristics of the peoples with whom he came in contact can hardly be overestimated. They
49 remain to-day our chief authority in these particulars. With regard to the literary merits of his performance the opinion is universally favorable. Its style is clear, simple and unornamented, with the "elegance of an undraped statue." Its terseness presents a difficulty in reading, which, however, is relieved by the lucid arrangement of the matter. In its precision and propriety of diction it exhibits the exquisite literary taste of the author and his perfect command of all the resources of the Latin tongue.

50 The eighth book of the "Commentaries" was written by Aulus Hirtius, one of Caesar's officers and a personal friend. It is in the main a well written account of the events of the last two years of the conquest of Gaul, somewhat lacking in force and wanting the charm of its professed model, the earlier books of the same history.

Caesar's Military Methods.

The "Commentaries" present Caesar to our view as a
51 military leader of the first rank, and yet he had reached middle life before he held an independent command. During his youth, when the fascinations of "war's wild trade" may have attracted him, all the channels to military preferment were closed to him on account of his connection with the Marian party. When he finally turned his attention to war, he brought the calm calculation of the man of affairs seeking to accomplish certain desirable ends through its agency. Neither the charm nor the traditions of camp and field life held sway over his mind. Love of military glory alone never lured him on, nor was the sweep of his genius hampered by the shackles of an exclusively military training.

The "Commentaries" reveal his method. He clearly conceived the object desired and took the most direct way possible to reach it. He united with swiftness in execution
a deliberation in planning that provided for every con- 52
tingency. He gave careful heed to the commissariat. He provided depots of supplies, made requisitions upon subject or allied tribes, or foraged on the enemy. He always took the offensive and endeavored to concentrate his force and strike the enemy unexpectedly. He thus made up by quickness of movement for his lack of numbers. He kept himself informed of the enemy's movements and was quick to take
advantage of his mistakes. He was careful of the comfort 53
and lives of his men. He preferred to carry on war in the summer, and often cautioned his soldiers against unnecessary exposure of their lives in battle. Their devotion to him was unbounded, and they endured unexampled hardships without a murmur. Indeed, his ascendancy over their minds was one of the secrets of his success. He generously rewarded their valor and fidelity, and knew how to rouse them on occasion to the highest pitch of enthusiasm. He ruled by tact rather than by fear. In matters of military discipline he was no martinet, but looked leniently upon occasional
infractions of order, provided they did not affect the *morale* 54
of the army. In battle he was cool and confident. He was devoid of fear, and when necessary fought in the foremost ranks. Often he retrieved the day by his personal exertions. If the enemy fled he pursued him vigorously with his cavalry, slaughtering without mercy as long as a man was to be reached. He was sometimes cruel from policy, though naturally clement.

CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE.

B. C.	Aet. Caes.	
102		Birth of Caesar, July 12. C. Marius defeats the Teutones a. Aquae Sextiae.
101	1	Defeat of the Cimbri at Vercellae by Marius.
100	2	Death of Saturninus and Glaucia. Fall of Marius.
91	11	Agitation among the Italians for the franchise. Assassination of Livius Drusus.
90	12	Social War.
88	14	Marius appoints Caesar *flāmen diālis*. Civil War between Marius and Sulla.
87	15	Caesar assumes the *toga virīlis*. Marius returns to Rome. The Sullans proscribed.
86	16	Death of Marius. Cinna is Dictator.
84	18	Caesar marries Cornelia, daughter of Cinna, the Dictator. Sulla ends the war with Mithridates.
83	19	Civil War. Sulla is victorious.
82	20	Sulla becomes perpetual Dictator. He proscribes and pardons Caesar. Caesar leaves Rome for the East.
80	22	Caesar wins the *corōna cīvica* at Mytilene.
78	24	Sulla dies. Caesar returns to Rome.
77	25	Caesar prosecutes Dolabella. Pompeius is sent to Spain against Sertorius.
76	26	Caesar prosecutes Antonius. He sails to Rhodes to study under Molo.
74	28	Caesar returns to Rome. He is elected military tribune and *pōntifex*.
73	29	The Servile War.
71	31	Spartacus defeated by Crassus. Pompeius ends the war in Spain.
70	32	Consulshp of Pompeius and Crassus The Sullan constitution overthrown.
69	33	Caesar is elected *quaestor*. Cicero is *curūlis aedīlis*.
67	35	Caesar marries Pompeia. He supports the law giving Pompeius the command of the war against the pirates.

66	36	Caesar supports the law transferring the command in the Mithridatic war from Lucullus to Pompeius. Cicero is *praetor*.
65	37	Caesar is *curūlis aedīlis*. Pompeius defeates Tigranes.
63	39	Caesar is elected *praetor* and *pōntifex māximus*. Cicero is consul. Conspiracy of Catiline exposed. C. Octavius born.
62	40	Caesar is *praetor*. He divorces Pompeia. Pompeius returns from the East.
61	41	Caesar is *prōpraetor* in Farther Spain.
60	42	Caesar is elected Consul. "First Triumvirate."
59	43	Caesar is Consul. He marries Calpurnia.
58	44	Caesar becomes *prōcōnsul* of Gaul. Campaigns against the Helvetii and Ariovistus. Cicero is exiled.
57	45	Caesar conquers the Belgae. Recall of Cicero.
56	46	Caesar's campaign in Brittany. The conference at Lucca.
55	47	Caesar invades Britain and Germany. Pompeius and Crassus are joint consuls for the second time.
54	48	Caesar invades Britain a second time. Death of Julia.
53	49	The Northwestern Gauls rebel. Crassus is slain by the Parthians.
52	50	General revolt of the Gauls under Vercingetorix. Capture of Alesia. Alienation of Pompeius.
51	51	Caesar completes the conquest of Gaul.
50	52	The quarrel between Caesar and the Senate.
49	53	Civil War. Caesar is made Dictator.
48	54	Caesar defeats Pompeius at Pharsalus. Pompeius is killed in Egypt. The "Alexandrian War."
47	55	Caesar is made Dictator for the third time. He reorganizes the government.
46	56	The "African War." The Pompeians defeated at Thapsus. Suicide of Cato.
45	57	The "Spanish War." Battle of Munda.
44	58	Caesar Dictator for life. Slain in the Senate House, March 15th.

GEOGRAPHY AND PEOPLE OF GAUL.

The home of the Celts had at first natural boundaries: on the south the Pyrenees and the Mediterranean, on the east the Alps and the Rhine, on the north the Rhine and the English Channel, and on the west the ocean. This vast tract forms
55 an inclined plane extending from the summit of the Alps to the Atlantic and spreading out in its descent in the shape of a fan, so that while its eastern front has an extent of two and a half degrees of longitude, its western front extends through six degrees. It is divided by the Cevennes Mountains (*Mōns Cebenna*) into two parts, the northwestern part having an undulating or flat surface, arable or marsh lands, and navigable rivers; the southeastern part containing
56 lofty mountains, swift streams, deep lakes, and grazing lands. The united chains of the Cevennes and the Vosges (*Vosegus*) form the backbone of the land, having a considerable altitude throughout most of their extent, but permitting intercommunication at numerous points. Their eastern slopes are steep, and supply only small streams to the Rhône and Saône, but the long western slopes give rise to large rivers which flow to the north and west. The valleys are of two kinds—interior, such as those of the Seine and Loire, origi-
57 nating in the Cevennes and Vosges; and exterior, which have their sources outside of the limits of the country, such as those of the Garonne, Rhine and Rhône. The interior valleys are open and communication among them is easy.

To this physical fact was largely due the substantial unity in race-feeling that characterized the Gauls. The currents of internal commerce then, as now, followed the courses of the large streams of the interior, while foreign trade found
its way into the land along the Garonne, Rhône and Rhine, 58
and across the Channel. The northern and southern sections of the country presented the same contrast in climate as at present, but the mean temperature was lower on account of the vast forests that covered the face of the country. The soil was everywhere well adapted to the growth of all kinds of farm products. Mines of gold, silver, lead and copper were extensively worked throughout the centre and south.

In this vast region, set apart by natural barriers to be the
home of a single race, the van of the great Celtic host halted 59
about 609 B. C. Other divisions seem to have pressed on into the Spanish peninsula and later still into the valley of the Po which they conquered about 587 B. C. Their long and bloody struggles with the Romans culminated in the capture and destruction of the city of Rome in 390 B. C.
From that day of disaster, the Romans regarded the Gauls 60
of the Po as their most inveterate and formidable foes. Only after repeated efforts were they able, in the third century before Christ, to extend the frontiers of the Republic to the Alps, and in the second century to organize the whole region from the Apennines to the Alps as a Roman province.

The Gauls beyond the Alps now attracted the attention of
Rome, who was anxious to secure her new acquisitions from 61
attack and to keep up her communications by land with the Spanish provinces. The valleys of the Saône and Rhône and the passes of the maritime Alps furnished a natural thoroughfare between the two Gauls, and along this the northern invaders were wont to advance. In order to get control of this route Rome took advantage of various pretexts to push

her conquests over the southern Alps and down their western slopes into the valley of the Rhône. About the year 120 B. C. she was in full possession of the tract between the Rhône, the Alps, and the dominions of the Greek city
62 Massilia, to which she was bound by close ties of interest and friendship. Ere long she had pushed her conquests across the Rhône as far as the Cevennes and the Pyrenees. The whole region thus carved out of Gallic territory was called *Prōvincia*, "the Province," and the usual means were made use of to secure it against attack. Military colonies were founded at Narbo and Tolosa and the country was dotted with fortresses connected by military roads. The strength of this bulwark against invasion was soon severely
63 tried by the hordes of Cimbri and Teutones, distant kindred of the Celts from the shores of the Baltic. Advancing south at the suggestion of the northern Celts, they swept away army after army until the Province lay helpless before them and Italy was without a defender. After a respite of two years
64 Italy was simultaneously attacked from the east and the west. The Teutones were exterminated at Aquae Sextiae, in the Province, by the great Marius, who then turned upon the Cimbri, who had penetrated into the valley of the Po, and inflicted upon them a crushing defeat at Vercellae.

65 The Gauls of the Province had remained faithful to Rome in spite of the temptation to join the invaders. Their reward was ingratitude and ill-treatment, which they resented and resisted. The Province became the refuge and resort of malcontents and exiles from Italy. The remnants of the Marian party found a welcome here after the Social War.
66 Sertorius maintained his revolt in Spain largely through Gallic support. The Province was a favorite stage for the exhibition of Roman rapacity and extortion. The wretched people were not only crushed by the burdens of taxation, but

also corrupted by a civilization which touched them only to scorch and blast.

Beyond the Cevennes, however, the native Celt still 67
roamed in his original freedom. This region was divided into three parts, inhabited by the Belgae and Celtae, or Galli, who were Celts and the Aquitani, who were Iberians. The Matrona and Sequana separated the Belgae from the Celtae and the Garumna separated the Celtae from the Aquitani.

Each of these grand divisions was composed of politically 68
independent states, of which there were, in Caesar's time, twenty-seven in Belgica, forty-three in Celtica, and twelve in Aquitania. Leagues for defensive and offensive purposes were common in Gaul. They were seldom permanent, but fell to pieces when the cause that called them into existence
had ceased to be operative. Factions existed in every state 69
and the whole country was divided into two great parties which contended with the utmost bitterness. The centralization of political power was thus rendered impossible, and Gaul, instead of becoming a nation, remained a mere aggregation of states, unable to present a united front to any danger.

In the eyes of the Roman, the Belgae and Galli formed 70
one people, so much alike were they in manners and customs. They are described as taller than the Romans, with fierce blue eyes and light hair which they wore long. They shaved their beards, but wore long sweeping mustaches. Courage and a passionate fondness for war were joined in them with a quarrelsome disposition which gave frequent occasion for 71
strife. They were generous, personally devoted to their chiefs and families, and capable of great self-sacrifice. They were intelligent and readily adopted the manners and customs of other peoples.

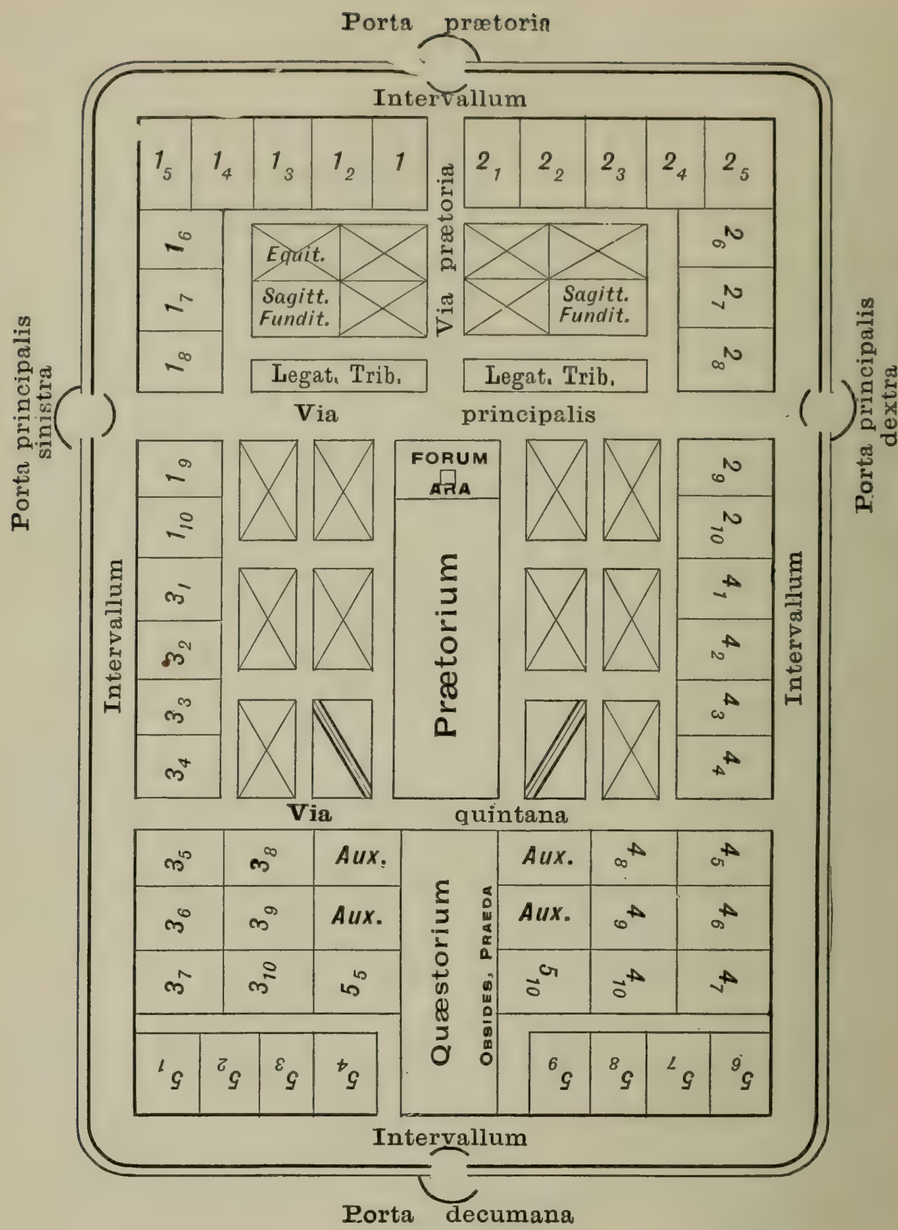
72 The desire for national unity, which the peculiar political constitution of the Gauls rendered ineffectual, was fostered by their form of religion. The Druids formed a close theological corporation with a hierarchy and a ritual calculated to impress a barbarous people with awe. The members
73 of the order discarded all tribal allegiances and were a unit on all questions affecting the interests of the order. They were at once the priests and the teachers of the whole people. Certain exemptions from taxation and military
74 service gave them standing as a privileged class. Their system included belief in a ruling Providence, the transmigration of souls, and the mediation of the priesthood between earth and heaven. They were addicted to human sacrifice, which they practised with mysterious rites in the
75 depths of the forests at dead of night. They made use of astrology and magic. Their unbounded influence over the people was exercised in secular as well as religious matters and tended to unite the masses by a common religious feeling.

76 The nobles were the other privileged class in Gaul, sustaining a sort of feudal relation to the lower orders. The masses of the people were little better than slaves, being bound by obligations of personal service to their lords. The operation of the law of debt, which delivered the insolvent debtor into the power of his creditor, tended to the further degradation of the lower classes.

77 Such were the main institutional features of Gaul previous to the establishment of Roman power in the Rhône valley. With the introduction of foreign trade a gradual change took place. The Gauls grew in wealth, settled in villages and cities, and adopted habits of comparative luxury. The
78 Druids declined in power, while their rivals, the nobles, waxed more influential, and between the two orders in every

state a bitter strife was waged, which weakened both religious zeal and patriotic spirit.

At length the nominal leadership of the nation fell into
the hands of the Aedui, a powerful tribe of central Gaul, 79
with whom Rome, in pursuance of her usual policy, thereupon concluded an alliance. The patriotic element, not relishing this, flocked to the standard of the Sequani, who had taken the place of the Arverni as competitors of the Aedui. The Sequani called in Ariovistus, a German chief, to counter-
balance the influence of Rome. The Aedui were conquered 80
and compelled to make a humiliating peace with the German chief, who thereupon settled his victorious bands on Gallic soil. Rome, appealed to by the Aedui, not only gave them no aid, but even recognized the validity of Ariovistus' course by concluding an alliance with him. Thus encouraged, the
Germans became more aggressive and treated the Gauls as a 81
conquered people. Gaul bid fair to become a German dependency, when Caesar obtained the command, and more alive than the supine senate to the real interests of Rome, determined to contest the claims of Ariovistus. In his "Commentaries" on the Gallic War he gives a minute account of the struggle thus inaugurated for the possession of Gaul—a struggle which added a magnificent region to the domains of Rome and gave its conqueror a foremost place among the military leaders in the world's history.



1_2 *First Legion. Second Cohort.*

This camp is for five legions with cavalry and auxiliary troops.

PLAN OF ROMAN CAMP.

According to Rüstow.

MILITARY ART IN CAESAR'S COMMENTARIES.

I. ROMAN.

Military Service. Originally, service in the army was a privilege of wealth, not a common duty of all citizens. The **82**
soldier served without pay and met all his expenses, so he was necessarily a man of means. The poor were exempt from service, and when called out their equipment was provided by the state. Marius was the first to break through the barriers of this constitutional provision by enlisting those who were not taxed (*capite cēnsī*). While the census list of *iūniōrēs* (those from seventeen to forty-six years of age) was still taken as the basis for military levies, it became more and **83**
more common for the well-to-do to avoid service by the payment of a certain sum of money. Caesar had no great respect for the traditional classes of Servius. Suetonius says that he laid stress, not upon custom nor the possession of an income, but upon valor alone.

A levy (*dēlēctus*) of persons for military service was made **84**
as the necessity for troops arose. Its size depended upon the circumstances. It was proclaimed in the name of the state or of the general by officers called *conquīsītōrēs*. At first the levy was confined to Rome; but, when citizenship was extended to the Italians after the Social War (90 B. C.), it became lawful to raise troops in any designated part of the peninsula. Caesar obtained most of his recruits in Cisalpine

Gaul. The physical requirements of a recruit were quick
85 eyes, a broad chest, muscular shoulders, strong arms, long fingers, a slender body, slim legs, with sinewy calves and feet. The Roman soldier was rather undersized, strong and active, hardy and enduring. The recruit took a solemn oath (*sacrāmentum*) which bound him to service for a period of from sixteen to twenty years.

86 **The Legion.** The legion (*legiō*) was the nucleus of the army and was composed of Roman citizens of Italy, the colonies and the provinces. The number of troops in the legion varied greatly, and the rule at any period is hard to fix; probably at this time its normal strength was about five thousand men. Its effective strength was always much less, and varied according to the length of service and the severity of its losses. We are told of a legion that contained less than
87 a thousand men. Probably the average number was 3,600. It was divided into ten cohorts (*cohortēs*), each cohort into three maniples (*manipulī*), and each maniple into two centuries (*centuriae*, *ōrdinēs*). The tactical unit of the legion was the cohort and all maneuvers were by cohorts. The three maniples stood side by side, ten ranks deep, the front five ranks forming the first century, and the rear five
88 ranks the second. The size of the cohort formed in close order was one hundred and fifty feet front by fifty feet in depth; in open order, three hundred feet front by fifty feet in depth. The legions when formed received numbers by which they were known as long as they existed. New levies thus led to the formation of new legions, the old legions retaining their membership unchanged except by the casualties of the service.

89 The officers of the legion were the subalterns (*centuriōnēs*) and general officers (*tribūnī mīlitum*). There were six of the latter, appointed by the general from the equestrian

class, often for political or family reasons rather than for
military efficiency. Being young as a rule, they were not 90
much valued by Caesar, who confined them to the comparatively simple matters of administrative detail, such as the oversight of camp discipline, the inspection of out-posts and sentinels, the distribution of the password, etc. They served by twos in turn for a period of two months, the two alternating daily. The real officers of the legion were the 91
centurions, sixty to each legion, who, unlike the tribunes, rose from the ranks through appointment by the tribunes or commander; their duties lay between those of a captain and sergeant; and they all served on foot. Their helmets were crowned by crests (*cristae*) and they carried a stick (*vītis*) as a symbol of authority. The two centurions of a maniple
were designated as *prior* and *posterior*, with a slight differ- 92
ence in rank, and each had a sub-centurion. There was a regular gradation in rank from the last centurion of the tenth cohort to the first centurion of the first cohort; this last-named officer (*prīmipīlus*) had charge of the standard, and was a member of the council of war. The height of a centurion's ambition was to become a *prīmipīlus*, and as merit
was the test, he had a sufficient stimulus to do his whole 93
duty. He must be a man of steady courage, good judgment, and always at his post. The centurions of Caesar's army are often mentioned by him for their efficiency and valor. Forty-six were killed at Gergovia (*Bellum Gallicum*, VII. 51), and thirty at Pharsalia (*Bellum Cīvīle*, III. 99).

The general's staff consisted of the lieutenants (*lēgātī*)
and quartermaster (*quaestor*). The lieutenants, or military 94
aids of the general, were elected by the Senate on his nomination, and belonged to the senatorial rank. Usually there were three; Caesar regularly had ten, and mentions eighteen different persons who served in this capacity in

Gaul. The more important duties of the tribune were
95 by him given to them. They were not usually assigned to permanent commands, but took such as were given them, and in battle were put in charge of the legions. The *lēgātus* undertook no independent operations; hence the burden of his success or failure rested upon the shoulders of his general. The *quaestor* went with the proconsul to his province to take charge of receipts and expenditures. In addition to his usual duties, Caesar often gave him command of a single legion or a whole corps.

96 The whole army was under the command of a general (*dux bellī*) having the *imperium* or military command, with the power of life or death over his soldiers. After a victory he was saluted as *imperātor* by the army. As provincial governor he was judge as well as general. His power was practically absolute. The outward marks of his dignity were the cloak edged with broad bands of purple (*palūdāmentum*), the *toga praetexta*, the ivory sceptre (*scēptrum*), and the chair of state (*sella curūlis*).

97 The council of war (*concilium*) was composed of the lieutenants, tribunes and centurions of the first rank, and was presided over by the general, or by a lieutenant in his absence.

Veterans. The *ēvocātī* were veterans who served the full
98 time, but who later re-entered the service voluntarily. They enjoyed the rank and pay of centurions and were exempted from ordinary routine duties. The *veterānī* were soldiers who remained in the army without cessation of service after their legal term had expired. Both these classes of soldiers were highly esteemed on account of their military efficiency.

Auxiliaries. The auxiliary forces (*auxilia*) were com-
99 posed of foreigners and of native provincials, usually armed with their national weapons and commanded by native

officers. The most important were the slingers (*funditōrēs*), bowmen (*sagittāriī*), and spearmen (*pedités levis armātūrae*). The nationalities represented in Caesar's army were the Numidians, Gauls, Cretans, Balearians, Illyrians and Germans.

Cavalry. The cavalry (*equitēs*, *equitātus*) was drawn 100
from the foreign allies, Gauls, Spaniards, or Germans. There were two kinds: first, the permanent force, consisting of from two hundred to three hundred horsemen attached to each legion and armed in the Roman fashion; second, the contingent furnished by the allies at the opening of a campaign upon the general's requisition. These formed a body separate from the legionaries, and were armed with their national weapons.
Each *ala* (wing) was divided into ten *turmae*, each *turma* 101
into three *decuriae*. The *turma* was the tactical unit and probably contained about thirty men. The principal officers (*praefectī equitum*) were Romans, but the subalterns (*decuriōnēs*) were of the same nationality as the troops. The whole cavalry-force was commanded in battle by a *lēgātus*. Caesar usually had about four thousand cavalry.

Non-Combatants. A large number of persons followed 102
the army in various capacities. There were the servants of the officers (*cālōnēs*), the wagoners (*mūliōnēs*), sutlers (*mercātōrēs*), smiths (*fabrī*), etc. The first two classes were slaves; the sutlers accompanied the army to buy booty and sell provisions; the *fabrī* formed the engineering corps, a body probably distinct from the legion, and commanded by an officer (*praefectus fabrūm*) who had charge of the artillery, siege operations, and baggage train.

Equipment. The dress of the soldier consisted of a 103
sleeveless woolen blouse (*tunica*) worn next to the skin and reaching to the knees. Over this was thrown when needed a military cloak (*sagum*), also made of wool and usually

rectangular in shape; this was fastened by a clasp. Coarse boots (*caligae*) covered the feet and ankles.

104 The defensive coverings of the body were a coat of mail (*lōrīca*), metal helmet (*cassis*), greaves (*ocreae*), and shield (*scūtum*). The coat of mail was made of very thick leather, with flexible bands of steel over the shoulders and around the waist. Officers wore the chain or scale cuirass (*lōrīca hāmāta, squāmāta*), which was often highly ornamented. The helmet was made of iron or bronze, and fitted the head closely, leaving exposed scarcely more than the eyes,
105 nose, and mouth. It was held on by the cheek-pieces (*bucculae*), which were fastened together under the chin; when on the march, it hung on the soldier's breast. The centurion's helmet had a ridge on the crown, plated with silver and supporting a crest (*crista*) of red or black plumes, so placed as to nod at either side. The greaves were of bronze, reaching to the knee, and fastened to the legs by
106 straps and buckles. The shield, four-cornered and cylindrical, was two and a half feet wide and four feet long. It was made of boards firmly fastened together, and covered with leather; a rim of metal around the edges added to its strength. In the centre of its face was the boss (*umbō*), a projection of iron intended to cause missiles to glance off. The face was painted with *īnsīgnia*, such as thunderbolts, wreaths, etc. The name of the owner and the number of his
107 cohort and maniple, possibly also the name of his general, appeared on the inside. For the protection of the metal work of the shield a leather covering was used, which was drawn off before battle.

The cavalryman was not so heavily armed as the legionary.
108 A metal helmet (*cassis*), a light buckler (*parma*) of round or oval shape, about three feet across and with a framework of iron, a light cuirass, and possibly greaves, formed his

defensive equipment. The auxiliaries wore the helmet, and carried the buckler; the bowmen, however, necessarily omitted the latter.

The offensive weapons of the legionary were the sword (*gladius*) and the javelin (*pīlum*). The blade of the sword 109
was short (two feet long), straight, two-edged, and pointed; hence it could be used both for cutting and stabbing, the latter being its common use. It hung at the right side, because the shield was carried on the left arm; the scabbard (*vāgīna*) was suspended from a sash (*balteus*) passing over the left
shoulder, or from a belt (*cingulum*), both made of leather. 110
The officers of high rank, who did not have shields, carried the sword at the left side. The javelin was between six and seven feet long, and consisted of the shaft and the iron shank, of about equal weight. The former was round,
about four feet long, a little more than one inch thick and 111
pointed with iron at the butt, so as to be thrust into the ground. The latter was slender, round or four-sided, and about two feet long, and ended in a barbed or flat heart-shaped point. The entire weight was about nine pounds. It was exclusively used as a missile weapon. In order to prevent its use by the enemy, the head was made of soft iron, which easily bent on coming in contact with an obstacle such as a shield.

The cavalry fought with the lance (*hasta*), longer and
lighter than the *pīlum*, and especially adapted for thrusting, 112
though it could be used as a javelin. The sword used by them was longer than the *gladius*. The light-armed troops also wielded the lance or threw darts (*iacula*). The slingers threw stones or slugs (*glandēs*) of lead moulded into the shape of an almond and sometimes inscribed with letters.

Pay. The pay of the legionary soldier in Caesar's army
was 225 *dēnāriī* (about $44) per year; that of the centurion 113

twice as much. Payment was made every four months, beginning with March 1. The auxiliary troops were paid either by the Roman state or by the allied states furnishing them; in either case their pay was less than that of the Roman soldier. The cost of the food and equipments furnished by the state was deducted. Extra pay was sometimes given as a reward at the end of a successful campaign, and
114 something was realized from the sale of booty. For special bravery the general could bestow gifts (*dōna*), such as chains of gold for neck or breast (*torquēs*), bracelets (*armillae*), medallions (*phalārae*), spears with gold or silver points (*hastae pūrae*), and, most valued of all, crowns (*corōnae*). These crowns were of various kinds, the most coveted being the civic crown (*corōna cīvica*), granted to him who had saved the life of a Roman citizen and slain his adversary. Crowns of myrtle or of laurel were given to successful generals, and, in case of a great victory, an ovation (*ovātiō*), or a triumph (*triumphus*). When his
115 term of service was ended the soldier received his discharge (*mīssiō honesta*); if rendered unable to serve his full time by sickness or wounds, he was granted an invalid's discharge (*mīssiō causāria*). For offences against military law he was punished variously, according to the grade of the offence; reprimands, loss of pay and dishonorable discharge were resorted to in ordinary cases, and whipping or death by stoning or decapitation in aggravated ones.

Ration. The ration of each soldier was about two pounds
116 of grain (*frūmentum*), usually wheat, per day; this was issued every twelve or fifteen days, and was carried by the soldier as a part of his kit. The grain was prepared for use by grinding it in handmills (*molae manuālēs*). It was then baked in the form of unleavened dough or boiled as a kind of paste. Whatever else the soldier needed he got by foraging

or trading his grain for other articles of food. The horses **117**
were fed on barley and green fodder when it was obtainable. The commissariat was in charge of the *quaestor*, and was carefully attended to; depots of supplies were established at convenient points and requisitions were made upon allied tribes. The Roman system of army support was less elaborate but in many ways more efficient than the modern.

Baggage. The baggage of the army was either light
(*sarcinae*) or heavy (*impedīmenta*). The light baggage **118**
was carried by the soldier himself in the form of a bundle (hence the name *sarcina*), fastened to the end of a forked pole (*furca*) carried on the shoulder. The contents of this bundle were a hatchet, cooking utensils (*vāsa*), rations (*cibāria*), a cloak (*sagum*), and various smaller articles. The weight of the whole kit was between fifty and sixty pounds, and when marching under it the soldier was said to be
impedītus. Before a battle the baggage was piled up in one **119**
place (*sarcinas cōnferre*) and guarded, or was left in the camp; the soldier was then said to be *expedītus.* The heavy baggage (tents, hand-mills, artillery, bridge material, etc.) was carried in wagons (*carrī*) or on pack-animals (*iūmenta*), of which there were about six hundred to each legion.

Ensigns. The ensigns (*sīgna*) were the *aquila* for the
legion, *sīgnum* for the cohort and maniple, and *vēxillum* for **120**
the cavalry and auxiliary foot. The *aquila* was a silver or gold eagle with outstretched wings, placed on top of a staff overlaid with silver; the butt of the staff had an iron point, so as to be thrust into the ground (*aquilās fīgere*, to halt), and from a cross-piece just below the eagle was often hung a square banner inscribed with the number of the legion.
It was placed in the first cohort under the special care of **121**
the *prīmipīlus* and was carried by the *aquilifer*, a man of

tried strength and valor. In the camp it was placed in the *praetōrium* under a little shelter (*sacellum*), where it was carefully guarded and worshipped as sacred. In time of peace it was deposited in the temple of Saturn, the state treasury (*aerārium*) at Rome.

The *sīgnum* was the ensign of the maniple, that of the first
122 maniple serving for the cohort also; it consisted of the figure of an animal—bear, wolf, minotaur, etc.,—on a staff, to which were attached metallic disks and half-moons with a symbolic meaning, and a banner like to that on the *aquila*, displaying the letter of the maniple, and probably the number of the legion and of the cohort. During an engagement the *sīgna* were carried by the *sīgniferī* behind the first line of cohorts.

123 The *vēxillum* was a small quadrangular banner attached to a wooden cross-bar at the top of a staff; it was white, red, or purple, according to the division of the troops represented. When portions of a legion were detached on special duty, they had as ensigns *vēxilla.* A large red banner, also called *vēxillum*, bearing the name of the general, was displayed above his tent as a signal for march or combat.

The sacredness of the standard intensified the feeling of disgrace at its loss, in which all who followed it shared; if
124 due to the cowardice of the standard-bearer, his punishment was death. That the standards had a symbolic meaning is very clear, but that their tactical importance preponderated is shown by the constant use of such expressions as *sīgna convellere* (to prepare to march), *sīgna prōmovēre* (to advance in line), *sīgna īnferre* (to attack), *sīgna convertere* (to change front), *ā sīgnīs discēdere* (to flee), *sīgna referre* (to retreat), *sīgna cōnstituere* (to halt).

125 **Signal Instruments.** The musical instruments have a close relation to the ensigns through the similarity of their use in tactics. The signal for attack or retreat was given by

the *tubicinēs* on the *tuba*, a straight metal tube with a bell-shaped mouth about four feet long; its tone was deep and hoarse. The signal on the *tuba* was taken up and passed
along the lines by the *cornicinēs* on the *cornū*, a large 126
trumpet originally made of the horn of an ox, in later times made also of brass. It had the form of an almost complete circle, through which ran a cross-bar that served the double purpose of keeping it in shape and aiding the player to hold it steady. There were probably at least thirty *cornicinēs* to each legion, one being stationed near each *sīgnum*. The
cavalry movements were directed by signals on the *lituus*, a 127
trumpet with a tube straight until near the end, then abruptly curved; its tone was shrill. In camp the changing of the watches was signalled on the *būcina*, a curved instrument similar to the *cornū*, but smaller. The *classicum*, which
summoned the whole army together to be addressed by the 128
general, was played by the assembled musicians before the general's tent. On the march, signals were given on the *tuba*; but there is no evidence that marching tunes were played to assist in keeping step.

The Camp. The site of the camp was selected with
great care by a camping party sent in advance under the 129
command of a tribune and centurions. When possible the camp was pitched on the side of a hill, facing down the slope, with space enough in front for drawing up the army in line of battle, and with fuel and water easily accessible. The usual form of the camp was a square, or rectangle, but, if the nature of the site required, it might be semi-circular or triangular.

When the army reached the site chosen and already staked 130
out by the surveyors (*mēnsōrēs* or *mētātōrēs*), the arms (except the sword) and packs were laid aside, and working parties were formed. Along the outside boundary-line a ditch (*fossa*)

was dug nine to twelve feet wide at the top and seven to nine feet deep, and the earth from it was thrown inward to
131 form a rampart (*agger*). The outer face of the *agger* was steep and was covered with sod from the ditch and with bundles of brush, to keep the earth in place. At the top was often placed a parapet (*lōrīca*) of stakes (*vāllī*) set close together. The top was flat and broad enough for the soldiers to stand upon easily; the inner face was sloping, and furnished with steps made of logs, or earth, to give easy access to the top. Entrance to the camp was through
132 gates (*portae*) probably forty feet wide. There was at least one in each side,—that in the front, toward the foe, being the *porta praetōria*; the one opposite, the *porta decumāna*; those in the right and left sides the *porta dextra* and *porta sinistra*. These gates were masked by earthworks (*clāviculae*) so placed that the enemy had to turn to the left to reach the gates, thus exposing the right side, unprotected by the shield, to the defenders of the gate.

133 Entering at the *porta praetōria*, the observer would see before him a space from one hundred to two hundred feet wide, extending along the wall entirely around the camp; this prevented the enemy's missiles from reaching the tents. Along this space the troops were easily and quickly marched to any point on the *agger* where reinforcements were needed, and part of it was occupied by the wagons of the baggage-train. The space bounded by this broad avenue was divided
134 into blocks by streets. The principal of these were the *via praetōria*, fifty feet wide, *via prīncipālis*, one hundred feet wide, and *via quīntāna*, fifty feet wide. For the location of these see plan of Roman camp. The *via prīncipālis* and *via quīntāna* divided the whole camp into three parts; the *praetentūra*, between the front wall and the *via prīncipālis*; the *latera praetōriī*, between the two streets mentioned; and

the *retentūra*, between the *via quīntāna* and the rear wall. The *praetentūra* was bisected by the *via praetōria*. At the **135**
junction of the *via praetōria* with the *via prīncipālis*, and extending back to the *via quīntāna*, was an open space called the *praetōrium*; in it were the general's quarters, the altars (*ārae*), the *forum* for the meeting of the soldiers, and the tribunal (*suggestus*) from which the general addressed them. Back of the *praetōrium* was a similar space in the *retentūra*, **136**
called the *quaestōrium*, where were kept the hostages, prisoners, booty, etc., in charge of the *quaestor* and his staff. The remaining space was portioned out according to a definite plan among the various divisions of the army and divided by smaller streets. Each cohort occupied a space one hundred and twenty feet wide and one hundred and eighty feet deep, cut into six parts, one for each century. The tents of the **137**
two centuries in a maniple were placed back to back in parallel lines. These tents were made of skins (*pellēs*), and held ten men, forming a "mess" (*contubernium*, *contubernālēs*), under the command of an under-officer (*decanus*).

The building of the camp began about noon and was finished in about three or four hours. Then the tents were put up and the evening meal was prepared and eaten. Guard-duty was performed in the day time by outposts (*excubiae*) in **138**
front of the gates, consisting of a cohort and a *turma* of horsemen; at night, by sentinels (*vigilēs*) divided into four watches (*vigiliae*), each relief standing for from three to four hours. The watchword (*tessera*) for the night was given by the general to the two tribunes on duty and the praefect of cavalry, who, through the *tesserāriī*, communicated it to the soldiers.

The permanent camp (*castra statīva*) was laid out much the same as the daily camp, but was more strongly fortified **139**
in all respects. The wall was solidly built and strengthened

by rectangular works (*castella*) placed at convenient intervals. In winter quarters (*castra hīberna*) wooden barracks covered with skins and straw took the place of tents, as a better protection to the occupants.

140 **The March.** At the first signal on the *tuba* the tents were struck and the baggage packed up; at the second, the wagons and pack animals were loaded; at the third, the army began to move. Usually the order of march was in column of cohorts, each legion followed by its baggage train; when in the presence of the enemy, the army either kept the column formation, or was formed in order of battle (*aciēs īnstrūcta*). In either case the baggage was brought together under guard. The march in order of battle could be successfully maintained for a short distance only and over favorable ground. When a flank attack was expected the army marched in a hollow square (*āgmen quadrātum*) with the baggage-train in the center.

The divisions of the army on the march were the van-
141 guard (*prīmum āgmen*,) the main body (*āgmen exercitus*, *āgmen legiōnum*), and the rear guard (*āgmen extrēmum* or *novissimum*). The van-guard, consisting of most of the cavalry and light-armed troops, enveloped the head of the main column. Scouts (*speculātōrēs*) or scouting parties (*explōrātōrēs*) scoured the country in search of the enemy, whom it was the duty of the van-guard to engage until the main body could come up. The work of selecting and staking out the site of the camp fell to the van-guard. The rear
142 guard was usually composed of cavalry, but in a dangerous region it was strengthened by several cohorts of legionaries. On occasions when Caesar doubted the reliability of his cavalry or needed it to protect the flanks, he kept it with the main body, light-armed foot taking its place in the van and rear. Each legion with its baggage, when marching in a

column forty feet wide (*āgmen centuriātim*), was about three-quarters of a mile in length.

The march began at sunrise and ended with the arrival at **143**
the new camping place about noon. The regular day's march (*iter iūstum*) was about seventeen miles. Under pressure a much longer distance could be covered. The step (*gradus*) was two and one-half Roman feet, the pace (*passus*) was two steps, from right heel to right heel. The ordinary march step was one hundred to the minute; the
quick step, one hundred and twenty. Rivers were usually **144**
crossed by fords, the soldiers wading streams up to the waist or even neck. When the water at the ford was deep and the current swift, a line of cavalry was stationed above to break the force of the current and a second one below to rescue men who were carried off their feet. Bridges were built only where fords were not available. They were built when needed, on boats or piles, with as much ease and rapidity as to-day.

The Battle. When in order of battle, each legion was
usually drawn up in three lines (*aciēs triplex*) of cohorts, **145**
four in the front line and three in each of the others, the cohorts in the second and third lines covering the spaces in the line before them. The intervals between the cohorts of each line equalled the width of a cohort (one hundred and twenty feet); but these were probably filled up, when the battle began, by the soldiers taking a double distance (six feet apart instead of three) so as to use their weapons more
freely. The lines were probably one hundred and fifty feet **146**
apart. This arrangement would make the width of a legion ten hundred and fifty feet and its depth four hundred and fifty feet. Each legion being thus arranged, the length of the whole front of the line of battle would depend upon the number of legions. The cavalry and auxiliary foot were

147 stationed on the wings or in the rear. It will be observed that the Roman battle-formation was one of separate bodies of convenient size, each of which acted as a unit, with enough space on all sides of it for free movement. When it was necessary to extend the front of the army, the cohorts were arranged in two lines (*aciēs duplex*).

148 The Romans, when possible, chose as a battle-ground a slope, where they could have the advantage of the onset. If the time permitted, the general made an address to each legion. He then rode to his position, usually on the right flank, and ordered the signal for the attack, with the *tuba*. When the foe was about two hundred and fifty paces off, the legions moved forward at a rapid walk over half the space
149 and then the first line of cohorts broke into a run. When within ten to twenty paces the first two ranks hurled their javelins and then drew their swords and came to close quarters. In case the enemy's line was not broken by the first volley of javelins, the other ranks advanced in turn and hurled their javelins before advancing to the hand-to-hand conflict, in which the Roman's skill as a duellist gave him a
150 great advantage. Comparatively few of the legionaries were either killed or wounded in battle. Shields as well as swords were used in attack and the soldiers sometimes leaped upon the enemies' shields and stabbed them from above. When tired out by their exertions, those in front would retire through the spaces in the ranks behind them, and fresh fighters would take their places. If the first line of cohorts
151 proved unequal to the task of defeating the foe, the second line was called in, and in stubborn contests even the third. Thus by a steady pressure and a succession of attacks the enemy's lines were finally broken. There was less of strategic movement of large masses on the battlefield than in modern warfare, the combatants standing up to their work at

close quarters until one or the other yielded to superior **152**
weight or skill. When the enemy broke and fled, they were pursued by the cavalry and slaughtered or captured. Ordinarily, no quarter was given, hence defeat was equivalent to annihilation. The victors suffered a comparatively small loss.

It is evident that the fighting strength of the Roman **153**
army lay in its heavy infantry. The cavalry was useful in reconnoitering, in pursuit and to a degree in attack upon the enemy's horsemen; in the latter case, however, it was often strengthened and steadied by light-armed foot placed between the *turmae*. The light infantry was available for skirmish work and the protection of the flanks of the army.

Taking of Walled Towns. Ancient towns were surrounded by walls, very high and thick, with facings of stone **154**
laid in courses, and a filling of rubble and earth. The walls of Gallic towns were sometimes strengthened by beams laid transversely in the masonry. Usually a wide and deep fosse, wet or dry, ran around the wall, and towers at regular intervals added to its strength.

The Romans had three methods of reducing fortified
towns: (1) by assault; (2) by blockade; and (3) by siege. **155**
In the first (*oppūgnātiō repentīna*) the soldiers filled up the ditch at the points chosen with hurdles (*crātēs*) and having crossed it planted scaling ladders (*scālae*) and mounted the walls. Others strove to batter down the walls or to break in the gates with the battering ram (*ariēs*). An artillery fire was kept up to drive the enemy from the battlements. Testudos were formed under cover of which bodies of troops approached the breaches in the walls.

If the strength of the fortifications made an assault **156**
impracticable, and the town was not well provisioned, the besiegers resorted to the blockade (*obsessiō*). Strong

redoubts (*castella*) were thrown up at commanding points and connected by a line of earthworks (*mūnītiōnēs*), the whole forming the *circumvāllātiō* and encircling the town.

157 The army was quartered in fortified camps which were so pitched as to make it easy to concentrate the troops rapidly at any point threatened with attack from the town. If there was danger of attack from the outside, a line of intrenchments (*contrāvāllātiō*) was run parallel to the first and facing the other way. When the supply of provisions within the town gave out, the garrison speedily surrendered.

158 When the town was strongly fortified and well provisioned, the attempt was made to reduce it by a regular siege (*oppūgnātiō*). As the artillery in use was not powerful enough to make breaches in the walls from a distance, provision must be made for reaching the walls and staying there long enough to break them down or surmount them. At the line of intrenchments a mound (*agger*) of timber-work and earth was begun and
159 extended toward the walls. Covered passages were made in this mound through which to convey the material used in building it. As the mound neared the walls, its height was increased by successive stories until the level of the parapet was attained. When the fosse was reached, material of all sorts was carried through the covered passages in the mound and thrown into it until it was filled up to the level of the top of the wall and mound.

160 The most of this work had to be done under fire, and the workmen were protected in various ways. The movable screens (*pluteī*), made of plaited willows for lightness and placed on rollers, warded off arrows and other light missiles. The movable sheds (*vīneae*), with roofs and sides of wicker-work or planks protected against fire by skins, were placed end to end, forming galleries through which the besiegers
161 passed to and from their work. Sheds (*mūsculī*), triangular

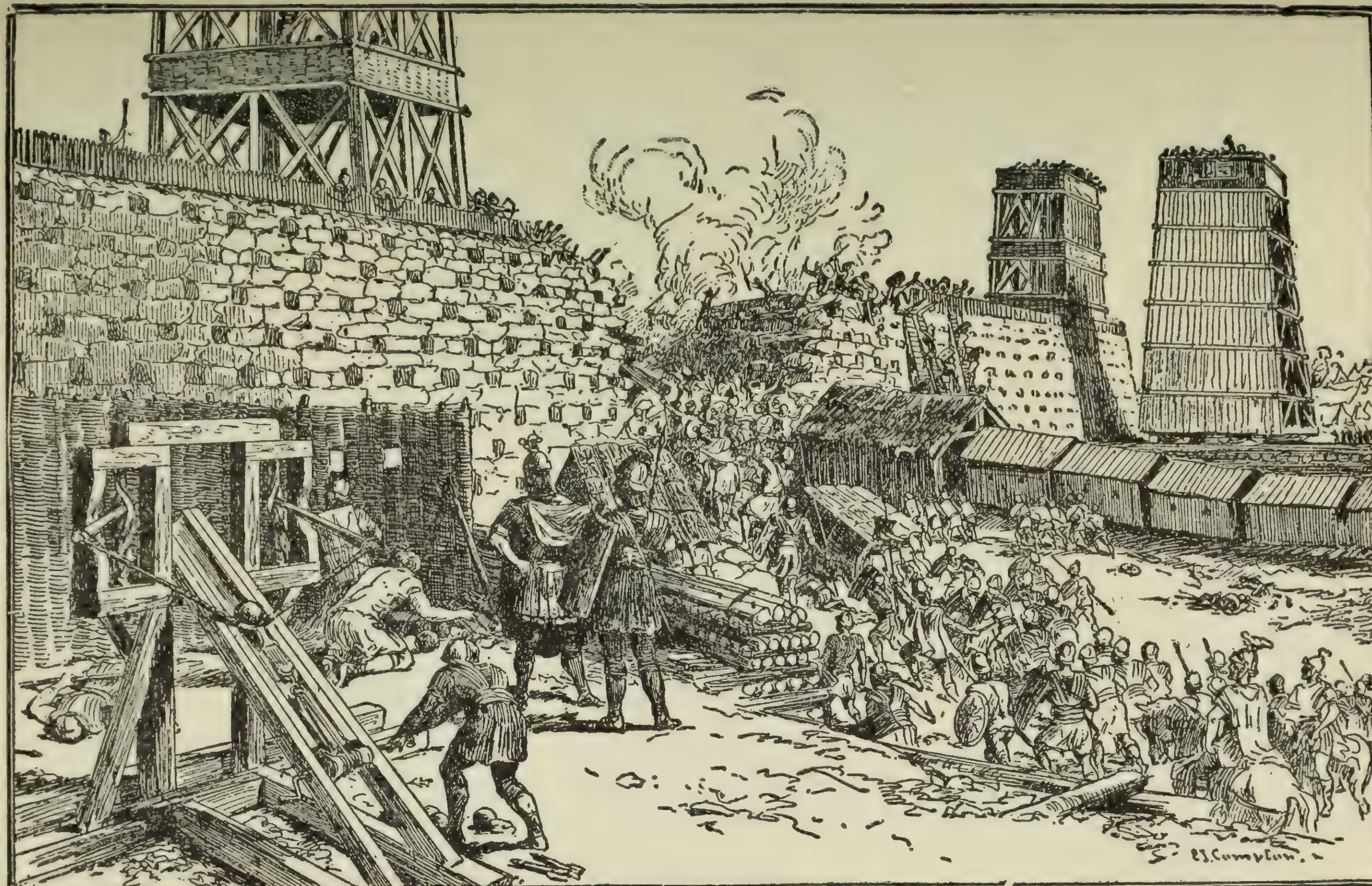
in shape and built very strong so as to resist heavy missiles, were used to protect those who were filling the fosse and undermining the walls. Lines of *pluteī* parallel to the walls protected the archers and slingers, who kept up a constant fire to prevent the besieged from interrupting the work. When the mound had been extended to the walls, the storming party might advance along it to the attack. Or, if a breach was to be made, movable towers (*turrēs mōbilēs*), often many stories (*tabulāta*) in height, were rolled along the
level top of the mound, which was not then made so high. **162**
In the lower story of the tower was hung the battering-ram, a beam from sixty to one hundred and eighty feet long, ending in a mass of metal in the shape of a ram's head. In the upper stories were stationed sharpshooters and pieces of
light artillery to drive the defenders from the wall. Some- **163**
times, when the ground was sufficiently level, the tower was rolled forward to the outer edge of the fosse, across which the ram was worked, while access was had to the top of the wall by means of a drawbridge. The ram was sometimes placed under a sort of covered derrick (*testūdō arietāria*).
The "wall-hooks" (*falcēs mūrālēs*), attached to long beams **164**
hung like the ram, were used to tear down the shattered walls. Various means were used by the besieged to defeat the efforts of the besiegers. Towers were erected on the walls opposite to the towers of the besiegers, or the walls themselves were built higher where the mound touched them. Firebrands were thrown against the woodwork of the
towers or mounds in the effort to destroy them. A sudden **165**
sally (*ēruptiō*) from the town was sometimes made for the same purpose. Countermines were run so as to intersect those of the enemy. Grappling hooks were let down by ropes to seize and divert the ram, or mats of wicker-work or sand-bags were suspended between it and the wall to break

the force of its blow. Boiling pitch, melted lead, burning arrows, beams and stones, were thrown upon the attacking troops.

166 When a breach had been made, a storming party protected by the "shield tortoise" mounted it under cover of a heavy artillery fire and tried to force its way through. If successful and no further obstacles were encountered, the town and its inhabitants lay at the mercy of the victors, who usually repaid the stubborn valor of the garrison with slaughter or slavery.

Engines of War. For their artillery the Romans were
167 largely indebted to the Greeks. There were two kinds, catapults (*catapultae*) and ballistas (*ballistae*), which were probably used by Caesar, although he employs only the general term *tormenta* in speaking of artillery. All these engines were called *tormenta* because their propulsive power was derived from the the recoil of some twisted substance,
168 such as rope or hair. The catapults were huge bows which shot horizontally or at a slight elevation large arrows, sharpened beams, fire-darts, etc., a distance of from five hundred to one thousand feet. The ballistas were larger than the catapults and hurled at an angle of forty-five degrees stones and other missiles, weighing as much as six hundred
169 pounds, a distance of from eight hundred to twelve hundred feet. On account of their bulk, these engines were commonly used in siege operations only; but light field-pieces (*scorpiōnēs*, hand-catapults, *carrō-ballistae*, ballistas mounted on wagons) were used in battle. The artillery was manned by the *fabrī*.

Navy. There were two kinds of vessels in the Roman
170 navy, war-ships and transports. The former were distinguished from the latter by their greater length (*nāvēs longae*), or by the addition of a beak used in battle as a ram



STORMING A CITY.



NAVAL SCENE.

(*nāvēs rōstrātae*). The prow (*prōra*) was gracefully curved, and ornamented with finely executed figure-heads; from it projected the beak (*rōstrum*). This was sometimes placed above, sometimes below the water-line. The tall stern (*puppis*) was adorned with a high fan-shaped ornament (*āplustre*), over which was displayed the ship's flag (*vēxillum*).

Each vessel had as a rule but one mast (*mālus*), one sail-yard **171**
(*antemna*), and one large, square sail (*vēlum*). Oars, however, were the main dependence for propelling vessels; they were arranged in tiers or banks from one up to six in number. The average-sized warship (*trirēmis*) had three. The handles of the oars in the upper banks were weighted so as to make them easier to use. The movements of the oars were regulated by a musical instrument, or by the taps of a gavel on a sounding-board. The
rowers (*rēmigēs*) were slaves. On going into action they **172**
were chained to the rowing benches, to prevent the possibility of their acting in concert with the enemy. The helmsman (*gubernātor*) guided the ship by means of two broad steering-paddles attached to the sides near the stern. The ship's anchors were made of iron and had one or two flukes. A certain class of vessels (*nāvēs tēctae*) had a complete deck; very commonly, however, only a fore deck and a hinder deck were found (*nāvēs apertae*).

For fighting purposes the warship was equipped with
grappling-hooks or cranes for seizing and lifting out of the **173**
water opposing vessels, movable bridges for the purpose of boarding them, wooden towers, tanks of oil, military engines, etc. These were placed on the fore deck. The fighting was
done by marines, who were armed like legionary soldiers. **174**
The commander of a fleet was called *praefectus classis*, and had the rank of a *lēgātus*. The admiral's ship (*navis*

praetōria) displayed as ensign the *vēxillum purpureum* by day and three lanterns by night.

175 The transports (*nāvēs onerāriae*) were about one-half as long as the war-ships, and had much greater breadth of beam.

Light, swift vessels used as despatch boats, etc., were called *nāvēs āctuāriae.* Boats used in scouting service were called *nāvēs speculātōriae.* They had sails and a single bank of oars.

The Romans did not devise anything noteworthy in naval affairs, but borrowed largely from their more inventive neighbors.

II. GALLIC.

Military Service. The Gallic army was composed of all
176 the citizens in the tribe. No one excepting the Druids was exempt from service, age itself being no excuse. The levy was accomplished by calling an assembly of the tribe. Prompt attendance was secured by the custom of putting to death the last man to arrive at the place of meeting.

Equipment. The Celts of the early time were depicted
177 as a large race, with bodies more fleshy than sinewy. Their dress consisted of close-fitting breeches (*braccae*), a tunic of various colors, a wooden cloak (*sagum*) worn like a Scotch plaid, and wooden-soled shoes. They were not so perfectly furnished with defensive armor as were the Romans. Coats of chain-mail and brazen helmets to which were attached horns symbolizing power, and figures in relief representing birds and animals, were worn by those who had
178 sufficient means. This armor they often threw away, and with a characteristic disregard of consequences, went into battle unprotected. The shield was about as tall as the Roman *scūtum*, but much narrower, while its brazen boss

was on the inside instead of the outside. Their offensive weapons were the sword (*spatha*), very long and heavy,
without a point, and made of hardened iron which often bent **179**
at the first blow; and pikes of different lengths with long and very broad heads. Thongs were used sometimes in hurling these. The slingers used for missiles hard clay pellets. Bracelets or armlets and collars of gold, elaborately worked, were a frequent addition to the soldier's equipment.

Organization and Tactics. But little is known of the
organization of a Gallic army. It is evident, however, from **180**
the great number of standards used in comparison with the size of the army, that the subdivisions into ranks and files was very minute. The Gauls had little knowledge of tactics, and aside from personal valor, had few resources to rely upon
for securing a victory. Their favorite method of attack was **181**
a furious onset, which usually gave them good fortune in a contest with a foe unused to it, but which was not so successful with the same foe in subsequent encounters. They relied upon the momentum of a rapidly-moving mass of soldiers to sweep away the hostile obstacle; but if this was not accom-
plished, the subsequent hand-to-hand conflict usually resulted **182**
in their discomfiture. Their losses in battle were heavy on account of the reckless daring and obstinacy with which they maintained their ground even after the contest was proved hopeless. They made no provision against possible defeat
by stationing reserves within supporting distance; hence a **183**
defeat meant the annihilation of their army as an organization and the complete crippling for the time of their means of resistance.

They had no idea of the importance of a proper provision
of supplies for the support of an army in the field. Their **184**
operations were therefore of necessity carried on in haste, and delay was fatal to the cohesion of their loosely organized

forces. An enemy who knew this could beguile them into hasty and foolish movements by working upon their impatience at inaction. This was what Ariovistus did in the
185 war with the Aedui (I, 40, 25-30). In the same way Sabinus overcame Viridovix (III, 17-19), and Caesar the Belgae at the Axona (II, 9-11). In siege operations also the Gauls were no match for the Romans. Their strongholds were often nothing but inclosures on sites difficult of access,
186 and were as a rule unoccupied, serving as places of refuge only in case of need. Ordinarily their camps were not fortified. In Aquitania alone, where the native troops were led by veterans who had served under Sertorius in Spain, Caesar's lieutenant found Gallic camps laid out and defended after the Roman fashion (III, 23, 12-14). Long contact
187 with their conquerors taught the Gauls lessons which they turned to good account at Gergovia, Avaricum and Alesia. Their unwearied activity in devising fresh means of defence is highly praised by their great conqueror in his "official report," which does full justice to the valor of an unfortunate people with whose cause its author could have no sympathy.

III. GERMAN.

Equipment. The Germans wore a short cloak (*sagulum*)
188 of fur or wool, which was fastened in front by a thorn or pin. No uniformity of equipment prevailed among them. Helmets and breastplates were used by some, but more went into battle without these or any other defensive weapons except a shield of metal or ox-hide. To lose the shield in battle was accounted the greatest possible dis-
189 grace. They used the sword, but relied chiefly upon the *framea*, a lance with a chisel-shaped iron head, which served equally well for hurling, thrusting, or slashing. War-clubs, bows and arrows were in use, and harpoons with which

the shield that had been pierced could be pulled out of the enemy's hands. The cavalry used shield and lance only.

Organization and Tactics. The organization of the army was very simple. Every freeman was a soldier and 190
had to obey without question a call to service. The members of the same clan kept together under their chief in the belief that the presence of their relations was a stimulus to valorous deeds. The followers of a chief were bound to faithful service until death. Desertion of his standard was 191
a lasting disgrace. To defend him and ascribe to him their own deeds of heroism were sacred duties. "The chiefs fought for victory, the retainers for the chief." The militia of a tribe was led by the best warrior, regardless of rank. When several tribes united their forces, their chiefs chose 192
a commander-in-chief. They advanced to the attack in the form of a solid wedge—a method that was very effective if the enemy broke, but which, in case of ill success in this particular, made further movements very difficult. An arrangement peculiarly effective was a combination of cavalry 193
and foot in a single troop; the latter attacked the enemy's horses and in case of retreat kept pace with the cavalry by clinging to the manes of their steeds. Caesar was so impressed with the value of this mixed troop that he introduced it into his own army toward the end of the Gallic war. The attack of the cavalry was directed against the front or 194
flank of the foe. They often alighted to fight and had their mean-looking steeds so well trained that they would remain standing in the place where they had been left until their masters mounted again. The presence of the women during the battle had a powerful effect upon the warriors. These spectators often fired the weakening ranks to heroic 195
deeds by their prayers and encouraging words, or themselves

gave the victorious foe a bloody reception with the wagons
196 as a bulwark. The Germans had too much confidence in their prowess on the field of battle and too much contempt for military order and system, to resort much to defensive warfare. Two or more concentric circles of wagons served for a protection against surprise when engaged in a campaign. Their fortifications were mere circles of earthworks
197 faced with stone, and they relied more upon sudden sallies than upon these defences. Their resources were entirely inadequate to the reduction of fortified places. In later times, however, they made themselves justly feared by storming the once invincible cities of the Empire. Even imperial Rome, from whose walls a Hannibal turned away baffled, succumbed to the prowess of the northern barbarians.



REFERENCES AND ABBREVIATIONS.

A.=Allen and Greenough's Latin Grammar.

B.=Bellum Helveticum.

G.=Gildersleeve's Latin Grammar (Revised ed. 1894).

H.=Harkness' Latin Grammar.

B.=Bennett's Latin Grammar.

Commas placed between the divisions of a reference to the grammar show that each division is to be studied. The omission of the commas indicates that reference is made only to the last division.

In the notes to the Commentaries references are made to books in Roman characters, to chapters in bold-faced Arabic, and to lines in ordinary Arabic numerals; thus, III, **2**, 11, refers to Bk. III, chapter **2**, line 11.

A figure (1, 2, or 4) after a verb shows the number of the conjugation and that the verb is regular according to the model verb of its conjugation given in the grammars.

abl.	*ablative.*
abs.	*absolute.*
acc.	*accusative.*
adj.	*adjective.*
adv.	*adverb.*
cap., chap.,	*caput* (chapter).
card.	*cardinal.*
cf.	*confer* (compare).
cl.	*clause.*
comp., compar.	*comparative.*
conj.	*conjunction.*
dat.	*dative.*
def.	*defective.*
dem.	*demonstrative.*
dep.	*deponent.*
dim.	*diminutive.*
distr.	*distributive.*
Eng.	*English.*
e. g.	*exemplī gratiā* (for example).
etc.	*et cetera* (and so forth, and the rest).
f., fem.	*feminine.*
ff.,	*the following.*
fig.	*figuratively.*
freq.	*frequentative.*
fr.	*from.*
gen.	*genitive.*
Gr.	*Greek.*
i. e.	*id est* (that is).
imp.	*imperative.*
impf.	*imperfect.*
indef.	*indefinite.*
ind., indic.	*indicative.*

inf., infin. . . *infinitive.*
interj. . . . *interjection.*
irr. . . . . . *irregular.*
l. . . . . . *line.*
lit. . . . . . *literally.*
m., masc. . . *masuline.*
n., neut. . . . *neuter.*
nom. . . . . *nominative.*
num. . . . . *numeral.*
ord. . . . . *ordinal.*
p., pp. . . . *page, pages.*
pt., part. . . *participle.*
pf., perf. . . *perfect.*
p. p., pf. pt. . *perfect participle.*
pass. . . . . *passive.*
pl., plur. . . *plural.*
plpf. . . . . *pluperfect.*
prep. . . . . *preposition.*
pr., pres. . . *present.*
pron. . . . . *pronoun.*
rel .. . . . . *relative.*
sc. . . . . . *scilicet* (understand, supply).
seq., sqq., . . *sequentia*(the following).
sing. . . . . *singular.*
subj. . . . . *subjunctive.*
sup., superl., . *superlative.*
voc. . . . . *vocative.*

* following definitions in page vocabularies indicates that the word is used five times or more in the first four books of the Gallic War.

1, 2, 3, 4 following definitions, that words are used that number of times.

BOOK I.—CAMPAIGNS AGAINST THE HELVETII AND ARIOVISTUS.

The Helvetii were a Celtic people living in the Alpine valleys east of Lake Lemannus. Hemmed in by the mountains, they had retained without loss their strength and independence. They were hostile to the Romans, and had joined the Cimbri and Teutones, their natural enemies, in the invasion of Gaul and Italy. Defeated with the latter at Aix (102 B. C.) by the great Marius, they had remained quiet for a long time; but the present condition of Gaul, torn by factional strife, roused their ambition. Dissatisfied with the contracted stage of action to which they were confined by mountain barriers, they determined to seek a wider one far to the west, on the shores of the Atlantic. With admirable self-control, they delayed their departure until all the necessary preparations were made, and then with bold resolution burned their homes behind them.

Rome justly viewed the intended movement with apprehension. She had fought for the foothold that she had in Gaul, and was very sensitive to anything that threatened its permanance. Caesar clearly saw the danger to her interests, and as clearly, no doubt, the opportunities for gaining military renown, and determined to oppose the Helvetii. He appeared in the vicinity of Geneva at the time when they were gathering on the banks of the Rhone, and destroyed the bridge over that river, which they had unaccountably failed to secure. Curbing their impatience at the delay, they sought his permission to traverse that portion of the Roman Province lying between the Alps and the Rhone, through which lay the more feasible of the routes open to them. After an intentional delay utilized in manning hastily improvised defences along the Rhone, Caesar returned a refusal, and easily foiled their attempt to force a passage of the stream.

The baffled Helvetii now obtained permission of the Sequani to pass to the west through their territory. Across this the current of migration flowed smoothly enough until the Aedui were reached; they resisted it and were overwhelmed. In this extremity they appealed to Caesar, who was not loth to become the champion of Gallic freedom. With his army largely increased by legions hurried across the Alps from Cisalpine Gaul, he assumed the offensive, and overtook the Helvetii at the crossing of the Arar, where he destroyed one of their four tribes. For fifteen days he followed the rest, but on account of the nature of the country was unable to head off the slowly moving mass. Finally, the lack of provisions compelled him to turn aside to Bibracte. Conceiving this action to be due to cowardice, the Helvetii in turn became the pursuers, thus allowing Caesar to meet them on ground of his own choosing. After a severe battle, he defeated them with immense loss. A few escaped by night, but were brought back and "treated as enemies" and the remnant of the once proud and mighty host sadly returned to its mountain home.

Such a signal victory at once gave prestige to the Roman arms. All Gaul threw itself at Caesar's feet, and begged his aid against the German, Ariovistus. He saw the importance to Rome of making head against this menace to Gallic independence, and did not refuse the task. He first proposed to Ariovistus to settle the matter amicably, but met with a haughty refusal. Determined to bring the German king to terms before he was joined by other tribes, Caesar marched against him with all speed. While halting at Vesontio (*Besancon*), a panic caused by the current stories regarding the terrible aspect of the Germans seized his soldiers. Caesar allayed this by a speech full of tact, rousing his troops to a high pitch of enthusiasm; he then led them against the foe.

Ariovistus, struck with Caesar's determination and celerity, in turn proposed a conference, and they met on a hillock in view of both armies. Ariovistus replied boastfully to the demands of Caesar and the interview was broken up by an attack of the German guard. Another meeting was sought by the king, but Caesar refused to attend, sending, however, two representatives. They were thrown into chains, and the negotiations were thus finally broken off.

On the following day the king executed a flank movement which placed him in Caesar's rear. After five days Caesar resorted to the bold expedient of flanking in his turn and building a small camp in the rear of the enemy's position, thus re-establishing his communications, but dividing his already inferior force. Ariovistus could not resist the temptation to attack the smaller camp. After a severe struggle he was repulsed. Caesar seized the moment of exultation to order a general advance. The king was thus forced to fight, and ranged his troops in battle array in front of his baggage. Caesar in person led on his right wing, which was successful; his left, on the contrary, was beaten back. At this juncture, Publius Crassus brought forward the reserves and decided the contest. The Germans broke and fled to the Rhine, five miles away, so closely pursued that only a few, including, however, the king, escaped to the other bank.

In this single season's campaigning, important results were achieved. The Rhine for the first time became the frontier of the empire: tbe tide of barbarian invasion was rolled back for five hundred years; the destiny of Gaul as a future dependency of Rome was fixed; and the Roman's traditional fear of Gaul and German was dispelled.

REFERENCES FOR READING.

PLUTARCH: Caesar.
FROUDE: Caesar: A sketch, chap. xiv. pp. 170–188.
TROLLOPE: Caesar's Commentaries, chap. ii. (Ancient Classic Series)
MOMMSEN: History of Rome, vol. iv. pp, 288–299.
MERIVALE: History of the Romans, vol. i. pp. 238–262.
NAPOLEON: Julius Caesar, vol. ii. pp. 49–10 5.

C. IULII CAESARIS
DE BELLO GALLICO

COMMENTARIUS PRIMUS.

B. C. 58

1. Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum

1. **Gallia, -ae** [**Gallius, -a, -um,** Gallic], F., Gaul, *the country of the Galli, including France, Belgium, Netherlands, Switzerland, Italy north of the Po, and the Rhine provinces of Germany.* *
sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *n.*, be, exist, live; happen; serve for; stay, remain. *
omnis, -e, all, every, the whole of. *
dī-vidō, -ere, vīsī, vīsus [dis-, apart], *a.*, divide, sunder, separate; *in p. p. as adj.*, divided. *
in, *prep. with acc. and abl.*, (*a*) *with acc.* (*of motion*), into, to, among. in, towards, against; (*of time*) up to, till, for; on, about; *with abl.*, (*of space*) in, upon, among, over, at, within; (*of time*) in, during, at, in the course of; on, upon, in the case of. *
pars, partis, F., part, piece, portion, share; party, faction; direction, side; place, district. *
trēs, tria, *gen.* **trium,** *card. num.*, three. *
quī, quae, quod, *rel. pro.*, who, which, what, that: *often implying an antecedent*, he who *or* those who. *
ūnus, ūna, ūnum, *gen.* **ūnīus,** *card. num.*, one; same, single, only, sole, alone, one. *
2. **in-colō, -ere, coluī,** [**colō,** cultivate], *a. and n.*, inhabit, live, dwell in. *
Belgae, -ārum, M., the Belgae *or* Belgians, *a nation of mixed German and Celtic origin, inhabiting northern Gaul.* *
alius, -a, -ud, *gen.* **alīus,** another, other; *alius . . . alius*, one . . . another; *in pl.* some . . . others. *
Aquitānus, -a, -um, of Aquitania, Aquitanian; *in pl. as subst.*, the Aquitani *or* Aquitanians, *inhabiting south-western Gaul.* *
tertius, -a, -um, [**ter,** thrice] *ord. num.*, third. *
ipse, ipsa, ipsum, *gen.*, **ipsīus,** self (*as opp. to some one else*); himself, herself, etc.; he, she, it etc. (*emphatic*); *as adj.*, very, (his, her, their) own. *

---

1. **Gallia.** *Gallia Transalpīna*, exclusive of the Roman Province. See Int. 67–69. **omnis:** *as a whole* in distinction from the land of the Celts (*tertiam*, sc. *partem*, line 2) which also was called *Gallia.* **dīvīsa:** the perfect participle is here used as a predicate adjective after **est. quārum ūnam,** *one of these* (parts). For the Genitive see A. 216, *a*, 2; B. 56; G. 370; H. 397, 2; *B.* 201, 1.

2. **quī,** *those who.* The antecedent (here *iī*) is often omitted if indefinite or easily supplied from the context.

linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona et Sē-

Description of the divisions and inhabitants of Gaul.

3. **lingua, -ae,** F., tongue; dialect, language. 2

Celtae, -ārum, M., the Celts, *a branch of the Indo-European family of nations including the French, the Welsh, the Irish, the Gaels, and the people of Brittany. In Roman writers, the inhabitants of Central Gaul.* 1

noster, -tra, -trum [nōs], our, ours, our own; *in pl. as subst.*, our men, our troops. *

Gallus, -a, -um, of Gaul, Gallic; *in pl. as subst.*, the Gauls, *inhabiting Central Gaul, Northern Italy, etc.* *

ap(ad)-pellō, 1. [pello, drive], *a.n.* drive *or* go to *to accost*; accost, address, call by name, name, call. *

hīc, haec, hōc, *gen.* **hūius,** *dem. pron., used for what is near in space, time, or thought*, this, this man (woman *or* thing); *in pl.*, these, they, etc.; *used of what precedes with more emphasis than* **is.** **hīc . . . ille,** the one . . . the other; the latter (*as nearer*) . . . the former (*as more remote*). *

4. **īnstitūtum, -ī** [īnstituō, set up, establish], N., a fixed course, principle *or* arrangement; habit, institution, custom. *

lēx, lēgis, F., law, statute, enactment. *

inter, *prep. with acc.*, between, amid, among; *in reciprocal relation*, with, by, from. *

suī, sibi, sē *or* **sēsē,** *reflex pron. of 3d person*, himself, herself, itself, themselves; *as subj. acc. of infin.*, he, she, they, etc. *

dif-ferō, ferre, distulī, dīlātus, [dis-, apart], *a. and n.*, bear apart, disperse, spread; defer, distract; be different, differ. *

ā (*before consonants*), **ab** (*before a vowel or a consonant*), **ābs** (with *tē* and *-que*) *prep. with abl.*, from away from, at, by, on, on the side of. *

5. **Garumna, -ae,** M., the Garonne, *a river forming the boundary between Aquitania and Celtic Gaul.* 3

flūmen, -inis [fluō, flow], N., a flowing; river, stream. *

Matrona, -ae, M., the Marne, *a tributary of the Seine.* 1

et, and, and further, also, too, even; *et . . . et*, both . . . and. *

Sēquana, -ae, M., the Seine. *

3,4. **Celtae, Gallī:** these terms were first applied to this people by the Greeks and afterwards adopted by the Romans. For the case, see A. 183, 185, 239 1 *a*, N. 2; B. 50; G. 205, 206; H. 362, 2, 2; *B.* 168, 2, *b*). **linguā:** the Gauls spoke the pure Celtic language; the Belgians used a dialect of the Celtic, probably mixed with German; the Aquitanians spoke Basque, which is still used in the western Pyrenees. **linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus,** *in language, etc.* What idea is denoted by this Ablative? With what parts of speech is it employed? A. 253; B. 95; G. 397; H. 424; *B.* 226.

4. **inter sē,** *from one another*: the reciprocal idea for the third person is often expressed by *inter sē.*

5. **Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit:** these two rivers constituted one boundary and the verb is therefore in the singular.

quana dīvidit. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, propterea quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant atque ea, quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent, important,

6. **fortis, -e,** strong, valiant, brave. *
7. **propter-eā,** *conj.*, on this account, therefore. *
quod, *conj.* [*adv. acc. of the neuter of* **quī**], as to which, in that, that, because. *
cultus, -ūs [**colō**] M., cultivation; training, culture, dress; civilization. *
atque, (**āc** *only before cons.*) [**ad** + **-que**], *adds something important while* **et** *associates objects of equal importance*, and also, and even, and; *after words denoting a comparison*, with, as; *after words of difference*, than, from. *
hūmānitās, -tātis [**hūmānus,** human], M., humanity, courteousness, refinement. 2
prōvincia, -ae [**prō-vincō,** extend by conquest], F., charge *or* administration *of a province*; province. *
longē [**longus**], *adv.*, far, far away, absent, distant. *
8. **ab-sum, esse, āfuī, āfutūrus,** *n.*, be away from, be absent *or* distant, be wanting *or* free from. *
minimē [**minimus**], *superl adv.*, least, very little; by no means, not at all. *
-que, (*always affixed to the word or some part of the expression it connects*), and. *
ad, *prep with acc.*, to, towards, against; among, near, at, about (*with numerals*); at, till (*of time*). *
is, ea, id, *gen.* **ēius,** *weak dem. pron. referring to some person or object named in the context*, this, that; he, she, it, they, etc.; **is ut,** such as; *with comparatives* **eō** (*abl.*,) the, all the; **eō magis,** all the more; **eō** (*abl. as adv.*), on this account, therefore; **eā** (sc. *viā*) in that way (*only* V, **51**, 9). *
mercātor, -ōris [**mercor,** trade], M., merchant, trader. *
saepe, often, frequently; many times; *minimē saepe*, very rarely.
commeō, 1. [**meō, go**] *n.*, go, resort; with **ad,** resort to, visit. *
9. **ef-fēminō, 1.** [**fēmina,** woman], *a.*, make effeminate, enervate, enfeeble. 2
animus, -ī, M., soul, spirit; mind, intellect; feelings, character; resolution, courage. *
per-tineō, 2. [**teneō,** hold], *n.*, hold *or* reach to, extend; pertain, have reference to, tend. *
im-portō, 1. [**portō,** carry], *a.*, carry *or* bring in, import. 4

---

6. **hōrum:** for the Gen. see A. 216, *a*, 2; B. 56; G. 372; H. 397, 3; *B.* 201, 1. How does this differ from *quārum* **1**, I?

7. **prōvinciae:** the *Prōvincia Rōmāna*, in the southeast part of *Gallia omnis*. See Int. 62, 65, 66.

8. **minimē...saepe commeant,** *by no means frequently* (*very seldom*) *resort.* The expression of strong affirmation by denying the contrary is called *Litotes.* **mercātōrēs:** Massilia, founded by the Greeks about 600 B. C., was the commercial center of Gaul. Her traders penetrated the interior, following the lines of water communication, which did not reach the Belgians. They sold strong wine, of which the Gauls were very fond, and horses from Italy. They did much to Romanize southern Gaul.

9. **effēminandōs:** the Gerundive is most conveniently translated as governing the noun (here *animōs*) with which it (as a verbal ad-

proximīque sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut

10. proximus, -a, -um [*superl. fr.* **proprior**, nearer], nearest, next to, next; last. *

Germānus -ī, [Celtic *Gairmean*, one who shouts the war cry, or *wehr-mann*, war-man, warrior], M., a German; *in pl.* the Germans; *Germānus, -a, -um*, German. *

trāns, *prep. with acc.*, across, beyond, over. *With geographical expressions to be translated* east of, west of, etc., *according to the context.*

Rhēnus, -ī, M., the Rhine, *forming the boundary between Gallia and Germānia.* *

cum, *prep. with abl.*, with, along with, together with. *

11. continenter [**continēns**], *adv.*, continuously, without interruption, continually. *

bellum, -ī, N., warfare, war. *

gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus, *a.*, bear, carry, wield; (*of war*) carry on, perform, wage, conduct. *

dē, *prep. with abl.*, down from, from; of, out of; concerning, for, with respect to; on account of, about, in regard to. *

causa, -ae, F., cause, reason, grounds, motive; *in abl. after a gen.*, for the sake of; **causam dīcere,** to plead a case. *

Helvētiī, -ōrum, M., the Helvetians, *a Celtic tribe between Mt. Jura, Lake Leman, the Rhone and Rhine.**

12. quoque, *adv. following the word emphasized*, also, too, even.*

reliquus, -a, -um [**relinquō,** leave], left, remaining, the rest, the rest of; **reliquum, -ī,** N., remainder, residue, rest. *

virtūs, -ūtis [**vir,** man], F., manliness, valor, merit, worth; *pl.* good qualities, virtues. *

prae-cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus, [**cēdō,** go], *a.*, go before; precede, surpass, excel. *

ferē, *adv.*, almost, nearly, about, for the most part. *

cotīdiānus, -a, um, *adj.*, every day, daily; usual, customary. *

13. proelium, -ī, N., battle, contest, engagement. *

con-tendō, -ere, tendī, tentus [**tendō,** stretch], *n.*, push forward, hasten; strive, contend, fight. *

cum, *conj.*, *with indic., simply defining the time when*, when, while, whenever; *with subj., showing the situation in which the event occurred*, when; *with subj., showing the situation as tending to cause the event*, since, because; *with subj., showing the situation as tending to prevention*, though, although. *

aut, *conj.*, *used where the difference is important, or exclusive*, or; *aut . . . aut*, either . . . or.

---

jective) agrees. What is the Gerundive in form and how is it employed? A. 296; B. 126; G. 427; H. 543, 544, 1; *B.* 339, 1.

10. proximī Germānīs, *next to the Germans.* For the case see A. 234, *a*; B. 63; G. 359; H. 391, I; *B.* 192. **trāns Rhēnum,** i. e. on the east bank, though scattered tribes were permanently settled west of the river.

11. quā dē causā, *and for this reason.* The Relative is used to connect co-ordinate clauses more frequently in Latin than in English. When it thus connects independent sentences, it should be rendered by a conjunction with a demonstrative. **Helvētiī:** a Celtic tribe whose territorial limits coincide in general with those of Switzerland.

12. virtūte, *in valor;* for con-

suīs fīnibus eōs prohibent, aut ipsī in eōrum fīnibus bellum gerunt. Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, fīnibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentriōnēs. Belgae

14. suus, -a, -um [**suī**, himself, herself, etc.], *reflex. pron. adj. referring to subject*, of *or* belonging to himself, herself, etc., his own, etc., their own; his, hers, its, theirs: *in neut. as subst.*, one's property; **suī**, their men (friends *or* countrymen). *

fīnis, -is [*cf.* **findō**, divide], M., boundary, limit, border; *in pl.*, boundaries, territory, country. *

pro-hibeō, 2. [**habeō**], *a.*, have, hold, *or* keep from *or* forth; restrain; keep, prevent. *

15. obtineō, -ēre, -uī, tentus [**teneō**, hold], *a.*, hold (*against the claim of another*), retain, obtain, possess; maintain, have control of. *

dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus, *a.*, say, tell, speak, name, mention, express. *

initium, -ī [**in-eō**, go into], N., beginning, commencement, origin. *

16. capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus, *a.*, take, capture, seize; take up; obtain. *

Rhodanus -ī M., *a Gallic river, now* the Rhone. *

contineō, -ēre, -uī, tentus [**teneō**], *a.*, hold together; hold in check, restrain; enclose, contain, bound. *

17. ōceanus, -ī, M., the great *or* outer sea, the ocean: *used once as adj. with* **mare**. *

at(ad)tingō, -ere, tigī, tāctus [**tangō**, touch], *a.*, touch *or* border on, reach, extend to, arrive at, attain. *

etiam [**et + iam**], *conj.*, and also, even also. *

Sēquanī, -ōrum, M., *a Gallic tribe between the Saone and the Jura.* *

18. vergō, -ere, *a.*, *n.*, look *or* lie towards, incline, slope. 4

septentriōnēs, -um, [**triōnēs**, ploughing oxen], (*the constellations of the Great Bear and Little Bear were compared to a wagon with oxen*), M., *the stars of the Great Bear, hence* the North: *in sing.* **Septentriō -ōnis**, M., the North (*once*). *

---

struction cf. *linguā etc.* ll. 3, 4.

14. suīs, *their own*. To what do the forms of *suus* and the reflexive *sē* regularly refer? A. 196; G. 309; H. 449; *B.* 244. **fīnibus**: For the case see A. 243, *a*; B. 83; G. 390; H. 414; *B.* 214, 2. **eōs, ipsī**: Who are meant?

15. eōrum ūna pars, *one part of these* (*their territory*); **eōrum** is a Partitive Genitive limiting *pars* (the people, where we put the country). **obtinēre**: has *quam* as a direct object, and with its subject acc. *Gallōs* is the subject of the impersonal verb *dictum est*. For the infinitive with subject accusative as subject, see A. 330; B. 80; G. 535; H. 538; *B.* 330. **initium capit ā**, *begins at.*

16, 17. flūmine, Oceanō, fīnibus: The omission of conjunctions is called Asyndeton; cf **linguā . . . lēgibus** l. 3.

18. vergit ad septentriōnēs: notice on the map the general course of the rivers.

ab extrēmīs Galliae fīnibus oriuntur; pertinent ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī; spectant in septentriōnem et orientem sōlem. Aquitānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pȳrēnaeōs mōntēs et eam partem Ōceanī, quae est ad Hispāniam, pertinet; spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septentriōnēs.

Orgetorix persuades the Helvetians to invade Gaul.

2. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorīx. Is, M. Messālā et M. Pīsōne cōn-

19. **extrēmus, -a, -um,** [*superl. of* **exter,** outer], outermost, utmost, farthest, extreme. *

orior, orīrī, ortus, *n.*, arise, begin, spring up, rise: **oriēns sōl,** the rising sun, the east. *

īnferus, -a, -um, low, below, underneath: *comp.* **īnferior,** lower, inferior: *sup.* **īnfimus** *or* **īmus,** lowest, last, at the foot *or* bottom. *

20. **spectō,** 1. *a.*, look at, behold; look, face, lie. *

21. **sōl, sōlis,** M., the sun. *

Aquitānia, -ae, F., Aquitania; *Southwestern Gaul between the Garonne and Pyrenees.* *

Pȳrēnaeus, -a, -um, belonging to the Pyrenees, Pyrenean: **mōntēs,** the Pyrenees mountains. 1

22. **mōns, mōntis,** M., mountain; mountain range. *

Hispānia, -ae, F., Spain, *the country of the Hispani, including the whole peninsula.* *

23. **occāsus, -ūs,** [**oc-cidō,** fall down, set], M., falling *or* going down, setting: *with sōlis,* sunset, the west. *

1. **apud,** *prep. with acc.*, at, among, near, with; (*with persons*) at the house of, in the presence of. *

nōbilis, -e, [**nōscō,** know], well known, famous, noted. *

dītissimus, -a, -um (*superl. of* **dīves,** *not used by Caesar*), very rich, richest. 1

2. **Orgetorīx, -īgis,** M., *a chief of the Helvetii.* *

M., abbreviation for *Marcus.* *

Messsāla, -ae, M., *a Roman family name,* Marcus Valerius Messala, *consul 61, B. C.* 2

Pīsō, -ōnis, M., *a Roman family name,* Marcus Papius Piso Calpurnianus, *consul with Messala, 61, B. C.* *

---

19. **extrēmīs fīnibus:** i. e. those farthest from the *Prōvincia Rōmāna.* **Galliae:** The land of the Celts, not *Gallia omnis.* **īnferiōrem,** *lower,* or near the mouth.

20. **in . . . sōlem:** the Sambre, Scheldt and other Belgian streams flow Northeast.

22. **ad,** *near, bordering upon.*

2. **M. Messālā . . . cōnsulibus,** *in the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso* (*when Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso were consuls*). This was in the year 61 B. C., three years before Caesar came to Gaul. For the political situation in Gaul at this time see Int. 79–81. **M. Messala M. Pīsōne:** For the Abl. see A. 255, *a*; B. 98; G. 409; H. 431, 4; *B.* 227, 1, 2, *a*.

sulibus, rēgnī cupiditāte inductus coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit et cīvitātī persuāsit, ut de fīnibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent: perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus

cōnsul, -ulis [*cf. cōn-sedeō, cōnsilium*], M., a consul, *one of the two chief magistrates elected annually by the Roman people.* *

3. **rēgnum, -ī** [**rēx**, king], N., kingly *or* royal authority, royal power; sovereignty; kingdom. *

cupiditās, -tātis [**cupidus**], F., eagerness, desire, greed, avarice. *

in-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus [**dūcō**, lead], *a.*, lead *or* draw on; induce, influence, instigate. 4.

con-iūrātiō, -ōnis [**iūrō**, take an oath], F., swearing together, plot, conspiracy; secret league.

nōbilitās, -tātis [**nōbilis**], F., celebrity; noble birth, nobility; the nobility, the nobles. *

4. **faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus**, *a., and n.*, make, do, accomplish, effect, form: *pass.* **fīō, fierī, factus sum: certiōrem facere**, to inform: **iter facere**, to march. *

cīvitās, -tātis [**cīvis**, citizen], F., citizenship; the citizens (*as forming a community*), state, city, nation, commonwealth. *

per-suādeō, -ēre, suāsī, suāsus [**suādeō**, advise], *a., n.*, advise prevailingly; convince, persuade. *

ut (**utī**), *conj. with subj.*, that, in order that, to; that, so that, so as to; though, although; *after words of fearing*, that not: *with indic. as adv.*, as, as though, how. *

5. **cōpia, -ae** [**cum+ops**, power], F., supply, plenty, abundance; *in pl.*, resources, forces, troops. *

ex-eō, īre, īvī (**iī**), **itus** [**eō**, go], *n.*, go from *or* out, depart from, leave. *

per-facilis, -e [**facilis**, easy], very easy. 3.

---

3. **nōbilitātis** (=*nōbilium*), *the nobles*, the abstract being used for the concrete.

4. **cīvitātī persuāsit**, *he persuaded the citizens:* for case see A. 227; B. 61; G. 346; H. 385, II; *B.* 187, II. **cīvitātī**=*cīvibus*, cf *nōbilitātis*, l. 3. For the political organization of the Gauls see Int. 68, 69, and Mommsen IV, pp. 270, 271. **ut . . . exīrent**, *to leave their country*, a substantive clause of purpose, the direct object of *persuāsit*. A. 331; G. 546; H. 498; *B.* 294, 295. **cōpiīs**: including women and children. This movement (*ut... exīrent*), was possibly suggested by their former connection with the Cimbri and Teutones.

5. **cum . . . praestārent**, *since they surpassed all in valor.* This claim seems to have been well founded: see **1**, 11, 12, *Helvētiī*, sqq. **omnibus**: For case see A. 228; B. 62; G. 347; H. 386; *B.* 187, III. **perfacile esse** *etc.*, (*saying*) *that it was very easy to get control of the government* (lit. *to get control . . . was very easy*): indirect discourse with the verb of saying implied in *persuāsit*. In direct discourse the words would stand; *perfacile est, cum virtūte omnibus praestētis.*

praestārent, tōtīus Galliae imperiō potīrī. Id hōc facilius eīs persuāsit, quod undique locī nātūrā Helvētiī continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit, alterā ex parte mōnte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs, tertiā

6. **prae-stō, stāre, stitī, stātūrus (stitus)** [**stō**, stand], *a.*, *n.*, stand *or* place before, show, supply, furnish; be superior *or* pre-eminent, excel, surpass. *Impers.* **praestat,** it is better. *

tōtus, -a, -um, *gen.* **tōtīus,** *dat.* **tōtī,** the whole, the whole of, entire, all. *

imperium, -ī, [**imperō**, command], N., command, order; authority, sway; supreme power, dominion, sovereignty; supreme military command, highest official power. *

potior, -īrī, -ītus sum [**potis,** powerful], *a.*, become master of, get control *or* possession of; obtain, possess. *

facile [**facilis,** easy], *adv.*, easily, readily. *Comparative,* **facilius,** *superl.*, **facillimē.** *

7. **undique,** *adv.*, from all parts, on all sides.

locus, -ī, M., *and plural* **loca, -ōrum,** N., place, position, locality. *

nātūra, -ae [**nātus,** birth], F., nature, constitution, character. *

8. **ē** (*only before consonants*) **ex** (*before vowels and consonants*), *prep. with abl.* out, out of, from: **ex itinere,** on the march; **ūnā ex parte,** on one side. *

lātus, -a, -um, broad, wide, extensive. *

altus, -a, -um [*p. p. of* **alō,** nourish, promote], high, lofty; deep: *neut. as subst.*, the deep, the sea. *

9. **ager, agrī,** M., field; territory, district; land, ground. *

alter, -era, -erum (*gen.* **alterius,** *dat.* **alterī**), the other (*of two*); second; the one; **alter...alter,** the one...the other; **alterī... alterī,** the one party...the other. *

10. **Iūra, -ae,** M., the Jura, *a mountain range from the Rhine to the Rhone.* 3.

11. **lacus, -ūs,** M., a lake. 3.

---

6. **imperiō:** For the case see A. 249; B. 91; G. 407; H. 421, I; *B.* 218, 1. **potīrī:** For the mood cf. *obtinēre* **1, 15. id . . . persuāsit,** *he persuaded them* (to follow) *this* (course) (i. e., *ut exīrent*), *the more easily.* When *persuādēre* is thus used with a direct object (here *id*) and an indirect object (*iīs*), the former is either a pronoun or a substantive clause of purpose, (as *ut . . . exīrent*, ll. 4 5, above).

7. **locī nātūrā:** see the map for the following details. **continentur,** *shut in.*

8. **ūnā ex parte,** *on one side*, the northeast and east. Note the position of the monosyllabic preposition in reference to the noun and its adjective, and cf. *quā dē causā,* **1, 11. lātissimō:** *very broad:* at Basle, 750 ft. The swift current, in the stretch from the Lake of Constance to Basle, would be a great obstacle to an easy crossing.

9. **alterā** etc., *on a second side.*

10. **Sēquanōs:** A powerful tribe living between the Arar and the Rhone. It headed the patriotic party in Gaul. See Int. 79. **tertiā** sc. *ex parte* and cf. rendering of *alterā.* A fourth boundary, not mentioned here, was formed by the Alps.

lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dīvidit. Hīs rēbus fīēbat, ūt et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile fīnitimīs bellum īnferre possent; quā ex parte hominēs bellandī cupidī māgnō dolōre afficiē-

Lemannus, -ī (*with or without* **lacus**), M., Lake Leman, Lake Geneva. 3.

12. **rēs, reī,** F., thing, object, matter, event, affair, occurrence, circumstance: **rēs familiāris,** property; **rēs frūmentāria,** supplies; **rēs mīlitāris,** warfare; **novae rēs,** revolution; **rēs pūblica,** the state, the public interests. *

fīō, fierī, factus sum (*pass. of* **faciō**), be made *or* done; come to pass, result, happen. *

minus, *adv.*, [**minor,** less], less. *

lātē [**lātus,** wide], *adv.*, widely, extensively. *

13. **vagor,** 1. [**vagus,** roaming], *n.*, roam about, rove, wander. *

fīnitimus, -a, -um [**fīnis,** limit, border], bordering on, adjoining, neighboring; *in pl. as subst.*, neighbors. *

īn-ferō, ferre, intulī, illātus [**ferō,** bear], *a.*, bear, bring, *or* make upon, inflict; **sīgna īnferre,** to advance the standards, to attack. *

possum, posse, potuī [**potis,** able, +**sum**], *n.*, be able, can; to have power *or* influence; **plūrimum posse,** to be very powerful. *

14. **homō, -inis** [*cf.* **humus,** earth], M., human being, man; *in pl.*, mankind, humanity, men. *

bellō, 1. [**bellum,** war], *n.*, make *or* carry on war, wage war. 4.

cupidus, -a, -um [**cupiō,** desire], desirous, eager, zealous, fond. *

māgnus, -a, -um (*comp.*, **māior,** *superl.*, **māximus**), great (*in size, quantity,* or *degree*), large; abundant, much; important, extensive; **māgnī** (*gen. sing. neut.*), of great importance; **māgnīs itineribus,** by forced marches. *

dolor, -ōris [**doleō,** grieve], M., grief, distress, pain (*physical or mental*); vexation, annoyance. *

af (ad-) -ficiō, -ere, fēcī, fectus [**faciō**], *a.*, do to, treat, affect; **māgnō dolōre afficere,** to annoy greatly. *

---

11. **prōvinciam:** see on **1,** 7.

12. **hīs rēbus,** *for this reason* (*because of these things*). For the case see A. 245; B. 85; G. 408; H. 416; *B.* 219. **fīēbat:** The subject of verbs used impersonally is frequently a clause (here *ut . . . possent,* a substantive clause of result). **minus,** *less* (than they desired).

13. **fīnitimīs:** esp. the Germans. See **1,** 12, 13.

14. **quā ex parte,** *and on this ground:* cf. *quā dē causā,* **1,** 11. **hominēs** etc., *as they were men who were . . . they were much dissatisfied.* **bellandī cupidī** *fond of making war.* **bellandī:** What is the Gerund? A. 295; B. 125; G. 425; H. 541; *B.* 338. For its case here see A. 218, *a*; B. 55; G. 374; H. 399, I, 1; *B.* 204, 1.

bantur. Prō multitūdine autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitūdinis angustōs sē fīnīs habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longitūdinem mīlia passuum CCXL, in lātitūdinem CLXXX patēbant.

Preparations of the Helvetians.

3. Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī cōnstituērunt ea, quae ad proficīscendum

15. prō, *prep. with abl.* [*cf.* **prae**], before, in front of; for, in behalf of; on account of, in consideration of, in proportion to. *
multitūdō, -inis [**multus**], F., a great number, multitude. *
autem, *conj.*, but (*a weak adversative*), however, now, on the other hand; moreover. *
glōria, -ae, F., glory, renown, honor, fame. *
16. fortitūdō, -inis [**fortis,** strong], F., strength, courage. 1
angustus, -a, -um [**angō,** squeeze], compressed, confined, straitened, narrow. *
habeō, 2. *a. and n.*, have, hold, possess; consider, regard. *
arbitror, 1. [**arbiter,** witness; judge], *a. and n.*, witness, testify; judge, decide; think, believe. *
17. longitūdō, -inis [**longus**], F., length, extent; long duration. *
mīlle, *num. adj.* (*indecl. in sing.*), a thousand; *pl.*, **mīlia** (**millia**), **-um,** N., thousands (*a subst., usually followed by part. gen.*): **mīlia passuum,** thousands of paces, miles. *
passus, -ūs [*p. p. of* **pandō,** extend], M., a pace, *a measure of 4 feet, 10 1-4 inches,* (*five Roman feet*). *
CC = ducentī, -ae, -a [**duo + centum**], *num. adj.*, two hundred. 3
XL = quadrāgintā, *indecl. num. adj.*, forty. 4
lātitūdō, -inis [**lātus,** wide], F., width, extent, breadth. *
C = centum, *indecl. num., adj.*, a hundred. 3
LXXX = octōgintā, *indecl. num. adj.*, eighty. *
18. pateō, -ēre, -uī, *n.*, lie *or* be open; stretch out, extend. *
1. ad-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus [**dūcō,** lead], *a.*, lead *or* draw to; constrain, influence. *
auctōritās, -tātis [**auctor,** producer], F., a producing influence, character, authority, reputation. *
2. per-moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus [**moveō,** move], *a.*, move thoroughly, rouse, incite, instigate. *
cōn-stituō, -ere, stituī, stitūtus [**statuō,** set up], *a.*, set up, station; put together; establish, settle, determine. *
proficīscor, -ī, profectus sum, *n.*, set out, start, depart; go, proceed. *

---

15. prō multitūdine, *in comparison with their great numbers.* According to Chap. 29, 263,000.

16. angustōs, *too narrow.* The comparative idea is contained in *prō multitūdine.* **fīnīs:** acc. pl. What other spelling for this form? These narrow limits were considerably larger than those of modern Switzerland which contains a population of 3,000,000. Uncivilized peoples, however, require wide limits.

17. longitūdinem: from the Jura range west of Geneva to Lake Constance. **lātitūdinem:** from Basle to the Lepontine Alps. Switzerland is 216 miles long by 140 miles broad. **mīlia:** for case see A. 257; B. 77; G. 335; H. 379; *B.* 181. **passuum:** for constr. see *quārum* 1, 1.

pertinērent, comparāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam māximum numerum coëmere, sēmentēs quam māximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppeteret, cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem et amīcitiam cōnfīrmāre. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt; in tertium annum pro-

3. com-parō, 1. [**parō,** prepare], *a.*, prepare, get ready; supply, furnish, muster, equip. *
iūmentum, -ī [*for* **iugimentum** *fr.* **iugum,** yoke], N., yoke *or* draft animal, beast of burden. *
carrus, -ī, M., cart. *
quam, *adv. with interrog.*, how, how much; *with comp.*, as, than; *with sup.*, as possible; *with expressions of time*, after; **quam diū,** as long as. *
māximus, -a, -um [*sup. of* **māgnus**], greatest, largest. *
4. numerus, -ī, M., number, quantity; account, estimation. *
coëmō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptus [**cum** + **emō**], *a.*, buy, buy up, purchase. 2
sēmentis, -is [**sēmen,** seed], F., seeding, planting, sowing. 1
5. iter, itineris [*for* **itiner** *fr. p. p. of* **eō,** go], N., *a going, way*, route; journey, march. *
frūmentum, -ī, N., grain; *in pl.*, crops. *
sup (sub-) -petō, -ere, -īvī (iī), -ītus [**petō,** seek, obtain], *n.*, be near *or* at hand, be present *or* in store. *
6. pāx, pācis [**pācō,** pacify], F., peace. *
amīcitia, -ae [**amīcus,** friend], F., friendship. *
cōn-fīrmō, 1. [**fīrmus,** strong], *a.*, establish, strengthen, encourage; declare, assert. *
cōn-ficiō, -ere, fēcī, fectus [**faciō**], make *or* do thoroughly, complete, accomplish; finish up, exhaust; furnish, prepare. *
7. bienniūm, -ī [**bis,** twice, + **annus,** year], N., *a period of* two years. 1
satis (sat), *adv. and indec. adj.*, enough, sufficiently; sufficient, satisfactory. **satis causae,** sufficient reason. *
dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, *a.*, lead, conduct, guide, draw; bring, fetch; trace, construct, extend; deem, consider, judge; protract, defer. *
annus, -ī, M., year. *

---

3. pertinērent: for the mood see A. 320; B. 109; G. 631; H. 503, I; *B.* 283. **comparāre,** depends upon *cōnstituērunt* l. 2: for the mood see A. 271; B. 121; G. 423; H. 533; *B.* 328. Point out three other infinitives of the same kind in this sentence. **iūmentōrum,** *beasts of burden*, properly "yoke-animals" (*iūgum*, a yoke). **carrōrum:** vehicles with two wheels; a Celtic word Latinized: cf. the English *car* formerly spelled *carre.* **quam māximum,** *as great as possible* (*the greatest possible*). For *quam* with the superlative see A. 93, *b;* B. XXX; G. 303; H. 170, 2 (2); *B.* 240, 3.

5. ut cōpia suppeteret, *in order that a supply might be at hand.* For the mood see A. 317; B. 107; G. 545, 1, 2, 3; H. 497, II; *B.* 282. Contrast the *adverbial* use of this Final Clause with the *substantive* use in **2,** 5. **proximīs cīvitātibus:** the Sequani, Allobroges, etc.

6. ad . . . cōnficiendās, *for completing these preparations.* For form and construction, see on *effēminandōs*, **1,** 9.

7. dūxērunt, here a verb of

Orgetorix conspires with chiefs of other tribes for supremacy.

fectiōnem lēge cōnfīrmant. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās Orgetorīx dēligitur. Is sibi lēgātiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscēpit. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantaloedis fīliō, Sēquanō, cūius pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcus appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorī-

8. profectiō, -ōnis [proficīscor, set out], F., a setting out, start, departure. *
9. dē-ligō, -ere, lēgī, lectus [legō, choose], pick *or* choose out, select, cull; levy, gather. *
lēgātiō, -ōnis [lēgō, despatch], F., embassy, legation; commission; the office of an ambassador. *
sus-cipiō, -ere, cēpī, ceptus [sub + capiō, take], *a.*, take *or* lift up (*from beneath*), undertake, assume; begin; engage in; undergo, suffer. *
10. Casticus, -ī, M., *a nobleman of the Sequani.* 1
Catamantaloedēs, -is, M., *a Sequanian chieftain.* 1
11. fīlius, -ī, M., son. *
pater, patris, M., father; *in pl.*, ancestors. *
12. multus, -a, -um, *comp.* **plūs,** *sup.* **plūrimus,** much; *pl.* many. *
senātus, -ūs [**senex,** old man], M., a body of old men, senate; *esp., the administrative council of Rome.* *
populus, -ī, M., the people, the mass, the crowd; a people *or* nation. *
Rōmānus, -a, -um, of Rome, Roman; *as subst.* a Roman; *in pl.* the Romans. *
13. amīcus, -ī, M., friend. *
occupō, 1. [**ob + capiō**], *a.*, seize upon, take possession of; hold, possess. *
14. ante, (1) *adv.*, before, above, previously (2) *prep. with acc.*, before, in advance. *
item, *adv.*, in like manner, so, also, just so. *

---

thinking, is followed by the infinitive *esse* in Indir. Disc. The English idiom requires that such infinitives be rendered by the Indicative. *They considered that two years* were etc: cf. rendering of *esse* in **2,** 5.

8. lēge, *by resolution*, of the public assembly.

9. sibi . . suscēpit, *he took on himself.*

10. persuādet: for tense see A. 276 *d;* B. 123: G. 229; H. 467, III; *B.* 259 3. **Casticō:** case? Cf. *cīvitātī* **2,** 4.

11. fīliō, Sēquanō: for case see A. 183, 184; B. XXXI; G. 320, 321; H. 363; *B.* 169, 1, 2.

12. multōs annōs, *for many years.* For the accusative see A. 256; B. 78; G. 336; H. 379; *B.* 181.

13. amīcus: an honorary title often granted to foreign states or chiefs by the Roman Senate in recognition of special services or to attach them to Roman interests. **ut . . . occupāret,** *to seize.* For mood cf. *exīrent* **2,** 5. For the sequence after the Historical Present see A. 287, *e;* B. 102; *B.* 258, 268, 3. H. 495, II. **rēgnum,** *supreme authority;* there were no hereditary kings in Gaul, a chief's tenure being dependent on his wealth and personal qualities.

14. Dumnorīgī: younger than Diviciacus, a bold leader of the anti-Roman party among the Aedui and an adherent of the old aristoc-

gī Aeduō, frātrī Diviciacī, quī eō tempore prīncipātum in cīvitāte obtinēbat āc māximē plēbī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur, persuādet eīque fīliam suam in mātrimōnium dat. Perfacile factū esse illīs probat cōnāta perficere, propterea quod ipse

Dumnorīx, -īgis, M., *an Aeduan chieftain, brother of Diviciacus.* *

15. **Aeduus, -a, -um,** of the Aedui, Aeduan; *as subst.*, an Aeduan; *in pl.*, the Aedui, *a powerful Gallic tribe between the upper waters of the Saone and Loire.* *

frāter, frātris, M., brother. *

Diviciacus, -ī, (1), *a chief of the Aedui, brother of Dumnorix and friendly to the Romans.* (2), *a chief of the Suessiones.* *

tempus, -oris, N., a division *or* section of time; time; occasion, crisis; **omnī tempore,** always; **in reliquum tempus,** for the future; **ūnō tempore,** at the same time. *

prīncipātus, -ūs [prīnceps, chief], M., chief place *or* position; chief authority, leadership. *

16. **plēbs, plēbis** *or* **plebēs, -ēī,** F., common people; multitude. *

ac-cipiō, -ere, cēpī, ceptus [ad+ capiō], *a.*, take *or* receive to one's self, accept; experience, suffer; learn, hear, take; *in p. p. as adj.*, acceptable, beloved, popular. *

īdem, eadem, idem [is+ -dem], *dem. adj. pron.*, the same; this very, also. *

cōnor, 1. *a.*, attempt, endeavor, try. *

17. **fīlia, -ae,** F., daughter. 4

mātrimōnium, -ī [māter], N., marriage, wedlock, matrimony: **in mātrimōnium dare,** to give in marriage; **in mātrimōnium dūcere,** to marry. 2

dō, dare, dedi, datus, *a.*, give, bestow, confer; furnish, present; yield, give up: **in fugam dare,** put to flight. *

18. **ille, illa, illud,** *gen.* **illīus,** *dat.* **illī,** *dem. adj. pron.* (*of what is remote in time, place, thought, etc. cf.* **hīc**), that: *as subst.* he, she, it; that man, that woman, etc.; **hīc ... ille,** this ... that, the latter ... the former. *

probō, 1. **[probus,** good], *a.*, consider good, approve; test, prove; show, demonstrate. *

cōnātum, -ī, N., an attempt, effort, undertaking.

per-ficiō, -ere, fēci, fectus [faciō], *a.*, make *or* do thoroughly *or* completely; achieve, accomplish, perfect. *

---

racy which had generally been driven out of power

15. **Aeduō:** the Aedui lived west of the Sequani, between the Loire and the Saone. For their political condition at this time, see Int. 79, 80. **Diviciacī:** an ardent admirer of the Romans, whose capital he had visited. He belonged to the popular party which was favorable to Rome. This party was headed by the Druids, a priestly order wielding a powerful influence throughout Gaul. For details regarding them, see Intr. 72-75. **quī:** i. e. Dumnorix. **prīncipātum,** *a prominent position,* largely due to his brother's influence.

16. **plēbī acceptus,** *popular with* (acceptable to) *the people.* **plēbī:** for case see on *Germānīs* 1, 10. **ut idem cōnārētur,** *to attempt the same thing,* i. e. the subversion of the constitutional government and the establishment of a military rule. **cōnārētur:** for mood and tense cf. *occupāret* l. 13.

17. **perfacile . . . factū:** English

suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrus esset; nōn esse dubium, quīn tōtīus Galliae plūrimum Helvētiī possent; sē suīs cōpiīs suōque exercitū illīs rēgna conciliātūrum cōnfīrmat. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī inter sē fidem et iūs iūrandum dant et, rēgnō occupātō, per trēs potentissimōs āc fīrmissimōs populōs tōtīus Galliae sēsē potīrī posse spērant.

19. nōn [*contr. fr.* **nē ūnum**], not, no. *

dubius, -a, -um [**duo**], uncertain, doubtful. 4

20. quīn [**quī** + **nē**], *conj., by which not*, that not, but that; *after negative words of doubt or hindrance*, but what, that, from, to; **quīn etiam**, nay even, moreover. *

plūrimum [*sup. of* **multum**], most, very much, exceedingly, especially *

21. exercitus, -ūs [**exerceō**, train], M., *a trained or disciplined body of men*, an army *

conciliō, 1. [**concilium**, assembly], *a.*, assemble *or* bring together; gain *or* win over; reconcile, conciliate. 4

22. ōrātiō, -ōnis [**ōrō**, speak], F., a speaking, speech, language; a speech, address, argument. *

fidēs, -eī [**fīdō**, confide], F., good faith, confidence; pledge, promise; assurance. *

iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī [**iūs**, right + **iūrō**, swear], N., *swearing to one's rights*, an oath. *

23. per, *prep. with acc.*, through, throughout, by means of, through the agency of, on account of: *in composition*, through, very, thoroughly. *

potēns, -entis [*pr. p. of* **possum**], *adj.*, powerful, influential. *

āc, *see* **atque, 1, 7.**

fīrmus, -a, -um, strong, stable, vigorous, firm. *

24. spērō, 1. [**spēs**, hope], *a., n.*, hope, hope for, anticipate. *

---

order; *probat illīs perficere cōnāta esse perfacile factū.*

18. esse, for mood and rendering see on *esse* l. 7. **factū:** explain the use of the Supine. A. 303: B. 129; G. 436; H. 547; *B.* 340 2. The English idiom requires the omission of *factū* in translating.

19. obtentūrus esset, *purposed to get control of.* What is denoted by the first or active periphrastic conjugation? How is it formed? A. 113, *b*, N., 129; B. XXXVIII; G. 247; H. 233; *B.* 115. **nōn esse dubium, quīn**, *that there is no doubt that.*

20. Galliae: for case see on *horum* **1, 6. plūrimum possent**, *were the most powerful.* **possent**, for the mood see A. 332 *g*, Rem.; B. 108, *d*; G. 555, 2; H. 501, II 2; *B.* 298. **cōpiīs**, *resources* of influence, money, etc. For the case see A. 248 *c* 1; B. 90; G. 401; H. 420; *B.* 218. So **exercitū** in l. 21.

21. illīs . . . conciliātūrum (*esse*), *that he would win for them.* For the infinitive see *esse* l. 7, and l. 18. **illīs** = *Casticō et Dumnorīgī.*

22. ōrātiōne, *by* (means of) *this argument.* For the case cf. *cōpiīs* and *exercitū* in the preceding clause. **inter sē**, *to each other*; cf. **1, 4.**

23. fidem, etc., *their word and oath.* **rēgnō occupātō**, *after they have seized the royal power* (in their own lands). For the case see on *M. Messālā*, etc. **2, 2. trēs populōs:** What three nations?

24. tōtīus . . . spērant, *they*

4. Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūntiāta. Mōribus suīs Orgetorīgem ex vinclīs causam dīcere coēgērunt; damnātum poenam sequī oportēbat, ut īgnī cremārētur. Diē cōnstitūtā causae dictiōnis Orgetorīx ad iūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum mīlia decem,

Orgetorix is tried for conspiracy but escapes. His sudden death.

1. **indicium, -ī** [indicō, disclose], N., disclosure, information. 4.
ē-nūntiō, 1. *a.*, report, declare, disclose. *
2. **mōs, mōris,** M., manner, custom, way: *pl.* customs, morals, character. *
vinculum (vinclum), -ī [vinciō, bind], N., bond, fetter, chain. *
3. **cōgō, -ere, coēgī, coāctus** [cum + agō, lead], *a.*, lead *or* bring together, collect; draw together, compress; force, compel, constrain. *
damnō, 1. [damnum, damage], *a.*, declare guilty, sentence, condemn. 2.
poena, -ae [pūniō, punish], F., punishment, penalty. *
sequor, sequī, secūtus, *dep.*, follow, follow after, pursue; accompany, attend. *
oportet, -ēre, -uit [opus, need], *impers.*, it is necessary, needful, becoming, proper; (*I, you, he, etc.*) must, ought. *
4. **īgnis, -is,** M., fire. *
cremō, 1. *a.*, consume with fire, burn to ashes, burn. 2.
diēs, -ēī, M., F., day: **in diēs,** from day to day. *
dictiō, -ōnis [dīcō, speak], F., speaking, pleading; **causae dictiō,** defense, answer to a charge. *
5. **iūdicium, -ī** [iūdex, judge], N., judicial proceedings, trial; judicial opinion *or* decision, judgment; court. *
familia, -ae [famulus, house-servant], F., the slaves of a household; vassals, dependents, retinue; household, establishment. *
decem, *indecl. num.*, ten. *

---

hope that they can get control of the whole of Gaul: **tōtīus Galliae potīrī**: for the Genitive see A. 249, *a;* B. H. 223; G. 407 2 *d;* H. 410, V, 3; *B.* 212, 2. This is the only place in Caesar where *potior* takes the Gen. What is its usual construction?

1. **ea rēs,** *this plan*, viz. the conspiracy just described.

2. **mōribus suīs,** *according to their customs.* For the Ablative see A. 253, N; B. H. 237; G. 399; H. 416; *B.* 220 3. **ex vinclīs,** *in chains*, i. e. while under arrest. The Roman custom allowed the accused his liberty until the judgment was rendered. **dīcere,** *to plead.*

3. **damnātum . . . cremārētur,** *it was necessary that the punishment follow* (him), *if condemned, of being burned by fire.* **damnātum** (supply *eum*, object of *sequī*) = a conditional clause. A. 292; B. XL, n. 4; G. 667; H. 549, 2; *B.* 337, *b*). **poenam . . . sequī** is the subject of *oportēbat.*

4. The clause *ut . . . cremārētur* is in apposition with *poenam*, the subject of *sequī*. A. 332, *f;* G. 557; H. 501, III; *B.* 297, 3. **diē cōnstitūtā,** *on the day appointed.* How is time *at which* or *within which* regularly indicated? A. 256; B. 97, *a;* G. 393; H. 429; *B.* 230, 231. **diē,** for gender see A. 73; B. 127, *a;* G. 64; H. 123; *B.* 53. **causae dictiōnis,** *for the pleading of the case.* For case of *causae* see A. 217; B. H. 54; G. 363, 2; H. 396, III; *B.* 200.

undique coēgit et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum māgnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs, nē causam dīceret, sē ēripuit. Cum cīvitās ob eam rem incitāta armīs iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur, multitūdinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorīx mortuus est; neque abest suspīciō, ut Helvētiī arbitrantur, quīn ipse sibi mortem cōnscīverit.

6. **cliēns** (**cluēns**), **-entis** [**clueō**, hear one's self called], M., F., vassal, dependent, retainer. *

ob-aerātus, -a, -um [**aes**, copper, money], *held* under obligations *or* in debt; *as subst.*, debtor. 1

7. **eōdem,** *adv.* [**īdem** sc. **locō**], to the same place, to the same point, result, end etc. *

con-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus [**dūcō**, lead], *a.*, lead *or* bring together, assemble; conduct; hire. *

nē, (*a*), *conj. with subj.*, that...not, for fear that; not to; *after words of danger or fear*, that; (*b*), *adv.*, not; *with words of command*, do not, let not, not to; **nē ... quidem** (*enclosing the expression emphasized*), not even. *

8. **ē-ripiō, -ere, -uī, -reptus** [**rapiō**, seize], *a.*, wrest *or* take away, extort, deprive; rescue, relieve, save. *

ob, *prep. with acc.*, on account of, for; *in comp.*, opposed to, to, against; **ob eam** (**hanc**) **causam,** for this reason; **quam ob rem,** wherefore. *

in-citō, 1. [**cieō**, rouse], *a.*, rouse, instigate, incite. *

9. **arma, -ōrum,** N. *pl.*, *objects fitted to the body;* armor, arms, equipments; *by meton.*, battle, war. *

iūs, iūris, N., right (*in nature and character*), justice, rights; legal rights, law; authority. *

ex-sequor, sequī, secūtus sum [**sequor**, follow], *a.*, follow out, exercise, assert, accomplish. 1

10. **magistrātus, -ūs** [**magister**, master], M., public office, magistracy; public officer, magistrate; body of officers, government. *

morior, morī, mortuus sum, *n.*, die. 3

11. **neque** (**nec**), *conj. and adv.* [**nē**+**-que**], and not, not, nor; **neque** (**nec**)... **neque,** neither ... nor. *

suspīciō, -ōnis [**suspicor**, suspect], F., suspicion, distrust. *

12. **mors, mortis** [**morior**, die], F., death. *

cōn-scīscō, -ere, -scīvī, -scītus [**scīscō**, resolve], *a.*, resolve upon, appoint, determine, decree. *

---

6. **clientēs obaerātōsque:** the *clientēs* were vassals or retainers. "Some of these retainers devote themselves to their chieftain for life or death. 'They share all the goods of life with those to whom they have thus devoted themselves; if the chief dies a violent death, they share his fate and kill themselves with their own hands." The *obaerātōs* were those who had become slaves on account of debt.

7, 8. **per eōs,** *by their help.* **nē ... dīceret,** *to avoid pleading his case* (in order that he might not plead his case). How is the negative clause of purpose regularly introduced? A. 317; B. 107; G. 545, 3; H. 497, II; *B.* 282.

9. **cōnārētur,** *when the state attempted.* For the mood after *cum* temporal see A. 325; B. 111, *a*; G. 585; H. 521, II, 2; *B.* 288, 289.

11. **ut** with the Indic. is a rela-

The Helvetians complete their preparations and depart.

5. Post ēius mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī id, quod cōnstituerant, facere cōnantur, ut ē fīnibus suīs exeant. Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vīcōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt, frūmentum omne, praeterquam quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt,

1. post, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, after; behind, back, beneath, afterwards. *

nihilō, *adv.* [**nihilum,** nothing], by no means, not, none; **nihilō minus,** none the less. *

3. ubi, *adv.* [**quō-bi** *fr.* **quī**], (*of place*) in which *or* what place, where; (*of time*) whenever, when. *

iam, *adv.*, now (*denoting immediate occurrence in ref. to the past, present or future, while* nunc *emphasizes the present*), already, by this time, at length. *

parō, 1, *a.*, provide means, prepare, get ready, procure; *p. p. as adj.*, ready, prepared. *

4. oppidum, -ī, N., town; stronghold.

duo-decim, (XII), *indecl. num.* [**decem**], twelve. 2

vīcus, -ī [*cf* Eng. -wick e. g. Berwick], M., *a collection of dwellings*, hamlet, village. *

quadringentī, -ae, -a [**quattuor, centum**], four hundred. *

5. prīvātus, -a, -um [*p. p. of* **prīvō,** set apart], apart from *publicity*; private, personal, individual. *

aedificium, -ī [**aedificō,** build], N., building, edifice, structure. *

in-cendō, -ere, cendī, cēnsus [**candeō,** shine], *a.*, set fire to, fire, burn; inflame, excite, rouse. *

6. praeter-quam, *adv.* [**praeter,** beyond], except. 2

portō, 1. *a.*, carry, transport, bring. *

com-būrō, -ere, būssī, būstus [**(b)ūrō,** burn], *a.*, burn completely, burn up, consume. 1

---

tive adverb, *as.* What part of speech is it, and how translated with the subjunctive? **quīn . . . cōnscīverit,** *that he decreed death to himself*, i. e. committed suicide. For the clause cf. *ut . . cremārētur* **4,** 3, 4, and for the use of *quin* instead of *ut* see on *possent* **3,** 20.

2. ut . . . exeant, *to go forth.* The clause *ut . . . exeant* is in apposition with *id*, cf. **4,** 3, 4. The pressure upon them from the north compelled them to act.

3. parātōs: used as an adj. cf. **1, 1. esse,** *were*, for tense cf. **3,** 7.

4, 5. oppida, *strongholds:* occupied in times of war. **vīcōs,** *settlements*; the *vīcus* was a subdivision of the *pāgus*, forming a country community. **aedificia:** houses standing alone.

6, 7. praeterquam, *except.* **portātūrī erant:** form? **3,** 19. **domum reditiōnis,** *of returning home.* **domum:** the terminal Acc. after *reditiōnis* a noun denoting action (cf *dictiōnis* **4,** 4.), which governs the case as a verb. For the omission of the prep. in the Terminal Acc. with *domus* etc. see A. 258, 2, *b*; B. H. 76; G. 337 *fin.*; H. 380, II, 2, 1); *B.* 182, 1 *b*). **spē sublātā:** trans. by a temporal clause. **ad . . . subeunda,** *for enduring*, etc. For constr. cf. *ad cōnficiendās* **3,** 6, and see on **1,** 9.

ut, domum reditiōnis spē sublātā, parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda essent, trium mēnsum molita çibāria sibi quemque domō efferre iubent. Persuādent Rauricīs et Tulingīs et Latovīcīs fīnitimīs, utī eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō oppidīs suīs vīcīsque

7. **domus, -ūs** (-ī *in loc.*) *dat.* **domuī** (**domō**), *abl.* **domō**, F., house; home; native country *or* home. *

reditiō, -ōnis, [**re** + **eō,** go], F., a going back, returning, return. 1

spēs, -eī, F., hope, anticipation, expectation. *

tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātus, *a.*, lift *or* raise up, elevate; take away, remove; do away with, destroy; *in p. p. as adj.*, elated. *

perīculum, -ī, N., experiment, trial; risk, hazard, danger. *

8. **sub-eō, īre, īvī** (**iī**), **itus** (**eō,** go], *a.*, come *or* go under, come up to, come up; undergo, encounter, endure. *

mēnsis, -is [*cf.* **metior,** measure], M., month. 4

molō, -ere, -uī, -itus [**mola,** mill], *a.*, grind. 1

cibārius, -a, -um [**cibus,** food], pertaining to food; *in neut. pl. as subst.*, provisions, supplies. 3

quisque, quaeque, quid(quic) que (*adj.* **quodque**), *gen.* **cūiusque,** *universal indef. pron.*, each one, each; every one, every, all. *

9. **efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātus,** *a.*, bring *or* carry out, carry *or* take away; spread *or* publish abroad, make known; elate, puff up. *

iubeō, -ēre, iussī, iūssus, *a.*, order, bid, command, enjoin. *

Rauricī, -ōrum, M., *a tribe on the upper Rhine.* 4

Tulingī, -ōrum, M., *a German tribe on the Rhine, east of the Raurici.* 4.

Latovīcī, -ōrum, M., *a German tribe north of the Tulingi.* 3

10. **ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum,** *a.*, *n.*, make use of, employ, use, avail one's self of; practice, have, enjoy; possess, show, manage. *

cōnsilium, -ī [*cf.* **cōnsul**] N., consultation, deliberation; counsel, design, measure, plan; judgment, prudence, wisdom; an assembly for deliberation, a council. *

---

8. **essent:** for the mood cf. **3,** 5. **trium mēnsum cibāria,** *supplies for three months.* For the Genitive see A. 215, *b;* B. XLIX, n. 1; G. 365; H. 396, V; *B.* 203, 2. Napoleon III. estimates that 8500 wagons, drawn by 36000 draught animals, were needed to transport the provisions required to feed the Helvetian host.

9. **domō,** *from home.* Read the following references and explain: (1) how the *place from which* is regularly expressed; (2) how it is expressed with *domus*; (3) what nouns are construed as *domus* is? A. 258, 2 *a*: B. 96; G. 390, 391; H. 412, II, 1; *B.* 229, 1. **Rauricīs,** etc. German tribes from the vicinity of the Rhine. See map.

10. **eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō,** *adopting* (*having used*) *the same plan.* **ūtor,** like *potior*, governs the Ablative. cf. **2,** 6. **oppidīs . . . exūstīs,** *having burned* or *when they had burned, etc.* The Ablative Absolute is here equivalent to a temporal clause as in l. 7, and in **2, 2.** This construction is often employed because the Latin has no perfect active participle.

exūstīs, ūnā cum iīs proficīscantur, Bōiōsque, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōrēiamque oppūgnārant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi adscīscunt.

6. Erant omnīnō itinera duo, quibus itineribus domō exīre possent; ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter mōntem Iūram et flūmen

They arrange to cross the the Rhone and march through the Roman Province.

11. **ex-ūrō, -ere, ussī, ūstus** [**ūrō**, burn], *a.*, burn up, consume. 1
ūnā, *adv.* [**ūnus**, one], one with, together *or* along with, together, at the same time. *
Bōiī, -ōrum, M., *a powerful Celtic tribe of Central Gaul in modern Bourbonnais. Part migrated to northern Italy and another part to Germany.* *
12. **Nōricus, -a, -um**, Norican, belonging to Noricum (*a country between the Danube and the Alps*). 2
trāns-eō, īre, īvi(iī), itus [**eō**, go], *a.*, *n.*, go across *or* over, pass, cross. *
Nōrēia, -ae, F., *a town in Noricum now* Neumarkt. 1
13. **op-pūgnō, 1.** [**ob** + **pūgnō**, fight], *a.*, fight against, fight, attack, assault, storm. *
re-cipiō, -ere, cēpī, ceptus [**capiō**, take], *a.*, take *or* get back, recover: **sē**, withdraw, retire, retreat; **ad sē**, take to one's self, accept, receive. *
socius, -ī [*cf.* **sequor**, follow], M., companion, partner, associate; confederate, ally. *
ad-scīscō, -ere, scīvī, scītus [**scīscō** *incep. of* **sciō**, approve], *a.*, *take upon acquaintance*, approve; admit *or* receive (*as allies*). *
1. **omnīnō**, *adv.* [**omnis**], altogether, wholly, in all. *
duo, -ae, -o, *num. adj.*, two. *
3. **difficilis, -e**, [**dis-** + **facilis** easy], not easy, hard, troublesome, difficult. *

11, 12. **cum iīs**: should be *sēcum*. Why? See on **suīs 1**, 13. **Bōiōs**: Celts who had been driven from Italy by the Romans in the 2nd century B. C. and who occupied no definite territory at this time. **Nōrēiam**: a city northeast of Aquileia, now Neumarkt in Corinthia.

13. **receptōs . . . adscīscunt**, *they admitted among their people* (**ad sē**) *and associated with themselves as confederates the Boii.* **receptōs**: For the perf. part. instead of a co-ordinate clause see A. 292, R; B. L, n. 8; G. 664, R 1; H. 549, 5. **adscīscunt**: for tense see on *persuādet*, **3**, 10. Name the several instances of the Historical Present in this chapter.

1. **erant**, *there were.* The English idiom sometimes requires the use of the expletive *there* in translating the forms of *esse.* **omnīnō** *only.* **itinera, itineribus**: Caesar, contrary to English usage, frequently repeats the antecedent noun in the relative clause. Study these *itinera* on the map. **quibus . . . possent**, *by which they could leave home.* For the Subj. cf. *pertinērent* **3**, 3.

2, 3. **Sēquanōs**: for their location see on **2**, 10. **angustum**: at the Pas de l' Ecluse, thirteen miles west of Geneva. **difficile**: narrow, rugged, and easily held aganst them by a handful of men.

Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent; alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expedītius, propterea quod inter fīnēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōnnūllīs locīs vadō trānsītur. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvētiōrum fīnibus Genāva. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs,

4. **vix,** *adv.*, with difficulty, hardly ever, hardly, scarcely. *

quā, *adv.* [*abl. fem. of* **quī**], by which way *or* road, in which direction *or* place, where. *

singulī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.*, one each, one at a time, single, separate. *

5. **im-pendeō (in-), -ēre** [**pendeō,** hang], *n.*, hang *or* be suspended over, overhang, impend, threaten. 2

facilis, -e, [**faco- + lis**], *adj.*, easy (*to do*), convenient, without difficulty, easy (*generally*).

per-paucī, -ae, -a, [**paucus,** few], very few, but very few. *

6. **expedītus, -a, -um,** [*p. p. of* **expediō,** disengage], unimpeded, free, unobstructed, light armed: *as subst.*, a light armed soldier. *

7. **Allobrogēs, -um,** M., *a powerful Gallic people between the Rhone and Isere.* *

8. **nūper** [*for* **novum -per** *fr.* **novus,** new], newly, recently, not long ago. 4

pācō, 1. [**pāx,** peace], *a.*, make peaceful, subdue, pacify: *in p. p. as adj.*, peaceful, quiet, subdued. *

fluō, -ere, flūxī, fluxus, *n.*, flow, run, sweep. 2

nōn-nūllus, -a, -um [**nūllus,** none], some, several: *in pl. as subst.*, some, several. *

9. **vadum, -ī** [cf. Eng. *wade*], N., ford, shallow, shoal. *

10. **Genāva, -ae,** F., *a city of the Allobroges, now* Geneva. 2

---

4. **dūcerentur,** *could be drawn.* For mode cf. *possent*, l. 2.

5. **ut . . perpaucī . . . possent,** *so that a very few could.* Name and state the use of this *ut* clause. A. 319; B. 107, *a*; G. 552; H. 500; *B.* 284.

6. **alterum:** the southern route. **prōvinciam:** the Rhone here formed the northern boundary of the Roman province. **nostram**=*Rōmānam.*

7. **Allobrogum:** they dwelt between the Rhone, the Isere, and the Alps. **nūper pācātī erant:** 61 B. C. after a desperate struggle to maintain their independence.

8. **nōnnūllīs locīs,** *in several places.* How is the Ablative of place regularly denoted? When may the preposition be omitted with common nouns? A. 258, *c*, 1, 2 *f*, 1, 2; B. XLII, n. 1; G. 385, 388, R.; H. 425, I, 2; *B.* 228, 1, *b*), *c*).

9. **vadō:** it is stated that the Rhone can now be forded at only one point along its course from Geneva to mount Jura, namely, at the village of Russin, seven miles from the city. **extrēmum:** because on the northern frontier.

10. **Genāva,** also spelled *Geneva* and *Genua.* The word is said to come from the Celtic **gena,** *mouth.* Where is Geneva situated with reference to the lake and river?

11. **Allobrogibus sēsē . . . per-**

quod nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur, exīstimābant, vel vī coāctūrōs ut per suōs fīnēs eōs īre paterentur. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātīs, diem dīcunt, quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant: is diēs erat a. d. v. Kal. Apr., L. Pīsōne, A. Gabīniō cōnsulibus.

12. **nōn-dum**, *adv.*, not yet. *

bonus, -a, -um, *comp.* **melior**, *sup.* **optimus**, good, beneficial, profitable, well disposed, (*with* **animō**) friendly; *as subst.*, **bonum, -ī**, profit, advantage; **bona, -ōrum**, goods, property, estate; **bonī, -ōrum**, the good, good men *or* citizens. *

videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus, *a.*, see, examine, understand, see to, take care; *in pass.* seem, appear, seem good *or* proper, seem best. *

13. **ex-īstimō 1.** [**aestimō**, compute], *a.*, estimate, reckon, think, consider. *

vel, *conj.* [*imper. of* **volō**, *lit.* choose], or rather, or, even; **vel . . . vel**, either . . . or. *

vīs, vīs, F., force, might, energy, power; violence, severity; influence, weight; quantity, supply. *

eō, īre, īvī(iī), itūrus, *n.*, go, proceed, march, pass. *

patior, patī, passus sum, *a.*, *n.*, bear, endure, suffer, permit, allow. *

15. **rīpa, -ae**, F., bank (*of a stream*). *

con-veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus [**veniō**, come], *a.*, *n.*, come together, assemble, convene, meet; come to, arrive; agree, to be agreed upon, be convenient *or* suitable. *

16. **V.**, *abbrev. for* **quīntus, -a, -um** [**quīnque**], fifth. 4

Kal., *abbrev. for* **Kalendae, -ārum**, F., the Calends, *the first day of the Roman month, when the Calendar of the month was proclaimed by the pontifex to the assembled people.* 1

Apr. *or* **Aprīl.**, *abbrev. for* **Aprīlis, -e** [**aperiō**, open], *adj.*, of April, April. 2

L., *abbrev. for* **Lucius, -ī**, M., *a Roman praenomen.*

A. *abbrev. for* **Aulus, -ī**, M., *a Roman praenomen.* 1

Gabīnius, -ī, M., *a Roman gentile name.* Aulus Gabinius, *consul with Lucius Piso, 58 B. C.* 1

---

suāsūrōs . . . exīstimābant, *they thought they would persuade the Allobroges.* **Allobrogibus**: for case see on *cīvitātī* **2**, 4. **persuāsūrōs**: sc. *esse*, which is generally omitted in the future Infin. Why Infin? see on *dūxērunt esse* **3**, 7.

12. **bonō animō**, *of a kindly spirit.* For the Ablative see A. 251; B. H. 93; G. 400; H. 419, II; *B.* 224. What other case is used to denote quality? Cf. **5**, 8.

13. **coāctūrōs** (*esse*), *would compel.* See *persuāsūrōs* above. **paterentur**: for mood cf. *possent* l. 5. **suōs**: whose? Cf. **1**, 13.

14. **omnibus rēbus comparātīs**, *when* (*after*) *everything had been made ready.* Constr? Cf. **2**, 2.

16. **a. d. v. Kal. Apr**: *March 28*, but the calendar was in a state of great confusion. **a. d. v.**(= *ante diem quintum*) grew to be a fixed form of expression, and must be treated as an indeclinable noun. Here it is a predicate nominative after *erat*. B. LIV, n. 1. For the details of the reckoning of time by the Romans see A. 376; G. p. 491; H. 644; *B.* 371. **Pīsōne . . . cōnsulibus**: in 58 B. C. Constr? **2**, 2.

Ceasar delays them by pretexts.

7. Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficīscī et, quam māximīs potest itineribus, in Galliam ūlteriōrem contendit et ad Genāvam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam māximum potest mīlitum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō in Galliā ūlteriōre legiō ūna), pōntem, quī erat ad Genāvam, iubet rescindī. Ubi dē ēius adventū Helvētiī

1. **Caesar, -aris,** M., (1), Caius Julius Caesar, *conqueror of Gaul and author of the Commentaries* (2), Lucius Julius Caesar, *a kinsman and lieutenant of the former.* *
nūntiō, 1. [**nūntius**], *a.*, announce, send news, report, make known. *
2. **mātūrō,** 1. [**mātūrus,** ripe], *a.*, *n.*, ripen, bring to maturity; quicken, hasten, accelerate. 4
3. **urbs, urbis,** F., city; *esp.* the city (Rome). *
4. **ūlterior, -ius,** *comp. adj.* [**ūltrā,** beyond], beyond, farther, more remote, ulterior. *
per-veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus [**veniō,** come], *n.*, come through; come to, arrive at, reach; attain to, come into possession of. *
5. **mīles, -itis,** M., soldier; private [*opp. to imperātor*), infantry (*opp. to equitēs*): **mīlitēs imperāre,** levy soldiers upon. *
imperō, 1. [**in + parō,** procure], *a.*, *n.*, make requisition upon, demand from, enjoin *or* levy upon, command. *
6. **legiō, -ōnis** [**legō,** choose], F. a chosen number, a levy; a legion. *
pōns, -ōntis, M., bridge. *
7. **re-scindō, -ere, scidī, scissus** [**scindō,** cleave], *a.*, cut away *or* down, break up, destroy. *
adventus, -ūs [**veniō,** come], M., coming to, arrival, approach. *

---

1. **Caesarī:** in the vicinity of Rome where after retiring from the office of consul in the beginning of 58 B. C. he had been busy in making his preparations to leave for his provincial government.

1, 2. **id** *this fact*, viz. **eōs cōnārī,** *that they were planning, etc.* **nūntiātum esset:** for mode cf. **4,** 9. **ab urbe,** *from* (*near*) *the city*, not *ex urbe*, because he could not be *in* the city while invested with the military authority of proconsul. What were Caesar's provinces? What political object had he in securing them?

3. **quam . . . . itineribus,** *by forced marches* (*by as great marches as possible*): force of *quam* with the superl.? **3,** 3. According to Plutarch, Caesar reached his destination on the eighth day, after leaving Rome.

4, 5. **ūlteriōrem** = *trānsalpīnam*, *beyond the Alps* from Rome. The valley of the Po was called *Gallia Cisalpīna*, or Gaul *on this side of the Alps*, i. e. toward Rome. **prōvinciae . . . . numerum imperat,** *he levies upon the entire province:* for the Dative (*prōvinciae*) and Accusative (*numerum*) see A. 227, *f*; G. 345; H. 384, II; *B.* 187 1. How was the levy conducted? See Int. 84.

6. **legiō:** the tenth, afterwards Caesar's favorite legion. It was probably not at Geneva then, but was sent there at once. For legion, see Int. 86. **pōntem** probably a bridge of boats. Why did Caesar order it to be destroyed?

certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, cūius lēgātiōnis Nammēius et Verucloetius prīncipem locum obtinēbant, quī dīcerent, sibi esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter habērent nūllum: rogāre, ut ēius voluntāte id sibi fa-

8. **certus, -a, -um** [*for* **crētus**, *p. p. of* **cernō**], decided; certain, sure, fixed: **certiōrem facere**, to inform. *

lēgātus, -ī [**lēgō**, despatch, delegate], M., *one with delegated powers;* ambassador, envoy, legate; lieutenant, legatus. *

mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus, *a.*, send, send off, let go, despatch; hurl, discharge. *

9. **Nammēius, -ī**, M., *a noble Helvetian, sent as ambassador to Caesar.* 1

Verucloetius, -ī, M., *a noble of the Helvetii.* 1

prīnceps, -ipis [**primus**, + **capiō**], M., *taking the first place;* chief, most prominent, principal; *as subst.*, chief *or* principal person, leader. *

10. **sine**, *prep. with abl.*, without. *

11. **ūllus, -a, -um**, *gen.*, **ūllīus** [*for* **ūnulus**, *dim. of* **ūnus**], any one, a single, any: *as subst.*, any one, anybody. *

maleficium, -ī [**malum**, evil + **faciō**], N., doing evil, mischief, harm, injury. 4

12. **nūllus, -a, -um**, *gen.*, **nūllīus** [**nē** + **ūllus**], not any, none, no: *as subst.*, no one, none. *

voluntās, -tātis [**volō**, wish], F., willingness, good-will, desire, will, consent, approval. *

8, 9. **certiōrēs ... factī ... sunt**, *were informed* (*were made more certain*). **cīvitātis**: for case cf. **Galliae 3**, 20.

10. **quī dīcerent**, *to say* (*who were to say*), **quī** = **ut eī (iī)**. What words introduce the Relative clause of purpose? A. 317, 2; B 107, *b*; G. 545, 1; H. 497, I; *B.* 282 2. * **sibi esse in animō**, *it was to them* (the Helvetii) *in mind*, or better, *they had in mind*, which in direct form becomes: *we have in mind* (*we intend*). **sibi**: for the dative of Possession see A. 231; B. H. 66; G. 349; H. 387; *B.* 190. **esse**, for mood see A. 336, 2, p. 371; G. 650; H. 523, I; *B.* 314, 1. The subject of *esse* is the clause *iter . . . facere* l. 11.

11, 12. **facere**, as subject of *esse* (see note above) is used as a noun (cf. *perficere* **3**, 18) and represents an accusative; in the direct form (see foot note) its form is not changed but it represents what case? **habērent**: for mood see A. 336. 2 *ad fin.* p. 371; G. 650; *ad fin.*; H. 524; *B.* 314, 1. Its subject is 'they,' referring to the Helvetii, which in the direct form becomes 'we.' **rogāre**: sc. *sē* (indirect 'they,' direct 'we') as subject, and for mood cf. *esse* l. 10. Its object is the following clause *ut . . . liceat.* **ēius**: '*his*' (i. e. Caesar's) as they are speaking to Caesar becomes in the direct form 'your.' **id**: change to *hōc* in the direct form. **sibi**: for case A. 227 *e*, 1; G. 346; H. 384; *B.* 187. (1); for translation cf. *sibi* l. 10.

13. **facere**: for mood cf. *facere* l. 11; what case does it represent here? **liceat**: for mood cf. *occupāret* **3**, 13. The change to a primary tense from a secondary (cf. *habē-*

---

*To THE TEACHER: The speech of the embassadors follows in **Ōrātiō Oblīqua**. The pupil has had the general uses of moods, tenses, and pro-

cere liceat. Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat, L. Cassium cōnsulem occīsum exercitumque ēius ab Helvētiīs pulsum et sub iugum mīssum, concēdendum nōn putābat; neque

13. **licet, -ēre, licuit (licitum est),** *impers.*, it is lawful, I have permission, it is permitted, one may, one is allowed; **licet mihi,** I may; **petere ut liceat,** to ask permission. *

memoria, -ae [memor, mindful], F., recollection, memory. *

teneō, -ēre, -uī, tentus, *a.*, hold, keep, retain, have; hold in, restrain, bind. *

Cassius, -ī, M., *a Roman gentile name*: Lucius Cassius Longinus, *consul 107 B. C., slain by the Tigurini in battle.* 3

14. **oc-cīdō, -ere, cīdī, cīsus [caedō,** cut, slay], *a.*, cut *or* strike down, destroy; cut off, kill, slay. *

pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus, *a.*, beat, strike, push, drive; drive out, expel, repulse. *

15. **sub,** *prep. with acc.* (*with verbs of motion*) *and abl.*, under, near to, just by, at the foot of; (*of time*) about, just at, during; *in comp.* (**subs-**), *adv.*, under, up *or* away (*from beneath*), secretly, in succession, slightly. *

iugum, -ī [iungō, join], N., yoke; ridge, crest. *

con-cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus [cēdō, go]. *a.*, *n.*, go away, depart, withdraw; grant, yield. *

putō, 1. *a.*, *cleanse;* clear up, adjust; reckon, estimate, think. *

---

rent l. 12) is made for greater liveliness and is called *repraesentātiō.* **memoriā tenēbat,** *remembered* (was holding in memory), as a phrase of *knowing* is followed by the indirect discourse. **Cassium:** in 107 B. C. Cassius lost his army and his own life in a battle with the Tigurini, one of the four Helvetian cantons or tribes. This tribe joined the host of the Cimbri and Teutones which threatened Rome with destruction, but was finally annihilated by Caius Marius (see Int. 60–64).

14. The Infinitive represents the time present past or future, as compared with the time of the verb upon which it depends. Thus the perfect infinitives **occīsum** (*esse*), **pulsum** (*esse*), **mīssum** (*esse*), represent past action completed before the time of the governing verb, (*memoriā tenēbat* and hence must be rendered in English by the pluperfect Indicative: *Caesar remembered that Lucius Cassius, the consul, had been slain etc.* In the same way the auxiliary *would*, the past tense of *will*, must be used in translating the future Inf. **temperātūrōs** (esse) l. 17. A. 288; BH. 119; G. 281; H. 537: *B.* 270.

15. **sub iugum,** *under the yoke.* The *iugum* was made of three spears, two being planted in the ground and the third being fastened across them at a suitable height. Under this the soldiers of the captured army were compelled to pass. **concēdendum (esse) nōn putābat,** *did not think it* (the request of the Helvetians) *ought to be allowed.* Explain the formation of the passive (Second) Periphrastic Conjugation. What ideas are expressed by this construction ? A. 113 *d*, 1, N; B. LVII, 5; G. 251; H. 234 *B.* 337, 7, *b*), 1).

15–17. **neque . . . exīstimābat:** was Caesar correct in this opinion?

---

nouns explained in his introductory book. These may now be reviewed as a whole from his grammar (A. 336 in full, 338, 339; G. 648–654, 660; H.

hominēs inimīcō animō, datā facultāte per prōvinciam itineris faciundī, temperātūrōs ab iniūriā et maleficiō exīstimābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere posset, dum mīlitēs, quōs imperāverat, convenīrent, lēgātīs respondit, diem sē ad dēlīberandum sūmptūrum: sī quid vellent, ad Īd. Aprīl. reverterentur.

16. **in-imīcus, -a, -um** [**amīcus,** friendly], unfriendly, hostile: *as subst.*, an enemy (*personal*). *
facultās, -tātis [*old adj.*, **facul** = **facilis,** easy], F., ability, power, privilege, opportunity; resources, means. *
17. **temperō, 1.** [**tempus**], *a.*, *mix in due proportion*, qualify, temper; restrain *or* control one's self, refrain, check, restrain. 2
iniūria, -ae [**iūs,** right], F., wrong, injustice, injury, outrage. *
18. **tamen,** *adv.* (*opposed to some expressed or implied concession*), yet, nevertheless, notwithstanding, still, however. *
spatium, -ī, N., space, distance, extent, interval, period, length (*of time or space*). *
inter-cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus [**cēdō,** go], *n.*, go *or* come between, lie between, intervene, pass; occur *or* be between, happen. *
dum, *conj.*, while, as long as; till, until; provided that, if only. *
19. **re-spondeō, -ēre, spondī, spōnsus** [**spondeō,** promise], *a.*, *make return*; reply, answer. *
dē-līberō, 1. [**lībra,** balance], *a.*, weigh well, consider carefully. 3.
20. **sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus** [**sub**+**emō,** take], *a.*, take away, take, assume, employ, inflict, spend. *
sī, *conj.*, if; to see if, whether: **quod sī,** but if, now if. *
quis, quae, quid (quod), (1), *interrog. pron.*, who? which? what? (2), *indef. pron.* (*after* **sī, nisi, num, nē**), anyone, anything, any; somebody, some, something. *
Īdūs, -uum, F., *pl.*, the Ides, *the time of the full moon; the 15th of March, May, July, and October, and the 13th of other months.* 1.
volō, velle, voluī, *a. n.*, wish, will, be willing, consent. *
re-vertō, -ere, vertī, *n.*, *used almost exclusively in the perfect ten-*

---

16. **inimīcō animō:** cf. *bonō animō*, **6, 12. datā facultāte,** *when the privilege was granted.*

17. **faciundī** older spelling of *faciendī.*

18, 19. **dum . . . convenīrent,** *until the soldiers should muster.* When does *dum* take the subjunctive? A. 328; B. 111; G. 572; H. 519 II, 2; *B.* 293, III, 2. **diem,** *time.* **dēlīberandum:** form? **2, 14.**

20. **sī . . . reverterentur:** no-

522–526; *B.* 313–322. or the pupil may study the various uses one by one as they occur in the text with the help of the notes given above. It is suggested that the loose and ambiguous indirect English form be forbidden in the class room, and that the pupil be required to translate Caesar's indirect discourse into English direct, and also to give the direct form in Latin. As a help we give here the direct form in Latin of the passage above; *Nōbis est in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, proptereā quod aliud iter habēmus nūllum; rogāmus ut tuā voluntāte hōc nōbīs facere liceat.*

He prevents their crossing the Rhone.

8. Intereā eā legiōne, quam sēcum habēbat, mīlitibusque, quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum īnfluit, ad mōntem Iūram, quī fīnēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, mīlia passuum XVIIII mūrum in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim fossamque perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō, praesidia dispōnit,

ses and **re-vertor, -ī, versus sum,** *used in the imperfect tenses* [**vertō,** turn], *n.*, turn back *or* again; return. *

1 inter-eā, *adv.*, meantime, meanwhile, in the interim. *

3. īn-fluō, -ere, fluxī, fluxus [**fluō,** flow], *n.*, flow in *or* into, empty into. *

5. XVIIII (= **ūndēvīgintī**), nineteen.

mūrus, -ī [cf. **moenia**], M., a wall, *esp.* a wall for defense. *

altitūdō, -inis [**altus,** high, perpendicular], F., height; depth. 4

pēs, pedis, M., the foot; a foot (*as a measure*); **pedibus,** on foot; **pedem referre,** retreat. *

sēdecim, *indecl. num.* [**sex + decem**], sixteen. 2

6. fossa, -ae [*p. p. fem. of* **fodiō,** dig], F., trench, ditch.

per-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus [**dūcō,** lead], *a.*, lead through *or* along, conduct, convey; bring over, carry along, construct, extend. *

opus, operis, N., work, labor; military works, fortifications; a work (*of art, literature,* or *architecture*); **nātūrā et opere,** by nature and art; **māgnō opere,** *adv. phrase,* much, greatly, earnestly; **tantō opere,** so much, so greatly; **quantō opere,** how much, how greatly. *

praesidium, -ī [**praeses,** guard], N., guard, garrison; safeguard, defence; redoubt, stronghold. *

dis-pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus [**pōnō,** place], *a.*, place apart *or* about; distribute, arrange, station. *

---

tice that in this complex sentence both verbs are in the subjunctive. As the first (*vellent*) follows *sī*, the second (*reverterentur*) must be the principal verb. What kinds of sentences have in indirect discourse their principal verbs in the subjunctive? A. 338, 339; G. 651, 652; H. 523, II. 1, III; *B.* 315, 316. Of these two kinds of sentences which does the punctuation show this to be? What mood therefore will *reverterentur* take in the direct form? What mood and tense will *vellent* take? **quid,** *anything.* When are the forms of *quis* indefinite? A. 105 *d*; B. LVIII, 6; G. 315; H. 455, 1; *B.* 91 5. **ad,** *about.*

1. eā legiōne: see on **legiō, 7,** 6.

2, 3. ā lacū ... ad mōntem Iūram. See map, p. 95.

4. mīlia: for case cf. **2,** 17.

5. XVIIII = $17\frac{1}{2}$ English miles following the winding of the stream. **mūrum:** sc. *in longitūdinem.* **mūrum ... fossamque:** The fortifications consisted of *redoubts* and a 'wall' and 'ditch' where the banks were not high and steep enough. There are only five points on the south bank where defensive works would be needed. The wall was made by digging down the bank so as to present a steep slope sixteen feet high. The 'ditch' was simply the depression at the foot of this slope, formed by throwing the earth away from the slope toward the river. The top of the 'wall' was defended by a row of

castella commūnit, quō facilius, sī sē invītō trānsīre cōnā-

7. **castellum, -ī** [castrum, fort], N., fortress, redoubt, outwork. *
com-mūniō, 4. [mūniō, fortify], *a.*, fortify strongly, intrench. 3
quō, *final conj.* (*usually with comparatives*) [*abl. of* **quī**], in order that, that; **quō minus,** that not, from (*with subjunctive after verbs of hindering etc.*). *
invītus, -a, -um, against one's wish *or* will, unwilling, reluctant; **sē invītō,** against his will. *

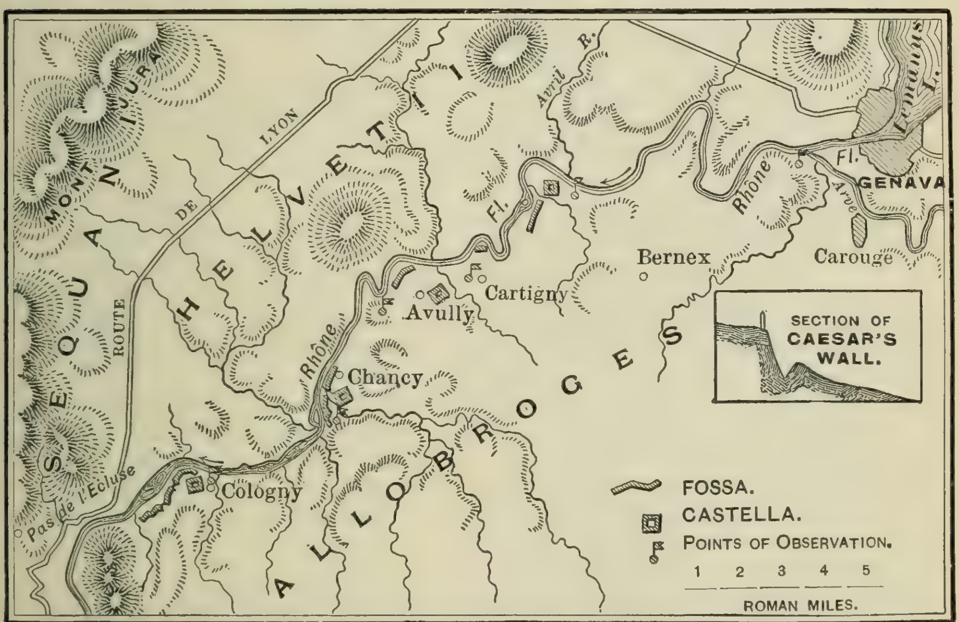
---

vāllī or stakes, behind which the Roman soldiers fought. (see vertical section of *mūrus* and *fossa* on plan below).

6. **opere perfectō:** it is estimated that three thousand men could do this in three days. **dispōnit,** *stations at different points.*

7. **castella,** *redoubts,* placed at intervals along the whole line of works, so that a sufficiently strong force could be concentrated at any threatened point. Caesar did not have troops enough to man the fortifications at all points. **quō.... prohibēre possit,** *the more easily to check them.* For **quō** (=ut eō) introducing a purpose clause see A. 317, *b;* B. 107, *c*; G. 545, 2; H. 497, II, 2; *B.* 282 2, *a.* **sē invītō,** *without his* (Caesar's) *consent.* For the Abl. Abs. with Adjectives see A. 255 *a*; B. 98; G. 409; H. 431, 4; *B.* 227

1. **cōnārentur:** Notice that the clause *sī....cōnārentur* interrupts the purpose clause *quō...possit,* upon which it depends and for the mood of the dependent verb see A. 342; B. 99 *d*; G. 629; H. 529, II; *B.* 324.



Caesar's Fortifications on the Rhone.

rentur, prohibēre possit. Ubi ea diēs, quam cōnstituerat cum lēgātīs, vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē mōre et exemplō populī Rōmānī posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare et, sī vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum ostendit. Helvētiī eā spē dēiectī, nāvibus iūnctīs ratibusque complūribus factīs, aliī vadīs Rhodanī quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, nōnnumquam interdiū, saepius noctū, sī perrumpere possent, cōnātī, operis mūnītiōne et mīlitum concursū et tēlīs repulsī hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

9. **veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus,** *n.*, come, arrive, go, happen. *
negō, 1. [**nē** + **aiō,** say], *a.*, *n.*, say no, deny, refuse, say . . . not. 5
10. **exemplum, -ī** [**eximō,** take out], N., selection; pattern, model; precedent, example; warning, punishment. 3
12. **os-tendō, -ere, tendī, tentus** [**ob**+**tendō,** stretch], *a.*, stretch towards *or* in the way; present, show, point out, declare. *
dē-iciō, -ere, iēcī, iectus [**iaciō,** hurl], *a.*, hurl *or* cast down; dislodge; kill; foil, disappoint. *
nāvis, -is, F., ship, boat; **nāvis longa,** galley, ship of war; **nāvis onerāria,** a transport. *
iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūnctus, *a.*, join *or* unite together, join, yoke, attach, connect. 5
ratis, -is, F., raft; bark, vessel. 3
13. **complūrēs, -a** [**plūs,** more], several, many; a great many. *
14. **nōn-numquam (nunquam),** [**numquam,** never], *adv.*, sometimes. 4
inter-diū, *adv.*, during the day, by day. 3
noctū, *adv.* [**nox,** night], by night. *
15. **per-rumpō, -ere, rūpī, ruptus** [**rumpō,** break], *n.*, *a.*, break through, force one's way *or* passage. *
mūnītiō, -ōnis [**mūniō,** fortify], F., fortifying, fortifications, works, intrenchments. *
16. **con-cursus, -ūs** [**cursus,** running], M., a running together, rush, onset; collision, encounter; attack. *
tēlum, -ī, N., *a weapon for fighting at a distance;* missile, dart, javelin. *
repellō, -ere, repulī (reppulī), repulsus [**rē-** + **pellō,** beat, drive], *a.*, beat *or* drive back, repel, repulse. *
cōnātus, -ūs [**cōnor,** attempt], M., attempt, trial, effort. 1
dē-sistō, -ere, stitī, stitus [**sistō,** stand], *n.*, stand *or* leave off; abandon, cease, give up. *

---

8. **possit:** the Historical Present (*commūnit* l. 7) is here followed by a secondary tense (*cōnārentur*) and also by a primary tense (*possit*). A. 287 *e; B.* 268, 3. H. 495, II.

9, 10. **negat sē . . . . posse** *he says . . . . that he cannot.* For the infin. *posse* cf. *rogāre*, 7, 12.

11. **cōnentur:** for mood cf. *vellent* 7, 20. What mood and tense in direct form? **prohibitūrum:** what must be supplied? See on *persuāsūrōs* 6, 11.

12. **eā spē dēiectī,** *disappointed in this expectation.* For the Ablative see on 1, 14. **nāvibus, ratibus:**

The Helvetians obtain permission from the Sequani to pass through their country.

9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs invītīs propter angustiās īre nōn poterant. Hīs cum suā sponte persuādēre nōn possent lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Aeduum mittunt, ut, eō dēprecātōre, ā Sēquanīs impetrārent. Dumnorīx grātiā et largītiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā cīvitāte Orgetorīgis fīliam in mātrimōnium dūxerat, et

1. **re-linquō, -ere, līquī, lictus** [**linquō**, leave], *a.*, leave behind, leave, abandon; *pass.*, be left, remain. *

via, -ae, F., way, road, route, journey. *

2. **propter** [for **propiter** fr. **prope**, near], (1) *adv.* near, at hand. (2) *prep. with acc.*, near, close to; on account of, because of, for; by means of, through. *

angustiae, -ārum [**angustus**, narrow], F. *pl.*, narrowness; a narrow place *or* pass, strait, defile; straits, difficulties, perplexity. *

3. **spontis**, *gen.* and **sponte**, *abl.* [*obs. nom.* **spōns**], F., of one's own accord, willingly, voluntarily. 5

4. **dē-precātor** [**dēprecor**, avert by entreaty], M., mediator, intercessor. 2

5. **impetrō**, 1. [**patrō**, accomplish], *a.*, obtain (*by request, entreaty, exertion*), accomplish, succeed in obtaining (*one's request*); **impetrāre ā** (**ab**), gain permission from, persuade; **sī nōn impetrāret**, if he failed to obtain his request. *

grātia, -ae [**grātus**, pleasing], F., favor, good will, gratitude; esteem, influence, popularity; **grātiās agere**, thank. *

largītiō, -ōnis [**largior**, give freely], F., giving freely, liberality. 1

6. **amīcus, -a, -um** [**amo**], *adj.*, friendly, well disposed: **praesidium** (*devoted*); *as noun*, M., a friend, an ally. *

---

for case and rendering cf. **2**, 2.

14, 15. sī . . . possent, *to see whether they could, etc.* For this use of *sī* (not conditional) see A. 334, *f*; G. 460, *b*; H. 529, II 1, N. 1; *B.* 300, 3.

16. repulsī: *were repulsed and*; for the translation see on *receptōs*, **5**, 13. **cōnātū:** for case cf. *spē*, l. 12.

1. ūna via, *only the way.*

2. Sēquanīs invītīs, *against the Sequanians' will* (if the Sequani should refuse), cf. *sē invītō*, **8**, 7. What was the attitude of the Helvetians toward the Romans? **angustiās:** see on *angustum*, **6**, 2.

3. hīs: for case cf. *Allobrogibus* **6**, 11. **cum . . . . nōn possent,** *since they could not, etc.* What construction follows *cum* causal? A. 326; B. 111, *c*; G. 586; H. 517; *B.* 286 2.

4. Dumnorīgem: see on **3**, 14. **eō dēprecātōre,** *by his meditation* (*with him as their advocate*); the Abl. Abs. denoting means. The noun ending **-tor** (**-sor**) denotes the agent or doer.

6. Helvētiīs: for case cf. **1**, 10.

cupiditāte rēgnī adductus novīs rēbus studēbat et quam plūrimās cīvitātēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat, ut per fīnēs suōs Helvētiōs īre patiantur, obsidēsque utī inter sēsē dent, perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant, Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniūriā trānseant.

Caesar brings up his forces to oppose their passage.

10. Caesarī renūntiātur, Helvētiīs esse in animō, per agrum Sēquanōrum et Aeduōrum iter in Santonum fīnēs facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium fīnibus absunt, quae cīvitās est in prōvinciā. Id sī fieret, intellegēbat

8. **novus, -a, -um,** new, novel, fresh: **rēs novae**, a change of government, revolution; **novissimus, -a, -um,** *sup.*, latest, last: **āgmen** (*the rear*). *

studeō, -ēre, -uī, *n.*, be eager *or* zealous, desire, strive after, pay attention to. *

9. **beneficium, -ī** [bene, well + faciō], N., well-doing, benefit, favor, kindness. *

ob-stringō, -ere, strinxī, strictus [stringō, tie], *a.*, bind, hold (*under obligations*). 2

10. **ita-que** [ita, so], and so, therefore, accordingly. *

11. **obses, -idis** [ob+sedeō, sit], M., F., hostage; pledge, security. *

1. **re-nūntiō, 1.** [nūntius], *a.*, bring back word, bring news, report; proclaim, declare. *

3. **Santonī, -ōrum** (ēs, -um), M., *a Gallic tribe between the Loire and Garonne.* 4

Tolōsātēs, -ium, M., *the people of Tolōsa in Gallia Provincia, modern Toulouse.* 2

4. **intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, -lēctus** [inter + legō, choose, select], *a.*, select *or* distinguish between; understand, know, ascertain, perceive. *

---

8. **novīs . . . studēbat,** *was eager for a change of government.* For the Dat. cf. *hīs*, l. 3. **quam:** see on **3**, 3.

9. **habēre obstrictās,** *to have under obligations* (bonds).

10, 11. **rem** = *lēgātiōnem.* **ā . . . impetrat ut patiantur,** *gets the Sequani to permit.* For the Substantive clause of Result as object see A. 332; G. 553; H. 501, II; *B.* 297 1. Contrast the use of **ut . . . possent 2,** 12. **obsidēsque . . . dent,** *and to exchange hostages.*

12. **Sēquanī, Helvētiī:** sc. *dent obsidēs* from the line above. **nē . . . prohibeant, ut trānseant:** for mode cf. **4,** 8: **3,** 5.

1. **renūntiātur:** Caesar kept himself informed of the movements of the Helvetii. See Int. to Bk. I. **Helvētiīs . . . animō:** for cases and translation see **sibi . . . animō, 7,** 10. **esse,** subject of *renūntiātur*, cf. **1,** 15. What is the subject of *esse?*

3. **facere,** cf. *facere* **7,** 11. **nōn longē:** about forty miles. **Tolōsātium:** they were clients of the Romans.

4. **quae cīvitās** (= *gēns, populus*): trans. *a tribe which.* **prōvinciā** see on **1,** 7. Trace on the map the boundaries of the Roman province, and read Int. 61, 62.

māgnō cum perīculō prōvinciae futūrum, ut hominēs bellicōsōs, populī Rōmānī inimīcōs, locīs patentibus māximēque frūmentāriīs fīnitimōs habēret. Ob eās causās eī mūnītiōnī, quam fēcerat, T. Labiēnum lēgātum praefēcit; ipse in Ītaliam māgnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscrībit

5. **bellicōsus, -a, -um** [bellum, war], full of war, warlike. 3

8. **T.**, *abbreviation for* **Titus**, *a Roman praenomen.* 2

Labiēnus, -ī, m., *A Roman family name;* Titus Attius Labienus, *Caesar's most trusted lieutenant in the Gallic War. In the Civil War he aided Pompey and was slain at Munda, 45, B. C.* *

praeficiō, -ere, fēcī, fectus [faciō, make], *a.*, make *or* place before *or* over, put in command of. *

Ītalia, -ae, [for **Vitalia,** *the land of oxen*], f., Italy, *sometimes* (*in Caesar*) *including Cisalpine Gaul.* *

9. **ibi,** *adv.*, there, in that place. *

cōn-scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus [scrībō, write], *a.*, write together in a list, register; levy, enroll, enlist. *

---

5. **māgnō ... futūrum** (*esse*), *that it would be* (attended) *with great danger to the province.* For the infin. cf. **3**, 7; for its subject see on *fīēbat* **2**, 12. **prōvinciae,** genitive, not dative.

6. **populī ... inimīcōs,** *enemies of the Roman people.* For the Gen. see **A.**234 *d*,1; **G.**359 **R.**1; *B.*200; **H.**391 II, 4; What case would we expect with *inimīcōs* if not used substantively? Cf. *Helvētiīs* **9**, 6. **locīs patentibus:** the broad valley of the Garonne, the most fertile part of the Province.

7. **eī mūnītiōnī,** *he placed over* (put in command of) *that fortification.* For the Dative see on **2**, 5.

8. **T. Labiēnum.** A very efficient officer, and one in whom Caesar reposed great confidence. As tribune in the year 63 B. C., he was very useful to Caesar and was a close confidant of the latter's political schemes. He basely deserted his patron when the Civil war broke out, and was killed at the battle of Munda, 45 B. C. **lēgātum:** see Int. 94, 95. **Ītaliam,** i. e. Cisalpine Gaul which was one of the provinces under his proconsular charge. What were the others? See Int. 23, 24.

9. **māgnīs itineribus,** *by forced marches.* **duās:** the XIth and XIIth. **cōnscrībit,** *levied.* See Int. 84.



Imperātor. *Lēgātus.*

This levy was made on Caesar's own authority. See Int. 32.

et trēs, quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant, ex hībernīs ēdūcit et, quā proximum iter in ūlteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs erat, cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus īre contendit. Ibi Ceutrōnēs et Grāiocelī et Caturīgēs, locīs superiōribus occupātīs, itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Complūribus hīs proeliīs pulsīs ab Ocelō, quod est citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in fīnēs Vocontiōrum ūlteriōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit:

10. **circum** [**circus**, a circle], *adv. and prep. with acc.*, around, about; among. *

Aquilēia, -ae, F., *a city of Cisalpine Gaul, still retaining its ancient name.* *

hiemō, 1. [**hiems**, winter], *n.*, pass the winter, winter. *

hībernus, -a, -um, of *or* belonging to winter, cold, winter; *in n. pl. as subst.*, **hīberna, -ōrum** (sc. **castra**), winter camp, winter quarters. *

ē-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus [**dūcō**, lead], *a.*, lead out *or* forth, draw forth. *

11. **Alpēs, -ium**, F., *pl.*, the Alps *mountains, separating Italy from Switzerland, France and Austria.**

12. **quīnque**, *indecl. num.*, five. *

Ceutrōnēs, -um, M., (1), *a Belgic tribe in Western Flanders.* (2), *a tribe of the Province in Savoy about modern Centron.* 2

13. **Grāiocelī, -ōrum**, M., *a Gallic tribe in the Graian Alps.* 1

Caturīgēs, -um, M., *a Gallic tribe in the Province whose name survives in modern Chorges.* 1

superior, -ius, *adj.* [comp. of **superus**, above], upper, preceding, higher, superior; previous, earlier, former. *

15. **Ocelum, -ī**, N., *a town of the Graioceli in Piedmont, now Oulx or Usseau.* *

citerior, -ius, *adj. comp.*, [**cis**, on this side], nearer, hither; **Gallia Citerior** = (*Cisalpīna*), Cisalpine Gaul, *on the nearer* (*Italian*) *side of the Alps.* *

16. **Vocontiī, -ōrum**, M., *a Gallic tribe between the Isere and Durance.* 2

septimus, -a, -um, [**septem**, seven], *ord. num.*, seventh. *

---

10. **trēs**: the VIIth VIIIth and IXth. **hībernīs**: See Int. 139.

11. **quā**, *where there was etc.*, or *by the shortest road there was etc.* **proximum iter**: up the Po to Turin, through Ocelum over Mont Genevre to Lyons on the Rhone. **ūlteriōrem Galliam**; the *Prōvincia Rōmāna* or *Gallia Trānsalpīna.*

12. **cum...legiōnibus**, *with these five legions.* For the case see A. 248*a*; B. LXVIII; G. 392; H. 419, I; *B.* 222. cf. *sēcum* **8**, 1. **Ceutrōnēs, Grāiocelī, Caturīgēs**: Alpine tribes in the territory of modern Savoy and Provence.

13. **locīs** etc., *seizing the heights.*

14. **complūribus**, etc.: English order: **hīs pulsīs complūribus proeliīs.** When the attribute of one pair of words comes between another word and its attribute (a b A B) the arrangement is called interlocked. Here the order is made more artificial for reversing the positions of the noun and attribute (a B A b).

15. **Ocelō**: Usseau, southwest of Turin. **extrēmum**, *farthest* (point, place, or town.)

16. **ūlteriōris prōvinciae**: see on line 11.

inde in Allobrogum fīnēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum prīmī.

The Helvetians invade the country of the Aedui who implore Caesar's protection.

11. Helvētiī iam per angustiās et fīnēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant et in Aeduōrum fīnēs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Aeduī, cum sē suaque ab iīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs

17. **inde,** *adv.* [im loc. fr. **is,**+**de**], from that place, from there, thence. *

Segusiāvī, -ōrum, M., *a tribe west of the Rhone, capital Lugdunum, now Lyons.* 3

18. **extrā** [contr. fr. **exterā,** sc. **parte**]. *adv. and prep. with acc.*, out of, outside of, beyond, without. *

19. **prīmus, -a, -um,** *superl. adj:* (*comp.* **prior**), first; foremost, chief. *

2. **trā-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus** [**trāns,** across], *a.*, lead *or* bring across, lead over, transfer, convey; draw *or* win over. *

3. **populor,** 1. *a.*, devastate, ravage, lay waste. 5

4. **dē-fendō, -ere, fendī, fēnsus,** *a.*, keep *or* ward off, repel; defend, protect; support, maintain. *

---

18. **exercitum dūcit:** Caesar was only about two months in going to Cisalpine Gaul, raising two legions there, forcing his way across the Alps through a hostile region and reaching Lyons, ready to confront the Helvetii. Trace on the map his route throughout and locate carefully all the places mentioned. **extrā prōvinciam.** In going outside of the Province, as in the levying of the troops, Caesar acted under a general commission to defend the frontier of the Province. See Int. 24. The situation among the Aedui, Sequani and other Gallic tribes was such as to compel Caesar to drive back the Helvetii, or the Romans would lose all their influence in Celtic Gaul and Ariovistus, the German king, would become supreme there. The extraordinary efforts of Caesar to hurry forward troops from Italy show how serious he thought the situation was.

1. **angustiās:** where were these *narrows?*

3. **pervēnerant:** they seem to have followed the right bank of the Rhone about half-way to its junction with the Saone and then to have headed in a northwesterly direction for the Saone. The whole distance is stated to be not more than 98 miles. **populābantur:** for what reasons?

4, 5. **suaque,** *and their property.* The neuter plural of adjectives is often employed to denote the abstract idea of things in general. **possent:** for the mode see on 9, 3. **rogātum,** *to ask.* With what verbs is the Acc. of the Supine employed? What idea is denoted? A. 302; B. 128; G. 435; H. 546; *B.* 340, 1. **ita sē etc.,** sc. *quī dīxērunt* or some expressions of saying.

ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium: Ita sē omnī tempore dē populō Rōmānō meritōs esse, ut paene in cōnspectū exercitūs nostrī agrī vāstārī, līberī eōrum in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expūgnārī nōn dēbuerint. Eōdem tempore Ambarrī, necessāriī et cōnsanguineī Aeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt, sēsē dēpopulātīs agrīs nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre. Item Allobrogēs, quī trāns Rhodanum

5. **rogō,** 1. *a.*, *n.*, ask, question, request; propose (**iūs**); bring forward (**magistrātum**); administer the oath to (**mīlitēs**). *

auxilium, -ī8[**augeō,** increase, promote], N., help, assistance, aid; *in pl.* auxiliary troops, reinforcements. *

ita, *adv.*, so, thus, in this way; as follows; **ita...ut,** even as, just as; **ut...ita,** in proportion to, although...yet.

6. **mereō** *and* **mereor,** 2. *a.*, deserve, merit, be worthy of; win, earn. *

paene, *adv.*, nearly, almost. *

cōnspectus, -ūs [**cōnspiciō,** descry], M., perception, observation; sight, view, presence. *

7. **vāstō,** 1. [**vāstus,** waste]. *a.*, lay waste, ravage, make desolate, devastate. *

līberī, -ōrum [**līber,** free], M., *the free members of the household* (*as opp. to slaves*); children. *

servitūs, -ūtis [**servus,** a slave], F., slavery, servitude. *

ab-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus [**dūcō,** lead], *a.*, lead away, draw, *or* carry off, withdraw. *

8. **ex-pūgnō,** 1. [**pūgnō,** fight], *a.*, take *or* carry by storm, capture by assault; overpower, sack. *

dēbeō, 2. [contr. for **dē-habeō**], *a.*, *n.*, *have from* (*one's possessions*) *and hence*, owe, be bound *or* under obligations; be due, ought. *

Ambarrī, -ōrum, M., *clients of the Aedui, between the Saone and Rhone.* 2

9. **necessārius, -a, -um,** needful, requisite, necessary; **necessāria, -ōrum,** necessities (of life), supplies; **necessārius, -ī,** kinsman, friend, client, patron. *

cōn-sanguineus, -a, -um, [**sanguis,** blood], of the same blood; *as subst.*, kinsman, relative. 4

10. **dēpopulor** 1. *dep. a.*, lay waste, ravage; sweep away, destroy. *

11. **hostis, -is,** M., F., *stranger, foreigner*; (*public*) enemy, foe; *pl.*, the enemy. *

---

6. **meritōs esse:** an appeal to the friendly relations that had long existed between the two peoples. Sixty years before, the Aedui had been styled '*sociī populī Rōmānī*'. **in cōnspectū,** *before the eyes.*

7. **nostrī,** (gen. sing. with *exercitūs=Rōmānī.*), used because the *ōrātiō oblīqua* is addressed to Romans by a Roman.

8. **Ambarrī:** the branch of the Aedui *around* or *near* the Arar or Saone. They dwelt in the the angle formed by the Saone and Rhone. *Bibracte,* the center of the Druidical religion and *Noviodunum* (Nevers), an important commercial town, were the chief cities.

9. **necessāriī,** *close friends* (through common interest). **cōnsanguineī** *kinsmen.*

10. **dēpopulātīs agrīs,** *since their fields were laid waste.* The perfect participle in a number of deponents is used passively.

11. **trāns Rhodanum:** north

vīcōs possessiōnēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt et dēmōnstrant, sibi praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquī. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn exspectandum sibi statuit, dum omnibus fōrtūnīs sociōrum cōnsūmptīs in Santonōs Helvētiī pervenīrent.

While crossing the Arar Caesar destroys Tigurini, the rear guard of the Helvetians.

12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per fīnēs Aeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum īnfluit, incrēdibilī lēnitāte, ita ut oculīs in utram partem flu-

12 **possessiō, -ōnis,** [**possīdō,** take possession of], F., taking possession of, seizing; possession, occupation; a possession, property. 5
fuga, -ae, F., running away, flight. *
13. **dē-mōnstrō,** 1. [**mōnstrō,** show], *a.*, point out, declare precisely, show, prove, explain. *
praeter, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, along by, beyond, contrary to; except, besides. *
solum, -ī, N., bottom, ground, soil; **agrī solum,** the bare ground. 4
nihil (nīl) [cf. **nihilum** fr. **nē** + **hilum,** a whit, anything], N., *indecl.*, nothing; *acc. as adv.*, not at all, in no way *
14. **ex-spectō,** 1. [**spectō,** look at], *a.*, look out, wait; look out for, await, expect; anticipate, apprehend. *
15. **statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus** [**status,** position], *a.*, put in position, set up, place; determine, judge, resolve; take measures. *
fōrtūna, -ae [**fōrs,** chance], F., luck, chance; good fortune, success; property, estate. *
cōn-sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus [**sūmō,** take], *a.*, *take together or all at once;* devour, consume, destroy; use up, waste, pass. *

1. **Arar, -aris** (*acc.* **-im**), M., *a river of Belgic Gaul rising in the Vosges and emptying into the Rhone, the modern* Saone. 5
2. **in-crēdibilis, -e** [**crēdibilis,** worthy of belief], unworthy of belief, unlikely, extraordinary. *
3. **lēnitās, -tātis** [**lēnis,** smooth], F., smoothness, gentleness. 1
oculus, -ī, M., eye. *
uter, utra, utrum, (*gen.* **utrīus**) which of the two, which. 4

---

of the upper course of the stream.

13, 14. sibi . . . reliquī, *that they* (direct *we*) *have nothing left, except the soil of the field.* **sibi: 7,** 10. **reliquī:** used substantively and partitive gen. with *nihil*, lit. *nothing of a remainder.* **nōn . . . expectandum** (*esse*), *that he must not wait* (*it was not to be waited by him*). For the verb form see on **7,** 15.

15. sibi: for the case see A. 232; B. LXXI; G. 355; H. 388; *B.* 189. How is the agent expressed with other parts of the verb?

16. Santonōs: already mentioned in **10,** 3. **pervenīrent:** for mode see on *convenīrent* **7,** 19.

3. lēnitāte, *with remarkable gentleness*, as contrasted with the swift turbid waters of the Rhine and the rivers of Italy. For the ablative see A. 248; B. 88; G. 399; H. 419, III; *B.* 220. (1), (2). What may be used instead of the adjective? **in . . . fluat,** *in which direction it flows.* For the mood see A. 334; B. 114; G. 467; H. 529, I; *B.* 300. Cf **8,** 15.

at iūdicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētiī ratibus āc lintribus iūnctīs trānsībant. Ubi per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est, trēs iam partēs cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse, quartam ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus ad eam pārtem pervēnit, quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. Eōs impedītōs et inopīnantēs aggressus māgnam partem eōrum concīdit: reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in

4. **iūdicō**, 1. [**iūdex**, a judge], *a.*, pass judgment judge, decide, determine. *
linter, lintris, F., M., skiff, river *or* ferry boat. 3
5. **explōrātor, -ōris**, M., a scout. *
7. **quartus, -a, -um** [**quattuor**, four], fourth. *
citrā [**cis**, on this side], *adv. and prep. with acc.*, this side, within. *
8. **vigilia, -ae** [**vigil**, awake], F., wakefulness, watching; watch, guard, sentinels; *the Romans divided the night into four watches.* *
castrum, -ī, N., fort, stronghold: *in pl.*, **castra, castrōrum**, fortified camp, camp. *
10. **im-pediō**, 4. [**in** + **pēs**, foot], *a.*, *entangle the feet;* hamper, obstruct, embarrass, hinder: *in p. p. as adj.*, encumbered with baggage, burdened, hampered, hindered. *
in-opīnāns, -antis [**opīnor**, suppose], not supposing, unawares. *
ag (**ad**) **-gredior, gredī, gressus sum** [**ad** + **gradior**, step, advance], *a.*, *n.*, advance to *or* against, approach; assault, attack. 4
11. **con-cīdō, -ere, cīdī, cīsus** [**caedō**, cut], *a.*, cut to pieces, kill, slay. 3
mandō, 1. [**manus** + **dō**, give], *a.*, *give into one's hands;* entrust, commit; enjoin, order, command. *

---

4. **possit**: for mood cf. **6, 13.**
5. **trānsībant**: at Macon or north of Trevoux. **explōrātōrēs**: see Int. 141.
6, 7. **trēs . . . trādūxisse**, *that the Helvetii had already conveyed three parts* (fourths) *of their troops across this river.* Of the compound *trādūxisse*, the simple verb governs *partēs*, while *flūmen* is the object of *trāns* in composition. A. 239 2, *b*; G. 331 R. 1; H. 376; *B.* 179, 1. **Ararim**: for the ending *-im* see A. 56 *a*, 1; B.H.4, *c*; G. 57; R. 1; H. 62, III, 1; *B.* 179. **reliquam esse**, *was left.* The adj. *reliquus* is often joined with part of *esse* as if a participle.
8. **dē tertiā vigiliā**, *during* (*in the course of*), *etc.* **dē**, in expressions of time shows that the action (time) is in progress. **vigiliā**: there were four watches, two before midnight and two after. The third watch lasted from midnight to about three a. m. **legiōnibus tribus**: about how many men? See Int. 86.
9. **pervēnit**: he marched North along the east bank of the Saone.
10. **impedītōs, inopīnantēs**, (while) *unprepared* (because) *not expecting* (the Romans).
11. **concīdit**: numerous burial mounds, both Roman and Celtic, have been unearthed on the site of

proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus: nam omnis cīvitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est. Hīc pāgus ūnus, cum domō exīsset patrum nostrōrum memoriā, L. Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat et ēius exercitum sub iugum mīserat. Ita sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum immortālium, quae pars cīvitātis Helvētiae īnsīgnem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea prīnceps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn sōlum pūblicās, sed etiam prīvātās

12. **silva, -ae,** F., *a wood*, forest, woods. *
ab-dō, dere, didī, ditus [**dō,** give], *a.*, give *or* put away, remove, withdraw, hide, conceal. *
pāgus, -ī, [cf. **pangō,** fix], M., *a place with fixed boundaries;* village; district, province, canton. **Tigurīnus pāgus,** *one of the four Helvetian cantons, the country of the Tigurini, perhaps in modern Zurich.* *
13. **nam,** *conj.*, for, now: *introducing an explanation.* *
quattuor, *indecl. num. adj.*, four. *
15. **interficiō, -ere, fēcī, fectus** [**faciō,** make], *a.*, *make from among*; make away with, kill, destroy. *
16. **sīve, (seu)** [**sī,** if + **ve,** or], *conj.*, or if, whether, if either, **sīve . . . sīve,** either . . . or, whether . . . or. *
cāsus, -ūs [**cadō,** fall], M., *what befalls*; accident, chance, misfortune: **cāsū,** by chance. *
deus, -ī, M., a god, deity. *
immortālis, -e [**in-** + **mortālis,** mortal], not mortal, immortal. *
17. **īnsignis, -e** [**sīgnō,** mark], marked, remarkable; *in neut. as subst.*, mark, sign, signal, decoration. *
calamitās, -tātis, F., defeat, disaster, misfortune.
18. **per-solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtus** [**solvō,** loose], *a.*, loose *or* pay in full, discharge, pay (**poenās,** penalty), 1
19. **sōlum,** *adv.* [**sōlus,** only], only, merely. *
pūblicus, -a, -um [for **populicus** fr. **populus,** people], of the state *or* people, common, public. *
sed, *conj.*, but, yet (*a stronger adversative than* **autem** *or* **at**). *

---

this battle, showing that burial was performed in great haste. This battle is placed by Rüstow on the 10th of June. **mandārunt:** contracted from *mandāvērunt.* For the contraction of perfects in **-āvī** (also **-ēvī -ōvī**) see A. 128 *a*, 1; B. L. 7; G. 131,1; H. 235; *B.* 116, 1. **silvās:** we should expect the abl. (place where) but the verb *abdidērunt* implies motion: *ran into and hid.*

12. **pāgus:** a tribe or district.

13. **omnis,** *as a whole.*

14. **exīsset:** for mode cf. **4,** 9. For the contraction of perfects in **-īvī** see A. 128 *a* 2; B. H. L, 7; G. 131, 1; H. 235 1; *B.* 116, 1,

15. **memoriā,** *in the time* (not *memory*); for case see on *diē* **4.** 4. **L. Cassium:** see on **7,** 13. **sub iugum:** see on **7,** 15.

17. **quae . . . Helvētiae,** *that part of the Helvetian people, which.* The antecedent (*pars*) here appears only in the relative clause with the relative (*quae*) in agreement. A. 201 *c*; B. LXXIV; G. 616; H. 445 9; *B.* 251 4.

18. **populō . . . intulerat,** *had inflicted upon, etc.* **populō:** for case

iniūriās ultus est, quod ēius socerī L. Pīsōnis avum, L. Pīsōnem lēgātum, Tigurīnī eōdem proeliō, quō Cassium, interfēcerant.

The Helvetians, headed by Divico, haughtily ask for peace.

13. Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōnsequī posset, pōntem in Arare faciendum cūrat atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētiī repentīnō ēius adventū commōtī, cum id, quod ipsī diēbus XX aegerrimē cōnfēcerant, ut flūmen trānsīrent, illum ūnō diē fēcisse intellegerent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cūius lēgātiōnis Divicō prīnceps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dūx Helvētiōrum

20. **ulcīscor, -ī, ultus sum,** *a.*, avenge, chastise, punish, take vengeance on. 5
socer, socerī, M., father-in-law. 1
avus, -ī, M., grandfather; ancestor. 2

2. **cōn-sequor, sequī, secūtus sum** [**sequor,** follow], *a.*, follow up, go after, pursue; reach, overtake; gain, attain, succeed. *
3. **cūrō,** 1. [**cūra,** care], *a.*, care for, take care, provide, arrange, cause to be done. *
4. **repentīnus, -a, -um** [**repēns,** sudden], sudden, unlooked for, unexpected, hasty. *
com-moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus [**moveō,** move], *a.*, move *or* excite thoroughly, rouse, agitate. *
XX (= **vīgintī**), *indecl. num.*, twenty. *
5. **aegerrimē** [**aegrē,** with difficulty], *adv.*, *superl.*, with the greatest difficulty. 1
7. **Divicō, -ōnis,** M., *an Helvetian chieftain.* 2
Cassiānus, -a, -um [**Cassius**], of *or* with Cassius, Cassian. 1

---

see on **2,** 5. **prīnceps . . . persolvit;** *first suffered punishment.* For the adverbial use of the adjective see A. 191; B. LXXIV, G. 325 R. 6; H. 443; *B.* 239.

20, 21. Note the accumulation of appositives: **L. Pīsōnis** with **socerī; L. Pīsōnem** with **avum; lēgātum** with **L. Pīsōnem. socerī:** L. Calpurnius Piso, who was one of the consuls in this year. Caesar had married his daughter, Calpurnia, while consul, in 59 B. C.

2. pōntem faciendum cūrat, *causes a bridge to be constructed.* For the Gerundive expressing *purpose* after verbs (*not* prepositions) see A. 294, *d;* B. 126; G. 430; H. 544 N. 2; *B.* 337, 7, *b*), 2). This bridge was probably of boats. See Int. 144.

4. cum etc.: English order, *cum intellegerent illum ūnō diē fēcisse id quod ipsī etc.*

5. ut . . . trānsīrent: in apposition with *id*, cf. **ut . . . cremārētur, 4,** 3.

6. intellegerent, for mood see on **4,** 9. **lēgātōs:** does the word have the same meaning as *lēgātum* in **10,** 8?

7. bellō Cassiānō: see on **7,** 13.

fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūros Helvētiōs, ubi eōs Caesar cōnstituisset atque esse voluisset: sīn bellō persequī persevērāret, reminīscerētur et veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī et prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod imprōvīsō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum iī,

8. **agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus,** *a.*, *n.*, set in motion; drive (*of animals*); move forward, advance (*of military works*); do, transact, carry on (*of business*); discuss, speak; hold (**conventum**); give, render (**grātiās**); plead (**causam** *or* **rem**); **quod agitur,** the matter in hand; **rēs agitur,** something is at stake. *

11. **sīn,** *conj.* [**sī** + **nē**], if however, but if. 2

per-sequor, sequī, secūtus sum [**sequor,** follow], *a.*, follow through *or* on, continue in, pursue, follow up; avenge (**mortem**). *

persevērō, 1. [**per-sevērus,** very strict], *n.*, *abide by, adhere to;* persist, persevere. 2

reminīscor, -ī [**mēns,** mind], *a.*, call to mind, remember. 2

vetus, -eris, old, ancient, former: veteran (**mīlitēs**). *

12. **in-commodum, -ī** [**commodum,** convenience], N., inconvenience, loss, trouble, disaster, defeat. *

prīstinus, -a, -um [for **priustinus** fr. **prior**], former, primitive, original. *

13. **im-prōvīsus, -a, -um** [**prō** + **videō,** see], not seen before, unforeseen, unexpected: *abl.* **imprōvīsō,** *adv.*, unexpectedly, suddenly. *

ad-orior, orīrī, ortus sum [**orior,** arise], *a.*, rise against, assail, attack; begin, attempt. *

---

8. **sī** etc.: Divico's speech is put in *ōrātiō oblīqua.* The first sentence, *Sī . . . voluisset* (l. 10) is declaratory. In what mood will its principal verbs (*futūrōs, itūrōs* l. 9) be in direct discourse?

9. **Helvētiīs:** in direct discourse the noun may be retained, or the pronoun *we* substituted for it. **faceret;** a future condition with no thought of doubt: what mood and tense in the direct form? **itūrōs, futūrōs:** sc. what? cf. **8,** 11; **6,** 13.

10. **Caesar:** Divico is speaking to Caesar: what pronoun will replace the noun *Caesar* in the direct form? **cōnstituisset:** for the mode in subordinate clauses of indirect disc. see on **7,** 12. For the tense in the direct form notice that the idea is future and the stem is the perfect: what tense in the indicative with a perfect stem denotes future time?

11. **sīn** etc.: this sentence is in form precisely similar to that in **7,** 20. What is the principal verb in this sentence? What mood will it have in the direct form? As its subject here is *Caesar* understood, what person will it have in the direct form? **persevērāret:** for mood and tense cf. *faceret* l. 9; what person in direct form?

12. **incommodī, virtūtis:** for the construction with verbs of remembering and forgetting see A. 219; B. LXXVI; G. 376; H. 406, II; *B.* 205, 206.

13. **quod,** *as to the fact that.* **adortus esset:** indicative perfect in direct form: what person?

quī flūmen trānsīssent, suīs auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut suae māgnō opere virtūtī tribueret aut ipsōs dēspiceret. Sē ita ā patribus māiōribusque suīs didicisse, ut magis virtūte contenderent quam dolō aut īnsidiīs nīterentur. Quārē nē committeret ut is locus, ubi cōnstitissent, ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen caperet, aut memoriam prōderet.

14. ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *a.*, *n.*, carry, bring; endure, suffer, withstand; receive, report: **ferunt,** they say. *

15. māgnō opere = māgnopere [**māgnus,+opus,** work], *adv. with great labor;* especially, greatly, exceedingly, earnestly. *

tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [**tribus,** a tribe or division], *a.*, *divide*; assign, allot, ascribe; grant, pay, render. *

16. dēspiciō, -ere, spēxī, spectus [**speciō,** look], *a.*, look down upon, scorn, despise. 5

māior, māius [*comp. of* **māgnus**], greater (*in degree, size, time etc.*); older: *in pl. as subst.* (*with or without* **nātū**), ancestors. *

discō, -ere, didicī, *a.*, *n.*, learn, be taught. 4

17. magis, *comp. adv.* [**māgnus**], more, rather, in a higher degree. *

dolus, -ī, M., craft, tricks, treachery. 2

īnsidiae, -ārum [**sedeō,** sit], F., *pl.*, a sitting *or* lying in wait; ambush, ambuscade: **per īnsidiās** *or* **ex īnsidiīs,** by artifice *or* stratagem. *

nītor, -ī, nīsus (nīxus) sum, *n.*, rest, *or* rely upon; climb, advance; strive, endeavor. 3

18. quārē [abl. of **quī** and **rēs**], *adv., by which thing*; wherefore, why. *

committō, -ere, mīsī, mīssus [**mittō,** send], *a.*, send *or* bring together, unite, join; commit, cause, do; **proelium committere,** join *or* begin battle. *

cōnsistō, -ere, stitī [**con-sistō**], *n.*, take a stand *or* position, keep one's position, stand, form (*of soldiers*); stop, halt, remain, stay; consist in, depend *or* rest on. *

19. interneciō, -ōnis [**necō,** destroy], F., extermination, annihilation, utter destruction. 2

nōmen, -inis, N., name; reputation, renown; account. *

20. prōdō, -dere, -didī, -ditus *a.*, give forth, publish, betray, transmit, hand down: **memoriam:** preserve, hand down (*to posterity*); **memoriā proditum:** told in tradition, handed down. *

---

15. māgnō opere, used for the lacking adverb of *māgnus;* with *tribueret* trans. *overrate.* **tribueret:** for mood cf *reminīscerētur* l. 11, but notice that *nē* (l. 14) cannot be joined with the imperative mood. For a substitute see A. 269 *a*, 1, 2; G. 270, 271 2 H. 489; *B.* 276, *a*, *b*, *c*.

17, 18. contenderent, nīterentur: for mode in direct disc. cf. 12, 4. **īnsidiīs nīterentur,** *trust in stratagems.* • For constr. with **nitor** see A. 254*b*; B. LXXVII; G. 401, R. 6; H. 425, 1 (1) N; *B.* 218, 3. **nē committeret,** (precisely like *nē tribueret* l. 15) *do not cause* (or *permit*). **ubi cōnstitissent,** may stand for a perfect indicative (cf. *adortus esset* l. 13) or a future perfect (cf. *cōnstituisset* l. 10), more probably the latter.

Caesar proposes terms, which they refuse.

14. Hīs Caesar ita respondit: Eō sibi minus dubitātiōnis darī, quod eās rēs, quās lēgātī Helvētiī commemorāssent, memoriā tenēret, atque eō gravius ferre, quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī accidissent: quī sī alicūius iniūriae sibi cōnscius fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile cavēre; sed eō dēceptum, quod neque commīssum ā sē intellegeret, quārē timēret, neque sine causā timendum putāret. Quod sī vete-

1. **minor, -us,** [*comp. of* **parvus**], smaller, less. **dimidiō minor:** half as large—*Neut. as subst.*, less, not much. *

2. **dubitātiō, -ōnis** [**dubitō,** doubt], F., doubt, uncertainty. 3

3. **commemorō, 1.** [**memor,** mindful], *a.*, call to mind, remind, state, mention. *

graviter, *adv.*, heavily, with greater weight, with force.—Fig., severely, seriously: **graviter ferre:** take to heart, be annoyed; **premere,** press hard. *

4. **meritum, -ī** [**mereor,** deserve], N., desert, service, merit, favor. *

ac-cidō, -ere, cidī [**cadō,** fall], *n.*, fall to *or* upon; befall, happen, fall to the lot of, occur: **accidit,** it happens. *

aliquis, -quae, -quid [**alius,** other +**quis**] and **aliquī, -qua, -quod** [**alius**+**quī**] *indef. pron.*, some one, something; anyone, anything, any. *

5. **cōn-scius, -a, -um** [**sciō,** know], *sharing in knowledge*; conscious; aware of. *

caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautus, *n.*, be cautious *or* on one's guard: take heed *or* precautions. 3

6. **dē-cipiō, -ere, cēpī, ceptus** [**capiō,** take], *a.*, deceive. 1

7. **timeō, -ēre, -uī,** *a.*, *n.*, fear, dread, apprehend; be afraid *or* alarmed. *

---

1. **eō minus dubitātiōnis,** *the less perplexity.* For case of **eō** see A. 250; B. H. 92; G. 403; H. 423; *B.* 223. **minus** used as a substantive; why acc? **dubitātiōnis,** for case cf. *reliquī* **11,** 14.

3. **eō gravius** etc., *I am the more annoyed, the less they have happened by the desert of the Roman people* (= *the less the R. p. deserved that they should happen*). **eō . . . quō,** *the . . . the.* For the case cf. *eō*, l. 1.

4. **quī sī,** *now if they* (the Roman people) for translation see on **1,** 11.

5. **iniūriae sibi cōnscius:** *conscious of any wrong doing;* **sibi** (dat. after *cōnscius*) is not to be trans. in English. **iniūriae:** for case see on **2,** 14.

6. **eō deceptum** (*esse*), *they had been deceived on this account, because etc.* **eō,** for case see on *rēbus* **2,** 12, and distinguish carefully from the same case in ll. 1 and 3 above. **cōmmīssum** (*esse*)*:* sc. as subject *aliquid* and translate: *that anything had been done.* **sē,** *by them* (i. e. the Roman people). For case see A. 246; B.H. 86; G. 401; H. 415, I; *B.* 216.

7. **quod sī,** *but if.*

ris contumēliae oblīvīscī vellet, num etiam recentium iniūriārum, quod eō invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent, quod Aeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogas vēxāssent, memoriam dēpōnere posse? Quod suā vīctōriā tam īnsolenter glōriārentur quodque tam diū sē impūne iniūriās tu-

8. **contumēlia, -ae** [cf. **contumāx**, unruly], F., affront, indignity, injury, violence. *
oblīvīscor, -ī, oblītus sum [**ob**+**līveō**, become dark], *a.*, *have the mind darkened;* forget. 2
num, *interrog. particle implying a negative answer.* **num possum**, I cannot, can I? *in indirect interrogation*, whether. 1
recēns, -entis, *adj.*, recent, fresh, new, vigorous. *
9. **temptō, 1.** [*freq. of* **tendō**, stretch], *n.*, handle, feel; make an attempt upon, attack; try, test, prove; try to win over. *
10. **vēxō, 1.** [*intensive of* **vehō**, carry], *a.*, shake, agitate; injure, harass, plunder, waste, overrun. *
11. **dē-pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus** [**pōnō**, place], *a.*, place down *or* aside, put away *or* off; place, station, deposit; give up; entrust. *
vīctōria, -ae [**vīctor**, victorious], F., victory. *
tam, so, so much, so very: **nōn tam . . . quam**, not so much as, less than. *
īnsolenter [**īn-solēns**, unwonted], *adv.*, unusually; arrogantly. *
12. **glōrior, 1.** [**glōria**, glory], *n.*, glory, glory in, boast of. *
diū, *adv.* [**diēs**], by day, cf. **noctū**; for a long time, long; **quam diū**, as long as; *comp.* **diūtius**, longer, too long, any longer; *superl*, **diūtissimē**. *
impūne [**in**+**poena**, punishment], *adv.*, without punishment, with impunity. 1

---

8. **contumēliae:** for case see on *incommodī* **13**, 12. **vellet:** the subject changes abruptly from *populus Rōmānus* to *Caesar;* sc. therefore *ipse.* What pronoun in the direct form? **iniūriārum,** objective gen. with *memoriam* l. 11.

9. **quod,** *the fact that.* The four clauses introduced by *quod* are substantive clauses (not causal clauses) and explain, i. e. are in apposition to, *iniūriārum.* The mood with this *quod* in direct discourse is the indicative: see A. 333; G. 524; H. 516, II; *B.* 299. **eō** = *Caesare*, for case cf. **8**, 7., and distinguish in gender from lines 1, 3, and 5 above.

11. **posse,** *he could not, could he?* In the direct form: *I cannot, can I?* What answer is expected? Notice that this sentence is interrogative, and that in interrogative sentences in indirect discourse the mood varies according to the person of the subject or the character of the question. See A. 338; G. 651, R. 1; H. 523, II, 1, 2; *B.* 315, 1, 2. **quod** etc., *whereas you boast etc.* This clause differs from those in lines 9 and 10 only in having no noun to explain; in this use it is said to be in the adverbial accusative. See A. 333 *a;* G. 525 R. 2; H. 516 II. 2 N.; *B.* 299, 2. We have three uses of the conjunction *quod* in this chapter, besides the relative (as a connective) in l. 7. Explain each.

12. **sē . . . tulisse,** *that they* (the Helvetii) *had for so long a time carried off their misdeeds* (*in-*

lisse admīrārentur, eōdem pertinēre. Cōnsuēsse enim deōs immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcīscī velint, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs ab iīs sibi dentur, utī ea, quae polliceantur, factūrōs intellegat, et sī Aeduīs dē iniūriīs, quās ipsīs sociīsque eōrum intulerint, item sī Allobrogibus satis-

13. ad-mīror, 1. [**mīror,** wonder], *a.*, wonder at, be surprised, admire. 5

cōn-suēscō, -ere, suēvī, suētus [**suēscō,** become used], *n.*, become accustomed, be wont: *pf. used as pres. and plupf. as impf.*: *in p. p. as adj.*, accustomed, usual, wonted. *

enim, *conj. corroborative and explanatory* [e-(i) fr. **is**+**nam,** for], in fact, really; for, but, now; **sed enim,** but in fact, however. *

14. com-mūtātiō, -ōnis [**mūtō,** change], F., a changing, change. *

doleō, 2. *n.*, feel *or* suffer (*bodily*) pain, suffer; feel (*mental*) pain, be distressed *or* annoyed, grieve. *

15. scelus, sceleris, N., crime, wickedness. 1

secundus, -a, -um [**sequor,** follow], next (*in time or order*), second; (*of currents and winds as following a vessel and metaphorically of other objects*), favorable, propitious, prosperous. **rēs:** prosperous affairs, prosperity. *

inter-dum, [**dum,** while], *adv.*, meanwhile, in the meantime; at times, sometimes. 2

16. diūturnus, -a, -um [**diū,** long], of long duration, prolonged, long. 1

im-pūnitās, -tātis [**in** + **poena,** punishment], F., freedom from punishment, impunity. 1

17. polliceor, 2. [**prō** + **liceor,** bid, offer], *a.*, *n.*, hold forth, offer, promise. *

19. satis-faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus [**faciō,** make], *n.*, make *or* do enough for, make *or* give satisfaction, satisfy; apologize, ask pardon. *

---

iūriās) *without punishment;* or *had escaped punishment for their misdeeds.*

13. eōdem pertinēre, *tended to the same result.* **cōnsuēsse:** uncontracted form? **12,** 11. **quō:** see on **8,** 7.

15, 16. secundiōrēs rēs, *a considerable degree of prosperity;* **diūturniōrem,** *quite long.* Observe that the comparative may be rendered by *too, rather, quite,* or any term expressing a comparison. **cum,** *though.* What is the construction with *cum concessive*? A. 326; B. 112, *b*; G. 587; H. 515, III; *B.* 309 3. What is the construction with *cum causal?* With *cum temporal?*

17. iīs: for case see on **ā sē,** l. 6.

18, 19. (*eōs*) **factūrōs** (*esse*), *that they would do.* **sī Aeduīs** etc., sc. *satisfaciant* from l. 19 and trans. *if you will give satisfaction to the Aedui for the wrongs you have done them and their allies* etc. **Aeduīs,** for case see **A.** 227 *e.*, 2; *B.* 187. H. 384 II 4 N. 1. **ipsīs sociīs:** for case cf. **2,** 5.

faciant, sēsē cum iīs pācem esse factūrum. Divicō respondit: Ita Helvētiōs ā māiōribus suīs īnstitūtōs esse, utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare cōnsuērint: ēius reī populum Rōmānum esse testem. Hōc respōnsō datō discessit.

Caesar follows the Helvetians and is defeated in a cavalry skirmish.

15. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar equitātumque omnem ad numerum quattuor mīlium, quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Aeduīs atque eōrum sociīs coāctum habēbat, praemittit, quī videant, quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. Quī cupidius novissimum āgmen īnsecūtī aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvē-

21. īn-stituō, -ere, stituī, stitūtus [statuō, set up], *a.*, *n.*, set up *or* in order, establish; set in array, draw up, form, devise; instruct, educate; begin, adopt; set on foot, determine, decide. *

23. testis, -is, M., F., a witness. 4

respōnsum, -ī [respōndeō, answer], N., reply, answer; advice. 4

dis-cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus [cēdō, go], *n.*, go apart *or* away, depart, leave, retire, forsake. *

1. posterus, -a, -um [post, after], after, following, next; *in* M. *pl. as subst.*, posterity; *sup.* **postrēmus** *or* **postumus.** *

moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *a.*, set in motion, move; excite, influence; occasion, remove, break up. *

2. equitātus, -ūs [equitō, ride], M., *a riding*; cavalry, horsemen. *

4. prae-mittō, -ere, mīsī, mīssus [mittō, send], *a.*, send before *or* in advance; dispatch. *

5. cupidē, [cupidus, desirous], *adv.*, desirously, eagerly. 4

6. āgmen, -inis [agō, set in motion], N., a moving body; a marching column; army; **in āgmine,** on the march; **prīmum āgmen,** the van. *

īn-sequor, sequī, secūtus sum [sequor, follow], *a.*, *n.*, follow up *or* after, pursue; press close, harass. *

aliēnus, -a, -um [alius, other], of *or* belonging to another, another's; strange, alien, unfamiliar; inopportune, unfavorable. *

---

1. diē: for case see on **4,** 4. **castra movent:** the Helvetii turned north to avoid Caesar.

2. equitātum: see Int. 100.

3, 4. quem coāctum habēbat, *which he had collected.* **coāctum habēbat** almost = **coēgerat,** see A. 292 *c*; G. 238; H. 388 I, N; *B.* 337, 6.

5. quī videant, *to see;* cf. **7,** 10. **quī:** plural, because of the collective idea in the antecedent **equitātum. quās in partēs,** *in what direction.* **videant:** for mood see on **12,** 3. **cupidius:** for trans. cf. **14,** 16.

6. novissimum āgmen, *the rear*, i. e. the "newest" or nearest to the pursuing Roman cavalry. **aliēnō locō:** because of the rugged nature of the region, which hindered the proper evolutions of the cavalry. **aliēnō,** *another's, unfavorable:* cf. **suus,** *one's own, favorable.*

tiōrum proelium committunt; et paucī dē nostrīs cadunt. Quō proeliō sublātī Helvētiī, quod quīngentīs equitibus tantam multitūdinem equitum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere nōnnunquam et novissimō āgmine proeliō nostrōs lacēssere coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat āc satis habēbat in praesentiā hostem rapīnīs, pābulātiōnibus populātiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs circiter quīndecim iter fēcērunt, utī inter novissimum hostium āgmen et nostrum prīmum

7. **paucus, -a, -um** (*usually in pl.*), [cf. **paulus**, little], little, few; *in pl. as subst.*, a few; **pauca** (*sc.* **verba**), a few words. *

cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsus, *n.*, fall; fall in battle, be slain, die. 2

8. **quīngentī, -ae, -a** [**quīn-que**, five + **centum**], five hundred. 5

eques, -itis, M., a horseman, a rider. —*Plur.* cavalry. Then (*as orig. serving on horseback*), a knight (*one of the moneyed class at Rome, next in rank to the senate*). Also, a knight (*of Gaul, of a corresponding class*). *

tantus, -a, -um [cf. **tām**, so], so much, so great, such; **tantī** (*neut. sing. gen.*), of so great account. *

9. **prō-pellō, -ere, pulī, pulsus** [**pellō**, drive], *a.*, drive *or* thrust forward, propel, urge on; put to flight, rout, dislodge. 4

audācter (**audāciter**) [**audāx**, bold], *adv.*, boldly, fearlessly, daringly. 5

sub-sistō, -ere, stitī [**sistō**, stand] *a.*, *n.*, halt; remain. 2

10. **lacēssō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus** [**laciō**, entice, move], *a.*, arouse, harass, provoke, irritate, attack. *

11. **coepī, coepisse**, *defect.* [**cum** + **apō** (**apiō**), take hold], *a.*, *have taken hold;* began, commenced, undertook. *P. p.*, **coeptus, -a, -um**, begun, commenced. *

12. **praesentia, -ae**, F., presence the present moment: **in praesentiā**, for the moment, at the moment. 5

rapīna, -ae [**rapiō**, pillage], F., pillaging, robbery, plunder. 1

pābulātiō, -ōnis [**pābulum**, fodder], F., getting fodder, foraging. *

populātiō, -ōnis [**populor**, ravage], F., ravaging, pillaging. 1

13. **circiter**, *adv. and prep. with acc.* [**circus**, circle], about, near. *

quīndecem [**quīnque**, five + **decem**], *indecl. num.*, fifteen. *

---

7. **paucī**: the rest fled at the instigation of their commander, the treacherous Dumnorix.

8. **sublātī** (fr. *tollō*), *elated.* **tantam**, etc. How many?

11, 12. **satis habēbat . . . prohibēre**, *considered it sufficient . . . to keep* (*held that to prohibit was sufficient*). **rapīnīs**: for case cf. **1, 14.**

13. **ita**, etc. Caesar was obliged to follow the Helvetii because there was no place along their route where he could attack them with advantage or head them off.

nōn amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs mīlibus passuum interesset.

The Aeduans fail to furnish Caesar promised supplies.

16. Interim cotīdiē Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum, quod essent pūblicē pollicitī, flāgitāre. Nam propter frīgora, quod Gallia sub septentriōnibus, ut ante dictum est, posita est, nōn modo frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn

15. **amplē** [**amplus,** large], largely, widely, liberally; *comp.* **amplius,** more, farther, longer. *

quīnī, -ae, -a [**quīnque**], *distrib. num. adj.*, five each, five at a time. 4

sēnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.* [**sex,** six], six each. 2

inter-sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *n.*, be *or* lie between, intervene; be apart; be present, take part in; *impers.* **interest,** it concerns, it is important; there is a difference, an interval. *

1. **interim,** *adv.* meanwhile, in the meantime: **interim . . . interim,** sometimes . . . sometimes. *

cotīdiē [**quot,** how many, every + **diēs**], daily, every day. *

2. **pūblicē** [**pūblicus,** public], at state cost, on behalf of the state, officially. *

flāgitō, 1. *a.*, demand passionately, importune, press. 1

3. **frīgus -oris** [**frīgeō,** be cold *or* chilly], N., cold weather, cold; *pl.*, **frīgora, -um,** cold seasons. *

4. **pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus** [for **posnō** fr. **por** (**prō**) + **sinō,** let], *a.*, place, put, set aside; appoint, station, regard; pitch (**castra**): *pass.*, be situated, dependent. *

modo, *adv.* [**modus,** measure], *with measure* or *limit*; only, merely; even, just, at least, but: *of time*, just now, recently; **nōn modo . . . sed etiam,** not only . . . but also. *

mātūrus, -a, -um, ripe; of proper age, mature; timely, early. *

---

15. **nōn amplius . . . interesset,** *there was an interval of not more than &c.* **mīlibus:** for the case see A. 247; B. 87; G. 398; H. 417; *B.* 217. **interesset,** used impersonally.

1. **Caesar:** the Roman general was in a perilous situation, being far from his own supplies, in the midst of only half hearted allies, and confronted by a vigilant foe. Caesar was careful of his supplies, see Int. 52. **Aeduōs frūmentum,** *corn of the Aedui.* For the two Accusatives see A. 239 *c*; B. 74, *a*; G. 339; H. 374; *B.* 178, 1, *a*).

2. **quod . . . pollicitī,** *which* (as Caesar claimed) *they had proffered on the state's behalf.* For the mood see A. 341, *d*; G. 628; H. 528, 1; *B.* 323. **flāgitāre = flāgitābat** (**flāgitāvit**): for the Infinitive (notice the case of its subject!) see A. 275; B. 123; G. 647; H. 536 1; *B.* 335.

3. **frīgora,** *the cold* (season). The climate in Gaul was much colder in Caesar's time than now. The clearing up of the country accounts in part for the change. **ut:** adv. or conj.? See on **4,11.** **ante:** in **1,** 18.

4. **frūmenta,** *standing grain, crops:* **frūmentum,** *grain* (harvested) and in the singular number because in bulk. **mātūra nōn erant:** although it was now late in June.

5. **pābulī,** *fodder* for the support of the pack animals. The Hel-

erant, sed nē pābulī quidem satis māgna cōpia suppetēbat: eō autem frūmentō, quod flūmine Arare nāvibus subvēxerat, propterea minus ūtī poterat, quod iter ab Arare Helvētiī āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcere Aeduī: cōnferrī, comportārī, adesse dīcere. Ubi sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit et diem īnstāre, quō diē frūmentum mīlitibus mētīrī oportēret, convocātīs eōrum prīncipibus, quōrum māgnam cōpiam in castrīs habēbat, in hīs Diviciacō et Liscō, quī

5. **pābulum, -ī** [cf. **pāscō**, feed and **pānis**, bread], N., food, fodder, sustenance. *
quidem, *adv.*, (*emphasizing the expression before it*) indeed, at any rate, at least, truly: **nē . . . quidem,** not even. *
6. **sub-vehō, -ere, vēxī, vēctus** [**vehō**, carry], *a.*, bring up. 1
7. **ā-vertō, -ere, vertī, versus** [**vertō**, turn], *a.*, turn away from *or* away, turn aside; turn back, repulse, estrange; *in p. p. as adj.*, turned away, retreating. *
8. **nōlō, nōlle, nōluī** [**nē + volō**, wish], *a.*, *n.*, not wish, be unwilling; *imper.* **nōlī** (**nōlite**) *with infin.* do not. *
9. **cōn-ferō, ferre, contulī, collātus** [**ferō**, bring], *a.*, bring *or* get together, collect, gather; ascribe to, charge: **sē**, retreat, take refuge; **sīgna**, join battle. *
com-portō, 1. [**portō**, carry] *a.*, carry together, collect. *
ad-sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, be near *or* present, be at hand; aid, assist. *
10. **īn-stō, stāre, stitī, status** [**stō**, stand], *n.*, stand upon *or* near, be at hand, press on; impend, threaten. *
mētior, -īrī, mēnsus sum, *n.*, deal *or* measure out, distribute. 3
11. **con-vocō,** 1. [**vocō**, call], *a.*, call together, summon, assemble. *
12. **Liscus, -ī,** M., *a chief magistrate of the Aedui.* 4

---

vetii had left nothing in the country for them.

6. **frūmentō:** object of *ūtī* l. 7, cf. **2**, 6. **flūmine,** *by way of the river.* For the case see A. 258 *g*; G. 389; H. 420, 1, 3; *B.* 218, 9. **nāvibus:** for case see on **3**, 20.

7. **iter āverterant:** the Helvetii had turned west toward the Loire in order to cross the Cevennes where their altitude was least. This was their best route to their destination (the country of the Santones).

8. **diem . . . dūcere,** *delayed him day after day.* For the inf. *dūcere* see on *flāgitāre*, l. 2.

9. **diūtius dūcī,** *that he was put off too long.* For rendering of the comparative see on **14**, 16.

10. **quō diē,** *on which;* why is *diē* not translated? See on **6**, 1; case of *quō?* Cf. **4**, 4. **mētīrī:** see Int. 116. The subject of *mētīrī* is *sē* understood; its object is *frūmentum.* The clause *frūmentum . . . mētīrī* is the subject of *oportēret*, l. 11.

11. **convocātīs prīncipibus** etc. *summoning* etc; for case cf. **2**, 2.

12. **Diviciacō:** see **3**, 14. Sc. *convocātīs* with *Diviciacō* and *Liscō.*

summō magistrātuī praeerat, quem vergobretum appellant Aeduī, quī creātur annuus et vītae necisque in suōs habet potestātem, graviter eōs accūsat, quod, cum neque emī neque ex agrīs sumī posset, tam necessāriō tempore, tam propīnquīs hostibus ab iīs nōn sublevētur; praesertim cum māgnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscēperit, multō etiam gravius, quod sit dēstitūtus, queritur.

13. summus, -a, -um [*sup. of* **superus,** high], highest, the highest part of, the top of; preeminent, greatest, chief, supreme. *

prae-sum, esse, fuī, futūrus [**prae,** before], *n.*, be before *or* over, be in command of, rule over. *

vergobretus, -ī, M., vergobret, *the title of the Aeduan chief magistrate.* 1

14. creō, 1. *a.*, create, produce; elect, appoint. 5

annuus, -a, -um [**annus,** year], year by year, yearly, annual. 1

vīta, -ae [cf. **vīvō,** live], F., life; manner of life; mankind. *

nex, necis [**necō,** slay], F., violent death, slaughter, murder; death. 3

15. potestās, -tātis [**possum,** be able], F., ability, power; dominion; authority. *

accūsō, 1. [**ad+causa**] *a., n., bring a case or charge against:* blame, censure, accuse. 3

emō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptus, *a.*, buy, purchase. 2

16. propīnquus, -a, -um [**prope,** near], near, neighboring, close at hand; *in pl. as subst.* relatives. *

17. sub-levō, 1. [**levō,** lift,], *a.*, lift from beneath, lift *or* raise up; sustain, assist, encourage. *

praesertim [**prae+serō,** join], *placed foremost;* particularly, especially. *

18. prex, precis, (*in sing. only in abl.*) [**precor** pray], F., prayer, request, entreaty; a good wish; imprecation. *

19. dē-stituō, -ere, stituī, stitūtus [**statuō,** set up], *a.*, set *or* place aside, forsake, desert. 1

queror, -ī, questus sum, *a., n.*, complain, bewail, lament. *

---

13. summō . . . praeerat, *held (was over) the highest office.* For the Dat. see on **2,** 5.

13. quem . . . Aeduī, *whom the Aeduans call vergobret.* For the two Accusatives see A. 239 1 *a*; G. 340; H. 373; *B.* 177. **vergobretum:** a Roman corruption for Celtic *guerg,* "effecting" and *breth,* "judgment". Caesar tells us (VII, **33**) that this officer was not permitted to go beyond the limits of the state during his term; and that no one could be vergobret while one of his family who had held the position was living.

15–17. quod . . . sublevētur, *because* (as he said) *he was not aided by them.* When does *quod causal* take the Subj? A. 321; B. 110, *a*; G. 541; H. 516, II; *B.* 286, 1. **ab iīs:** what Abl.? Cf. **14,** 6.

18, 19. multō: for case cf. *eō* **14,** 3. **sit dēstitūtus:** for mode see on 1, 15–17, above.

Liscus shows the bad faith of an Aeduan faction headed by Dumnorix.

17. Tum dēmum Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus, quod anteā tacuerat, prōpōnit: Esse nōnnūllōs, quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat, quī prīvātim plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs. Hōs sēditiōsā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitūdinem dēterrēre nē frūmentum cōnferant, quod dēbeant: praestāre, sī iam prīncipātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; neque dubitāre quīn, sī Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Aeduīs

1. **tum,** *adv.* [cf. **tam**], then, at this or that time (*coinciding with another period of time.*): **cum . . . tum,** both . . . and, not only . . . but also. *

dēmum, *adv.* [acc. of **dēmus** (superl. of **dē**), downmost], at length, at last finally. 4

2. **anteā,** *adv.*, formerly, before, previously, once; *always with a verb.* *

taceō, 2 *a.*, *n.*, be silent *or* quiet, keep silence, pass over in silence: *in p. p. as adj.*, silent. 3

prō-pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus [**pōnō,** place], *a.*, place *or* put forward, set forth, present, propose, explain, declare, promise, offer, purpose. *

4. **valeō,** 2. *n.*, be strong *or* vigorous, have weight *or* influence; avail; be well. *

prīvātim, *adv.* [**prīvātus,** private], privately, individually, as private citizens. 3

5. **sēditiōsus, -a, -um** [**sēditiō,** sedition], full of sedition, mutinous, seditious. 1

im-probus, -a, -um [**probus,** good], bad, wicked, shameless. 1

dē-terreō, 2. [**terreō,** frighten], *a.*, frighten away *or* off, hinder, deter, prevent. 5

8. **per-ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus** [**ferō,** bear], *a.*, bear *or* carry through, convey; announce, report; submit to, endure; *

dubitō, 1., *a.*, *n.*, *have two opinions,* waver in judgment, be uncertain, doubt. *

9. **superō,** 1. [**super,** over], *a.*, *n.*, go over, overmatch, be superior to, surpass, conquer; be overmuch *or* in excess, abound; be left over, remain, survive. *

---

2. quod: for omission of antecedent (here *id*) see **1,** 2. **prōpōnit:** for the tense see on **3,** 10, and cf. *accūsat,* **16,** 15; *queritur,* **16,** 19. **esse nōnnūllōs,** etc.; for **sunt nōnnūllī,** etc. in dir. disc. Reconstruct the dir. disc. of this chapter.

4. quī . . . possint, *who as private citizens possess more influence,* etc.

6. nē . . . cōnferant: nē (or **quōminus**) with its verb after a verb of hindrance is conveniently translated by *from* with the pres. part. For the Subj. cf. **3,** 5. **praestāre** etc.: a thought of these Gauls, sc. *hōs putāre:* (they think) *it is better to endure. etc* **praestāre** is impersonal.

8, 9. perferre: used as a substantive, cf. **7,** 11; what case has it here? **dubitāre,** sc. *hōs.* **quīn Aeduīs . . . sint ēreptūrī,** *that they will wrest from the* (hands of the)

lībertātem sint ēreptūrī. Ab eīsdem nostra cōnsilia, quaeque in castrīs gerantur, hostibus ēnūntiārī: hōs ā sē coërcērī nōn posse. Quīn etiam, quod necessāriā rē coāctus Caesarī ēnūntiārit, intellegere sēsē, quantō id cum perīculō fēcerit, et ob eam causam, quam diū potuerit, tacuisse.

The influence of Dumnorix. His character and policy.

18. Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Liscī Dumnorīgem, Diviciacī frātrem, dēsīgnārī sentiēbat, sed, quod plūribus praesentibus eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dīmittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex sōlō ea, quae in conventū dīxerat. Dīcit līberius atque audācius. Eadem

10. **lībertās, -tātis** [**līber**, free], F., freedom, liberty, independence. *

11. **coërceō,** 2. [**arceō**, shut up], *a.*, shut up completely, restrain, check. 2

13. **quantus, -a, -um** [cf. interrog. **quam**, how?], *a. interrog.*, how much? how great? how large? what? *b. relative*, as much, as great (large) as; **tantum . . . quantum,** as much (great *or* far) as: *in acc. as adv.*, how much: *in abl.*, as, as much as. *

2. **dē-sīgnō,** 1. [**sīgnō**, mark], *a.*, mark out, mean, indicate. 1

sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, *a.*, perceive, feel, be sensible of; experience, undergo; think, observe, be aware; decide. *

3. **praesēns, -entis** [**praesum**, be before *or* at hand], present, immediate, at hand. *

iactō, 1. [*freq. of* **iaciō**, hurl], *a.*, throw *or* hurl repeatedly, toss; (*of words*) talk about, mention, discuss. 3

celeriter [**celer**, quick], *adv.*, quickly, rapidly, speedily. *

concilium, -ī [**calō**, call], N., gathering, assembly, council. *

4. **dī-mittō, -ere, mīsī, mīssus** [**dīs-**, apart], *a.*, send apart *or* away, break up, dismiss; release, abandon, renounce. *

retineō, 2. [**teneō**, hold], *a.*, hold *or* keep back, detain; restrain, hinder; retain, preserve, maintain. *

quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītus, *a.*, seek *or* look for, inquire, ask, examine, investigate. *

sōlus, -a, -um, *gen.* **sōlīus,** alone, only, the only. *

5. **conventus, -ūs** [**veniō**, come], M., coming together; meeting, assembly. *

līberē [**līber**, free], *adv.*, freely, without restraint; generously. 4

Aeduans, etc. For the mode see on *possent* **3,** 20, but notice that this clause represents an accusative. **Aeduīs:** for the Dative see A. 229; G. 345; H. 386, 2; *B.* 188 2 *d*).

10. **ab eīsdem:** i. e. *nōnnūllōs* l. 2; for case cf. **14,** 6.

12. **quīn etiam,** *nay even, in fact.* **quod:** cf. **14,** 11. How does this differ from the *quod* clauses in **14,** 9?

13. **fēcerit:** see on **12,** 3; cf. **faciant, 15,** 5.

14. **quam diū,** *as long as.*

3. **plūribus praesentibus,** *when many were present.* Cf. **5,** 10.

sēcrētō ab aliīs quaerit; reperit esse vēra: Ipsum esse Dumnorīgem, summā audāciā, māgnā apud plēbem propter līberalitātem grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum. Complūrīs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Aeduōrum vēctīgālia parvō pretiō redēmpta habēre, propterea quod illō licente contrā licērī audeat nēmō. Hīs rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxisse et

6. **sēcrētō** [sēcernō, separate], *adv.*, separately, apart, privately, secretly. 2
reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertus [pariō, procure], *a.*, procure; find; find out, discover, ascertain. *
vērus, -a, -um, true, real, genuine; *in neut. as subst.*, the truth. 4
7. **audācia, -ae** [audāx, bold], F., boldness, daring, courage; presumption, effrontery. 3
līberālitās, -tātis [līber, free], F., *freedom in giving, etc.;* generosity. 2
9. **portōrium, -ī** [portō, carry], N., toll, duty, tax, tariff *on exports and imports.* 2
vēctīgal, vēctīgālis [vehō, convey], N., taxes *or* rents (*conveyed to the pūblicānī*), revenue, income. 3
parvus, -a, -um, *comp.* **minor**, *superl.* **minimus**, little, small, insignificant. 5
pretium, -ī, N., price, valuation. 2
10. **redimō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptus** [emō, buy], *a.*, buy back, repurchase; buy up, purchase. 3
contrā, *adv.*, on the contrary, on the other hand. 4
liceor, 2. [liceō, offer for sale], *a.*, *n.*, bid for, bid (*at an auction*). 2
audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, *semi-dep. a.*, dare, risk, venture. *
11. **nēmō**, *acc.* **neminem** [nē + homō, man], M., *no man;* no one, nobody. *
familiāris, -e [familia, household], pertaining to the household, personal, private; *as subst.*, intimate friend; **rēs**, personal property, estate. *
augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctus, *a.*, *n.*, increase, augment, enhance, add to. *

---

6. **reperit ipsum esse Dumnorīgem**, *that Dumnorix is, etc.*

6–24. Reconstruct the direct disc.

7. **summā audāciā**, (*a man*) *of the utmost recklessness.* Case? Cf. **6, 12.**

8. **cupidum rērum novārum**, *eager for a revolution.* **rērum**: for case cf. **2, 14.**

9. **portōria**: port duties, frontier duties, tolls paid for the privilege of crossing a country, etc. **vēctīgālia**; the general term for all kinds of taxes. The custom prevailed at Rome of letting out the collection of the taxes to companies of *pūblicānī*, for five years, for specified sums. This secured the state against loss, but left the tax gathering in the hands of rapacious and irresponsible agents. Thus the people were impoverished and their oppressors enriched. What modern country collects taxes in a similar way? **parvō pretiō**: thus defrauding the state. **pretiō**: For case see A. 252; B. 94; G. 404; H. 422; *B.* 225.

10. **redēmpta habēre**, *he had* (*having been*) *bought up*, see on **coāctum habēbat, 15, 4. illō licente**: for case cf. **2, 2.**

facultātēs ad largiendum māgnās comparāsse; māgnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alere et circum sē habēre, neque sōlum domī, sed etiam apud fīnitimās cīvitātēs largiter posse, atque hūius potentiae causā mātrem in Bitūrīgibus hominī illīc nōbilissimō āc potentissimō collōcāsse, ipsum ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habēre, sorōrem ex mātre et propīnquās suās nūptum in aliās cīvitātēs collocāsse. Favēre et cupere Helvētiīs propter eam affīnitātem, ōdisse etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia ēius dēminūta et Diviciacus frāter in antīquum lōcum grātiae

12. **largior, 4.** [**largus**, large], give largely *or* freely; bribe. 2

13. **sūmptus, -ūs,** [**sūmō**, take, expend], M., expense, cost. 1

semper, *adv.*, always, every time, constantly, ever. *

alō, -ere, -uī, -itus, *a.*, nourish feed, support; promote, foster, encourage. *

15. **largiter** [**largus**, large], largely, freely, liberally; **largiter posse**, to have very great influence. 1

potentia, -ae [**potēns**, powerful], F., power, authority, influence, dominion. *

māter, mātris, F., mother; matron. *

Bitūrīgēs, -um, M., *a tribe of Central Gaul in two branches, the Vibisci around Bordeaux, and the Cubi around Bourges.* 4

16. **illīc** [**ille**, that + **-ce**], in that place, there. 2

collocō, 1. [**locō**, place], *a.*, place together, place, set, station; arrange; **nūptum collocāre,** to give in marriage. *

17. **uxor, -ōris,** F., wife. *

soror, ōris, F., sister. 2

18. **nūbō, -ere, nūpsī, nūptus,** *a.*, *n.*, vail one's self; marry (*of the bride.* 1

faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautus, *n.*, be favorable to, favor. 2

19. **cupiō, -ere, cupīvī (iī), cupītus,** *a.*, *n.*, long *or* be eager for, desire; wish well to, favor. 5

affinitās, -tātis [**fīnis,** adjacent] F., alliance by marriage, relationship. 2

ōdī, ōdisse, *def.* (*pf. with signif. of pres.*), *a.*, hate, detest. 2

21. **dē-minuō, -ere, minuī, minūtus** [**minuō**, lessen], *a.*, lessen, diminish, impair. *

antiquus, -a, -um [**ante**, before], former, old, ancient. 3

---

12. **comparāsse:** for the contraction of perfects see on **12,** 11.

14. **domī,** *at home.* For case see A. 258, 2, *d;* B. 100; G. 411, R. 2; H. 426, 2; *B.* 232, 2.

15. **causā** following a Genitive and governing it is rendered, *for the sake of, on account of.*

17. **ipsum:** i. e., Dumnorix. See **3,** 14. **ex mātre,** *on his mother's side.*

18. **nūptum:** form and use? See on **11,** 5. Observe that the use is here *metaphorical* and not *literal* as in the reference.

19. **Helvētiīs:** cf. *rēbus* **9,** 8. **suō nōmine,** *on individual grounds.* For case see on *rēbus* **2,** 12.

atque honōris sit restitūtus. Sī quid accidat Rōmānīs, summamin spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī venīre; imperiō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā, quam habeat, grātiā dēspērāre. Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucīs ante diēbus esset factum, initium ēius fugae factum ā Dumnorīge atque ēius equitibus (nam equitātuī, quem auxiliō Caesarī Aeduī mīserant, Dumnorīx praeerat): eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitātum perterritum.

Caesar counsels with Diviciacus concerning his brother Dumnorix.

19. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs, cum ad hās suspīciōnēs certissimae rēs accēderent, quod per fīnēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs

22. **honōs (honor), -ōris,** M., honor, regard, glory, distinction. *
restituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [**statuō,** set up], *a.*, set up again, re-establish, restore. *
25. **dē-spērō, 1.** [**spēs,** hope], *a.*, *n.*, cease to hope, despair. *
26. **equester, -tris, -tre** [**equēs,** horseman], of *or* belonging to a horseman, equestrian; of cavalry, cavalry. *
ad-versus, -a, -um [**versus** *p. p.* of **vertō,** turn], *turned to or against;* opposite, fronting; adverse, unfavorable. *
30. **per-terreō, 2.** [**terreō,** frighten], *a.*, frighten thoroughly, terrify greatly. *

1. **cōgnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nitus** [**cum** + **(g)nōscō,** know], *n.*, know thoroughly; learn, ascertain; study, investigate. *
2. **accēdō, -ere, -essī, -essum,** [**ad** + **cēdō**], to approach, draw near to, arrive at, come to; to be added; **accēdēbat,** *it was added.* *

---

22. **sī quid:** for form and trans. of *quid* cf. **7,** 20.

23. **imperiō,** *under the sovereignty.* The Ablative expressing both *time* and *cause.*

26. **quod** etc.: *whereas an unfortunate engagement of cavalry had occurred a few days before.* **quod,** cf. **14, 11. proelium equestre,** see **15,** 5–7 text. **ante diēbus:** *ante* is an adverb; *diēbus* is abl. of degree of difference.

27, 28. **esset factum,** for mood see on **8,** 7. **Dumnorīge, equitibus:** for case cf. **14,** 6. **equitātuī:** for case cf. **2,** 5.

28. **auxiliō Caesarī,** *as an aid to Caesar:* for the datives see A. 233, *a;* B. 67; G. 356; H. 390, I, II; *B.* 191, 2.

1, 2. **ad . . . certissimae rēs accēderent,** *the most clearly proven facts were added to these suspicions.* These facts (*rēs*) are stated in the following *quod* clauses. **quod,** cf. **14,** 9: how do these clauses differ from that in **18,** 26? In what case are they?

3. **trādūxisset:** why Subj.?

inter eōs dandōs cūrāsset, quod ea omnia nōn modo iniūssū suō et cīvitātis, sed etiam īnscientibus ipsīs fēcisset, quod ā magistrātū Aeduōrum accūsārētur, satis esse causae arbitrābātur, quārē in eum aut ipse animadverteret aut cīvitātem animadvertere iubēret. Hīs omnibus rēbus ūnum repūgnābat, quod Diviciacī frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, summam in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, iūstitiam, temperantiam cōgnōverat: nam, nē ēius suppliciō Diviciacī animum offenderet, verēbātur. Itaque prius quam quicquam cōnārētur, Diviciacum ad sē vocārī iubet et cotīdiānīs inter-

4. **in-iūssū,** *abl. from* **iniūssus, -ūs,** [**iubeō,** order], without command *or* order. 2

5. **īn-sciēns, -entis** [**sciō,** know], unaware, ignorant. 2

7. **animadvertō,-ēre, -tī, -sum,** (**animus + ad + vertō**), to turn the mind to; to notice; **in:** to punish. *

8. **re-pūgnō,** 1. [**pūgnō,** fight], *n.*, fight back; resist, oppose. *

9. **studium, -ī** [**studeō,** be zealous], N., zeal, eagerness, enthusiasm; feeling; good will, devotion; profession, occupation. *

10. **ēgregius, -a, -um** [**ē + grex,** herd], *out of the common herd*; superior, eminent, remarkable. 4

iūstitia, -ae [**iūstus,** just], F., justice, rectitude, uprightness. 4

11. **temperantia, -ae** [**temperāns,** temperate], F., moderation, prudence, self-control. 1

supplicium, -ī [**sub + plicō,** bend], N., *bending or kneeling in supplication or to receive punishment;* supplication (*rare*); punishment. *

12. **of-fendō, -ere, fendī, fēnsus** [**ob + fendō,** strike], *a.*, strike against, wound, harm: **animum offendere,** wound the feelings. 2

vereor, 2. *a.*, reverence; fear, dread. *

prius, *adv.* [**prior,** former], before, sooner, previously; **prius quam** (**priusquam**), before. *

quisquam, quaequam, quidquam *or* **quicquam,** *indef. pron.*, some, any, any one, anything. *

13. **vocō,** [**vōx,** voice], *a.*, call, summon; call upon, invoke. *

interpres, -pretis, M., interpreter. 2

---

4. **eōs**=*Helvētiōs et Sēquanōs.* **cūrāsset:** uncontracted form? **dandōs:** what does the gerundive denote here? See on **13,** 2.

5. **suō:** whose? **īnscientibus ipsīs,** *without their own* (Aeduans') *knowledge.*

6. **magistrātū:** who? **satis esse causae,** *that it was a sufficient reason.* **causae:** for the Part. Gen. with adverbs (here *satis*) see A. 216, 4; B. 59, *d*; G. 369; H. 397, 4, footnote 3; *B.* 201, 2.

8. **ūnum repūgnābat,** *one fact opposed all these considerations.*

11, 12. **cōgnōverat,** *had learned* (knew well). For verbs used preteritively see A. 279 *e*; G. 241 R. H. 297 I, 2; *B.* 262, A. **nē . . . verēbātur,** *he feared that* etc. For the translation and use of **nē** with verbs of fearing see A. 331 *f*, N.; G. 550, 2; H. 498, III, 1; *B.* 296 2. **Prius quam** etc., *before he ventured on anything.*

13. **cōnārētur:** for the mode

pretibus remōtīs per C. Valerium Troucillum, prīncipem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cui summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō colloquitur: simul commonefacit, quae ipsō praesente in conciliō Gallōrum dē Dumnorīge sint dicta, et ostendit, quae sēparātim quisque dē eō apud sē dīxerit. Petit atque hortātur, ut sine ēius offēnsiōne animī vel ipse dē eō causā cōgnitā statuat, vel cīvitātem statuere iubeat.

Caesar spares Dumnorix but places him under guard.

20. Diviciacus multīs cum lacrimīs Caesarem complexus obsecrāre coepit, nē quid gravius

14. **re-moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus** [**moveō**, move], *a.*, move back *or* away, remove, withdraw. *

Valerius, -ī, M., *a Roman gentile name:* (1) Lucius Valerius Praeconinus, *a Roman lēgātus in Aquitania before Caesar's proconsulship.* (2) Gaius Valerius Caburus, *a Gaul who received Roman citizenship, perhaps, from* (3) Gaius Valerius Flaccus, *propraetor in Gaul in 83 B. C.* (4) Gaius Valerius Procillus, *and* (5) Gaius Valerius Donnataurus, *sons of* (2). (6) Gaius Valerius Troucillus, *a prominent Gaul whose father had received Roman citizenship.*

16. **colloquor, -ī, locūtus sum** [**cum** + **loquor**, speak], *n.*, speak with, converse, confer. *

simul, *adv.*, at once, at the same time, together: **simul . . . simul**, both . . . and, partly . . . partly: **simul atque**, as soon as. *

commonefaciō, -ere, fēcī, factus [**moneō**, warn + **faciō**], *a.*, remind forcibly, impress upon. 1

18. **sēparātim** [**sēparō**, separate], separately, apart, asunder. 3

19. **petō, -ere, -īvī (iī), -ītus**, *a.*, seek, aim at, make for, attack, try *or* go to get; ask, entreat: **petere ut liceat**, to ask permission. *

hortor, 1. exhort, encourage, urge strongly, cheer. *

offēnsiō, -ōnis [**offendō**, strike against], F., *a striking against;* hurting: **offēnsiō animī**, hurting one's feelings. 1

1. **lacrima, -ae**, F., tear. 2

2. **com-plector, -ī, plexus sum** [**plectō**, braid], *a.*, embrace, clasp, enclose. 3

ob-secrō, 1. [**sacer**, sacred], *a.*, implore (*on sacred grounds*), entreat, beseech. 3

gravis, -e, heavy, oppressive, hard, severe; serious, important, advanced (*of age*). *

---

after *priusquam* see A. 327; B. 111, *b;* G. 574, 577; H. 520; *B.* 292, 1 b.

14–16. **per . . . colloquitur:** English order, *colloquitur cum eō per C. Valerium Troucillum*, etc. **prīncipem:** not necessarily a chief but a prominent man. **cuī . . habēbat**, *in whom he had the utmost confidence in all matters.*

2. **quid:** form and meaning? See on 7, 20. **gravius:** for trans.

in frātrem statueret: Scīre sē illa esse vēra, nec quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē dolōris capere, propterea quod, cum ipse grātiā plūrimum domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adolēscentiam posset, per sē crēvisset: quibus opibus āc nervīs nōn sōlum ad minuendam grātiam, sed paene ad perniciem suam ūterētur. Sēsē tamen et amōre frāternō et exīstimātiōne vulgī commovērī. Quod sī quid eī ā Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amīcitiae apud eum tenēret, nēminem exīstimātūrum nōn suā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē futūrum, utī tōtīus Galliae animī ā sē āverterentur. Haec cum plūribus verbīs flēns ā Caesare peteret,

3. **sciō**, 4. *a.*, distinguish; know, understand. *

6. **adolēscentia (adul-) -ae** [**adōlēscēns**, a youth], F., youth. 1

crēsco, -ere, crēvī, crētus [*incept. of* **creō**, create], *n.*, *begin to create:* grow *or* increase (*in size, power, age, etc.*); become famous *or* prominent. 2

7. **ops, ōpis** [**Ops**, the goddess of plenty], F., power, help, strength; *pl.*, wealth, resources; authority, influence. *

nervus, -ī, M., sinew, tendon, nerve; *in pl.*, energy, power. 2

minuō, -ere, -uī, minūtus [**minus**, less], *a.*, *n.*, lessen, impair, diminish, violate (**māiestātem**) settle, (**contrōversiās**). *

8. **perniciēs, -ēī**, [**per** + **nex**, death], F., destruction, ruin. 2

amōr, -ōris [**amō**, love], M., love. 1

9. **frāternus, -a, -um** [**frāter**, brother], brotherly, fraternal, of a brother. 2

exīstimātiō, -ōnis [**exīstimō**, estimate], F., judging, opinion. 2

vulgus (volgus), -ī, N. *and* M., the common people, crowd, rabble, the masses: *in abl. as adv.*, commonly, generally. *

13. **verbum, -ī**, N., word. 4

fleō, -ēre, flēvī, flētus, *a.*, *n.*, weep, shed tears, lament. 5

---

see on **14**, 16.

3. **scīre** etc.: reconstruct the direct discourse. "I know that these things are true; and from this fact no one feels (takes) more (of) sorrow than I do, etc."

5. **ipse**, Diviciacus; so **sē** l. 6, **suam** l. 8. **sēsē** l. 8, **ille**, Dumnorix; so **eī** l. 9.

6. **minimum posset**, *had very little influence;* Cf. *largiter posse*, **18**, 15. For case of *minimum* see A. 240 *a;* B. 75; G. 334 R. 1; H. 378, 2; *B.* 176. 3.

7. **opibus, nervīs**: for case cf. *frūmentō*, **16**, 6.

9. **quod . . . accidisset**: in dir. disc., "Now if anything too severe befalls (shall have befallen) him at your hands (from you)." **quod sī**, lit., *as to which, if: quod* is strictly an adverbial accusative, see on l. 6, but with *sī* has become a mere connective and is translated *and, now, but, etc.*

12. **futūrum** (*esse*) **utī . . . āverterentur**, *it will happen that etc.* **futūrum** *esse* **utī** (=**fore ut**)

Caesar ēius dextram prēndit; cōnsōlātus rogat, fīnem ōrandī faciat; tantī ēius apud sē grātiam esse ostendit, utī et reī pūblicae iniūriam et suum dolōrem ēius voluntātī āc precibus condōnet. Dumnorīgem ad sē vocat, frātrem adhibet; quae in eō reprehendat, ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae cīvitās querātur, prōpōnit; monet, ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspīciōnēs vītet; praeterita sē Diviciacō frātrī condōnāre dīcit. Dumnorīgī custōdēs pōnit, ut, quae agat, quibuscum loquātur, scīre possit.

Caesar arranges to harass the Helvetians

21. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus hostēs sub mōnte cōnsēdisse mīlia passuum

14. dextra, -ae [**dexter,** right *sc.* **manus**], F., the right hand. *
prēndō, -ere, -dī, prēnsus [for **prehendō**=**prae**+**hendō,** hold] lay hold of, seize, grasp. 1
cōn-sōlor, 1. [**sōlor,** comfort], *a.*, comfort, cheer. 5
ōrō, 1. [**ōs,** mouth], *a.*, *n.*, speak, plead, entreat. *
17. con-dōnō, 1. [**dōnō,** give], *a.*, *n.*, give freely; give up; pardon, forgive. 2
ad-hibeō, 2. [**habeō,** have], *a.*, have *or* bring to, bring in, summon, employ, use. *
18. re-prehendō, -ere, -dī, -hēnsus, [**prehendō,** seize] *a.*, hold back *or* fast, seize hold of; criticise, blame, censure. 4
19. moneō, 2. *a.*, warn, advise, admonish, teach. *
20. vītō, 1. *a.*, avoid, shun, evade. *
praeter-eō, īre, īvī (iī), itus [**praeter,** beyond+**eō**], *a.*, *n.*, go beyond *or* past, pass by; omit, neglect, reject: *in p. p. as adj.*, past: *as subst.*, the past. 4
21. custōs, custōdis, M., F., guardian, keeper, watchman. 5
loquor, -ī, locūtus sum, *n.*, speak, talk, converse. *

2. cōn-sīdō, -ere, sēdī, sessus [**sīdō,** sit down], *n.*, sit down together, settle; take a position, halt, encamp. *

---

with the Subjunctive is here used for the future passive infinitive which rarely occurs. The same form is necessarily employed when the given verb has no future participle.

14, 15. rogat (*ut*) . . . **faciat,** *he asks him to make*, etc. With what verbs is *ut* (*utī*) omitted in purpose clauses? A. 331 *f* Rem; B. 107, *e;* G. 546 Rem. 2; H. 499, 2; *B.* 295 8.**tantī:** For the case see A. 252 *a*; B. 58, *b;* G. 380; H. 404–5; *B.* 203 3.

21. pōnit=**adpōnit,** *places over.* **agat, loquātur:** For the mode cf. **12, 3.** Why did Caesar spare Dumnorix? His position was critical. He was getting farther and farther from his province. The Aedui were not true. It was not the time to be harsh. See Long, vol. I, p. 13; Mommsen vol. IV. p. 293.

1. explōrātōribus: these were scouting parties; the *speculātōrēs* individual spies.

2. hostēs . . . cōnsēdisse, *that the enemy had encamped at the foot*

ab ipsīus castrīs octō, quālis esset nātūra mōntis et quālis in circuitū ascēnsus quī cōgnōscerent, mīsit. Renūntiātum est facilem esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā T. Labiēnum, lēgātum prō praetōre cum duābus legiōnibus et iīs ducibus, quī iter cōgnōverant, summum iugum mōntis ascendere iubet; quid suī cōnsiliī sit, ostendit. Ipse dē quartā vigiliā eōdem itinere, quō hostēs ierant, ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī reī mīlitāris perītissi-

3. **octō** (VIII), *indecl. num.*, eight. *

quālis, -e [**quis**], *interrog.*, of what sort, kind *or* nature, what; *rel.*, of such a sort, kind *or* nature, such as, as. 2

4. **circuitus, -ūs** [**circumeō**, go around], M., going around; a winding path, circuit: **in circuitū**, all around. *

ascēnsus, -ūs [**ascendō**, climb up], M., climbing up, ascending; approach, ascent. *

6. **praetor, -ōris** [for **praeitor** fr. **prae-eō**, go before], M., leader, chief, president; general, commander; praetor, judge. 1

dux, ducis [**dūcō**, lead], M., F., leader, guide, commander. *

7. **ascendō, -ere, -dī, -cēnsus** [**ad+scandō**, climb], *a.*, *n.*, climb up to, ascend, mount, climb. *

10. **P.**, *abbrev. for* **Pūblius**, *a Roman praenomen or given-name.* 2

Cōnsidius, -ī, M., Publius Considius, *one of Caesar's officers.* 3

mīlitāris, -e [**mīles**, soldier,], of a soldier, military, martial: **rēs mīlitāris**, the science of warfare. *

perītus, -a, -um, tried, experienced, skilled; familiar with, accustomed to. 3

---

of the mountain. **sub mōnte**: in the vicinity of modern Toulon. **mīlia passuum octō**: how many miles? **mīlia**: for case see on **2**, 17.

3. **quālis . . . nātūra**, *what was the character.*

4. **quī cōgnōscerent mīsit**, *he sent men to learn.* For the omission of the antecedent ('men') see on **1**, 2. For the Mode and the equivalent of *quī* see on **7**, 10.

5. **tertiā vigiliā**: see on **12**, 8.

6. **prō praetōre**: the consul and praetor had *ex officiō* the right to command an army on expiration of their terms of office, and no other persons had this right except rarely by special grant. Such a grant had been made to Labienus who is therefore called 'lieutenant with the powers of a praetor'. The military authority of ordinary *lēgātī* was merely temporary and provisional.

8. **quid . . . sit**: *what* (*the essence of*) *his plan is*, namely, that Labienus shall move to the rear of the Helvetii and at a preconcerted signal, both he and Caesar shall attack them. **sit**: for mode cf. **12**, 3. **dē quartā vigiliā**: about what hour?

9. **equitātum**: what were the duties of the cavalry, on the march? See Int. 141, 144.

10, 12. **P. Cōnsidius . . . fue-**

mus habēbātur et in exercitū L. Sullae et posteā in M. Crassī fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.

22. Prīmā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castrīs nōn longius mīlle et quīngentīs passibus abesset, neque, ut posteā ex captīvīs comperit, aut ipsīus adventus aut Labiēnī cōgnitus esset, Cōnsidius equō admīssō ad eum accurrit, dīcit mōntem, quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit, ab hostibus tenērī: id sē ā Gallicīs armīs atque īnsīgnibus cōgnōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās

His plans are frustrated by the mistake of Considius.

11. **L.**, *abbrev. for* **Lūcius,** *a Roman praenomen or given-name.* *

Sulla, -ae, M., *a Roman family name;* Lucius Cornelius Sulla *the dictator, the bitter foe of Marius and leader of the aristocracy.* *

posteā, *adv.* [**post,** after], after this, afterwards. *

Crassus, -ī [**crassus,** thick], M., (1) M. Licinius Crassus, *triumvir with Caesar and Pompey*; (2) *his son* Publius Licinius, *a lieutenant in Caesar's army;* (3) *a second son,* Marcus Licinius, *one of Caesar's questors.* *

1. **lūx, lūcis** [**lūceō,** be light], F., light. *

3. **captīvus, -ī** [**capiō,** take], M., captive, prisoner. *

4. **com-periō, -īre, perī, pertus,** *a.*, find out with certainty, discover, ascertain. *

5. **equus, -ī,** M., horse. *

ad-mittō, -ere, mīsī, mīssus [**mittō,** send], *a.*, send to; let in, admit; let go *or* loose; permit; incur. *

ac-currō, -ere, cucurrī (currī), cursus [**ad+currō,** run], *n.*, run *or* hasten to, run up *or* rush to. 2

6. **Gallicus, -a, -um** [**Gallia**], pertaining to Gaul *or* the Gauls, Gallic. *

---

rat: Caesar states these facts about Considius to excuse his own ready acceptance of Considius' statements below. **reī:** for case cf. **2, 14. 18,** 8.

11. **Sullae:** the conqueror of Mithradates, 88-84 B. C. and opponent of Gaius Marius. See Int. 6. **Crassī:** more noted as a financier than a general. See Int. 20. He commanded in the Servile war, 71 B. C.

1, **prīmā lūce,** *at day break.* **summus mōns,** *the summit of the ridge* (*the top of the mount*). For the adjective in agreement, where we should expect a noun ('top') followed by a genitive ('of the mountain') see A. 193; G. 291 R. 2; H. 440 2 N. 1, 2; *B.* 241, 1.

3. **passibus:** for case see on **15,** 15. **ut:** what part of speech? Cf. **4,** 11.

5. **equō admīssō,** *at full gallop.* The Ablative Absolute is here equivalent to an Abl. of Manner.

7. **īnsīgnibus:** the decorations on their helmets, shields, etc.

in proximum collem subdūcit, aciem īnstruit. Labiēnus, ut erat eī praeceptum ā Caesare, nē proelium committeret, nisi ipsīus cōpiae prope hostium castra vīsae essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret, mōnte occupātō nostrōs expectābat proeliōque abstinēbat. Multō dēnique diē per explōrātōrēs Caesar cōgnōvit et mōntem ā suīs tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium timōre perterritum, quod nōn vīdisset, prō vīsō sibi renūntiāsse. Eō diē, quō

8. collis, -is, M., hill. *

sub-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus [**dūcō,** lead], *lead or draw from beneath;* draw *or* lead up; lead *or* draw off, withdraw. *

aciēs, -ēī (old gen. **aciē**), [cf. **ācer,** sharp], F., sharp point *or* edge *of a weapon;* sharp *or* keen sight, glance; a line (*as forming an edge*), battle line; **prīma,** the van; **media,** the centre; **novissima,** the rear. *

īn-struō, ˊ-ere, strūxī, strūctus [**struō,** build], *a.*, build upon, build, construct; form, draw up.

9. praecipiō, -ere, cēpī, ceptus [**capiō,** take]. *a.*, take *or* obtain beforehand, anticipate; instruct, bid, order. *

nisi, *conj.* [**nē**+**sī,** if], *not if;* if not, if...not, except, unless. *

10. prope, *prep.*, near.

11. impetus, -ūs [**petō,** attack], M., attack, onset, charge; impetuosity, force, vehemence. *

12. abstineō, 2. [**teneō,** hold], *a.*, and *n.*, hold off, keep aloof from, refrain. 2

dēnique, *adv.* [**deinde,** then + **-que**], and then, thereupon, finally, at last. 5

---

8. aciem īnstruit: Caesar concluded from the report of Considius that Labienus had been defeated, and expected that the victors would immediately attack him. **aciem:** how did it differ from the **āgmen**?

9. erat . . . praeceptum, *as he had been directed.* The passive of intransitive verbs is often used *impersonally* ('it had been commanded to him') but the English idiom generally requires the personal construction in the translation. The subject is the following clause **nē . . . committeret.**

11. fieret: for mood cf. **5,** 8; **3,** 5.

12. multō diē, *in broad day.* Cf. l. 1.

14. timōre: this was probably due in part to the exaggerated notion of Gallic prowess that prevailed in the Roman army. **timōre perterritum,** *panic stricken.*

15. quod . . . renūntiāsse, *had reported to him as if seen what he had not seen.* Caesar generously refrains from censuring Considius although the miscarrying of his well-laid plan must have been a great disappointment. **eō diē:** about two weeks had elapsed since Caesar crossed the Saone. It was now the end of June.

15, 16. quō intervāllō: for *eō intervāllō, quō (sequī) cōnsuērat, hostēs etc.* For the position of the antecedent see on **12,** 17; for the ablative see on **12,** 3. The relative takes the place of the necessary limiting adjective.

cōnsuērat intervāllō, hostēs sequitur et mīlia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit.

The Romans, marching toward Bibracte, are followed and harrassed by the Helvetians.

23. Postrīdiē ēius diēī, quod omnīnō bīduum supererat, cum exercituī frūmentum mētīrī oportēret, et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Aeduōrum longē māximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius mīlibus passuum XVIII aberat, reī frūmentāriae prōspiciendum exīstimāvit: iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit āc Bibracte īre contendit. Ea rēs per fugitīvōs L. Aemiliī, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum,

16. **inter-vāllum, -ī** [vāllum, intrenchment], N., *the space between two palisades or the 200 feet between the rampart and tents;* interval (*of space or time*). *

1. **postrīdiē,** *adv.* [posterus, following + diēs], on the day following, the next day: **postrīdiē ēius diēī,** on the next *or* following day. *

bīduum, -ī [bis, twice + diēs], N., space *or* period of two days, two days. *

2. **super-sum, esse, fuī, futūrus** [super, over], *n.*, be over *or* above, be left, remain, survive. *

3. **Bibracte, -is,** N., *the chief town of the Aedui, see note below.* *

4. **cōpiōsus, -a, -um** [cōpia, abundance], abundantly *or* well supplied, wealthy. 1

5. **frūmentārius, -a, -um** [frūmentum, grain], of *or* pertaining to grain; **rēs,** supply of grain, provisions: (**loca**) productive. *

prōspiciō, -ere, spēxī, spectus [speciō, look], *n.*, look forward, look out; look to beforehand, see to, provide for. 3

7. **fugitīvus, -a, -um** [fugiō, flee], fleeing, *as subst.* a runaway slave. *

Aemilius, -ī, M., Lucius Aemilius, *a Gaul in charge of a decuria of Caesar's cavalry.* 1

decuriō, -ōnis, M., [decem], decurion, *a cavalry officer in charge of a decuria, a squad of ten.* 1

---

1. **postrīdiē:** here has its original force as a noun and governs the Gen. **diēī.**

2. **mētīrī:** what was the usual food allowance of the Roman soldier? In what form was it issued? What officer had charge of the commissariat? See Int. 116, 117. **oportēret:** for mode see on **4,** 9. What is the subject? See on **16,** 10.

3. **Bibracte:** as the Gauls used to place their towns on hills, Mont Beuvray seems to have the preference over Autun as the site of this place. It was the "holy city" of the Druids; and the capital of the Aedui.

4. **mīlibus:** for the case cf. **15,** 15.

5. **reī . . . prōspiciendum:** *that he must look out for supplies.* **reī:** for case cf. **2,** 5; **12,** 18. **prōspiciendum** (*esse*): for form see on **7,** 15; for the translation, on **22,** 9.

7. **fugitīvōs,** *runaway slaves: perfugae* and *trānsfugae,* soldiers who as traitors pass over to the enemy. **decuriōnis:** on the cavalry officers, see Int. 101.

hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētiī, seu quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē exīstimārent, eō magis, quod prīdiē superiōribus locīs occupātīs proelium nōn commīsissent, sīve eō, quod rē frūmentāriā interclūdī posse cōnfīderent, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō nostrōs ā novissimō āgmine īnsequī āc lacēssere coepērunt.

Caesar prepares for battle. The Helvetians advance to the attack.

24. Postquam id animum advertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdūcit equitātumque, quī sustinēret hostium impetum, mīsit. Ipse

8. **seu** *or* **sīve,** *conj.* [sī + ve or], or if, if either; whether, either: **seu . . . seu,** either . . or, whether . . . or. *

timor, -ōris [**timeō,** fear], M., fear, alarm, dread. *

9. **prīdiē,** *adv.* [pri- in **prior** + **diēs**], on the day before. 5

11. **interclūdō, -ere, clūdī, clūsus** [**claudō,** shut], *a.*, shut *or* cut off, obstruct, hinder. *

cōn-fīdō, -ere, fīsus sum [**fīdō,** trust], *n.*, trust completely, rely on, feel confident, hope: *in p. p. as adj.*, trusting in, relying upon. *

com-mūtō, 1. [**mūtō,** change], *a.*, change *or* alter completely, change; exchange. 5

12. **con-vertō, -ere, vertī, versus** [**vertō,** turn], *a.*, *n.*, turn completely, turn *or* wheel around; turn, change: **itinere conversō,** altering his course; **sīgna convertere,** to change front. *

1. **post-quam,** *conj.*, after that, after, as soon as. *

ad-vertō, -ere, vertī, versus [**vertō,** turn], *a.*, turn to, turn toward *or* against: **animum,** observe, notice. 2

3. **sustineō,** 2. [**sub** + **teneō,** hold], *a.*, hold up from below, uphold, sustain; hold *or* keep back, check, restrain; hold out against, withstand, endure. *

---

9. **exīstimārent:** for mood see on *sublevētur* **16,** 17.

10. **sīve eō,** *or for this reason.*

11. **rē . . . posse** (*Rōmānōs*): i. e. by being hindered in reaching Bibracte. **rē:** for case cf. **1,** 14; **8,** 12.

11, 12. **commūtātō cōnsiliō:** If the Helvetii had held to their plan of march, they might have foiled Caesar. Their safety lay in avoiding battle, which they could do as long as they were in advance of him, on account of the rugged nature of the country. Their fatal mistake lay in thinking that they were strong enough to throw away this advantage.

1. **id . . . advertit,** *directed his attention to this.* For construction of *animum* and *id* see on that of *partēs* and *flūmen* **12,** 6.

2. **proximum collem:** thought to be some miles south-west of Mont Beuvray near Toulon.

3. **quī sustinēret:** to check temporarily the enemy's advance,

interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem īnstrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum, sed in summō iugō duās legiōnēs, quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōnscrīpserat, et omnia auxilia collocārī, āc tōtum mōntem hominibus complērī et intereā sarcinās in ūnum locum cōnferrī, et eum ab hīs, quī in superiōre aciē cōnstiterant, mūnīrī iussit. Helvētiī cum omnibus suīs carrīs secūtī, impedīmenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī cōnfertissimā aciē, rēiectō nostrō equitātū phalange factā sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt.

4. **medius, -a, -um,** in the middle *or* midst, in the middle of, intervening. *

triplex, -icis [**trēs + plicō,** fold], three-fold, triple. 4

5. **veterānus, -a, -um** [**vetus,** old], old, veteran. 1

6. **proximē,** *adv.*, last, lately. *

7. **com-pleō, -ēre, plēvī, plētus** [**pleō,** fill], *a.*, fill up *or* completely, complete. *

sarcinae, -ārum [**sarciō,** mend, restore], F., *pl.*, baggage *or* luggage (*of the individual soldier*), packs. 4



Sarcina.

9. **mūniō,** 4. [cf. **moenia,** walls], *a.*, defend with a wall, fortify, defend, protect. *

10. **impedīmentum, -ī,** [**impediō,** hinder], N., hindrance, obstacle: *pl.* baggage *or* luggage (*of an army*), baggage-train (*including the draught animals*).

11. **cōnfertus, -a, -um** [*p. p. of* **cōnferciō,** crowd together], crowded *or* pressed together, dense, thick, compact. *

rēiciō, -ere, iēcī, iectus [**iaciō,** hurl], *a.*, hurl *or* drive back, repel; cast down *or* off, reject. *

phalanx, -ngis (*Gr. acc. pl.* **phalangas**), F., a compact band of troops, phalanx. 4

12. **succēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus** [**sub + cēdō,** go], *n.*, go *or* come under; go *or* come up from beneath, come up to, advance, come close to, take the place of; succeed, prosper. *

---

4. **in colle mediō:** *midway up the slope.* For the meaning of the adj. see on **22,** 1. **triplicem aciem:** on the battle formation of the Romans, see Int. 145–147. **legiōnum** etc., *consisting of four veteran legions.* For the case see A. 214 *e*; B. 53; G. 368, R; H. 396, V; *B.* 197.

5. **veterānārum:** *old,* in distinction from the two that had but recently been levied. They were the VIIth, VIIIth, IXth, and Xth. **in summō iugō,** *on the very summit.* cf. l. 4. **duās:** XIth and XIIth: cf. **10,** 9. Caesar did not put the untried troops in the fighting lines.

6. **auxilia:** these troops were raw and possibly not all well affected. See Int. 99.

7. **collocārī, complērī, cōnferrī** (l. 8.), **mūnīrī** (l. 9.), for the construction of these infinitives see A. 331 *a;* G. 546 N. 3; H. 535, II; *B.* 331, II. **sarcinās:** packs or kits, which the soldiers carried: see Int. 118.

The battle. The Helvetians are forced to retreat.

25. Caesar prīmum suō, deinde omnium ex cōnspectū remōtīs equīs, ut aequātō omnium perīculō spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commīsit. Mīlitēs ē locō superiōre pīlīs mīssīs facile hostium

1. **prīmum,** *adv.* [**prīmus,** first], first, at first, in the first place: **cum prīmum,** as soon as. *
de-inde (dein), *adv.* [dē + inde, thence], from thence; thereupon, then; next. *
2. **aequō,** 1. [**aequus,** equal], *a.*, make even *or* equal, equalize. 2
3. **co-hortor,** 1. [**cum+hortor,** encourage], *a.*, encourage greatly, animate, rally. *
4. **pīlum, -ī,** N., heavy javelin, pilum. *

8. **eum:** sc. *locum*. **hīs:** those last mentioned l. 5.

10. **carrīs:** the Celtic wagon had two disc-like wheels and no springs. **impedīmenta:** their heavy baggage, carried on beasts of burden or wagons.

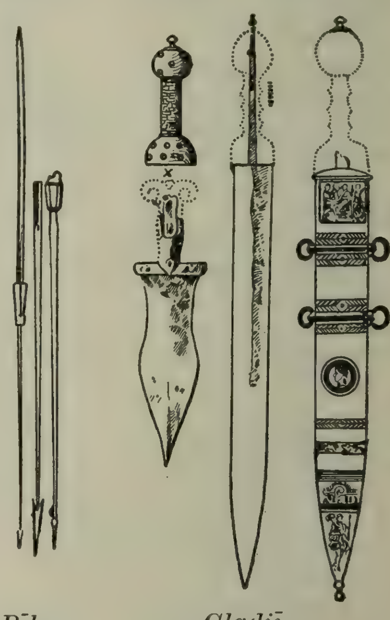
12. **phalange:** in the phalanx formation, the soldiers overlapped their shields, so as to form an impenetrable covering. The front rank held the shields vertically, the other ranks horizontally, "arranged like the tiles of a roof." On the Gallic methods of warfare, see Int. 176–187. **sub,** (also *in*, *subter*, *super*) is followed by the Accusative with a verb of motion. What case is used in relations of *rest?* **successērunt,** *came up close to.*

1. **suō** (*equō remōtō*), *sending away his own horse.* For case cf. **22,** 5; how many like constructions in ll. 1–5? **omnium,** *of all* the mounted officers, his aids, etc. The tact and courage of Caesar are exhibited in the remark recorded by Plutarch that he "would mount again when the enemy fled."

2. **remōtīs equīs:** Caesar did the same again at the battle of Munda in Spain (see Int. 42); and Sallust credits Catiline with a similar action in the battle that ended his career. **aequātō perīculō:** the officers of all ranks in the Roman army seem to have done more fighting than is expected of the officers in modern armies.

3. **cohortātus suōs:** the *allocūtiō*, or harangue, was customary at the beginning of a battle. A skillful orator like Caesar would be able to rouse his troops to a high pitch of enthusiasm.

4. **ē locō superiōre:** the higher position of the Romans gave them a decided advantage. What was it?



Pīla. *Gladiī.*

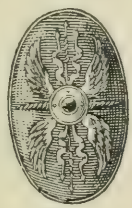
pīlīs, gladiīs: see Int. 109. **pīlīs mīssīs:** this opening of the battle

phalangem perfrēgērunt. Eā dīsiectā gladiīs dēstrictīs in eōs impetum fēcērunt. Gallīs māgnō ad pūgnam erat impedīmentō, quod plūribus eōrum scūtīs ūnō ictū pīlōrum trānsfīxīs et colligātīs, cum ferrum sē īnflēxisset, neque ēvellere neque sinistrā impedītā satis commodē pūgnāre poterant, multī ut diū iactātō brāchiō praeoptārent scūtum manū ēmit-

5. **per-fringō, -ere, frēgī, frāctus** [**frangō**, break], *a.*, break *or* burst through. 2
dīsiciō, -ere, iēcī, iectus [**iaciō**, hurl], *a.*, hurl apart *or* aside; scatter, route, disperse. 3
gladius, -ī, M., sword. *
dē-stringō, -ere, strinxī, strictus [**stringō**, bind, strip], *a.*, unbind, strip *or* draw off; unsheathe, draw (**gladium**). 2
6. **pūgna, -ae** [**pūgnō**, fight], F., a fight, battle; contest, dispute. *



Scūtum.



Clipeus.

7. **scūtum, -ī,** N., shield, buckler; *oblong, convex* (2½ x 4 *ft.*), *made of wood covered with leather* (*or iron plates*), *with a metal rim.* *
ictus, -ūs [**īcō**, strike], M., stroke, blow, thrust. 2
trāns-fīgō, -ere, fīxī fīxus [**fīgō**, fix], *a.*, thrust *or* pierce through, transfix. 3
8. **colligō, 1.** [**cum + ligō**, bind], *a.*, bind *or* fasten together, unite, hamper. *
ferrum, -ī, N., iron, steel; *anything made of iron*, axe, sword, spear-point, chain, etc. 3
īn-flectō, -ere, flēxī, flexus [**flectō**, bend], *a.*, *n.*, bend in, bend, curve, inflect. 2
ē-vellō, -ere, vellī, vulsus [**vellō**, pluck], pull *or* tear out. 1
9. **sinister, -tra, -trum,** left; **sub sinistrā**, on the left; *in fem. sing. as subst.* (*sc.* **manus**), the left hand. *
commodē [**commodus**, convenient], conveniently, readily, easily; **nōn satis commodē**, not very easily. *
pūgnō, 1. [cf. **pugil**, a boxer], *n.*, fight, give battle, contend; oppose; strive. *
10. **brāchium, (bracch-) -ī,** N., the arm *from the hand to the elbow*, fore-arm. 2
prae-optō, 1. [**optō**, choose], *a.*, choose rather, prefer. 1
manus, -ūs, F., the hand; **in manibus**, near at hand; *as the instrument of war*, force, courage; an armed troop, band, company. *
ē-mittō, -ere, mīsī, mīssus [**mittō**, send], *a.*, let go, send out *or* forth, release; hurl, discharge. *

---

corresponds to the heavy cannonade that usually introduces modern engagements.

5. **gladiīs dēstrictīs,** *with drawn swords.* cf. **22,** 5.

6. **Gallīs . . . impedīmentō** *it was a great hindrance to the Gauls in battle.* For the case see on **18,** 28.

9. **sinistrā impedītā**: in what way? see Int. 109.

10. **multī ut . . . praeoptārent,** *so that many preferred.* For mode

tere et nūdō corpore pūgnāre. Tandem vulneribus dēfessī et pedem referre et, quod mōns suberat circiter mīlle passuum spatiō, eō sē recipere coepērunt. Captō mōnte et succēdentibus nostrīs, Bōiī et Tulingī, quī hominum mīlibus circiter XV āgmen hostium claudēbant et novissimīs praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs ā latere apertō aggressī circumvenīre et id cōnspicātī Helvētiī, quī in mōntem sēsē recēperant, rūrsus īnstāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. Rōmānī conver-

11. nūdus, -a, -um, naked, unclothed; unprotected. 3

corpus, -oris, n., the body, person; a (*dead*) body.

tandem, *adv.* [**tam,** so + **-dem** (cf. **idem**)], *just so far;* at last, at length, finally; *in interrog. clauses to add emphasis,* pray now, then, now. *

vulnus (**vol-**), **-eris,** n., a wound; cut; calamity. *

dēfessus, -a, -um [*p. p. of* **dēfetīscor,** grow weary], wearied, exhausted, faint. *

12. re-ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus [**ferō,** bear], bear *or* carry back; give back, restore; **sē referre** (*or* **pedem referre**), go back, retreat; **grātiam referre,** return thanks. *

sub-sum, esse, fuī, futūrus [**sub,** under, near], *n.,* be under *or* below; be near *or* close at hand. 4

13. eō [*old dat. of* **is**], *adv.,* thither, there (*in sense of* thither), to the place (*where etc.*), to them (it, him, etc.).

15. claudō, -ere, clausī, clausus, *a.,* shut, close; shut in, enclose; conclude, terminate. *

16. latus, -eris [cf. **lātus,** wide], n., side; wing *or* flank *of an army.* *

aperiō, -īre, -uī, apertus [**ab** + **pariō,** bring forth], *a., bring forth from;* expose; *in p. p. as adj.,* exposed, unprotected. *

circum-venio, -īre, vēnī, ventus [**veniō,** come], *a.,* come around, surround, encompass; invest, circumvent. *

17. cōnspicor, 1. [**spec-** in obsol. **speciō,** look], *a. and n.,* look closely, observe, descry, perceive. *

rūrsus (**rūrsum**), *adv.* [for **reversus,** from **revertō,** turn back], *backwards;* again, back again, anew. *

18. redintegrō, 1. [**re-** + **integrō,** make whole], make whole again, renew, restore, revive. *

---

cf. **6,** 5; **12,** 4. **multī,** being emphatic, precedes **ut,** which usually stands first in its clause.

11. nūdō corpore, *without a shield.* For case cf. **12,** 3.

12. pedem referre: they retreated in good order to a hill near by, on which they re-formed their phalanx. **suberat,** *was . . . below.* **mīlle:** for case cf. **2,** 17.

15. āgmen . . . claudēbant: they formed the van of the Helvetian army, which became the rear when the line of march was reversed. They were marching at some distance from the main body, which accounts for their coming up thus late in the battle.

16. ex itinere: i. e. without pausing to form a line of battle. **latere apertō:** i. e. the right flank, which was unprotected, the shield being carried on the left arm.

sa sīgna bipertītō intulērunt: prīma et secunda aciēs, ut vīctīs āc submōtīs resisteret, tertia, ut venientēs sustinēret.

They are routed and flee northward. Caesar pursues.

26. Ita ancipitī proeliō diū atque ācriter pūgnātum est. Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedīmenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad

19. **sīgnum, -ī,** n., mark, sign; military standard, banner; signal, watchword; statue; seal; **sīgna sequī,** follow the standard; **ab sīgnīs discēdere,** withdraw from the ranks; **sīgna īnferre,** advance; **sīgna convertere,** wheel about. *

bipertītō, *adv.* [**bis** + **partior,** divide], in two parts *or* divisions, in two ways. 2

vincō, -ere, vīcī, vīctus [cf. **vincio,** bind, restrain], *a.*, and *n.*, conquer, overcome, vanquish; excel; prevail. *

20. **sub (sum-) -moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus** [**sub**+**moveō,** move], *a., move from beneath* or *near;* move *or* send away, remove, dislodge. 5

resistō, -ere, stitī, stitum, to halt, stop, stand still; to withstand, oppose; to continue, remain. *

1. **anceps, ancipitis** [**ambō,** both +**caput,** head], two headed, with two sides *or* fronts, double; doubtful, wavering. 2

ācriter [**ācer,** sharp], *adv.*, sharply, keenly, fiercely, vigorously. *

5. **hōra, -ae,** f., hour. *The Roman hour was the twelfth part of the day or night reckoning between sunrise and sunset), varying in length according to the season.* *

18, 19. conversa sīgna etc.,



Sīgnum. Tropaeum. Sīgnum.

lit., *carried forward the standards having been turned about.* Translate: *faced about and charged;* the third line "faced about", and then moved obliquely to a position at right angles to that of the other two lines. On the *sīgna* see Int. 120–124. **bipertītō,** *in two divisions*, i. e. in two directions.

20. vīctīs āc submōtīs, *the conquered and dislodged* (Helvetii); for the case cf. **2,** 4; **9,** 8. **ut venientēs sustinēret,** *to withstand those who were advancing*, i. e., Boii and Tulingi. The pres. part. is here equivalent to a relative clause.

1. ancipitī: see note on **bipertītō 25,** 19. **pūgnātum est,** *they fought.* For rendering of impersonals see on **22,** 9.

3, 4. alterī . . . alterī, *the one party* (Helvetii) . . . *the other party*

vesperum pūgnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedīmenta pūgnātum est propterea quod pro vāllō carrōs obiēcerant et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientēs tēla coniciēbant, et nōnnūllī inter carrōs rotāsque matarās āc trāgulās subiciēbant, nostrōsque vulnerābant. Diū cum esset pūgnātum, impedīmentīs castrīsque nostrī potītī sunt. Ibi Orgetorīgis fīlia atque ūnus ē fīliīs captus est. Ex eō proeliō circiter mīlia hominum CXXX superfuērunt eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt: nūllam partem noctis itinere intermīssō in fīnēs Lingonum diē quar-

6. **vesper, -erī,** M., evening; **sub vesperum,** towards evening. 5
7. **nox, noctis,** F., night.
8. **vāllum, -ī [vāllus,** palisade], N., wall *or* rampart *of earth* (*set with palisades*); entrenchments, earthworks. *
ob-iciō, icere, iēcī, iectus [**iaciō,** throw], *a.*, hurl *or* place in the way, set against *or* in front; expose; throw up, *in p. p. as adj.*, opposed, lying in the way. *
9. **con-iciō, icere, iēcī, iectus** [**iaciō**], *a.*, hurl *or* throw together; cast; let fall; put together logically, conjecture. *
10. **rota, -ae,** F., wheel. *
matara, -ae, F., [*Celtic*] javelin, pike. 1
trāgula, -ae [**trāhō,** drag]., F., *a light Celtic* javelin *or* dart *attached to a strap by which it was hurled.* 4
sub-iciō, icere, iēcī, iectus [**iaciō**], *a.*, hurl *or* put under *or* near; discharge below; place below, subject; throw from beneath, throw up. *
vulnerō, (vol-), 1. [vulnus, a wound], *a.*, wound, injure, hurt. *
15. **inter-mittō, -ere, mīsī, mīssus** [**mittō,** send], *a.*, *n.*, send between, interrupt, discontinue, leave off. *
Lingonēs, -um, M., *a Gallic tribe in the Vosges near the sources of the Maas and Marne; capital, Andematunnum, the modern Langres.* *

(Boii and Tulingi).

6. **pūgnātum sit:** for the Subj. see on **14**, 15; for trans. cf. l. 1. **ab hōrā septimā:** about noon; the twelve hours of the day began at sunrise and ended at sunset.

7. **ad multam noctem,** *till late at night.*

8. **pro vāllō,** *as a rampart:* the *vāllum* strictly speaking, was the row of stakes on the walls of Roman camp. See Int. 131. **locō superiōre:** i. e. from the wagons packed in a circle.

9. **venientēs:** for rendering see on **25**, 20.

10. **matarās, trāgulās:** Gallic javelins; the former heavy and thrown by the hand, the latter light and hurled by a strap. **vulnerābānt,** Plutarch says the women and children fought too and that they were massacred. **subiciēbant,** *were hurling from beneath* (the wagons).

14. **eāque tōtā nocte,** *during the entire night.*

15. **partem:** for the case see on **3**, 12. **fīnēs Lingonum,**

tō pervēnērunt, cum et propter vulnera mīlitum et propter sepultūram occīsōrum nostrī trīduum morātī eōs sequī nōn potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas litterās nūntiōsque mīsit, nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent: quī sī iūvissent, sē eōdem locō, quō Helvētiōs, habitūrum. Ipse, trīduō intermīssō, cum omnibus cōpiīs eōs sequī coepit.

Surrender of the Helvetians. Six thousand escape.

27. Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad eum mīsērunt. Quī cum eum in itinere convēnissent sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent suppliciterque locūtī flentēs pācem petīssent, atque eōs in eō locō, quō tum essent, suum adventum exspectāre iussisset, pāruērunt. Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs,

17. sepultūra, -ae [**sepeliō,** bury], F., burial, sepulture. *

trīduum, -ī [**trēs,** three + **diēs**], N., three days. *

morōr, 1. [**mora,** a delay], *n.*, delay, tarry, linger. *

18. littera (lītera), -ae, F., a letter *of the alphabet, a written* sign, mark, *or* character; *in pl.*, letter, epistle, missive. *

nūntius, -ī, M., messenger, courier; message, tidings; command, injunction. *

19. nēve (neu), *conj.* [**nē + ve,** or], and not, nor; **nēve (neu) . . . nēve,** neither . . . nor. 4

iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtus, *a.*, aid, help, assist. 5

1. inopia, -ae [**inops,** needy], F., need, want, poverty, destitution. *

2. dēditiō, -ōnis [**dēdō,** give up], F., giving up; surrender, capitulation. *

3. prō-iciō, -ere, iēcī, iectus [**iaciō,** throw], *a.*, throw forward *or* away, project; cast; reject, abandon. *

4. suppliciter [**supplex,** suppliant], *adv.*, suppliantly, humbly. 1

6. pāreō, 2. [cf. **pariō,** bring forth] *n.*, *come forth, be clear;* obey, submit, yield to, comply with, be subject to. *

---

about 60 Roman miles in a northwesterly direction from the battlefield.

16–13. cum . . . potuissent, *since they could not, etc.* For mode see on **9,** 3. **Lingonas:** Greek form of acc. pl. A. 63, f; G. 65; H. 68; *B.* 47, 3. **sepultūram:** Long says that this is the only place in the Commentaries where Caesar speaks of burying those who had fallen.

19, 20. nē iuvārent, (ordering them) *not to etc.* What mode in direct disc.? Cf. **13,** 18; **13,** 15. **sē eōdem . . . habitūrum** (*esse*), *he would regard them in the same position as the Helveti*

2. quī cum, *now when these* (ambassadors). How is the relative at the beginning of a sentence to be translated?

5. quō . . . essent, *in which they*

arma, servōs, quī ad eōs perfūgissent, poposcit. Dum ea conquīruntur et cōnferuntur, nocte intermīssā, circiter hominum mīlia VI ēius pāgī, quī Verbigēnus appellātur, sīve timōre perterritī, nē armīs trāditīs suppliciō afficerentur, sīve spē salūtis inductī, quod in tantā multitūdine dēditīciōrum suam fugam aut occultārī aut omnīnō īgnōrārī posse exīstimārent, prīmā nocte ē castrīs Helvētiōrum ēgressī ad Rhēnum fīnēsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

7. **servus, -ī,** M., slave, servant. *

per-fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitus [**fugiō,** flee], *n.*, flee for refuge, take refuge in; desert. *

poscō, -ere, poposcī [cf. **precor,** ask], *a.*, ask, demand, request (*stronger than* **petō,** *less strong than* **flāgitō**). 5

8. **con-quīrō, -ere, quīsīvī, quīsītus** [**quaerō,** search], *a.*, seek for carefully, search for, hunt up. *

9. **Verbigēnus, -ī,** M., *one of the four clans of the Helvetii.* 1

10. **trā-(trāns-) dō, dere, didī, ditus** [**trāns + dō,** give], *a.*, give across *or* over, give up, surrender; intrust, confide; hand down, transmit. *

11. **salūs, salūtis** [**salveō,** be well], F., health, welfare; preservation, security, safety. *

dēditīcius, -a, -um [**dēdō,** surrender], surrendered, subject; *as subst.*, one surrendered (*formally*), prisoner. 4

12. **occultō,** 1. [*freq. of* **occulō,** hide], *a.*, hide, secrete; keep secret, conceal. *

īgnōrō, 1. [**īgnārus,** not knowing] *a.*, not know, be ignorant of, be unacquainted with; fail to observe, overlook: *pass.*, be unobserved, unrecognized. *

13. **ēgredior, -gredī, -gressus** [**gradior,** step], *a.*, *n.*, step *or* go out, come forth, depart; march out, make a sortie; land (*from a ship*), disembark. *

(the Helvetians) *then were.* For the mode see on **16,** 2: This is called *Informal* (Implied, Virtual) *Indirect Discourse.*

7, 8. **servōs:** fugitive slaves from the Roman army; see **23,** 7, *fugitīvōs.* **dum . . . cōnferuntur,** *while these were being sought out and brought together.* For the tense after *dum* meaning *while,* see A. 276 *e;* B. 111, *d;* G. 570; H. 467 4; *B.* 293, I. Notice that it is translated here by a past tense. **ea** is used *inclusively* for *obsidēs, arma, servōs.* What other gender could be used? A. 187 2, *b* N.; H. 439, 2, N; *B.* 235, 2, b, γ.

9, 10. **timōre nē,** *by the fear that.* For trans. of *nē* see on **19,** 12.

14. **fīnēs Germānōrum contendērunt:** if the Verbigeni had reached German soil, they would have stirred up the Germans to cross the Rhine into Helvetia. This Caesar wished to avert.

These are retaken and put to death. The remainder are compelled to return to Helvetia.

28. Quod ubi Caesar resciit, quōrum per fīnēs ierant, hīs, utī conquīrerent et redūcerent, sī sibi pūrgātī esse vellent, imperāvit: reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnēs obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs in dēditiōnem accēpit. Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latovīcōs in fīnēs suōs, unde erant profectī, revertī iūssit et, quod omnibus frūgibus āmīssīs domī nihil erat, quō famem tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit, ut iīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vīcōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere iūssit. Id eā māximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum, unde Helvētiī discesserant, vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ē suīs fīnibus in Helvētiōrum fīnēs trānsīrent et fīnitimī Gal-

1. **re-scīscō, -ere, scīvī, (sciī), scītus** [**scīscō,** inquire], *a.*, find out, learn, discover. 1
2. **re-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus** [**dūcō,** lead], *a.*, lead *or* bring back, draw back; restore, replace. *
3. **pūrgō,** 1. [**pūrus,** clean+**agō**], *a.*, clean, clear, excuse, exonerate: *in p. p. as adj.*, freed from blame *or* suspicion, exonerated. 4
5. **perfuga, -ae** [**perfugiō,** flee for refuge], M., refugee, deserter. *
6. **unde,** *adv.*, (*of place*) from which place, from what (*country etc.*), whence (*of substantives*), from whom (what). *
7. **ā-mittō, -ere, mīsī, mīssum** (**ā**+**mittō**), to send away, dismiss; to lose. *

(**frūx**), **frūgis,** F., crops.

8. **famēs, -is,** F., hunger, want.

tolerō, 1. [cf. **tollō,** lift up], *a.*, bear up under, bear, endure; hold out; nourish, support. 4

10. **ratiō, -ōnis** [**reor,** reckon], F., reckoning, account, estimate; design, plan, course, means; motive, principle, reason. *
11. **vacō,** 1. *n.*, be empty, void *or* unoccupied; have leisure; lie waste. 4
12. **bonitās, -tātis** [**bonus,** good], F., goodness, fertility (*of lands*). 1

---

2. sibi, *before him* (*in his eyes*): For case see A. 235; B. 68; G. 352; H. 384, 4, N. 3; *B.* 188, 2 c.

3, 4. imperāvit: the indirect object is **hīs;** the direct object is **utī . . . redūcerent,** *to search them out and bring them back.* Give other examples of *ut* clauses as object: **7, 13; 3, 13. in . . . habuit,** *he treated them as enemies,* i. e. put them to death. They had broken a military agreement.

5. in dēditiōnem accēpit: this act made them Roman subjects.

7. domī: for case see on **18, 14.**

8, 9. ut iīs facerent, *to provide them with.*

12. bonitātem agrōrum: in western Switzerland, east of the Jura. "The cultivation there now is like that of a garden" (Moberly).

liae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Bōiōs petentibus Aeduīs, quod ēgregiā virtūte erant cōgnitī, ut in fīnibus suīs collocārent, concessit; quibus illī agrōs dedērunt quōsque posteā in parem iūris lībertātisque condiciōnem, atque ipsī erant, recēpērunt.

Enumeration of the Helvetians and their allies.

29. In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt litterīs Graecīs cōnfectae et ad Caesarem relātae, quibus in tabulīs nōminātim ratiō cōnfecta erat, quī numerus domō exīsset eōrum, quī arma ferre possent, et item sēparātim puerī, senēs, mulierēsque. Quārum omnium

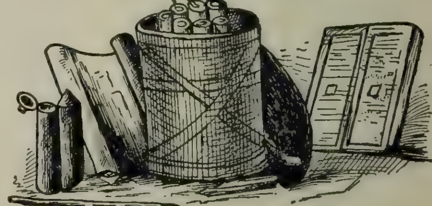
17. pār, paris, equal, alike, equal to, a match for: **est,** it is fit *or* proper; **pār atque,** the same as.*
condiciō, -ōnis, F., (**condicō**), condition, quality, state; terms, stipulation.

1. tabula, -ae, F., board, plank; writing-tablet, writing; list. 2
2. Graecus, -a, -um, of *or* belonging to the Greeks, Greek, Grecian. 3
3. nōminātim, [**nōminō,** name], by name, expressly, in detail. 4
5. puer, -erī, M., boy, child; son: *in pl.*, children (of both sexes); **ā puerō (puerīs),** from childhood. 5
senex, senis, *adj.*, old: *as subst.*, an old man. 1
mulier, -eris, F., woman; wife. *

14-16. prōvinciae, Allobrogibus: for the case cf. **1,** 10. **Bōiōs,** etc.: they were remotely related to the Aeduans, and would be useful in strengthening their protectors. **Bōiōs . . . concessit:** English order: *concessit Aeduīs petentibus, ut collocārent Bōiōs in suīs fīnibus quod cōgnitī erant ēgregiā virtūte* (of eminent valor). **ut . . . collocārent** is the dir. obj. and **Aeduīs** the indir. obj. of **concessit. Bōiōs** is placed first for emphasis. **virtūte:** for case cf. **6,** 12.

17, 18. parem . . . atque . . . erant, *such as they themselves enjoyed.* **atque** (**āc**) generally means *as* or *than* after words of likeness and comparison.

1. tabulae, *muster-rolls.*
2. litterīs Graecīs: Gallic words written in Greek characters, the Gauls having no alphabet of their own. The Greek alphabet was known to the Gauls through their intercourse with Massilia, and was used by the Druid priests. A large number of Gallic inscriptions in Greek characters have been discovered in central France.



Tabulae.

3. quibus in tabulīs, *in which:* why omit *tabulīs* in translation? cf. **16,** 10; **6,** 1.

ratiōnum summa erat capitum Helvētiōrum mīlia CCLXIII, Tulingōrum mīlia XXXVI, Latovīcōrum XIIII, Rauricōrum XXIII, Bōiōrum XXXII; ex hīs, quī arma ferre possent, ad mīlia nōnāgintā duo. Summa omnium fuērunt ad mīlia CCCLXVIII. Eōrum, quī domum rediērunt, cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus mīlium C et X.

Deputations from the Gallic states congratulate Caesar and ask for a council.

30. Bellō Helvētiōrum cōnfectō tōtīus ferē Galliae lēgātī, prīncipēs cīvitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt: Intellegere sēsē, tametsī

6. **summa, -ae,** [for **summa rēs**], F., the main thing *or* point, sum total, whole amount, aggregate; general management, chief control. *
caput, capitis, N., the head (*of men and animals*); person, individual; a head *or* leader; a section *or* chapter; mouth (*of a river*): **capitis poena,** capital punishment. *
9. **nōnāgintā,** *indec. num adj.*, ninety. 1

10. **red-eō, īre, īvī (iī), itus** [**re-**+**eō,** go], *n.*, go *or* turn back, return; be brought *or* reduced; fall to, descend. *
cēnsus, -ūs [**cēnseō,** estimate], M., estimation, census. 1

3. **grātulor, 1.** [**grātus,** pleasing], *a.*, *n.*, express joy. 1
tametsī, *conj.* [**tamen**+**etsī,** even if], although, though, notwithstanding; and yet. *

---

6. **summa,** *the aggregate.* **ratiōnum, capitūm:** in careless contempt for the *persons* of the motley multitude.

9. **summa,** *sum total.* The total given by Caesar is considered too high by some commentators. One ancient authority gives 80,000, another 157,000. **fuērunt** agrees with the plural predicate. A. 204 *b*; G. 211 R. 1, Exc. 3); H. 462; *B.* 254 4.

11. **c et x:** adding the Boii to this number gives a total of 142,000 survivors, making the loss of the Helvetians and their allies 263,000. Caesar's conduct of this campaign —his first one in command of a large army—was characterized by great energy and ability. He exhibited a degree of caution which was natural under the circumstances. The slow movement of the enemy and their lack of unity helped him greatly.

1. **cōnfectō:** how long had the war continued? **Galliae:** Gallia Celtica probably is meant.

2. **prīncipēs:** the most influential men, not necessarily the magistrates. **ad Caesarem:** he was with his army in an intrenched camp among the Lingones, probably in the place where he had received the submission of the Helvetii.

3. **grātulātum:** for form and use see on **11, 5.** What active forms are common to deponent verbs?

3—11. Change to direct disc.

prō veteribus Helvētiōrum iniūriīs populī Rōmānī ab hīs poenās bellō repetīsset, tamen eam rem nōn minus ex ūsū terrae Galliae quam populī Rōmānī accidisse, propterea quod eō cōnsiliō flōrentissimīs rēbus domōs suās Helvētiī relīquissent, utī tōtī Galliae bellum īnferrent imperiōque potīrentur locumque domiciliō ex māgnā cōpiā dēligerent, quem ex omnī Galliā opportūnissimum āc frūctuōsissimum iūdicāssent, reliquāsque cīvitātēs stīpendiāriās habērent. Petiērunt,

5. **re-petō, -ere, petīvī (petiī), petītus** [**pētō**, seek], *a.*, seek *or* ask again, exact, demand back; inflict (**poenās**). 2
ūsus, -ūs [**ūtor**, use], M., use, experience, service, advantage; **ūsus est**, it is necessary; **ūsuī** (**ex ūsū**) of advantage, of service. *
6. **terra, -ae**, F., earth, land, soil; *in pl.* earth, world: **orbis terrārum**, the world, all nations. *
7. **flōrēns, -entis** [**flōreō**, flower], flowering, blooming; flourishing, prosperous. 3
9. **domicilium, -ī**, N., a fixed abode *or* residence, dwelling, home, domicile. 4
10. **opportūnus, -a, -um** [**ob**+**portus**, before the port], fit, convenient, opportune. *
frūctuōsus, -a, -um [**frūctus**, fruit], abounding in fruit, productive. 1
11. **stīpendiārius, -a, -um** [**stīpendium**, tribute], under, *or* paying tribute, tributary: *in pl. as subst.*, tributaries. 3

---

4. **Helvētiōrum iniūriīs** etc., *the wrongs inflicted by the Helvetians upon the Roman people.* (such as the defeat of Cassius, **12**, 15). For the case of *Helvētiōrum* see A. 214; B. 53; G. 363, 1; H. 396, I; *B.* 199. For the case of *populī* see on *causae* **4**, 4.

5. **ex ūsū**, *to the advantage:* this was true in a far deeper sense than the Gauls then understood it. The victory of Caesar over the Helvetii was fraught with vast consequences to them.

7. **flōrentissimīs rēbus**, *although they were in a very prosperous condition:* the Abl. Abs., equivalent to a concessive clause. **flōrentissimīs**: cf. Caesar's statements in **2**, 12—15. It does not seem probable that the Helvetii were led to emigrate through motives of ambition alone.

8, 9. **utī . . . dēligerent**, *to wage . . . and get control . . . and choose etc.*, explaining the phrase **eō cōnsiliō** and in apposition with it. **tōtī Galliae**: for case cf. *reī* **23**, 5. **imperiō**: for case cf. **2**, 6. **domiciliō**: for case cf. *impedīmentō*, **25**, 6. **ex māgnā cōpiā**: all Gaul lay before them.

11. **stīpendiāriās**: the Gauls already knew what submission to a foreign invader meant. See Int. 66. **petiērunt**, etc., *they requested permission to appoint.*

12. **concilium**: composed of representatives from all the states of central Gaul. Such councils were a common device among the Gauls and often used by Caesar for

ut sibi concilium tōtīus Galliae in diem certam indīcere idque Caesaris voluntāte facere licēret: sēsē habēre quāsdam rēs, quās ex commūnī cōnsēnsū ab eō petere vellent. Eā rē permīssā diem conciliō cōnstituērunt et iūreiūrandō, nē quis ēnūntiāret, nisi quibus commūnī cōnsiliō mandātum esset, inter sē sanxērunt.

They implore him to aid them against the German king Ariovistus.

31. Eō conciliō dīmīssō īdem prīncipēs cīvitātum, quī ante fuerant, ad Caesarem revertērunt petiēruntque, utī sibi sēcrētō dē suā omniumque salūte cum eō agere licēret. Eā rē impetrātā sēsē omnēs flentēs Caesarī ad pedēs prōiēcērunt: Nōn minus sē id contendere et labōrāre, nē ea, quae dīxissent, ēnūntiārentur,

12. **in-dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus** [dīcō, say], *a.*, say publicly, proclaim, announce, appoint. *

13. **quīdam, quaedam, quoddam** (*subst.* **quiddam**), *indef. pron.*, a certain, some; a certain one, somebody, something. *

14. **commūnis, -e** [mūniō, serve], serving together; *hence*, common, general, universal, ordinary. *

cōnsēnsus, -ūs [cōnsēntiō, think together, agree], M., united opinion, agreement, coalition, consent. *

15. **per-mittō, -ere, mīsī, mīssus** [mittō, send], *a.*, *send* or *let go through;* let go; allow, permit, suffer; intrust, commit. *

17. **sanciō, -īre, sānxī, sānctus** [cf. sācer, sacred], *a.*, ordain, ratify, sanction. 3

6. **labōrō, 1.** [**labor,** toil], *n.*, toil, work hard; be anxious, troubled, *or* perplexed; labor, suffer be hard pressed. *

---

his own purpose. **tōtīus Galliae:** observe the repetition of this expression, probably for the sake of definiteness.

13. voluntāte: the approval of Caesar was sought simply to avoid any misunderstanding on his part of the object of the conference. The Gauls were doubtless greatly impressed by his brilliant success, but did not as yet have any thought of political submission to him. **licēret:** for the clause cf. **7**, 12, 13.

15—17. iūreiūrandō, nē quis . . . inter sē sanxērunt, *they mutually agreed under oath that no one etc.* **quis:** for trans. cf. **7**, 20.

1. eō conciliō dīmīssō: Caesar leaves it to be inferred from the fact that his permission was given (*eā rē permīssā* line 14 above) that the council was held. **īdem prīncipēs: 30**, 2.

3, 4. petiērunt, utī sibi . . . licēret: for the clause cf. **2**, 4. **sēcrētō:** this precaution indicates how great the dread of Ariovistus was. **agere,** *to confer.*

5. Caesarī ad pedēs, *at Caesar's feet.* **Caesarī:** for the Dat. of Reference instead of a Poss. Gen.

quam utī ea, quae vellent, impetrārent, proptereā quod, sī ēnūntiātum esset, summum in cruciātum sē ventūrōs vidērent. Locūtus est prō hīs Diviciacus Aeduus: Galliae tōtīus factiōnēs esse duās: hārum alterius prīncipātum tenēre Aeduōs, alterius Arvernōs. Hī cum tantopere dē potentātū inter sē multōs annōs contenderent, factum esse utī ab Arvernīs Sēquanīsque Germānī mercēde arcesserentur. Hōrum prīmō circiter mīlia XV Rhēnum trānsīsse: posteāquam agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs ferī āc barbarī adamās-

8. **cruciātus, -ūs** [**cruciō**, crucify], M., crucifying, torture, torment. *

10. **factiō, -ōnis** [**faciō**, make], F., making, doing; combination, party, faction. *

11. **Arvernī, -ōrum**, M., *a people of Celtic Gaul, chief town Gergovia, now Auvergne.* *

tantopere [**tantus**, so great + **opus**, effort], *with so great effort;* so greatly, so fiercely. 1

potentātus, -ūs [**potēns**, powerful], M., chief power, supremacy. 1

13. **mercēs, -ēdis** [**mereō**, earn], F., earnings, pay, hire, wages. 1

arcessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus [**ar**=**ad**+ **cēdō**, go], *a.*, cause to go to *or* approach; call for, summon.

prīmō, [*abl.. of* **prīmus**, first], *adv.*, at first, in the first place. *

14. **posteāquam** (**posteā quam**), *adv.* [**posteā**, afterwards], after that, after. *

15. **ferus, -a, -um**, wild, fierce; *fem. as subst.*, wild beast. *

barbarus, -a, -um, foreign (*to Greeks and Romans*), uncivilized, savage, barbarous; *pl. as subst.*, foreigners, savages, barbarians. *

ad-amō, 1. [**amō**, love], love exceedingly; covet. 1

---

see A. 235 *a*; G. 350, 1; H. 384 II 4N.2. *B.*188,1, n. **nōn minus**, etc., *no less strove and were anxious that . . . should not be reported, than that* etc. **id**,i. e. **nē . . . ēnūntiārentur.**

7. **quam utī . . . impetrārent**, *than to obtain etc.* For mood cf. l. 4.

8. **ēnūntiātum esset**, *if they were reported.* For trans. of impers. cf. **22**, 9. **23**, 5. **in . . . sē ventūrōs** (*esse*), *that they would meet with.*

9. **Diviciacus:** see on **3**, 15. **Galliae tōtīus:** see on **30**, 1. **factiōnēs:** see Int. on the political condition of Gaul at this time.

10. **hārum:** sc. *factiōnum.* **prīncipātum:** a preponderating influence exerted by one tribe over others, which amounted to a virtual supremacy.

11. **Arvernōs:** they traced their origin back to Troy and therefore claimed kinship with the Romans. **potentātū** = *prīncipātū.*

12. **factum esse utī**, *it came to pass that.* **Sēquanīs:** they were at first clients of the Arverni, but seem to have succeeded them in the leadership of the faction opposed to the Aedui. Possibly they may have been the first to suggest the inviting in of the Germans, and this may have augmented their influence.

13. **mercēde:** the Germans were at first simply hired soldiers. **prīmō:** apparently in 72 B. C.

15. **adamāssent:** uncontr. form?

sent, trāductōs plūrēs: nunc esse in Galliā ad centum et XX mīlium numerum. Cum hīs Aeduōs eōrumque clientēs semel atque iterum armīs contendisse; māgnam calamitātem pulsōs accēpisse, omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum āmīsisse. Quibus proeliīs calamitātibusque frāctōs, quī et suā virtūte et populī Rōmānī hospitiō atque amīcitiā plūrimum ante in Galliā potuissent, coāctōs esse Sēquanīs obsidēs dare nōbilissimōs cīvitātis et iūreiūrandō cīvitātem obstringere, sēsē neque obsidēs repetitūrōs neque auxilium ā populō Rōmānō implōrātūrōs neque recūsātūrōs, quō minus perpetuō sub illōrum diciōne atque imperiō essent. Ūnum sē esse ex omnī cīvitāte Aeduōrum, quī addūcī nōn

16. nunc, *adv.*, now, at present, at this time. *

17. semel, *adv.*, once, a single time; but once, once for all: **semel atque iterum,** repeatedly; **ut semel,** as soon as. 2

18. iterum, *adv.*, again, anew, a second time; for the second time; twice. 4

21. frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctus, *a.*, break, crush, subdue, discourage. 2

hospitium, -ī [**hospes,** host *or* guest], N., the relation of host and guest; friendship, hospitality. 5

25. implōrō, 1. [**plōrō,** call out], *a.*, beseech, entreat, implore. 4

recūsō, 1. [**re+causa,** cause], *a.*, *n.*, *make cause against* or *objection to;* refuse, reject, repudiate, object to: **quōminus,** refuse to. *

26. perpetuō [**perpetuus,** continuous], *adv.*, continuously, constantly; forever. 2

diciō, -ōnis, F., dominion, authority, rule, sway. 3

---

17. clientēs: the smaller Gallic tribes naturally attached themselves to the larger for the sake of protection, giving in return tribute and military service. Some client states maintained a separate government and army; others did not.

19. pulsōs accēpisse, *as they were beaten they suffered.*

20. omnem . . . āmīsisse: this was an exaggeration. The nobles and cavalry of the Aedui were very prominent in the campaigns of the Gallic war.

21. hospitiō: the Roman senate was strangely forgetful of its engagements with the Aedui.

22. plūrimum potuissent: for the acc. see on **20,** 6.

24, 26. auxilium . . . implōrātūrōs: a thing the Aedui would be likely to do on account of the *hospitium* with Rome. **neque recūsātūrōs** (*esse*), **quō minus essent,** *and would not refuse to be.* For the Subj. see A. 319 *c;* B. 108, *d;* G. 549; H. 499, 3 N. 2; *B.* 295, 3.

27, 28. sē = *Diviciacum.* **potuerit:** for mood see A. 320, *b;* B. 109; G. 631; H. 503 II, 1; *B.* 283, 2. cf. **5,** 2, 3.

potuerit, ut iūrāret aut līberōs suōs obsidēs daret. Ob eam rem sē ex cīvitāte prōfūgisse et Rōmam ad senātum vēnisse auxilium postulātum, quod sōlus neque iūreiūrandō neque obsidibus tenerētur. Sed pēius vīctōribus Sēquanīs quam Aeduīs vīctīs accidisse, proptereā quod Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, in eōrum fīnibus cōnsēdisset tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī, quī esset optimus tōtīus Galliae, occupāvisset et nunc dē alterā parte tertiā Sēquanōs dēcēdere iubēret, propterea quod paucīs mēnsibus ante Harūdum mīlia hominum XXIV ad eum vēnissent, quibus locus āc sēdēs parārentur. Futūrum esse paucīs annīs, utī omnēs ex Galliae fīnibus pellerentur atque omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsīrent:

28. iūrō, 1. [**iūs**, right], *n.*, affirm one's rights, make oath, swear. *

29. prōfugiō, -ere, fūgī, [**fugiō**, flee], *n.*, flee from *or* before, run away, escape. *

Rōma, -ae, F., Rome. 3

30. postulō, 1. [**poscō**, demand], *a.*, claim, demand, call for, request. *

31. male [**malus**, bad], badly, ill, adversely: 1 (*comp.* **pēius** (1); *sup.* **pessimē**). *

vīctor, -ōris [**vincō**, conquer], M., conqueror, victor; *as adj.*, victorious. *

32. Ariovistus, -ī, M., *king of the German tribe, Suebi.*

rēx, rēgis [**rēgō**, rule], M., ruler, monarch, king. *

34. optimus, -a, -um [*sup.* of **bonus**], most excellent, best, very good. 4

35. dē-cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus [**cēdō**, go], *n.*, go from *or* away, depart, withdraw, leave, forsake. 5

36. Harūdēs, -um, M., *a German tribe from Jutland, which joined the army of Ariovistus.* 3

37. sēdēs, -is [**sedeō**, sit], F., seat, chair; residence, abode, settlement. 5

---

30. auxilium postulātum: in which effort, however, he was unsuccessful. The senate, led by the consul, Cicero, was engaged in combating Catiline, and could not be induced to pay attention to the representatives of the Aeduan chief. Cicero, who was his host, speaks of him with admiration. **postulātum:** form? **11,** 5.

31, 32. pēius accidisse, *it had turned out worse.* **Germānōrum:** probably the Suebi, the largest and strongest tribe in Germany.

33. cōnsēdisset: he had crossed the upper Rhine from modern Baden, his former home. **tertiam partem:** "a common mulct in ancient times." (Moberly).

36. paucīs mēnsibus ante, *a few months before.* For case cf. **18,** 26.

38. futūrum esse, *the result would be,* cf. *factum esse,* l. 12. **omnēs:** not the Sequani only, but all the tribes of central Gaul.

39. omnēs . . . trānsīrent: as the Cimbri and Teutones had done fifty years before.

neque enim cōnferendum esse Gallicum cum Germānōrum agrō, neque hanc cōnsuētūdinem vīctūs cum illā comparandam. Ariovistum autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō vīcerit, quod proelium factum sit Admagetobrigae, superbē et crūdēliter imperāre, obsidēs nōbilissimī cūiusque līberōs poscere et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque ēdere, sī qua rēs nōn ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem ēius facta sit. Hominem esse barbarum, īrācundum, temerārium; nōn posse ēius imperia diūtius sustinēre. Nisi sī quid in Caesare populōque Rōmāno sit auxiliī, omnibus Gallis idem esse faciendum, quod Helvētiī fēcerint, ut domō ēmigrent, aliud domicilium,

41. **cōnsuētūdō, -īnis** [cōnsuēscō], F., habit, custom, practice.*
vīctus, -ūs [vīvō, live], M., living, life; provisions, food. 4
comparō, 1. [com-par, equal to], *a.*, set in pairs, place in comparison, compare. 2
43. **Admagetobriga, -ae,** F., *a Gallic town (location unknown).* *
superbē [superbus, proud], *adv.*, proudly, haughtily. 1
44. **crūdēliter** [crūdēlis, cruel], *adv.*, cruelly. 2
45. **ē-dō, dere, didī, ditus** [dō, give], *a.*, give, inflict. 1
46. **nūtus, -ūs** [nuō, nod], M., nod, sign, command. 3
47. **īrācundus, -a, -um** [īra, wrath], irritable, passionate. 1
temerārius, -a, -um [temerē, by chance, rashly], rash, imprudent, reckless. 2
50. **ē-migrō,** 1. [migrō, depart], *n.*, depart, remove, migrate. 1

---

40. **Gallicum:** sc. *agrum.*

41. **hanc** = *Gallicam* **vīctūs:** what is the quantity of the vowel **u** in the perf. part. of *vincō?*

42. **ut semel:** see vocab. l. 17.

43. **proelium factum sit:** in 61 B. C., three years before this. **Admagetobrigae:** the location of this town is unknown. It was probably near the upper Arar. The word is said to mean "great mountain." For case see A. 258 *c* 1, 2; B. 100; G. 411; H. 425, II; *B.* 232, 1.

44. **cūiusque:** the forms of **quisque,** *each,* with superlatives and ordinals have the force of *all* or *every.*

45. **omnia exempla cruciātūsque,** *every form of cruelty,* lit., *all forms and cruelties* (Hendiadys); see A. 385, 1; G. 698; H. 636, III, 2; *B.* 374 4.

48, 49. **nisi sī,** *unless perhaps. Nisi* is here an adverb. **quid auxiliī,** *some help.* **quid:** what kind of a pronoun? cf. **30,** 15; **20,** 2. **auxiliī:** for the case see A. 216, 3; B. 56; G. 369, 371; H. 397, 3; *B.* 201, 2. **Gallīs:** for case see on *sibi* **11,** 15.

50. **ut domō ēmigrent** etc., *viz. leave home etc.*, explaining *idem.*

aliās sēdēs, remōtās ā Germānīs, petant fōrtūnamque, quaecumque accidat, experiantur. Haec sī ēnūntiāta Ariovistō sint, nōn dubitāre, quīn dē omnibus obsidibus, quī apud eum sint, gravissimum supplicium sūmat. Caesarem vel auctōritāte suā atque exercitūs vel recentī vīctōriā vel nōmine populī Rōmānī dēterrēre posse, nē māior multitūdō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovistī iniūriā posse dēfendere.

The bearing and condition of the Sequani.

32. Hāc ōrātiōne ab Diviciacō habitā omnēs, quī aderant, māgnō flētū auxilium ā Caesare petere coepērunt. Animadvertit Caesar ūnōs ex omnibus Sēquanōs nihil eārum rērum facere, quās cēterī facerent, sed trīstēs, capite dēmīssō, terram intuērī. Eius reī quae caūsa esset, mīrātus ex ipsīs quaesiit. Nihil Sēquanī respondēre, sed in eādem trīstitiā tacitī permanēre. Cum ab hīs saepius

51. **remōtus, -a, -um,** *partic adj.*, [**removeō**], distant, remote. 4
quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, *indef. rel.*, whoever, whichever, whatever; whatsoever; every possible, all, all who, every one who, no matter who. *
52. **experior, -perīrī, -pertus sum,** prove, try, test, experience. *

2. **flētus, -ūs** [**fleō**], M., a weeping, lamentation. 2
4. **cēterus, -a, -um** (*in pl. only in Caesar*), the rest of, the remainder; *as subst.*, the rest, remaining, others. *
5. **trīstis, -e,** sad, sorrowful. 1
dē-mittō, -ere, mīsī, mīssus [**mittō,** send], *a.*, send away *or* down, cast *or* thrust down: **sē,** descend; **sē animō,** lose courage; *in p. p. as adj.*, low; dejected, downcast. *
in-tueor, 2. *a.*, look upon. 1
6. **mīror,** 1. *a.*, *n.*, wonder *or* marvel at, admire, be astonished. 3
7. **trīstitia, -ae** [**trīstis,** sad], F., sadness, dejection, sorrow. 1
per-maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsus [**maneō,** remain], *n.*, stay through *or* to the end; hold out, endure. *

53, 54. **quīn . . . sūmat,** *that he would inflict.* Cf. **17,** 8–10.

1. **habitā,** *delivered.*

2. **māgnō flētū:** Caesar often mentions the demonstrative manners of the Gauls. **flētū:** for case cf. **25,** 11. **auxilium petere:** the Gauls failed to see that they were simply changing masters in appealing to Caesar against Ariovistus.

4. **eārum rērum:** supplications and tears.

6, 7. **esset:** for mood cf. **12,** 3. **20,** 21. **respondēre, permanēre:** form and equivalent? See on **16,** 2. **in eādem trīstitiā:** their de-

quaereret neque ūllam omnīnō vōcem exprimere posset, īdem Diviciacus Aeduus respondit: Hōc esse miseriōrem et graviōrem fōrtūnam Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum, quod sōlī nē in occultō quidem querī neque auxilium implōrāre audērent absentisque Ariovistī crūdēlitātem, velut sī cōram adesset, horrērent, propatereā, quod reliquīs tamen fugae facultās darētur, Sēquanīs vērō, quī intrā fīnēs suōs Ariovistum recēpissent, quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte ēius essent, omnēs cruciātūs essent perferendī.

Caesar promises to undertake their defence. His reasons.

33. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs Caesar Gallōrum animōs verbīs cōnfīrmāvit pollicitusque est, sibi eam rem cūrae futūram: māgnam sē habēre spem, et beneficiō suō et auctōritāte adductum Ariovistum fīnem

8. **vōx, vōcis** [**vocō**, call], F., voice, cry, call, sound; word; *pl.*, words, language, speech. *

exprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus [**premō**, press], *a.*, press out, extort, elicit; raise. 2

9. **miser, misera, miserum,** wretched, miserable, unfortunate. 3

11. **occultus, -a, -um** [**occulō**, cover up], covered, concealed, secret; **in occultō (locō)**, in a secluded *or* secret place. *

12. **absēns, -entis** [*pr. p. of* **absum**], absent, at a distance. 5

crūdēlitās, -tātis [**crūdēlis**, cruel], F., cruelty, harshness. 2

velut, *adv.*, [**vel + ut**, as], as, as if. 1

cōram, *adv.* [**cum + ōs**, face], face to face, in person. 3

13. **horreō, -ēre, -uī,** *a.*, shudder at, dread. 1

14. **vērō,** *adv.* [**vērus**, true], in truth, truly, in fact, assuredly; but, however; but in fact, indeed. *

intrā, *prep. with acc.* [*for* **interā**, *sc.* **parte**], within, into. *

3. **cūra, -ae** [cf. **caveō**, take care], F., care, anxiety, attention. 3

meanor was intended as an appeal to the pity of Caesar.

9. **hōc,** *the*; for case cf. *eō* **14**, 3.

10. **reliquōrum:** sc. *fōrtūnam.*

12. **absentis,** *even when absent.* cf. the use of the pres. part. for a clause in **25**, 20.

14. **Sēquanīs:** for case cf. *Sibi* **11**, 15.

2, 3. **sibi . . . futūram,** *that this business would receive his attention;* lit., *would be a care to him.* For cases of *sibi and cūrae* cf. *Auxiliō Caesarī* **18**, 28. **māgnam sē** etc., *he confidently expected that Ariovistus would end* (*make an end of*) *his outrages.*

4. **beneficiō suō:** the titles "*rēx*" and "*amīcus*" had been conferred upon Ariovistus by the Senate, in Caesar's consulship, possibly at his suggestion. **auctōritāte:** no doubt the Gauls were greatly impressed by Caesar's confident bearing.

iniūriīs factūrum. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā concilium dīmīsit. Et secundum ea multae rēs eum hortābantur, quārē sibi eam rem cōgitandam et suscipiendam putāret, imprīmīs, quod Aeduōs, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque saepenumerō ā senatū appellātōs, in servitūte atque in diciōne vidēbat Germānōrum tenērī, eōrumque obsidēs esse apud Ariovistum āc Sēquanōs intellegēbat; quod in tantō imperiō populī Rōmānī turpissimum sibi et reī pūblicae esse arbitrābātur. Paulātim autem Germānōs cōnsuēscere Rhēnum trānsīre et in Galliam māgnam eōrum multitūdinem venīre populō Rōmānō perīculōsum vidēbat; neque sibi hominēs ferōs āc barbarōs temperātūrōs exīstimābat, quīn, cum omnem Galliam occupāvissent,

6. **secundum,** *prep. with acc.* [**sequor,** follow], by, along; after, next to; in accordance with, according to. 4

7. **cōgitō, 1.** [**cum + agitō,** put in quick motion; consider], *a., n.,* consider thoroughly *or* carefully, ponder, reflect; think, purpose, plan. *

im (in-) -prīmīs, *adv.* [*abl. pl. of* **primus**], among the first; in the first place, particularly. *

8. **saepenumerō,** *adv.* [**saepe,** often + **numerus**], oftentimes, repeatedly, frequently. 5

11. **turpis, -e,** ugly, unseemly; shameful, disgraceful. *

12. **rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae** [**rēs,** matter + **pūblicus**], public affairs; state, commonwealth. *

paulātim [**paulum,** a little], little by little, by degrees, gradually. *

14. **perīculōsus, -a, -um** [**perīculum,** danger], full of danger, dangerous, perilous. 2

---

5. **iniūriīs:** for case see A. 225; B. 60; G. 345; H. 384, II; *B.* 187, 1. **concilium:** i. e. the private conference; see **30,** 12.

6, 7. **ea:** the arguments of Diviciacus. **quārē . . . putāret,** *to think that he must consider this business carefully and set about it.* **sibi:** for case cf. *sibi* **11,** 15.

8, 9. **frātrēs . . . appellātōs:** see on **11,** 6. **Germānōrum:** the word is derived by some authorities from **ger** = *lance, spear;* hence it means lancers, spearmen: see Int. 189.

11, 12. **turpissimum . . . arbitrābātur:** Caesar saw this now more clearly than he did at Rome. His point of view was different. **sibi:** for case cf. **1,** 10; **9,** 6. **paulātim** etc., *to gradually get in the habit of crossing and come was dangerous:* obj. of **vidēbat.**

14. **perīculōsum:** because it would advance the German frontier from the Rhine to the northern boundary of the Roman Province.

15–18. **sibi temperātūrōs** (*esse*) etc., *would restrain themselves . . . from passing . . . and again hastening from thence.* **sibi:** for case cf. **2,** 4; **9,** 8; **25,** 20. **exīrent,**

ut ante Cimbrī Teutonīque fēcissent, in prōvinciam exīrent atque inde in Ītaliam contenderent, praesertim cum Sēquanōs ā prōvinciā nostrā Rhodanus dīvideret; quibus rēbus quam mātūrrimē occurrendum putābat. Ipse autem Ariovistus tantōs sibi spīritūs, tantam arrogantiam sūmpserat, ut ferendus nōn vidērētur.

Ariovistus haughtily rejects Caesar's proposal to confer with him.

34. Quamobrem placuit eī, ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs mitteret, quī ab eō postulārent, utī aliquem locum medium utrīusque colloquiō dēlige-

17. **Cimbrī, -ōrum,** M., *a Celtic people from the Cimbric Chersonese (Jutland). Having invaded Italy they were defeated by C. Marius near Verona,* 101 B. C. 5

Teutonī, -ōrum (*or* **-um**), M., *a Celtic people from Jutland, who with the Cimbri overran Gaul,* 113 B. C., *and also suffered defeat from Marius.* 5

20. **mātūrē** [*old abl. of* **mātūrus**], *adv.*, early, speedily. 5

occurrō, -ere, -currī, -cursus [**ob + currō,** run], *n.*, run in the way of, run to meet, meet; happen upon, encounter; suggest itself, occur, oppose. *

21. **spīritus, -ūs** [**spīrō,** breathe], M., breath, spirit; pride, presumption, haughty mien *or* bearing. 2

ar (ad)-rogantia, -ae [**arrogāns,** arrogant], F., arrogance, haughtiness, presumption, insolence. 3

1. **quam-ob-rem,** *adv. interrog. and rel.*, wherefore, why. *

placeō, 2. [cf. **plācō,** appease], *n.*, please, satisfy; *often impers.*, seem good, be decided, resolved *or* determined. *

3. **uterque, utraque, utrumque** [**uter,** which (of two) + **-que**], each (of two), both. *

colloquium, -ī [**colloquor,** talk together], N., talking together, conversation; conference, parley; communication, interview. *

---

contenderent: what constructions follow **quīn**? **ut** (conj.)? **ut** (adv.)? **Cimbrī Teutonīque**: these tribes came from Jutland and the coasts of the Baltic, On their invasion and defeat, see Int. 63.

19. **Rhodanus dīvideret,** *only the Rhone divides.* Caesar's statement of the reasons for espousing the cause of the Gauls is candid and convincing. No doubt the enterprise fell in with his bold and ambitious spirit; but it appealed also to the statesman and the lover of his country. Gaul must certainly yield to the barbarism of the German or the civilization of the Roman. No half-way ground was possible. **quibus rēbus** etc., *that he must face these difficulties.* For trans. see on **22, 9.** **rēbus**: for case cf. *sibi* 1. 15. **quam**: how trans. with the superl.? See on **3,** 3.

1. **ad Ariovistum**: who was with his army on the Rhine, near modern Strasburg.

2. **quī . . . postulārent,** *to demand of him.* For *quī* and mode cf. **7,** 10; **15,** 5; **21,** 4.

ret: velle sēsē dē rē pūblicā et summīs utrīusque rēbus cum eō agere. Eī lēgātiōnī Ariovistus respondit: Sī quid ipsī ā Caesare opus esset, sēsē ad eum ventūrum fuisse; sī quid ille sē vēlit, illum ad sē venīre oportēre. Praetereā sē neque sine exercitū in eās partēs Galliae venīre audēre, quās Caesar possidēret, neque exercitum sine māgnō commeātū atque mōlīmentō in ūnum locum contrahere posse. Sibi autem mīrum vidērī, quid in suā Galliā, quam bellō vīcisset, aut Caesarī aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negōtiī esset.

6. **opus**, *indecl.* [cf. **opus**, work, deed], need, necessity; *used in the predicate with the Nom. of the thing needed:* **opus est**, it is necessary. *

7. **praetereā**, *adv.* [**praeter**, beyond], beyond this, besides, furthermore. *

9. **possideō, -ēre, sēdī, -sessus** [**potis**, able + **sedeō**, sit], *a.*, *sit as master;* hold possession of, occupy, hold, possess. 3

commeātus, -ūs [**commeō**, go and return, make a trip], M., communication, trip; supplies, provisions, (*military*) stores. *

10. **mōlīmentum, -ī** [**mōlior**, endeavor], N., exertion, difficulty. 1

con-trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractus [**trahō**, draw], *a.*, draw *or* bring together, assemble; draw into smaller compass, contract. 5

mīrus, -a, -um [**mīror**, wonder at], strange, astonishing. 2

12. **negōtium -ī** [**nec** + **ōtium**, leisure], N., *want of leisure;* business, occupation, affair, concern: **negōtium dare**, employ, assign a matter: **quid negōtiī**, what business. *

---

4. **velle** etc.: Caesar was anxious to secure his end without a war and probably thought that the diplomatic relations which had been maintained with Ariovistus could be kept up; see **33**, 3, 4, *beneficiō*, etc. His army had just ended one campaign and was not yet thoroughly to be relied upon, as was shown later on. **summīs . . . rēbus**, *matters of greatest importance to both.*

5. **quid:** what kind of a pronoun? cf. **7**, 20. **ipsī**, for case cf. **7**, 10.

6, 7. **sī . . . velit:** *velit* governs two accusatives like verbs of asking or demanding (see on **16**, 1), *if he wished anything of him.*

8, 9. **quās . . . possidēret:** i. e., the land of the Aedui, which Ariovistus assumes that Caesar has conquered.

11, 12. **quid . . . esset** (subject of **vidērī**), *what business either Caesar or the Roman people in general* (**omnīnō**) *had in his* (part of) *Gaul* etc. **Caesarī, populō:** for case cf. *ipsī* l. 5. **negōtiī:** for case cf. **31**, 49. Notice that the partitive genitive is usually separated by several words from the word that govern it. **esset**, for mode cf. **12**, 3; **21**, 3.

Caesar sends him an ultimatum.

35. Hīs respōnsīs ad Caesarem relātīs iterum ad eum Caesar lēgātōs cum hīs mandātīs mittit: Quoniam tantō suō populīque Rōmānī beneficiō affectus, cum in cōnsulātū suō rēx atque amīcus ā senātū appellātus esset, hanc sibi populōque Rōmānō grātiam referret, ut in colloquium venīre invītātus gravārētur neque dē commūnī rē dīcendum sibi et cōgnōscendum putāret, haec esse, quae ab eō postulāret: prīmum, nē quam multitūdinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūceret: deinde obsidēs, quōs habēret ab Aeduīs, redderet Sēquanīsque permitteret, ut, quōs illī habērent, voluntāte ēius reddere illīs licēret; nēve Aeduōs iniūriā lacēsseret, nēve hīs sociīsque eōrum bellum īnferret. Sī id ita fēcisset, sibi populōque Rōmānō perpetuam grātiam atque amīcitiam cum ēo futūram: sī nōn,

2. **mandātum, -ī,** N., order.
3. **quoniam,** *adv.* [**quom**=**cum** +**iam,** now], when now; since. *
4. **cōnsulātus, -ūs** [**cōnsul,** consul], M., consulship. 1
6. **invītō, 1.** *a.*, invite, summon. 4
gravor, 1. [**gravis,** heavy], *dep.*, be unwilling, object. 1
10. **reddō, -dere, reddidī, redditus** [**re**+**dō,** give], *a.*, give back, return, restore; make *or* cause to be, render. *
13. **per-petuus, -a, -um** [**perpetuō,** cause to continue], perpetual permanent; entire; **in perpetuum,** forever. *

---

1. **iterum:** see **34,** 1, 2.

2. **mandātīs:** the defiant reply of the king no doubt seemed to Caesar the height of impertinence.

3. **beneficiō affectus:** the German was shrewd enough to estimate the *beneficium* at its true value.

4. **cōnsulātū:** see on **33,** 3—5.

5. **hanc grātiam referret, ut** etc., *since he was making* (direct, *you make*) *such a requital as to be reluctant . . . and not think it necessary to discuss and learn* etc.

7, 8. **haec pōstulāret,** *the following were the demands he made of him.*

9. **trādūceret:** what mode in dir. disc.? See on **13,** 15.

10, 11. **Sēquanīsque . . . licēret,** *and grant permission to the Sequani to return with his (Ariovistus') approval those (hostages) which they (Sēquanī) had (ab Aeduīs).* **redderet, permitteret:** for mood in direct form see on **7,** 20.

12. **hīs, sociīs:** for case cf. **2,** 5.

13. **sibi** etc., *he (Caesar) and the Roman people would have* etc. **sibi, populō,** for case cf. **7,** 10.

14—19. **sī nōn impetrāret . . . sē . . . nōn neglēctūrum** (*esse*), *if*

impetrāret, sēsē, quoniam M. Messālā, M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus senātus cēnsuisset, utī, quīcumque Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret, quod commodō reī pūblicae facere posset, Aeduōs cēterōsque amīcōs populī Rōmānī dēfenderet, sē Aeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglēctūrum.

Ariovistus responds defiantly.

36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: Iūs esse bellī, ut, quī vīcissent, iīs, quōs vīcissent, quemadmodum vellent, imperārent: item populum Rōmānum victīs nōn ad alterius praescrīptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre cōnsuēsse. Sī ipse populō Rōmānō nōn praescrīberet, quemadmodum suō iūre ūterētur, nōn oportēre sēsē ā populō Rōmānō in suō iūre impedīrī. Aeduōs sibi, quoniam bellī

16. **cēnseō, -ēre, -uī, -sus,** *a.*, estimate, reckon; be of opinion, think, decide. *

17. **commodum, -ī** [**commodus,** convenient], N., convenience, interest, advantage. *

19. **neglegō, -ere, lēxī, lēctus** [**nec + legō,** pick out, choose], *a.*, not heed, disregard, neglect. *

2. **quem-ad-modum,** *adv.*, in what way *or* manner, just as, as, how. 3

4. **praescrīptum, -ī** [**praescrībō,** direct], N., direction, dictates. 1

arbitrium, -ī [**arbiter,** judge], N., decision *or* judgement (*of the arbiter*); opinion, discretion, pleasure. 3

5. **prae-scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus** [**scrībō,** write], *a.*, write beforehand; order, direct, prescribe. 4

---

he (Caesar) *did* (direct, *I do*) *not obtain* (such assurances), *he would* (direct *I will*) *not disregard* etc. **M. Messālā . . . cōnsulibus:** in 61 B. C.

17. **quod . . . posset,** (a common formula in the decrees of the Senate) *so far as he could do it in accordance with the interests of the state.* **quod:** (=*quantum*), for case cf. *minimum* **20,** 6. **commodō:** for case cf. **12,** 3; **25,** 11; what takes the place here of the limiting adjective?

18. **dēfenderet:** the purpose of this decree was to induce the tribes of central Gaul to oppose the emigration of the Helvetii. It was passed in the interest of Rome, not Gaul, and Ariovistus knew this.

1—5. Note the forms of the verbs in dir. disc.: **est—vīcerint vīcerint—velint (volunt)—imperent—cōnsuēvit.** Change to dir. disc. throughout the chapter. **iīs imperārent,** *shall rule those.* **iīs:** for case cf. **2,** 4; **33,** 15.

6. **quemadmodum . . . ūterētur,** *how they* (*populus Rōmānus*) *should exercise their rights.* **nōn opōrtēre** etc., *he* (*Ariovistus*) *ought not to be opposed.*

7—9. **sibi stīpendāriōs esse factōs,** *had become tributary to him.*

fōrtūnam temptāssent et armīs congressī āc superātī essent, stīpendiāriōs esse factōs. Māgnam Caesarem iniūriam facere, quī suō adventū vēctīgālia sibi dēteriōra faceret. Aeduīs sē obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse, neque iīs neque eōrum sociīs iniūriā bellum illātūrum, sī in eō manērent, quod convēnisset, stīpendiumque quotannīs penderent; sī id nōn fēcissent, longē iīs frāternum nōmen populī Rōmānī āfutūrum. Quod sibi Caesar dēnūntiāret, sē Aeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglēctūrum, nēminem sēcum sine suā perniciē contendisse. Cum vellet, congrederētur: intellēctūrum, quid invīctī Germānī,

8. **congredior, -gredī, -gressus sum** [**gradior,** step], *a., n.,* step *or* come together, meet, encounter; engage in conflict, contend. *

10. **dēterior, -ius,** *comp. adj.,* less, worse. 1

12. **maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsus,** *n.,* remain, continue, abide, stay. *

13. **stīpendium, -ī** [**stips,** gift + **pendō,** weigh], N., impost, tax, tribute (*paid in money, while the vēctīgal was paid in kind*); pay, stipend; term of military service. *

quot-annīs [**quot,** how many, every + **annus,** year], *adv.,* every year, yearly. 4

pendō, -ere, pependī, pēnsus, *a.,* weigh, weigh out; pay, pay out (*as money was weighed in payment*); suffer (*punishment*). *

15. **dē-nūntiō,** 1. [**nūntiō,** announce], *a.,* announce (*officially, by a herald, etc.*), declare; give *or* send notice, warn, threaten. 3

17. **in-vīctus, -a, -um** [**vincō,** conquer], unconquered, invincible. 1

---

stīpendāriōs: they paid tribute in money, not in produce.

10. **quī vēctīgālia . . . faceret,** *since he* (*you make*) *made his* (*my*) *revenues less valuable.* Caesar may have instructed the Aedui and Sequani not to pay tribute any longer. In any case his mere presence gave the Aedui hope and made them less careful to fulfill their engagements as to tribute.

11, 12. **iīs sociīs illātūrum** (*esse*), *would make upon* etc., **sociīs:** for case cf. **2,** 5. **iniūriā,** *without just cause.* **sī . . . convēnisset,** *if they adhered to the terms that had been agreed upon.*

13. **stīpendium:** among the Gauls a war-tax imposed upon the conquered.

14. **longē āfutūrum** (*esse*), *would be of no value to them.* **frāternum nōmen:** a gibe at the pleasant relations between the Aedui and the Romans. **quod . . . dēnūntiāret,** *whereas Caesar threatened him.* **quod:** for the clause cf. **18,** 26: **17,** 12; **14,** 11.

16. **cum** etc., *let him encounter him when he would* (direct, *when you 're ready, come on*).

17—19. **quid virtūte possent,** *how effective in valor.* For trans. see on **3,** 20. **inter annōs xiv:** i. e. ever since they crossed the Rhine in 72 B. C. This is an exaggeration, but a very natural one. The two messages of Ariovistus, though

exercitātissimī in armīs, quī inter annōs XIV tēctum nōn subīssent, virtūte possent.

Caesar, urged by his Gallic allies, marches against Ariovistus.

37. Haec eōdem tempore Caesarī mandāta referēbantur, et lēgātī ab Aeduīs et ā Trēverīs veniēbant: Aeduī questum, quod Harūdēs, quī nūper in Galliam trānsportātī essent, fīnēs eōrum populārentur: sēsē nē obsidibus quidem datīs pācem Ariovistī redimere potuisse; Trēverī autem, pāgōs centum Suēbōrum ad rīpās Rhēnī cōnsēdisse, quī Rhēnum trānsīre cōnārentur; hīs praeesse Nasuam et Cimberium frātrēs. Quibus rēbus Caesar vehementer commōtus mātūrandum sibi exīstimāvit, nē, sī nova manus Suēbōrum cum veteribus cōpiīs Arovistī sēsē coniūnxisset, minus facile resistī posset. Itaque rē frūmen-

18. **exercitātus, -a, -um** [*p. p. of* **exercitō**, train *or* practise well], well trained, skilled, versed. 2

tēctum, -ī [**tegō**, cover], N., covering, roof; house. 2

4. **trāns-portō, 1.** [**portō**, carry], *a.*, carry across *or* over, convey, transport. *

6. **Trēverī, -ōrum,** M., *a Gallic tribe on the Moselle about modern Treves.* *

Suēbī, -ōrum, M., *a powerful people of central Germany consisting of several independent tribes, the modern* Swabians. *

8. **Nasua, -ae,** M., 1 *and* **Cimberius, -ī,** M., *chiefs of the Treveri.* 1

9. **vehementer** [**vehemēns,** violent], *adv.*, violently, impetuously, zealously; strongly, powerfully. *

11. **con-iungō, -ere, -iūnxī, -iūnctus** [**iungō,** join], *a.*, join with *or* together, connect, unite. *

---

they doubtless owe very much to the literary skill of his rival, breathe a bold and frank spirit of defiance which is all his own. The candor of Caesar is evident in his presenting with so much point the other side of the case.

1. **tempore:** about the beginning of August.

3. **questum** (sc. *veniēbant*), *were coming to complain.* For form cf. **11,** 5; **30,** 3. **Harūdēs:** see vocab. **31,** 36.

4, 5. **populārentur:** for mood see on *sublevētur* **16,** 17. **obsidibus datīs,** *by giving hostages.*

6. **Trēverī . . . pāgōs,** *and further the Treveri* (kept coming to complain) *that* (the people of) *a hundred cantons.* **Suēbōrum:** This seems to have been an emigration like that of the Helvetii, not merely a movement in support of Ariovistus.

7. **trānsīre:** somewhere north of where Ariovistus was; probably near modern Mayence.

9. **mātūrandum sibi:** *that he must make haste.* **sibi:** for case cf. **11,** 15.

11. **minus** etc., *resistence could*

tāriā quam celerrimē potuit comparātā māgnīs itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.



COUNTRY AROUND VESONTIO.

He occupies Vesontio.

38. Cum trīduī viam prōcessisset, nūntiātum est eī, Ariovistum cum suīs omnibus cōpiīs ad occupandum Vesontiōnem, quod est oppidum māximum Sēquanōrum,

1. **prō-cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus** [cēdō, go], *n.*, go forth *or* forward, proceed, advance. *

3. **Vesontiō, -ōnis,** M., *the chief town of the Sequani, situated on the Doubs, modern* Besancon. 2

---

be made less easily. **rē frūmentāriā:** see Int. 116, 117.

12. **māgnīs itineribus:** see Int. 143.

13. **contendit:** Caesar intended to strike Ariovistus before he could effect a junction with the Suebi. He started from the country of the Lingones, where he had received the surrender of the Helvetii and where his army had been encamped near Tonnere pending the result of the negotiations with Ariovistus.

1. **trīduī viam:** this would bring him to the vicinity of modern Langres. **trīduī:** for case see on **5,** 8; what takes the place of the necessary adjective? **viam:** for case see on **2,** 17.

2. **Ariovistum:** while Caesar had been marching northeast, toward the Rhine, Ariovistus had been slowly advancing south. Cae-

contendere, trīduīque viam ā suīs fīnibus prōcessisse. Id nē accideret, māgnopere sibi praecavendum Caesar exīstimābat. Namque omnium rērum, quae ad bellum ūsuī erant, summa erat in eō oppidō facultās, idque nātūrā locī sīc mūniēbātur ut māgnam ad dūcendum bellum daret facultātem, propereā quod flūmen Dūbis ut circinō circumductum paene tōtum oppidum cingit; reliquum spatium, quod est nōn amplius pedum mīlle sexcentōrum, quā flūmen intermittit, mōns continet māgnā altitūdine, ita, ut rādīcēs mōntis ex utrāque parte rīpae flūminis contingant. Hunc mūrus circumdatus arcem efficit et cum oppidō coniungit. Hūc Caesar māgnīs

5. **prae-caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautus** [**caveō**, take care], *n.*, take precautions. 1

6. **namque** [**nam**, for + **-que**], *conj.*, for indeed, for; *more emphatic than* **nam**. 5

7. **sīc**, *adv.* [**sī** + *demonstr. particle* **-ce**], so, thus, in this manner. *

9. **Dūbis, -is**, M., the Doubs, *a tributary of the Saone.* 1

circinus, -ī, [cf. **circum**, around], M., a pair of compasses. 1

circum-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus [**dūcō**, lead], *a.*, lead *or* draw around. 2

10. **cingō, -ere, cinxī, cinctus**, *a.*, encircle, surround, invest, encompass. *

12. **rādīx, -īcis**, F., root; *in pl. with* **mōntis** *or* **collis**, foot, base. 5

13. **contingō, -ere, tigī, tāctus** [**tangō**, touch], *a.*, and *n.*, touch, reach; extend to, attain to; concern; befall, happen to. *

circum-dō, dare, dedī, datus [**dō**, give], *a.*, give *or* put around, encompass, surround. *

14. **arx, arcis** [**arceō**, shut up, ward off], F., citadel, fortress, stronghold. 2

efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [**ex** + **faciō**], *a.*, make *or* do completely, complete, perform, accomplish, effect. *

hūc, *adv.* [old form for **hōc**, *fr.* **hīc**,], to this place *or* point, hither, here. *

---

sar now turned toward the southeast from Langres and moved with all speed toward Vesontio. See map.

2. **occupandum**: gerund or gerundive? See on **1**, 9.

3. **quod**: the relative generally agrees with an appositive or predicate noun (here *oppidum*) in its own clause rather than with an antecedent (here *Vesontiōnem*) of different gender and number.

4. **id**: the capture of Vesontio.

5, 7. **sibi**: for case cf. **11**, 15. **ūsuī**: for case cf. **18**, 28; **25**, 6. **summa facultās**, *a very full supply.* **nātūrā lōcī** etc. note the lucid description.

8. **ut... facultātem**, *so that it furnished admirable opportunities* etc. **dūcendum**: Gerund or Gerundive? Cf. 1. 2. **ad . . . bellum**: Ariovistus made a great mistake in not holding Vesontio as he did other Sequanian towns.

9. **ut**: what part of speech? Cf. **4**. 11; **16**, 3.

nocturnīs diurnīsque itineribus contendit, occupātōque oppidō, ibi praesidium collocat.

Panic in the Roman army from fear of the Germans.

39. Dum paucōs diēs ad Vesontiōnem reī frūmentāriae commeātūsque causā morātur, ex percontātiōne nostrōrum vōcibusque Gallōrum āc mercātōrum, quī ingentī māgnitūdine corporum Germānōs, incrēdibilī virtūte atque exercitātiōne in armīs esse praedicābant (saepenumerō sēsē cum hīs congressōs nē vultum quidem atque aciem oculōrum dīcēbant ferre potuisse), tantus subitō

15. **nocturnus, -a, -um** [**nox,** night], at night, nocturnal. *
diurnus, -a, -um [**diēs,** day], of the day, by day, daily. 4

3. **percontātiō, -ōnis** [**percontor,** inquire], F., inquiring, asking; question, inquiry. 2
4. **ingēns, -entis** [**in,** *neg.* + **gēns,** race, kind; *lit. not of the kind,* i. e., *out of proportion*], enormous, huge, vast, great. *
māgnitūdō, -inis, [**māgnus,** great], F., greatness, great size, extent, stature (*corporum*). *
5. **exercitātiō, -ōnis** [**exercitō,** *freq. of* **exerceō,** exercise], F., exercising, training; practice, experience. *
prae-dicō, 1. [**dicō,** proclaim], *a.*, proclaim publicly *or* before others; publish, state, declare. 5
6. **vultus, -ūs** [**volō,** wish], M., *wish shown by the expression of the countenance*; looks. 2
7. **subitō,** *adv.*, [**subitus,** sudden, *fr.* **subeō,** come up secretly], suddenly, unexpectedly, of a sudden. *

---

11. **pedum:** cf. **trīduī** line 1.
12. **altitūdine:** for case cf. **6,** 12.
14, 15. **māgnīs . . . contendit:** as it turned out, Caesar's haste was unnecessary. Ariovistus was considerably farther away than he had supposed. Hearing that Caesar had reached Vesontio, he now paused in his advance, thinking it best to remain where reinforcements could be more easily obtained from across the Rhine and where the open country was adapted to the movements of his large force of cavalry.

1, 2. **ad Vesontiōnem,** *in the vicinity of Vesontio* **reī frūmentāriae commeātūsque:** observe how frequently Caesar refers to the procuring of supplies. His care for the physical well being of his men was constant and had much to do with his success. He kept them in the very best condition. In the hand-to-hand conflicts of ancient warfare this was an essential element in the success of the undersized Italians.

3. **vōcibus,** *replies.*

4, 5. **mercātōrum:** the hucksters who sold supplies in the camp. **māgnitūdine, virtūte, exercitātiōne:** for case cf. **6,** 12; **28,** 15; **18,** 7.

6. **sēsē** = *Gallōs* only, not the traders, because *congressōs* refers to hostile encounters.

7. **aciem oculōrum,** *flash of the eyes.*

timor omnem exercitum occupāvit, ut nōn mediocriter omnium mentēs animōsque perturbāret. Hīc prīmum ortus est ā tribūnīs mīlitum, praefectīs reliquīsque, quī ex urbe amīcitiae causā Caesarem secūtī nōn māgnam in rē mīlitārī ūsum habēbant: quōrum alius aliā causā illātā, quam sibi ad proficīscendum necessāriam esse dīceret, petēbat, ut ēius voluntāte discēdere licēret; nōnnūllī pudōre adductī, ut timōris suspīciōnem vītārent, remanēbant. Hī neque vultum fingere neque interdum lacrimās tenēre poterant; abditī in tabernāculīs aut

8. **mediocriter,** *adv.* [**mediocris,** moderate], in small degree.
9. **mēns, -entis,** F., the thinking faculty, mind, intellect; thought, purpose, determination. *
per-turbō, 1. [**turbō,** disturb], *a.*, disturb greatly, throw in confusion, confound, embarrass, disturb. *
10. **tribūnus, -ī** [**tribus,** tribe], M., tribune, *a magistrate elected by the people, voting in tribes, to defend the interests of the plebs;* **tribūnus mīlitum (mīlitāris),** a military tribune. *
praefectus, -ī [**praeficiō,** set over], M., overseer, commander, officer, general (**equitum**); governor *of a province.* *
14. **pudor, -ōris** [**pudet,** it shames], M., shame, modesty, sense of shame *or* honor. 2
15. **re-maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsus** [**maneō,** remain], *n.*, stay *or* remain behind, remain. *
fingō, -ere, finxī, fīctus [cf. **figūra,** form], *a.*, form, shape, devise, invent. 3



Tabernāculum

16. **tabernāculum, -ī** [**taberna,** hut], N., hut, tent. 3

8, 9. **ut . . . perturbāret,** *so that it made all unusually anxious and dispirited.*

10. **tribūnīs mīlitum:** see Int. 89. **praefectīs:** see Int. 101. **urbe,** *the city,* i. e. Rome. **amīcitiae . . . secūtī:** Caesar puts the matter delicately. The probability is that these men had attached themselves to him for personal gain, as was the Roman fashion. In giving them commissions, he was simply paying his political debts.

11. **nōn . . . habēbant:** they were "holiday soldiers". **nōn māgnum ūsum,** *little experience.* For the figure see on **1,** 8.

12. **quōrum . . . illātā,** *and one of these alleging one reason, another, another* (reason). For the eliptical use of *alius* see, A. 203 *c*; G. 319; H. 459, 1; *B.* 253 2.

13, 14. **ut . . . licēret,** *his permission to leave;* for the clause cf. **7,** 12, 13; **30,** 12, 13.

15. **vultum fingere:** that they might thus conceal their fear.

16. **lacrimās:** quite in keeping with the excitable temperament of the Italian. **tabernāculīs:** see Int. 137.

suum fātum querēbantur aut cum familiāribus suīs commūne perīculum miserābantur. Volgō tōtīs castrīs testāmenta obsīgnābantur. Hōrum vōcibus āc timōre paulātim etiam iī, quī māgnum in castrīs ūsum habēbant, mīlitēs centuriōnēsque quīque equitātuī praeerant, perturbābantur. Quī sē ex hīs minus timidōs exīstimārī volēbant, nōn sē hostem verērī, sed angustiās itineris et māgnitūdinem silvārum, quae intercēderent inter ipsōs atque Ariovistum, aut rem frūmentāriam, ut satis commodē supportārī posset, timēre dīcēbant. Nōnnūllī etiam Caesarī nūntiārant, cum castra moverī āc sīgna ferrī iussisset, nōn fore dictō audientēs mīlitēs neque propter timōrem sīgna lātūrōs.

Caesar encourages his troops.

40. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocātō cōnsiliō omniumque ōrdinum ad id cōnsilium adhibitīs

17. fātum, -ī [for, speak], N., what is spoken *once for all;* fate. 1

18. miseror, 1. [miser, wretched], *a.*, bewail, lament over, deplore. 2

volgō (vul-), *adv.*, [volgus, the common people], commonly, generally, everywhere, publicly, openly. *

testāmentum, -ī [testor, make a will], N., will, testament. 1

19. ob-sīgnō, 1. [sīgnō, mark; seal], *a.*, seal, seal up; sign, execute. 1

20. centuriō, -ōnis [centum, a hundred], M., centurion; *the commander of the century, the sixtieth part of a legion.* *

22. timidus, -a, -um [timeō, fear], fearful, affrighted, cowardly, afraid. 5

25. sup (sub-)-portō, 1. [portō, carry], *a.*, carry *or* bring up from beneath; bring *or* convey to; furnish. 5

27. dictum, -ī, N., a word, command, saying. 5

audiō, 4. *a.*, hear, hear of: *in pr. p. as adj.*, obedient. *

2. ōrdō, -inis, M., row, order, arrangement, series, rank. *

---

18. testāmenta: legal instruments, sealed and deposited with the quaestor.

20, 21. quī . . . habēbant . . . perturbābantur: even the experienced soldiers and officers were affected by vague fears. **centuriōnēs:** on their soldierly qualities, see Int. 93. **quī . . . praeerant:** the *praefectī.* See Int. 101.

23. angustiās itineris: the valley of the Doubs is narrow and very rough.

24. ut, *that not* (after verbs of fearing): contrast *nē*, **19,** 11.

26. sīgna ferrī: see Int. 124.

27, 28. nōn . . . audientēs, *would not be obedient to his orders.* **neque sīgna lātūrōs** (*esse*), *and would not advance.* Cf. **25,** 18, 19.

2. omnium ōrdinum: to the or-

centuriōnibus, vehementer eōs incūsāvit: prīmum quod, aut quam in partem aut quō cōnsiliō dūcerentur, sibi quaerendum aut cōgitandum putārent. Ariovistum sē cōnsule cupidissimē populī Rōmānī amīcitiam appetīsse: cūr hunc tam temerē quisquam ab officiō discessūrum iūdicāret? Sibi quidem persuādērī, cōgnitīs suīs postulātīs atque aequitāte condiciōnum perspectā eum neque suam neque populī Rōmānī grātiam repudiātūrum. Quod sī furōre atque āmentiā impulsus bellum intulisset, quid tandem verērentur? aut cūr dē

3. incūsō, 1. [**causa,** cause *or* case], *a.*, bring a case *or* charge against, complain of, upbraid, blame. 2

6. appetō (ad-), -ere, -īvī (-iī), petītus [**petō,** seek], *a.*, seek for, aim at, encroach upon, approach. *

cūr (quōr = quārē), *rel. and interrog. adv.*, why, for what reason. 4

temerē, *adv.* [cf. **temeritās,** chance], by chance, rashly, blindly, causelessly. 4

7. officium, -ī [**opus,** work + **faciō**], N., service, function, allegiance, duty; official duty, business. *

8. aequitās, -tātis [**aequus,** equal], F., equality, uniformity; impartiality, fairness, justice.

postulātum, -ī, N., demand.

9. perspiciō, -ere, spēxī, spectus [*obsol.* **speciō,** look], *a.*, look *or* see through, discern, perceive; view, examine, inspect. *

10. repudiō, 1. [**repudium** (fr. **re-** + **pudet**), divorce, rejection], divorce, reject. 1

furor, -ōris [**furō,** rage], M., rage, frenzy, madness. 3

āmentia, -ae [**mēns,** mind], F., bewilderment of mind, folly, insanity. 2

impellō (in-), -ere, pulī, pulsus [**pellō,** drive], *a.*, drive *or* urge on, incite, instigate, impel. *

---

dinary council of war, only the ten chief centurions (*prīmī ōrdinēs*) of each legion were summoned. This however, was a special gathering of all the officers of the army to listen to Caesar's admonitions; so all of the centurions were present. See Int. 97.

3. incūsāvit: Caesar's rebuke is put in the form of indirect discourse. Review the principles in your grammar (**7,** 10, footnote) and give the direct form in both Latin and English.

4, 5. dūcerentur: for mood cf. **12,** 3; **32,** 6. **quaerendum** (*esse*) **cōgitandum** (*esse*), *that they ought to inquire or consider.* The grammatical subject is the clause *aut . . . dūcerentur*, cf. **22,** 8. **putārent:** for mood cf. **16,**17; **23,** 9. **sē cōnsule:** when was Caesar consul?

6. hunc etc., *that this man* (Ariovistus) *would deviate from the path of duty so causelessly.*

7, 8. sibi quidem persuādērī, *in fact he was convinced.* The passive of intransitive verbs which govern the dative is used only impersonally and the Dative is then retained. The subject of *persuādērī* is *eum . . . repudiātūrum.* **postulātīs, aequitāte:** for trans. and constr. cf. **25,** 5; **22,** 5; **19,** 5.

10, 11. quod sī, *but if;* for case

suā virtūte aut dē ipsīus dīligentiā dēspērārent? Factum ēius hostis perīculum patrum nostrōrum memoriā, cum Cimbrīs et Teutonīs ā C. Mariō pulsīs nōn minōrem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperātor meritus vidēbātur; factum etiam nūper in Italiā servīlī tumultū, quōs tamen aliquid ūsus āc disciplīna, quam ā nōbīs accēpissent, sublevārent. Ex quō iūdicārī posse, quantum habēret in sē bonī cōnstantia, proptereā quod, quōs aliquamdiū inermōs sine causā timuis-

12. **dīligentia, -ae** [**dīligēns,** heedful], F., heedfulness, painstaking, care. *

14. **C.,** abbreviation for the praenomen **Gāius.**

Marius, -ī, M., Gaius Marius (157–56 B. C.) *the conqueror of the Cimbri and Teutones and champion of the popular party in Rome.* 1

laus, laudis, F., praise, merit, credit, commendation. *

15. **imperātor, -ōris** [**imperō,** command], M., commander-in-chief, general. *

16. **servīlis, -e** [**servus,** a slave], of *or* like a slave, servile. 2

tumultus, -ūs [**tumeō,** swell], M., disturbance, commotion, uproar; revolt, uprising. *

17. **disciplīna, -ae** [*contr. of* **discipulīna,** fr. **discipulus,** learner], F., learning, instruction, drill, discipline. *

ego, meī, etc., *pers. pron.* I; *pl.* **nōs,** we, us, etc. *

18. **cōnstantia, -ae** [**cōnstāns,** firm], F., firmness, steadfastness. 2

19. **aliquamdiū** *fem. acc. of* **aliquis** (sc. **partem**)+**diū,** a long time], for a while, for some time, awhile. 2

inermus, -a, -um [**arma,** arms], without arms *or* weapons, unarmed, defenseless. 1

---

and use of *quod* see on **20,** 9. **quid verērentur,** *what were they afraid of?* For mood see A. 338; B. 118, *e*; G. 651; H. 523, II, 1; *B.* 315. Contrast carefully with *posse* **14,** 11.

12. **suā,** refers to the subject of *dēspērārent* and avoids the repetition of the same word in the following phrase. **ipsīus,** Caesar.

13. **perīculum,** *a test.*

15. **vidēbātur:** what mode is regularly employed in dependent clauses in indirect disc.? For the indicative see A. 336 *d*, p. 373; H. 524 2, 2): *B.* 314 3. G. 628 R. (*a*).

14. **Cimbrīs et Teutonīs:** German tribes. See Int. 63. **C. Mariō:** Caesar's uncle. "What the uncle has done, can not the nephew do" would be the thought suggested to his hearers.

15. **factum** (*esse*): sc. **perīculum.**

16. **nūper:** in 73-71 B. C. **servīlī tumultū:** the Servile War. The slaves were largely Gauls and Germans. The *tumultus* was a hostile outbreak in Italy itself or in Cisalpine Gaul. **quōs:** the antecedent is implied in the adjective *servīlī* which is equivalent to *servōrum.*

18. **posse:** the subject is *quantum . . . cōnstantia, what great value is in steadfastness.*

19. **inermōs:** referring to the

sent, hōs posteā armātōs āc victōrēs superāssent. Dēnique hōs esse eōsdem quibuscum saepenumerō Helvētiī congressī nōn sōlum in suīs, sed etiam in illōrum fīnibus plērumque superārint, quī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercituī nōn potuerint. Sī quōs adversum proelium et fuga Gallōrum commovēret, hōs, sī quaererent, reperīre posse, diūturnitāte bellī dēfatīgātīs Gallīs Ariovistum, cum multōs mēnsēs castrīs sē āc palūdibus tenuisset neque suī potestātem fēcisset, dēspērantēs iam dē pūgnā et dīspersōs subitō adortum magis ratiōne et cōnsiliō quam virtūte vīcisse. Cuī ratiōnī contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperītōs locus fuisset, hāc nē ipsum quidem spērāre nostrōs exercitūs capī posse. Quī suum timōrem in reī frūmentāriae simulātiōnem angustiāsque itineris cōnferrent facere arroganter, cum aut dē officiō imperātōris dēspērāre

20. **armō**, 1. [arma], arm, equip; *in p. p. as adj.*, armed; *as subst.*, armed men. *
22. **plērumque**, *adv.* [plērusque, the greater part], for the most part, commonly, frequently. *
25. **diūturnitās, -tātis** [diūturnus, prolonged], F., long duration. 2
dē-fatīgō 1. (defet-), [fatīgō, weary], *a.*, completely weary, tire out, exhaust. 5
26. **palūs, -ūdis**, F., marsh, morass, swamp. *
28. **dīspergō, -ere, spersī, spersus** [spergō, scatter], spread, scatter: *in p. p. as adj.*, dispersed, scattered. *
contrā, *prep. with acc.*, contrary to, against, opposite to. *
30. **imperītus, -a, um** [perītus, experienced], inexperienced, unskilled, ignorant. *
32. **simulātiō, -ōnis** [simulō, make like], F., simulation, deceit, pretence. *
33. **arroganter** *adv.* [arrogāns, arrogant], presumptuously. 1

---

poorly equipped hordes of Germans and Gauls whom Marius had conquered.

20. **posteā**: i. e., in the Servile War.

26. **Gallīs**: i. e., the Aedui and their supporters.

27. **suī potestātem**, *a chance at him.*

29. **ratiōnī**, translate with *hāc* in next line and omit here; for its position cf. **12**, **17**; **22**, **16**.

30, 31. **hāc** (*ratiōne*) . . . **posse**, *not even* (*Ariovistus*) *himself hoped that our armies could be caught by this stratagem:* referring to *cum . . . vīcisse*, lines 26–29.

33. **dē . . . dēspērāre**, *to lack confidence in the general's performance of duty.*

aut praescrībere vidērentur. Haec sibi esse cūrae: frūmentum Sēquanōs, Leucōs, Lingonēs subministrāre, iamque esse in agrīs frūmenta mātūra; dē itinere ipsōs brevī tempore iūdicātūrōs. Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs neque sīgna lātūrī dīcantur, nihil sē eā rē commovērī: scīre enim, quibuscumque exercitus dictō audiēns nōn fuerit, aut male rē gestā fōrtūnam dēfuisse aut aliquō facinore compertō avāritiam esse convīctam: suam innocentiam perpetuā vītā, fēlīcitātem Helvētiōrum bellō esse perspectam. Itaque sē, quod in longiōrem diem collātūrus fuisset, repraesentātūrum et proximā nocte dē quartā vigiliā castra mōtūrum, ut quam

35. **Leucī, -ōrum,** M., *a Gallic tribe on the Moselle.* 1
sub-ministrō (**summ-**), 1. [**ministrō,** wait upon], furnish, supply, afford, give. 3
36. **brevis, -e,** *adj.* short, transitory, brief. *
male, [**malus,** bad], badly.
40. **dē-sum, esse, fuī, futūrus,** be wanting, fail. *
facinus, -oris [**faciō,** do], N., deed, misdeed, outrage, crime. *
avāritia, -ae [**avārus,** greedy], F., greed, covetousness. 2
41. **con-vincō, -ere, vīcī, vīctus** [**vincō,** conquer], *a.*, conquer completely; prove *or* make good a charge, convict. 1
innocentia, -ae [**innocēns,** harmless], F., harmlessness, integrity. 1
fēlīcitās, -tātis [**fēlīx,** happy], F., happiness, good success *or* fortune. 2
43. **re-praesentō,** 1. [**praesēns,** present], *a.*, make present, exhibit; do at once. 1

---

34. **haec . . . cūrae,** *he was* (direct: *I am,*) *looking after these matters;* **cūrae:** for case cf. **18,**28; **25,** 6; **33,** 3.

34–36. **frūmentum, frūmenta:** difference in meaning? See on **16,** 4. **ipsōs,** *they themselves* (direct: *you yourselves*), i. e., the soldiers. **mātūra:** it was now the month of August.

37. **quod** etc., *he was* (direct: *I am*) *not at all disturbed by their* (*your*) *statement that they* (*you*) *would not be subject to his* (*my*) *orders nor advance.*

38. **scīre** etc., *for he knew* (direct: *I know*) *that because of an unsuccessful battle good luck had failed, or from some manifested crime greed had been proven, in the case of any whose orders the army had not obeyed.*

41. **innocentiam,** *integrity,* opp. to **avāritia. perpetuā vītā,** *throughout his life.*

42, 43. **sē . . . repraesentātūrum** (*esse*), *he would* (direct: *I will*) *perform immediately what he had intended* (*I intended*) *to defer until some future time.*

44. **dē quartā vigiliā:** about what hour?

prīmum intellegere posset, utrum apud eōs pudor atque officium, an timor plūs valēret. Quod sī praetereā nēmō sequātur, tamen sē cum sōlā decimā legiōne itūrum, dē quā nōn dubitāret, sibique eam praetōriam cohortem futūram. Huīc legiōnī Caesar et indulserat praecipuē et propter virtūtem cōnfīdēbat māximē.

They respond to his rallying and advance.

41. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā, mīrum in modum conversae sunt omnium mentēs summaque alacritās et cupiditās bellī gerendī innāta est, prīncepsque decima legiō per tribūnōs mīlitum eī grātiās ēgit, quod dē sē optimum iūdicium fēcisset, sēque esse ad bellum gerendum parātissimam cōnfīrmāvit. Deinde reliquae legiōnēs cum tribūnīs mīlitum et prīmōrum ōrdinum centuriōnibus ēgērunt, utī Caesarī satisfacerent: sē nec umquam dubitāsse neque

45. **utrum,** *conj.* [**uter,** which of two], *only translated with indirect and alternative questions* (*which of the two*) whether: *followed by* **an** *or* **necne** *in alternative questions:* **utrum . . . an,** whether . . . or. 3

46. **an,** *conj., used as second member of alternative questions,* or, or rather. *

47. **decimus, -a, -um** [**decem,** ten], tenth. *

48. **praetōrius, -a, -um** [**praetor,** commander], relating to the praetor *or* commander, praetorian: **cohors,** the commander's body guard.

cohors, -rtis, F., *enclosure;* cohort, *the tenth part of a legion,* numbering from 300 to 600 men.

49. **indulgeō, -ēre, -dulsī, -dultus** [**in** + **dulcis,** pleasant], be pleasant *or* indulgent to, treat with favor *or* kindness, favor; yield *or* be addicted to.

praecipuē [**praecipuus,** special], *adv.,* especially, particularly, chiefly.

1. **modus, -ī,** M., measure, quantity, manner, method, style.

2. **alacritās, -tātis** [**alacer,** active], F., activity, spirit, eagerness.

3. **in-nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum** [**nāscor,** be born], *n.,* be born in, be begotten *or* engendered in, spring up, arise. *P. p. as adj.,* inborn, ingrained.

8. **umquam (unq-),** *adv. usually with negatives, sometimes with interrog. and conditional clauses,* at any time, ever.

46, 47. **quod sī,** *and if;* for *quod* cf. l. 10. **dē quā,** *about which he had no doubts.*

4. **grātiās ēgit,** *expressed their thanks.*

5. **sēque esse parātissimam,** *and that it* (*decimam legiōnem*) *was entirely ready.*

6–8. **cum . . . ēgērunt, utī satisfacerent,** *conferred with . . . in order to make apology.* **prīmō-**

timuisse, neque dē summā bellī suum iūdicium, sed imperātōris esse exīstimāvisse. Eōrum satisfactiōne acceptā et itinere exquīsītō per Diviciacum, quod ex Gallīs eī māximam fidem habēbat, ut mīlium amplius quīnquāgintā circuitū locīs apertīs exercitum dūceret, dē quartā vigiliā, ut dīxerat, profectus est. Septimō diē, cum iter nōn intermitteret, ab explōrātōribus certior factus est Ariovistī cōpiās ā nostrīs mīlibus passuum quattuor et XX abesse.

Ariovistus asks for a conference and stipulates conditions which Caesar grants.

42. Cōgnitō Caesaris adventū Ariovistus lēgātōs ad eum mittit: quod anteā dē colloquiō postulāsset, id per sē fierī licēre, quoniam propius accessisset, sēque id sine perīculō facere posse exīstimāre. Nōn respuit condiciōnem Caesar iamque eum ad

10. satisfactiō, -ōnis [**satisfaciō,** give satisfaction], F., satisfaction, amends; excuse, apology.

11. exquīrō, -ere, quīsīvī, quīsītus [**quaerō,** seek], *a.*, seek earnestly, seek *or* ask for, inquire after, learn by inquiry, investigate. 2

12. quīnquāgintā, *indecl. num.*, fifty. *

3. propius, *compar. adv.* [**prope,** near], nearer. *

5. re-spuō, -ere, spuī [**spuō,** spit], *a.*, spit out; spurn, refuse. 1

---

rum ōrdinum: the **prīmipīlī** or chief centurions. See Int. 92.

9, 10. neque . . . exīstimāvisse, *and they had not thought that the decision regarding the conduct of the war was theirs but the commander's.*

11, 12. itinere: the route by which to reach Ariovistus. **ex . . . habēbat,** *because of (all) the Gauls he had the greatest confidence in him.* **circuitū:** by marching around to the northwest he would avoid the rough country along the Doubs. This was a wise concession to the fears of his men (cf. **39,** 23, *angustiās . . . silvārum*).

13. ut dīxerat: in **40,** 44.

14. septimō diē: the army in a seven days march at the usual rate (see Int. 143) would cover about one hundred miles, and reach a position near Cernay, not far from the Rhine. **cum . . . intermitteret,** *since the march was without interruption;* for mode see on **9,** 3.

2. postulāsset: sc. *Caesar.*

3. id . . . licēre, *this might be done as far as he was concerned.*

4. accessisset: Ariovistus' reason for refusing a conference (see **34,** 7–9) no longer held good. Caesar's prompt advance had surprised him and he was more inclined to confer. **sine perīculō:** Ariovistus wanted to avoid seeming to be forced into a conference.

5, 6. ad sānitātem, *to his senses.* **petentī,** *when he requested*

sānitātem revertī arbitrābātur, cum id, quod anteā petentī dēnegāsset, ūltrō pollicērētur, māgnamque in spem veniēbat, prō suīs tantīs populīque Rōmānī in eum beneficiīs cōgnitīs suīs postulātīs fore, utī pertināciā dēsisteret. Diēs colloquiō dictus est ex eō diē quīntus. Interim saepe ūltrō citrōque cum lēgātī inter eōs mitterentur, Ariovistus postulāvit, nē quem peditem ad colloquium Caesar addūceret: verērī sē, nē per īnsidiās ab eō circumvenīrētur: uterque cum equitātū venīret; aliā ratiōne sēsē nōn esse ventūrum. Caesar, quod neque colloquium interpositā causā tollī volēbat neque salūtem suam Gallōrum equitātuī committere audēbat, commodissimum esse statuit, omnibus equīs Gallīs equitibus dētractīs eō legiōnāriōs mīlitēs legiōnis decimae, cui quam māximē

6. **sānitās, -tātis** [**sānus**, sound (*in mind or body*)], F., soundness of body, good health; soundness of mind, good sense, discretion, sanity. 2

7. **dē-negō**, 1. [**negō**, say no], say not, deny, refuse. 1

ūltrō, *adv.* [**ūlterior**, farther], on the farther side, beyond; of one's accord, willingly. *

9. **pertinācia, -ae** [**pertināx** (fr. **pertineō**, hold through), *that holds fast*], F., perseverance; obstinacy, pertinacity. 2

10. **citrō**, *adv.* [**cis**, on this side], hither; **ūltrō citrōque**, back and forth, hither and thither. 1

12. **pedes, peditis** [**pēs**, foot], M., foot soldier: *pl.*, infantry, foot. *

15. **inter-pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus** [**pōnō**, place], place between, insert, interpose. *

17. **dē-trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractus** [**trahō**, draw *or* drag], *a.*, draw off *or* away, withdraw, take off, remove; disparage, detract. 5

18. **legiōnārius, -a, -um** [**legiō**, legion], relating to a legion, legionary. *

---

it. Cf. use of perf. part. in **31**, 19 and of pres. part. in **25**, 20.

7. **māgnamque** etc., *and he began confidently to expect that he would abandon his obstinate course.*

8. **beneficiīs:** from Caesar's point of view, Ariovistus was showing great ingratitude.

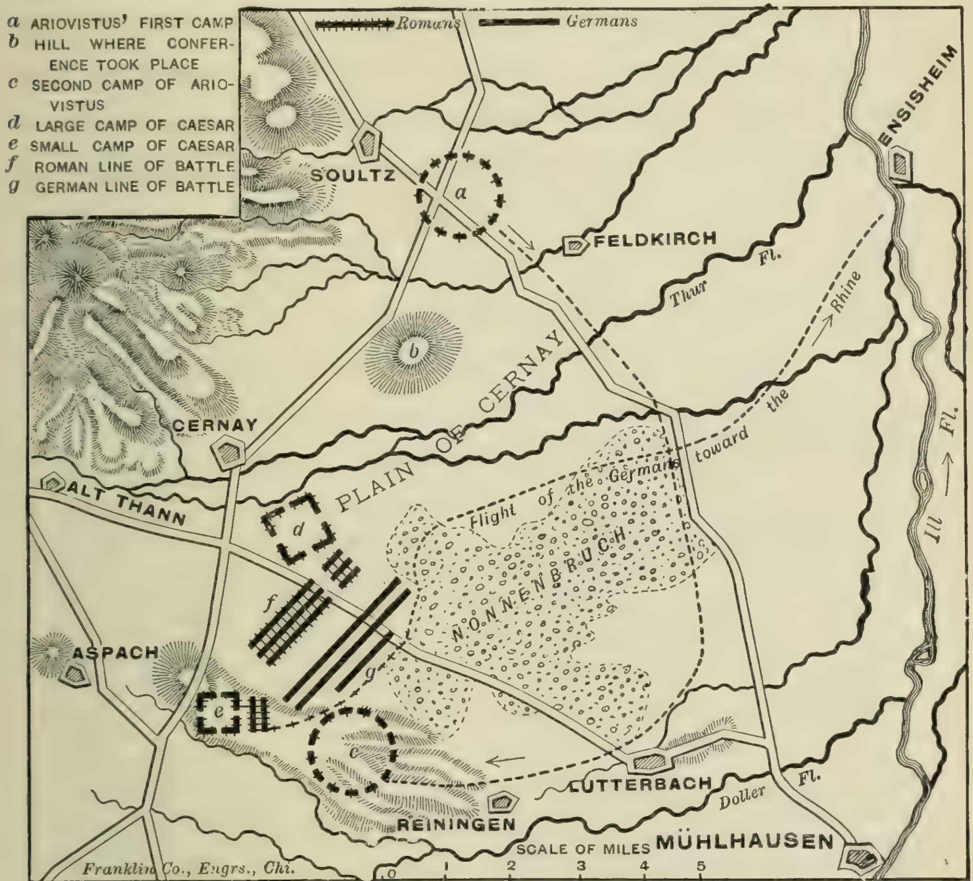
12. **nē quem:** for the pronominal force after *nē* cf. **7**, 20; **20**, 2; **30**, 15; **31**, 48. For mood of **addūceret** cf. **2**, 4; **30**, 13.

14. **aliā ratiōne**, *on other terms.*

15, 16. **salūtem . . . audēbat:** Caesar's natural distrust of the Gallic cavalry (see **18**, 26–28, text) may have been increased by Ariovistus' demand that cavalry only should escort him.

18. **eō**, *adv.*=*in eōs.*

cōnfidēbat, impōnere, ut praesidium quam amīcissimum, sī quid opus factō esset, habēret. Quod cum fieret, nōn irrīdiculē quīdam ex mīlitibus decimae legiōnis dīxit: plūs quam pollicitus esset, Caesarem facere: pollicitum sē in cohortis



BATTLE BETWEEN CAESAR AND ARIOVISTUS.

19. **impōnō, -ere, posuī, positus** [**pōnō**, *place*], place upon, set on, put *or* impose on; mount; embark. 5

20. **irrīdiculē** (inr-), *adv.* [rīdiculē, *humorously*], without humor *or* wit. 1

19, 20. **sī . . . esset,** *if there should be any occasion for their service.* **factō**: a participle, not the noun; for the case see A. 243 *e*, N.; B. 83, *d*; G. 406 *ad fin.*; H. 414, IV, N. 3; *B.*218,2,*c*. When a thing (not an act) is needed Caesar uses only the construction found in **34**, 6. **nōn irrīdiculē**, *wittily.* What figure? Cf. **39**, 11.

22, 23. **cohortis praetōriae**: see **40**, 48. **ad equum rescrī-**

praetōriae locō decimam legiōnem habitūrum, ad equum rescrībere.

Place of the Conference. Caesar's address and demands.

43. Plāniciēs erat māgna et in eā tumulus terrēnus satis grandis. Hīc locus aequō ferē spatiō ā castrīs utrīusque aberat. Eō, ut erat dictum, ad colloquium vēnērunt. Legiōnem Caesar, quam equīs vēxerat, passibus ducentīs ab eō tumulō cōnstituit. Item equitēs Ariovistī parī intervāllō cōnstitērunt. Ariovistus, ex equīs ut colloquerentur et praeter sē dēnōs ut ad colloquium addūcerent, postulāvit. Ubi eō ventum est, Caesar initiō ōrātiōnis sua senātūsque in eum beneficia commemorāvit, quod rēx appellātus esset ā senātū, quod amīcus, quod

23. **re-scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus** [**scrībō,** *write*], write again, transfer (*by writing*), re-enlist. 1

1. **plāniciēs** (**plānit-**), **-ēī** [**plānus,** level], F., level ground, flat surface, plain. *

tumulus, -ī [**tumeō,** swell], M., swelling; mound, hill, hillock. *

2. **terrēnus, -a, -um** [**terra,** earth], of earth, earthen. 1

grandis, -e, great, large, bulky. 4

aequus, -a, -um, even, level, equal; equitable, impartial, just. *

5. **vehō, -ere, vēxī, vēctus,** *a.*, carry, convey, bring. 1

7. **dēnī, -ae, -a,** *distr. num. adj.*, [**decem,** ten], ten each, ten at a time, by tens. 2

---

bere: this phrase means (1) to transfer to the cavalry, a part of the army looked down upon by the soldiers of the legion, and (2) to raise to the rank of knights, held in high honor at Rome. The jest consists in pretending to consider the first act as the second.

1. **plāniciēs māgna:** near Cernay. Belfort, some distance southwest of Cernay is thought by some authorities to be the place near which these negotiations were carried on; but there is no large plain near Belfort. **erat,** *there was;* for use of the expletive see on **6,** 1.

3. **spatiō:** the verb *aberat* implies *comparative distance,* for the ablative therefore see A. 257 *b;* B. 92; G. 403, N. 1; H. 423, N. 2; *B.* 223.

5, 6. **equīs:** for case cf. *cōpiīs* **3,** 20. **passibus, intervallō:** for case cf. *spatiō* above.

8. **postulāvit:** Caesar does not say that he made any objection to this request, or demand. Probably he agreed to it at once, being desirous to let nothing prevent a meeting. **ventum est:** (=*vēnērunt*) for trans. cf. **31,** 8; **26,** 6; **23,** 5.

9. **sua . . . commemorāvit,** *reminded him of his own (favors) and the senate's favors to him.*

10. **amīcus:** sc. *appellātus esset.*

mūnera amplissimē mīssa; quam rem et paucīs contigisse et prō māgnīs hominum officiīs cōnsuēsse tribuī docēbat: illum, cum neque aditum neque causam postulandī iūstam habēret beneficiō āc līberalitāte suā āc senātūs ea praemia cōnsecūtum. Docēbat etiam, quam veterēs quamque iūstae causae necessitūdinis ipsīs cum Aeduīs intercēderent, quae senātūs cōnsulta quotiēns quamque honōrifica in eōs facta essent, ut omnī tempore tōtīus Galliae prīncipātum Aeduī tenuissent, prius etiam, quam nostram amīcitiam appetīssent. Populī Rōmānī hanc esse cōnsuētūdinem, ut sociōs atque amīcōs nōn modo suī nihil dēperdere, sed grātiā, dīgnitāte, honōre auctiōrēs

11. mūnus, -eris, n., duty, burden; present. 3

amplē [amplus, large], largely, widely, liberally; *comp.* **amplius**; *superl.* **amplissimē**. 1

12. doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctus, *a.*, show, teach, instruct; inform. *

13. aditus, -ūs [ad + eō, go], m., going to, approach, means of approach, access. *

iūstus, -a, -um [iūs, right], in accordance with law *or* right, lawful, righteous, reasonable, valid, just. *

14. praemium, -ī [prae-emō, buy *or* get before others], n., advantage, distinction, prize, reward. *

15. necessitūdō, -inis [necesse, necessary], f., close *or* necessary connection, intimacy. 1

16. cōnsultum, -ī [cōnsulō, deliberate], n., *result of deliberation;* decree, enactment, decision. 2

17. quotiēns [quot, how many], how many times, how often, as often as. 2

honōrificus, -a, -um [honor + faciō], conferring honor, honorable. 1

21. dē-perdō, -ere, perdidī, perditus [perdō, destroy], *a.*, destroy utterly, ruin; lose entirely, forfeit, lose. 3

dīgnitās, -tātis [dīgnus, worthy], f., worthiness, merit, rank. *

auctus, -a, -um, *partic. adj.*, (augeō), increased. 1

11, 12. mūnera: these were a crown and a goblet of gold, a curule chair, an ivory scepter and embroidered robes. **quam . . . tribuī**, *a mark of respect which, he showed, had come to few* (persons) *and was usually bestowed in recompense for men's important services.*

13. aditum, (right of) *access.* **habēret:** for mode see on **14**, 16; *cum* is concessive.

14. praemia, *honors.*

15. quam etc., *how ancient and how reasonable were the occasions for an alliance between them* (the Romans) *and the Aedui.*

16, 17. intercēderent, essent: for mode cf. **12**, 3; **32**, 6; **34**, 12. **ut,** *how;* here an interrogative adverb, introducing an indirect question. In what other sense has the adverb *ut* been used? Cf. **38**, 9; **22**, 3.

18. Galliae, i. e. Celtic Gaul.

20–22. esse cōnsuētūdinem, ut velit, *the practice was to wish*

velit esse: quod vērō ad amīcitiam populī Rōmānī attulissent, id iīs ēripī quis patī posset? Postulāvit deinde eadem, quae lēgātīs in mandātīs dederat: nē aut Aeduīs aut eōrum sociīs bellum īnferret; obsidēs redderet; sī nūllam partem Germānōrum domum remittere posset, at nē quōs amplius Rhēnum trānsīre paterētur.

Ariovistus justifies his own course and makes counter demands and proposals.

44. Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris pauca respondit, dē suīs virtūtibus multa praedicāvit: Trānsīsse Rhēnum sēsē nōn suā sponte, sed rogātum et arcessītum ā Gallīs; nōn sine māgnā spē māgnīsque praemiīs domum propīnquōsque relīquisse; sēdēs habēre in Galliā ab ipsīs concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stīpendium capere iūre bellī, quod vīctōrēs vīctīs impōnere cōnsuērint. Nōn sēsē Gallīs, sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse; omnēs Galliae cīvitātēs ad sē oppūgnandum vēnisse āc contrā sē castra habuisse; eās omnēs cōpiās ā sē ūnō proeliō pulsās āc superātās esse. Sī iterum experīrī velint, sē iterum parātum esse dēcertāre; sī pāce ūtī velint, inīquum esse dē

22. **afferō** (ad-), **ferre, attulī, allātus,** *a.*, bring, take *or* carry to, present, occasion, cause, bring forward, allege. *

26. **re-mittō, -ere, mīsī, mīssus** [**mittō**, send], *a.*, send *or* drive back, return, restore; remit, release, relax. *

at, *conj.*, but, at least. *

---

etc. For the Subj. **4**,4; **5**,3; **31**,50. 4. **sed auctiōrēs esse,** *but rather to be advanced.* **grātiā etc.:** for case see on **1**, 3.

23, 24. **iīs:** for case see on **17**, 9. **posset:** for mode see on **40**, 11. **dederat:** in **35**, 2.

1, 2. **pauca, multa** (sc. **verba**), *briefly, much.* His reply is in indirect discourse. Give the direct form in both Latin and English.

3, 4. **suā sponte:** cf. **9**, 3. **rogātum et arcessītum** = *quod rogātus esset et arcessītus esset;* what force have the participles? **Gallīs:** i. e., the Sequani and Arverni; see **31**, 12.

6, 7. **ipsīs:** sc. *Gallīs.* **iūre:** for case see on *mōribus* **4**, 2. **vīctīs:** for case cf. **2**, 5; **23**, 5; **36**, 11; so **Gallīs** and **sibi** in l. 8.

9. **oppūgnandum:** Gerund or Gerundive? Cf. **38**, 8; **38**, 3.

10. **castra habuisse,** *had encamped.* **ūnō proeliō:** see **31**, 42, 43.

12, 13. **pāce:** for case cf. **20**,

stīpendiō recūsāre, quod suā voluntāte ad id tempus pependerint. Amīcitiam populī Rōmānī sibi ōrnāmentō et praesidiō, nōn dētrīmentō esse oportēre, idque sē eā spē petīsse. Sī per populum Rōmānum stīpendium remittātur et dēditīciī subtrahantur, nōn minus libenter sēsē recūsātūrum populī Rōmānī amīcitiam, quam appetierit. Quod multitūdinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcat, id sē suī mūniendī, nōn Galliae impūgnandae causā facere: ēius reī testimōniō esse quod nisi rogātus nōn vēnerit et quod bellum nōn intulerit, sed dēfenderit. Sē prius in Galliam vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum. Numquam ante hōc tempus exercitum populī Rōmānī Galliae prōvinciae fīnibus ēgressum. Quid sibi vellet? Cūr in suās possessiōnēs venīret? Prōvinciam suam hanc esse Galliam, sīcut illam nostram. Ut ipsī concēdī nōn oportēret, sī in nostrōs fīnēs impetum faceret, sīc item nōs

12. **dē-certō**, 1. [**certō**, contend], *n*, fight to the end, fight out, struggle fiercely *or* earnestly, vie, contend. *

inīquus, -a, -um [**aequus**, even, just], uneven, unjust, unfair, unfavorable. *

14. **ōrnāmentum, -ī** [**ōrnō**, adorn], N., mark of honor, distinction. 2

15. **dētrīmentum, -ī** [**dē-terō**, rub *or* wear out], N., *rubbing or wasting away;* harm, loss, injury; disaster, defeat. *

17. **sub-trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractus** [**trahō**, draw], draw *or* carry off, take away, withdraw. 2

libenter [**libēns**, willing], willingly, gladly, with pleasure. 3

20. **impūgnō**, 1. [**in**+**pūgnō**, fight], *a.*, fight against, attack, assail. 2

testimōnium, -ī [**testor**, be a witness], N., witness, testimony, proof; testimonial. 4

23. **numquam** (**nun-**) *adv.* [**nē**+**umquam**, ever], never. 4

26. **sīc-ut** (**sīcutī**) [**ut**, as], so as, just as, as. *

7; **16,** 6 (*frūmentō*): **2,** 6. **dē . . . recūsāre,** *make objections to.*

14. **sibi ōrnāmentō**: for cases cf. **18,** 28.

15. **id**: neuter because it refers to the phrase *amīcitiam populī Rōmānī.* Of what gender is any phrase, clause, or term, when used substantively? **id . . . petīsse**: the king admits that he had sued for the honor.

24, 25. **sibi**: = *Caesarī;* for case see on **28,** 2. **suās** refers to Ariovistus. **vellet, venīret**: for mood cf. **40,** 11. **prōvinciam suam**: i. e., his right of possession was as clear as that of the Romans to the Roman Province.

26, 27. **hanc Galliam,** *this part of Gaul.* **ut . . . oportēret,**

esse inīquōs, quod in suō iūre sē interpellārēmus. Quod frātrēs ā senātū Aeduōs appellātōs dīceret, nōn sē tam barbarum neque tam imperītum esse rērum, ut nōn scīret, neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Aeduōs Rōmānīs auxilium tulisse neque ipsōs in hīs contentiōnibus, quās Aeduī sēcum et cum Sēquanīs habuissent, auxiliō populī Rōmānī ūsōs esse. Dēbēre sē suspicārī simulātā Caesarem amīcitiā, quod exercitum in Galliā habeat, suī opprimendī causā habēre. Quī nisi dēcēdat atque exercitum dēdūcat ex hīs regiōnibus, sēsē illum nōn prō amīcō, sed prō hoste habitūrum. Quod sī eum interfēcerit, multīs sēsē nōbilibus prīncipibusque populī Rōmānī grātum esse factūrum: id sē ab ipsīs per eōrum nūn-

28. interpellō, 1. *a.*, interrupt, hinder, interfere with. 1

32. contentiō, -ōnis [**contendō,** stretch out, struggle], F., stretching out, striving, struggle, contest. *

34. suspicor, 1. [**suspīciō,** suspect], *a.*, suspect, distrust. *

simulō, 1. [**similis,** like], make like, counterfeit, pretend. 2

35. opprimō (obp-), -ere, pressī, pressus [**premō,** press], *a.*, press against *or* down; overwhelm, overpower, destroy; fall upon, surprise. *

36. dē-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus [**dūcō,** lead], *a.*, lead down *or* away, withdraw, conduct, induce, influence; launch (**nāvēs**). *

regiō, -ōnis [**regō,** direct, mark (*by a line*)], F., direction, line; boundary; quarter, district, region, country. *

39. grātus, -a, -um, pleasing, agreeable, acceptable, welcome. 2

---

just as there ought to be no yielding to him (lit. *to be yielded to* etc. *ought not*). For use of **concēdī** and constr. of **ipsī** see on **40,** 7, 8.

28, 29. in, *in the exercise of.* **quod:** for the clause cf. **14,** 11; **17,** 12; **18,** 26. **dīceret,** i. e., *Caesar* (direct: *you*).

30. imperītum rērum, *ignorant of political matters.* For the Gen. cf. **2,** 14; **14,** 5; **18,** 8.

31. bellō Allobrogum: see on **6,** 7.

33, 34. auxiliō ūsōs esse, *had the assistance,* for case cf. l. 12. Ariovistus here lays his finger upon a weak point in Caesar's argument, **dēbēre sē suspicārī,** *he had a right* (legal and moral) *to suspect.* **simulātā amīcitiā,** *although he made a pretense of friendship.* Note the concessive force of the Abl. Abs. State other uses of this construction.

36, 37. sēsē . . . amīcō, habitūrum (*esse*), *he would not regard him* (Caesar) *as a friend.* **quod sī:** cf. **20,** 9; **40,** 10. It is entirely possible that Caesar's enemies at the capital, embittered by his acts as consul (see Int. 20–24) had indicated to the king their desire to have him put out of the way.

39, 40. id compertum habēre, *he had ascertained this.* For the

tiōs compertum habēre, quōrum omnium grātiam atque amīcitiam ēius morte redimere posset. Quod sī discessisset et līberam possessiōnem Galliae sibi trādidisset, māgnō sē illum praemiō remūnerātūrum et quaecumque bella gerī vellet, sine ūllō ēius labōre et perīculō cōnfectūrum.

Caesar insists on Roman rights in Gaul.

45. Multa ab Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt, quārē negōtiō dēsistere nōn posset; neque suam neque populī Rōmānī cōnsuētūdinem patī, utī optimē merentēs sociōs dēsereret, neque sē iūdicāre, Galliam potius esse Ariovistī quam populī Rōmānī. Bellō superātōs esse Arvernōs et Rutēnōs ab Q. Fabiō Māximō, quibus populus Rōmānus īgnōvisset neque in prōvinciam redēgisset neque stīpendium

42. līber, -era, -erum, unrestrained, free; undisputed. *

43. remūneror, 1. [**mūnus,** gift], *a.*, repay, reward, requite. 1

44. labor, -ōris, M., toil, effort, striving; labor, hardship. *

1. sententia, -ae [**sentio,** think], F., way of thinking, opinion, a sentiment, feeling, purpose; decision, verdict. *

3. bene [**benus = bonus,** good], well, rightly, successfully: *comp.* **melius;** *sup.* **optimē.** 2

4. dē-serō, -ere, seruī, sertus [**serō,** join], *a.*, disjoin, disunite, abandon, desert: *in p. p. as adj.*, deserted, solitary, *

potius, [*neut. sing. acc. of* **potior,** *comp. of* **potis,** able], *comp. adv.*, rather. *

6. Rutēnī, -ōrum, M., *a Celtic people bordering on the Province.* *

Q., *abreviation for* **Quīntus,** *a Roman praenomen.* 2

Fabius, -ī, M., *a Roman gentile name:* Quintus Fabius Maximus, *conqueror of the Arverni and Ruteni on the Rhone, 121 B. C.* *

īgnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtus [**in-** + **(g)nōscō,** know], *n.*, forgive, pardon. 5

7. redigō, -ere, ēgī, āctus [**agō,** put in motion], *a.*, drive *or* bring back; get together, collect; render, reduce. *

---

use of the participle *compertum* cf. *redēmpta* **18,** 10; *coāctum* **15,** 4.

2. posset: for mood cf. **12,** 3; **34,** 12; **40,** 4.

3, 4. patī, utī dēsereret, *allowed him to abandon.* For the *ut* clause cf. **2,** 4; **31,** 4; **39,** 14. **Galliam** etc., *that Gaul belonged to Ariovistus rather than to the Roman people.* This was the real question between Caesar and Ariovistus. **Ariovistī.** Note the *possessive* force of the Predicate Genitive. What other Gen. is common in the predicate?

5, 6. bellō superātōs esse: in the year 121 by Quintus Fabius the consul, who killed 120,000 men and caried off the king and his son as captives. **quibus īgnōvisset,** *whom had pardoned:* for case of *quibus* cf. **2,** 4; **18,** 19; **33,** 19.

7. in prōvinciam redēgisset: as the Cevennes formed the natural boundary of the Roman Province,

imposuisset. Quod sī antīquissimum quodque tempus spectārī oportēret, populī Rōmānī iūstissimum esse in Galliā imperium; sī iūdicium senātūs observārī oportēret, līberam dēbēre esse Galliam, quam bellō vīctam suīs lēgibus ūtī voluisset.

The conference is broken up by an attack from the German cavalry.

46. Dum haec in colloquiō geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum est equitēs Ariovistī propius tumulum accēdere et ad nostrōs adequitāre, lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs conicere. Caesar loquendī fīnem fēcit sēque ad suōs recēpit suīsque imperāvit nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostēs rēicerent. Nam etsī sine ūllō perīculō legiōnis dēlēctae cum equitātū proelium fore vidēbat, tamen committendum nōn putābat ut pulsīs hostibus dīcī posset eōs ab sē per

10. ob-servō, 1. [servō, give heed], *a.*, heed, observe, mark, regard, celebrate. *

3. ad-equitō, 1. [equitō (fr. eques), ride], *n.*, ride up to *or* towards. 1

lapis, lapidis, M., stone; *collectively*, stone, stones. *

6. et-sī, *conj.*, even if, although, though. *

---

this was probably the real reason for the forbearance of the Romans. Notice that *redēgisset* is transitive and that from *quibus* standing next to the intransitive *ignōvisset* we must supply *quōs*.

8. antīquissimum quodque tempus, *all the past*, i. e. *priority of time.* For force of *quisque* with the superl. see on **31,** 44. See **44,** 22, where Ariovistus claims priority of conquest. Caesar's answer is that the defeat of the Arverni and Ruteni give the Romans the first claim.

11. lēgibus: for case cf. **5,** 10; **20,** 7; **voluisset,** *had allowed.* The subject is *senātus.*

1. geruntur: for rendering with *dum* see on **27,** 8.

2. propius tumulum, *nearer the hill.* For the Acc. with *propius* see A. 261, *a*; G. 416, 22; H. 437, 1; *B.* 141 3,

4. in nostrōs: notice the repetition of the pronoun.

5, 6. nē . . . rēicerent, *not to hurl in return* etc. **quod,** *any;* what kind of a pronoun? For *quod* instead of *quid* see A. 104 *a;* B. LIX, 6; G. 107; H. 190 N. 1; *B.* 91. **legiōnis dēlēctae,** *to the chosen legion.* Which legion? See **40,** 47–50.

7. committendum (*esse*) **ut** etc., *that he ought to permit it to* (be able to) *be said.* For trans. of the impersonal cf. **43,** 8; **31,** 8; **26,** 6. For the *ut* clause cf. **13,** 18, but notice that here the verb *committendum* is passive, and the clause is therefore subject.

8. nōn putābat, etc.: Caesar

fidem in colloquiō circumventōs. Posteāquam in volgus mīlitum ēlātum est, quā arrogantiā in colloquiō Ariovistus ūsus omnī Galliā Rōmānīs interdīxisset, impetumque in nostrōs ēius equitēs fēcissent, eaque rēs colloquium ut dirēmisset, multō māior alacritās studiumque pūgnandī māius exercituī iniectum est.

Ariovistus again requests a conference in person or through envoys. He seizes the envoys of Caesar.

47. Bīduō post Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs mittit: Velle sē dē hīs rēbus, quae inter eōs agī coeptae neque perfectae essent, agere cum eō: utī aut iterum colloquiō diem cōnstitueret aut, sī id minus vellet, ē suīs aliquem ad sē mitteret. Colloquendī Caesarī causa vīsa nōn est, et eō magis, quod prīdiē ēius diēī Germānī retinērī nōn potuerant, quīn in nostrōs tēla conicerent. Lēgātum ē suīs sēsē māgnō cum perīculō ad

11. **inter-dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus** [dīcō, say], *a., say among other things;* intervene *by an order;* prohibit, exclude, interdict. *

12. **dirimō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptus** [dis+emo, take], *a.*, take apart interrupt, break off. 1

14. **in-iciō, -ere, iēcī, iectus** [iaciō, hurl], *a.*, throw *or* cast into *or* upon, put *or* place on; put into, inspire, infuse, inject. 5

---

would have his readers believe that Ariovistus was the aggressor. As the whole expedition was of doubtful legality, the Roman general would naturally put prominently in view the plea of necessity. **pulsīs hostibus,** *in case of the defeat of the enemy.* Case?

10. **quā arrogantiā ūsus,** *with what insolence.* **arrogantiā**: for case cf. **5,** 10. The participle of *ūtor* may often be translated by the prep. *with.*

11. **omnī . . . interdīxisset,** *had forbidden the Romans all Gaul.* **Galliā**: for case cf. **1,** 14; **8,** 16; **8,** 12. **Rōmānīs**: for case cf. **2,** 4; **33,** 19.

12. **eaque . . . dirēmisset,** *and how this circumstance* etc. **ut**: see on **43,** 17 and explain mode of *dirēmisset.* What part of speech is *ut?*

2, 3. **quae agī coeptae essent,** *which had begun to be discussed.* The passive forms of *coepī* are used when the dependent infinitive is in the passive voice.

5, 6. **colloquendī . . . est,** *there did not seem to Caesar to be any occasion for a conference.* **eō**: for case cf. *hōc* **32,** 9; *multō* **16,** 18.

7, 8. **retinērī quīn conicerent:** for the constr. of *quīn* after expressions of *hindrance* and *refusal* see A. 319 *d:* G. 554; H. 504, 4; *B.* 295, 3, *a.* Translate *quīn* with its Subj. by *from* with the present participle: *kept from casting.* **māgnō cum perīculō,** *at a great risk.*

eum mīssūrum et hominibus ferīs obiectūrum exīstimābat. Commodissimum vīsum est C. Valerium Procillum, C. Valerī Cabūrī fīlium, summā virtūte et humānitāte adulēscentem cūius pater ā C. Valeriō Flaccō cīvitāte dōnātus erat,et propter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae scientiam, quā multā iam Ariovistus longīnquā cōnsuētūdine ūtēbātur, et quod in eō peccandī Germānīs causa nōn esset, ad eum mittere, et M. Mētium, quī hospitiō Ariovistī ūtēbātur. Hīs mandāvit, ut, quae dīceret Ariovistus, cōgnōscerent et ad sē referrent. Quōs cum apud sē in castrīs Ariovistus cōnspēxisset, exercitū suō praesente conclāmāvit: quid ad sē venīrent? an specu-

10. **Procillus, -ī,** M., *a Roman family name. E. g., a Gaul sent to Ariovistus by Caesar.* 2

11. **Cabūrus, -ī,** M., Caius Valerius Caburus, *a Celt honored with Roman citizenship by C. Valerius Flaccus, father of* (*C. Valerius*) *Procillus and Domnotaurus.* 2

adulēscēns (ado-), **-entis,** [adolēscō, grow up], M., F., youth; young man *or* woman, *from seventeen to forty years of age.* *

12. **Flaccus, -ī,** M., *a Roman cognomen.* Caius Valerius Flaccus, *propraetor in Gaul,* 83, B. C. 1

dōnō, 1. [dōnum, gift], *a.*, give, bestow, endow with. 2

13. **scientia, -ae** [sciō, know], F., knowledge, science, experience, skill. *

14. **longīnquus, -a, -um** [longus, long], far off, distant; long continued, protracted. 5

15. **peccō,** 1. *a.*, miss *or* fail (*doing one's duty*), mistake; transgress, do wrong, sin. 1

16. **Mētius, -ī,** M., Marcus Metius, *an envoy of Caesar to Ariovistus.* 2

18. **cōn-spiciō, -ere, spēxī, spectus** [speciō, look], *a.*, look at attentively, observe, descry, perceive. *

19. **con-clāmō,** 1. [clāmō, cry out], *a.*, *n.*, shout *or* cry out together, call aloud, cry *or* shout out. *

---

10. **vīsum est,** *seemed best.* The subject is *C. Valerium . . . mittere,* lines 10–15.

12. **cīvitāte dōnātus erat,** *had been presented with citizenship.*

13, 14. **quā multā ūtēbātur,** *which Ariovistus spoke fluently;* lit., *much of which A. used.* **et** etc., *and because in his case the Germans did not have any grounds for doing wrong.*

15. **Germānīs:** for case cf. **7,** 10; **11,** 13; **34,** 5. **esset,** *did not have* (as he thought) *any grounds;* for mood cf. **16,** 17; **23,** 9; **37,** 4.

19. **conclāmāvit,** *cried aloud.* Ariovistus' course can be accounted for only on the theory that he had expected Caesar to accede to his suggestion for a second personal interview, and was disappointed and angry. **quid,** *why?* For case see the refs. on *minimum* **20,** 6.

20. **cōnantīs,** *while they were attempting:* cf. use of pres. part. in **25,** 20.

landī causā? Cōnantīs dīcere prohibuit et in catēnās coniēcit.

He advances toward Caesar's camp. Cavalry skirmishes.

48. Eōdem diē castra prōmōvit et mīlibus passuum sex ā Caesaris castrīs sub mōnte cōnsēdit. Postrīdiē ēius diēī praeter castra Caesaris suās cōpiās trādūxit et mīlibus passuum duōbus ūltrā eum castra fēcit eō cōnsiliō utī frūmentō commeātūque, quī ex Sēquanīs et Aeduīs supportārētur, Caesarem interclūderet. Ex eō diē diēs continuōs quīnque Caesar prō castrīs suās cōpiās prōdūxit et aciem īnstrūctam habuit, ut, sī vellet Ariovistus proeliō contendere, eī potestās nōn deesset. Ariovistus hīs

20. **catēna, -ae,** F., chain, fetter.
speculor, 1. [speciō, look], *a.*, *n.*, observe, reconnoitre, spy. 1

1. **prō-moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus** [moveō, move], *a.*, *n.*, move forward, advance; extend, enlarge; put off. 4
4. **ūltrā,** *prep. with acc.*, beyond, on the farther side of, past. 2
7. **continuus, -a, -um** [contineō, hold together], holding together, unbroken, uninterrupted, continuous. 5
prō-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus [dūcō, lead], *a.*, lead out *or* forth, bring forth, produce; draw up (cōpiās); prolong, protract. *

---

1. **mīlibus:** for case cf. **43,** 6; **43,** 3.
2. **sub mōnte:** at the foot of the Vosges and north of Caesar's camp, from which he was separated by a heavy forest.
3. **praeter castra:** why Caesar did not attack him on the flank while executing this maneuver does not appear. Probably the forest protected him from observation.
5, 6. **fēcit** = *posuit.* **utī . . . interclūderet:** this skilful movement was embarassing to Caesar and made him anxious to fight, as Ariovistus knew it would. **ex Sēquanīs:** this route led up from the south. The communications with the Leuci and Lingones farther north, were not affected, so that Caesar was not entirely cut off from supplies; but only a small part of his supplies came from that quarter.
6. **interclūderet:** for mode cf. **30,** 8.
7. **diēs continuōs quīnque:** for the case see on **3,** 12. **prō castrīs:** the Romans preferred to fight with the camp in the rear as a place of retreat in case of necessity.
8. **aciem:** what was the ordinary arrangement of the cohorts in line of battle? See Int. 87. **sī vellet,** etc. As a matter of fact, it was Caesar who wished to fight; but he was naturally reticent on this point, knowing that his opponent had scored an advantage over him.
9. **eī . . . deesset,** *he would not be without an opportunity.* All compounds of *esse* (except *abesse* and *posse*) govern the dative.

omnibus diēbus exercitum castrīs continuit, equestrī proeliō cotīdiē contendit Genus hōc erat pūgnae, quō sē Germānī exercuerant. Equitum mīlia erant sex, totidem numerō peditēs vēlōcissimī āc fortissimī, quōs ex omnī cōpiā singulī singulōs suae salūtis causā dēlēgerant: cum hīs in proeliīs versābantur. Ad eōs sē equitēs recipiēbant: hī, sī quid erat dūrius, concurrēbant, sī quī graviōre vulnere acceptō equō dēciderat, circumsistēbant; sī quō erat longius prōdeundum aut

11. genus, -eris [**gen-** in **gīgnō**, beget], N., descent, origin; race, class, tribe; sort, kind, nature. *

12. exerceō, 2. [**arceō**, ward *or* drive off], *a.*, drive forward, engage busily; practice, train, exercise. *

totidem, *indecl. adj.* [**tot,** so many +**idem**], just as many, the same number. *

13. vēlōx, vēlōcis, swift, rapid. 2

15. versō, 1. [*freq. of* **vertō**, turn], *a.*, *n.*, turn frequently, change; *pass. as dep.*, remain, dwell, stay; be engaged in, busy, associated, *or* employed with, occupy, act. *

16. dūrus, -a, -um, hard, rough, difficult; severe, inclement, unfavorable. 4

con-currō, -ere, currī, cursus (**currō**, run], *a.*, *n.*, run *or* rush together; encounter, engage in conflict; concur, happen together. *

dēcidō, -ere, cidī [**cadō, fall**], *n.*, fall from *or* down, fall off. *

17. circum-sistō, -ere, stitī [**sistō**, stand], *a.*, stand, flock *or* rally around, surround, hem in. *

quō [*old dat.* of **quī**], *adv.*, (1) *interrog.*, whither? to what place? (2) *rel.* whither, to *or* into which, as far as; (3) *indef.* (*after* **sī, nē,** etc.) if any whither, if to any place. *

prōd-eō, -īre, -iī, itus [**prō**+**eō**, go], *n.*, go *or* come forth, go forward, advance. 4

---

10. exercitum . . . continuit: Ariovistus was perfectly satisfied with his position and hoped to compel Caesar to retreat in order to secure his communications with the Sequani and Aedui.

11. genus etc. English order; *genus pūgnae, quō . . . exercuerant, erat hōc* (was as follows). The tactics here described were not really original with the Germans, but a common device among many ancient peoples. See Int. 194

12. numerō: for case see on **1,** 3.

13, 14. singulī singulōs: the pairs were composed of close friends.

15, 16. hī . . . concurrēbant, *these* (*peditēs*), *if there was anything too hard* (for the cavalry to accomplish) *quickly ran* (to their aid).

17, 18. sī . . recipiendum, *if it were required to advance anywhere for a considerable distance* (*longius*) *or to withdraw quite rapidly.* **longius, celerius:** for trans. see on **14,** 16. **sī quō,** *if anywhere.* The adverbs derived from *quis*, as well as the pronoun itself, are indefinite if preceded by *sī*, *nisi*, *num*, *nē*.

celerius recipiendum, tanta erat hōrum exercitātiōne celeritās, ut iubīs sublevātī equōrum cursum adaequārent.

To insure supplies, Caesar constructs a second, smaller camp.

49. Ubi eum castrīs sē tenēre Caesar intellēxit, nē diūtius commeātū prohibērētur, ūltrā eum locum, quō in locō Germānī cōnsēderant, circiter passūs sexcentōs ab iīs, castrīs idōneum locum dēlēgit aciēque triplicī īnstrūctā ad eum locum vēnit. Prīmam et secundam aciem in armīs esse, tertiam castra mūnīre iussit. Hīc locus ab hoste circiter passūs sexcentōs, utī dictum est, aberat. Eō circiter hominum numerō sēdecim mīlia expedīta cum omnī equitātū Ariovistus mīsit, quae cōpiae nostrōs perterrērent et mūnītiōne prohibērent. Nihilō sēcius Caesar, ut ante cōnstituerat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre, tertiam opus perficere iussit. Mūnītīs castrīs duās ibi legiōnēs relīquit et

18. celeritās, -tātis [celer, swift], F., swiftness, quickness, speed. *

19. iuba, -ae, F., mane. 1

cursus, -ūs [currō, run], M., running, speed; course, career; passage. *

ad-aequō, 1. [aequō, level *or* equal], *a.*, *n.*, make level with *or* equal to, equalize, equal, keep up with. *

4. idōneus, -a, -um, fit, suitable, adapted. *

10. sēcius (sēt-), *adv. comp.*, less, in a less degree. *Only with negatives:* **nihilō sēcius,** never the less. 4

11. prōpulsō, 1. [*freq. of* **prōpellō,** drive forth *or* away], *a.*, drive forth *or* back, repel. 2

---

1. **eum**=*Ariovistum.*

2. **prohibērētur:** Ariovistus was in a position to cut off Caesar completely from his base of supplies by a further advance. **ūltra,** *beyond,* from the point of view of the camp of Caesar, and between Ariovistus' camp and the road along which Caesar's supplies from the south came

4. **passūs sexcentōs:** how many English feet? **castrīs:** for case cf. **1,** 10; **9,** 6; **28,** 14. **idōneum locum:** about two and one half miles south of his other camp. What did the Romans consider a fit site for a camp? see Int. 129. **aciē triplicī:** see Int. 145.

5. **vēnit;** Caesar at first advanced towards the German camp as if to offer battle as usual, then moving to the right he marched past Ariovistus to the site chosen for the new camp.

6. **in armīs:** to repel the expected attack.

8. **circiter . . . expedīta,** *light armed troops numbering about sixteen thousand.* **hominum** = *peditum.* **numerō:** for case cf. **1,** 3.

9. **perterrērent:** what was the German method of attack? see Int. 192.

partem auxiliōrum, quattuor reliquās in castra māiōra redūxit.

Ariovistus assaults this without decisive result

50. Proximō diē īnstitūtō suō Caesar ē castrīs utrīsque cōpiās suās ēdūxit paulumque ā māiōribus castrīs prōgressus aciem īnstrūxit, hostibus pūgnandī potestātem fēcit. Ubi nē tum quidem eōs prōdīre intellēxit, circiter merīdiem exercitum in castra redūxit. Tum dēmum Ariovistus partem suārum cōpiārum, quae castra minōra oppūgnāret, mīsit. Acriter utrimque usque ad vesperum pūgnātum est. Sōlis occāsū suās cōpiās Ariovistus multīs et illātīs et acceptīs vulneribus in castra redūxit. Cum ex captīvīs quaereret Caesar, quam ob rem Ariovistus proeliō non dēcertāret, hanc reperiēbat causam, quod apud Germānōs ea cōnsuētūdō esset, ut mātrēsfamiliae eōrum sortibus et vāticinātiōnibus dēclārārent, utrum proe-

Superstition of the Germans.

2. **paulum,** *adv.* [**paulus,** little], a little, somewhat. *
3. **prōgredior, gredī, gressus sum** [**gradior,** step], *n.*, step *or* go forward, come *or* march out, advance, proceed, go. *
5. **merīdiēs, -ēī** [*for* **medīdiēs,** *from* **medius,** middle + **diēs**], M., the middle of the day, midday, noon; the south. *
7. **utrimque** (**utrin-**), *adv.* [**uterque,** both], on both sides. 5
usque, *adv.* [**us = ubs** *fr.* **ubi,** where], all the way to, even to, as far as, even, till. *
12. **mātrēsfamiliae,** F., (*nom. pl., only*), *matrons.*
13. **sors, sortis,** F., lot; casting *or* drawing of lots; chance, fate.
vāticinātiō, -ōnis [**vāticinor,** predict], F., prediction, prophesying, divination.
dēclārō, 1. [**clārus,** clear], *a.*, make clear *or* plain, declare.

---

13. **redūxit:** although Caesar's forces were divided, he had regained the control of the communications and was in a position to fall upon Ariovistus's flank if he should attack either of the Roman camps.

1. **diē:** for case cf. **4,** 4; **15,** 1. **īnstitūtō suō:** for case cf. **44,** 7; **4,** 2.
6, 7. **quae oppūgnāret,** *to storm;* for the relative (= *ut ea*) and the mode cf. **7,** 10; **15,** 5; **21,** 4.

8. **pūgnātum est:** for trans. see on **22,** 9.
10. **quam ob rem,** *why.* How does its use here differ from that in **34,** 1?
12. **ut mātrēsfamiliae** etc., *that the matrons indicated whether or not it was advantageous to engage in battle.*
13. **sortibus,** *by casting lots.* The 'lots' were wooden rods with magic marks cut upon them. These were tied in a bundle and when dried a

lium committī ex ūsū esset necne; eās ita dīcere: nōn esse fās Germānōs superāre, sī ante novam lūnam proeliō contendissent.

Caesar arrays his troops for battle.

51. Postrīdiē ēius diēī Caesar praesidium utrīsque castrīs, quod satis esse vīsum est, relīquit, omnīs ālāriōs in cōnspectū hostium prō castrīs minōribus cōnstituit quod minus multitūdine mīlitum legiōnāriōrum prō hostium numerō valēbat, ut ad speciem ālāriīs ūterētur;

14. necne, *conj.* [**nec,** nor + **nē**] or not (*used in alternative questions*).

15. fās [farī, to speak], N., (*only nom. and acc. sing.*), divine sanction *or* law (*opp. to* **iūs,** *human law*), divine will; right.

lūna, -ae [*for* **luc-na** *fr.* **lūceō,** give light], F., the moon.

3. ālārius, -a, -um [**āla,** wing], on the wings: *in pl. as subst.,* **ālāriī,** the auxiliaries, *who occupied the wings of the army.*

5. speciēs, -ēī [*obsol.* **speciō,** see], F., seeing, sight, look, appearance. *

---

slight shake would cause one to drop out. The mark upon this one gave the answer. **vāticinātiōnibus:** other methods of prophesying, such as observations of the whirling of water in eddies, the sounds of the waves, etc. **utrum, necne:** for the use of these particles in Double or Alternative questions see A. 211; G. 459; H. 353 N. 3; *B.* 162 4.

15. fās, *the will of the gods.* **novam lūnam:** Tacitus says that the Germans considered the days of the new moon and full moon lucky days, and so, were wont to begin important undertakings on these days. The Greeks had the same notion, as is shown by the refusal of the Spartans to march to the help of the Athenians until after the full moon. Moberly quotes Winer in explanation of this superstition: "For simple nations the first new light of the moon is most cheering and joyful. From its appearance they obtain the order of the months, and, in the absence of astronomical observations, that of the whole civil and religious year."

1. postrīdiē: September 10 is a probable date. **diēī:** for case see on **23, 1.**

2. quod . . . vīsum est, (*a garrison*) *which seemed to be sufficient.*

3. ālāriōs: the *sociī* were called *ālāriī* from their position in the line of battle: see Int. 146. **in cōnspectū hostium:** to conceal the fact that the two legions had been withdrawn. At a distance the Germans could not tell the difference between auxiliaries and legionaries. Meanwhile the two legions marched out by the rear gate of the camp and secretly joined the four other legions in the larger camp. By this clever ruse, Caesar concealed his weakness in legionaries and concentrated those he had for the battle that he was determined to force.

4, 5. minus prō hostium numerō valēbat, *he was weak compared with the enemy's forces.* **ālāriīs,** case?

ipse, triplicī īnstrūctā aciē, usque ad castra hostium accessit.

Array of the Germans.

Tum dēmum necessāriō Germānī suās cōpiās castrīs ēdūxērunt generātimque cōnstituērunt paribus intervāllīs, Harūdēs, Marcomanōs, Tribocēs, Vangionēs, Nemetēs, Sedusiōs, Suēbōs, omnemque aciem suam rēdīs et carrīs circumdedērunt, nē qua spēs in fugā relinquerētur. Eō mulierēs imposuērunt, quae in proelium proficīscentēs passīs manibus flentēs implōrābant, nē sē in servitūtem Rōmānīs trāderent.

A close and furious conflict.

52. Caesar singulīs legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs et quaestōrem praefēcit, utī eōs testēs suae quis-

7. **necessāriō**, *adv.* [*abl. cf.*, **necessārius**], unavoidably, under compulsion. *

8. **generātim** [**genus**, race *or* tribe], *adv.*, by tribes, nation by nation. 2

9. **Marcomanī (-mannī), -ōrum,** M., a *German tribe on the upper Maine.* 1

Tribocēs, -um (-ī, -ōrum), M., *a German tribe on the Rhine about modern Strasburg.* 2

Vangionēs, -um M., *a German tribe on the west bank of the Rhine about modern Worms.* 1

Nemetēs, -um, M., *a German tribe on the Rhine about modern Speier.* 2

Sedusiī, -ōrum, M., *a German tribe between the Maine and Neckar.* 1

10. **rēda, -ae,** F., a wagon (*with four wheels*). 2

12. **pandō, -ere, pandī, passus (pānsus)** [cf. **pateō**, extend], *a.*, *n.*, spread *or* stretch out, extend: **passīs capillīs,** with dishevelled hair; **passīs manibus,** with outstretched hands. 4

2. **quaestor, -ōris** [**quaerō**, seek], M., a quaestor, *one of a class of officers in charge of the public revenues or the finances of the army;* quartermaster. *

---

6. **triplicī . . . aciē**: see Intr. 145.

7. **necessāriō**: the camp of the Germans was not entrenched (see Int. 196, 197) and its slight defences would not have availed long against the vigorous attack of the Romans.

8. **cōnstituērunt**: the Germans faced west, the Romans east. There were probably about 50,000 men under Caesar and a much larger number under Ariovistus.

10. **rēdīs et carrīs**: the former had four wheels, the latter two. **circumdedērunt**: i. e., the rear and on both flanks.

11. **eō**: i. e., on the wagons and carts. What part of speech? Cf. 42, 18.

1, 2. **legiōnibus**: for case cf. 2, 5; 16, 13; 23, 5. **lēgātōs et quaestōrem**: as there were six legions, Caesar must have had five *lēgātī* in this campaign. The *quaestor* probably commanded the legion with which Caesar stationed himself. What were the ordinary duties of the quaestor? See Int. 94, 95.

que virtūtis habēret; ipse ā dextrō cornū, quod eam partem minimē fīrmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium commīsit. Ita nostrī ācriter in hostēs sīgnō datō impetum fēcērunt, itaque hostēs repente celeriterque prōcurrērunt, ut spatium pīla in hostēs coniciendī nōn darētur. Rēiectīs pīlīs, comminus gladiīs pūgnātum est. At Germānī celeriter ex cōnsuētūdine suā phalange factā, impetūs gladiōrum excēpērunt. Repertī sunt complūrēs nostrī mīlitēs, quī in phalangas īnsilīrent et scūta manibus revellerent. Cum hostium

3. **dexter, -era, -erum,** *and* **-tra, -trum,** right, on the right.*
cornū, -ūs, N., a horn; the wing (*of an army.*) *
6. **repente,** *adv.* [**repēns,** sudden], suddenly, unexpectedly. 5
prō-currō, -ere, currī, cursus [**currō,** run], *n.*, run *or* rush forward, rush out, charge. *
8. **com-minus,** *adv.* [**manus,** hand], hand to hand, in close contest. 3
9. **ex-cipiō, -ere, cēpī, ceptus** [**capiō,** take], *a.*, take out, off, *or* up, catch, receive; take up (*in turn*), succeed; intercept. *
11. **īnsiliō, -īre, siluī,** leap in *or* on, mount. 1
re-vellō, -ere, vellī, vulsus (vol-) [**vellō,** pluck], *a.*, pluck *or* tear away, pull *or* tear out. 2

---

3. **ā dextrō cornū:** it was Caesar's usual practice to open a battle with his rght wing. He mentions a special reason for doing so on this occasion. **eam partem:** i. e., the enemy's left wing.
4. **minimē fīrmam,** *weakest:* for the figure cf. **42,** 20; **39.** 11.
5. **sīgnō datō:** the signal was given upon the *tuba*, or trumpet. See Int. 125. **impetum:** see Int. 148, 149, for the details of the usual mode of attack.
7. **pīla coniciendī:** what was the usual effect of the shower of *pīla?* Owing to the speed of the enemy's advance, the Romans lost this advantage (*spatium nōn darētur*). This fact may in part account for the length of the battle. **rēiectīs,** *cast aside,* because useless at close quarters.
8. **comminus gladiīs:** the favorite method with the Roman soldier. See Int. 149. The short sword of the Romans was a better weapon for hand-to-hand fighting, than the long sword of the Germans.
9. **phalange:** i. e., a phalanx formation, hence the singular number Below (line 10) *phalangas* is used because the different groups are referred to. These were composed of three or four hundred men each, who stood on the defensive against the attacks of the legionaries.
10. **phalangas:** for the form of the Acc. pl. see on *Lingonas.* **26,** 18.
11. **īnsilīrent:** i. e., sprang bodily upon the "shield-wall". **scūta manibus:** grasping the tops of the shields and uncovering the bodies of their antagonists. On the *scūtum* see Int. 106, 107. The usual method was to push the shield under that of the enemy and wound him from beneath.

aciēs ā sinistrō cornū pulsa atque in fugam coniecta esset, ā dextrō cornū vehementer multitūdine suōrum nostram aciem premēbant. Id cum animadvertisset P. Crassus adulēscēns, quī equitātuī praeerat, quod expedītior erat quam iī, quī inter aciem versābantur, tertiam aciem labōrantibus nostrīs subsidiō mīsit.

The Germans are defeated and flee to the Rhine.

53. Ita proelium restitūtum est, atque omnēs hostēs terga vertērunt neque prius fugere dēstitērunt, quam ad flūmen Rhēnum mīlia passuum ex eō locō circiter quīnque pervēnērunt. Ibi perpaucī aut vīribus cōnfīsī trānāre contendērunt aut lintribus inventīs sibi salūtem repperērunt; in hīs fuit Ariovistus, quī nāviculam dēli-

13. premō, -ere, pressī, pressus, *a.*, press, oppress, burden, annoy, press upon, press hard. *

16. subsidium, -ī [**subsideō,** *sit near or or in reserve*], N., sitting in reserve, reserves; help, aid, assistance. *

2. tergum, -ī, N., the back; the rear: **terga vertere,** to flee. *

vertō, -ere, vertī, versus, *a., n.*, turn, turn around *or* about. *

fugiō, -ere, fūgī, *n.*, flee, fly, run away; escape. *

5. trānō, 1. [**trāns+nō,** swim], *a., n.*, swim across *or* over. 1

in-veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus [**veniō,** come], *a.*, come upon, meet, find out, discover. *

6. nāvicula, -ae [*dim. of* **nāvis,** vessel], F., skiff, small vessel. *

dē-ligō, 1. [**ligō,** bind], *a.*, bind *or* tie down, fasten, moor. 4

---

12. ā sinistrō cornū: this was the weakest part of the enemy's line, as stated above (line 3).

13, 14. vehementer . . . premēbant: does this show that Caesar made a mistake in not taking the command of his left wing? **adulēscēns,** *the young man* as distinguished from his father, *Marcus Crassus*, the triumvir. Many of Caesar's best officers were young men. **expedītior:** as the cavalry was not engaged in the battle, Crassus was, "freer to act", or had a "more unrestricted" view of the field than any of the other officers.

16. tertiam aciem: which, in accordance with Roman military tactics, was being held in reserve. **labōrantibus nostrīs subsidiō,** *to the assistance of our men who were engaged in a hard struggle.* **nōstrīs subsidiō:** for case cf. **18,** 28.

1. omnēs: as the Germans had no reserves, they fled *en masse* when the phalanx was broken.

4. quīnque: It seems probable that the Germans in flight followed the route by which they had advanced, viz., the valley of the Ill, and reached the Rhine near Rheinan. See map. **vīribus,** *trusting in (confident because of) their strength.* The case here is doubtful as *cōnfīdō* takes either dative or ablative.

6. Ariovistus: he died shortly after this, possibly from wounds received in the battle.

Fate of the household of Ariovistus.

gātam ad rīpam nactus eā profūgit; reliquōs omnēs equitātū cōnsecūtī nostrī interfēcērunt. Duae fuērunt Ariovistī uxōrēs, ūna Suēba nātiōne, quam domō sēcum dūxerat, altera Nōrica, rēgis Vocciōnis soror, quam in Galliā dūxerat, ā frātre mīssam: utraque in eā fugā periit. Fuērunt duae fīliae: hārum altera occīsa, altera capta est. C. Valerius Procillus, cum ā custōdibus in fugā trīnīs catēnīs vinctus traherētur, in ipsum Caesarem hostīs equitātū persequentem incidit. Quae quidem rēs Caesarī nōn minōrem quam ipsa vīctōria voluptātem attulit, quod hominem honestissimum prōvinciae Galliae, suum familiārem et hospitem, ēreptum ē manibus hostium sibi restitūtum vidēbat, neque ēius calamitāte dē tantā voluptāte et

Rescue and tale of Caesar's envoys.

7. **nancīscor, -ī, nactus (nanctus) sum,** *a.*, get, obtain; meet with, find. *

9. **Suēbus, -a, -um,** of *or* pertaining to the Suevi (Suebi), Swabian. *

nātiō, -ōnis [nāscor, be born], F., race, tribe, people, nation. *Usually applied to a distant and barbarous people.* *

10. **Vocciō, -ōnis,** M., *a king of Noricum.* 1

11. **per-eō, -īre, iī, itus (per+eō,** go], *n.*, go through, pass away, be destroyed, perish. 4

13. **trīnī, -ae, -a,** *distrib. num. adj.* [**trēs,** three], by threes; threefold, triple. 4

14. **vinciō, -īre, vinxī, vinctus,** *a.*, bind, fetter. 1

trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractus, *a.*, drag, draw; drag along or in. 2

15. **in-cidō, -ere, cidī, [cadō,** fall], *n.*, fall into *or* upon; fall in with, meet; happen, befall. 5

16. **voluptās, -tātis [volō,** wish], F., *what one wishes:* pleasure, delight, enjoyment, satisfaction. 3

17. **honestus, -a, -um [honor,** honor], honorable, worthy, distinguished, eminent. 3

18. **hospes, -itis,** M., F., host, entertainer; guest, friend. 3

---

7. **eā,** *in this* (*nāviculā*); for the case cf. **3,** 20. **reliquōs:** it is stated by Plutarch that 80,000 men were killed in the battle and retreat.

8. **duae uxōrēs:** among the Germans polygamy was permitted in the case of the nobles only.

9. **Suēba nātiōne,** *a Swabian by descent.* **nātiōne,** for case cf. **49,** 8; **1,** 12.

11. **dūxerat, mīssam:** sc. *in mātrimōnium.*

13. **Procillus:** see **47,** 10.

14. **persequentem,** *who was pursuing.*

16. **voluptātem attulit:** these generous words do credit to Caesar's heart and let us into the secret of his wonderful influence over all who came into close contact with him. See Int. 26.

19. **neque** etc., *nor had Fortune, by injury to him, abated, in any degree* (*quicquam*) *his great* (cause for) *satisfaction and rejoicing.*

grātulātiōne quicquam fōrtūna dēminuerat. Is sē praesente dē sē ter sortibus cōnsultum dīcēbat, utrum īgnī statim necārētur, an in aliud tempus resevārētur: sortium beneficiō se esse incolumem. Item M. Mētius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

Fate of the Suebi. Winter arrangements.

54. Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō Suēbī, quī ad rīpās Rhēnī vēnerant, domum revertī coepērunt; quōs Ubiī, quī proximī Rhēnum incolunt, perterritōs īnsecūtī māgnum ex iīs numerum occīdērunt. Caesar, ūnā aestāte duōbus māximīs bellīs cōnfectīs, mātūrius paulō, quam tempus annī postulābat, in hīberna in Sēquanōs exercitum dēdūxit; hībernīs Labiēnum praeposuit; ipse in citeriōrem Galliam ad conventūs agendōs profectus est.

20. **grātulātiō, -ōnis** [grātulor, express joy], F., expression of joy, congratulation, rejoicing. 3
21. **ter,** *num. adv.* [trēs, three], three times, thrice. 1
statim [stō, stand], *adv., as one stands;* forthwith, immediately. *
necō, 1. [nex, death], *a.,* put to death, slaughter, kill. *
22. **re-servō, 1.** [servō, save, keep], *a.,* keep back, save up, reserve. 4
23. **in-columis, -e,** unhurt, uninjured, safe. *

3. **Ubiī, -ōrum,** M., *a German tribe on the east bank of the lower Rhine, near Cologne.* *
5. **aestās, -tatis,** F., *the hot season:* summer. *
7. **prae-pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus** [pōnō, place], place *or* put before *or* over, put in command of

---

20. **quicquam:** for case cf. **35,** 17; **31,** 22; **20,** 6. **sē praesente,** *while he was standing by.*
21. **ter:** a sacred number. **sortibus:** see on **50,** 13. **utrum, an:** for use in double questions cf. **50,** 13. **īgnī:** see **4,** 3.

2. **domum:** for case see on **5,** 7.
3. **proximī Rhēnum,** *next to the Rhine.* **Rhēnum:** see on **46,** 2, contrast *Germānīs,* **1,** 10.
5. **ūnā aestāte:** usually but one campaign was conducted each year. **mātūrius paulō,** *a little earlier:* about the middle of September. The army needed rest after such arduous labors.
6. **hīberna:** on the winter camp see Int. 139. **in Sēquanōs:** the stationing of the army on Gallic soil signified Caesar's intention to assume a protectorate over Gaul.
7. **Labiēnum:** see on **10,** 8. He had the rank of *prōpraetor.*
8. **ad conventūs agendōs,** *to hold the proconsular courts* which Caesar held each year in Cisalpine Gaul. In them he decided such cases as came before him on appeal from the local courts, or were directly within his jurisdiction as *prōcōnsul.* Caesar had another object, for which see Int. 34; also Plutarch's Caesar. For the use of the Gerundive cf. **1,** 9; **38,** 8.

BOOK II.—THE CONQUEST OF NORTH-WESTERN GAUL.

The transfer of central Gaul from German to Roman control was quietly effected, and the victorious legions were quartered for the winter in the newly acquired territory. The Belgae, alarmed at the turn of affairs, and perhaps affected through their close relations with the Germans, formed during the winter a league of defense, and levied a force of three hundred thousand men, which they massed on the southern frontier. Early in the spring Caesar moved against them. At his approach the Remi, ambitious to gain supreme power in Belgica as the Aedui had in Celtica, came to terms with him, and furnished valuable information regarding the strength of the allied army. At first he did not venture to attack with his greatly inferior force an enemy so noted for daring and warlike skill as the Belgae, but established himself in a strong position on the Axona (*Aisne*) river, and despatched a force of the Aedui under Diviciacus to ravage the territory of the Bellovaci. He hoped by this means to hasten the dissolution which the rivalry and jealousy existing among the allies made inevitable. After an unsuccessful assault upon Bibrax, the chief town of the Remi, the army of the league attacked Caesar's outposts on the Axona, but was defeated in a sanguinary engagement. The coalition at once collapsed, and Caesar was left free to deal with the separate tribes.

Sweeping through western Belgica, he quickly subdued the Suessiones, Bellovaci, and Ambiani. The eastern tribes, however, still remained unconquered and defiant. Forming a second and closer union, the Nervii, Viromandui, and Atrebates assembled a numerous army in the forests near the Sabis (*Sambre*) river, and informing themselves accurately as to the movements of the Roman army, planned to surprise and destroy the legions in turn. When the Roman van reached the stream and began to stake out a camp, the barbarians suddenly burst out of the coverts near by and fell upon it. Caesar was evidently taken unawares. So fierce was the conflict and so imminent the danger, that he seized a shield and fought in the foremost rank. After long uncertainty, Roman tactics and discipline prevailed. The enemy lost heavily, especially the Nervii, who made the last desperate stand and were slain almost to a man.

The battle of the Sabis was decisive. Only the Aduatuci dared to raise a brave but ineffectual opposition. They were quickly subdued, and on account of an attempt at treachery were sold into slavery.

Meanwhile, the coast tribes had submitted to Publius Crassus and the conquest of Belgica was complete. With his customary moderation, Caesar was content with a general disarmament and the furnishing of hostages. The treacherous Remi were elevated to supreme power in Belgica, and were thus more firmly attached to the Roman interest. With the exception of the country of the Menapii and Morini, all of central and northern Gaul was now in the grasp of Rome.

This is one of the most interesting of the Gallic campaigns in its presentation of the strong qualities of the Roman leader. His tactical skill, celerity of movement, energy and courage are seen at their best. Political sagacity and personal power enabled him to secure the submission of many tribes with very little fighting. The surprise at the Sabis on the other hand, was due to his failure to observe the most common rules of prudence in the presence of the enemy. That it was not a disastrous defeat must be attributed entirely to the excellence of his soldiers. The withdrawal of his troops from the *oppidum* of the Aduatuci was a military mistake, and the postponement of the reception of the German envoys was a political one.

REFERENCES FOR READING.

PLUTARCH: Caesar.
FROUDE: Caesar, a Sketch, pp. 189-195. (Harper's ed.).
TROLLOPE: Caesar, chap. III. (Ancient Classics Series).
MOMMSEN: History of Rome, vol. IV. pp. 300-304.
MERIVALE: History of Rome under the Empire, vol. I. pp. 265-286.
NAPOLEON: Julius Caesar, vol. II. pp. 106-131.

COMMENTARIUS SECUNDUS.

League of the Belgian tribes against the Romans.

1. Cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā, ita utī suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, crēbrī ad eum rūmōrēs afferēbantur, litterīsque item Labiēnī certior fīēbat omnēs Belgās, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dīxerāmus, contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter sē dare. Coniūrandī hās esse causās: prīmum quod verērentur, nē omnī pācātā Galliā ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde, quod ab nōnnūllīs Gallīs sollicitārentur, partim quī, ut

2. **crēber, -bra, -brum** [creō, crēscō], thick, close, repeated, numerous, frequent; *comp.* **crēbrior**; *superl.*, **crēberrimus.** *

rūmor, -ōris, M., hearsay, report, rumor, common opinion, reputation. *

3. **afferō (ad-), ferre, attulī, allātus,** *a.*, bring, take, *or* carry to, present, occasion, cause, bring forward, allege. *

4. **contrā,** *prep. with acc.*, contrary to, opposite to, against. *

6. **con-iūrō** [iūrō, swear], 1. *n.*, swear *or* take an oath together, league together, conspire. *

8. **sollicitō** [sollus = tōtus + cieō, rouse], 1. *a.*, move violently, stir up, agitate; incite, tempt, instigate. *

partim, *adv.* [*acc. of* **pars**], partly, in part; **partim . . . partim,** some . . . others. *

---

1. **esset:** for mode cf. I, **4,** 9. **citeriōre Galliā:** Caesar's province south of the Alps, divided by the Padus river into *Gallia Trānspadāna* and *Gallia Cispadāna.*

2. **suprā:** in I, **54. dēmōnstrāvimus,** the rhetorical *we.* Caesar the writer is spoken of in the first person, Caesar the general in the third.

3. **certior fīēbat,** *was informed from time to time.* The imperfect of repeated action. So in **afferēbantur,** l. 2.

4. **Belgās:** they were essentially Celts with some admixture of German blood. "The Belgian is the German grafted on the Gaul." **quam . . . partem,** *who, we had said,* (see I, **1,** 1, 2) *constituted the third part of Gaul.* For *quam* instead of *quōs* (i. e. *Belgās*) see on I, **38,** 3.

6. **verērentur:** for mood cf. I, **16,** 17; **23,** 9; **47,** 15. **nē:** meaning after verbs of *fearing?* See on I, **19,** 11.

7. **omnī Galliā:** *i. e., Gallia Celtica.* **pācātā:** the arrogant Romans looked upon opposition to them as wrong; hence "any war against Rome was a 'conspiracy,' and a nation enslaved by Rome was 'pacified'" (Moberly).

8. **Gallīs:** the Gauls were startled by the quartering of Roman soldiers in Gaul. **partim quī,** *some of whom;* i. e. the opponents of all foreigners.

Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versārī nōluerant, ita populī Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā molestē ferēbant, partim quī mōbilitāte et levitāte animī novīs imperiīs studēbant, ab nōnnūllīs etiam, quod in Galliā ā potentiōribus atque iīs, quī ad condūcendōs hominēs facultātēs habēbant, volgō rēgna occupābantur, quī minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō cōnsequī poterant.

Caesar makes preparations and moves against them.

2. Hīs nūntiīs litterīsque commōtus Caesar duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā novās cōnscrīpsit

9. versō [*freq. of* **vertō**, turn], 1. *a.*, turn *or* move often, change; *in pass. as dep.*, dwell, live, be; be occupied *or* engaged.

10. in-veterāscō, -ere, veterāvī [**in-vetus**, old + **-scō**], *n.*, grow old, become settled *or* established.

molestē [**molestus**], with trouble *or* difficulty: **molestē ferre,** be annoyed *or* vexed.

11. mōbilitās, -tātis [**mōbilis**, movable], F., movableness, activity, speed; changeableness, fickleness, inconstancy.

levitās, -tātis [**levis**, light], F., lightness, restlessness, inconstancy, levity.

14. volgō (**vul-**) [**vulgus**], *adv.*, commonly, everywhere, publicly, universally.

---

10. inveterāscere: how are *inceptives* or *inchoatives* formed? What action of the verb is implied? A. 167 *a*; G. 133, V; H. 337; *B.* 155 1.

11. partim quī, *others of whom:* cf. l. 8. Caesar probably had in mind the Aeduan faction headed by Dumnorix. **novīs imperiīs** etc., *desired a new government.* **imperiīs:** for case cf. I, **2**, 4; **9**, 8; **18**, 19.

12. nōnnūllīs (sc. *sollicitābantur*); such as Orgetorix, I, **2**, Casticus, I, **3**, and Dumnorix, I, **18**.

13. ad . . . hominēs, *for employing mercenaries.* For use of Gerundive cf. I, **1**, 9; **3**, 6; **5**, 8.

14. minus facile: the absence of political unity exposed the various tribes to the intrigues of ambitious chiefs. A centralized government, jealously guarding its own interests and those of the people at large and insisting upon the subordination of the tribe to the nation, was what these petty tyrants most dreaded to see established in Gaul.

15. imperiō nostrō, *under our rule.* See for case on I, **18**, 23.

2. duās legiōnēs: the XIII and XIV. These, like the two levied the spring before, were raised by Caesar upon his own responsibility: see Int. 32. The eight legions and the auxiliary forces now under Caesar's command had an effective strength, according to Napoleon III, of at least 60,000 men. **ūlteriōrem Galliam:** the land of the Sequani.

et initā aestāte, in ūlteriōrem Galliam quī dēdūceret, Q. Pedium lēgātum mīsit. Ipse, cum prīmum pābulī cōpia esse inciperet, ad exercitum vēnit. Dat negōtium Senonibus reliquīsque Gallīs, quī fīnitimī Belgīs erant, utī ea, quae apud eōs gerantur, cōgnōscant sēque dē hīs rēbus certiōrem faciant. Hī cōnstanter omnēs nūntiāvērunt manūs cōgī, exercitum in ūnum locum condūcī. Tum vērō dubitandum nōn exīstimāvit, quīn ad eōs proficīscerētur. Rē frūmentāriā

3. **in-eō, īre, īvī (iī), itus,** *a.*, *n.*, go into, enter upon, begin; adopt, undertake, form (**cōnsilium**), estimate (**numerum**). *
aestās, -tātis, F., (the hot season) summer. *
dē-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, *a.*, lead down *or* away, withdraw, induce, conduct; (with *nāvēs*) launch; (with *mulierem*) marry; unfurl *or* set (**vēla**); bring (**rem in perīculum** *or* **aliquem in sententiam**). *
Q. *abbreviation for the praenomen* **Quīntus.** 3
4. **Pedius, -ī,** M., *a Roman gentile name. E. g.*, Q. Pedius, *a nephew of Caesar and one of his legati.* 2

5. **incipiō, -ere, cēpī, ceptus** [**capiō, take**], *a.*, undertake, begin, commence. *
negōtium, -ī [**nec + ōtium,** leisure], N., concern, business, undertaking, matter; **negōtium dare,** employ, assign a matter; **quid negōtiī,** what business. *
Senonēs, -um, M., *a Gallic tribe about modern Sens.* *
8. **cōnstanter** [**cōnstō,** stand together, be consistent *or* steadfast], uniformly, consistently; resolutely. 2
9. **vērō,** *adv.*, [**vērus,** true], in truth, truly, in fact, assuredly; but, however; but in fact, indeed. *

---

3. **initā aestāte,** *after the beginning of summer.* For the Abl. cf. I, 2, 2; **16,** 11; **25,** 5. **quì (eās) dēdūceret,** *to bring them:* probably by the pass of Great St. Bernard.
3, 4. **Q. Pedium:** nephew of Caesar and one of his heirs. He was consul with Octavius in 43. **lēgātum:** Caesar's lieutenants during this year were T. Labienus, C. Fabius, Q. Cicero, L. Roscius, L. Munatius Plancus, C. Trebonius, Q. Titurius Sabinus, L. Arunculeius Cotta and Quintus Pedius. M. Crassus was his quaestor. **cum prīmum:** in the early part of May or June.
5. **inciperet:** for mode cf **1,** 1. **ad exercitum vēnit:** at Vesontio (*Besancon*). See map and I, **38.**
6. **Belgīs:** for case cf. I, **1,** 10; **9,** 6; **28,** 14; **49,** 4. **utī ea** etc., *to find out . . . and inform him about . . .*
7. **gerantur:** for mode see on I, **8,** 7. **cōgnōscant:** for mode see on I, **30,** 8; so *faciant* in l. 8.
8. **manūs cōgī,** *that armed bands were gathering.* What is the relation of this clause (also the following) to *nūntiāvērunt?*
9, 10. (*sibi*) **dubitandum . . . quīn . . . proficīscerētur,** *that he ought not to hesitate to set out to them.* For *dubitandum* (*esse*) see on I, **7,** 15; for mode of *proficīscerētur* I, **3,** 20.

comparātā castra movet diēbusque circiter quīndecim ad fīnēs Belgārum pervēnit.

Submission of the Remi.

3. Eō cum de imprōvīsō celeriusque omnium opīniōne vēnisset, Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae ex Belgīs sunt, ad eum lēgātōs Iccium et Andecombogium, prīmōs cīvitātis, mīsērunt, quī dīcerent sē suaque omnia in fidem atque in potestātem populī Rōmānī permittere, neque sē cum Belgīs reliquīs cōnsēnsisse neque contrā populum Rōmānum coniūrāsse, parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frūmentō cēterīsque rēbus iuvāre; reli-

2. **opīniō, -ōnis** [opīnor, think], F., way of thinking, opinion, reputation, impression, expectation. *

Rēmus, -a, -um, belonging to *or* one of the Remi, *as subst. pl. m.*, the Remi, *a Belgic tribe between the Marne and the Aisne.* *

3. **Iccius, -ī,** M., *the name of one of the leaders of the Remi.* 3

Andecombogius, -ī, M., *a chief of the Remi.* 1

6. **per-mittō, -ere, mīsī, mīssus** [mittō, send], *a.*, let go *or* loose; give up *or* over, entrust, commit. *

cōnsentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus [sentiō, feel], *a.*, *n.*, think together, agree, combine; conspire. 3

7. **imperātum, -ī,** *n.*, order, command. *

8. **cēterus, -a, -um** (*nom. sing. m. not in use*), the rest of, the remainder: *in pl.*, the rest, remaining, others. *

---

11. **ad fīnēs:** Caesar marched in a northwesterly direction from Vesontio to the Belgian frontier, about 145 miles, in fifteen days, including stops for rest. Part of the way he followed the route he had taken the year before when moving upon Vesontio (I, **38**, 14 *hūc . . . contendit*).

1. **eō:** to the Belgian frontier. **dē imprōvīsō,** *unexpectedly, suddenly.* **omnium opīniōne,** *than any one had anticipated* (lit. *than* [the general] *opinion*). For case cf. I, **22**, 3; **15**, 15.

2. **Rēmī:** they were next to the Aedui in power, having occupied a part of the territory of the Sequani, when the latter fell under the sway of Ariovistus. **proximī Galliae,** *the nearest of the Belgae to Gaul.* i. e., on the line of Caesar's march toward the Belgian frontier. **ex Belgīs:** the Abl. with **ex** or **ē** (also **dē**) is sometimes used instead of the partitive Gen.

4. **quī dīcerent,** etc., *to say that they entrusted themselves and all their possessions to the protection,* etc. The subj. acc. *sē* is omitted to prevent its concurrence with the object **sē.** The Remi were impressed by the decision of Caesar's movements. They had not committed themselves to the Belgian coalition, and were able to give Caesar full information of the enemy's designs before they should be carried out.

6. **coniūrāsse:** for the contraction see on I, **12**, 11.

8. **recipere:** sc. *eōs*, i. e., *Rōmānōs.*

quōs omnēs Belgās in armīs esse, Germānōsque, quī cis Rhēnum incolant, sēsē cum hīs coniūnxisse, tantumque esse eōrum omnium furōrem, ut nē Suessiōnēs quidem, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque suōs, quī eōdem iūre et īsdem lēgibus ūtantur, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum cum ipsīs habeant, dēterrēre potuerint, quīn cum hīs cōnsentīrent.

Origin and number of the Belgic tribes.

4. Cum ab hīs quaereret, quae cīvitātēs quantaeque in armīs essent et quid in bellō possent, sic reperiēbat: plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs ab Germānīs Rhēnumque antīquitus trāductōs propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōnsēdisse Gallōsque, quī ea loca incolerent, expulisse sōlōsque esse, quī patrum nostrōrum memoriā omnī Galliā vexā-

9. **cis,** *prep. with acc.*, on this side of. 2
10. **con-iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūnctus** [**iungō,** join], *a.*, join together, unite. *
11. **furor, -ōris** [**furō,** rage], M., rage, frenzy, madness. 3
Suessiōnēs, -um, M., *a Gallic tribe about modern Soissons.* 5

2. **sīc,** *adv.*, so, thus, in this manner. *
3. **plērīque, -aeque, -aque,** *adj. pl.*, very many, the most of. *
4. **antīquitus,** *adv.*, [**antīquus,** ancient], from early *or* ancient times, long ago, anciently. *
fertilitās, -tātis, F., fertility, fruitfulness. 1
5. **ex-pellō, -ere, pulī, pulsus** [**pellō,** drive], *a.*, drive out *or* forth, expel. *

---

9. **cis Rhēnum,** *on this* (the Gallic) *side of the Rhine.*

10. **sēsē coniūnxisse,** *had united:* **esse,** *was* (direct: *is*).

11. **nē . . . quidem,** *not even* etc. The words enclosed by these particles are emphasized by such position. **Suessiōnēs:** according to Strabo they ranked next to the Bellovaci in point of valor.

12. **iūre, lēgibus:** for case cf. I, **2,** 6; **16,** 6; **20,** 7.

13. **ūtantur,** *possessed, enjoyed.*

14. **quīn cōnsentīrent:** for the constr. with **quīn** after words of *hindrance* and trans. see on I, **47,** 7.

1. **hīs:** who are meant? See **3,** 2.

2. **essent, possent:** for mode cf. I, **12,** 3; **21,** 8; **45,** 2. For the tense foll. a secondary tense see A. 286; *B.* 267; G. 510; H. 493, 1. **quid possent,** *how powerful they were.* Cf. a like use of *posse* in I, **3,** 20; for case of *quid* cf. I, **53,** 20; **20,** 6.

3. **plērōsque Belgās,** *that most of the Belgae,* for the use of the adjective see on I. **22,** 1. These (*plērōsque Belgās*) were especially the Nervii and Treviri, who, according to Tacitus, claimed descent from the Germans. **ortōs ab Germānīs:** see on **1,** 4.

6. **memoriā:** about 50 years before. For case cf. I, **4,** 4; **12,** 15. **omnī Galliā:** in the widest use of the word, including the Province.

tā, Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā fīnēs suōs ingredī prohibuerint; quā ex rē fierī, utī eārum rērum memoriā māgnam sibi auctōritātem māgnōsque spīritūs in rē mīlitārī sūmerent. Dē numerō eōrum omnia sē habēre explōrāta Rēmī dīcēbant, proptereā quod propīnquitātibus affīnitātibusque coniūnctī, quan-

7. **Teutonī, -ōrum** (*gen. pl. sometimes* **-um**), M., *a Celtic people of Jutland, who with the Cimbri overran Gaul,* 113 B. C., *and also suffered defeat from Marius.* 5

Cimbrī, -ōrum, M., *a Celtic people from the Cimbric Chersonese (Jutland). Having invaded Italy they were defeated by C. Marius near Verona,* 101 B. C. 5

intrā [**interior,** inner], *adv. and prep. c. acc.*, inside, into, within. *

ingredior, gredī, gressus sum [**gradior,** step, go], *a., n.*, go *or* walk into, march *or* advance upon, enter. 2

9. **spīritus, -ūs** [**spīrō,** breathe], M., breath, air; high spirit, haughtiness, pride (*mostly in pl.*). 2

10. **ex-plōrō, 1.** [**plōrō,** weep, flow], *a.*, cause to flow out, search *or* find out, investigate; spy out, reconnoitre. *

11. **propīnquitās, -tātis** [**propīnquus,** neighboring, near], F., nearness, vicinity; nearness of blood, relationship. *



Gallic Warrior.

---

7. **Teutonōs Cimbrōsque:** on this invasion see Int. 63, and Mommsen, III, pp. 232-235. **ingredī prohibuerint:** *hindered from entering.* The Subj. with *nē* or *quōminus* is commonly used with verbs of hindering but with *prohibēre* Caesar always employs the Infin. or the Acc. with Infin.

9, 10. **sūmerent:** for mode cf. I, **46,** 8; **2,** 13. **dē numerō:** i. e., the numerical strength of the Belgian soldiery. **omnia . . . explōrāta,** *that they had ascertained everything.* For the participle with *habeō* cf. I, **44,** 40; **18,** 10. What one word would almost express the meaning of the two?

11, 12. **propīnquitātibus affīnitātibusque,** *relationship by blood and marriage.* **quisque:** sc. **lēgātus,** *delegate.*

tam quisque multitūdinem in commūnī Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit, cōgnōverint. Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō valēre: hōs posse cōnficere armāta mīlia centum; pollicitōs ex eō numerō ēlēcta sexāgintā, tōtīusque bellī imperium sibi postulāre. Suessiōnēs suōs esse fīnitimōs; lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēre. Apud eōs fuisse rēgem nostrā etiam memoriā Diviciacum, tōtīus Galliae potentissimum, quī cum māgnae partis hārum regiōnum, tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuerit: nunc esse rēgem Galbam: ad hunc propter iūstiti-

12. commūnis, -e [**mūniō,** serve], serving together, *hence* common, general, universal, ordinary. *

13. Bellovacī, -ōrum, M., *a Belgic tribe between the Sequana, Samara, and Isara. The modern city Beauvais derives its name from it. Their town Bratuspantium* (II, **13**) *is the ruin Bratuspante near the modern Breteuil.* *

15. armō, 1. [**arma,** arms], *a.*, equip, arm: *in pf. part.*, armed (men, etc.) 1

16. ē-ligō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus [**legō,** choose], *a.*, choose *or* pick out, select: *in pf. part.*, picked (men, etc.) 1

sexāgintā, *ind., num. adj.*, sixty. 1

postulō, 1. [**poscō,** demand], *a.*, request, ask, demand. *

17. ferāx, -ācis [**ferō**], productive, fertile. 1

18. possideō, -ēre, sēdī, sessus [**potis,** able + **sedeō,** sit], *a.*, to sit as master; hold possession of, occupy, possess. 3

rēx, rēgis [**rēgō,** rule], M., ruler, monarch, king. *

20. regiō, -ōnis [**regō,** direct, mark (*by a line*), F., direction, line; boundary; quarter, district, region, country. *

Britannia, -ae, F., Britain, Great Britain (*England and Scotland*). *

21. nunc, *adv.*, now, at present, at this time. *

Galba, -ae, M., (1) *a king of the Suessiones.* (2) Servius Sulpicius Galba, *a legatus of Caesar in Gaul, said to have been one of his assassins.* *

13, 14. pollicitus sit: for mode cf. **4,** 2; I, **34,** 12; **21,** 8; **15,** 5. **plūrimum valēre:** almost equivalent to *plūrimum posse* cf. I, **20,** 6. For case of *plūrimum* cf. *quid* l. 2. **virtūte, auctōritāte, numerō:** for case cf. I, **2,** 12; **14,** 6. (*eō*). **hōs:** who?

16. sexāgintā: sc. mīlia.

17. suōs fīnitimōs: whose neighbors? See line 10, and the map.

19, 20. Diviciacum: of course not the Aeduan mentioned in Bk. I. The historian Dio Cassius gives the Belgian King another name, and it may be that Caesar is mistaken in the name Diviciacus. **cum . . . tum,** *not only . . . but also.* **Britanniae:** not the whole of Britain, but only parts lying opposite to the Belgian coast. This is the first notice of Britain in Latin literature.

am prūdentiamque summam tōtīus bellī omnium voluntāte dēferrī; oppida habēre numerō XII, pollicērī mīlia armāta quīnquāgintā; totidem Nerviōs, quī māximē ferī inter ipsōs habeantur longissimēque absint; quīndecim mīlia Atrebatēs, Ambiānōs decem mīlia, Morinōs XXV mīlia, Menapiōs VII mīlia, Caletōs X mīlia, Veliocassēs et Viromanduōs totidem, Aduātucōs XIX mīlia; Condrusōs, Eburōnēs, Caeroesōs, Paemānōs, quī ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur, arbitrārī ad XL mīlia.

22. **prūdentia, -ae** [**prūdēns** *contr. fr.* **prōvidēns**, foreseeing], F., foresight, discretion, prudence. 1

23. **dē-ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus,** *a.*, bring from *or* down, convey; confer, bestow. *

24. **quīnquāgintā,** *indecl. num.*, fifty. *

totidem [**tot,** so many + **idem**], *indecl. adj.*, just as many, the same number. *

Nerviī, -ōrum, M., *a Belgic tribe, between the (modern) Sambre and Schelde in Namur and Hennegau.* *

ferus, -a, -um, wild, fierce: *fem. as subst.*, wild beast, *cf.* **ferōx.** *

25. **Atrebas, -bātis,** M., an Atrebatian; **Atrebatēs, -um** (**-ī, -ōrum**), the Atrebates, *a Belgic tribe. The name survives in Artois and Arras.* *

26. **Ambiānī, -ōrum,** M., *a Belgian tribe, chief town* Samarobriva, *now* Amiens. 3

Morinī, -ōrum, M., *a Belgic tribe, near the channel, in Picardy.* *

Menapiī, -ōrum, M., *a Belgic tribe between the Meuse and Scheldt.* *

27. **Caletī, -ōrum (-ēs, -um),** M., *a Belgic tribe near the mouth of the Seine.* 2

Veliocassēs, -um, M., *a Belgic tribe on the Seine.* 2

Viromanduī, -ōrum, M., the Viromandui, *a Gallic tribe in the modern Dept. de l' Aisne.* 3

Aduātucī, -ōrum, M., *a people of Belgic Gaul, descended from the Cimbri and Teutones.* *

28. **Condrūsī, -ōrum,** M.. *clients of the Treveri, east of the Meuse about modern* Condroz. 3

Eburōnēs, -um, M., *clients of the Treveri, living between the Meuse and Rhine.* *

Caeroesī, -ōrum, M., *a tribe in Belgic Gaul.* 1

Paemānī, -ōrum, M., *a Belgic tribe.* 1

29. **Germānī, -ōrum,** M., *a Celtic word meaning* "hill-folk." 1

---

22. **summam:** the noun; *not* the superl. adj.

25. **longissimē, absint:** i. e., from the southern frontier. Their territory extended to the ocean on the northeast.

29. **Germānī:** this is a Celtic word meaning "hill-folk," and having no reference to Germanic origin. On the formation of leagues among the Gauls see Int. 68, 96.

Caesar secures the alliance of the Remi.

5. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus līberāliterque ōrātiōne prōsecūtus omnem senātum ad sē convenīre prīncipumque līberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī iussit. Quae omnia ab hīs dīligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Diviciacum Aeduum māgnopere cohortātus docet, quantō opere reī pūblicae commūnisque salūtis intersit manūs hostium distinērī nē cum tantā multitūdine ūnō tempore cōnflīgendum sit. Id fierī posse, sī suās cōpiās Aeduī in fīnēs Bellovacōrum intrōdūxerint et eōrum agrōs populārī coeperint. Hīs datīs

1. **līberāliter** [**līberālis**], graciously, generously, kindly. *

prō-sequor, sequī, secūtus sum [**sequor**, follow], follow (*in a friendly or hostile manner*), accompany, attend, continue, pursue. 5

4. **dīligenter** [**dīligēns**], *adv.*, carefully; with exactness, pains *or* care. *

5. **doceō**, 2. *a.*, show, teach, instruct, inform. *

rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae [**rēs**, matter + **pūblicus**], public affairs; state, commonwealth; republic.

6. **distineō, -ēre, tinuī, tentus** [**teneō**, hold], *a.*, hold or keep apart; sunder, divide, isolate. *

7. **cōn-flīgō, -ere, flīxī, flīctus**, *a.*, *n.*, strike *or* clash together, dash against, contend, fight. *

9. **intrō-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus** [**intrō**, within], lead *or* bring in, march in, introduce. 3

1, 4. līberāliter . . . prōsecūtus, *and accompanying* (his exhortation) *with courteous words.* **līberāliter, dīligenter:** how are these adverbs formed? A. 148, *b;* H. 304 IV N. 1; *B.* 76, 1. **senātum:** a Roman term used to describe a Gallic institution. **obsidēs:** Caesar follows his 'gracious speech' by a demand for hostages. **dīligenter ad diem:** the Remi felt that Caesar was not to be trifled with.

5, 6. quantō opere . . . intersit, *how greatly it concerns* etc. For the Subj. cf. **4**, 2. **reī pūblicae salūtis:** for the genitive with *interest* (and *refert*) see A. 222; B. 59; G. 381; H. 406, III; *B.* 211. **commūnis salūtis:** of both Aeduans and Romans. Caesar poses as the champion of Gallic as well as Roman interests.

7. nē . . . cōnflīgendum sit, *for fear that they* (the Romans and Aedui) *be compelled to fight.* For mode cf. I, **3**, 5; **9**, 12. For trans. of impers. cf. I, **7**, 15; **23**, 5; **26**, 1, **31**, 8.

8. in fīnēs Bellovacōrum: the Bellovaci were already disaffected because they had not obtained the leadership of the league (see **4**, 16 and 22) and the ravaging of their territory would probably draw them away home. Diviciacus and the contingents of the Aedui, Remi and Senones moved northwest from the Roman position (possibly near Chalons on the Marne).

9. intrōdūxerint, coeperint: for future perf. indic. indirect form.

mandātīs, eum ā sē dīmittit. Postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās ad sē venīre vidit neque iam longē abesse ab iīs, quōs mīserat explōrātōribus et ab Rēmīs cōgnōvit, flūmen Axonam, quod est in extrēmīs Rēmōrum fīnibus, exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae rēs et latus ūnum castrōrum rīpīs flūminis mūniēbat et, post eum quae essent, tūta ab hostibus reddēbat, et commeātūs ab Rēmīs reliquīsque cīvitātibus ut sine perīculō ad eum portārī possent efficiēbat. In eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi

10. mandātum, -ī [mandō, enjoin, command], n., charge, injunction, order, command. *
13. Axona, -ae, m., *a river of Gallia Belgica* (*now the* Aisne) *a tributary of the Isara* (Oise). 2
16. tūtus, -a, -um [*p. p. of* **tueor,** protect], protected, safe, secure. *
red-dō, -ere, reddidī, redditus [**re-** + **dō**], *a.*, give back, return, restore; make *or* cause to be, render. *
commeātus (con-), -ūs [**commeō,** go and return, make a trip], m., communication, trip; supplies, provisions, (*military*) stores. *
18. ef-ficiō, -ere, fēcī, fectus [**faciō**], *a.*, make *or* do completely, complete, perform, accomplish, effect. *

11, 12. in ūnum locum: somewhere to the north and west of the Axona (*Aisne*). **coāctās venīre,** *had been gathered and were coming.* For the use of the perf. part. see on I, **5,** 13. **neque . . . abesse** etc., *and learned from the scouts whom he had sent and from the Remi that they were not far distant.*

13, 14. flūmen . . . exercitum trādūcere: for the two accusatives cf. I, **24,** 1, and see on I, **12,** 6. **castra:** the excavations made by the engineers of Napoleon III. have fixed beyond question the site of this camp. It is the hill of Mauchamp situated on the north bank of the Aisne, between that stream and a little tributary, the Miette, flowing through low, marshy ground which formed an excellent defense in front. The hill is eighty feet above the river, with gentle slopes well adapted to the deploying of the Roman army.

15. quae rēs, *this position.* For the relative cf. I, **1,** 11; **14,** 4. **et,** correlative with the *et* after *mūniēbat* and the *et* in l. 16; what case therefore is *latus?* Do not translate the first *et.* **latus ūnum:** i. e., the rear. It would seem to be a mistake to have the stream in his rear, but his camp was fortified with great strength and the bridge gave him uninterrupted communication with the country from which his supplies came.

16. essent: for mode see on I, **3,** 3. **post . . . reddēbat,** *rendered safe from the enemy* (all) *that was behind him.*

18. possent: for mode cf. I, **6,** 5; **12,** 4; **13,** 17; **25,** 10.

praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Titurium Sabīnum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit. Castra in altitūdinem pedum XII vāllō fossāque duodēvīgintī pedum mūnīre iubet.

Assault of the Belgians upon Bibrax.

6. Ab hīs castrīs oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax aberat mīlia passuum octō. Id ex itinere māgnō impetū Belgae oppūgnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum est. Gallōrum eadem atque Belgārum oppūgnā-

19. **Q.**, *abbreviation for praenomen* **Quīntus.** 3

Titurius, -ī, M., *a Roman gentile name.* *

20. **Sabīnus, -ī,** M., *a Roman cognomen:* Quintus Titurius Sabinus, *one of Caesar's lieutenants.* *

cohors, -rtis, F., a cohort. *The tenth part of a legion, numbering from 300 to 600 men.* *

21. **duo-dē-vīgintī,** *card. num. indec.*, eighteen.

2. **Bibrax, -ctis,** F., *a town of the Remi, supposed to be the modern* Bievre. *

3. **aegrē,** *adv,.* (**aeger**), hardly, with difficulty, scarcely; *comp.* **aegrius,** *sup.* **aegerrimē.** *

4. **sustentō,** 1. *a. n.*, (**sustineō**), to hold up, support, sustain, maintain; to hold out, endure, suffer. 4

op-pūgnātiō, -ōnis [**oppūgnō,** storm], F., a storming, besieging, assault, attack. *

---

19. **praesidium:** here a 'bridge-head,' defending the north end of the bridge. **in alterā parte,** *on the other side*, i. e., at the other end of the bridge thus completing the arrangements for the defense of the bridge, the preservation of which was essential to the safety of his army. The bridge was at Berry-au-Bac, not immediately in the rear of the camp. Although nothing is said about it, it seems probable that a *castellum* was constructed at the south end of the bridge for the protection of the detachment under Sabinus.

20. **sex cohortibus:** how many soldiers? See Int. 87 for details about the cohort. **castra:** the main camp on the hill of Mauchamp. **pedum:** for case see on I, **5,** 8.

21. **duodēvīgintī pedum:** i. e., in width. When Caesar mentions only one dimension he always means the width, as it was the more important. The depth was about ten feet.

1. **nōmine:** for case cf. I, **1,** 3; **1,** 12; **48,** 12.

2. **Bibrax:** this place was north of Caesar's camp, on the present hill of *Vieux Laon.* **ex itinere:** i. e., without making any formal disposition of their troops.

3, 4. **impetū:** for case cf. I, **12,** 3; **25,** 11. **aegrē . . . sustentātum est,** translate personally: (the Remi) *held out* etc. **eadem atque:** (being) *the same as that of the Belgae;* for *atque*=*as* see on I, **28,** 17.

tiō est haec. Ubi circumiectā multitūdine hominum tōtīs moenibus undique in mūrum lapidēs iacī coeptī sunt mūrusque dēfēnsōribus nūdātus est, testūdine factā succēdunt mūrumque subruunt. Quod tum facile fīēbat. Nam cum tanta multitūdō lapidēs āc tēla conicerent, in mūrō cōn-

5. **circumiciō, -ere, iēcī, iectus** [**iaciō**], *a.*, hurl, set *or* place around. *

6. **moenia, -ium,** N. *pl.*, [**mūnio,**] defensive walls, ramparts, bulwarks, fortifications, defenses, a walled town. 4

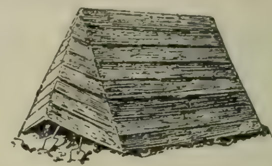
lapis, -idis, M., a stone. *

iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus, *a.*, *make* or *cause to go;* throw, cast, fling; throw up, construct. *

7. **dēfēnsor, -ōris** [**dēfendō**] M., *one who wards off or averts;* defender, protector. *

nūdō, 1. *a.*, strip, expose, lay bare, deprive of. *

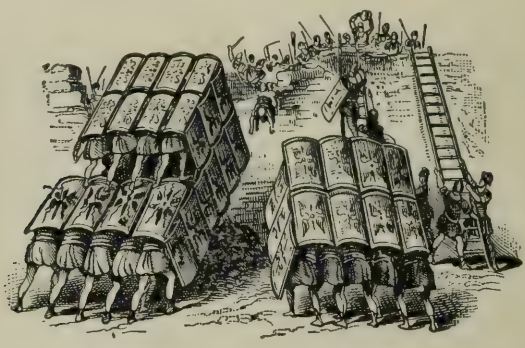
testūdō, -inis, F., a tortoise; a covered column; a shed. *



Testūdō fossāria.

porta, -ae [**portō,** carry], F., *the place left for an entrance, over which the plough was carried marking the limits of a city, hence* gate. *

8. **sub-ruō, -ere, ruī, rutus** [**ruō,** fall], *a.*, cause to fall from beneath, dig under, undermine. 2



Testūdinēs.

5. **haec,** *as follows.* Such bits of information are found frequently in the *Commentaries* and add greatly to their interest and value to the reader. **ubi** etc.: translate the ablative absolute by a coordinate clause, *when a great number of men had been stationed around all the walls,* (AND) *stones* etc.

6. **moenibus:** for case see on I, **6,** 8. What word is omitted? **iacī coeptī sunt:** *began to be thrown.* Why not **coepērunt?** See on I, **47,** 3.

7. **dēfēnsōribus:** for case cf. I, **1,** 14; **8,** 16; **23,** 11. Signification of the **-sor** (**-tor**)? See on I, **9,** 4. **testūdine:** see Int. 166.

9. **tanta multitūdō:** what was the total number of soldiers? see

sistendī potestās erat nūllī. Cum fīnem oppūgnandī nox fēcisset, Iccius Rēmus, summā nōbilitāte et grātiā inter suōs, quī tum oppidō praefuerat, ūnus ex iīs, quī lēgātī dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, nūntium ad eum mittit: nisi subsidium sibi submittātur, sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse.

Caesar's aid is sought.

7. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar īsdem ducibus ūsus, quī nūntiī ab Icciō vēnerant, Numidās et Crētas sagittāriōs et

14. **subsidium, -ī,** [**subsideō**], N., sitting in reserve, reserve; help, aid, assistance. *
sub-mittō, -ere, mīsī, mīssus, *a.*, send up, send to one's assistance, reinforce. *

2. **Numidae, -ārum,** M., *the Numidians, a people of North Africa, in modern Algiers.* 3
Crētēs, -um, M., *the Cretans, the people of Crete, modern Candia.* 1
sagittārius, -ī [**sagitta,** an arrow], M., bowman, archer. *

4, 24-30. **conicerent:** for mode cf. I, **9**, 3; **26**, 18; **41**, 14; plural from the individuals composing the subject, *multitūdō*. This "construction according to the sense" is called *Synesis*. **cōnsistendī:** gerund or gerundive? See on *bellandī* I, **2**, 14.

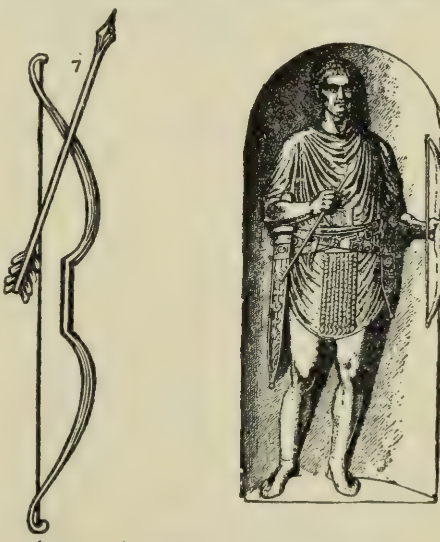
10. **erat nūllī,** *no one had.* for case of *nūllī* cf. I, **11**, 13; **34**, 12; **47**, 15.

11. **nōbilitāte, grātiā:** (*a man*) *of the highest* etc. for case cf. I, **6**, 12; **18**, 7; **28**, 15.

12. **oppidō:** for case cf. I, **2**, 5; **12**, 18; **23**, 5; **44**, 7. **ūnus ex iīs,** *one of those.* The adj. *ūnus* is used as a substantive in apposition (see on I, **3**, 11) with *Iccius:* for *ex iīs* see on **3**, 2. **lēgātī:** relation to **quī**? I, **3**, 11.

13, 14. **nūntium . . . mittit . . . nōn posse,** *sends word that he cannot.*

1, 2. **eō:** to what place? **dē,** *about.* **īsdem . . . venerant,** *employing the same persons as guides who had come as envoys* etc. **īsdem,** for case cf. *lēgibus*, **3**, 12. **ducibus:** relation to **īsdem**? Cf. *ūnus* **6**, 12; so also **nūntiī.** **Numidās:** allies



Arcus et sagitta. Sagittārius.

of Rome since the Punic Wars. In earlier times they had belonged to the cavalry, but in Caesar's army they were light infantry. On the *auxilia*, see Int. 99.

The Belgae, driven from Bibrax, ravage the country and attack Caesar.

funditōrēs Baleārēs subsidiō oppidānīs mittit; quōrum adventū et Rēmīs cum spē dēfēnsiōnis studium prōpūgnandī accessit, et hostibus eādem dē causā spēs potiundī oppidī discessit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī omnibus vīcīs aedificiīsque, quō adīre potuerant, incēnsīs ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt et ab mīlibus passuum minus duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō atque

3. **funditor, -ōris** [funda, a sling], M., slinger. 4

Baleāris, -e, Balearic. *The inhabitants of the Balearic isles, Majorca, Minorca, and three others in the Mediterranean, off Spain, were famous slingers.* 1

oppidānus, -a, -um [oppidum], of *or* pertaining to a town: *in pl. as subst.*, townspeople, inhabitants of a town. 5



Funda.

4. **dēfēnsiō, -ōnis** [dēfendō], F., a defending, defence. 2

5. **prō-pūgnō, 1.** *n.*, fight forth. make sallies; fight for, defend. 3

6. **paulisper,** *adv.* [**paulum,** a little], a short time, a little while. *

8. **ad-eō, īre, iī, itus** [eō, go], *a., n.*, go to, approach, visit; assail, attack. *

10. **fūmus, -ī,** M., smoke. 2

---

3. **subsidiō oppidānīs:** for the two datives cf. I, **18,** 28; **25,** 6; **40,** 34; **52,** 16. **mittit:** the auxiliaries probably entered the town on the south side, where the slope of the hill was very steep. The Belgae could not attack effectively on that side and would be likely to leave it unguarded.

4, 5. **quōrum . . . accessit,** *by their arrival there came* (*was added to*) *the Remi along with the hope of* (making a successful) *defense, a desire for making sallies* (against the enemy). The addition to the defense, though small, was sufficient to give the Remi hope; and the Belgae, not being used to siege operations, were easily discouraged. Caesar showed wise caution in keeping his force of legionaries intact.

7, 8. **agrōs:** the region north of the Axona. Bibrax was probably a frontier stronghold of the Remi. **morātī, dēpopulātī:** What Latin verbs only have a perfect participle with an active meaning? What do *morātī* and *dēpopulātī* agree with? Why does not *incēnsīs* agree with the same? **vīcīs** etc.: the Gallic houses were built of light materials, and had roofs thatched with straw.

9, 10. **ab . . . duōbus,** *less than two miles away* (from Caesar's camp); *ab* is here an adverb, and *mīlibus* is abl. of degree of difference. **castra posuērunt:** on the slopes across the Miette and facing southeast. The various contingents probably encamped without much regard to order. In striking contrast was the compact Roman camp, with its impregnable defences, the product of the best military science of the age. **ut:** part of speech? Cf. I, **22,** 3; **16,** 3.

īgnibus sīgnificābātur, amplius mīlibus passuum octō in lātitūdinem patēbant.

He fortifies his position and prepares for battle.

8. Caesar prīmō et propter multitūdinem hostium et propter eximiam opīniōnem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre statuit; cotīdiē tamen equestribus proeliīs, quid hostis virtūte posset et quid nostrī audērent, perīclitābātur. Ubi nostrōs nōn esse īnferiōrēs intellēxit, locō prō castrīs ad aciem īnstruendam nātūrā oportūnō atque idōneō, quod is collis, ubi castra posita erant, paululum ex plāniciē ēditus tantum adversus in lātitūdinem patēbat, quantum locī aciēs

11. **sīgnificō, 1.** [**sīgnum** + **faciō**], *a.*, make signs, show, indicate. *

1. **prīmō,** *adv.*, (*abl. of* **prīmus**), at first. *

2. **eximius, -a, -um** [**ex-imō,** take out], *taken from the mass; hence* choice, superior, eminent. 1

3. **super-sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessus,** *n.*, sit alone *or* over (*rare*); *hence* refrain *or* desist from. 1

4. **perīclitor, 1.** [**perīculum,** trial, danger], *a.*, try, test, prove; endanger, risk. *

6. **oportūnus, (opp-), -a, -um** [**ob** + **portus,** before the port], fit, convenient, opportune.

idōneus, -a, -um, fit, suitable, adapted.

7. **paululum,** *adv.* [**paululus,** very little], a very little; somewhat.

plāniciēs (-itiēs), -ēī [**plānus,** level], F., level ground, plain.

ē-dō, dere, didī, ditus [**ex** + **dō,** give], give *or* place forth; raise, elevate.

---

11. **mīlibus:** for case cf. **3,** 2.

1. **multitūdinem:** the total was 296,000: cf. chap. 4.

2. **eximiam . . . virtūtis,** *their extraordinary reputation for valor.* See I, **1,** 6. For the Gen. cf. I, **30,** 4; **14,** 8. **proeliō:** a pitched battle.

3. **supersedēre:** great generals combine caution with daring. **quid** etc., *what the enemy could* (do) *by valor;* for case of *quid* cf. I, **20,** 6; II, **4,** 2.

4. **posset:** for Subj. cf. I, **12,** 3; **21,** 8. **nostrī:** especially his Gallic cavalry. The Belgae were thought to be better fighters than the Celts. **perīclitābātur,** *attempted to ascertain by experiment.*

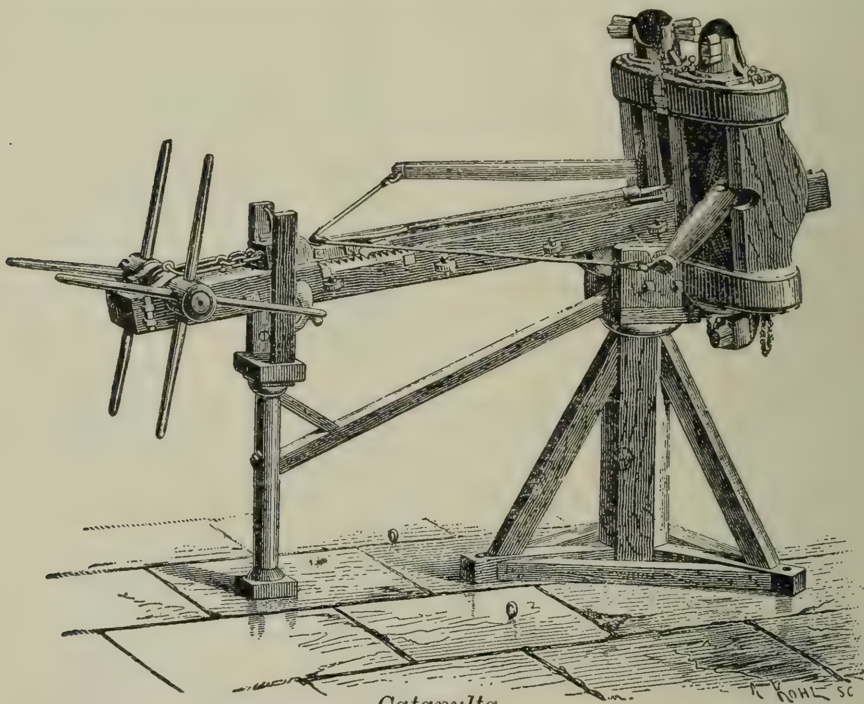
5, 6. **locō . . . idōneō,** *since the place was* etc. The Abl. Abs. for a causal clause. **locō prō castrīs:** the ridge on which the camp was pitched is two or more miles in length, extending northeast and southwest. The camp was at the northeast end, facing southwest. The Roman army was drawn up along the ridge, facing northwest, with its right wing resting on the camp. **atque idōneō,** *and also well adapted.* **atque** (**āc**) gives prominence to that which follows.

7. **paululum . . . ēditus:** about eighty feet.

8. **tantum, quantum locī,** *as*

īnstrūcta occupāre poterat, atque ex utrāque parte lateris dēiectūs habēbat et in frontem lēniter fastīgātus paulātim ad plāniciem redībat, ab utrōque latere ēius collis trānsversam

9. **uterque, utraque, utrumque** [**uter**, which of two + **-que**], both, each.
10. **dēiectus, -ūs,** M., a throwing *or* casting down, felling; slope, declivity, descent.
frōns, frōntis, F., the forehead, brow, front.
lēniter [**lēnis**], *adv.*, softly, smoothly, gently, gradually.
fastīgātus, -a, -um [**fastīgō,** slope], inclined, sloping.
paulātim [**paulum,** a little], *adv.*, little by little, by degrees, gradually.
11. **trāns-versus, -a, -um** [**vertō,** turn], turned across, athwart, transverse, at right angles.



Catapulta.

much space as. **locī**: Part. Gen. limiting *quantum*, the obj. of *occupāre*, and put into the relative clause while the English idiom takes it with *tantum*. **quantum locī**: How long would the front of an army of six legions be? See Int. 146.

9. **ex utrāque parte**: i. e., on either side of the ridge at the northeast end, where the camp was.

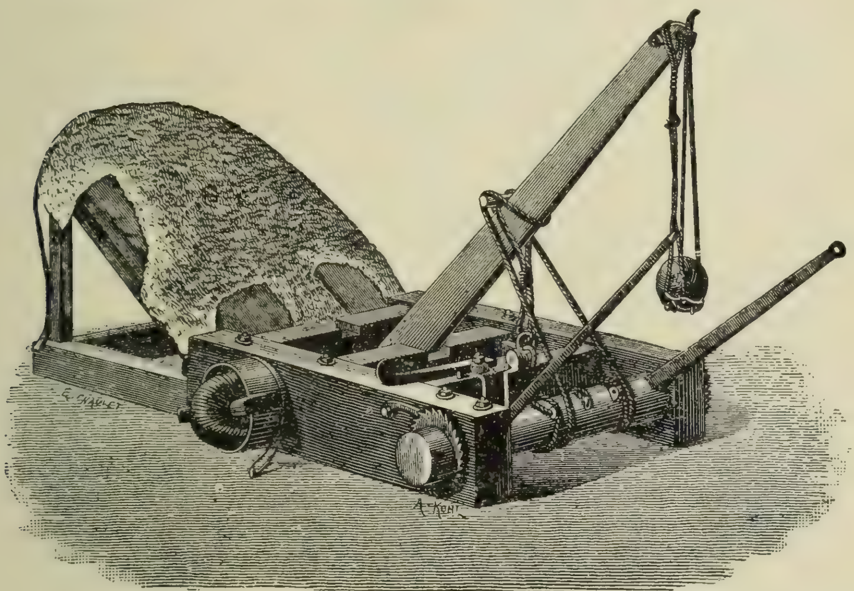
10. **in frōntem**: i. e., the portion of the ridge extending northeast from the camp.

11. **trānsversam,** *at right angles* to the ridge. One ditch ran from the camp to the Miette, the other from the camp to the Aisne,

fossam obdūxit circiter passuum CD et ad extrēmās fossās castella cōnstituit ibique tormenta collocāvit, nē, cum aciem īnstrūxisset, hostēs, quod tantum multitūdine poterant, ab lateribus pūgnantēs suōs circumvenīre possent. Hōc factō, duābus legiōnibus, quās proximē cōnscrīpserat, in castrīs

12. **ob-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus,** *a.*, lead forward *or* towards; prolong, extend.

13. **tormentum, -ī** [torqueō, twist], N., means of twisting; an engine for hurling missiles, (e. g. *Catapulta* and *Ballista*); *fig.* torment, torture. *



Ballista.

12. **ad extrēmās fossās:** *at the ends of the ditches*, i. e., at the ends nearest the two streams. For the force of the adj. cf *plērōsque* I, 22, 1, **castella:** the redoubts were earthworks surmounted by palisades and usually more or less circular in form.

13. **tormenta:** see Int. 167-169. The enemy could not now take the Roman army in the flank, as the ditches and redoubts effectually closed up the gaps between the camp and the two streams.

14. **quod . . . poterant,** *because they had such numerical strength.* **multitūdine:** for case cf. I, 1, 3; 48, 12. **ab,** *on*; with **circumvenīre.**

15. **pūgnantēs:** join with **suōs** and trans. *while fighting.*

16. **proximē:** i. e., in the previous spring; see note, 2, 2. Why did Caesar reserve these particular legions?

relīctīs, ut, sī quō opus esset, subsidiō dūcī possent, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castrīs in aciē cōnstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castrīs ēductās īnstrūxerant

The Belgians attempt to cross the Axona.

9. Palūs erat nōn māgna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc sī nostrī trānsīrent, hostēs expectābant; nostrī autem, sī ab illīs initium trānseundī fieret, ut impedītōs aggrederentur, parātī in armīs erant. Interim proeliō equestrī inter duās aciēs contendēbātur. Ubi neutrī trānseundī initium faciunt, secundiōre equitum proeliō nostrīs Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi vadīs repertīs partem suārum

17. **quō** [*old dat. of* **quī**] *adv.*, (1) *interrog.*, whither? to what (place)? (2) *rel.*, whither, to *or* into which, as far as; (3) *indef.*, (*after* **sī, nē**, etc.), if any whither, if to any place. *

opus, *indecl.*, N., [cf., **opus,** work, deed], need, necessity; *used in the predicate with the Nom. of the thing needed;* **opus est,** it is necessary. *

1. **palūs, -ūdis,** F. marsh, swamp; bog, fen. *

6. **neuter, -tra, -trum** (*gen.* **-trīus,** *dat.* **-trī**) [**ne+uter**], neither: *in pl.*, neither side, neither party. 2

7. **prōtinus,** *adv.* [**tenus,** *prep. fr.* **teneō,** hold], continuously; forthwith, immediately. 5

---

17. **sī . . . esset** (sc. *dūcī*) *in case there should be need of* (their being lead) *anywhere.* **subsidiō:** observe the care with which Caesar provided for contingencies.

18. **sex legiōnēs:** is this an exact statement? See **5,** 20, *sex cohortibus* etc. **prō castrīs:** see note to line 5. The Belgae were drawn up on the opposite side of the Miette.

1. **palūs:** the marshy ground along the course of the Miette. **nōn māgna:** figure of speech? cf. I, **52,** 4; **42,** 20; **1,** 8.

2. **sī:** for use see on I, **8,** 14.

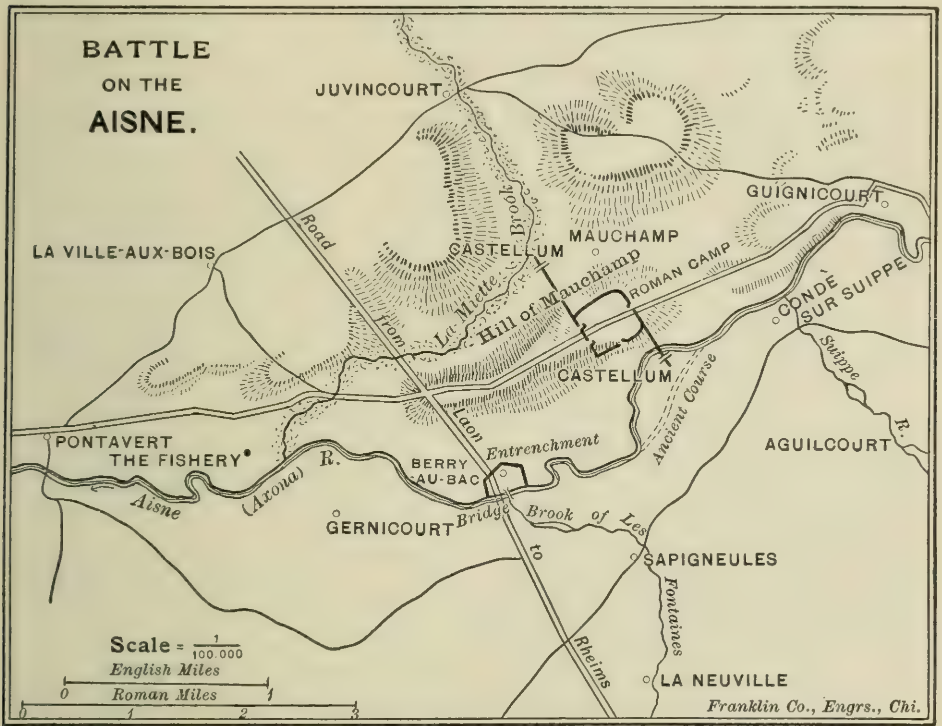
4. **ut aggrederentur parātī,** *ready to attack.* For mode cf. I, **3,** 5; **5,** 8. **impedītōs:** i. e., thrown into disorder during the crossing of the stream.

5, 6. **inter duās aciēs:** on the low ground. **secundiōre,** *rather favorable* etc.

7, 8. **nostrīs:** for case cf. **I, 1,** 10; **9,** 6; **28,** 14. **ex eō locō:** i. e., the place where they had been drawn up in line for battle. **contendērunt:** Caesar did not perceive this movement, probably because of an intervening forest.

9. **vadīs repertīs:** these were on each side of a sharp bend in the Aisne between Pontavert and Gernicourt. It seems strange that Caesar was not aware of their existence.

cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt eō cōnsiliō ut, sī possent, castellum, cui praeerat Q. Titūrius lēgātus, expūgnārent pōn-



temque interscinderent; sī minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur, quī māgnō nōbīs ūsuī ad bellum gerendum

12. inter-scindō, -ere, scidī, scissus [**scindō**, cut, destroy], *a.*, cut through, tear *or* break down, cut off (*between two points*). 2

13. ego, meī, etc., *pers. pron.* I; *pl.* **nōs**, we, us, etc. *

ūsus, -ūs [**ūtor**, use], M., use, experience, service, advantage; **ūsus est**, it is necessary; **ūsuī (ex ūsu)** of advantage, of service. *

---

10. eō cōnsiliō, ut, etc., *with this design, to storm, if they could,* etc. **possent,** represents a future indicative in the mind of the Belgae: " we will storm if we can etc."

11. castellum, see on **5**, 19. **cui,** for case cf. I, **2**, 5. **expūgnārent,** for mode cf. I,30,8. **pōntem,** see **5**, 18.

12, 13. interscinderent, in the same construction as *expūgnārent.* **minus,** *not,* as always after *sī* (cf. prefix *mis-* in words of French origin). **potuissent,** represents a future perfect indicative in the minds of the Belgae: "if we are not able etc." Why the future perfect idea instead of the future, as in l. 10? **agrōs . . . populārentur:** thus at one stroke they would be able to punish the traitorous Remi and to cut off Caesar's supplies. **populārentur,** governed by *ut* in l. 10 and therefore parallel with what

erant, commeātūque nostrōs prohibērent.

They are driven back and determine to return home.

10. Caesar certior factus ab Titūriō omnem equitātum et levis armātūrae Numidās, funditōrēs sagittāriōsque pōntem trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Ācriter in eō locō pūgnātum est. Hostēs impedītōs nostrī in flūmine aggressī māgnum eōrum numerum occīdērunt: per eōrum corpora reliquōs audācissimē trānsīre cōnantēs multitūdine tēlōrum reppulērunt; prīmōs, quī trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs interfēcērunt. Hostēs ubi et dē expūgnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō spem sē fefellisse intellē-

2. **levis, -e,** light (*in weight*), slight; ·light-minded, fickle, inconstant. *
armātūra, -ae [**armō**], F., armor, equipment; armed soldiers, *always with adjective* **levis.** 4
9. **fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsus,** deceive, cheat, disappoint. 3

---

two verbs? **māgnō . . . ūsuī,** *of great value to us.* For case cf. I, **18,** 28; **52,** 16.

14. **commeātū:** see Int. 117.



Funditor. Mīles levis armātūrae

1. **ab Titūriō:** the lieutenant was about a mile nearer the fords where the Belgae were crossing the river than was Caesar.

2. **equitātum:** see Int. 100, 101. **levis armātūrae:** see Int. 99. For case cf. *legiōnum* I, **24,** 4. **Numidās:** see on **7,** 2.

3. **pōntem trādūcit:** the Belgae and Romans were both north of the Aisne. Caesar crossed the bridge to the south bank to oppose the crossing of the enemy.

4. **eō locō:** i. e., where he met the enemy. Probably many had already passed the stream and were advancing toward the bridge. Caesar was not a moment too soon. **impedītōs:** trans. by a rel. clause, *who were* etc.

5. **aggressī occīdērunt,** *attacked and slew.*

6. **corpora . . . trānsīre:** the heaps of bodies forming a sort of bridge. **audācissimē:** Caesar often mentions with admiration the valor of the Gauls.

7. **equitātū:** for case cf. I, **53,** 7; **16,** 6.

8. **hostēs:** the main body of the Belgian army.

xērunt neque nostrōs in locum inīquiōrem prōgredī pūgnandī causā vīdērunt, atque ipsōs rēs frūmentāria dēficere coepit, cōnsiliō convocātō, cōnstituērunt optimum esse, domum suam quemque revertī et, quōrum in fīnēs prīmum Rōmānī exercitum intrōdūxissent, ad eōs dēfendendōs undique convenīrent, ut potius in suīs quam in aliēnīs fīnibus dēcertārent et domesticīs cōpiīs reī frūmentāriae ūterentur. Ad eam sententiam cum reliquīs causīs haec quoque ratiō eōs dēdūxit, quod Diviciacum atque Aeduōs fīnibus Bellovacōrum appropīnquāre cōgnōverant. Hīs persuādērī, ut diūtius morārentur neque suīs auxilium ferrent, nōn poterat.

10. **inīquus, -a, -um** [**aequus,** even], uneven, unequal, unfavorable. *

prōgredior, gredī, gressus sum [**gradior,** step], *n.*, step *or* go forward, come *or* march out, advance, proceed, go. *

11. **dēficiō, -ere, fēcī, fectus** [**faciō**], *a.*, *n.*, fail, fall away, desert. *

12. **optimus, -a, -um** [*superl. of* **bonus**], very good, best, most excellent. *

15. **potius** [*acc. neut. sing. of* **potior,** *comp. of* **potis,** able], *adv.* rather. *

dē-certō, 1. [**certō,** contend], *n.*, fight to the end, fight out, struggle fiercely *or* earnestly, contend,, vie. *

16. **domesticus, -a, -um** [**domus**], of *or* belonging to the home, home, domestic. 2

sententia, -ae [**sentiō,** feel, think], F., feeling, opinion, view, sentiment; decision, sentence. *

18. **ap- (ad-) propīnquō 1.** [**propīnquus,** near], *n.*, come near *or* close to, approach. *

---

10. **neque nostrōs prōgredī,** *and that our men did not advance.* **locum inīquiōrem:** the marsh along the Miette. For the reference see **9,** 1.

11. **ipsōs:** the Belgae. **rēs . . . dēficere:** see Int. 184. **coepit, etc.:** the figure *Alliteration*, i. e., the concurrence of words beginning with the same letter or syllable.

12, 13. **optimum esse,** *that it was best.* The subj. of **esse** is the clause *domum . . . revertī.* **revertī:** thus dissolving the coalition.

18. **Diviciacum:** the Aeduan noble. **fīnibus Bellovacōrum:** see on **5,** 8. **fīnibus:** for case cf. I, **2,** 5; **12,** 18.

19, 20. **hīs persuādērī nōn poterat,** *these could not be persuaded.* (lit., *it could not be persuaded to them*). See on I, **40,** 7, 8. **neque**=**et nōn** as in line 10. **poterat:** for trans. of verbs used impers. I, **22,** 9; **46,** 7; **31,** 8; **26,** 1. For the *ut* clause as its subj. cf. **4,** 9; I, **46,** 8; **2,** 12. Give the principal parts of **occīdērunt** (5), **reppulērunt** (7), **fefellisse** (9), **revertī** (13), **cōgnōverant** (19). Give the constr. of **Titūriō** (1) **pōntem** (3), **oppidō** (9), **sē** (9), **domum** (12), **cōpiīs** (16), **hīs** (19).

They are pursued with great slaughter.

11 Eā rē cōnstitūtā secundā vigiliā māgnō cum strepitū āc tumultū castrīs ēgressī nūllō certō ōrdine neque imperiō, cum sibi quisque prīmum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenīre properāret, fēcērunt, ut cōnsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur. Hāc rē statim Caesar per speculātōrēs cōgnitā īnsidiās veritus, quod quā dē causā discēderent, nōndum perspēxerat, exercitum equitātumque castrīs continuit. Prīmā lūce cōnfīrmātā rē ab explōrātōribus, omnem equitātum, quī novissimum āgmen morārētur, praemīsit. Hīs Q. Pedium et L. Auruncułēium Cottam lēgātōs praefēcit. T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequī iussit. Hī novissimōs adortī et multa mīlia pas-

2. **strepitus, -ūs** [**strepō**, make a noise], M., noise, rattle, uproar 3
tumultus, -ūs [**tumeō**, swell], M., uproar, confusion, disorder, tumult. *
3. **ōrdō, -inis**, M., row, order, arrangement, series, rank. *
4. **properō**, 1. [**properus**, quick], *a.*, *n.*, hasten, accelerate; make *or* do with haste. 3
5. **cōn-similis, -e**, very like, just like. 3
statim [**stō**, stand], as one stands, *hence*, forthwith, immediately. *
6. **speculātor, -ōris** [**speculor**, spy out], M., scout. 2
7. **perspiciō, -ere, spēxī, spectus** [*obsol.* **speciō**, look], *a.*, see through, discern, perceive; view, examine, inspect. *
10. **Auruncułēius, -ī**, M., *a Roman gentile name. E. g.*, **L. Auruncułēius Cotta**, *one of Caesar's lieutenants.* 5
Cotta, -ae, M., *a Roman family name. See above.* *
12. **sub-sequor, sequī, secūtus**, *a.*, *n.*, follow closely, follow up *or* on, succeed to. *

---

1. **secundā vigiliā**: about what time of night? See Int. 138.

3. **ōrdine . . . imperiō**, *not in orderly array or under orders.* For the Abl. cf. I, **12**, 3; **32**, 2.

4, 5. **peteret**: for mode cf. **6**, 9; I, **26**, 18; **9**, 3. **fēcērunt ut vidērētur**, *they made their departure seem.* For the mode cf. I, **13**, 20; **9**, 11 (*dent*). **fugae**: for case cf. I, **1**, 10; II, **2**, 6.

6. **speculātōrēs**: these were spies, while the *explōrātōrēs* (below, line 8) were regular cavalry detailed for this special service.

7. **exercitum**: i. e., the infantry.

8. **castrīs continuit**: another instance of Caesar's caution.

9. **quī . . . morārētur**, *to delay the rear* (of the Belgians). For the mode cf. I, **7**, 10; **15**, 5; **21**, 4. **novissimum āgmen**: the rear guard as a whole, while *extrēmum āgmen* (line 14, below), is the hindermost line of troops. For the order of march see Int. 140–144.

11. **Labiēnum**: see on I, **10**, 8. **lēgātum**: name the officers of the legion. **legiōnibus tribus**: how many men? See Int. 86.

12. **subsequī**: to support the cavalry and attack the enemy when overtaken.

suum prōsecūtī māgnam multitūdinem eōrum fugientium concīdērunt, cum ab extrēmō āgmine, ad quōs ventum erat, cōnsisterent fortiterque impetum nostrōrum mīlitum sustinērent, priōrēs, quod abesse ā perīculō vidērentur, neque ūllā necessitāte neque imperiō continērentur, exaudītō clāmōre perturbātīs ōrdinibus omnēs in fugā sibi praesidium pōnerent. Ita sine ūllō perīculō tantam eōrum multitūdinem nostrī interfēcērunt, quantum fuit diēī spatium, sub occāsumque sōlis sequī dēstitērunt sēque in castra, ut erat imperātum, recēpērunt.

Caesar marches against the stronghold of the Suessiones.

12. Postrīdiē ēius diēī Caesar, priusquam sē hostēs ex terrōre āc fugā reciperent, in fīnēs Suessiōnum, quī proximī Rēmīs erant, exercitum

13. **fugiō, -ere, fūgī,** *a.*, *n.*, flee, fly, run away; escape. *

15. **fortiter** [**fortis,** brave], *adv.*, bravely, stoutly, courageously. *

16. **prior, prius,** *comp. adj.* [*superl.* **prīmus**], former, previous, prior, first: *in pl. as subst.*, those in advance. *

17. **necessitās, -tātis** [**necesse,** necessary], F., necessity, constraint, compulsion. 5

ex-audiō, 4. hear (*from a distance*), discern. *

clāmor, -ōris [**clāmō,** cry out], M., outcry, noise, din, clamor. *

18. **per-turbō,** 1. [**turbō,** disturb], *a.*, disturb greatly, throw in confusion, confound, embarrass, disturb. *

2. **terror, -ōris** [**terreō,** frighten], M., fright, alarm, panic, terror. 5

---

13. **fugientium,** *who were fleeing.*

14, 15. **cum . . . cōnsisterent,** *since those in the rear of the* (Belgian) *army, whom* (our men) *had overtaken, were making a stand.* **ventum erat:** impersonal. Trans. personally; cf. **I, 22,** 9; **II, 10,** 20.

16, 17. **priōrēs:** sc. *et;* hence *pōnerent* (l. 18) is in the same constr. as *cōnsisterent* and *sustinērent.* **vidērentur, continērentur:** for mode cf. **I, 16,** 17; **II, 1,** 6.

19, 20. **tantam . . . spatium,** *as great a number as the length of the day permitted.*

1, 2. **priusquam . . . reciperent:** Caesar's plan for separating the Belgic tribes having been carried out successfully, it only remained for him to subdue them one by one. For mode of *reciperent* see on **I, 19,** 13.

3. **Suessiōnum:** for this people see on **3, 11.**

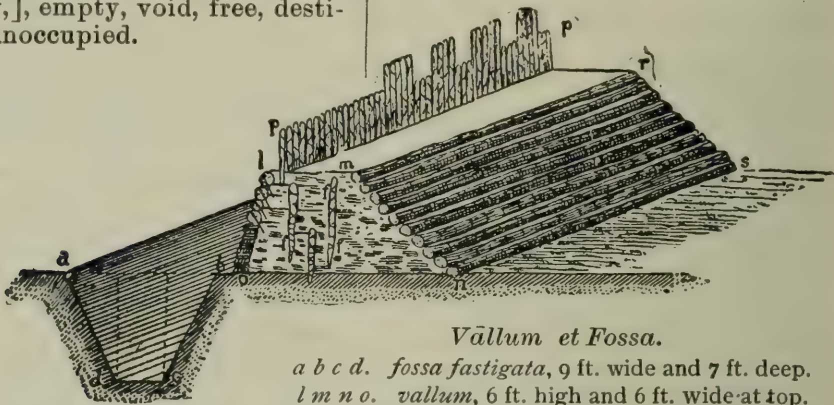
dūxit et māgnō itinere ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinere oppūgnāre cōnātus, quod vacuum ab dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitūdinem fossae mūrīque altitūdinem paucīs dēfendentibus expūgnāre nōn potuit. Castrīs mūnītīs, vīneās agere quaeque ad oppūgnan-

4. **Noviodūnum, -ī,** n., (1) *the capital of the Suessiones, the modern* Soissons, (2) *a city of the Bituriges, now* Nouan; (3) *a city of the Aedui, now* Nevers. 5

5. **vacuus, -a, -um,** [**vacō,** be empty,], empty, void, free, destitute, unoccupied.

6. **audiō,** 4., *a.*, hear, hear of: *in pr. p. as adj.*, obedient.

8. **vīnea, -ae** [**vīnum,** wine], f., a vineyard, vine arbor, *hence* a shed (*for the defence of a besieging party*).



Vāllum et Fossa.
a b c d. *fossa fastigata*, 9 ft. wide and 7 ft. deep.
l m n o. *vallum*, 6 ft. high and 6 ft. wide at top.
p p. palisades. *s* to *r*, ascending steps.

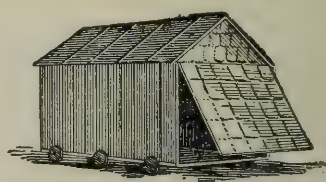
4. **māgnō itinere:** about 28 miles. **Noviodūnum:** Caesar marched west along the south bank of the Aisne.

5. **ex itinere: ex** is here employed to denote the immediate succession of events: i. e. Caesar began the assault immediately at the end of the march, although it was late in the day and his troops were very tired from the long march.

6. **lātitūdinem** etc.: Gallic towns did not often have such strong fortifications. Possibly Caesar is here plausibly accounting for this, his first reverse in Gaul.

7. **paucīs dēfendentibus:** the Abl. Abs. for a concessive clause. Trans., *although but few were defending it.*

8. **castrīs mūnītīs:** see Int. 130–132, and cut of *vāllum* and *fossa*.



Vīnea.

vīneās: see Int. 160. **quaeque** = *et quae* (not from *quisque*). For siege operations see Int. 158–163.

dum ūsuī erant comparāre coepit. Interim omnis ex fugā Suessiōnum multitūdō in oppidum proximā nocte convēnit. Celeriter vīneīs ad oppidum āctīs, aggere iactō turribusque cōnstitūtīs māgnitūdine operum, quae neque vīderant ante Gallī neque audierant, et celeritāte Rōmānōrum permōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditiōne mittunt et, petentibus Rēmīs ut cōnservārentur, impetrant.

Caesar proceeds against the Bellovaci, who sue for peace.

13. Caesar, obsidibus acceptīs prīmīs cīvitātis atque ipsīus Galbae rēgis duōbus fīliīs armīsque omnibus ex oppidō trāditīs, in dēditiōnem Suessiōnēs accēpit exercitumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Quī cum sē

11. **agger, -eris** [ad + gerō, carry], M., materials for a mound *or* earthwork; a mound, rampart; embankment.
turris, -is, F., tower.
12. **māgnitūdō, -inis** [māgnus great], F., greatness, great size, extent, stature (**corporum**).
13. **celeritās, -tātis** [celer, quick], F., quickness, swiftness, speed, promptness.
15. **cōnservō,** 1. [**servō,** save], *a.*, save, spare; protect, maintain.

9, 10. ūsuī, for case cf. I, **18,** 28. **omnis multitūdō:** how many? See **4,** 24. They probably crossed the Aisne and entered the town on the north side, which Caesar had not had time to invest. Had he been able to do so, it seems certain that he would have prevented their entrance. **ex fugā:** see on *ex itinere* line 5. The Suessiones ended their flight and at once entered the town.

11. **āctīs,** *moved up.* **aggere iactō,** *after an earthwork had been constructed.* See vertical section of *agger.* **vīneīs, aggere, turribus:** state the use of these Ablatives Absolute. **turribus:** see Int. 163.

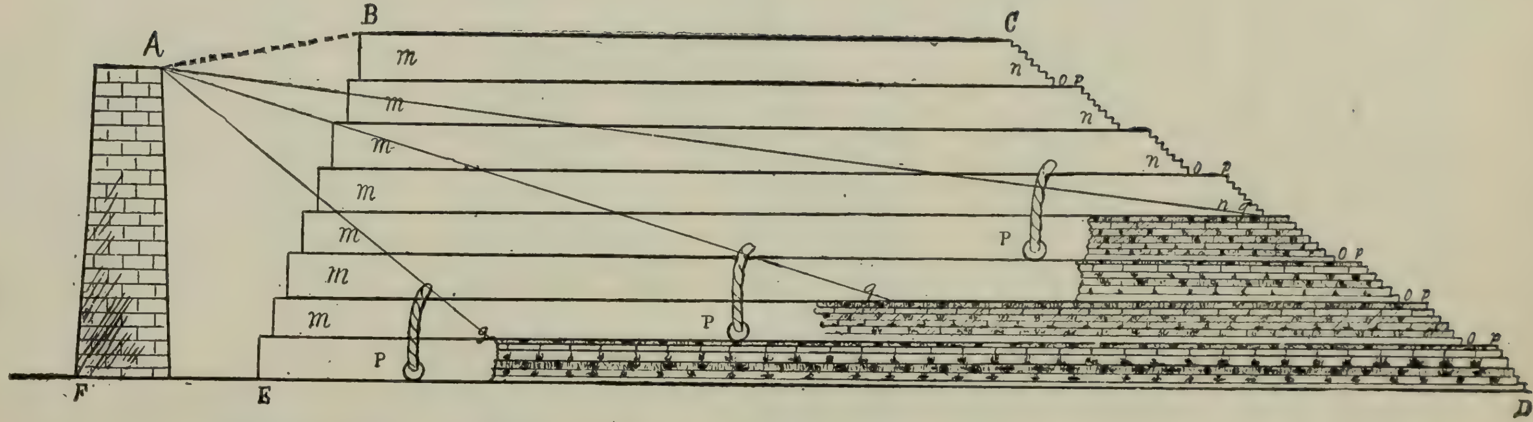
12, 13. **quae . . . audierant:** these Gauls had not hitherto come in contact with the Romans. See I, **1,** 6–9

14, 15. **petentibus . . . cōnservārentur,** *since the Remi* (whose allies they had been) *asked that they be spared.* **Rēmīs:** case? For the **ut** clause as obj. cf. I, **2,** 4; **39,** 14; **7,** 13; **3,** 13. **impetrant,** *they* (the Suessiones) *obtain their request.* **cōnservārentur:** i. e., should be granted life and liberty.

1. **prīmīs:** the foremost citizens, not necessarily the public functionaries.

2. **Galbae:** the former head of the league; see **4,** 22.

4. **in Bellovacōs:** west of the Suessiones. **dūcit:** Caesar probably followed the south bank of the Aisne to its junction with the Oise and there crossed the latter stream. See map. **quī cum,** *now when these.* For the use of the Rel. cf. I, **1,** 11; II, **5,** 15.



VERTICAL SECTION OF AGGER IN PROCESS OF CONSTRUCTION.

See Int. 158-166.

A F, Represents the enemy's wall.
A B C D E, Section to be filled.
A B E, Part especially exposed to the enemy's missiles to be filled at last in any way possible.
q q D, Part already constructed.
m n, Covered passages through which material is carried.
n n n, Stairs leading from one story to another.
op op, Steps.
P P P, Lines of *plutei* protecting the men at work.
The lines of direction show the spaces protected by the *plutei*.

suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter mīlia passuum quīnque abesset, omnēs māiōrēs nātū ex oppidō ēgressī manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce sīgnificāre coepērunt, sēsē in ēius fidem āc potestātem venīre neque contrā populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passīs manibus suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānīs petiērunt.

Diviciacus pleads for the Bellovaci.

14. Prō hīs Diviciacus (nam post discessum Belgārum dīmīssis Aeduōrum cōpiīs ad eum reverterat) facit verba: Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē

5. **Bratuspantium, -ī,** N., *a town of the Bellovaci, now* Breteuill. 1

7. **nātus, -ūs** [**nāscor,** be born], M., birth: **māiōrēs nātū,** greater by birth; elders, ancestors. 3

8. **tendō, -ere, tetendī, (tentus), tēnsus,** stretch, stretch out, extend. 4

vōx, vōcis, F., voice, cry, sound: word: *pl.* words, language, speech; **māgnā vōce,** with a loud voice. *

11. **pandō, -ere, pandī, passus** [*cf.* **pateō,** *extend*], spread *or* stretch out, extend: **passīs manibus,** with outstretched hands. 4

1. **discessus, -ūs,** [**discēdō,** go asunder], M., a going asunder, departure, withdrawal; defection. *

---

5. **Bratuspantium:** see map. Caesar would march northwest from the crossing of the Oise to reach it.

6. **mīlia:** for case see on I, **2,** 17. **circiter** here is *not* a preposition.

8, 9. **vōce:** i. e. cries of supplication in an unknown tongue. **in fidem āc potestātem,** *under his protection and power;* a form of submission for which cf. **3,** 4.

11, 12. **puerī,** *children* (of both sexes). **ex,** (standing) *on.* **passīs manibus,** *with outstretched hands.* What does the abl. abs. here express? **mōre:** for case cf. I, **50,** 1 (*īnstitūtō*); **44,** 7 (*iūre*); **4,** 2 (*mōribus*).

1, 2. **prō hīs,** *in behalf of these* (Bellovaci). **discessum Belgārum:** described in chap. II.

3, 4. **facit verba,** *speaks.* Give the direct form in both Latin and English. **omnī . . . fuisse,** *had* (direct: *have*) *always been under the protection and friendship of the Aeduan* (direct: *our*) *state.* **fidē atque amīcitiā:** cf. the formula in **13,** 9; the Bellovaci were clients of the Aedui, retaining, however, their independence and the control of their own army. Another class of client peoples existed in Gaul, which had ceased to form separate states and whose soldiers were incorporated into the armies of the states under whose control they were. **prīncipibus:** the leading citizens.

atque amīcitiā cīvitātis Aeduae fuisse: impulsōs ā suīs prīncipibus, quī dīcerent Aeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs omnēs indīgnitātēs contumēliāsque perferre, et ab Aeduīs dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Quī ēius cōnsiliī prīncipēs fuissent, quod intellegerent quantam calamitātem cīvitātī intulissent, in Britanniam profūgisse. Petere nōn sōlum Bellovacōs, sed etiam prō hīs Aeduōs, ut suā clēmentiā āc mānsuētūdine in eōs ūtātur. Quod sī fēcerit, Aeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās amplificātūrum; quōrum auxiliīs atque opibus, sī qua bella inciderint, sustentāre cōnsuērint.

Caesar grants terms to the Bellovaci.

15. Caesar honōris Diviciacī atque Aeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōnservā-

4. impellō (in-), **-ere, pulī, pulsus** [**pellō**, drive], *a.*, drive *or* urge on, incite, instigate, impel. *

5. redigō, -ere, ēgī, āctus [**agō**, put in motion], *a.*, drive *or* bring back; get together, collect; render, reduce. *

6. indīgnitās, -tātis [**indīgnus**, unworthy], F., unworthiness, outrage, disgrace. 2

9. pro-fugiō, -ere, fūgī, [**fugiō**, flee], flee from *or* before, run away, escape. *

11. clēmentia, -ae [**clēmēns**, gentle], F., gentleness, kindness, mercy, clemency. 2

mānsuētūdō, -inis, [**mānsuētus**, tame], F., tameness; gentleness, compassion. 2

12. amplificō, 1. [**amplus**, full all around + **faciō**], *a.*, extend, enlarge, increase, expand. 2

13. incidō, -ere, cidī, [**cadō**, fall], *n.*, fall into *or* upon; fall in with, meet, happen, occur. 5

---

5. dīcerent: for the mode see on I, **7**, 12. Point out the other illustrations of this principle in this speech. **Caesare:** direct, *by you.* For case cf. I, **14**, 6; **16**, **17**.

6. indīgnitātēs, etc: under the vigorous military rule of Labienus (cf. I, **54**, 7) the Aedui had already largely lost their independence. **Aeduīs:** for case cf. I, **1**, 14.

7. populō: for case cf. I, **2**, 5; II, **6**, 12. **quī,** *those who;* sc. *eōs*, subject of *profūgisse* line 9.

9. Britanniam: the relations between the Belgae and Britons were quite close. See **4**, 19–21.

10, 11. ut . . . ūtātur, *to exercise his* (well known) *clemency etc.* For the mode cf. I, **2**, 4: for the Abl. cf. I,**2**,6;II,**3**,12. Notice carefully the change to primary tenses in ll. 11-14, and see on I, **7**, 13. Give the regular tense for each verb.

13. sī qua, *if any,* may be translated *whatever.*

14. cōnsuērint: sc. *Aeduī.*

1, 2. honōris . . . causā: for meaning see on I, **18**, 15. Caesar desired to strengthen the Aeduan power. **Diviciacī:** for case cf. I, **4**,4. **cōnservātūrum:** see on **12**, 14. What must be supplied to complete the verb?

The Ambiani surrender. Situation of the Nervii.

tūrum dīxit; quod erat cīvitās māgnā inter Belgās auctōritāte atque hominum multitūdine praestābat, sexcentōs obsidēs poposcit. Hīs trāditīs omnibusque armīs ex oppidō collātīs, ab eō locō in fīnēs Ambiānōrum pervēnit, quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdedērunt. Eōrum fīnēs Nerviī attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sīc reperiēbat: Nūllum aditum esse ad eōs mercātōribus; nihil patī vīnī reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium īnferrī, quod iīs rēbus relanguēscere animōs et remittī virtūtem exīstimārent: esse hominēs ferōs māgnaeque virtūtis, increpitāre atque incūsāre reliquōs

4. **sexcentī, -ae, -a** [centum, a hundred], six hundred. 3

7. **mora, -ae** [moror, delay], F., delay. 4

dē-dō, -ere, didī, ditus [dō, give], *a.*, give up *or* over, yield, surrender; **sē dēdere**, submit, surrender. *

9. **aditus, -ūs** [eō, go], M., going to, access, approach. *

10. **vīnum, -ī**, N., wine. 1

lūxuria, -ae, F., luxury, high living. 1

11. **re-languēscō, -ere, languī** [langueō, be faint], *n.*, grow faint *or* weak. 1

12. **re-mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus**, *a.*, send *or* drive back, return, restore; remit, release, relax. *

13. **increpitō, -āre** [*freq. of* increpō, chide], *a.*, call *or* cry out to, chide, taunt, banter, blame. 2

incūsō, 1. [causa], *a.*, bring a charge against, complain of, upbraid, blame. 2

---

3. **auctōritāte**: for case cf. I, 6, 12.

4. **multitūdine**: for case cf. I, 1, 3; 6, 1. **sexcentōs obsidēs**: Caesar combines mercy and firmness in his treatment of the Belgae.

6. **eō locō**: Bratuspantium. **fīnēs Ambiānōrum**: north of the Bellovaci: Trace on the map Caesar's route from Berry-au-Bac to this point.

8. **Nerviī**, they occupied the basin of the Sambre River; *Bagacum*, now Bavay, was their capital.

9, 10. **nūllum** etc.; change to dir. disc. **aditum . . . mercātōribus**, *that traders had no access to them.* Cf. I, 1, 8. For case of *mercātōribus* cf. I, 7, 10. **nihil patī vīnī**: the most of the Gauls were addicted to the use of intoxicants. The temperate habits of the Nervii were a mark of their Germanic origin. **vīnī, rērum**: for case cf. 8, 8.

11. **relanguēscere**: for signif. of the ending **-scō** see on 1, 10.

13. **māgnae virtūtis**, *of great valor.* For the case see A. 215; B. 58; G. 365; H. 396 V; *B.* 203. What special use of this genitive has already occurred in 5, 21; I, 38, 1; 5, 8? Could the ablative have been used here? **increpitāre**, *they kept chiding.* For the formation and signification of *Intensives* or *Iteratives* (*Frequentatives*) see A. 167 *b*; G. 191 A, 1; H. 336; *B.* 155 2.

Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent patriamque virtūtem prōiēcissent; cōnfīrmāre sēsē neque lēgātōs mīssūrōs neque ūllam condiciōnem pācis acceptūrōs.

The Nervii encamp at the Sabis, prepared for battle.

16. Cum per eōrum fīnēs trīduum iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captīvīs Sabim flūmen ab castrīs suīs nōn amplius mīlia passuum x abesse: trāns id flūmen omnēs Nerviōs cōnsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum expectāre ūnā cum Atrebatibus et Viromanduīs, fīnitimīs suīs (nam hīs utrīsque persuāserant, utī eandem bellī fōrtūnam experīrentur); expectārī etiam ab hīs Aduātucōrum cōpiās atque esse in itinere: mulierēs, quīque per aetātem ad pūgnam inūtilēs vidērentur, in eum locum coniēcisse, quō propter palūdēs exercituī aditum nōn esset.

14. patrius, -a, -um, of a father, paternal, ancestral. 1

2. in-veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus, *a.*, come upon, find out, discover. *

Sabis, -is, M., *a tributary of the Meuse, now the* Sambre. 2

7. experior, perīrī, pertus sum, *a.*, prove, try, test, experience. *

8. aetās, aetātis [*contr. of* **aevitās,** *fr.* **aevum,** age], F., period of life, age. *

9. in-ūtilis, -e [**ūtilis,** useful], useless, worthless, unserviceable. *

---

14. dēdidissent: this verb (and *prōiēcissent* l. 15) would have the subjunctive in the direct form also: see A. 320 *e* Note; G. 626; H. 517; *B.* 283, 3, *a.*

15. cōnfīrmāre . . . mīssūrōs, *asserted that they would not* etc. Give the principal parts of **praestābat** (4), **poposcit, trāditīs, collātīs** (5), **attingēbant** (8), **quaereret** (9), **patī** (10).

1. trīduum, *for three days:* for the case cf. I, **26,** 15; **3,** 12. What other case might have been used? Cf. I, **38,** 1.

2. Sabim: see map for its course. Crossing the river Samara (Somme) at Amiens, Caesar turned to the northeast and marched to Bavay. Here he halted to ascertain the whereabouts of the Nervii. **castrīs:** at Bavay.

3, 4. trāns flūmen: i. e., on the south bank. **cōnsēdisse:** probably at Hautmont, a few miles southwest of Maubeuge.

5, 6. Atrebatibus: for case see on I, **10,** 12. **hīs utrīsque,** *both of these.* For case cf. I, **2,** 4.

7, 8. experīrentur: for mode cf. I, **2,** 4; **3,** 13. **ab hīs:** i. e., the Nervii. **quīque:** *and* (the men) *who;* sc. *eōs* (*the men*) as object of *coniēcisse* line 9. Cf. *quī* **14,** 7.

9, 10. eum locum quō, *a place where:* either Thuin, a short distance northeast of Hautmont, or Mons, ten miles north. **quō,** *to which;* the relative adverb instead of the relative pronoun with *ad* (=*ad quem*). **exercituī . . . esset:** for trans. and case cf. *mercātōribus* **15,** 10.

17. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs explōrātōrēs centuriōnēsque praemittit, quī locum idōneum castrīs dēligant. Cum ex dēditīciīs Belgīs reliquīsque Gallīs complūrēs Caesarem secūtī ūnā iter facerent, quīdam ex hīs, ut posteā ex captīvīs cōgnitum est, eōrum diērum cōnsuētūdine itineris nostrī exercitūs perspectā nocte ad Nerviōs pervēnērunt atque hīs dēmōnstrārunt inter singulās legiōnēs impedīmentōrum māgnum numerum intercēdere, neque esse quicquam negōtiī, cum prīma legiō in castra vēnisset reliquaeque legiōnēs māgnum spatium abessent, hanc sub sarcinīs adorīrī;

Plans of the Nervii.

1. **centuriō, -ōnis** [**centuria** a division of one hundred], M., a centurion, *the commander of a century;* a captain.

4. **quī-dam, quae-dam, quod-** (*subst.* **quid-**) **dam,** *indef. pron. used of that which is possible, but not clearly known;* a certain, a certain one, somebody, something: *in pl.*, some certain.

5. **cōnsuētūdō, -inis** [**cōnsuēscō,** become accustomed], F., habit, practice, custom, prevalent form *or* usage; intimacy, companionship.

---

1. **explōrātōrēs:** see on **11**, 6. **centuriōnēs:** see Int. 91–93.



Centuriō. *Lictor.*

2. **quī dēligant,** *to select:* see Int. 129. For the use of the rel. and the mode cf. I, **7**, 10. **castrīs:** for case cf. I, **1**, 10.

3, 4. dēditīciīs: what tribes had submitted? **Caesarem . . . facerent,** *followed Caesar and were marching along* (with him). **secūtī:** trans. as a coordinate verb, cf. I, **5**, 13. **facerent:** for mode cf. I, **9**, 3; II, **6**, 9.

5, 6. eōrum . . . perspectā, *having noticed our army's usual plan of march during these days.* A noticeable accumulation of genitives. **diērum** and **exercitūs** limit **itineris. cōnsuētūdine:** for order of march see Int. 140.

7. inter singulās legiōnēs, *between every two legions.* **impedīmentōrum:** see Int. 118, 119.

8, 9. neque . . . negōtiī, *and it was no trouble* (*not anything of difficulty*). For the case cf. **15**, 10; **8**, 8. **in castra:** i. e., to the place selected for the site of the camp.

quā pulsā impedīmentīsque dīreptīs futūrum, ut reliquae contrā cōnsistere nōn audērent. Adiuvābat etiam eōrum cōnsilium, quī rem dēferēbant, quod Nerviī antīquitus, cum equitātū nihil possent (neque enim ad hōc tempus eī reī student, sed quicquid possunt, pedestribus valent cōpiīs) quō facilius fīnitimōrum equitātum, sī praedandī causā ad eōs vēnissent, impedīrent, tenerīs arboribus incīsīs atque īnflexīs crēbrīsque in lātitūdinem rāmīs ēnātīs et rubīs sentibusque

11. dīripiō, -ere, ripuī, reptus [**rapiō**, seize], *a.*, rend *or* tear asunder; plunder, pillage. *

12. ad-iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtus [**iuvō**, aid], *a.*, aid, help, assist; contribute to, support. 5

15. quisquis, quaequae, quodquod *or* **quidquid,** *or* **quicquid,** *indef. pron.*, whoever, whatever, each, all. 2

pedester, -tris, -tre [**pēs**], on foot, pedestrian; **pedestrēs cōpiae,** infantry. *

16. praedor, 1. [**praeda,** booty], *a.*, make booty, plunder, rob, despoil. *

17. tener, -era, -erum, soft, tender; of tender age, young. 1

arbor, -oris, F., tree. *

incīdō, -ere, cīdī, cīsus [**caedō**, cut], *a.*, cut into, notch. 1

18. rāmus, -ī, M., branch, bough, twig. 3

ē-nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, *n.*, be born from, spring *or* sprout up. 1

rubus, -ī, M., bramble. 1

sentēs, -ium, *pl.* M., briers, thorns. 1

---

11. futūrum (*esse*) **ut,** *the result would be.*

12. adiuvābat etc., *the fact that the Nervii . . . assisted the design of those who reported the matter.* The clause *quod . . . effēcerant* (l. 19) is the subject of *adiuvābat*, which is here used impersonally.

13, 14. cum . . . possent, *since they had no strength in cavalry.* **equitātū:** for case cf. I, 1,3; **48,** 12 **nihil possent:** for trans. cf. *quid possent.* **4,** 2. **eī reī,** *this branch of the service,* i. e. cavalry. For case cf. *imperiīs* with same verb **1,** 11.

15. quicquid . . . cōpiīs, *whatever strength they have consists in infantry.* **quō** etc., *in order to check the more easily etc.* For *quō* in final clauses cf. I, **14,** 14; **8,** 7. What case is *quō?*

17. tenerīs arboribus, etc.: the trees were notched and bent when young and the branches were trained to grow out sidewise. In the spaces not filled by this method thorn-bushes were planted and by these means an impenetrable hedge was made. Napoleon remarks that hedges very similar to those here described are to be found at the present day in this part of France

interiectīs effēcerant, ut īnstar mūrī hae saepēs mūnīmenta praebērent, quō nōn modo nōn intrārī, sed nē perspicī quīdem posset. Hīs rēbus cum iter āgminis nostrī impedīrētur, nōn omittendum cōnsilium Nerviī exīstimāvērunt.

Position of the two armies.

18. Locī nātūra erat haec, quem locum nostrī castrīs dēlēgerant. Collis ab summō aequāliter dēclīvis ad flūmen Sabim, quod suprā nōmināvimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine parī acclīvitāte collis nāscēbātur, adversus huic et contrārius, passūs circiter ducentōs īnfimus

19. intericiō, -ere, iēcī, iectus [**iaciō**], *a.*, throw *or* hurl between; put, set *or* place between; interpose, interject. *

efficiō, -ere, fēcī, fectus [**faciō**], *a.*, make *or* do completely, complete, perform, accomplish, effect. *

ínstar, N., *indecl.*, likeness; *with gen.*, like, in the manner of. 1

saepēs, -is [**saepiō**, hedge in], F., hedge. 2

mūnīmentum, -ī [**mūniō**, fortify], N., fortification, bulwark, protection, defence. 1

20. praebeō, 2. [**prae** + **habeō**], *a.*, hold out, proffer, offer, furnish, present. 5

intrō, 1. *a.*, go *or* walk into, enter, penetrate. 3

22. omittō, -ere, mīsī, mīssus [**ob**], *a.*, let go *or* fall; give up, neglect; pass over, omit. 3

2. aequāliter [**aequālis**, equal], equally, uniformly, regularly, evenly. 1

3. dē-clīvis, -e [**clīvus**, a slope], sloping downwards, declining; *as subst.*, slope. 4

nōminō, 1. [**nōmen**, name], *a.*, call by name, name, mention, give a name to. 3

4. ac (ad-)clīvitās, -tātis [**acclīvis**, rising], F., a rising *or* ascending upwards, an acclivity, ascent. 1

nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, *n.*, be born *or* produced; rise, spring up, proceed. *

5. contrārius, -a, -um [**contrā**], lying over against, opposite, facing. 4

īnferus, -a, -um, below, beneath: *comp.*, **īnferior,** lower, further down, inferior: *sup.*, **īnfimus,** *or* **īmus,** lowest, at the foot *or* bottom. *

20, 21. quō . . . posset: change from the passive and impers. constr. and trans., *into which one not only could not penetrate but could not even see.* **quō** is the rel. adv. for *in quae*, cf. **16**, 10.

1. locī: on the north bank of the Samore, opposite Hautmont. **lōcum:** omit in translation; cf. I, **29**, 3; **16**, 10; **6**, 1.

2, 3. collis: called Neuf-Mesnil, on the north bank. **ab . . . dēclīvis,** *with a uniform descent from the summit.* **summō:** the abl. sing. neut. of *summus*, used as a noun.

4. parī acclīvitāte, *of equal steepness* (to that of the other hill). For the case cf. I, **6**, 12; **18**, 7. **collis:** called Hautmont, on the south bank. **huic:** the height on the Roman side of the river. **contrārius:** *parallel* to the other hill.

apertus, ā superiōre parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset. Intrā eās silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secundum flūmen paucae statiōnēs equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō circiter pedum trium.

Arrangement of the forces.

19. Caesar equitātū praemīssō subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiīs; sed ratiō ōrdōque āgminis aliter sē habēbat, āc Belgae ad Nerviōs dētulerant. Nam quod hostī appropīnquābat, cōnsuētūdine suā Caesar sex legiōnēs expedītās dūcēbat; post eās tōtīus exercitūs impedīmenta collocārat; inde duae legiōnēs, quae proxumē cōnscrīptae erant, tōtum

6. **silvestris, -e** [**silva,** forest], of a wood *or* forest, wooded, woody.
intrōrsus [*contr. of* **intrōversus**], *adv.*, into the interior, into, inside, within.
7. **occultus, -a, -um** [**occulō,** cover up], covered, concealed, secret: **in occultō** (N. *as subst.*), in a secluded *or* secret place.
8. **secundum,** *prep. with acc.* [**sequor,** follow], *of place*, by, along: *of time, rank, etc.*, after, next; *fig.*, agreeably *or* according to.
statiō, -ōnis [**stō,** stand], F., a standing *or* stationing; a military post *or* station; sentries, pickets, outposts.

2. **aliter** [**alius,** another], otherwise, in a different manner, differently; *with* **atque (āc), quīn** otherwise than, different from what.

6, 7. **apertus:** as the slope of the hill began at the river bank (cf. *ab flūmine*, etc. l. 4) this must mean that the hill was bare of trees for two hundred feet up the slope. **ut . . . posset:** for trans. cf. **17,** 20: for the mode cf. I, **6,** 5.

8, 9. **statiōnēs equitum:** these drew the attention of the Roman van away from the woods and prevented their discovery of the presence of the foe. **pedum:** for case cf. **5,** 21; I, **38,** 1; **5,** 8.

1. **praemīssō:** i. e., from Bavay. Caesar, after describing the disposition of the Nervian forces, takes up the thread of his narration of events where he had dropped it in **17,** 2.

2, 3. **omnibus cōpiīs,** *with all his troops*. The Abl. of Accompaniment often omits *cum* in military expressions: for the regular form cf. **16,** 5. **sē habēbat āc,** *was different from what the Belgae had reported to the Nervii* (lit., had itself otherwise than). For the number see on *dīvidit* I, **1,** 5. **dētulerant:** see **17,** 6 *ff.*

4. **cōnsuētūdine:** for case cf. I, **4,** 2; **44,** 7; **50,** 1. **expedītās:** see Int. 119.

6. **duae legiōnēs:** the XIIIth and XIVth, see **2,** 2; **8,** 16. As the enemy was known to be in front, the rear guard would not be brought into battle and these new legions were stationed there. On the order of march in general see Int. 140.

āgmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedīmentīs erant. Equitēs nostrī cum funditōribus sagittāriīsque flūmen trānsgressī cum hostium equitātū proelium commīsērunt. Cum sē illī identidem in silvās ad suōs reciperent āc rūrsus ex silvā in nostrōs impetum facerent, neque nostrī longius, quam quem ad fīnem porrēcta loca aperta pertinēbant, cēdentēs īnsequī audērent, interim legiōnēs sex, quae prīmae vēnerant, opere dīmēnsō castra mūnīre coepērunt. Ubi prīma impedīmenta nostrī exercitūs ab iīs, quī in silvīs abditī latēbant, vīsa sunt, quod tempus inter eōs committendī proeliī convēnerat, ut intrā silvās aciem ōrdinēsque cōnstituerant atque ipsī sēsē cōnfīrmāverant, subitō omnibus

The Nervii suddenly attack the Roman camp.

8. **trānsgredior, -ī, gressus,** *a.*, *n.*, (**trans** + **gradior**), to go *or* pass over; to cross.
10. **identidem,** again and again. 1
12. **porrigō, -ere, -rēxī, -rēctus** [**por**=**prō**+**regō**, rule] *a.*, reach *or* stretch forth, extend. 1
cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessum, to yield, withdraw, retreat, retire.
14. **dī-mētior, -īrī, mēnsus sum,** *a.*, measure out *or* off, measure. 2
16. **lateō, -ēre, -uī,** *n.*, escape notice, lurk, lie concealed *or* hidden. 2
18. **subitō** [**subitus,** sudden, *fr.* **subeō,** come up secretly from under], *adv.*, suddenly, of a sudden.*

---

7. **praesidiō, impedīmentīs:** for cases cf. I, **18**,28; **25**,6. **equitēs:** see Int. 100, 101.

8. **funditōribus, sagittāriīs:** see Int. 99.

10. **reciperent:** for the mode cf. I, 4, 9; II, **1**, 1. so *facerent* l. 11 and *audērent* l. 13.

11. **longius quam** etc., *further than the limit to which the* (*stretch of*) *open ground extended.*

12. **ad fīnem:** the antecedent attracted into the relative clause: cf. I, **40**, 29; **22**, 16; **12**, 17. From our idiom we should expect *ad fīnem ad quem.* **porrēcta,** lit. *stretched out,* agrees with *loca* and is pleonastic, having the same meaning as *pertinēbant;* it may be omitted in English or translated as above. **cēdentēs,** acc. pl., the cavalry of the enemy; trans. *as* (or *when*) *they retreated.*

14. **opere dīmēnsō,** *the work having been measured off.* What kind of a verb is the participle derived from? For its use here see on I, **11**, 10. The work had been done before the arrival of the legions. See Int. 130. **castra mūnīre:** the IXth and Xth began digging on the left of the site of the camp, the XIth and VIIIth in front and the XIIth and VIIth on the right. **prīma impedīmenta:** i. e. the head of the baggage train.

16, 17. **quod . . . convēnerat,** *the time which had been agreed on* etc. **tempus:** attracted into the relative clause very much as *fīnem* l. 12 above; trans. as if *tempus, quod etc.* For the meaning of *convēnerat* cf. I, **36**, 12. **ut intrā silvās** etc., *as they had arranged their line and ranks within the forest and had pledged each other* etc.

cōpiīs prōvolāvērunt impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. Hīs facile pulsīs āc prōturbātīs, incrēdibilī celeritāte ad flūmen dēcurrērunt, ut paene ūnō tempore ad silvās et in flūmine et iam in manibus nostrīs hostēs vidērentur. Eādem autem celeritāte adversō colle ad nostra castra atque eōs, quī in opere occupātī erant, contendērunt.

Critical condition of the Romans.

20. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: vēxillum prōpōnendum, quod erat insīgnē, cum ad arma concurrī oportēret, sīgnum tubā dandum, ab opere re-

19. prō-volō, -āre, -āvī. [**volō**, fly], *n.*, fly *or* rush forth. 1
20. prō-turbō, 1. [**turbō**, disturb], *a.*, drive in confusion, dislodge, repulse. 2.
21. dē-currō, -ere, currī (**cucurrī**), **cursus** [**currō**, run], *n.*, run from *or* away, hurry off; run down 4
2. vēxillum, -ī [*dim. of* **vēlum**], N., standard, banner, flag. 3
3. con-currō, -ere, currī, cursus [**currō**, run], *n.*, run *or* rush together, run to, hasten; rush against, charge. *
tuba, -ae, F., trumpet. 3
re-vocō, 1. *a.*, call back, recall, call off, withdraw. 5

---

21. ūnō tempore: it is estimated however, that the actual time was about twenty minutes. The Roman camp was three quarters of a mile from the river and there was some delay in fording the river. Caesar was too busy to note the flight of time.

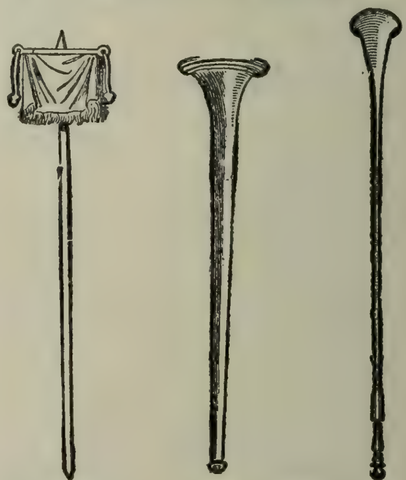
22. vidērentur, *seemed.* For the mode cf. I, **6**, 5.

23. adversō colle: *up the hill* (lit., *the hill being against them*). i. e., up the hill facing them as they dashed down to the stream. **castra:** i. e., the site of the camp.

24. opere: i. e. of fortifying the camp. **contendērunt:** the attack was a complete surprise. The Roman *speculātōrēs* had not scouted properly and Caesar himself was apparently careless in not having troops in line of battle to repel the attack, as was the usual method.

1. Caesarī: for case cf. I, **38**, 5; **37**, 9; **11**, 15. **omnia . . . erant agenda,** *Caesar had to do everything at once.* Supply *erat* or *erant* with each of the following nominatives, thus completing the second periphrastic conjugation.

2. vēxillum: see Int. 123.



Vēxillum. *Tubae.*

3. sīgnum tubā dandum (*erat*) *the signal* (to form ranks) *had to be given with the trumpet.* **opere** in the meaning of **19, 24.**

vocandī mīlitēs, quī paulō longius aggeris petendī causā prōcesserant, arcessendī, aciēs īnstruenda, mīlitēs cohortandī, sīgnum dandum. Quārum rērum māgnam partem temporis brevitās et successus hostium impediēbat. Hīs difficultātibus duae rēs erant subsidiō, scientia atque ūsus mīlitum, quod superiōribus proeliīs exercitātī, quid fierī oportēret, nōn minus commodē ipsī sibi praescrībere, quam ab aliīs docērī poterant, et quod ab opere singulīsque legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs Caesar discēdere nisi mūnītīs castrīs vetuerat. Hī propter propīnquitātem et celeritātem hostium

Value of their discipline.

4. **paulō,** *adv.* [**paulus,** little], a little, somewhat. *
prō-cēdō, -ere, cessī, *n.*, go forward, advance, proceed. *
5. **arcessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus** [**ar** = **ad** + **cēdō**], *a.*, cause to approach, call for, summon. *
7. **brevitās, -tātis** [**brevis,** short], F., shortness, brevity. 2
successus, -ūs [**succēdō**], M., an advance, approach, onset. 1
difficultās -tātis [**difficilis,** difficult], F., difficulty, trouble, embarrassment. *
8. **scientia, -ae** [**sciō,** know], F., knowledge, science, skill, expertness. *
9. **exercitātus, -a, -um** [*p. p. of* **exercitō,** train *or* practise well], well trained, practised, skilled, versed. 2
10. **prae-scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus,** *a.*, *n.*, write beforehand; order, direct, prescribe. 4
13. **vetō, -āre, -uī, -itus,** *a.*, forbid. 3

4. **paulō longius,** *a little too far;* the soldiers often had some distance to go to procure timbers, etc. **paulō:** for case cf. I, **16,** 18; **14,** 3; **14,** 1. **aggeris:** here the *materials* used in the building of the rampart. See Int. 131; also vertical section of *agger*, p. 216.

5. **cohortandī:** this was always attended to, if possible.

6. **sīgnum dandum:** here the signal for the attack, made by the horns and trumpets together.

7. **brevitās:** the time was indeed scant for getting into line of battle 30,000 men, many at a distance, all with helmets and arms laid aside, busily engaged in the work of fortification.

8 **duae rēs:** first, the training of the soldiers; second, the assigning of a *lēgātus* to each legion. **subsidiō:** for case cf. I, **18,** 28. **atque,** *and also*, cf. **8,** 6, shows that **ūsus,** *experience*, was more valued by Caesar than **scientia,** *knowledge* (of military tactics).

9–11. **quid fierī oportēret,** *what ought to be done.* For the mode cf. I, **12,**3; II,**4,**13. **nōn . . . poterant:** English order *ipsī poterant praescrībere sibi nōn minus commodē quam docērī ab aliīs.* **praescrībere:** this is high praise, but well deserved.

12. **singulōs lēgātōs:** see I, **52,** 1, for a similar instance. The fact is here mentioned by Caesar because the *lēgātī* at this time did not have permanent commands; see Int. 95. **nisi** etc., *until the camp had been fortified;* lit. *unless* (they departed) *after the camp* etc. **castrīs:** for case cf. I, **2,** 2.

nihil iam Caesaris imperium exspectābant, sed per sē quae vidēbantur administrābant.

Caesar hastily rallies and directs his troops.

21. Caesar, necessāriīs rēbus imperātīs, ad cohortandōs mīlitēs, quam in partem fōrs obtulit, dēcucurrit et ad legiōnem decimam dēvēnit. Mīlitēs nōn longiōre ōrātiōne cohortātus, quam utī suae prīstinae virtūtis memoriam retinērent neu perturbārentur animō hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinērent, quod nōn longius hostēs aberant, quam quō tēlum adigī posset, proeliī committendī sīgnum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandī causā

15. **administrō**, 1. *a.*, to serve, attend, wait upon, manage, guide. *

2. **fōrs, fōrtis** [ferō], F., chance: **fōrte**, *abl. as adv.*, by chance, perchance. 5

offerō (obf-), offerre, obtulī, oblātus, *a.*, bring in one's way, present, offer, exhibit; proffer, bestow. *

3. **decimus, -a, -um**, *ord. num.*, [decem], tenth. *

dē-veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus, *n.*, come down, go *or* come to. 2

5. **neu, (nēve)** *conj.* [nē + ve, or], and not, nor; **nēve (neu) . . . nēve**, neither . . . nor. *

7. **adigō, -ere, ēgī, āctus** [agō], *a.*, drive *or* bring by force; thrust, plunge (*of weapons*); bind (*by an oath*). *

14, 15. **per sē**: usually the *lēgātī* undertook no independent operations. **quae vidēbantur**, *whatever seemed proper.*

1. **necessāriīs**: such as recalling the distant soldiers and forming all in line of battle.

2. **cohortandōs**: no formal harangue was possible, so Caesar hurried from place to place giving such encouragement as the time permitted. **quam in partem** etc., *to that part* (of his troops) *which chance brought in his way; quam in partem* = *in* (eam) *partem, quam.*

3. **ad legiōnem decimam**: Caesar's favorite legion: see I, **40**, 49. It was on the extreme left of the line. Next to it was the IXth, then the XIth, VIIIth, XIIth, and lastly the VIIth, on the extreme right.

4. **longiōre** etc., *with a speech no longer than* (*this:*) *that they should* etc. **virtūtis**: for case cf. *iniūriārum* I, **14**, 8.

5. **retinērent, perturbārentur**: subj. of purpose, standing for imperatives in his actual speech. So **sustinērent** in l. 6.

6, 7. **quod . . . aberant**, gives the reason for the following *sīgnum dedit.* **quam quō** etc., *than* (the distance) *to which* (**quō**) *a pike could be thrown.* The adverb is often used for a pronoun (in the acc.) with a preposition: cf. **17**, 20; **16**, 10. Here it stands for *quem ad fīnem:* cf. **19**, 11. The distance was about 60 feet. **posset**, is subj. of characteristic.

8. **alteram partem**: to the right wing.

profectus pūgnantibus occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit exiguitās hostiumque tam parātus ad dīmicandum animus, ut nōn modo ad īnsīgnia accommodanda, sēd etiam ad galeās induendās scūtīsque tegimenta dētrūdenda tempus dēfuerit. Quam quisque ab opere in partem cāsū dēvēnit quaeque prīma sīgna cōnspēxit, ad haec cōnstitit, nē in quaerendīs suīs pūgnandī tempus dīmitteret.

The result, at first, indecisive.

22. Instrūctō exercitū, magis ut locī nātūra dēiectusque collis et necessitās temporis, quam ut

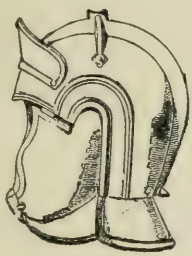
9. **oc-currō, -ere, currī (cucurrī), cursus** [**ob + currō**, run], *n.*, run in the way of, run to meet, meet; happen upon, encounter; suggest itself, occur, oppose. *

exiguitās, -tātis [**exiguus**, scant], F., scantiness, meagerness, want. 5

10. **dī-micō**, 1. [**micō**, brandish], *n.*, brandish (*one's weapons*) in different directions; *hence* fight, struggle, contend. *



Galea.



Cassis.

11. **galea, -ae**, F., a helmet (*usually of leather strengthened with brass*). *The* **cassis**, *for horsemen, was of metal.* 1

accommodō (adc-), 1. [**commodō**, adjust], *a.*, adjust *or* adapt to one's self, fit *or* put on. 2

in-duō, -ere, duī, dūtus, *a.*, put on: **sē induere**, fall into *or* upon, become entangled in. 3

12. **tegimentum, -ī** [**tegō**, cover], N., a covering. 2

dē-trūdō, -ere, -sī, -sus [**trūdō**, thrust], *a.*, thrust from *or* off, strip off, remove. 1

dē-sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *n.*, be from, lacking *or* wanting, fail. *

14. **cōnspiciō, -ere, spēxī, spectus** [**speciō**, look], *a.*, look attentively, observe, descry, perceive. *

---

9. **pūgnantibus:** *he finds them* (already) *fighting.* For the case cf. I, 2, 5; II, 9, 11.

11. **īnsīgnia:** the ornaments on the helmets, etc., to distinguish the officers and perhaps the several legions. **galeās induendās:** they would be laid aside while the soldiers were working on the fortifications.

12. **scūtīs:** for case cf. I, 1, 14; 8, 16. **tegimenta:** leather coverings for the protection of the metal work of the shields. These were removed before the soldiers went into action.

13. **quam in partem,** *to whatever division each man came* etc.

14. **suīs:** sc. *sīgnīs.*

1. **ut:** adv. or conj.? Cf. I, 4, 11; 22, 3.

reī mīlitāris ratiō atque ōrdō postulābat, cum dīversae legiōnēs aliae aliā in parte hostibus resisterent, saepibusque dēnsissimīs, ut ante dēmōnstrāvimus, interiectīs prōspectus impedīrētur, neque certa subsidia collocārī neque, quid in quāque parte opus esset, prōviderī neque ab ūnō omnia imperia administrārī poterant. Itaque in tantā rērum inīquitāte fōrtūnae quoque ēventūs variī sequēbantur.

The Nervii attack the exposed Roman camp.

23. Legiōnis nōnae et decimae mīlitēs, ut in sinistrā parte aciē cōnstiterant pīlīs ēmīssīs cursū

3. **dīversus, -a, -um** [*p. p. of* **dīvertō,** turn in different directions], facing different ways, opposite, contrary; diverse, different. *

5. **dēnsus, -a, -um,** closely set *or* packed, thick, dense. 4

prōspectus, -ūs [**prōspiciō,** look forth], M., a lookout, view, prospect. 3

7. **prō-videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus** [**videō,** see], *a.*, *n.*, see beforehand, foresee, care for, provide. *

9. **inīquitās, -tātis** [**aequus,** equal], F., unevenness; unfairness, unfavorable position. *

ēventus, -ūs [**veniō,** come], M., out-come, issue, result, consequence. *

varius, -a, -um [*cf.* **vertō**], variegated, diverse; changing, manifold, various. 2

1. **nōnus, -a, -um** [**novem**], ninth. *

2. **cursus, -ūs** [**currō,** run], M., running, speed; course: **cursum adaequāre,** keep up with: **māgnō (incitātō) cursū,** at full speed: **cursum tenēre,** keep a straight course. *

---

3. **cum** etc., *since the legions were resisting the enemy separately, some in one place, others in another.* **dīversae,** for the adjective (*separate*) translated by the adverb (*separately*) see A. 191; B. 18; G. 325 R. 6; H. 443. *B.* 239.

4. **aliae,** for its elliptical use see on I, **39,** 12; **saepibus** etc., *by the interposition of very thick hedges* etc.

5. **ut,** as in l. 1 above. **ante:** see **17,** 17-21.

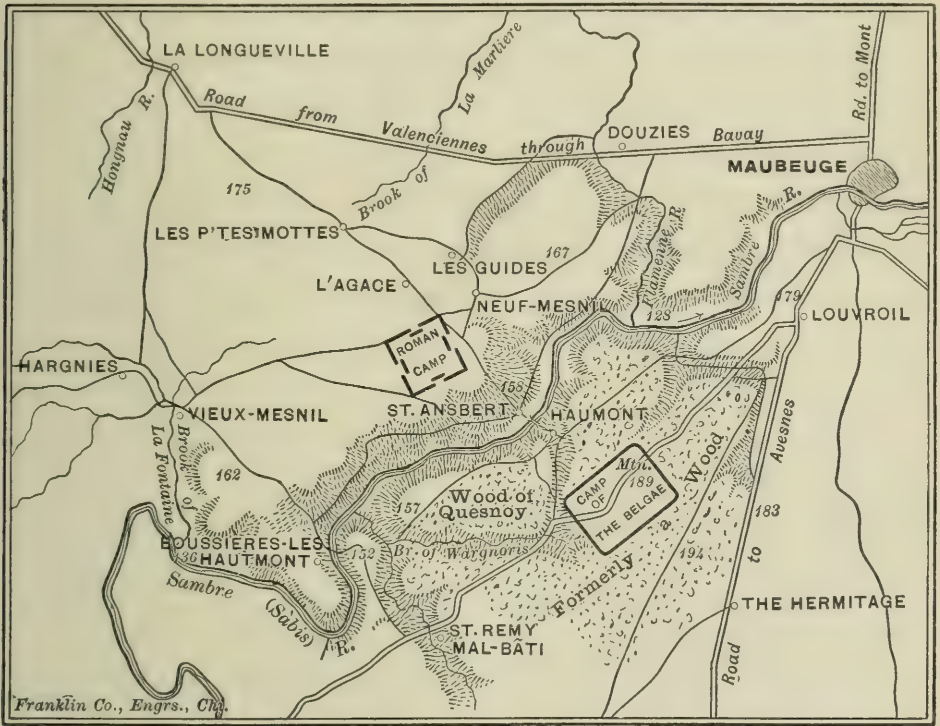
6. **certa subsidia,** *the reserves could not be stationed definitely* (=in definite places). For the adverbial force of the adj., see on l. 3. **subsidia, collocārī:** i. e., the regular reserve could not be stationed so as to be counted on with certainty for needed aid.

7, 8. **prōviderī, administrārī:** the intervening hedges made it impossible for the commander (**ab ūnō**) to exercise any general oversight. **tantā,** *such.* The narrative in resumed from *sīgnum dedit,* **21,** 7, 8.

1. **nōnae et decimae:** Labienus was in command of these legions.

2. **aciē**=*aciēī;* A. 74 *a*; G. 69, 2; H. 120; *B.* 52, 3. **pīlīs ēmīssīs:** see Int. 149. **cursū:** they had run as much as a mile, besides fording the river.

āc lassitūdine exanimātōs vulneribusque cōnfectōs Atrebatēs (nam hīs ea pars obvēnerat) celeriter ex locō supe-



BATTLE ON THE SAMBRE (SABIS)

riōre in flūmen compulērunt et trānsīre cōnantēs īnsecūtī gladiīs māgnam partem eōrum impedītam interfēcērunt. Ip-

3. **lassitūdō, -inis,** [**lassus,** weary], F., weariness, faintness, exhaustion, lassitude. 2

exanimō, 1. [**animus,** breath], *a.*, deprive of breath *or* life, render breathless, exhaust: *in p. p. as adj.*, breathless, exhausted. *

4. **ob-veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus** [**veniō,** come], *n.*, come in the way, come to, meet; fall to one's lot. 3

5. **compellō, -ere, pulī, pulsum** [**con**+**pellō**], to drive together, assemble, collect; to force, compel, constrain. *

---

3. **exanimātōs,** *breathless.* Construe with *Atrebatēs,* the obj. of *compulērunt.*

4. **hīs:** the Atrebates. **ea pars:** the Roman left wing.

5. **cōnantēs:** introduce with 'as': *as they* (the Atrebates) *were attempting.*

6. **ipsī:** the soldiers under Labienus.

sī trānsīre flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt et in locum inīquum prōgressī rūrsus resistentēs hostēs redintegrātō proeliō in fugam coniēcērunt. Item aliā in parte dīversae duae legiōnēs, ūndecima et octāva, prōflīgātīs Viromanduīs, quibuscum erant congressī, ex locō superiōre, in ipsīs flūminis rīpīs proeliābantur. At tōtīs ferē ā frōnte et ab sinistrā parte nūdātīs castrīs, cum in dextrō cornū legiō duodecima et nōn māgnō ab eā intervāllō septima cōnstitisset, omnēs Nerviī cōnfertissimō āgmine duce Boduōgnātō, quī summam imperiī tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt; quōrum pars ab apertō latere legiō-

9. **ūndecimus, -a, -um** [ūnus], eleventh. 2.
10. **octāvus, -a, -um,** [octō], eighth. 2
prō-flīgō, 1. [*obsol.* **flīgō**, strike], *a.*, strike to the ground; overcome; put to flight. 2
11. **congredior, gredī, gressus sum** [**gradior**, step], *a.*, *n.*, step *or* come together, meet, encounter; engage in conflict, contend. *
proelior, 1. [**proelium**, battle], *n.*, join *or* engage in battle, fight. *
12. **at** [*cf.* **atque**] *conj.*, (*strongly adversative*) but, yet, on the other hand, at least. *
13. **dexter, -tera, (-tra), -terum (-trum)**, on the right hand. *
cornū, -ūs, N., a horn; the wing (*of an army*). *
duodecimus, -a, -um [**duodecim**], twelfth. 3.
15. **Boduōgnātus, -ī**, M., *a leader of the Nervii.* 1

---

7. **locum inīquum:** the slope of the hill of Hautmont up which they were charging. This gave the enemy the advantage in position and they quickly utilized it (*rūrsus resistentēs*).

8. **resistentēs:** see on *cōnantēs*, line 5. **in fugam:** the Romans drove the Atrebates back through the forest on the hill of Hautmont and captured the Belgian camp.

9. **dīversae:** connect with *proeliābantur* l. 11 and translate as in 22, 3. These legions held the centre of the Roman line (*aliā in parte*).

11. **ex locō superiōre:** construe with *prōflīgātīs*. **proeliābantur,** *were still fighting.*

12. **ā frōnte:** by the advance of the XIIth and VIIIth legions. **ab sinistrā parte:** by the advance of the troops under Labienus. **tōtīs nūdātīs castrīs:** trans. as a Causal Clause. **ā, ab,** *in, on.*

13, 14. **cum . . . cōnstitisset,** *since . . . had taken its* (*their*) *stand.* **intervāllō,** *at no great distance.* **omnēs Nerviī:** 60,000 in number.

15. **duce,** *under the leadership of.* **summam imperiī,** *the chief command.* What part of speech is *summam* here? *summum* l. 17?

16. **ab . . . latere,** *on the* (left) *flank left exposed* (by the withdrawal of the IXth and Xth legions). **apertō latere:** the Nervii crossed the stream, scaled the steep bank and swept around the right flank of the Roman right wing.

nēs cīrcumvenīre, pars summum castrōrum locum petere coepit.

They get possession of the camp. Flight of the Roman auxiliaries.

24. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī levisque armātūrae peditēs, quī cum iīs ūnā fuerant, quōs prīmō hostium impetū pulsōs dīxeram, cum sē in castra reciperent, adversīs hostibus occurrēbant āc rūrsus aliam in partem fugam petēbant, et cālōnēs, quī ab decumānā portā āc summō iugō collis nostrōs vīctōrēs flūmen trānsīsse cōnspēxerant, praedandī causā ēgressī, cum respēxissent et hostēs in nostrīs castrīs versārī vīdissent, praecipitēs fugae sēsē mandābant. Simul eōrum, quī cum impedīmentīs veniēbant, clāmor fremitusque oriēbātur, aliīque aliam in partem

2. **pedes, -itis** [pēs, foot], M., footman, foot soldier: *in pl.* footmen, infantry. *

5. **cālō, -ōnis** [cāla, a log of wood], M., a soldier's servant, camp porter *or* follower. *

decumānus, -a, -um [decimus, tenth], of *or* pertaining to the tenth; decuman: **decumāna porta,** the rear gate. 3

6. **porta, -ae,** F., a gate, entrance. *

6. **vīctor, -ōris** [vincō, conquer] M., one who conquers, victor. *

7. **respiciō, -ere, spēxī, spectus** [*obsol.*, speciō, look], *a.*, look back *or* about; have respect to, regard. 4

8. **praeceps, -cipitis** [caput, head], headforemost, headlong; steep, precipitous; hasty, precipitate. 3

10. **fremitus, -ūs** [fremō, murmur], M., murmuring, a confused noise, din. 3

---

17. **summum locum:** the height on which the camp was situated. **petere coepit,** *tried to reach.*

1, 2. **equitēs:** see Int. 100, 101. **levis armātūrae peditēs:** i.e. the slingers and bowmen, cf. **19,** 8. **iīs:** refers to *equitēs.* **fuerant:** prior to their repulse. **quōs**=*equitēs et peditēs.*

3. **dīxeram:** see **19,** 20.

4. **adversīs hostibus:** the Roman auxiliaries may have taken a circuitous route back to the camp. At any rate they entered it from the left side just as the Nervii, who had turned the Roman right flank, poured into it from the right.

5, 6. **fugam petēbānt,** *took flight.* **cālōnēs:** see Int. 102. **decumānā portā:** see Int. 132 and plan of Roman camp, p. 30. **summō iugō:** i. e. the rear of the camp was higher than the front; see Int. 129. **vīctōrēs,** *as victors,* in predicate relation with *nostrōs.*

8. **versārī,** *were busy.*

9. **eōrum:** the muleteers. It cannot refer to the soldiers of the XIIIth and XIVth legions, who had not yet arrived upon the scene.

10, 11. **aliīque . . . ferēbantur,** *and fled* (were carried) *in great terror* (thoroughly terrified) *in all*

perterritī ferēbantur. Quibus omnibus rēbus permōtī equitēs Trēverī, quōrum inter Gallōs virtūtis opīniō est singulāris, quī auxiliī causā ab cīvitāte ad Caesarem mīssī vēnerant, cum multitūdine hostium castra complērī nostra, legiōnēs premī et paene circumventās tenērī, cālōnēs, equitēs, funditōrēs, Numidās dīversōs dissipātōsque in omnēs partēs fugere vīdissent, dēspērātīs nostrīs rēbus domum contendērunt; Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castrīs impedīmentīsque eōrum hostēs potītōs cīvitātī renūntiāvērunt.

In their desperate situation, the Romans are reanimated by Caesar's valor.

25. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum cornū profectus, ubi suōs urgērī sīgnīsque in ūnum locum collātīs duodecimae legiōnis cōnfertōs mīlitēs sibi ipsōs ad pūgnam esse impe-

12. **Trēverī** (irī), **-ōrum**, M., *a Gallic people on the Moselle about the modern* Treves. *
singulāris, -e [singulī], one at a time, one by one, single, alone; singular, unique, remarkable, extraordinary, matchless. *
14. **com-pleō, -ēre, plēvī, plētus** [pleō, fill], *a.*, fill up *or* completely; finish, complete. *
15. **premō, -ere, pressī, pressus** *a.*, press, oppress, harass; press upon, press hard. *
16. **dis-sipō,** 1. [*obsol.* **supō** = **iaciō**], *a.*, spread on all sides, scatter, disperse. 3

1. **cohortātiō, -ōnis** [**cohortor,** exhort], F., exhortation, encouragement, cheering. 1
2. **urgeō** (**urgueō**), **-ēre, ursī,** *a.*, press, press hard, impel, urge. 2

directions or *some in one direction* etc. For trans. of forms of *alius* cf. **22**, 4; I, **39**, 12.

12. **virtūtis opīniō,** *reputation for bravery.* **virtūtis:** for case cf. I, **4**, 4.

13. **ab cīvitāte mīssī:** Caesar obtained most of his cavalry in this way: see Int. 100.

16. **Numidās:** see **19**, 8. **dīversōs dissipātōsque,** *separated and scattered.*

17. **domum:** for case cf. I, **54**, 2; **5**, 7.

18. **pulsōs, superātōs:** why sc. *esse?* **castrīs, impedīmentīs:** for case cf. I, **30**, 8; **2**, 6.

Caesar resumes the narrative of the main action of the battle.

1–15. **Caesar . . . prōcessit:** note the periodic structure of the Latin sentences, bringing into view the various circumstances of the action before the result is announced. The long sentence with numerous particulars well represents the rapid succession of events.

1. **cohortātiōne:** see **21**, 3 *ff.* and Int. 148.

2, 3. **sīgnīs collātīs:** the standards by which the different maniples and cohorts were kept at their proper distances were too close together, hence the soldiers were too much crowded to fight effectively. **urgērī,** *overpowered.*

4. **sibi . . . impedīmentō,** *were*

dīmentō vīdit, quartae cohortis omnibus centuriōnibus occīsīs sīgniferōque interfectō, sīgnō āmīssō, reliquārum cohortium omnibus ferē centuriōnibus aut vulnerātīs aut occīsīs, in hīs prīmipīlō P. Sextiō Baculō, fortissimō virō, multīs gravibusque vulneribus cōnfectō, ut iam sē sustinēre nōn posset, reli-

5. **quartus, -a, -um** [quattuor], fourth. *

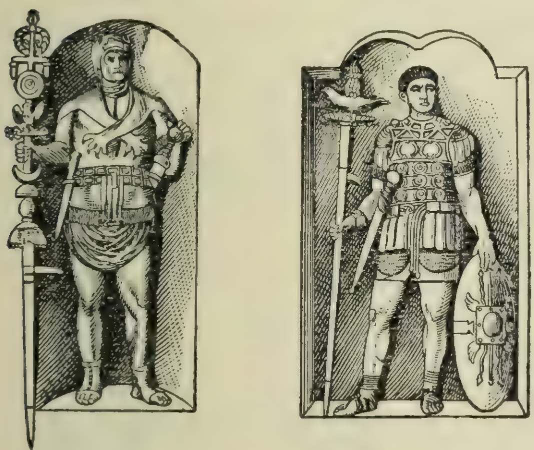
6. **sīgnifer, -ī** [sīgnum + ferō], M., standard-bearer. 1

8. **prīmipīlus, -ī** [prīmus + pīlus, a century *or* maniple], M., the first *or* chief centurion. 4

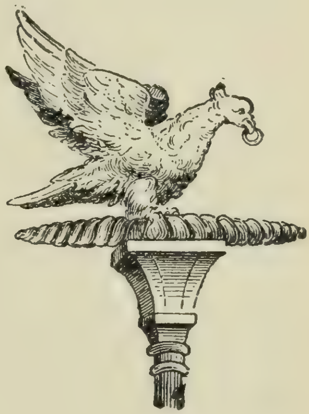
Sextius, -ī, M., *a Roman gentile name. E. g.*, (1) Titus Sextius, *one of Caesar's lieutenants.* (2) P. Sextius Baculus, *a centurion.* *

Baculus, -ī [baculum, a staff], M., *cognomen of* Publius Sextius, *a centurion of Caesar's army.* 2

vir, virī, M., man; husband; a man of distinction *or* honor: cf. **homō,** a human being; generic man. *



Sīgniferī.



Aquila.

a hindrance to one another. For the cases cf. I, **18,** 28; **25,** 6.

5. **quartae cohortis**: this was the one farthest to the left in the front line and suffered the heaviest loss. **omnibus centuriōnibus**: see Int. 91–93. How many centurions were there in a cohort?

6. **sīgniferō**: see Int. 122. **sīgnō**: that of the first maniple: see Int. 122.

7. **centuriōnibus occīsīs** etc: translate these absolute constructions as if the Acc. with the infin. after *vīdit*.

8. **prīmipīlō**: see Int. 92. **Baculō**: he appears again in the next campaign.

quōs esse tardiōrēs et nōnnūllōs ab novissimīs dēsertō locō proeliō excēdere āc tēla vītāre, hostīs neque ā frōnte ex īnferiōre locō subeuntēs intermittere et ab utrōque latere īnstāre et rem esse in angustō vīdit neque ūllum esse subsidium, quod submittī posset, scūtō ab novissimīs mīlitī dētractō, quod ipse eō sine scūtō vēnerat, in prīmam aciem prōcessit centuriōnibusque nōminātim appellātīs reliquōs cohortātus mīlitēs sīgna īnferre et manipulōs laxāre iussit, quō facilius

10. **tardus, -a, -um,** tardy, sluggish, slow. 2

dē-serō, -ere, seruī, sertus [serō, join], *a.*, disjoin; abandon, forsake, desert. *

11. **ex-cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus** [cēdō, go], *n.*, go out *or* away, withdraw, retire. *

14. **dē-trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractus** [trahō, draw *or* drag], draw off, take away; take off, remove; disparage, detract. 5

17. **manipulus, -ī,** [manus+pleō, fill], M., a handfull (*of hay, about a pole, anciently used as a standard*), a company (*of two centuries, the third of a cohort*), maniple. 3

laxō, 1. *a.*, *n.*, stretch out, extend, open; loose, relax. 1

---

10. **tardiōrēs:** for trans. of the Comparative see on I, **14,** 16. **ab novissimīs,** *in the rear.* **dēsertō locō,** *leaving their posts.*

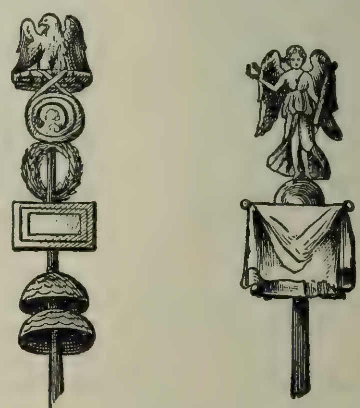
11. **hostīs** etc., *that the enemy did not stop their advance* (*coming up*) . . . *and were pressing on both flanks and affairs were in a critical situation.* **ā frōnte:** construe with *intermittere.* **ex īnferiōre locō:** the lower ground in front of the Roman position.

12. **utrōque latere:** i. e., both flanks had been turned by the Nervii.

13. **vīdit:** a repetition of *vīdit* in line 4 because of the length of the sentence. **subsidium:** usually the third line of cohorts formed the reserve but on this occasion all the soldiers were forced to defend themselves and no reserve was possible.

14. **ab novissimīs:** as in l. 10, above. **mīlitī:** for case cf. I, **43,** 23; **17,** 9.

15. **prīmam aciem:** i. e., the first line of cohorts: see Int. 145.



Sīgna.

17. **sīgna īnferre:** see Int. 124. **manipulōs laxāre:** see Int. 145. By assuming the offensive the soldiers could get space in which to use the *gladius.* **quō:** for use cf. I, **8,** 7.

gladiīs ūtī possent. Cūius adventū spē illātā mīlitibus āc redintegrātō animō, cum prō sē quisque in cōnspectū imperātōris etiam in extrēmīs suīs rēbus operam nāvāre cuperet, paulum hostium impetus tardātus est.

The Romans begin to act on the offensive.

26. Caesar cum septimam legiōnem, quae iūxtā cōnstiterat, item urgērī ab hoste vīdisset, tribūnōs mīlitum monuit, ut paulātim sēsē legiōnēs coniungerent et conversa sīgna in hostēs īnferrent. Quō factō, cum alius aliī subsidium ferret, neque timērent, nē āversī ab hoste circumvenīrentur, audācius resistere āc fortius pūgnāre coepērunt. Interim mīlitēs legiōnum duārum, quae in novissimō āgmine praesidiō impedīmentīs fuerant, proeliō nūntiātō cursū incitātō in summō colle ab hostibus cōnspiciēbantur, et T. Labiēnus castrīs hostium potītus

They are reinforced by the reserves.

19. **imperātor, -ōris** [**īmperō**, command], M., commander-in-chief, general. *
20. **opera, -ae** [*fem. of* **opus**, work], F., work, service, pains, attention. *
nāvō, 1. [**nāvus**, zealous], *a.*, do *or* perform zealously, act with energy. 1
21. **paulum,** *adv.* [**paulus,** little], a little, somewhat. *
tardō, 1. [**tardus,** slow], *a.*, make slow, hinder, obstruct, check. *

1. **iūxtā**, *adv.*, [**iūgis,** joined + **ista**], next, next to, near, near by. 1
2. **tribūnus, -ī** [**trībus,** a tribe], M., a tribune, *an officer in the Roman army.* *

18, 19. **gladiīs:** for case cf. I, 2 6; II, 3, 12. **cūius adventū:** see Int. 54. **spē . . . animō,** *hope was inspired and courage renewed.*

20. **etiam . . . cuperet,** *even at the greatest personal risk, desired to do his part well.*

1. **iūxtā:** sc. *duodecimam legiōnem.*

2, 3. **tribūnōs mīlitum:** see Int. 89-90. **coniungerent:** so that the two legions might support each other. For mode cf. I, 2, 4; II, 12, 15. The clause is a secondary acc. after *monuit.*

4. **conversa sīgna:** this probably means that the two legions were placed back to back. **quō factō:** i. e., *conversīs sīgnīs.* **alius** etc., cf. 24, 10; 22, 4.

5. **nē:** for trans. cf. I, 27, 10; 19, 11. **timērent:** plural to agree with *mīlitēs* implied in *alius.* **āversī:** i. e., with their backs turned towards the foe.

7. **duārum:** the XIIIth and XIVth: see note on 19, 6.

9. **cursū incitātō,** *moving more rapidly.* **summō colle:** on the higher ground behind the camp. **T. Labiēnus:** see note on 23, 1.

et ex locō superiōre, quae rēs in nostrīs castrīs gererentur, cōnspicātus, decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostrīs mīsit. Quī cum ex equitum et cālōnum fugā, quō in locō rēs esset, quantōque in perīculō et castra et legiōnēs et imperātor versārētur, cōgnōvissent, nihil ad celeritātem sibi reliquī fēcērunt.

The Nervii, after a desperate conflict, are beaten with great slaughter.

27. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commutātiō est facta, ut nostrī etiam quī vulneribus cōnfectī prōcubuissent, scūtīs innīxī proelium redintegrārent; tum cālōnēs perterritōs hostēs cōnspicātī etiam inermēs armātīs occurrērunt, equitēs vērō, ut turpitūdinem fugae virtūte

2. **prōcumbō, -ere, cubuī, cubitum** [**cubō**, lie down], *n.*, lean *or* fall forwards, sink *or* lie down, fall. 5

3. **in-nītor, -ī, nīsus (nīxus) sum** [**nītor**, lean upon], lean *or* rest upon, support one's self. 1

4. **inermis, -e** [**arma**, arms], without arms *or* weapons, unarmed. 3

5. **turpitūdō, -inis** [**turpis**, ugly, disgraceful], F., ugliness; baseness, disgrace, infamy. 1

---

11. **locō superiōre:** on the hill of Hautmont, where the Belgian camp was situated: see on **18**, 4. **gererentur**, cf. I, **12**, 3.

12. **quī:** the soldiers of the tenth legion.

15. **nihil . . . fēcērunt,** *they made all possible haste* (lit. *nothing of a remainder in regard to quickness*). **reliquī:** for case cf. **17**, 9; **15**, 10; **8**, 8. **celeritātem:** about how far did the tenth legion have to go? See note on **19**, 21. It fell upon the rear of the Nervii.

1. **adventū,** *appearance.* For the case cf. **1**, 15; I, **18**, 23.

2. **quī:** what is supplied? Cf. I, **21**, 4; **17**, 2. **vulneribus cōnfectī:** stronger than *vulnerātī.*

3. **scūtīs:** for case see on I, **13**, 17.

5. **armātīs:** for case cf. I, **2**, 5; II, **10**, 18.



Legionārius.

dēlērent, omnibus in locīs pūgnārunt, quō sē legiōnāriīs mīlitibus praeferrent. At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salūtis tantam virtūtem praestitērunt, ut, cum prīmī eōrum cecidissent, proximī iacentibus īnsisterent atque ex eōrum corporibus pūgnārent; hīs dēiectīs et coacervātīs cadāveribus, quī superessent, ut ex tumulō tēla in nostrōs conicerent et pīla intercepta remitterent: ut nōn nēquīquam tantae virtūtis hominēs iūdicārī dēbēret ausōs esse trānsīre lātissimum flūmen, ascendere

6. dēleō, -ēre, lēvī, lētus [**linō**, rub over], *a.*, rub out, efface, destroy, annihilate. *

legiōnārius, -a, -um [**legiō**], of *or* pertaining to the legion, legionary: *pl. as subst.* legionary soldiers. *

7. prae-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus [**prae+ferō**], *a.*, place before, esteem above, prefer to (**quam**): **sē alicui** (*show one's self better than*). 2

9. iaceō, -ēre, uī, *n.*, lie, be prostrate, be slain.

īn-sistō, -ere, stitī [**sistō**, place, stand], *a.*, *n.*, stand upon; stand firm; press on, pursue. *

10. coacervō, 1. [**acervō**, heap up], *a.*, heap *or* mass together, pile one upon another. 2.

cadāver, -eris [**cadō**, fall], N., a fallen *or* dead body, carcass, corpse. 2

11. tumulus, -ī, [**tumeō**, swell], M., swelling, mound, hill. *

intercipiō, -ere, cēpī, ceptus [**capiō**, take], *a.*, take *or* catch between (*one point and another*); interrupt, intercept, cut off. 4.

12. nē-quīquam (quic(d)quam), *adv.*, [**qui(d)quam**, any one, anything], not in any way, in vain, to no purpose. 1.

6, 7. omnibus in locīs: the ground was unfavorable for cavalry fighting, a fact which made the valor of the horsemen the more conspicuous. **quō . . . praeferrent,** *to prove themselves superior to the legionaries*; for mode cf. I, **8**, 7; **14**, 14; notice that *praeferrent* implies comparison (see the translation) and hence *quō* is used instead of *ut*. **legiōnāriīs**: for the significance of the adj. ending **-ārius** (*-āris*), English *-ary*, see A. 164 *h;* G. 189, 44; H. 330; *B.* 151 2.

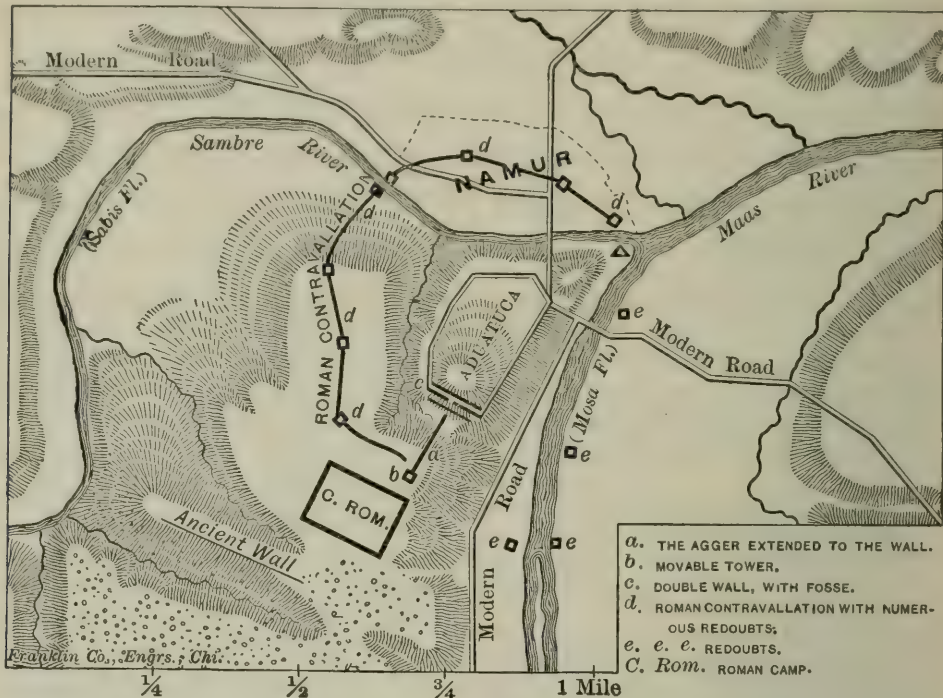
9. proximī . . . īnsisterent, *those who were nearest stood on those who were prostrate.* For the Dat. cf. l. 5 above. **ex corporibus**: i. e., from the tops of the heaps of dead bodies.

10. hīs dēiectīs, *when these* (**proximī**) *were cut down.* **quī,** (*that those*) *who survived threw their spears at our men as from a hill.* Before *quī* repeat *ut* (l. 8) and supply the antecedent *eī*, cf. l. 2.

11. ut: the adv. **tumulō**: formed by the dead bodies. **pīla**: see Int. 110, 111.

12, 13. ut iūdicārī dēbēret, *so that it ought not to be considered.* **tantae virtūtis,** *of such valor.* For the Gen. see on **15**, 13.

altissimās rīpās, subīre inīquissimum locum; quae facilia ex difficillimīs animī māgnitūdō redēgerat.



The survivors submit to Caesar.

28. Hōc proeliō factō et prope ad interneciōnem gente āc nōmine Nerviōrum redāctō māiōrēs nātū, quōs ūnā cum puerīs mulieribusque in aestuāria āc palūdēs coniectōs dīxerāmus, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā, cum vīctōribus nihil impedītum, vīctīs nihil tūtum arbitrārentur, omni-

2. **gēns, gentis** [**genō**, *old form of* **gīgnō**, beget], F., race; clan, tribe, people. *

3. **aestuārium, -ī** [**aestus**, an undulating], N., low marsh-land, tidal inlet, estuary, marsh. 2

14, 15. altissimās: the north bank of the Sambre has a steep slope of from 20 to 30 feet at the point where the Nervii crossed it. **inīquissimum:** the slope of the hill on which the Romans were posted. **quae facilia redēgerat,** *had rendered these* (bold deeds) *easy.* **ex,** *from having been*, a common meaning with adjectives.

1, 2. hōc . . . redāctō: render by a temporal clause, *after* etc.

3. puerīs: used here of both sexes.

4, 5. vīctōribus . . . tūtum, *that nothing was an obstacle to the victors and nothing secure for the conquered.* **arbitrārentur:** for mode cf. I, 9, 3; II, 6, 9.

um, quī supererant, cōnsēnsū lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt sēque eī dēdidērunt et in commemorandā cīvitātis calamitāte ex sexcentīs ad trēs senātōrēs, ex hominum mīlibus LX vix ad quīngentōs, quī arma ferre possent, sēsē redāctōs esse dīxērunt. Quōs Caesar, ut in miserōs āc supplicēs ūsus misericordiā vidērētur, dīligentissimē cōnservāvit suīsque fīnibus atque oppidīs ūtī iussit et fīnitimīs imperāvit, ut ab iniūriā et maleficiō sē suōsque prohibērent.

The allied Aduatuci retire to their stronghold.

29. Aduatucī, dē quibus suprā scrīpsimus, cum omnibus cōpiīs auxiliō Nerviīs venīrent, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā ex itinere domum revertērunt; cūnctīs oppidīs castellīsque dēsertīs sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā

6. **cōnsēnsus, -ūs** [cōnsentiō, think together, agree], M., united opinion, agreement, coalition, consent. *

8. **senātor, -ōris** [senex, an old man], M., elder, senator. 1

10. **miser, -era, -erum** [maereō, be sad], wretched, miserable, pitiable, unfortunate, sad. 3

supplex, -plicis [plicō, bend], suppliant: *as subst.*, a suppliant. 1

misericordia, -ae [misereō, pity + cor, the heart], F., pity, sympathy, mercy, compassion. 4

1. **scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus,** *a.*, write, describe by characters *or* in writing. 5

3. **cūnctus, -a, -um** [*contr. for* coniūnctus, *joined together*], all together, all. 3

4. **ēgregiē** [ēgregius, excellent], excellently, admirably, remarkably. 5

---

8. **LX:** the Nervii had promised 50,000 men at the opening of the war. **quīngentōs:** there is certainly some exaggeration in the statement, as the Nervii were strong enough to revolt in 54 B. C. and to send 5,000 men to the relief of Alesia in 52 B. C.

9. **possent:** for mode cf. **I, 3, 3; II, 5, 16.**

10. **ut . . . vidērētur,** *that he might appear to have shown* (**ūsus esse**) *mercy* etc.

11. **cōnservāvit:** see on *cōnservārentur* **12,** 15.

12. **fīnitimīs,** *the neighboring* (tribes).

13. **prohibērent:** for mode cf. **I, 2,** 4; **II, 14,** 11.

1, 2. **suprā:** in **16,** 7. **cum venīrent,** *although they were on their way.* **cōpiīs:** for case cf. **19,** 2. How does this differ from the equivalent construction **16,** 5? **auxiliō Nerviīs:** for case cf. **I, 18, 28; II, 9, 13.**

3. **domum:** for case cf. 1, **5,** 7. **castellīs:** they were smaller than the *oppida*.

4. **oppidum:** it is with great probability placed on the plateau now occupied by the citadel of the city of Namur, in the angle formed by the junction of the Sambre and Meuse. The distance from the battle field was about 35 miles and the direction northeast. The name of the *oppidum* is not given.

mūnītum contulērunt. Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitū partibus altissimās rūpēs dēiectūsque habēret, ūnā ex parte leniter acclīvis aditus in lātitūdinem nōn amplius ducentōrum pedum relinquēbātur; quem locum duplicī altissimō mūrō mūnierant: tum māgnī ponderis saxa et praeacūtās trabēs in mūrō collocābant. *Their origin.* Ipsī erant ex Cimbrīs Teutonīsque prōgnātī, quī, cum iter in prōvinciam nostram atque Ītaliam facerent, iīs impedīmentīs, quae sēcum agere āc portāre nōn poterant, citrā flūmen Rhēnum dēpositīs custōdiam ex suīs āc praesidium sex mīlia hominum ūnā relīquērunt. Hī post eōrum obitum multōs annōs ā fīnitimīs exagitātī, cum aliās bel-

6. **rūpēs, -is** [**rumpō**, break], F., rock, cliff. 1

7. **acclīvis** (ad-), **-e** [**clīvus**, a slope], sloping upwards, rising, ascending. 3

8. **duplex, plicis** [**plicō**, bend, fold], two-fold, double. 3

9. **pondus, -eris** [**pendō**, weigh], N., weight. 4

saxum, -ī, N., a large stone, rock. *

prae-acūtus, -a, -um, sharp in front *or* at the end, sharpened, pointed. *

trabs, trabis, F., timber, beam. *

11. **prō-gnātus, -a, -um** [**nāscor**, be born], born, descended, sprung. 2

13. **custōdia, -ae**, F., custody, guard (*state of being guarded*).—*Plur.* guards, keepers. 5

15. **obitus, -ūs** [**obeō**, go in the way of], M., going to (death); destruction, overthrow. 1

ex-agitō, 1. [*freq. of* **agō**, set in motion], *a.*, drive out *or* away, stir up, rouse, disturb, harass, persecute. 2

aliās, *adv.* [**alius**, another], at another place, elsewhere, at another time. **aliās . . . aliās**, at one time . . . at another. 4

5, 6. **quod cum habēret,** *now while* (=*although*) *this had.* For trans. of the relative cf. I, **1**, **11**; **14**, 4. **ūnā ex parte**: on the south.

8. **pedum**: for case cf. I, **5**, 8; **38**, 1. **duplicī**: commonly explained as meaning two parallel walls. Another view is that it means a wall of double the usual thickness, so built on account of its exceptional height. **mūrō**: see Int. 154.

9. **ponderis**: for case cf. **27**, 12; **15**, 13.

10. **Cimbrīs, Teutonīs**: this reputed origin of the Aduatuci is adduced to show that they were no mean foes.

11. **iter**: see Int. 63–64.

12, 13. **iīs . . . dēpositīs,** *having placed those incumbrances which they could not drive* etc. **citrā**: i. e., the west side. **custōdiam**: persons charged with the care of the *impedīmenta.*

14. **praesidium**: the 6,000. **eōrum**: the Cimbri and Teutoni

15. **obitum**: see Int. 64.

lum īnferrent, aliās illātum dēfenderent, cōnsēnsū eōrum omnium pāce factā hunc sibi domiciliō locum dēlēgērunt.

They scorn the Roman preparations for attack.

30. Ac prīmō adventū exercitūs nostrī crēbrās ex oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant parvulīsque proeliīs cum nostrīs contendēbant; posteā vāllō passuum in circuitū XV mīlium crēbrīsque castellīs circummūnītī oppidō sēsē continēbant. Ubi vīneīs āctīs aggere exstrūctō turrim procul cōnstituī vīdērunt, prīmum irrīdēre ex mūrō atque increpitāre vōcibus, quod tanta māchinātiō ab tantō spatiō īnstrue-

17. domicilium, -ī [domus + cēlō, conceal], N., a fixed abode *or* residence, dwelling, home, domicile. 4

2. excursiō, -ōnis [excurrō, run forth], F., a running out *or* forth, sally, sortie. 2

parvulus, -a, -um [*dim. of* parvus, little], small, insignificant, slight: **ab parvulīs**, from childhood. 5

4. circum-mūniō, 4. *a.*, fortify around, fortify, protect. 1

5. ex-struō, -ere, strūxī, strūctus [struō, build], *a.*, build *or* pile up, rear, construct, build. *

procul, *adv.*, afar off, from afar, aloof. *

6. irrīdeō (inr-), **-ēre, rīsī, rīsus** [rīdeō, laugh], *a.*, laugh at, jeer. 1

7. māchinātiō, -ōnis [māchinor, contrive], F., a mechanical contrivance, machine, engine, derrick. 3

---

16. illātum (sc. *bellum sibi*), *warded off the war which was waged upon themselves.*

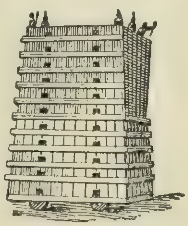
17. hunc . . . locum: i. e., the tract of country occupied by the Aduatuci at this time. **sibi domiciliō,** *as their home.* For the Dat. cf. *auxiliō Nerviīs* l. 2.

2. excursiōnēs: see Int. 165. **parvulīs:** for the significance of the Diminutive ending **-lus** (**-ulus, -olus**) see A. 164 *a;* G. 189, 6; H. 321; *B.* 148, 1.

3. vāllō, etc. English order: *vāllō XV mīlium passuum.* For case of *passuum* cf. **8,** 8; **17,** 9; **15,** 10. For case of *mīlium* cf. I, **5,** 8; **38,** 1. On the *vāllum* see Int. 156. **in circuitū:** apparently only from the Sambre to the Meuse.

4, 5. oppidō: the preposition is omitted in this (military) expression because of the instrumental (rather than locative) idea. Cf. I, **49,** 1; **48,** 10; **40,** 26. **sēsē continēbant,** *remained.* **vīneīs āctīs:** see Int. 160. **aggere:** see Int. 158, 159. **turrim:** Int. 162, 163.

6. irrīdēre: i. e., by means of gestures. In distinction from *vōcibus.* **irrīdēre, increpitāre:** for the infin. see on I, **16,** 2.



Turris ambulātōria.

7. ab tantō spatiō, *so far away* (from the point of attack). For *ab* see on **7,** 9. Notice that it does not govern *spatiō* as a preposition. For case of *spatiō* cf. **7,** 9; I, **48,** 1; **43,** 3. **īnstruerētur:** I, **16,** 15, 17.

rētur: quibusnam manibus aut quibus vīribus praesertim hominēs tantulae statūrae (nam plērumque hominibus Gallīs prae māgnitūdine corporum suōrum brevitās nostra contemptuī est) tantī oneris turrim mōtūrōs sēsē cōnfiderent?

They propose a conditional surrender.

31. Ubi vērō movērī et appropīnquāre moenibus vīdērunt, novā atque inūsitātā speciē commōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē pāce mīsērunt, quī ad hunc modum locūtī: nōn exīstimāre Rōmānōs sine ope dīvīnā bellum gerere, quī tantae altitūdinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritāte prōmovēre possent, sē suaque omnia eōrum potestātī permittere dīxērunt. Unum petere āc dēprecārī: sī fōrte prō suā clēmentiā āc

8. **quisnam, quaenam, quidnam,** *interrog. pron.*, who, pray? which, pray? what, pray? *The* **nam** *has the force of* pray.
9. **tantulus, -a, -um** [*dim. of* **tantus,** so great], so small or little, of such diminutive (stature). 4
statūra, -ae [**status,** *fr.* **stō,** stand], F., a standing upright, size *or* height of the body, stature. 2
plērumque, *adv.* [**plērusque,** the greater part], for the most part, commonly, frequently. *
10. **prae,** *prep. with abl.*, before, in front of: in comparison with; *in comp.*, before, on account of, surpassing, very. 2
contemptus, -ūs [**contemnō,** despise], M., a despising; an object of contempt. 1
11. **onus, -eris,** N., load, burden. 5
2. **in-ūsitātus, -a, -um** [**ūtor**], unusual, uncommon, strange, startling. 3
speciēs, -ēī [*obsol.* **speciō,** see], F., seeing, sight, appearance. *
3. **modus, -ī,** M., measure, quantity, manner, method, style. *
4. **dīvīnus, -a, -um** [**dīvus,** divine], of the gods, celestial, divine. 3
5. **prō-moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus** [**moveō,** move], *a.*, move forward, advance, extend, enlarge; put off. 4
7. **dē-precor, 1.** [**precor,** pray], pray against, pray for deliverance, beseech, entreat, plead for. 5

---

8. **quibusnam manibus,** etc; *for* (as they reasoned) *by what hands or strength did men, especially of such small stature, hope,* etc.

9, 10. **tantulae:** see Int. 85. For the ending see on line 2. **statūrae:** for case cf. **15,** 13; **27,** 12. **Gallīs contemptuī;** for case cf. I, **18,** 28; **25,** 6. **prae,** *in comparison with.*

11. **oneris:** cf. *statūrae*, line 9.

1. **movērī** (sc. the subj. *turrim*), *that the tower moved.* **moenibus:** for case cf. I, **2,** 5.

3. **ad hunc modum,** *as follows.*

4. **nōn exīstimāre** etc.: put their speech into the direct form.

7. **ūnum,** *one favor.* **petere, dēprecārī,** *we beg and pray.* Caesar uses two synonymous verbs for special emphasis.

mānsuētūdine, quam ipsī ab aliīs audīrent, statuisset Aduatucōs esse cōnservandōs, nē sē armīs dēspoliāret. Sibi omnēs ferē fīnitimōs esse inimīcōs āc suae virtūtī invidēre; ā quibus sē dēfendere trāditīs armīs nōn possent. Sibi praestāre, sī in eum cāsum dēdūcerentur, quamvīs fōrtūnam ā populō Rōmānō patī, quam ab hīs per cruciātum interficī, inter quōs dominārī cōnsuēssent.

They submit to Caesar's terms but stealthily retain part of their arms.

32. Ad haec Caesar respondit: Sē magis cōnsuētūdine suā quam meritō eōrum cīvitātem cōnservātūrum, sī prius, quam mūrum ariēs attigisset,

9. **dē-spoliō, 1.** [**spoliō**, rob, spoil], *a.*, strip off, plunder. 1

10. **in-videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus** [**videō**, see], *a.*, look at [*with evil intent*), be jealous of. 1

12. **quī-vīs, quaevīs, quidvīs** (**quod-**) [**volō**, wish], *indef pron.* who *or* what you wish; any one, anything, any whatever, any. 3

13. **cruciātus, -ūs** [**cruciō**, crucify], M., crucifying, torture, torment. *

14. **dominor, 1.** [**dominus**, master], *a.*, *n.*, be lord *or* master, have dominion. 1

3. **ariēs, arietis**, M., a ram; battering-ram, *a long beam for demolishing walls, one end of which was capped with iron in the form of a ram's head;* brace, buttress. 3

---

8. **quam . . . audīrent:** probably the report of Caesar's treatment of the remnant of the Nervii had reached them: see **28**, 12.

9. **nē . . . dēspoliāret,** *he should not* (direct: *do not deprive us*) *deprive them of their arms.* The clause explains *ūnum*, line 6. For the mode cf. **9**, 12; **9**, 11; **2**, 7. **armīs:** for case cf. I, **1**, 14; II, 6, 7.

10. **inimīcōs:** see **29**, 15.

11. **trāditīs armīs:** trans. by a cond. clause, *if they should* etc. **sibi praestāre,** *they preferred* (*it were better for them*). The subject is **quamvīs . . . patī,** *to suffer any fortune whatever.*

12. **cāsum,** *extremity.*

13. **ab hīs,** *by the people.*

1. **cōnsuētūdine:** it was Caesar's policy in this campaign to induce the Belgae to submit. Their fidelity was secured by the surrender of their arms and the giving of hostages. The strong tribal feeling among them made the latter an especially effective means of curbing them.

2. **meritō:** they had tried to bring succor to the Nervii, see **29**, 1–3. **cōnservātūrum** (*esse*), *would spare.*

3. **sī** etc., direct: *if you surrender before the battering ram touches your wall.* **ariēs:** see Int. 162, 163. **attigisset:** as soon as the battering ram touched the wall, the besieged place was looked upon as already captured and offers of submission were then too late. *attigisset* and *dēdidissent* (l. 4) represent future perfect indicatives in the direct form.

sē dēdissent: sed dēditiōnis nūllam esse condiciōnem nisi armīs trāditīs. Sē id, quod in Nerviīs fēcisset, factūrum fīnitimīsque imperātūrum, nē quam dēditīciīs populī Rōmānī iniūriam īnferrent. Rē renūntiātā ad suōs, quae imperārentur, facere dīxērunt. Armōrum māgnā multitūdine dē mūrō in fossam, quae erat ante oppidum, iactā, sīc ut prope summam mūrī aggerisque altitūdinem acervī armōrum adaequārent, et tamen circiter parte tertiā, ut posteā perspectum est, cēlātā atque in oppidō retentā, portīs patefactīs eō diē pāce sunt ūsī.

10. acervus, -ī [**acer,** sharp, pointed], M., a heap. *

ad-aequō, 1. [**aequus,** even, equal], *a.*, make level with *or* equal to, equalize, equal: **cursum adaequāre,** keep pace with. *

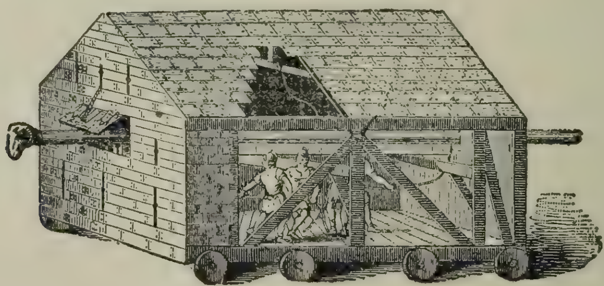
11. cēlō, 1. *a.*, keep covered *or* hidden, secrete, conceal: *in pass.*, escape observation, be unnoticed. 3

12. patefaciō, facere, fēcī, factus [**pateō,** open], *a.*, make *or* throw open, open. 3

---

5. sē . . . factūrum (*esse*), *he would do this which he had done with the Nervii.* **fīnitimīs:** see **28,** 12.

6–8. nē . . . īnferrent, *not to inflict any evil upon* etc. **quam:** for signif. cf. I, **42,** 12; **30,** 15; **20,** 2; **18,** 22. **quae . . .** (*se*) **facere,** *that they would immediately execute his orders:* the pres. tense is here employed to denote an immediate future.



Vīnea et Ariēs.

9. ante oppidum: i. e., on the side where the Roman approaches were. **iactā:** construe with *multitūdine.*

10. mūrī: the wall of the town: see **29,** 8. **aggeris:** the end of the mound, which had reached the outer edge of the fosse.

12. pāce sunt ūsī, *remained quiet.* **pāce:** for case cf. **25,** 18; **14,** 11, I, **2,** 6.

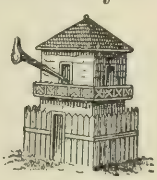
They renew the contest, are defeated and sold as slaves.

33. Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudī mīlitēsque ex oppidō exīre iussit, nē quam noctū oppidānī ab mīlitibus iniūriam acciperent. Illī ante initō, ut intellēctum est, cōnsiliō, quod dēditiōne factā nostrōs praesidia dēductūrōs aut dēnique indīligentius servātūrōs crēdiderant, partim sūmptīs, quae retinuerant et cēlāverant, armīs, partim scūtīs ex cortice factīs aut vīminibus intextīs, quae subitō, ut temporis exiguitās postulābat, pellibus indūxerant, tertiā vigiliā, quā minimē arduus ad nostrās mūnītiōnēs ascēnsus vidēbātur, omnibus cōpiīs repentīnō ex oppidō ēruptiōnem fēcērunt. Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperārat, īgnibus sīgnificātiōne factā ex proximīs castellīs eō

5. **indīligenter,** *adv.* [indīligēns, careless], carelessly, heedlessly. 1
servō, 1. *a.*, save, preserve, maintain, keep; keep guard, watch. *
6. **crēdō, dere, didī, ditus** [*Sanscrit* **krat,** trust + **dō**], *a.*, give trust *or* confidence, trust, entrust, believe, suppose. *
7. **cortex, corticis,** M., F., bark. 1
vīmen, -inis [**vieō,** bend *or* weave together], N., a pliant twig, switch, withe, osier. 3
in-texō, -ere, texuī, textus [**texō,** weave], weave in *or* together. 1
8. **pellis, -is,** F., a hide, a skin (*either on or off the body of an animal*): **sub pellibus** (in tents, *i. e.* in the field). *
9. **arduus, -a, -um,** high, steep, difficult. 2
10. **repentīnō,** *adv.*, suddenly. 1
11. **ēruptiō, -ōnis** [**rumpō,** break out], F., a breaking out, bursting forth, sortie, sally. *
12. **sīgnificātiō, -ōnis** [**sīgnum,** sign + **faciō**], F., making of signs, signal, indication, notice. 5

---

1. **sub,** *just before, towards* (in expressions of time).
2. **nē quam** etc.: a humane action, but dangerous to the supremacy of the Romans. **quam:** as in **32,** 6.
4. **ante initō cōnsiliō,** *according to a plan previously formed.*
5. **praesidia:** the detachments holding the *castella* mentioned in **30,** 4.
7. **factīs:** trans: by a rel. clause.
9. **quā:** the adv. **quā minimē arduus:** this passage seems to show that the Roman lines were on high ground. **tertiā vigiliā:** what time of night?
11. **ut . . . imperārat:** Caesar had foreseen the possibility of an attempt at treachery.



Fire-signal Tower.

12. **īgnibus:** signals to give the alarm. **ex proximīs castellīs:** those nearest the point where the attack on the Roman works was being made. These *castella* are the towers mentioned in l. 15 below.

concursum est, pūgnātumque ab hostibus ita acriter est, ut ā virīs fortibus in extrēmā spē salūtis inīquō locō contrā eōs, quī ex vāllō turribusque tēla iacerent, pūgnārī dēbuit, cum in ūnā virtūte omnis spēs salūtis cōnsisteret. Occīsīs ad hominum mīlibus quattuor reliquī in oppidum reiectī sunt. Postrīdiē ēius diēī refrāctīs portīs, cum iam dēfenderet nēmō, atque intrōmīssīs mīlitibus nostrīs sectiōnem ēius oppidī ūniversam Caesar vēndidit. Ab hīs, quī ēmerant, capitum numerus ad eum relātus est mīlium quīnquāgintā trium.

34. Eōdem tempore ā P. Crassō, quem cum legiōne ūnā

18. **refringō, -ere, frēgī, frāctus** [**frangō**, break], *a.*, break in *or* open; break, destroy. 2

19. **intrō-mittō, -ere, mīsī, mīssus** [**intrō**, within], *a.*, send into *or* in, let go in, introduce.

sectiō, -ōnis [**secō**, cut], F., a cutting *or* parcelling out (*of booty*) booty.

20. **ūniversus, -a, -um** [**ūnus** + **vertō**, turn], turned into one, all together, whole, universal.

vēndō, dere, didī, ditus [**vēnum**, sale + **dō**], *a.*, put to sale, sell at auction.

---

13. **concursum est**: i. e. by the Romans: Caesar repulsed the Helvetians in the same way: cf. I, **8**, 15. **concursum est, pūgnātum est**: for trans. cf. **11**, 14; **10**, 20. **ut** etc., lit., *as the fight ought to have been carried on by brave men* etc. For the sake of English idiom trans.: *as brave men ought to have fought* etc.

15. **pūgnārī**: used impersonally, cf. *persuādērī* **10**, 19. Notice carefully that the present tense is to be represented in English by a perfect. After past tenses the Latin employs the present infin. with verbs of necessity and possibility (as *dēbeō, possum* etc.) instead of the perfect of the English idiom.

16. **in . . . cōnsisteret**, *depended on valor alone.* **ad**: used adverbially with numerals =*circiter.*

19. **sectiōnem**: a perfectly justifiable procedure, according to ancient ideas, as a punishment for treachery. Caesar's firmness gained for him the respect of the Gauls.

20. **hīs**: see Int. 102. The slave market at Rome was supplied by these *mercātōrēs.* **capitum**: as in I, **29**, 6.

1. **eōdem tempore**: i. e. when the stronghold of the Aduatuci fell. As the 7th legion was detached from the Roman army just after the battle of the Sambre to reduce the western tribes to submission it is clear the siege must have lasted a long time, probably over a month. **P. Crassō**: see note on I, **52**, 14.

Crassus subdues the Veneti and other maritime tribes.

mīserat ad Venetōs, Venellōs, Osismōs, Coriosolitas, Esubiōs, Aulercōs, Redonēs, quae sunt maritumae cīvitātēs Ōceanumque attingunt, certior factus est omnēs eās cīvitātēs in diciōnem potestātemque populī Rōmānī esse redāctās.

German envoys offer submission. Caesar quarters his troops and goes to Italy. Supplicatio in his honor.

35. Hīs rēbus gestīs omnī Galliā pācātā tanta hūius bellī ad barbarōs opīniō perlāta est, utī ab iīs nātiōnibus, quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent, mitterentur lēgātī ad Caesarem, quī sē obsidēs datūrās, imperāta factūrās pollicērentur. Quās lēgātiōnēs

2. **Venetī, -ōrum,** m., *a Gallic people in modern Brittany near modern* Vannes. *

Venellī, -ōrum, m., *a Gallic people in modern Normandy.* 4

Osismī, -ōrum, m., *a Gallic people in modern Brittany.* 3

Coriosolitēs, -um, m., *a Gallic people in modern Brittany near modern* Corseult. 4

3. **Esubiī, -ōrum,** m., *a Gallic people near the Veneti, near modern* Essey. 3

Aulercī, -ōrum, m., *a Gallic people divided into four branches;* (1) Aulerci Eburovices, *in modern* dept. de l'Eure, *in Normandy;* (2) Aulerci Cenomani; (3) Aulerci Brannovices, *in modern* dept. le Briennois; (4) Aulerci Diablintes, *in modern* dept. de la Sarthe. *

Redonēs, -um, m., *a Gallic people in Brittany near the modern* Rennes. 2

maritimus, (-umus) -a, -um, *adj.*, of the sea, sea-, maritime, naval, on the sea: **aestus** (in the sea); **ora** (the sea shore). *

5. **diciō, -ōnis** [**dīcō,** say], f., saying (*with authority*), jurisdiction, dominion, sway. 3.

2. **barbarus, -a, -um,** foreign (*to Greeks and Romans*), uncivilized, savage, barbarous: *as subst.*, foreigners, savages, barbarians. *

3. **nātiō, -ōnis,** [**nāscor,** be born], f., race, tribe, people, nation: *usually applied to a distant and barbarous people.* *

---

2. **Venetī,** etc., the student will note here, as in many other instances, that the Gallic names have been retained, in a modified form, in many of the *departments* and towns of France. A further account of these tribes is given in III, 7–19.

3, 4. **Coriosolitas:** notice the quantity of the termination and see on I, 26, 18. **cīvitātēs,** *tribes.*

5. **diciōnem:** i. e. a nominal submission, probably accompanied by the surrendering of hostages.

2. **perlāta est,** *spread.*

3. **nātiōnibus:** the German tribes, the Ubii in particular. **incolerent:** for mode cf. I, 3, 3.

4, 5. **sē datūrās** (not *datūrōs*) (*esse*), *that they would give.* What is the antecedent of **sē**?

Caesar, quod in Ītaliam Īllyricumque properābat, initā proximā aestāte ad sē revertī iussit. Ipse in Carnūtēs, Andēs, Turonōs, quaeque cīvitātēs propīnquae hīs locīs erant, ubi bellum gesserat, legiōnibus in hībernācula dēductīs in Ītaliam profectus est. Ob eāsque rēs ex litterīs Caesaris diērum quīndecim supplicātiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nūllī.

6. **Īllyricum, -ī,** N., Illyria, *lying northeast of the Adriatic, forming a part of Caesar's province.* 3

7. **Carnūtēs, -um,** M., *a Gallic people between the Seine and Loire, about modern* Chartres. *

Andēs, -ium, M., *a Gallic people in modern Anjou about modern* Angers. 3

8. **Turonī, -ōrum,** M., *a Gallic people on the Loire about modern* Tours. 3

9. **hībernāculum, -ī,** [**hībernō,** pass the winter], N., a wintering-place; *in pl.* huts *or* tents for wintering, winter quarters. 1

11. **supplicātiō, -ōnis,** [**supplex,** supplicating], F., public prayer *in humiliation for misfortunes, but esp. in thanksgiving for successes,* thanksgiving.

dē-cernō, -ere, crēvī, crētus [**cernō,** decide], *a.*, decide, appoint, decree.

---

6. **Īllyricum:** see Int. 23.

7. **in Carnūtēs** etc., constr. with **dēductīs.**

9. **hībernācula:** see Int. 139.

11. **supplicātiō:** a public thanksgiving, decreed by the Senate in honor of a victory. The number of days in the festival was in proportion to the importance of the victory. At first the *supplicatio* lasted only one day, later three or four. Pompeius' victory over Mithradates was honored by a twelve days fete. The honor of a fifteen days' *supplicatio* was therefore unprecedented. **quod,** (an honor) *which.* The antecedent is the preceding clause **diērum . . . est.** Of what gender are phrases, terms, or clauses when used substantively? A. 29, 2 *c;* G. 20, III; H. 42 N.; P. *B.* 247, I, *b ad fin.*

BOOK III.—VARIOUS OPERATIONS IN THE ALPS AND IN WESTERN GAUL.

The great and growing importance of Roman interests in Transalpine Gaul made it necessary that a shorter route be secured from thence into Italy. Caesar accordingly sent Galba, in the fall of this year (57 B. C.) to take possession of the passes over the Pennine Alps and suppress the hostility of the natives Having apparently accomplished this, Galba went into winter quarters in a little town at the foot of the northern slope of the mountains. Here he was attacked by an overwhelming force of mountaineers, whom, however, he succeeded in driving off after a sharp engagement. He then retreated to a less exposed position, abandoning for a time the object of the campaign.

During the winter of 57-56 B. C., Caesar was in Illyricum, the extreme eastern portion of his vast province. Whatever confidence he may have felt in the permanence of the arrangements he had made in Gaul, was rudely dispelled by the news of a widely extended sedition in the lately subdued Armorican states. Though they had submitted to Publius Crassus and given hostages, they wore the yoke lightly, ready to be thrown off when the time came for action. Confidence in their own prowess and ignorance of the power and resources of the foe they were dealing with, led them to take the fatal step of arresting the Roman officers sent among them to levy contributions of corn for the support of the legions quartered in that region. This virtual declaration of war was followed by the formation of a powerful league of all the coast tribes between the Loire and Seine. The Britanni (here mentioned for the first time in Roman history) sent supplies of men and ships, and the sympathy and secret support of the Belgic tribes were assured.

Early in the spring Caesar hastened to Gaul and issued orders for an extensive campaign. In order to prevent any effective co-operation on the part of his enemies, he divided his forces. Titus Labienus, with part of the cavalry, was sent north to check the threatened uprising of the Belgae and to prevent the Germans from crossing the Rhine. Quintus Titurius Sabinus penetrated the country of the Venelli to cut off communications between the eastern and western portions of the confederacy. Publius Crassus went south into Aquitania to prevent help reaching the insurgents from that quarter. Caesar himself, with the assistance of a strong fleet under Decimus Brutus undertook the conquest of the Veneti, the most powerful Armorican state and the forefront of the confederacy.

The Veneti skilfully utilized the advantages of their position. The country was wild and barren and the Venetan strongholds were erected on the extremities of narrow promontories which the daily tides cut off from the main land. Hence supplies for the campaigning army were obtained with difficulty and siege operations were greatly hindered. The Veneti, on the other hand, had control of the sea and could supply their towns at will with provisions and defenders, or in case of necessity could transport the garrisons to other places, leaving the foe only a barren victory. The co-operation of the Roman fleet—which would have prevented this—was made impossible by the prevalence of stormy weather during most of the summer. When it finally appeared, the Veneti confidently gave a challenge to battle. Their fleet was far superior both in size and equipment to that of their adversaries; yet in the conflict that ensued, Roman valor and ingenuity won the day, and the great naval armament, at once the pride and hope of the allies, was almost entirely destroyed. The submission of the Armorican states soon followed. The prominence of the Veneti in the revolt marked them out for severe punishment as a warning to the Celtic nation. Accordingly the senate was put to the sword and the people were sold as slaves.

The lieutenants of Caesar were as successful as himself. Labienus overawed the Belgae. Sabinus easily defeated Viridovix, the general in command of the land forces of the league. Crassus, after much fighting, subdued Aquitania. The Roman eagles now dominated the seacoast of Gaul from the Pyrenees to the Seine and beyond. Only the Menapii and Morini, far to the north, held out in the impenetrable morasses. Even thither Caesar's daring spirit led him; but after making strenuous efforts to reach the foe, the approach of winter warned him to desist. Quartering his legions upon the conquered tribes as in the previous winter, he proceeded to Italy.

In the two previous campaigns Caesar had proved his skill in directing the operations of a single large army. The present one showed that he was a master of "grand strategy" as well. With forces much smaller than those opposed to him, but directed by experienced subordinates with reference to a well considered plan, he struck his enemies at many points and with complete success. The contrast to this policy presented by the jealousy and lack of unity that prevailed among the Gauls is very instructive. The political constitution of Gaul bound her hand and foot in a contest with the centralized power of Rome.

REFERENCES FOR READING.

PLUTARCH: Caesar.
FROUDE: Caesar, a Sketch, pp. 223-226. (Harper's ed.)
TROLLOPE: Caesar, chap. iv. (Ancient Classics Series).
MOMMSEN: History of Rome, vol. iv. pp. 304-308.
MERIVALE: History of Rome under the Empire, vol. i. pp. 286-297.
NAPOLEON: Julius Caesar, vol. ii. chap. vi.

COMMENTARIUS TERTIUS.

Caesar sends Galba to seize the passes of the Alps. He overcomes the neighboring tribes and occupies Octodurus.

1. Cum in Italiam proficīscerētur Caesar, Servium Galbam cum legiōne XII et parte equitātūs in Nantuātīs, Varagrōs Sedūnōsque mīsit, quī ā fīnibus Allobrogum et lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō ad summās Alpēs pertinent. Causa mittendī fuit, quod iter per Alpēs, quō māgnō cum perīculō māgnīsque cum portōriīs mercātōrēs īre cōnsuērant, patefierī volēbat.

1. **Servius, -ī,** M., *a Roman praenomen.*
3. **Nantuātēs, -um,** M., *a Gallic people on the Loire about* Nantes. 4
Varagrī, -ōrum, M., *a Gallic people on the Pennine Alps.* 3
Sedūnī, -ōrum, M., *a Helvetian people about modern* Sitten. 3
7. **patefīō, fierī, factus sum,** *pass. of* **patefaciō,** make *or* lay open. 3

The narrative of the campaign of Galba, given in the first six chapters of this book, belongs chronologically to Book II.

2. **XII**: see note on II, **2**, 2.

3–5. **Nantuātīs**, etc.: fix the location of these tribes by the map. The two legions raised by Caesar in Cisalpine Gaul for the Belgian war (see II, **2**, 1) were, according to Strabo, attacked by these mountaineers, and this expedition was planned to check them. As Roman interests north of the Alps grew in importance, it became more and more necessary to maintain an uninterrupted communication with Italy. **quī pertinent,** *whose country extends.* **summās Alpēs**: the peaks Mt. Blanc and the Great St. Bernard. For trans. cf. I, **22,** 1.

6. **iter per Alpēs**: by the pass of the Great St. Bernard, leading from Martigny (*Octōdūrus*) to Aosta (*Augusta Praetoria Salassōrum*) or by the Simplon, farther east. There was another route opened by Pompeius in 77 B. C. over Mt. Genevre; but this was not convenient for reaching northern Gaul. **perīculō**: owing to the hostility of the natives.

7. **portōriīs,** *with heavy imposts,* levied by these Alpine tribes upon all merchandise carried through their country. **mercātōrēs**: Caesar makes frequent reference to this class; see I, **1,** 8; **39,** 4; II, **15,** 10.

Huic permīsit, sī opus esse arbitrārētur, utī in hīs locīs legiōnem hiemandī causā collocāret. Galba secundīs aliquot proeliīs factīs castellīsque complūribus eōrum expūgnātīs mīssīs ad eum undique lēgātīs obsidibusque datīs et pāce factā cōnstituit cohortēs duās in Nantuātibus collocāre et ipse cum reliquīs ēius legiōnis cohortibus in vīcō Varagrōrum, quī appellātur Octōdūrus, hiemāre; quī vīcus positus in valle nōn māgnā adiectā plāniciē altissimīs mōntibus undique continētur. Cum hīc in duās partēs flūmine dīviderētur, alteram partem ēius vīcī Gallīs concessit, alteram vacuam ab hīs relīctam cohortibus ad hiemandum attribuit. Eum locum vāllō fossāque mūnīvit.

9. **aliquot** [alius + quot], *indecl. num. adj.*, some, a few, several. 3

14. **Octōdūrus, -ī,** M., *a town of the Varagri, now* Martigny. 1

vallis (**vallēs**), **-is,** F., valley, vale. *

15. **adiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus** [ad-iacio], *a.*, throw to: **tēlum adicī** (reach); **aggerem** (throw up).—*Fig.*, add: **adiecta plāniciēs** (with the addition of). *

18. **attribuō** (ad-), **-ere, -uī, -ūtus** [**tribuō,** assign], *a.*, assign, allot. *

8, 9. **huic**: i. e. Galba. **utī . . . collocāret**: for mode cf. I, **2**, 4; II, **16**, 7.

10, 11. **castellīs**: these were strongholds permanently occupied, but distinct from the *oppida*. **obsidibus datīs**: this method of securing submission was especially effective with the Gauls among whom the tribal form of government prevailed.

12. **cohortēs duās**: how many men? **in Nantuātibus**: probably at St. Maurice, on the Rhone between Martigny and Lake Leman. **ipse**: sc. *cōnstituit.*

14. **quī vīcus** etc. trans. as a principal clause. **valle**: this is comprised in the Swiss canton called Valais.

15. **nōn . . . plāniciē,** *with a little level ground adjacent.* For the Figure cf. I, **1**, 8; **39**, 11; **52**, 4; II, **9**, 1. **altissimīs mōntibus**; the Bernese and Pennine Alps, the highest mountains in Europe.

16. **flūmine**: Dranse, a mountain torrent merely, which empties into the Rhone near Martigny. **dīviderētur**: for mode cf. I, **9**, 3; **26**, 18; II, **28**, 5.

17. **alteram partem**: the part on the eastern side of the Dranse, which here flows north. **alteram**: i. e., the western portion of the village. By fixing the camp here, Galba placed himself within easy supporting distance of the two cohorts at St. Maurice.

18, 19. **eum locum**: i. e., *alteram . . . relictam.* **vāllō, fossā**: see Int. 130, 131. The *vāllum* often, as here, meant the rampart, comprising both *agger* and palisade.

The Gauls secretly withdraw and seize the neighboring heights.

2. Cum diēs hībernōrum complūrēs trānsīssent, frūmentumque eō comportārī iussisset, subitō per explōrātōrēs certior factus est ex eā parte vīcī, quam Gallīs concesserat, omnēs noctū discessisse mōntēsque, quī impendērent, ā māximā multitūdine Sedūnōrum et Varagrōrum tenērī. Id aliquot dē causīs acciderat, ut subitō Gallī bellī renovandī legiōnisque opprimendae cōnsilium caperent: prīmum, quod legiōnem neque eam plēnissimam dētractīs cohortibus duābus et complūribus singillātim, quī commeātūs petendī causā mīssī erant, propter paucitātem dēspiciēbant; tum etiam, quod propter inīquitātem locī, cum ipsī ex mōntibus in vallem dēcurrerent et tēla conicerent, nē prīmum quidem posse impetum suum sustinērī exīstimābant. Accēdēbat, quod suōs ab sē līberōs abstractōs obsidum nō-

7. **re-novō, 1.** [**novus,** new], *a.*, renew. 2
opprimō (ob-), -ere, pressī, pressus [**premō,** press], *a.*, press against *or* down; overwhelm, overpower, destroy; surprise. *
8. **plēnus, -a, -um** [**pleō** *in* **compleō,** fill], full, complete. 4
9. **singulātim** (**-illatim**) [**singulī,** single], singly, one by one. 3
10. **paucitās, -tātis** [**paucus,** few], F., fewness, scarcity, small number. *
14. **abs-trahō, -ere, -āxī -actum,** to drag away, carry away by force. 3

2, 3. **eō:** i. e., to *Octodurus.* **explōrātōrēs:** see on II, **11,** 6.

4. **concesserat:** why not subj. according to the rule for dependent clauses in indir. disc.? A. 336, 2 *b*, p. 372; H. 524, 2, 1); *B.* 314 3. **mōntēs:** the foot-hills, bordering on the valley.

5. **multitūdine:** for case cf. I, **14,** 6; **16,** 17; **17,** 10.

6–8. **acciderat:** this verb here, as usual, denotes the event as unforeseen or unfavorable. **ut . . . caperent:** relation to *id?* Cf. I, **43,** 20; **5,** 2; **4,** 4. **neque eam plēnissimam,** *and that not at its full strength,* explained by the ff. and in II, **25.**

9. **dētractīs** etc.: trans. by a causal clause. **complūribus,** masculine, not agreeing with *cohortibus,* as does *duābus;* trans. *many men* etc.

11–13. **tum . . . quod . . . exīstimābant:** the second reason. **inīquitātem locī:** the Romans usually avoided placing the camp on a site commanded by an elevation. Galba had departed from the rule, for some reason not stated. **ipsī;** i. e., the Gauls.

14, 15. **accēdēbat . . . dolēbant,** *a further reason was, that they were indignant* etc. **obsidum nōmine:** see on **1,** 11. They were really reduced to the condition of slaves.

mine dolēbant et Rōmānōs nōn sōlum itinerum causā, sed etiam perpetuae possessiōnis culmina Alpium occupāre cōnārī et ea loca fīnitimae prōvinciae adiungere sibi persuāsum habēbant.

Galba's forces, in council, resolve to defend their camp.

3. Hīs nūntiīs acceptīs Galba, cum neque opus hībernōrum mūnītiōnēsque plēnē essent perfectae, neque dē frūmentō reliquōque commeātū satis esset prōvīsum, quod dēditiōne factā obsidibusque acceptīs nihil dē bellō timendum exīstimāverat, cōnsiliō celeriter convocātō sententiās exquīrere coepit. Quō in cōnsiliō, cum tantum repentīnī perīculī praeter opīniōnem accidisset, āc iam omnia ferē superiōra loca multitūdine armātōrum complēta cōnspicerentur, neque subsidiō venīrī neque com-

16. **perpetuus, -a, -um** [**perpetuō**, cause to continue,] continuous, uninterrupted, perpetual, permanent; entire: **in perpetuum**, forever. *

culmen, -inis (*cont. from* **columen**) [**columna**, column], N., top, summit, ridge, height. 1

17. **ad-iungō, -ere, -ūnxī, -ūnctus,** join to, attach; apply to: *p. p. as adj.*, adjoining; suitable to. *

2. **plēnē** [**plēnus**, full], *adv.*, fully, completely, entirely. 1

6. **exquīrō, -ere, quīsīvī, quīsītus** [**quaerō**, search], *a.*, seek *or* search out, inquire, investigate. 2

---

15. **itinerum:** the frequent traversing of the route is indicated by the use of the plural.

17, 18. **fīnitimae:** the Roman province bounded them on the west. **sibi persuāsum habēbant,** *had persuaded themselves* (*that*) etc; lit., *had it* (=*Rōmānōs . . . adiungere*) *persuaded to themselves.* For gender of *persuāsum* see on II, **35,** 11.

2. **opus hībernōrum:** a general expression for the winter camp. **mūnītiōnēs:** special term describing the fortifications themselves. **perfectae:** refers both to **opus** and **mūnītiōnēs.** For the gender see A. 187, *a* 2; G. 290; H. 439, 1; *B.* 235 *b* $\gamma\gamma$.

3, 4. **neque satis esset prōvīsum,** *and he had not taken sufficient precautions.* For the trans. cf. II, **33,** 13; **5,** 7; I, **50,** 8; **23,** 5. **dēditiōne:** a complete submission without conditions.

5. **cōnsiliō:** a council of war, composed of the military tribunes and the centurions of the first rank, i. e., the highest in his rank in each cohort.

7. **repentīnī:** trans. adverbially, *since suddenly such great peril* etc. **perīculī:** for case cf. II, **26,** 15; **17, 9,** I, **14,** 2; **11,** 14.

9. **venīrī:** used impersonally. Trans. *neither could* (*any*) *come to their assistance* etc.

meātūs supportārī interclūsīs itineribus possent, prope iam dēspērātā salūte nōnnūllae hūiusmodī sententiae dīcēbantur ut impedīmentīs relīctīs ēruptiōne factā īsdem itineribus, quibus eō pervēnissent, ad salūtem contenderent. Māiōrī tamen partī placuit hōc reservātō ad extrēmum cōnsiliō interim reī ēventum experīrī et castra dēfendere.

The Gauls in great numbers attack the camp. The Romans are hard pressed.

4. Brevī spatiō interiectō, vix ut rēbus, quās cōnstituissent, collocandīs atque administrandīs tempus darētur, hostēs ex omnibus partibus sīgnō datō dēcurrere, lapidēs gaesaque in vāllum conicere. Nostrī prīmō integrīs vīribus fortiter repūgnāre neque ūllum frūstrā tēlum ex locō superiōre mittere, ut quaeque

10. **sup-portō (sub-) 1. [portō,** carry], *a.*, bring up, carry *or* convey to. 5
14. **placeō,** 2. please, satisfy; *often impers.*, seem good, be decided, resolved, *or* determined. *
re-servō, 1. [servō, save, keep], *a.*, keep back, save up, reserve. 4

1. **brevis, -e,** short (*of time or space*), brief. *
4. **gaesum, -ī,** N., a heavy iron javelin (*of the Gauls*). 1
5. **integer, tegra, tegrum** [tangō, touch], untouched, intact, whole, fresh, unimpaired. *
6. **frūstrā,** *adv.* [fraus, deceit], in deception or error; without effect, in vain. 5

---

10. **interclūsīs itineribus:** particularly the road west, along the left bank of the Rhone. This road connected Octodurus with the place where the two cohorts were stationed.

11. **hūiusmodī,** *of this sort, to this effect;* really two words, a genitive of quality.

13, 14. **Māiōrī . . . cōnsiliō,** *the majority determined to reserve this plan for a last resort,* (*and*) *in the meantime* etc.

15. **experīrī . . . dēfendere:** relation to *placuit?* Cf. I, **17,** 8; **10,** 3; **7,** 12.

2. **cōnstituissent:** for mode cf. I, **3,** 8; **6,** 2; II, **35,** 3.

4. **dēcurrere, conicere,** etc., for mode cf. I, **16,** 2; **32,** 7; II, **30,** 6. So also *repūgnāre* (l. 5), *mittere* (l. 6), *occurrere* (l. 7), *ferre* and *superārī* (l. 8). **dēcurrere:** see *superiōra loca* **3,** 8. **gaesa:** javelins of great weight and length, which seem to have been peculiar to the Alpine Gauls. They had a thick shaft and a barbed iron head. Varro says that two *gaesa* were carried by each soldier. **vāllum:** here the palisade crowning the *agger;* see Int. 131.

5. **vīribus:** *while their strength was fresh,* an abl. abs.

6. **ex locō superiōre:** the top of the rampart of the camp, which was higher than the plain into which the Gauls had descended. Cf. *dēcurrere,* line 4. **ut quaeque,** *as each* (*whenever any*).

pars castrōrum nūdāta dēfēnsōribus premī vidēbātur, eō occurrere et auxilium ferre, sed hōc superārī, quod diūturnitāte pūgnae hostēs dēfessī proeliō excēdēbant, aliī integrīs vīribus succēdēbant, quārum rērum ā nostrīs propter paucitātem fierī nihil poterat, āc nōn modo dēfessō ex pūgnā excēdendī, sed nē sauciō quidem ēius locī, ubi cōnstiterat, reliquendī āc suī recipiendī facultās dabātur.

Galba's centurions decide on a sortie.

5. Cum iam amplius hōrīs sex continenter pūgnārētur āc nōn sōlum vīrēs, sed etiam tēla nostrōs dēficerent atque hostēs acrius īnstārent languidiōribusque nostrīs vāllum scindere et fossās complēre coepissent,

8. **diūturnitās, -tātis** [diūturnus, prolonged], F., long duration *or* continuance. 2

12. **saucius, -a, -um,** wounded, hurt. 2

3. **languidus, -a, -um,** spiritless, faint, languid. 1

4. **scindō, -ere, scidī, scissus,** *a.*, split, cleave; tear down, destroy. 2

---

7. **dēfēnsōribus:** for case cf. I, **1,** 14; **8,** 12; II, **31,** 9.

8. **hōc superārī,** *in this they were overmatched,* explained by *quod . . . succēdēbant.*

9, 10. **aliī . . . succēdēbant,** *others with fresh energies took their places.* **vīribus:** for case cf. I, **6,** 12; **28,** 15; II, **18,** 4. Contrast the construction carefully with that of the same words in l. 5. **nostrīs:** for case cf. I, **14,** 6.

11. **āc** etc., *and not only was an opportunity* NOT *given to an exhausted (man) of retiring from the fight, but not even to a wounded (man) of leaving* etc. Notice that the second 'not,' printed in small capitals above, is not expressed in the text: see A. 149 *e*; G. 482 5, R. 1; H. 552 2; *B.* 343 2 *a.* **excēdendī,** the gerund: read the reference given on I, **2,** 14, and explain the case.

12. **sauciō:** the care of the wounded was entrusted to surgeons who, at first slaves, later free men, were released from all other service. The wounded were carried or led to the rear, or to the camp, where their wounds were attended to. It was considered disgraceful to leave the wounded without protection. **cōnstiterat,** *had taken his stand.* **relinquendī,** the gerundive: read the reference on **I, 1,** 9, and give the gender, number and case.

13. **suī recipiendī,** *of recovering,* i. e., attending to his wounds.

1. **hōrīs:** for case cf. I, **15,** 15; II, **7,** 11.

3, 4. **languidiōribusque nostrīs,** *and, as our men were quite faint.* **vāllum scindere:** i. e., to tear up the *vāllī* forming the breast-work (*lōrīca:* Int. 131) and thus to gain an entrance to the camp. **fossās:** the plural is used because the operation of filling the ditch was going on at several points at the same time.

rēsque esset iam ad extrēmum perducta cāsum, P. Sextius Baculus, prīmī pīlī centuriō, quem Nervicō proeliō complūribus cōnfectum vulneribus dīximus, et item C. Volusēnus, tribūnus mīlitum, vir et cōnsiliī māgnī et virtūtis, ad Galbam accurrunt atque ūnam esse spem salūtis docent, sī ēruptiōne factā extrēmum auxilium experīrentur. Itaque convocātīs centuriōnibus celeriter mīlitēs certiōrēs facit, paulisper intermitterent proelium āc tantummodo tēla mīssa exciperent sēque ex labōre reficerent, post datō sīgnō ex castrīs ērumperent atque omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnerent.

The Gauls are driven back with loss.

6. Quod iūssī sunt, faciunt āc subitō omnibus portīs ēruptiōne factā neque cōgnōscendī,

6. **pīlus, -ī,** m., century, centurion; **prīmī pīlī centuriō,** chief centurion. 3

Nervicus, -a, -um, of *or* with the Nervii, Nervian. 1

7. **C.,** *abbreviation for the praenomen* **Gāius.** *

Volusēnus, -ī, m., *a Roman gentile name.* Gaius Volusenus Quadratus, *a tribune of Caesar's army, afterward commander of cavalry.* 5

12. **tantummodo,** *adv.* [tantum + modo], so much only; only, merely. 1

excipiō, -ere, cēpī, ceptus [capiō, take], *a.*, take out, off, *or* up, catch, receive; take up (*in turn*), succeed. *

13. **labor, -ōris,** m., labor, toil, hardship, trouble. *

reficiō, -ere, fēcī, fectus [faciō], *a.*, remake, renew, refresh, recruit (*body or mind*). *

ē-rumpō, -ere, rūpī, ruptus [rumpō, break], *n.*, break out *or* forth, sally. 1

5, 6. **cāsum,** *extremity.* **prīmī pīlī:** see Int. 92. **quem** etc., in II, 25, 7, 8.

10. **extrēmum auxilium:** see on *cōnsiliō* 3, 14. **experīrentur:** for the tense see on I, 3, 13.

11. **centuriōnibus:** how many were there in the eight cohorts? **mīlitēs . . . facit,** *directs the soldiers.* **intermitterent,** *to leave off;* for the mood see on I, 20, 14: so also the three following verbs.

12. **exciperent,** *intercept.* i. e., *shield themselves from.*

13. **post,** *afterwards:* an adv.= *deinde.*

1. **quod:** for omission of the antecedent (what?) cf. I, 1, 2.

2. **portīs:** abl. instr. **cōgnōscendī** etc., *of finding out what was going on or recovering themselves.* The sortie was a complete surprise to the enemy, who had inferred an early surrender from the cessation of fighting on the part of the Romans. On the Gallic mode of attack, see Int. 181–3.

quid fieret, neque suī colligendī hostibus facultātem relinquunt. Ita commūtātā fōrtūnā eōs, quī in spem potiundōrum castrōrum vēnerant, undique circumventōs interficiunt et ex hominum mīlibus amplius XXX, quem numerum barbarōrum ad castra vēnisse cōnstābat, plūs tertiā parte interfectā reliquōs perterritōs in fugam coniciunt āc nē in locīs quidem superiōribus cōnsistēre patiuntur. Sīc omnibus hostium cōpiīs fūsīs armīsque exūtīs sē in castra mūnītiōnēsque suās recipiunt. Quō proeliō factō, quod saepius fōrtūnam temptāre Galba nōlēbat atque aliō sē in hīberna cōnsiliō vēnisse meminerat, aliīs occurrisse rēbus vīderat, māximē frūmentī commeātūsque inopiā permōtus posterō diē, omnibus ēius vīcī aedificiīs incēnsīs in prōvinciam revertī

Galba retires for the winter.

3. colligō (con-), -ere, lēgī, lēctus [**legō,** gather], *a.*, gather together, collect, assemble; recover one's senses *or* courage, rally. *

7. cōn-stō, stāre, stitī, stātus [**stō,** stand], *n.*, stand together *or* still, stand firm, be steadfast; agree, correspond; be settled *or* established: **cōnstat,** *impers.*, it is evident.

10. fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsus, *a.*, pour, discharge, scatter; overthrow, rout. 2

exuō, uere, uī, ūtus, draw out *or* off, put *or* strip off, divest, despoil. 4

13. meminī, -isse, *def. a., n.*, remember, recollect. 2

---

3. suī colligendī: this construction deserves careful study. Read A. 298 *a*, Note; G. 428, R. 1; H. 542, I N. 1; *B.* 339 5. What kind of a pronoun is *suī?* Give its gender, number, and case, and the reasons therefor. Is *colligendī* gerund or gerundive? How does this construction differ from *suī recipiendī* in **4,** 13?

5. castrōrum: i. e. that part of the town which was being used as a camp. **circumventōs:** trans. by a coordinate clause: cf. II, **17,** 4; **5,** 11; I, **5,** 13.

6. XXX: the number would seem to be exaggerated, in view of the fact that Galba's force was hardly in excess of 4,000 men.

10. fūsīs . . . exūtīs, *routed and disarmed.* **armīs:** for the case cf. I, **1,** 14; II, **21,** 12; **31,** 9. What does *exūtīs* agree with? The outcome of this combat illustrates a fundamental defect in the Gauls as warriors. They were exceedingly brave, but lacked staunchness and could not rally from a reverse.

11. saepius etc.: Galba felt that it would be foolish to court another attack by remaining in so dangerous a position. The complete victory which he had gained made it possible for him to retire with honor.

12, 13. aliō cōnsiliō: what was it? see **1,** 5–7. **aliīs . . . vīderat,** (*but*) *had found the situation* (*rēbus*) *unfavorable* (*aliīs*). **rēbus:** for case cf. I, **2,** 5; **16,** 13; **23,** 5; II, **27,** 5.

contendit āc nūllō hoste prohibente aut iter dēmorante incolumem legiōnem in Nantuātīs, inde in Allobrogēs perdūxit ibique hiemāvit.

Crassus sends officers to various Armorican states for supplies.

7. Hīs rēbus gestīs cum omnibus dē causīs Caesar pācātam Galliam exīstimāret, superātīs Belgīs, expulsīs Germānīs, vīctīs in Alpibus Sedūnīs, atque ita initā hieme in Īllyricum profectus esset, quod eās quoque nātiōnēs adīre et regiōnēs cōgnōscere volēbat, subitum bellum in Galliā coortum est. Ēius bellī haec fuit causa P. Crassus adulēscēns cum legiōne septimā proximus mare Ōceanum in Andibus hiemābat. Is, quod in hīs locīs inopia frūmentī erat, praefectōs tribūnōsque mīlitum complūrēs in fīnitimās cīvitātēs frūmentī causā dīmīsit; quō in numerō est

16. **dē-moror, 1.** [**moror,** delay], *a.*, delay, restrain, hinder. 1
incolumis, -e, unhurt, uninjured, safe. *

4. **hiems (hiemps), hiemis** [*Sanscrit,* **himas,** snow], F., winter time, winter. *
5. **subitus, -a, -um** [**subeō,** come by stealth], unexpected, sudden. 2
6. **co-orior, orīrī, ortus sum** [**cum** + **orior,** rise], *n.*, arise, spring up, rise with force, break forth. *
7. **adulēscēns (adō-), -entis** [**adolēscō,** grow up], M., F., youth; young man *or* woman, *from seventeen to forty years of age.* *
mare, -is, N., sea; **mare Oceanum,** the ocean. *
9. **praefectus, -ī** [**praeficiō,** set over], M., overseer, commander, officer, general (**equitum**); governor of a province. *

---

17. **inde in Allobrogēs:** Galba marched west along the south shore of Lake Leman and probably wintered at Vienna, the capital of the Allobroges.

The events recited in the following chapters belong to the year 56 B. C.

1. **omnibus dē causīs:** explained by the following abl. abs.

2, 3. **pācātam,** *subdued.* See on II, 1, 7. **exīstimāret:** for mode cf. I, 43, 13; 26, 6; 14, 17. **superātīs Belgīs etc.:** trans. by causal clauses: cf. II, 1-33. **expulsīs Germānīs:** the army of Ariovistus (I, 30-54.) **Sedūnīs:** they were the most influential of the Alpine tribes and are mentioned as representing all of them.

4. **initā hieme:** for trans. cf. II, 2, 3. **profectus esset:** from Cisalpine Gaul, whither he had repaired in the fall of 57 B. C.; see II, 35, 9; III, 1, 1. For mode cf. *exīstimāret* l. 2. **eās:** i. e. of *Illyricum.*

7, 8. **proximus . . . Oceanum:** i. e., nearer than any other of the officers of the army. For the case see on *propius,* I, 46, 2.

9. **praefectōs:** see Int. 101. **tribūnōs:** see Int. 90, 91.

T. Terrasidius mīssus in Esubiōs, M. Trebius Gallus in Coriosolitas, Q. Velānius cum T. Siliō in Venetōs.

These tribes, led by the Veneti, unite and demand their hostages from Crassus.

8. Hūius est cīvitātis longē amplissima auctōritās omnis ōrae maritimae regiōnum eārum, quod et nāvēs habent Venetī plūrimās, quibus in Britanniam nāvigāre cōnsuērunt, et scientiā atque ūsū nauticārum rērum reliquōs antecēdunt et in māgnō impetū maris atque apertō paucīs portibus interiectīs, quōs tenent ipsī, omnēs ferē, quī eō marī ūtī cōnsuērunt, habent vēctīgālēs. Ab hīs fit initium retinendī Siliī atque Velāniī, quod per eōs suōs sē obsidēs, quōs Crassō dedissent, reciperātūrōs exīstimābant.

11. Terrasidius, -ī, M., *a Roman name. E. g.* Titus Terrasidius, *a military tribune.* 2

Trebius, -ī, M., *a Roman family name:* Marcus Trebius Gallus, *a military tribune.* 2

12. Velānius, -ī, M., *a Roman gentile name:* Quintus Velanius, *a military tribune.* 2

Silius, -ī, M., *a Roman gentile name:* Titus Silius, *a military tribune.* 2

1. amplus, -a, -um, of large extent, spacious, large. *

2. ōra, -ae, F., border, margin; coast, shore. 4

4. nāvigō, 1. [nāvis + agō, put in motion], *n.*, set sail, sail; proceed. *

nauticus, -a, -um [nauta, sailor], of a sailor, naval, nautical. 1

5. ante-cēdō, -ere, cessī [cēdō, go], *a.*, *n.*, go before, precede, excel, surpass. *

6. portus, -ūs [portō, carry; cf. **porta**], M., harbor, haven, port. *

7. vēctīgālis, -e [vēctīgal, revenue], paying revenue *or* tribute, tributary. 2

9. reciperō (recup-), 1. *a.*, recover. *

1, 2. hūius . . . eārum, *the power of this tribe* (the Veneti) *is very great along the whole sea coast in these parts.* **longē:** the superlative with *longē* in Caesar, is commonly the superlative absolute.

3. in Britanniam: the Veneti seem to have monopolized the traffic between the continent and the southeastern coast of the island.

4. scientiā, ūsū: for case cf. I, 1, 3; **1,** 12; II, **15,** 4; **17,** 14. **nauticārum:** the adj. ending **-icus** (**-acus**) signifies *of* or *belonging to.* A. 164, *c*; G. 185, I; H. 330; *B.* 151 2. What other endings have the same signification?

5, 6. in māgnō . . apertō, *in* (*consequence of*) *the great impetuosity of the open sea.* What emphasis belongs to the word following *atque?* **māgnō impetū:** this part of the Atlantic has always been the terror of mariners.

7. habent vēctīgālēs, *they treat all as tributaries.* i. e., the ship masters paid a tax for the privilege of using these ports as harbors of refuge. **ab hīs** etc., *these began* (hostilities) *by arresting Silius* etc.

Hōrum auctōritāte fīnitimī adductī, ut sunt Gallōrum subita et repentīna cōnsilia, eādem dē causā Trebium Terrasidiumque retinent, et celeriter missīs lēgātīs per suōs prīncipēs inter sē coniūrant, nihil nisi commūnī cōnsiliō āctūrōs eundemque omnis fōrtūnae exitum esse lātūrōs, reliquāsque cīvitātēs sollicitant, ut in eā lībertāte, quam ā māiōribus accēperint, permanēre quam Rōmānōrum servitūtem perferre māllent. Omnī ōrā maritimā celeriter ad suam sententiam perductā commūnem legātiōnem ad P. Crassum mittunt, sī velit suōs recipere, obsidēs sibi remittat.

Caesar equips a fleet to attack them.

9. Quibus dē rēbus Caesar ab Crassō certior factus, quod ipse aberat longius, nāvēs interim longās aedificārī in flūmine Ligere, quod īnfluit in Ōceanum, rēmigēs ex prōvinciā īnstituī, nautās gubernātōrēsque comparārī iubet. Hīs rēbus celeriter administrātīs ipse, cum prīmum per annī tempus potuit, ad exercitum contendit. Venetī

14. **exitus, -ūs** [eō, go], M., going out, exit; issue, result, end. *

15. **per-maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsus** [maneō, remain], *n.*, stay through *or* to the end; hold out, endure. *

16. **mālō, mālle, māluī** [magis + volō, wish], *a.*, *n.*, wish more *or* rather, prefer. 2

3. **aedificō, 1.** [aedēs, building + faciō], *a.*, build, construct; erect, establish. 3

Liger, -eris, M., *the river Loire.* *

rēmex, -igis [rēmus, oar + agō], M., rower, oarsman. 1

4. **nauta** (*contr. of* **nāvita**), **-ae** [**nāvis**], M., sailor, seaman, mariner. 2

gubernātor, -ōris [gubernō, steer *or* pilot], M., steersman, pilot. 2

10. **fīnitimī**: the *Esubii* and *Coriosolites.* **ut,** *as, in fact. Ut* here, as frequently, introduces what is asserted as a general truth in connection with some illustration. **subita,** etc. On this characteristic of the Gauls, see II, **1,** 11.

13. **commūnī cōnsiliō**: see Int. 68. (*sē*) **āctūrōs** (*esse*), *that they would do.*

18, 19. **velit, remittat**: form in direct discourse?

2. **aberat longius**: in Illyricum.

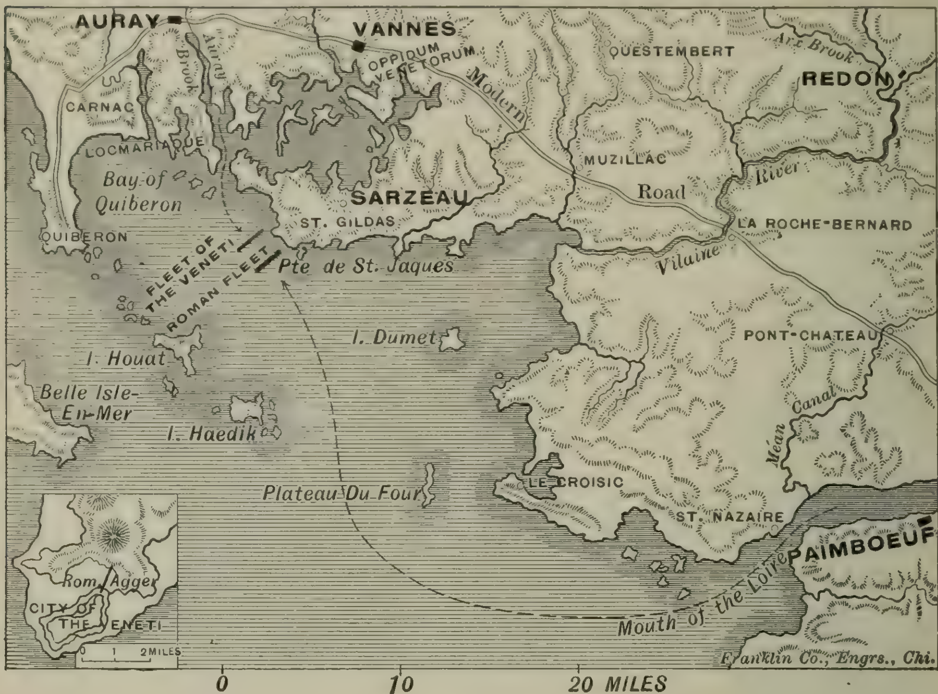
nāvēs longās: see Int. 170.

3, 4. **rēmigēs, gubernātōrēs**: see Int. 172. **nautās**: they managed the sails exclusively. Why would it be difficult for Crassus to procure *nautae* and *gubernātōrēs* in sufficient numbers?

5, 6. **cum . . . potuit,** *as soon as the time of year permitted.* Caesar was at Lucca in Cisalpine Gaul in April, (see Int. 28), and probably did not join the army on the Loire until sometime in May.

The Veneti prepare for attack and summon allies.

reliquaeque item cīvitātēs cōgnitō Caesaris adventū, simul quod, quantum in sē facinus admīsissent, intellegēbant, lēgātōs, quod nōmen ad omnēs nā-



tiōnēs sānctum inviolātumque semper fuisset, retentōs ab sē et in vīncula coniectōs, prō māgnitūdine perīculī bellum parā-

8. facinus, -oris [**faciō**], N., deed; misdeed, outrage, crime. *

10. sānctus, -a, -um [**sanciō**, make sacred], sacred, holy, inviolable. 3

in-violātus, -a, -um [**violō**, injure], uninjured, unharmed, inviolate. 4

---

8. quantum . . . admīsissent, *how great a wrong they had done.* For the mode cf. I, **12**, 3; **21**, 8; II, **5**, 6; **20**, 10.

9–11. lēgātōs . . . coniectōs (*esse*), *that ambassadors had been arrested etc.*, in appos. to *facinus.* These (*lēgātōs*) were not envoys in any proper sense. Cf. the statement in **7**, 8-10, relative to the object of Crassus in sending them out. However, from Caesar's point of view, they were his *lēgātī*, charged with a highly important duty. **quod nōmen,** *a name which.* When the antecedent (*nōmen*) of the relative is in apposition with the main clause, or with some word of it (*lēgātōs*), it is always put in the relative clause (*quod nōmen* not *nōmen quod*).

re et māximē ea, quae ad ūsum nāvium pertinent, prōvidēre īnstituunt, hōc māiōre spē, quod multum nātūrā locī cōnfīdēbant. Pedestria esse itinera concīsa aestuāriīs, nāvigātiōnem impedītam propter īnscientiam locōrum paucitātemque portuum sciēbant, neque nostrōs exercitūs propter frūmentī inopiam diūtius apud sē morārī posse cōnfīdēbant: āc iam ut omnia contrā opīniōnem acciderent, tamen sē plūrimum nā-

13. multum *adv.* [*acc. of* **multus,** much], much, very, greatly, especially.

14. nāvigātiō, -ōnis [**nāvigō,** sail], F., sailing, voyage, navigation.

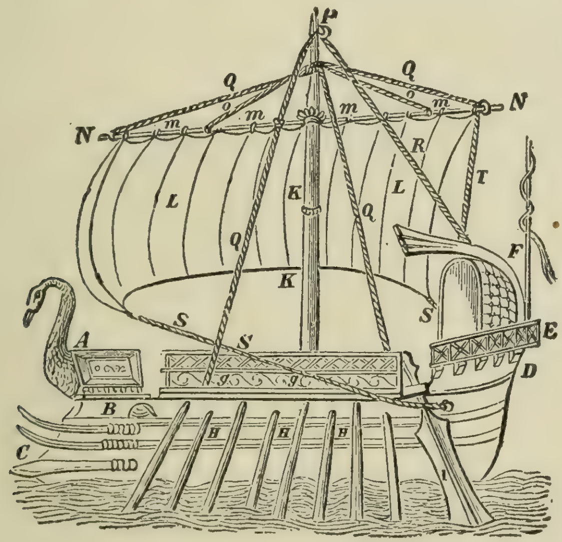
15. īnscientia, -ae, [**īnsciēns,** not knowing], F., want of knowledge, ignorance.

14. aestuāriīs: inlets in which the tide (*aestus*) rose and fell.

15. impedītam (*esse*), *was difficult.*

17. apud . . . posse, *would not be able to stay among them.* The future idea is contained in *cōnfīdēbant.* **ut,** *although, even if.* For the concessive use of *ut* see A. 313, *a;* G. 610; H. 515, III; *B.* 308.

18, 19. plūrimum posse: for trans. see on I, 3, 20. **facultātem,** *a sufficient number.*



A. *prōra.*
B. *oculus.*
C. *rostrum.*
E. *puppis.*
F. *aplustre.*
H. *rēmī.*
I. *gubernāculum.*
K. *mālus.*
L. *vēlum.*
m. antemna.
N. *cornua.*
S. *pedēs.*

vibus posse, Rōmānōs neque ūllam facultātem habēre nāvium neque eōrum locōrum, ubi bellum gestūrī essent, vada, portūs, īnsulās nōvisse; āc longē aliam esse nāvigātiōnem in conclūsō marī atque in vāstissimō atque apertissimō Ōceanō perspiciēbant. Hīs initīs cōnsiliīs oppida mūniunt, frūmenta ex agrīs in oppida comportant, nāvēs in Venetiam, ubi Caesarem prīmum bellum gestūrum cōnstābat, quam plūrimās possent, cōgunt. Sōciōs sibi ad id bellum Osismōs, Lexoviōs, Namnetēs, Ambiliātōs, Morinōs, Diablintēs, Menapiōs adscīscunt; auxilia ex Britanniā, quae contrā eās regiōnēs posita est, arcessunt.

Caesar plans to prevent their union.

10. Erant hae difficultātēs bellī gerendī, quās suprā ostendimus, sed multa Caesarem tamen ad

21. īnsula, -ae, F., island.

nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtus, *a.*, learn, become acquainted *or* familiar with; *in pf.*, have learned (*and hence*) know.

conclūdō, -ere, clūdī, clūsus [**claudō,** close], *a.*, shut up, imprison, close, confine: **conclūsum mare,** an inland sea.

22. vāstus, -a, -um [**vāstō,** lay waste], waste; vast, boundless, immense.

24. Venetia, -ae, F., the territory of the Veneti.

26. Lexoviī, -ōrum, M., *a Gallic tribe southwest of the Seine; capital,* Noviomagus, *now* Lisieux. ⁂

Namnetēs, -um, M., *a Gallic tribe about modern* Nantes. 1

27. Ambiliātī, -ōrum, M., *a Gallic people about modern* Abberville *in Picardy.* 1

Diablintēs, -um: see **Aulercī, II, 34,** 3. 1

---

20. locōrum: limits *vada,* etc.

21, 22. longē aliam . . . atque, *that navigation was a very different thing . . . from* (*what it was*) etc. See on **atque, I, 28,** 17. **conclūsō mārī:** in allusion to the Mediterranean, the "Roman Lake."

23. hīs initīs cōnsiliīs: reference is made to the preparations mentioned in lines 11 and 12, above. **frūmenta:** meaning in pl.? see on I, **16,** 4.

24. Venetiam: the fleet of the confederates probably rendezvoused in the Bay of Quiberon at the mouth of the Auray river.

25. quam plūrimās: for trans. cf. I, **33,** 19; **7,** 3; **3,** 3.

26. Osismōs, etc.: coast tribes reaching as far north as the mouth of the Rhine.

28. ex Britanniā: the Gauls were accustomed to draw support in their wars from their kinfolk in Britain.

2. ostendimus: in **9,** 13–20. **multa,** *many considerations.*

id bellum incitābant: iniūria retentōrum equitum Rōmānōrum, rebelliō facta post dēditiōnem, dēfectiō datīs obsidibus, tot cīvitātum coniūrātiō, imprīmīs, nē hāc parte neglēctā reliquae nātiōnēs sibi idem licēre arbitrārentur. Itaque cum intellegeret omnēs ferē Gallōs novīs rēbus studēre et ad bellum mōbiliter celeriterque excitārī, omnēs autem hominēs nātūrā lībertātī studēre et condiciōnem servitūtis ōdisse, priusquam plūrēs cīvitātēs cōnspīrārent, partiendum sibi āc lātius distribuendum exercitum putāvit.

4. **rebelliō, -ōnis** [**rebellō**, renew war], F., renewal of war *or* hostilities. 3
dēfectiō, -ōnis [**dēficiō**, fail], F., falling away, desertion, revolt. *
5. **tot,** *indecl. num. adj.*, so many.
imprīmīs (inpr-), *adv.* [in + *abl. pl. of* **prīmus**], among the first, especially, chiefly. *
neglegō, -ere, lēxī, lēctus [**nec** + **legō**, pick up, choose], *a.*, not heed, disregard, neglect. *
8. **mōbiliter** [**mōbilis**, movable], *adv.*, rapidly, easily. 1
excitō, 1. [**citō**, rouse], *a.*, call *or* rouse forth, excite, animate, arouse; erect, construct (*towers*); kindle (*fires*). *
10. **cōn-spīrō, 1.** [**spīrō**, breathe], *n.*, breathe *or* agree together, combine, unite; plot, conspire. 1
partior, 4. [**pars**, part], *a.*, part, share, divide, distribute. 5
11. **dis-tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus** [**tribuō**, assign], *a.*, assign apart, divide, distribute. *

---

3. **iniūria:** *the outrage of having retained Roman Knights.* The wrong had not been done to them, but to the Roman state through them. **equitum:** i. e., the *tribūnī mīlitum;* see Int. 89. For the case see A. 214 *f;* G. 361; H. 396, VI; *B.* 202.

4. **post dēditiōnem:** see on II, **34,** 5. **datīs obsidibus:** the stability of Caesar's conquests in Gaul would be seriously shaken if this breach of good faith were not speedily punished.

5, 6. **imprīmīs nē,** *and particularly* (*the apprehension*) *that.* For trans. of *nē* cf. II, **1,** 6; I, **19,** 11. **hāc parte neglēctā:** The Abl. Abs. is here equivalent to a conditional clause; *if he should not attend to* etc. **parte:** i. e., the part of Gaul which was in open revolt. **reliquae nātiōnēs:** such as the Belgae. **sibi idem licēre:** since they had all likewise submitted and given hostages to Caesar.

7. **intellegeret:** for mode cf. I, **9,** 3. **rēbus:** for case cf. I, **2,** 4; **25,** 20; **45;** 6; II, **16,** 6. So also *lībertātī* l. 9.

10. **cōnspīrārent:** translate its clause after the principal clause, and for mode cf. II, **12,** 2; I, **19,** 13. **partiendum:** remember that the gerundive of deponent verbs is always passive in meaning; hence *partiendum* and *distribuendum* are parallel. **sibi:** for case cf. II, **20,** 1; I, **38,** 5; **11,** 15.

11. **distribuendum:** so as to occupy the country and overawe the Gauls.

He sends troops to the neighboring tribes and marches against the Veneti.

11. Itaque T. Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverōs, quī proximī flūminī Rhēnō sunt, cum equitātū mittit. Huic mandat, Rēmōs reliquōsque Belgās adeat atque in officiō contineat Germānōsque, quī auxiliō ā Belgīs arcessītī dīcēbantur, sī per vim nāvibus flūmen trānsīre cōnentur, prohibeat. P. Crassum cum cohortibus legiōnāriīs XII et māgnō numerō equitātūs in Aquitāniam proficīscī iubet, nē ex hīs nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur āc tantae nātiōnēs coniungantur. Q. Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus in Venellōs, Coriosolitās Lexoviōsque mittit, quī eam manum distinendam cūret. D. Brūtum

4. **officium, -ī** [**opus**, work + **faciō**], N., service, function, allegiance, duty; official duty, business. *

11. **D.**, *abbreviation for the praenomen* **Decimus.** 1

Brūtus, -ī, M., *a Roman family name. E. g.*, Decimus Junius

---

2. **cum equitātū:** Caesar had no need of the cavalry in his projected maritime operations against the Veneti.

3. **Rēmōs:** this tribe may have needed military support at this time in view of the unrest prevailing among the Belgae. **adeat,** *to visit*: for mode cf. I, **20**, 14. What conj. is omitted? Notice that Caesar's directions to Labienus are put in the indirect form.

4. **Germānōsque** etc., *and to stop the Germans* (*who were said to have been sent for as aid by the Belgae*), *in case* (**sī**) *they tried* etc. **auxiliō:** for case cf. I, **18**, 28, *contemptuī;* I, **25**, 6 *impedīmento.*

5. **Belgīs:** they were repeating the mistake of the Sequani (see Int. 79), with, however, more justification, since they sustained closer relations with the Germans (II, **1**, 3). **arcessītī:** sc. *esse*, and for the case see A. 271 *c;* H. 536 2 1); *B.* 332, *c*). **dīcebantur:** not part of Caesar's directions to Labienus, but inserted by way of explanation to the reader. All such clauses take the indicative: cf. **2**, 4. **flūmen:** the Rhine.

6. **cōnentur:** part of his instructions to Labienus. Why therefore the mode? **prohibeat:** for mode cf. l. 3. What other verb in the sentence is a parallel? **cohortibus:** see Int. 87, 88. **legiōnāriīs:** i. e., Roman infantry in distinction from the cavalry mentioned above, which was drawn from the Gauls and other allies. **XII:** about 4,000 men.

8. **nātiōnibus,** i. e., the Aquitanians. **auxilia mittantur:** there was little danger of this, on account of the lack of race sympathy between the Aquitanians and Celts; but Caesar probably knew nothing of this at the time. **Galliam:** i. e., Celtic Gaul, in the western part of which the main operations were to be carried on.

10. **tribus:** how large a force? See Int. 86.

11. **quī . . . cūret,** *to see that these troops be kept away* (from the

adulēscentem classī Gallicīsque nāvibus, quās ex Pictonibus et Santonīs reliquīsque pācātīs regiōnibus convenīre iusserat, praeficit et, cum prīmum posset, in Venetōs proficīscī iubet. Ipse eō pedestribus cōpiīs contendit.

12. Erant ēiusmodī ferē sitūs oppidōrum, ut posita in extrēmīs lingulīs prōmunturiīsque neque pedibus aditum habērent, cum ex altō sē aestus incitāvisset, quod bis accidit semper hōrārum XXIIII spatiō, neque nāvibus,

Situation of the strongholds of the Veneti.

Brutus Albinus, *one of Caesar's legati in the Gallic war, and in the war with Pompeius. He took part in the conspiracy against Caesar, and was killed in Gaul by order of Antonius.* 4

12. **classis, -is,** F., class, division; army, *called out for duty; esp.* fleet, *including the marines.* 5

Pictonēs, -um, M., *a Gallic tribe, south of the Loire.* 3

1. **ēiusmodī** [*for* **ēius modī,** *a genitive of quality*], of such a kind *or* sort, such.

situs, -ūs [**sinō,** let (*be in a place or condition*)], M., situation, site, position. 5

2. **lingula, -ae** [**lingua,** tongue], F., a little tongue, a tongue of land. 1

prōmunturium, -ī [**prō-mineō,** be prominent, project], N., headland, promontory. 1

3. **aestus, -ūs,** M., heat, boiling, surging; tide. **minuente aestū,** at ebb tide. *

4. **bis,** *num. adv.* [*for* **duis,** *fr.* **duo,** two], on two occasions, twice. 4

Veneti). **distinendam:** for this use of the gerundive see on I, **13,** 2. **cūret:** for mode cf. I, **7,** 10; **21,** 4; **50,** 7; II, **17,** 2.

12. **classī:** where was it? See **9,** 3. **classī, nāvibus:** for the case cf. I, **2,** 5; **12,** 18; II, **14,** 7.

14. **cum prīmum:** as in II, **2,** 4.

15. **eō:** Caesar probably visited the fleet first, then moved along the coast, laying siege to the towns in succession. After the distribution of troops described above, Caesar had left three legions and eight cohorts (see on II, **2,** 2), supposing Galba to have joined his chief with his one legion. One legion was probably assigned to the fleet, leaving Caesar a force of two legions and eight cohorts, or about 10,000 men, with which to operate against the Veneti.

1. **sitūs oppidōrum:** see map of the campaign against the Veneti, p. 264, small plan.

2. **extrēmīs lingulīs:** for trans. cf. II, **8,** 12. For the ending *-ulus* see on II, **30,** 2. **prōmunturiīs:** Compare the ending **-urium** (**-ārium, -ōrium**) with the English ending *-ury, -ary, -ory,* in designations of place.

3. **pedibus,** *on foot,* i. e., by land. At high tide the low ground behind the towns was overflowed. **ex altō,** *from the deep* (*sea*). **sē incitāvisset,** *had rushed in.*

4. **nāvibus:** sc. *aditum habērent.*

quod rūrsus minuente aestū nāvēs in vadīs afflīctārentur. Ita utrāque rē oppidōrum oppūgnātiō impediēbātur; āc sī quandō māgnitūdine operis fōrte superātī, extrūsō marī aggere āc mōlibus atque hīs oppidī moenibus adaequātīs, suīs fōrtūnīs dēspērāre coeperant, māgnō numerō nāvium appulsō, cūius reī summam facultātem habēbant, sua dēportābant omnia sēque in proxima oppida recipiēbant: ibi sē rūrsus īsdem oportūnitātibus locī dēfendēbant. Haec eō facilius māgnam partem aestātis faciēbant, quod nostrae nāvēs tempestātibus dētinēbantur, summaque erat vāstō atque apertō marī, māgnīs aestibus, rārīs āc prope nūllīs portibus, difficultās nāvigandī,

5. **afflīctō** (ad-), 1. [*freq. of* **afflīgō**, strike against, damage], *a.*, damage greatly, shatter, injure; harass, distress. 2

7. **quandō**, *adv.*, *indef.*, at any time, ever. 1

ex-trūdō, -ere, trūsī, trūsus [**trūdō**, thrust], *a.*, thrust *or* push out, shut out, drive away. 1

8. **mōlēs, -is**, F., mass; massive structure; dam, pier, dike, mole. 1

9. **appellō, -ere, pulī, pulsus**, drive *or* force to; bring to *or* in, land. 3

10. **dē-portō**, 1. [**portō**, carry], *a.*, carry off *or* away, remove. 1

12. **oportūnitās** (oppor), **-tātis** [**opportūnus**, fit], F., fitness, convenience, suitableness; fit time, favorable position *or* opportunity; advantage. *

13. **tempestās, -tātis** [**tempus**, time], F., time, season; weather; *esp.* bad weather, storm, tempest. *

14. **dē-tineō, -ēre, -uī, tentus** [**teneō**, hold], *a.*, hold off *or* back; hinder, detain. 2

15. **rārus, -a, -um**, loose, thin; scattered, far apart; few. *

5, 6. **minuente aestū**, *when the tide ebbs.* For case cf. I, **2**, 2; **25**, 5; II, **2**, 3. **utrāque rē**: both by high and low tide, making united effort impossible.

7, 8. **māgnitūdine**, *extent.* **operis**: explained by *extrūsō* etc. **extrūsō marī, hīs . . . adaequātīs**: trans. by causal clauses: cf. II, **12**, 14, 15. **hīs** i. e., *aggere mōlibus.* Caesar's method of attack was to extend two parallel moles across the low ground towards the town. When these moles had nearly reached the walls, the besiegers, taking advantage of low tide, completed them hastily, thus shutting the water out of the space between the dikes.

9. **māgnō . . . appulsō**: trans. by a principal clause and insert a connective.

10. **cūius reī** = *quārum:* a common circumlocution in Caesar. **facultātem**: see **9**, 19.

12. **eō**: for case cf. II, **20**, 4; I, I, **14**, 1; **16**, 18; **32**, 9.

13. **partem**: for case cf. II, **16**, 1; I, **26**, 15; **3**, 12.

14, 15. **summa**: construe with

Description of their ships.

13. Namque ipsōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum factae armātaeque erant: carīnae aliquantō plāniōrēs quam nostrārum nāvium, quō facilius vada āc dēcessum aestūs excipere possent; prōrae admodum ērēctae atque item puppēs ad māgnitūdinem fluctuum tempestātumque accommodātae, nāvēs tōtae factae ex rōbore ad quamvīs vim et contumēliam perferendam; trānstra ex pedālibus in altitūdinem trabibus

1. **namque** [nam, for + -que], *conj.*, for indeed, for; *more emphatic than* **nam.** 5

2. **carīna, -ae,** F., hull, bottom *of a ship.* 1

aliquantō, *adv.* [**alius** + **quantus**], in some degree, somewhat, a little. 1

plānus, -a, -um, even, level, flat, plain.

3. **dēcessus, -ūs** [**dēcēdō,** withdraw], M., withdrawal, departure; ebbing *or* fall (**aestūs**). 1

4. **prōra, -ae,** F., the fore part of a ship, prow. 1

ad-modum, *adv.* [**modus,** measure], up to the measure *or* degree; very much, very; *with num.*, fully; *with neg.*, at all. *

ērigō, -ere, rēxī, rēctus [**regō,** direct], *a.*, lift *or* raise (up); *p.p. as adj.*, standing upright, high. 2

puppis, -is, F., stern *or* poop *of a ship.* 2

5. **fluctus, -ūs** [**fluō,** flow], M., flowing, billow, flood, wave. 4

ac(ad-)-commodātus, -a, -um, fit, adapted to, appropriate. 1

6. **rōbur, -oris,** N., oak, oak timber. 1

7. **trānstrum, -ī** [**trāns**], N., crossbeam *or* timber; bench for rowers, thwart. 1

pedālis, -e [**pēs,** a foot], of a foot *in thickness or diameter.* 1

---

difficultās. vāstō . . . portibus: for case see on l. 7, 8 above.

1. namque: the superiority of the Veneti over the Romans in these waters is explained by reference to the construction of their ships.

2, 3. aliquantō . . . nāvium, (*were*) *considerably flatter than* (*the hulls of*) *our ships.* **quō facilius,** *to meet the shallows better at ebb tide.* **excipere:** lit., *to meet* something coming, *to withstand* something. The word belongs rather to *dēcessum* than to *vada,* with which a corresponding verb must be understood.

4. possent: for mode cf. I, **8,** 7; **14,** 14; II, **17,** 17. **prōrae, puppēs:** see Int. 170.

6, 7. tōtae, *entirely.* How is the adj. used? Cf. II, **23,** 9; **22,** 6. **ad . . . perferendam,** *to withstand any violent shocks.* What does the phrase denote? Cf. II, **1,** 13; I, **54,** 8; **5,** 8. **trānstra:** here the beams supporting the deck, not the rowers' benches, because the Veneti had no oarsmen. **pedālibus . . . trabibus,** (*made*) *of timbers a foot in thickness* (*in altitūdinem*). For case of *trabibus* see A. 244, 2; B. 84; G. 396; H. 415, III; P. 405, *c*, Note.





cōnfīxa clāvīs ferreīs digitī pollicis crassitūdine; ancorae prō fūnibus ferreīs catēnīs revinctae; pellēs prō vēlīs alūtaeque tenuiter cōnfectae, sīve propter līnī inopiam atque ēius ūsūs īnscientiam, sīve eō, quod est magis vērīsimile, quod tantās tempestātēs Oceanī tantōsque impetūs ventōrum sustinērī āc tanta onera nāvium regī vēlīs nōn satis commodē posse arbitrābantur. Cum hīs nāvibus nostrae classī ēiusmodī congressus erat, ut ūnā celeritāte et pulsū rēmōrum praestāret, reliqua prō locī nātūrā, prō vī tempestātum illīs

8. **cōn-fīgō, -ere, fīxī fīxus** [**fīgō**, fix], *a.*, fix, fasten *or* nail together; fasten. 1
clāvus, -ī [**claudō**, close], M., nail, pin, spike (*usually of metal*). 1
ferreus, -a, -um [**ferrum**, iron], of iron, iron. 3
digitus, -ī, M., finger; *as measure of length*, an inch, the 16th part of a Roman foot; **digitus pollex**, the thumb. 2
pollex, pollicis [**polleō**, be strong], M., the thumb. 1
crassitūdō, -inis [**crassus**, thick], F., thickness. 2
ancora, -ae, F., anchor. *
9. **fūnis, -is**, M., cable, rope. 4
catēna, -ae, F., chain, fetter. 4
re-vinciō, -īre, vinxī, vinctus [**vinciō**, bind], *a.*, bind back *or* fast, fasten, bind. *
vēlum, -ī, N., covering, veil; sail; **vēla dare** *or* **facere**, set sail. 3
alūta, -ae [**alumen**, alum, *used in tanning*], F., tanned leather, leather. 1
10. **tenuiter** [**tenuis**, thin], thinly, slightly, 1
līnum, -ī, N., flax, linen, canvass. 1
11. **vērīsimilis, -e** [**vērum**, truth + **similis**], like the truth; probable, likely. 1
12. **ventus, -ī**, M., wind. *
13. **regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctus**, guide, direct, control.
15. **congressus, -ūs** [**congredior**, meet], M., meeting; hostile meeting, encounter, conflict. 1
pulsus, -ūs [**pellō**, strike], M., stroke, beat: **pulsus rēmōrum**, rowing. 1
rēmus, -ī, M., oar. *

---

8. **crassitūdine**: for case cf. **4**, 9: what takes the place here of the adjective? **prō**, *instead of.*

9, 10. **pellēs . . . cōnfectae**, *raw hides and thinly dressed leather (served) as sails.* It has been suggested that the Veneti used sails of leather, so as to use them as tents when lying at anchor.

12. **tantās . . . ventōrum**, *so tempestuous a sea and such raging winds.*

13, 14. **regī nōn posse**, *could not be managed.*

14. **nostrae** etc.: *our fleet had a conflict of such a nature that it had the advantage merely in* etc. **classī**: for case cf. I, **7**, 10; **11**, 13; **47**, 15; II, **6**, 10.

15. **pulsū rēmōrum**: the Gallic vessels were not propelled by oars.

16. **reliqua**, *all other things.* **prō**, *such as.*

essent aptiōra et accommodātiōra. Neque enim hīs nostrae rōstrō nocēre poterant (tanta in iīs erat fīrmitūdō), neque propter altitūdinem facile tēlum adigēbātur, et eādem dē causā minus commodē cōpulīs continēbantur. Accēdēbat, ut, cum saevīre ventus coepisset et sē ventō dedissent, et tempestātem ferrent facilius et in vadīs cōnsisterent tūtius, et ab aestū relīctae nihil saxa et cautēs timērent; quārum rērum omnium nostrīs nāvibus cāsus erat extimēscendus.

Encounter of the fleets. The enemy's sail-yards are cut away.

14. Complūribus expūgnātīs oppidīs Caesar, ubi intellēxit frūstrā tantum labōrem sūmī, neque hostium fugam captīs oppidīs reprimī neque iīs

17. aptus, -a, -um [*p.p. of obsol.* **apō**, fasten, fit], fitted, suited, adapted: **illīs aptiōra**, more favorable to their side. 3

18. rōstrum, -ī [**rōdō**, gnaw, consume], N., beak *of a bird;* mouth *of an animal;* beak or prow *of a ship.* 2

noceō, -ēre, -uī, *n.*, injure, hurt. *

fīrmitūdō, -inis [**fīrmus**, strong], F., strength, firmness, solidity. 2

20. cōpula, -ae [**cum** + *obsol.* **apō**, fasten], F., bond; grappling-hook; grapnel, hold-fast. 1

21. saeviō, -īre, -iī, -ītus [**saevus**, raging], *n.*, rage; be fierce *or* violent. 1

22. tūtō [**tūtus**, safe], *abl. as adv.*, safely, securely. 3

23. cautēs, -is [*akin to* **cos, cotis**, whetstone], F., a sharp *or* pointed rock, reef. 1

24. ex-timēscō, -ere, timuī [*incept. fr.* **timeō**, fear], be afraid *or* in a panic, fear much *or* greatly, dread. 1

3. reprimō, -ere, pressī, pressus [**premō**, press], *a.*, press *or* keep back, curb, check, restrain. 2

---

17. hīs: i. e., the ships of the enemy. For the case cf. I, **2**, 4; **nostrae**: sc. *nāvēs*.

19. facile adigēbātur: turn into the active form in English: *it was not easy* etc.

20, 21. accēdēbat, ut, *there was the additional* (advantage) *that.* What verbs does **ut** introduce? Explain their mode. **ventō**: the noun is employed instead of *eī* as *ventō sē dare, to run before the wind,* was a familiar nautical phrase. For similar repetitions cf. II, **19**, 10; I, **48**, 1, 2.

22. cōnsisterent tūtius: for the reason, see line 2 above, *carīnae . . . plāniōrēs.*

23, 24. quārum etc., *our ships had to dread peril from all these circumstances.* **nāvibus**: for case cf. I, **11**, 15; II, **20**, 1.

1. expūgnātīs: by the method described in **12**, 6. ff.

2–4. neque . . . posse, *nor could they be injured.* For case of **iīs** cf. *hīs* **13**, 17. What voice is **nocērī?** Is it a trans. or intrans. verb? How are such verbs used in the passive? Cf. I, **22**, 9. **exspectandam**: Caesar encamped on the heights of St. Gildas. **ubi**: join with *prīmum* and trans. like *cum prīmum.*

nocērī posse, statuit exspectandam classem. Quae ubi convēnit āc prīmum ab hostibus vīsa est, circiter CCXX nāvēs eōrum parātissimae atque omnī genere armōrum ōrnātissimae profectae ex portū nostrīs adversae cōnstitērunt; neque satis Brūtō, quī classī praeerat, vel tribūnīs mīlitum centuriōnibusque, quibus singulae nāvēs erant attribūtae, cōnstābat, quid agerent aut quam ratiōnem pūgnae īnsisterent. Rōstrō enim nocērī nōn posse cōgnōverant: turribus autem excitātīs tamen hās altitūdō puppium ex barbarīs nāvibus superābat, ut neque ex īnferiōre locō satis commodē tēla adigī possent et mīssa ab Gallīs gravius acciderent. Ūna erat māgnō ūsuī rēs praeparāta ā nostrīs, falcēs praeacūtae īnsertae affīxaeque

6. **genus, -eris** [gen- *in* gīgnō, beget], N., descent, origin; race, class, tribe; sort, kind, nature. *

ōrnō, 1. adorn, furnish, equip: *in p. p. as adj.*, equipped, furnished, fitted out. 2

15. **prae-parō**, 1. [parō, prepare], *a.*, prepare beforehand, provide. 3

falx, falcis, F., sickle, pruning-hook, falchion. *

īn-serō, -ere, seruī, sertus [serō, entwine], *a.*, thrust in *or* into, insert. 1

af(ad-)-fīgō, -ere, fīxī, fīxus [fīgō, fix], *a.*, affix, annex, fasten to attach. 1

---

6. **armōrum:** including everything necessary for the defense and management of the ships during the battle.

7. **portū:** see on **9**, 24. The battle was fought in the Bay of Quiberon in full view of Caesar and his army. **nostrīs:** sc. *nāvibus* (cf. **13**, 17) and for case cf. I, **1**, 10; II, **2**, 6; **9**, 7.

8. **Brūtō, tribūnīs, centuriōnibus:** constr. with **cōnstābat**, l. 9.

10. **quid** etc., *what* (*they were*) *to do, or what plan of fighting to adopt.* **agerent, īnsisterent:** for mode cf. I, **12**, 3. **rōstrō:** abl. of instrument.

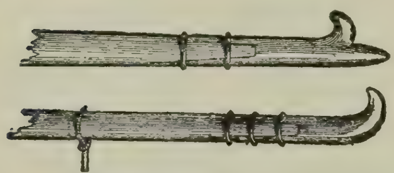
11. **nocērī:** sc. *nāvibus hostium* and for the voice and trans. see on l. 4. **cōgnōverant,** *they knew.* For the preteritive verb see on I, **19**, 11. **turribus autem excitātīs,** *even though towers were erected.* These *turrēs* were erected on the fore and hinder decks. When not in use they were taken down. Their object was similar to that of the fore-top in modern men-of-war, and like that they were often fitted with artillery.

13. **adigī possent:** like *adigēbātur* in **13**, 19.

14. **mīssa:** *and those thrown* etc.

longuriīs nōn absimilī fōrmā mūrālium falcium. Hīs cum fūnēs, quī antemnās ad mālōs dēstinābant, comprehēnsī adductīque erant, nāvigiō rēmīs incitātō praerumpēbantur. Quibus abscīsīs antemnae necessāriō concidēbant, ut, cum omnis Gallicīs nāvibus spēs in vēlīs armāmentīsque cōnsisteret, hīs ēreptīs, omnis ūsus nāvium ūnō tempore ēriperētur. Reliquum erat certāmen positum in virtūte, quā nostrī mīlitēs facile superābant atque eō magis, quod in cōnspectū Cae-

16. longurius, -ī [**longus**], M., a long pole. 3
ab-similis, -e [**similis,** like], unlike. 1
fōrma, -ae, F., form, shape, appearance. 4.
mūrālis, -e [**mūrus,** wall], pertaining to a wall, mural. 3



Falcēs Mūrālēs.

17. antemna, -ae, F., sail-yard, yard-arm, sail. 3
mālus, -ī, M., mast, pole, beam. 2
dē-stinō, 1. [*obsol.* **stanō** = **statuō,** place], *a.*, place *or* fasten down, secure, make fast, determine, destine, appoint. 3
com-prehendō (**prēndō**), **-ere, -dī, -ēnsus** [**prehendō,** grasp], *a.*, grasp *or* lay hold of on both sides, seize, catch, take; comprehend, comprise. *
18. nāvigium, -ī [**nāvigō,** sail], N., a sailing vessel, boat, craft; sailing, navigation. 3
prae-rumpō, -ere, ruptus [**rumpō,** break], *a.*, break off, tear away. 3
19. abscīdō, -ere, cīdī, cīsus [**caedō,** cut], *a.*, cut *or* lop off, tear off *or* away. 2
necessāriō, *adv.*, [*abl. of* **necessārius**], unavoidably, under compulsion. *
concidō, -ere, cidī [**cadō,** fall], *n.*, fall down *or* together, collapse, fall. *
20. armāmenta, -ōrum [**arma**], N., implements, gear; *esp.* tackle *or* rigging *of a ship.* 2
22. certāmen, -inis [**certō,** strive], N., strife, struggle, contest, combat. 2

---

16. nōn absimilī etc. = *formā nōn dissimilī fōrmae* etc. **fōrmā:** for case cf. I, 6, 12. *crassitūdine.* **mūrālium falcium:** see Int. 164. These hooks saved the fleet from defeat, but Roman reluctance to admit even the possibility of failure does not allow Caesar to say so. **hīs cum,** *whenever their ropes were caught by these* (*falcēs*) *and drawn toward* (*us*).

17. comprehēnsī aductīque erant, *whenever the ropes, which .... had been caught and pulled by these* (hooks). Notice the pluperfect indicative after *cum* meaning *whenever* and see A. 322 (last ex.); G. 585; H. 521, II, 1; P. *B.* 288, 1, *A.*

19–21. quibus = *fūnibus.* **cōnsisteret:** for mode cf. I, **9,** 3; **26,** 18. **ūsus,** *control.*

23. eo magis, *the more.* For the case cf. **12,** 12, so also **paulō,** below.

saris atque omnis exercitūs rēs gerēbātur, ut nūllum paulō fortius factum latēre posset; omnēs enim collēs āc loca superiōra, unde erat propīnquus dēspectus in mare, ab exercitū tenēbantur.

They are defeated with the loss of their ships.

15. Dēiectīs, ut dīximus, antemnīs, cum singulās bīnae āc ternae nāvēs circumsteterant, mīlitēs summā vī trānscendere in hostium nāvēs contendēbant. Quod postquam barbarī fierī animadvertērunt, expūgnātīs complūribus nāvibus, cum eī reī nūllum reperīrētur auxilium, fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Āc iam conversīs in eam partem nāvibus, quō ventus ferēbat, tanta subitō malacia āc tranquillitās exstitit, ut sē ex locō movēre nōn possent.

25. **factum, -ī,** [*p. p. of* **faciō,** *half noun, half participle, to be trans. according to the context*], N., act, action, exploit, thing done, deed. *

2. **bīnī, -ae, -a,** *distrib. num adj.* [**bis,** twice], two each, two apiece, by twos. 5

ternī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.* [**ter,** thrice], three each, three apiece, three by three. 3

circum-sistō, -ere, -stetī *or* **stitī,** *a.*, stand, flock, gather *or* rally around, surround, hem in. *

3. **trānscendō (trānssc-), -ere, -dī** [**scandō,** climb], *a.*, climb across *or* over into, board (*a ship*); surmount, excel. 2

7. **malacia, -ae,** F., calm *at sea.* 1

8. **tranquillitās, -tātis** [**tranquillus,** calm], F., calmness *of mind or weather*, sereneness, stillness. 2

ex-sistō, -ere, stitī [**sistō,** cause to stand], *n.*, stand *or* come forth, appear, arise, ensue. 5

24, 25. **paulō fortius,** *a little braver than usual:* for the meaning of the comparative cf. I, **14,** 16; I, **48,** 18; **20,** 2.

1. **cum:** see on *cum,* **14,** 16.

2. **bīnae āc ternae,** *by twos or threes.* Does the author mean that every Gallic vessel was thus surrounded, or only those that had been disabled? It is probable that the number of Gallic ships largely exceeded that of the Roman galleys. **mīlitēs:** temporarily placed upon the Roman ships.

3. **summā vī contendēbant,** *kept striving with all their might.* For the imperfect see II, **1,** 3.

5. **eī reī:** this mode of attack, referring, like *quod,* to the statement *mīlitēs . . . contendēbant.*

6, 7. **conversīs . . . ferēbat,** *while they* (*the Veneti*) *turned their ships in that direction in which the wind was blowing.* **malacia:** an unusual word (Greek), explained by the familiar (Latin) synonym that follows. The summer winds on the Biscay coast blow from the east or north-east, and a dead calm comes on about noon.

Quae quidem rēs ad negōtium cōnficiendum māximē fuit oportūna: nam singulās nostrī cōnsectātī expūgnāvērunt, ut perpaucae ex omnī numerō noctis interventū ad terram pervēnerint, cum ab hōrā ferē quartā usque ad sōlis occāsum pūgnārētur.

The Veneti surrender. Caesar slays their leaders and sells the rest into slavery.

16. Quō proeliō bellum Venetōrum tōtīusque ōrae maritimae cōnfectum est. Nam cum omnis iuventūs, omnēs etiam graviōris aetātis, in quibus aliquid cōnsiliī aut dīgnitātis fuit, eō convēnerant, tum nāvium quod ubīque fuerat in ūnum locum coēgerant; quibus āmīssīs, reliquī neque quō sē reciperent, neque quemadmodum oppida dēfenderent, habēbant. Itaque sē suaque omnia Caesarī dēdidērunt. In quōs eō gravius Cae-

10. cōn-sector, 1. [**sector,** *freq. of* **sequor,** follow], *a.*, follow eagerly, pursue, chase. *

11. interventus, -ūs [**veniō,** come], M., coming between, intervention, interposition. 1

terra, -ae, F., earth, land, soil; *in pl.* earth, world: **orbis terrārum,** the world, all nations. *

12. usque, *adv.* [**us = ubs,** *fr.* **ubi,** where], all the way to, even to, as far as, even, till. *

3. iuventūs, -ūtis, F., the time *or* period of youth, *from seventeen to forty-five years;* the youth, the young men. 3

4. dīgnitās, -tātis [**dīgnus,** worthy], F., worthiness, merit; rank, dignity; position, importance. *

5. ubī-que, *adv.*, in any place, everywhere. 1

---

10. singulās: i. e., *nāvēs Venetōrum.* The scattering of the Venetan vessels was unfortunate, because when the calm came on, they were too far apart to assist one another.

11. omnī numerō: how many? **pervēnerint:** perf. subj. instead of the impf. to mark the actual completion of the act.

12. hōrā quartā: 10 a. m., if, as seems probable, the battle was fought near the autumnal equinox.

13. pūgnārētur, *since the battle was continued.*

2. cum, tum (l. 5), *not only . . . but also*: used correlatively.

3. in etc., *who were possessed of any discretion or respectability.*

4, 5. cōnsiliī, dīgnitātis, nāvium: for case cf. II, **8,** 8; **26,** 15; **15,** 10. **nāvium quod . . . fuerat** etc.=*nāvēs quae . . . fuerant* (or *quae nāvēs . . . fuerant, eās*) . . . *coēgerant.*

6. quibus: including both men and ships. **reliquī . . . habēbant,** *the rest had not* (*a place*) *where they could retreat nor* (*did they know*) *how* etc.

8. eō: as in I, **14,** 1.

sar vindicandum statuit, quō dīligentius in reliquum tempus ā barbarīs iūs lēgātōrum cōnservārētur. Itaque omnī senātū necātō reliquōs sub corōnā vēndidit.

Sabinus goes north among the Venelli and is threatened by them.

17. Dum haec in Venetīs geruntur, Q. Titūrius Sabīnus cum iīs cōpiīs, quās ā Caesare accēperat, in fīnēs Venellōrum pervēnit. Hīs praeerat Viridovīx āc summam imperiī tenēbat eārum omnium cīvitātum, quae dēfēcerant, ex quibus exercitum māgnāsque cōpiās coēgerat; atque hīs paucīs diēbus Aulercī Eburovīcēs Lexoviīque senātū suō interfectō, quod auctōrēs bellī esse nōlēbant, port-

9. **vindicō**, 1. [**vis**, force *or* authority + **dīcō**], *a.*, assert authority, claim one's rights against; set free, deliver; avenge, punish, take vengeance upon. 3

11. **necō**, 1. [**nex**, death], *a.*, put to death, kill, murder. *

corōna, -ae, F., wreath, garland, chaplet; tiara, coronet, crown; circle, crowd. 2

3. **Viridovīx, -īcis**, M., *a chief of the Venelli.* 4

6. **Eburovīcēs, -um**: see **Aulercī.** II, **34,** 3. 2

7. **auctor, -ōris** [**augeō**, increase], M., one who produces, creates, *or* originates; promoter, instigator, originator, author. 3

---

9. **quō**: why not *ut?* Cf. **13,** 3.

10. **iūs lēgātōrum**: referring to the treatment of the Roman officers; see **8,** 7–11, and note **9,** 9. **senātū**: the Veneti had no Senate in the Roman sense. Caesar uses a Roman term to designate a Gallic institution. **reliquōs,** *the rest*, evidently means all in his power, possibly the inhabitants of the capital, Daricoritum. It can hardly mean the whole nation. "The only naval power in Gaul that could be formidable to the Romans was totally destroyed, and neither the Veneti nor their allies gave the proconsul (Caesar) any more trouble." (Long).

11. **sub corōnā vēndidit,** *sold at auction*, the captives wearing chaplets of leaves to indicate that they were for sale, or, according to Aulus Gellius, that the seller gave no guaranty. The custom, however, was not observed in Caesar's time. The auction was conducted by the *quaestor* and the buyers were the traders who thus supplied the slave market at Rome. See Int. 102, *mercātōrēs.*

1. **dum geruntur:** *while these things were being done.* For the tense see on I, **27,** 8.

2. **Sabīnus, cōpiīs**: see **11,** 9, 10.

3. **hīs**: the Venelli; for case cf. I, **2,** 5.

4. **summam**: as in II, **4,** 22.

5. **exercitum**: the regular force. **cōpiās**: a general levy of the allies: see Int. 176.

6. **hīs paucīs diēbus**: after the arrival of Sabinus.

7. **senātū**: i. e., the elders or chiefs: see note on **16,** 10. **quod . . . nōlēbant**: the people had decided upon war, but the 'senators' would not ratify the decision.

ās clausērunt sēque cum Viridovīce coniūnxērunt: māgnaque praetereā multitūdō undique ex Galliā perditōrum hominum latrōnumque convēnerat, quōs spēs praedandī studiumque bellandī ab agricultūrā et cotīdiānō labōre revocābat. Sabīnus idōneō omnibus rēbus locō castrīs sēsē tenēbat, cum Viridovīx contrā eum duūm mīlium spatiō cōnsēdisset cotīdiēque prōductīs cōpiīs pūgnandī potestātem faceret, ut iam nōn sōlum hostibus in contemptiōnem Sabīnus venīret, sed etiam nostrōrum mīlitum vōcibus nōnnihil carperētur; tantamque opīniōnem timōris praebuit, ut iam ad vāllum castrōrum hostēs accēdere audērent. Id eā dē causā faciēbat, quod cum tantā multitūdine hostium, praesertim eō absente, quī summam imperiī

9. **praeter-eā**, *adv.* [**eā** *fr.* **is**], beyond this, besides, furthermore. *

per-dō, -ere, didī, ditus [**dō**, give], *a.*, give over, ruin: *in p. p. as adj.*, desperate, ruined. 2

latrō, -ōnis, M., freebooter, bandit, robber. 2

11. **agricultūra, -ae** [**ager**+**colō**, cultivate], F., cultivation of the land, agriculture. *

13. **prō-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus** [**dūcō**, lead], *a.*, lead *or* bring forth; draw up (**cōpiās**); prolong, protract. *

15. **contemptiō, -ōnis**, [**contemnō**, despise], F., disdain, contempt. 4

16. **nōn-nihil**, *adv.* [**nihil**, in no respect, nothing], to some extent, somewhat. 1

carpō, -ere, -sī, -tus, *a.*, pluck, pull away; pull to pieces, carp at, censure. 1

19. **absēns, -entis** [*pr. p. of* **absum**], absent, at a distance. *

---

9. **undique ex Galliā**=*ex omnibus partibus Galliae.* **perditōrum**, *desperate.* The natural result of the long continued war was to unsettle everything.

10. **studium bellandī**: see Int. 70. Are *praedandī* and *bellandī* gerunds or gerundives? What case and why?

11, 12. **idōneō . . . locō**, *in a place suitable in all particulars.* See Int. 129. According to Napoleon III, the camp was pitched on a hill about four miles east of Avranches, in the south of the Department of Manche. Notice the three ablatives in juxtaposition: for *rēbus* cf. **8**, 4; for *locō* cf. **12**, 5; for *castrīs* (note the absence of *in*) cf. II, **30**, 4; I, **49**, 1.

13. **duūm**, *only two.* This contracted form for *duōrum* is found here only in Caesar. **mīlium**: sc. *passuum.* **cōnsēdisset**: on the other side of a little stream called the *See*, north of Sabinus' position.

16, 17. **vōcibus**, *talk.* **tantam . . . praebuit**, *manifested such an appearance of cowardice.* **vāllum**: see on **1**, 19.

19. **eō absente**, *in the absence of.* Case of eō? What part of speech is **summam**?

tenēret, nisi aequō locō aut opportūnitāte aliquā datā lēgātō dīmicandum nōn exīstimābat.

Sabinus, by stratagem, induces them to attack the Roman camp.

18. Hāc cōnfīrmātā opīniōne timōris idōneum quendam hominem et callidum dēlēgit, Gallum, ex iīs quōs auxiliī causā sēcum habēbat. Huic māgnīs praemiīs pollicitātiōnibusque persuādet, utī ad hostēs trānseat, et, quid fierī velit, ēdocet. Quī ubi prō perfugā ad eōs vēnit, timōrem Rōmānōrum prōpōnit, quibus angustiīs ipse Caesar ā Venetīs premātur, docet neque longius abesse, quīn proximā nocte Sabīnus clam ex castrīs exercitum ēdūcat et ad Caesarem auxiliī ferendī causā proficīscātur. Quod ubi audītum est, conclāmant omnēs, occāsiōnem negōtiī bene gerendī āmittendam nōn esse, ad castra īrī oportēre. Multae rēs ad hōc cōnsilium Gallōs hortābantur: superiōrum diērum Sabīnī cunctātiō, perfugae cōnfīrmātiō, inopia cibāriōrum, cui

20. **aequus, -a, -um,** even, level, equal; equitable, impartial, just: **aequō animō,** with equanimity. *

2. **callidus, -a, -um** [**calleō,** be callous; know by experience], experienced, skilful, shrewd. 1
4. **praemium, -ī** [**prae-emō,** buy or get before others], N., advantage, distinction, prize, reward. *
pollicitātiō, -ōnis [**polliceor,** promise], F., promise, offer. 5
5. **ē-doceō,** 2. [**doceō,** teach], *a.*, teach thoroughly, inform in detail, explain. 4
8. **clam** [**cēlō,** conceal], *adv.*, secretly, unawares. *
10. **con-clāmō,** 1. [**clāmō,** cry out], *a.*, *n.*, shout *or* cry out together. *
occāsiō, -ōnis [**ob + cadō,** fall], F., occasion, opportunity. *
bene [**benus = bonus,** good], well, rightly, successfully: *comp.* **melius:** *sup.* **optimē.** 3
13. **cunctātiō, -ōnis** [**cunctor,** delay], F., delaying, delay, hesitation, reluctance. 2
cōnfīrmātiō, -ōnis [**cōnfīrmō,** confirm], F., confirmation, assurance, evidence. 1

20, 21. lēgātō etc.: for trans. cf. **10,** 10: how is *dīmicandum* used here? For case of *lēgātō* cf. I, **11,**15.

2, 3. ex iīs: connect with *dēlēgit.* **auxiliī causā:** see Int. 99.
4, 5. utī . . . trānseat: for the clause cf. I, **2,** 4. **quid . . . ēdocet,** *gave him his instructions.* **velit:** for mode cf. I, **12,** 3. **prō,** *feigning to be.*
6. quibus, etc.: rumors of Caesar's lack of success (see **14,** 2, 3) had probably reached Sabinus.
7, 8. neque . . . quīn . . . ēdūcat, *and not later than the next night Sabinus would lead out* etc.
11. īrī oportēre: trans. by personal constr. **rēs,** *considerations.* Name the following appositives.

reī parum dīligenter ab iīs erat prōvīsum, spēs Veneticī bellī, et quod ferē libenter hominēs id, quod volunt, crēdunt. Hīs rēbus adductī nōn prius Viridovīcem reliquōsque ducēs ex conciliō dīmittunt, quam ab hīs sit concessum, arma utī capiant et ad castra contendant. Quā rē concessā laetī, ut explōrātā vīctōriā, sarmentīs virgultīsque collēctīs, quibus fossās Rōmānōrum compleant, ad castra pergunt.

The Venelli are defeated with great slaughter and forced to surrender.

19. Locus erat castrōrum ēditus et paulātim ab īmō acclīvis circiter passūs mīlle. Hūc māgnō cursū contendērunt, ut quam minimum spatiī ad sē colligendōs armandōsque Rōmānīs darētur, exanimātīque pervēnērunt. Sabīnus suōs hortātus cupientibus sīgnum dat. Impedītīs hostibus propter ea, quae ferēbant, onera subitō duābus portīs ēruptiōnem fierī iubet. Factum est oportūni-

14. parum, *adv.* [**parvus,** little], little, too little, not enough, not very. 2

Veneticus, -a, -um, of *or* with the Veneti.

15. libenter [**libēns,** willing], willingly, gladly, with pleasure. 3

18. laetus, -a, -um [**laetor,** rejoice], joyful, glad, rejoicing. 1

19. sarmentum, -ī [*obsol.* **sarpō,** trim, prune], N., prunings, brushwood, faggot. 1

virgulta, -ōrum [*fr.* **virgula,** twig], N., a place of twigs, thicket, copse; sprouts, cuttings of trees. 1

20. pergō, -ere, perrēxī, perrēctus [**per** + **regō,** direct], *n.*, go on, continue, proceed, advance. 1

2. hūc, *adv.* [*old form for* **hōc,** *fr.* **hic**], to this place, hither, here. *

---

14. parum dīligenter, *with too little care.* **spēs . . . bellī,** *the hopes* (*inspired by*) etc. They had not heard the result. See ch. **16.**

16, 17. prius, quam . . . concessum, *until they had granted them permission.* Had the council not yielded to the wishes of the people, it would doubtless have suffered the same fate as had overtaken the senate (see **17,** 7).

18, 19. ut . . . vīctōriā, *just as if victory were assured.* On the Abl. Abs. cf. **10,** 5, *hāc* etc.

1, 2. ab īmō, *from the bottom;* the neut. sing. of the superl. of *īnferus*, used substantively. For a like usage cf. II, **18,** 2. The slope begins at the bank of the *See.* See on **17,** 13. **circiter:** prep. or adv.?

3. quam minimum, *the least possible.* For *quam* cf. I, **3,** 3.

5. cupientibus, (*and*) *as they were eager for battle.* Case of *cupientibus?*

6. onera: see **18,** 19.

7. duābus portīs: the outline of the camp seems to have been

tāte locī, hostium īnscientiā āc dēfetīgātiōne, virtūte mīlitum et superiōrum pūgnārum exercitātiōne, ut nē ūnum quidem nostrōrum impetum ferrent āc statim terga verterent. Quōs impedītōs integrīs vīribus mīlitēs nostrī cōnsecūtī māgnum numerum eōrum occīdērunt; reliquōs equitēs cōnsectātī paucōs, quī ex fugā ēvāserant, relīquērunt. Sīc ūnō tempore et dē nāvālī pūgnā Sabīnus et dē Sabīnī vīctōriā Caesar certior factus est, cīvitātēsque omnēs sē statim Titūriō dēdidērunt. Nam ut ad bella suscipienda Gallōrum alacer āc prōmptus est animus, sīc mollis āc minimē resistēns ad calamitātēs perferendās mēns eōrum est.

Crassus, in Aquitania, is attacked by the Sotiates.

20. Eōdem ferē tempore Pūblius Crassus, cum in Aquitāniam pervēnisset, quae pars, ut ante dic-

8. **dē-fetīgātiō, -ōnis** [**fatīgō**, weary], F., *a wearying;* weariness, exhaustion, fatigue. 1

9. **exercitātiō, -ōnis** [**exercitō**, *freq. of* **exerceō**], F., exercise, practice. *

10. **tergum, -ī**, N., back, rear. *

vertō, -ere, vertī, versus, *n.*, turn, turn around *or* about: **terga vertere**, flee. *

13. **ē-vādō, -ere, vāsī, vāsus** [**vādō**, go], *n.*, go out, escape. 1

14. **nāvālis, -e** [**nāvis**, ship], of *or* pertaining to ships, naval. 2

16. **alacer, -cris, -cre**, active, eager, ready. 4

prōmptus, -a, -um [**prōmō**, give out, disclose], evident, manifest; prepared, ready, quick, prompt.

17. **mollis, -e**, soft, tender, yielding, inconstant. 2

18. **mēns, mentis**, F., the thinking faculty, mind, intellect; thought, purpose, determination. *

---

triangular (see Int. 129.) with the base of the triangle towards the Gauls and the gates at the angles. These facts have been ascertained by an examination of the remains of a Roman camp on this spot.

8. **mīlitum**: the Roman soldiers.

10. **āc . . . verterent**, *but fled at once.* Like **āc** also trans. **et** and **-que** when they connect an affirmative proposition with a preceding negative.

14. **Sabīnus**: sc. *certior factus est.*

15. **cīvitātēs**: what tribes were concerned in this revolt? See **17.**

17, 18. animus here refers to *natural impulse;* **mēns** to a settled *purpose* based on the judgment; trans., *as on the one hand the impulses of the Gauls are rash and inclined* etc., *so on the other hand their purposes are too inconstant and irresolute to bear up under misfortune.*

1. **Crassus**: read **11**, 6–9

2. **ante**: see I, **1**, 2 text, where. however, the statement is simply that Aquitania was one of the three divisions of Gaul.

tum est, et regiōnum lātitūdine et multitūdine hominum ex tertiā parte Galliae est aestimanda, cum intellegeret in iīs locīs sibi bellum gerendum, ubi paucīs ante annīs L. Valerius Praecōnīnus lēgātus exercitū pulsō interfectus esset, atque unde L. Mallius prōcōnsul impedīmentīs āmīssīs profūgisset, nōn mediocrem sibi dīligentiam adhibendam intellegēbat. Itaque rē frūmentāriā prōvīsā, auxiliīs equitātūque comparātō, multīs praetereā virīs fortibus Tolōsā et Narbōne, quae sunt cīvitātēs Galliae prōvinciae fīnitimae hīs regiōnibus, nōminātim ēvocātīs in Sotiatium fīnēs exercitum intrōdūxit. Cūius adventū cōgnitō Sotiatēs māgnīs cōpiīs coāctīs equitātūque, quō plūrimum valēbant, in itinere āgmen nostrum adortī prīmum equestre proelium commīsērunt, deinde equi-

4. **aestimō**, (-umō), 1. [aes, copper, money], *a.*, value, reckon, estimate, regard, consider. 4

6. **Praecōnīnus**, -ī, [praecō, a herald], M., see Valerius. 1

7. **Mallius**, -ī, M., *a Roman gentile name:* Lucius Mallius, *proconsul in* 78 B. C. 1

prō-cōnsul, -is, M., a proconsul, *one who at the close of his consulship in Rome became governor of a province: one invested with the powers of a consul or military governor.* 2

8. **mediocris**, -cre [medius, the middle of], middling, ordinary, moderate. *

dīligentia, -ae [dīligēns, heedful], F., heedfulness, pains-taking, care. *

10. **Tolōsa**, -ae, F., *a town of Gallia Narbonensis, on the Garonne, the modern* Toulouse. 1

Narbō, -ōnis, M., *a town of the Roman Province, now* Narbonne. 4

12. **ē-vocō**, 1. [vocō, call], *a.*, call forth *or* out, summon. *

Sotiatēs, -ium, M., *the most powerful people of Aquitania.*

2–4. **quae pars, ex . . . aestimanda,** *a section which is to be regarded as a third of Gaul.* See *Aquitania* etc. I, **1**, 21—23, and also note the relative size on the map and determine the correctness of Caesar's geographical knowledge.

5. **paucīs ante annīs**: about 22 years, 78 B. C. For the case cf. I, **31**, 36; **18**, 26.

8. **nōn . . . adhibendam** (*esse*), *that he must take extraordinary care.* For the figure in *nōn mediocrem* cf. **1**, 15; II, **9**, 1.

10. **Tolōsā, Narbōne**: see Int. 62.

11. **cīvitātēs**, *cities*, made up of a community of *cīvēs*. **hīs regiōnibus** i. e., Aquitania.

12. **ēvocātīs**: see Int. 98. **intrōdūxit**: Crassus probably moved south from the rendezvous of Caesar's forces in the country of the Andes and crossed the Garonne into the territories of the Sotiates.

14. **plūrimum valēbant**, as in II, **4**, 13. Case of *plūrimum?*

15. **prīmum**: adverb.

tātū suō pulsō atque īnsequentibus nostrīs subitō pedestrēs cōpiās, quās in convalle in īnsidiīs collocāverant, ostendērunt. Hī nostrōs disiectōs adortī proelium renovārunt.

They are overcome and submit to Crassus.

21. Pūgnātum est diū atque ācriter, cum Sotiatēs superiōribus vīctōriīs frētī in suā virtūte tōtīus Aquitāniae salūtem positam putārent, nostrī autem, quid sine imperātōre et sine reliquīs legiōnibus adulēscentulō duce efficere possent, perspicī cuperent: tandem cōnfectī vulneribus hostēs terga vertēre. Quōrum māgnō numerō interfectō Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sotiatium oppūgnāre coepit. Quibus fortiter resistentibus vīneās turrēsque ēgit. Illī aliās ēruptiōne temptātā, aliās cunīculīs ad aggerem vīneāsque āctīs (cūius reī sunt longē perītissimī Aquitānī, propterea quod multīs locīs apud eōs aerāriae strūctūrae sunt), ubi dīligentiā

17. **con-vallis, -is** [**vallis,** valley], F., an enclosed valley, basin, defile.

2. **frētus, -a, -um,** depending *or* relying upon, confiding in.
4. **adulēscentulus** (**adol-**), **-ī** [**adolēscēns,** a young man], M., a very young man, a stripling. 1
9. **cunīculus, -ī,** M., coney; burrow; tunnel, mine. 5
11. **aerārius, -a, -um,** [**aes,** copper], of *or* for copper, copper. 1
strūctūra, -ae, F., structure, building; group of buildings, plant. 1

---

18. dīsiectōs, *while scattered.* **adortī:** make a coordinate clause.

2. superiōribus . . . frētī, *relying upon (confident because of) their former victories* (see **29,** 5–7). For the Abl. with *frētus* see A. 254 *b* 2; G. 401 N. 6; H. 425 II 1 1) N; *B.* 218, 3.

3–5. quid . . . possent: subj. of *perspicī;* for the mode cf. **18,** 5, *velit;* **14,** 10; I, **12,** 3. **imperātōre:** who? **sine reliquīs legiōnibus:** Crassus had only twelve Roman cohorts. **adulēscentulō:** for the termination cf. **12,** 2; II, **30,** 2. For the case cf. **17,** 12 *locō;* I, **2,** 2.

6. vertēre: notice quantity of the penult and tell where found.

7, 8. ex itinere: see on **II, 12,** 5. **quibus . . . resistentibus:** for trans. cf. II, **12,** 14. **aliās . . . aliās,** *at one time . . . at another.*

9. ēruptiōne, cunīculīs: see Int. 164, 165.

10. cūius reī, *an art in which. reī* refers to the construction of mines; for its position in the relative clause see on **9,** 9; for its case cf. I, **2,** 14; **21,** 10; **18,** 8; **14,** 5. **longē perītissimī:** see on *longē* **8,** 1.

11. aerāriae: mines of iron and of copper are still worked in this part of France. **dīligentiā,** *because of the watchfulness of our men.* For case cf. I, **18,** 20; **14,** 6; **2,** 12.

nostrōrum nihil hīs rēbus prōficī posse intellēxērunt, lēgātōs ad Crassum mittunt sēque in dēditiōnem ut recipiat, petunt. Quā rē impetrātā arma trādere iūssī faciunt.

Their chief Adiatunnus, with six hundred followers vainly attempts to escape.

22. Atque in eā rē omnium nostrōrum intentīs animīs, aliā ex parte oppidī Adiatunnus, quī summam imperiī tenēbat, cum DC dēvōtīs, quōs illī soldūriōs appellant, quōrum haec est condiciō, utī omnibus in vītā commodīs ūnā cum iīs fruantur, quōrum sē amīcitiae dēdiderint, sī quid hīs per vim accidat, aut eundem cāsum ūnā ferant aut sibi mortem cōnscīscant; neque adhūc hominum memoriā repertus est quisquam, quī eō interfectō, cūius sē amīcitiae dēvōvisset, morī recūsāret: cum hīs Adiatunnus ēruptiōnem facere cōnātus clāmōre ab eā parte mūnītiōnis

12. **prōficiō, -ere, fēcī, fectus** [faciō], *a.*, *n.*, make progress, advance; profit, effect, accomplish. *

1. **in-tendō, -ere, tendī, tentus** [tendō, stretch], *n.*, stretch out *or* to, extend; direct *the eyes, ears,* or *mind*, be intent *or* absorbed, strive. 4

2. **Adiatunnus, -ī**, M., *the leader of the Sotiates.* 2

3. **dē-voveō, -ēre, vōvī, vōtus** [voveō, vow], *a.*, *n.*, vow away; consecrate; devote; *in p. p. as subst.*, a sworn follower. 3

soldūriī, -ōrum [*Celtic word*], M., vassals, retainers. 1

5. **commodum, -ī** [commodus, convenient], N., convenience, advantage, privilege. *

fruor, fruī, frūctus sum [frugēs, fruits of the earth], *a.*, *n.*, enjoy, delight in, have the benefit of. 1

7. **ad-hūc**, *adv.* [hūc, hither], hitherto, thus far, as yet. 1

9. **recūsō, 1.** [causa, cause], *a.*, *n.*, make cause against *or* objection to; decline, reject, refuse. *

---

12. **nihil prōficī posse,** *no progress could be made.*

14. **faciunt,** *they do so.*

1. **atque,** *now.* **rē:** what matter? **omnium . . . animīs,** *when the attention of all our men was fixed.*

2. **summam:** cf. **17,** 19.

3. **soldūriōs:** this was an institution similar to that of clientage among the Romans. The *soldūriī* lived on terms of intimacy and equality with their chief, wore the same dress and ate at the same table.

4, 5. **utī . . . fruantur:** relation to *condiciō?* **commodīs:** for the case see on *imperiō* I, **2,** 6.

6. **quid:** what kind of a pronoun?

7. **ferant, cōnscīscant:** sc. *utī* from line 4. **sibi mortem cōnscīscant:** for trans. see on I, **4, 11.**

9. **recūsāret:** for mode cf. I, **3,** 3; II, **35,** 3. **cum hīs:** i. e. the retainers, a repetition from line 4: cf. II, **25,** 13.

sublātō, cum ad arma mīlitēs concurrissent vehementerque ibi pūgnātum esset, repulsus in oppidum tamen, utī eādem dēditiōnis condiciōne ūterētur, ā Crassō impetrāvit.

Crassus proceeds against other Aquitanian tribes. They assemble large forces and harass Crassus, who determines on immediate battle.

23. Armīs obsidibusque acceptīs Crassus in fīnēs Vocātium et Tarusātium profectus est. Tum vērō barbarī commōtī, quod oppidum et nātūrā locī et manū mūnītum paucīs diēbus, quibus eō ventum erat, expūgnātum cōgnōverant, lēgātōs quōqueversum dīmittere, coniūrāre, obsidēs inter sē dare, cōpiās parāre coepērunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eās cīvitātēs lēgātī, quae sunt citeriōris Hispāniae fīnitimae Aquitāniae: inde auxilia ducēsque arcessuntur. Quōrum adventū māgnā cum auctōritāte et māgnā cum hominum multitūdine bellum gerere cōnantur. Ducēs vērō iī dēliguntur, quī ūnā cum Q. Sertōriō omnēs annōs fuerant summamque scientiam reī mīlitāris habēre exīstimābantur. Hī cōnsuētūdine populī Rōmānī

11. **vehementer** [vehemēns, violent], violently, impetuously, zealously; strongly, powerfully. *

2. **Vocātēs, -um,** M., *a people of Aquitania, south of the Garonne.* 2
Tarusātēs, -ium, M., *a Gallic people on the west coast of Aquitania.* 2

5. **quōqueversum,** *adv.* [*abl. of* quisque + versus, turned], in every direction, every way. 1

11. **Sertōrius, -ī,** M., *a Roman gentile name:* Quintus Sertorius, *general of Marius in Spain against Sulla from* 80 B. C. *until assassinated by Perpenna,* 72 B. C.

---

12. **tamen,** *notwithstanding* his attempted flight after surrender. **eādem . . . condiciōne:** see **21,** 14.

1, 2. **in fīnēs:** in what direction?

4, 5. **manū,** *art.* **paucīs . . . erat,** *in a few days after his arrival.* After the ablative of time "within which" the relative pronoun is almost equivalent to *postquam.* **eō:** the adverb, here = *ad id* (*oppidum*): see on *quō* II, **21,** 7, and cf. I, **51,** 11; **42,** 18. **ventum erat:** impersonal (*it had been come by him,* i. e., *he had come*)

8. **citeriōris:** i. e. Tarraconensis. The affinity between the peoples on the northern and southern slopes of the Pyrenees has always been very marked.

10. **auctōritāte,** *prestige.*

12. **omnēs annōs:** i. e., during the war between Sertorius and the Sullan generals.

13. **cōnsuētūdine:** for case cf. II, **19,** 4; **13,** 12; I, **50,** 1; **4,** 2.

loca capere, castra mūnīre, commeātibus nostrōs interclūdere īnstituunt. Quod ubi Crassus animadvertit, suās cōpiās propter exiguitātem nōn facile dīdūcī, hostem et vagārī et viās obsidēre et castrīs satis praesidiī relinquere, ob eam causam minus commodē frūmentum commeātumque sibi supportārī, in diēs hostium numerum augērī, nōn cunctandum exīstimāvit, quīn pūgnā dēcertāret. Hāc rē ad cōnsilium dēlātā, ubi omnēs idem sentīre intellēxit, posterum diem pūgnae cōnstituit.

Crassus arrays his troops. The Gauls remain in their camp, which he attacks.

24. Prīmā lūce prōductīs omnibus cōpiīs duplicī aciē īnstitūtā, auxiliīs in mediam aciem coniectīs, quid hostēs cōnsiliī caperent, exspectābat. Illī, etsī propter multitūdinem et veterem bellī glōriam paucitātemque nostrōrum sē tūtō dīmicātūrōs exīstimābant, tamen tūtius esse arbitrābantur obsessīs viīs com-

16. **dī-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus** [dis-, apart + dūcō], *a.*, lead in different directions, lead *or* draw apart, separate, divide. 2

17. **obsideō, -ēre, sēdī, sessus** [sedeō, sit], *a.*, sit in the way of, obstruct, beset, besiege, blockade. *

19. **cunctor, 1.** *n.*, delay, hesitate, be reluctant. 2

4. **et-sī,** *conj.* even if, although. *

---

14. **loca capere,** *to pick out and occupy suitable sites for camps.*

15. **quod,** *this:* explained by the preceding sentence and the following infinitive clauses in apposition.

16. **nōn facile dīdūcī** = *nōn posse dīdūcī.* **et,** *and yet.*

19, 20. **in diēs,** *from day to day;* used with expressions implying proportion. **nōn . . . dēcertāret,** *he thought he must not delay to fight a decisive battle.* For the mode cf. I, **3**, 20,

1, 2. **prīmā lūce:** as in I, **22**,

1. **duplicī aciē:** see Int. 147. Crassus' force was much smaller than that of the Aquitanians. **auxiliīs . . . coniectīs:** as a precaution against flight. **mediam aciem,** *the center of the rear line,* where they could be of assistance to the legionaries in the front line.

3. **quid cōnsiliī,** *what plan.* For the case cf. **16**, 4; II, **17**, 9; I, **31**, 49.

6, 7. **tūtius esse,** *that it was a safer course,* explained by the following. **obsessīs . . . interclūsō,** *by obstructing the road and cutting off supplies.*

meātū interclūsō sine ūllō vulnere vīctōriā potīrī et, sī propter inopiam reī frūmentāriae Rōmānī sēsē recipere coepissent, impedītōs in āgmine et sub sarcinīs adorīrī cōgitābant. Hōc cōnsiliō probātō ā ducibus prōductīs Rōmānōrum cōpiīs sēsē castrīs tenēbant. Hāc rē perspectā Crassus, cum suā cunctātiōne atque opīniōne timōris hostēs nostrōs mīlitēs alacriōrēs ad pūgnandum effēcissent, atque omnium vōcēs audīrentur, exspectārī diūtius nōn oportēre, quīn ad castra īrētur, cohortātus suōs omnibus cupientibus ad hostium castra contendit.

The contest is close and the camp well defended except at the decuman gate.

25. Ibi cum aliī fossās complērent, aliī multīs tēlīs coniectīs dēfēnsōrēs vāllō mūnītiōnibusque dēpellerent, auxiliārēsque, quibus ad pūgnam nōn multum Crassus cōnfīdēbat, lapidibus tēlīsque subministran-

---

10. **cōgitō**, 1. [**cum** + **agitō**, put in quick motion; consider], *a.*, *n.*, consider thoroughly *or* carefully, ponder, reflect; think, purpose, plan. *

3. **dē-pellō, -ere, pulī, pulsus** [**pellō**, drive], *a.*, drive from *or* away, ward off. 4

auxiliāris, -e [**auxilium**, aid], aiding, assisting, auxiliary: *in pl. as subst.*, auxiliary troops, auxiliaries. 1

4. **sub-ministrō**, [**ministrō**, wait upon] *a.*, furnish, supply, afford, give. 3

---

9. **impedītōs . . . sarcinīs**, *while hindered* (by their crowded position), *in the column of march and under their packs.* **sarcinīs**: see Int. 118.

10, 11. **prōductīs cōpiīs**: trans. by a concessive clause. **castrīs**: for the omission of the prep. cf. **17**, 12. Notice the accumulation of ablatives and explain each.

12. **opīniōne timōris**: cf. **17**, 16.

14, 15. **exspectārī . . . īrētur**, *that they ought not to delay longer in going against the camp.* For the mode see on I, **47**, 8.

16. **ad hostium castra**: the only instance in the Gallic war of an attack by the Romans upon a fortified Gallic camp; see Int. 185, 186.

1. **aliī, aliī**, force when used correlatively?

2. **vāllō, mūnītiōnibus**: the second is more general than the first, covering all the parts of a regular fortification in the Roman fashion.

3, 4. **quibus**, *in whom.* For the case see on I, **53**, 4. This statement explains Crassus' action in putting them in the center: see **24**, 2. **subministrandīs**: to the legionaries fighting in the front rank: see on **24**, 2.

dīs et ad aggerem cēspitibus comportandīs speciem atque opīniōnem pūgnantium praebērent, cum item ab hostibus cōnstanter āc nōn timidē pūgnārētur tēlaque ex locō superiōre mīssa nōn frūstrā acciderent, equitēs circumitīs hostium castrīs Crassō renūntiāvērunt nōn eādem esse dīligentiā ab decumānā portā castra mūnīta facilemque aditum habēre.

The Romans capture the camp. Most of the enemy are destroyed in their flight.

26. Crassus equitum praefectōs cohortātus, ut māgnīs praemiīs pollicitātiōnibusque suōs excitārent, quid fierī velit ostendit. Illī, ut erat imperātum, ēductīs iīs cohortibus, quae praesidiō castrīs relīctae intrītae ab labōre erant, et longiōre itinere circumductīs, nē ex hostium castrīs cōnspicī possent, omnium oculīs mentibusque ad pūgnam intentīs celeriter ad eās, quās dīximus, mūnītiōnēs pervēnērunt atque hīs prōrutīs prius in hostium castrīs cōnstitērunt quam plānē ab hīs vidērī aut, quid reī gererētur, cōgnōscī posset. Tum vērō clāmōre ab eā parte audītō nostrī redintegrātīs vīri-

5. **cēspes (caes-), -itis** [caedō, cut], M., a cut sod, turf. 3

7. **timidē** [timidus, fearful], fearfully, cowardly, timidly. 2

8. **circum (circu-) -eō, īre, īvī (iī), itus** [eō, go], *a.*, go *or* march around, traverse, visit. 4

4. **in-trītus, -a, -um** [terō, rub, wear], not worn *or* exhausted, unwearied. 1

5. **circum-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus** [dūcō, lead], *a.*, lead *or* draw around.

8. **prō-ruō, -ere, ruī, rutus** [ruō, rush down], *a.*, *rush forth*; tear *or* pull down, overthrow, demolish. 1

9. **plānē** [plānus, even, plain], plainly, clearly, distinctly. 2

---

5. **ad aggerem**, *for an agger.* The Romans were compelled to build a sloping embankment in order to surmount the high wall of the Gallic camp.

7. **nōn timidē**, *fearlessly.* This must have surprised the Romans; see **24**, 12, *opīniōne timōris.* **ex locō superiōre:** the top of the rampart.

10. **decumānā portā:** see Int. 132. **facilemque,** *but:* see on **19**, 10.

2. **praemiīs:** see Int. 114. **excitārent:** why subjunctive?

4. **praesidiō castrīs:** the Romans carefully guarded the camp as a place of refuge in case of defeat.

7. **dīximus:** in **25**, 10.

8, 9. **prius, quam . . . posset,** *before they* (*hostēs*) *could clearly see them* (*Rōmānōs*) *or understand what was going on.*

10. **ab eā parte:** the rear part of the camp,

bus, quod plērumque in spē victōriae accidere cōnsuēvit, ācrius impūgnāre coepērunt. Hostēs undique circumventī dēspērātīs omnibus rēbus sē per mūnītiōnēs dēicere et fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Quōs equitātus apertissimīs campīs cōnsectātus ex mīlium L numerō, quae ex Aquitāniā Cantabrīsque convēnisse cōnstābat, vix quartā parte relīctā multā nocte sē in castra recipit.

Other Aquitanian tribes submit.

27. Hāc audītā pūgnā, māxima pars Aquitāniae sēsē Crassō dēdidit obsidēsque ūltrō mīsit, quō in numerō fuērunt Tarbellī, Bigerriōnēs, Ptianiī, Vocātēs, Tarusātēs, Elusātēs, Gatēs, Auscī, Garumnī, Sibuzātēs, Cocosātēs; paucae ūltimae nātiōnēs annī tempore cōnfīsae, quod hiems suberat, hōc facere neglēxērunt.

12. **impūgnō, 1.** [in + pūgnō, fight], *a.*, fight against, attack, assail. 2

14. **campus, -ī,** M., plain; open space *or* country. 2

15. **Cantabrī, -ōrum,** M., *the Cantabrians, a tribe of northern Spain.* 1

2. **ūltrō,** *adv.* [ūlterior, farther], to *or* on the farther side, beyond; of one's own accord, voluntarily, spontaneously. *

3. **Tarbellī, -ōrum,** M., *a people of southwestern Aquitania about modern* Tarbes. 1

Bigerriōnēs, -um, M., *an Aquitanian people in modern* la Bigorre. 1

Ptianiī, -ōrum, M., *an Aquitanian people about modern* Pau. 1

4. **Elusātēs, -um,** M., *an Aquitanian people about modern* Eauze. 1

Gatēs, -um, M., *an Aquitanian tribe, south of the Garonne.* 1

Auscī, -ōrum, M., *a tribe of central Aquitania.*

Garumnī, -ōrum, M., *an Aquitanian tribe on the* Garonne. 1

Sibuzātēs, -um, M., *an Aquitanian tribe near the Pyrenees about modern* Saubusse. 1

5. **Cocosātēs, -um,** M., *a tribe of northwestern Aquitania.* 1

ūltimus, -a, -um [*superl. of* ūlterior], farthest, most distant *or* remote: the last part of. 5

---

13. **per,** *over.*

15—17. **quae** (*mīlia*) . . . **convēnisse:** subject of the impers. *cōnstābat.* **multā nocte:** cf. *multō diē,* I, 22, 12.

5. **ūltimae:** those living in the extreme west at the foot of the Pyrenees. The account of this campaign was doubtless based upon the report of Crassus to his chief. **tempore:** what case does the form show this to be? What case with the same verb in I, 42, 18? Now read the note on I, 53, 4.

The Morini and Menapii remain hostile. At Caesar's approach they retire to their fastnesses and thence harass Caesar's troops.

28. Eōdem ferē tempore Caesar, etsī prope exācta iam aestās erat, tamen, quod omnī Galliā pācātā Morinī Menapiīque supererant, quī in armīs essent neque ad eum umquam lēgātōs dē pāce mīsissent, arbitrātus id bellum celeriter cōnficī posse, eō exercitum addūxit; quī longē aliā ratiōne āc reliquī Gallī bellum gerere coepērunt. Nam quod intellegēbant māximās nātiōnēs, quae proeliō contendissent, pulsās superātāsque esse, continentēsque silvās āc palūdēs habēbant, eō sē suaque omnia contulērunt. Ad quārum initium silvārum cum Caesar pervēnisset castraque mūnīre īnstituisset, neque hostis interim vīsus esset, dīspersīs in opere nostrīs subitō ex omnibus partibus silvae ēvolāvērunt et in nostrōs impetum fēcērunt. Nostrī celeriter arma cēpērunt eōsque in silvās reppulērunt et complūribus interfectīs longius impedītiōribus locīs secūtī paucōs ex suīs dēperdidērunt.

1. **exigō, -ere, ēgī, āctus,** drive *or* thrust out; exact; spend, pass.
4. **umquam (unq-),** *adv.*, at any time, ever. 4
9. **continēns, -entis** [*pres. p. of* **contineō,** hold together], holding together; continuous, extensive; contiguous, neighboring; self-controlled, continent; *as subst.*, mainland, continent. *
12. **dīspergō, -ere, spersī, spersus** [**spargō,** scatter], *a.*, scatter: *in p. p. as adj.*, dispersed, scattered. *
13. **ē-volō, 1.** [**volō,** fly], *n.*, fly *or* rush forth. 2
16. **dē-perdō, -ere, didī, -ditus** [**perdō,** destroy], *a.*, *n.*, destroy utterly, ruin; lose entirely, forfeit, lose. 3

---

1. **exācta:** see on *dīvīsa*, I, **1,** 1.
2. **omnī Galliā pācātā,** *although Gaul in general was subdued.* Cf. *prōductīs cōpiīs* **24,** 10.
4. **essent, mīsissent:** for mode cf. I, **3,** 3; III, **22,** 9.
6. **eō:** to the country of the Morini. **exercitum:** probably the main body, which he had led against the Veneti. **quī** i. e., the Morini and Menapii. **āc:** for use cf. *atque* I, **28,** 17.
9. **continentēsque:** sc. *quod.*
10. **initium:** in the vicinity of St. Omer, near Calais.
12, 13. **dīspersīs . . . ēvolāvērunt:** cf. the surprise at the Sabis, II, **19,** 18.
15. **longius . . . locīs,** *too far, in places quite difficult of access.* for trans. of the comp. cf. I, **14,** 16; **20,** 2; II, **25,** 10.
16. **paucōs,** *only a few.*

He ravages their country and quarters his army for the winter.

29. Reliquīs deinceps diēbus Caesar silvās caedere īnstituit et, nē quis inermibus imprūdentibusque mīlitibus ab latere impetus fierī posset, omnem eam māteriam, quae erat caesa, conversam ad hostem collocābat et prō vāllō ad utrumque latus exstruēbat. Incrēdibilī celeritāte māgnō spatiō paucīs diēbus cōnfectō, cum iam pecus atque extrēma impedīmenta ab nostrīs tenērentur, ipsī dēnsiōrēs silvās peterent, ēiusmodī sunt tempestātēs cōnsecūtae, utī opus necessāriō intermitterētur et continuātiōne imbrium diūtius sub pellibus mīlitēs continērī nōn possent. Itaque vāstātīs omnibus eōrum agrīs, vīcīs aedificiīsque incēnsīs Caesar exercitum redūxit et in Aulercīs Lexoviīsque, reliquīs item cīvitātibus, quae proximē bellum fēcerant, in hībernīs collocāvit.

1. **deinceps,** *adv.* [**deinde,** thence + **capiō**], next in succession, one after the other, in turn, successively. 5
caedō, -ere, cecīdī, caesus, cut, kill, slay. 2
2. **im (in-),-prūdēns,-entis** [**prūdēns,** foreseeing], not foreseeing, off one's guard, imprudent, unwary.
4. **māteria, -ae,** and **māteriēs, -em** (*only in nom. and acc. sing.*) [**māter**], F., matter, materials *of which anything is composed,* timber *dressed for building.* *
7. **pecus, -oris,** N., cattle, a herd: *esp. of* small cattle, sheep. *
9. **continuātiō, -ōnis** [**continuō,** make continuous], F., continuance, succession. 1
10. **imber, imbris,** M., a rainstorm, rain (*esp. sudden, heavy, or violent*). 4

2, 3. nē quis impetus, *so that no attack.*

4, 5. māteriam: the felled trees. **conversam ad hostem,** *with their tops turned toward the enemy.* **prō vāllō,** *to serve as a breastwork.*

6. celeritāte: Caesar had a number of excellent engineers (*praefectī fabrūm*), among whom were Balbus and Mamurra. **cōnfectō**=*caesō, cut away.*

8. ipsī: the Gauls.

9. intermitterētur, *stopped from time to time.*

10. sub pellibus, *in their tents,* which were covered with hides (*pellēs*).

13. reliquīs: what tribes?

14. collocāvit: sc. *eum,* i. e., *exercitum.*

BOOK IV.—THE CROSSING OF THE RHINE AND THE FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN.

"At the close of Caesar's third campaign", says Merivale, "the only members of the Gallic race who retained their liberty were the mountain tribes of the Pyrenees and the amphibious wanderers of the Waal and the Scheldt". But the limits of his ambition had not yet been reached, and the campaign of 55 B. C. is memorable in history as the occasion when the Roman arms were for the first time carried beyond the Rhine and across the Channel.

The Germans themselves gave the occasion for the first of these enterprises. The Usipetes and Tencteri, two tribes that dwelt on the right bank of the lower Rhine, being hard pressed by the Suebi, a tribe from the interior of Germany, betook themselves in a body across the river into the territory of the Menapii, and there established themselves. Nothing shows more clearly the low state of Gallic patriotism than the indifference with which the nation regarded this incursion of their hereditary foes. Some of the tribes even went so far as to welcome them, and to propose to make common cause with them against their enemy, Caesar. Encouraged by this, the Germans spread into the adjoining regions and had advanced as far south as the country of the Eburones when Caesar appeared in their front.

After some negotiations terminating in an act of seeming treachery on the part of the barbarians, Caesar, with a treachery as deep as their own, attacked without warning the unwieldy mass of men, women, and children, and drove them with great slaughter into the Rhine. Survivors of the German host, mainly a body of cavalry that had not been present at the battle, succeeded in making their escape across the Rhine, and took refuge among the Sugambri, who refused to give them up at Caesar's demand, asserting their own independence of Roman authority. This refusal and the entreaties of the Ubian tribe, the sole ally of Rome on the eastern bank of the Rhine, determined the Roman general to pass that stream. In the marvellously brief space of ten days he constructed a great bridge, over which he led his whole army, and then went in search of the Suebi and Sugambri. They, however had retired into the safe depths of their vast forests

at the first intimation of his purpose. Thither he did not choose to follow them, but contented himself with ravaging the land of the Sugambri that lay in the vicinity of the river. Satisfied with this demonstration of Roman power, he recrossed the Rhine and broke down his bridge, after a stay of only eighteen days on German soil.

The project of an invasion of Britain had previously taken shape in Caesar's mind. There was fame to be earned by being the first Roman general to land in that little-known region. Under the impulse of this desire, he determined to devote the remainder of the summer to a preliminary expedition. Taking only two legions, he sailed from Portus Itius, modern Boulogne, crossed the strait, and effected a landing near Deal, despite the efforts of the Britons. Throwing up fortifications near the sea, he awaited the arrival of his cavalry before undertaking to penetrate into the interior. Meanwhile, his fleet, lying in the exposed roadstead, was shattered by a storm which came in conjunction with an unusually high tide. He therefore decided to return to the mainland, and having repaired his fleet and repulsed an attack of the islanders on his camp, he sailed back to Gaul a few days before the autumnal equinox. After another and successful effort to subdue the obstinate Menapii and Morini, Caesar placed his legions in winter quarters among the Belgae and repaired to Italy.

REFERENCES FOR READING.

PLUTARCH: Caesar.
FROUDE: Caesar, A sketch, pp. 226-233. (Harper's ed.)
TROLLOPE: Caesar, chap. V. (Ancient Classic Series.)
MOMMSEN: History of Rome, vol. IV. pp. 308-313.
MERIVALE: History of the Romans under the Empire. vol. I. pp. 365-383.
NAPOLEON: Julius Caesar, vol. II. chap. VII.

COMMENTARIUS QUARTUS.

German tribes, expelled by the Suebi, cross into Gaul.

1. Eā, quae secūta est, hieme, quī fuit annus, Cn. Pompēiō, M. Crassō cōnsulibus, Usipetēs Germānī et item Tencterī māgnā cum multitūdine hominum flūmen Rhēnum trānsiērunt, nōn longē ā marī quō Rhēnus īnfluit. Causa trānseundī fuit, quod ab Suēbīs complūrēs annōs exagitātī bellō premēbantur et agricultūrā prohibēbantur. Suēbōrum gēns est longē māxima et bellicōsissi-

2. **Cn.**, *abbreviatian for the praenomen* Gnaeus. 4

Pompēius, -ī, m., *a Roman gentile name, esp.* Cn. Pompeius Magnus, *triumvir with Caesar and Crassus, defeated by Caesar at Pharsalia, and murdered in Egypt by Ptolemy, 48 B. C.* 5

Usipetēs, -um, m., *a German tribe beyond the Rhine below Cologne which, forced by the encroachments of the Suevi to leave its home in eastern Germany, settled near the mouth of the Rhine.* *

3. **Tencterī, -ōrum,** *see* **Usipetēs.** *

5. **Suēbī, -ōrum,** m., *a powerful people of central Germany consisting of several independent tribes, the modern* Swabians. *

---

1. **hieme:** the crossing took place later than Jan. 1., 55, the date of the induction of the consuls into office. **quī:** for agreement see on *quod*, I, **38**, 3.

2. **Cn. Pompēiō,** etc. The two trumvirs were elected consuls in pursuance of the arrangement made the year before at Lucca; see Int. 28. They had been joint consuls once before (70 b. c.); see Int. 10, 11.

4. **nōn longē ā marī:** probably near Xanten or Cleves, where there are gaps in the heights at whose foot the river formerly flowed. This was not far from the branching off of the Vacalus (Waal) from the Rhine.

7. **Suēbōrum gēns est,** etc. Caesar here gives a brief account of the Suebi, apparently to emphasize the importance of resisting Germanic incursions. The word *Suēbī* seems to mean *nomads*, or *wanderers*, a term probably suggested by their mode of life, as detailed here and in Tacitus.

Character and customs of the Suebi.

ma Germānōrum omnium. Hī centum pāgōs habēre dīcuntur, ex quibus quotannīs singula mīlia armātōrum bellandī causā ex fīnibus ēdūcunt. Reliquī, quī domī mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt; hī rūrsus in vicem annō post in armīs sunt, illī domī remanent. Sīc neque agricultūra nec ratiō atque ūsus bellī intermittitur. Sed prīvātī āc sēparātī agrī apud eōs nihil est, neque longius annō remanēre ūnō in locō colendī causā licet. Neque multum frūmentō sed māximam partem lacte atque pecore vīvunt multumque sunt in vēnātiōnibus; quae rēs et cibī genere et cotīdiānā exercitātiōne et lībertāte vītae, cum ā puerīs nūllō officiō aut

9. quotannīs [**quot,** how many, every + **annus**], *adv.* every year, yearly. 4

11. maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsus, *n.*, stay, remain, continue, abide. *

vicis (*gen., no nom.*), change; *only in the adv. phrase* **in vicem,** alternately, in turn. 2

12. re-maneō, -ēre, -sī, -sus [**maneō,** remain], *n.*, stay *or* remain behind, remain. *

14. sē-parō, 1. [**sē** = **sine,** without, aside], sever, separate: *in p. p. as adj.*, separated, marked off. 2

16. lāc, lactis, N., milk. 3

vīvō, -ere, -vīxī, vīctum, *n.*, live. 3

17. vēnātiō, -ōnis [**vēnor,** hunt], F., hunting, the chase, hunting expedition. 3

cibus, -ī, M., food. 3

---

8. pāgōs: often used in the sense of a *district;* here it seems to mean the individual *tribes* making up the loose confederation known as the Suebi.

11, 12. illōs, *those* (engaged in war). **hī, illī:** for use and trans. see A. 102, *a*, *b*; G. 307, 4. R. 1; H. 450, 2; *B.* 246, 1.

13. ratiō atque ūsus, *instruction and practice in.* The verb *intermittitur* is singular because the two nouns express the single idea of *equipment* for war.

14. agrī: individual ownership of land is not usual among uncivilized peoples. Tacitus tells us that the Germans raised corn only and not much of that. **apud eōs:** the fact stated was equally true of the Germans in general. **annō** = *ūnō annō.*

15, 16. neque multum frūmentō, etc. The civilized Romans, on the other hand subsisted largely on grain foods. The statement emphasizes the barbarous nature of the Germans. **māximam partem,** *to a very great extent.* **lacte atque pecore,** *on milk and meat* (lit. *herds*). The abl. follows *vīvere* as it does the dep. *ūtor* etc.

17. sunt in . . . vēnātiōnibus, *are devoted to the chase.* **quae rēs,** *a practice which.* For the position of *rēs* cf. III, **21,** 10; **9,** 9; it is subject of *alit* and *efficit* l. 20. Notice that et occurs five times in this sentence: the first three (ll. 17, 18) are correlative, (*both*) . . . *and* . . . *and*, the last two (l. 20), *not only* . . . *but also.* **genere,** *from the character.* What kind of an ablative?

18, 19. cum . . . faciant, *since,*

disciplīnā assuēfactī nihil omnīnō contrā voluntātem faciant, et vīrēs alit et immānī corporum māgnitūdine hominēs efficit. Atque in eam sē cōnsuētūdinem addūxērunt, ut locīs frīgidissimīs neque vestītūs praeter pellīs habērent quicquam, quārum propter exiguitātem māgna est corporis pars aperta, et lavārentur in flūminibus.

Their commerce and cavalry tactics.

2. Mercātōribus est aditus magis eō, ut, quae bellō cēperint, quibus vēndant, habeant, quam quō ūllam rem ad sē importārī dēsīderent. Quīn etiam iūmentīs, quibus māximē Gallī dēlectantur, quaeque impēnsō parant pretiō, Germānī importātīs nōn ūtuntur, sed quae sunt apud eōs nāta, parva atque dēfōrmia, haec cotīdiānā exercitātiōne

19. **disciplīna, -ae** [*contr. of* **discipulīna,** *fr.* **discipulus,** learner], F., instruction, training, drill, discipline. *

as(ad-)-suēfaciō ,-ere, -fēcī, -factus [**suēscō,** be accustomed + **faciō**], accustom, habituate, inure.

20. **immānis, -e** [*old Lat.* **manus=bonus,** good], out of proportion, huge.

21. **frīgidus, -a, -um** [**frīgus,** cold weather], cold. 1

22. **vestītus, -ūs** [**vestiō,** clothe], M., clothing, garments.

24. **lavō, -āre, (-ere), lāvī, lautus (lōtus),** *a., n.,* wash: *in pass.,* bathe. 1

3. **dēsīderō,** 1. *a.,* crave, yearn, long for, desire; miss, lose.

4. **dēlectō,** 1. [*freq. of* **dēliciō,** entice, delight], *a.,* allure; delight: *in pass.,* delight *or* take pleasure in. 1

impēnsus, -a, -um [*p. p. of* **impendō,** weigh out, expend], expensive, high; great. 1

6. **dē-fōrmis, -e** [**fōrma,** form], misshapen, deformed, unsightly; debasing, disgraceful. 2

---

having been accustomed from boyhood to no service or training, they do nothing at all against their will. **officiō,** is an ablative of means.

20. **immānī** etc.: cf. I, **39,** 4, *ingentī māgnitūdine.* **māgnitūdine:** for case cf. I, **6,** 12; III, **13,** 8.

21. **in . . . addūxērunt,** *have brought them into such training.*

22. **vestītūs quicquam,** *any clothing.* For the gentive cf. II, **8,** 8; **17,** 9.

1. **mercātōribus est:** for case cf. I, **7,** 10; II, **6,** 10. **magis eō.** etc., *more that they* (the Suebi) *may have* (persons) *to whom they may sell what they have taken in war, than because* etc. **ut:** introduces *habeant* l. 2.

2, 3. Notice the four subjunctives: for **cēperint** cf. II, **2,** 7; I, **8,** 7; for **vēndant** I, **3,** 3; **6,** 2; for **habeant** I, **3,** 5; I, **22,** 11; for **dēsīderent** see A. 321, R.; G. 541. R. 1; H.516, II, 2; *B.* 286 1 *b.* The necessary negative is implied in 'more than.' **quīn etiam,** *moreover.*

4. **parant:** the subject is *Gallī.*

5. **pretiō:** for case see on I, **18,** 9.

summī ut sint labōris efficiunt. Equestribus proeliīs saepe ex equīs dēsiliunt āc pedibus proeliantur, equōsque eōdem remanēre vestīgiō assuēfēcērunt, ad quōs sē celeriter, cum ūsus est, recipiunt; neque eōrum mōribus turpius quicquam aut inertius habētur, quam ephippiīs ūtī. Itaque ad quemvīs numerum ephippiātōrum equitum quamvīs paucī adīre audent.

Their neighbors the Ubii.

3. Pūblicē māximam putant esse laudem, quam lātissimē ā suīs fīnibus vacāre agrōs: hāc rē sīgnificārī māgnum numerum cīvitātum suam vim sustinēre nōn posse. Itaque ūnā ex parte ā Suēbis circiter mīlia passuum sexcenta agrī vacāre dīcuntur. Ad alteram partem succēdunt Ubiī, quōrum fuit cīvitās ampla atque flōrēns, ut est captus Ger-

8. **dēsiliō, -īre, siluī, sultus** [saliō, leap], *n.*, leap from *or* down, alight, dismount. *

9. **vestīgium, -ī** [vestīgō, trace out], N., trace, track, footprint; spot, place; point, moment, instant. 4

10. **turpis, -e,** ugly, unseemly; shameful, disgraceful. *

11. **iners, ertis** [ars, art, skill], unskilled; inactive, shiftless. 1

ephippium, -ī, N., horse-cloth, riding-pad, caparison; housing, trappings. 5

12. **ephippiātus, -a, -um** [ephippium], caparisoned (*as a horseman*), using housings *or* pads. 1

quamvīs, *adv.*, as you will, however (much). 1

1. **laus, laudis,** F., praise, commendation, renown, popularity. *

5. **Ubiī, -ōrum,** M., *a German tribe on the east bank of the lower Rhine, near Cologne.* *

6. **flōrēns, -entis** [flōreō, flower], flowering, blooming; flourishing, prosperous. 3

captus, -ūs [capiō, take], M., taking, seizing; power of comprehension, capacity. 1

---

7. **summī . . . labōris,** *so that they are (capable) of the severest toil.* For the case (here in predicate) cf. II, **30**, 11; **27**, 12; **15**, 13.

8. **pedibus,** *on foot.*

9. **ūsus,** *occasion.*

10. **eōrum mōribus,** *in their eyes.* For the case cf. III, **23**, 13; II, **13**, 12; I, **4**, 2.

11. **habētur,** *is esteemed.* **ephippiīs:** the ancients rode without stirrups.

12. **quamvīs paucī,** *however few.*

1. **pūblicē,** *for the state.* **quam:** for its use cf. III, **19**, 3; I, **3**, 3.

4. **ūnā ex parte:** i. e., on the east side of the territory of the Suebi. **mīlia . . . sexcenta:** measuring from the eastern frontier of the Suebi (*ā Suēbīs*). The width of this waste strip is much exaggerated.

6. **fuit,** *was,* referring to the period previous to their being defeated by the Suebi. **ut est captus Germānōrum,** *according to the German standard.*

mānōrum, et paulō sunt ēiusdem generis cēterīs hūmāniōrēs, propterеā quod Rhēnum attingunt, multumque ad eōs mercātōrēs ventitant, et ipsī propter propīnquitātem Gallicīs sunt mōribus assuēfactī. Hōs cum Suēbī multīs saepe bellīs expertī propter amplitūdinem gravitātemque cīvitātis fīnibus expellere nōn potuissent, tamen vēctīgālēs sibi fēcērunt āc multō humiliōrēs īnfīrmiōrēsque redēgērunt.

The expelled German tribes dispossess the Menapii on the Rhine.

4. In eādem causā fuērunt Usipetēs et Tencterī, quōs suprā dīximus, quī complūrēs annōs Suēbōrum vim sustinuērunt, ad extrēmum tamen agrīs expulsī et multīs locīs Germāniae triennium vagātī ad Rhēnum pervēnērunt: quās regiōnēs Menapiī incolēbant et ad utramque rīpam flūminis agrōs, aedificia vīcōsque habēbant; sed tantae multitūdinis adventū perterritī ex iīs aedificiīs,

7. **hūmānus, -a, -um** [**homō,** man], natural to man, human; civilized, refined, cultivated. 2
9. **ventitō, 1.** [*freq. of* **veniō,** come], *n.*, keep coming, be wont to come, resort. 3
11. **amplitūdō, -inis** [**amplus,** large on both sides], F., wide extent, size; importance, consequence. 3
gravitās, -tātis [**gravis,** heavy], F., heaviness, weight; power, dignity. 2
13. **humilis, -e** [**humus,** the ground], on the ground; low, humble, abject. *

4. **Germānia, -ae,** F., Germany, *including the country between the Rhine, the Danube, the Vistula, and the sea.* *
triennium, -ī [**trēs + annus,** year], N., period of three years, three years. 1

---

7. **ēiusdem . . . cēterīs** = *cēterīs Germānīs.*

8. **multum** = *saepe.*

10. **mōribus:** for case see on *officiō* **1,** 18. **bellīs expertī:** the participle expresses a concession to the *cum . . . potuissent* clause, which is also concessive. Trans: *in spite of* (having often attempted) *many attempts in numerous wars.*

12. **vēctīgālēs:** i. e., they paid tribute on account of their defeat.

13. **multō humiliōrēs redēgērunt,** *reduced them to a much lower condition.*

1. **in eādem causā,** *in the same condition* of subjection to the Suebi.

2. **suprā:** in **1,** 2.

4. **triennium:** for case cf. I, **3,** 12; II, **16,** 1. **ad Rhēnum:** i. e., to the vicinity of the stream.

6. **aedificia, vīcōs:** see on I, **5,** 4 and 5.

7. **multitūdinis:** according to a later chapter, 430,000 persons.

quae trāns flūmen habuerant, dēmigrāvērunt et cis Rhēnum dispositīs praesidiīs Germānōs trānsīre prohibēbant. Illī omnia expertī cum neque vī contendere propter inopiam nāvium neque clam trānsīre propter custōdiās Menapiōrum possent, revertī sē in suās sēdēs regiōnēsque simulāvērunt et trīduī viam prōgressī rūrsus revertērunt atque omnī hōc itinere ūnā nocte equitātū cōnfectō īnsciōs inopīnantēsque Menapiōs oppressērunt, quī dē Germānōrum discessū per explōrātōrēs certiōrēs factī sine metū trāns Rhēnum in suōs vīcōs remigrāverant. Hīs interfectīs nāvibusque eōrum occupātīs, priusquam ea pars Menapiōrum, quae citrā Rhēnum erat, certior fieret, flūmen trānsiērunt atque omnibus eōrum aedificiīs occupātīs reliquam partem hiemis sē eōrum cōpiīs aluērunt.

Caesar distrusts the inconstancy of the Gauls.

5. Hīs dē rēbus Caesar certior factus et īnfīrmitātem Gallōrum veritus, quod sunt in cōnsiliīs capiendīs mōbilēs et novīs plērumque rēbus student, nihil hīs

8. **dē-migrō, 1.** [**migrō**, move, migrate], *n.*, move from *or* away, emigrate, remove. 3

12. **sēdēs, -is** [**sedeō**, sit], F., seat, chair; residence, abode, settlement. 5

simulō, 1. [**similis**, like], make like *or* similar; feign, pretend. 2

14. **īn-scius, -a, -um** [**sciō**, know], not knowing, ignorant, unconscious, unawares. 2

16. **metus, -ūs** [**metuō**, fear], M., fear, dread, anxiety, apprehension. *

re-migrō, 1. [**migrō**, move], *n.*, move *or* go back, return. 2

1. **īnfīrmitās, -tātis** [**īn-fīrmus**, not strong], F., weakness, fickleness, inconstancy. 3

3. **mōbilis, -e** [*contr. for* **movibilis**, *fr.* **moveō**, move], movable, changeable, inconstant, hasty. 1

---

8. **trāns**: i.e., east. **cis**, west. Caesar is speaking from the standpoint of Gaul. **habuerant**: before the arrival of the two German tribes.

10. **vī contendere**, *to force their passage.*

12, 13. **revertī sē**, *that they were returning.* Why Infin.? **viam prōgressī**, *after marching.* **viam**: for the case see A. 238; G. 333 2; H. 371 2, (1); *B.* 176 4.

14. **īnsciōs inopīnantēs**: trans. by a clause with *while.*

18. **fieret**: for mode cf. I, 19, 13; II, 12, 2.

19. **eōrum** = *Menapiōrum.*

20. **cōpiīs**, *resources.*

1. **īnfīrmitātem**: for the fact see II, 1, 11; III, 10, 7.

3. **nihil** etc., *that they must not be trusted at all.*

committendum exīstimāvit. Est enim hōc Gallicae cōnsuētūdinis, utī et viātōrēs etiam invītōs cōnsistere cōgant et, quid quisque eōrum dē quāque rē audierit aut cōgnōverit, quaerant, et mercātōrēs in oppidīs vulgus circumsistat quibusque ex regiōnibus veniant quāsque ibi rēs cōgnōverint, prōnūntiāre cōgant. Hīs rēbus atque audītiōnibus permōtī, dē summīs saepe rēbus cōnsilia ineunt, quōrum eōs in vestīgiō poenitēre necesse est, cum incertīs rumōribus serviant, et plērīque ad voluntātem eōrum fīcta respondeant.

Caesar learns of the preparations of the Germans, and plans for war.

6. Quā cōnsuētūdine cōgnitā Caesar, nē graviōrī bellō occurreret, mātūrius, quam cōnsuērat, ad exercitum proficīscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, ea, quae

5. **viātor, -ōris,** M., traveller. 1

8. **prō-nūntiō** (nūnciō), 1. [nūntiō, announce], *a.*, announce *or* set forth, publish; tell, relate, report. *

9. **audītiō, -ōnis** [audiō, hear], F., hearing; hearsay, report. 2

10. **poeniteō** (pae-), 2. repent, be sorry: *impers.*, it repents, one regrets *or* is sorry. 1

11. **necesse,** *indecl. adj.* [nē + cēdō, yield], unyielding; unavoidable, indispensable, necessary. *

in-certus, -a, -um [certus, determined], uncertain, indefinite, vague, untrustworthy. *

serviō, 4. [servus], *a.*, *n.*, be a slave, be subservient, follow, heed. 2

12. **fingō, -ere, finxī, fīctus,** *a.*, form, shape, devise, invent. 3

2. **mātūrē** [*old abl. of* mātūrus], *adv.*, early, speedily. *

---

4. **Gallicae cōnsuētūdinis,** *characteristic of Gallic habits.* For the Gen. see A. 214, d; G. 366, R. 1; H. 401; *B.* 203, 1, 5.

5. **utī** etc., this result clause (in app. with *hōc*, cf. I, **4,** 4) contains eight subjunctives. Of these four (*cōgant* l. 5, *quaerant* l. 6, *circumsistat* l. 7, and *cōgant* l. 9) depend upon *utī* l. 5. For the other four (*audierit* and *cōgnōverit* l. 6, *veniant* and *cōgnōverint* l. 8) cf. III, **21,** 5 *possent;* I, **12,** 3; II, **20,** 10; I, **20,** 21.

7. **vulgus:** subject of *circumsistat* and *cōgant* l. 9: why the difference of number in these words?

8. **quāsque**=*et quās.*

9. **hīs . . . audītiōnibus,** *by such facts and reports.*

10, 11. **quōrum eōs . . . est,** *of which it is necessary that they should repent on the spot* (=*at once*). For the cases of *quōrum* and *eōs* see A. 221 *b;* G. 377; H. 409, III; *B.* 209. **plērīque:** i. e. *mercātōrēs.* **ad,** *according to.*

12. **fīcta respondeant,** *shape their answers.*

1. **quā . . . cōgnitā:** for trans. cf. II, **12,** 14, 15. **graviōrī,** *beyond his control.*

2. **bellō:** for case cf. III, **17,** 3; II, **27,** 5; I, **2,** 5. **mātūrius,**

fore suspicātus erat, facta cōgnōvit: mīssās lēgātiōnēs ab nōnnūllīs cīvitātibus ad Germānōs invītātōsque eōs, utī ab Rhēnō discēderent, omniaque, quae postulāssent, ab sē fore parāta. Quā spē adductī Germānī lātius vagābantur et in fīnēs Eburōnum et Condrūsōrum, quī sunt Trēverōrum clientēs, pervēnerant. Prīncipibus Galliae ēvocātīs Caesar ea, quae cōgnōverat, dissimulanda sibi exīstimāvit eōrumque animīs permulsīs et cōnfīrmātīs equitātūque imperātō bellum cum Germānīs gerere cōnstituit.

7. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā equitibusque dēlēctīs, iter

4. **suspicor, 1.** [**suspiciō,** suspect], *a.*, mistrust, suspect. *

5. **invītō,** 1. *a.*, invite, summon, urge. *

10. **dis-simulō,** 1. [**simulō,** make like], *a.*, make unlike; disguise, dissemble. 1

11. **per-mulceō, -ēre, -sī, -sus** (**-tus**) [**mulceō,** stroke, soothe], stroke gently; soothe, calm, appease. 1

---

earlier in the year. Caesar often anticipated the movements of his foes and prevented their success by his celerity; see Int. 52. **ad exercitum:** where were its winter quarters located? See III, 29, 12, and map of Gaul.

3, 4. **proficīscitur:** it is probable that in accordance with his custom (see Int. 34.) he had spent the winter in Cisalpine Gaul. **ea . . . facta** (*esse*), *that those things had been done:* explained by the following clauses.

5, 6. **ab Rhēnō discēderent:** i. e. to penetrate the interior of the country. **fore parāta:** the infin. depends on a verb of saying implied in *mīssās lēgātiōnēs esse.*

7, 8. **lātius:** i. e., they no longer confined themselves to the territory of the Menapii west of the Rhine. **et in fīnēs . . . pervēnerant:** the course of the Germans was south along the valley east of the Mosa (Meuse). **quī** refers to *Condrūsōrum* only. **clientēs:** see on I, 4, 6.

9. **prīncipibus ēvocātīs:** this *concilium* was probably called at Samarobriva (Amiens). In the early part of the Gallic war Caesar called such meetings occasionally to test the feelings of the chieftains or to demand their assistance. In the second period, meetings were regularly held in the spring and fall, at which the proconsul administered justice and and arranged the details of the civil and military affairs of the province.

10, 11. **animīs . . . cōnfīrmātīs:** the personality of Caesar was one of the strongest sources of his success: see Int. 26 and 53. **equitātū:** each state was bound to furnish its quota of cavalry: see Int. 100. Caesar had 5,000 cavalry in this campaign.

1. **comparātā:** by requisitions upon the tribes represented at the conference at Amiens.

He is met by German envoys. Their address.

in ea loca facere coepit, quibus in locīs esse Germānōs audiēbat. A quibus cum paucōrum diērum iter abesset, lēgātī ab hīs vēnērunt, quōrum haec fuit ōrātiō: Germānōs neque priōrēs populō Rōmānō bellum īnferre neque tamen recūsāre, sī lacessantur, quīn armīs contendant, quod Germānōrum cōnsuētūdō sit ā māiōribus trādita, quīcumque bellum īnferant, resistere neque dēprecārī. Haec tamen dīcere, vēnisse invītōs, ēiectōs domō; sī suam grātiam Rōmānī velint, posse iīs ūtilēs esse amīcōs; vel sibi agrōs attribuant vel patiantur eōs tenēre, quōs armīs possēderint: sēsē ūnīs Suēbīs concēdere, quibus nē diī quidem immortālēs parēs esse possint; reliquum quidem in terrīs esse nēminem, quem nōn superāre possint.

8. Ad haec quae vīsum est Caesar respondit; sed exitus

---

7. quī-cumque (**-cunque**), **quae-cumque, quod-cumque,** *indef. rel. pron.* [**cumque,** ever], whoever, whatever, everyone who, everything that. *

9. ēiciō, -ere, iēcī, iectus, cast *or* drive out, expel. *

10. ūtilis, -e [**ūtor,** use], useful, profitable, serviceable. 3

11. possīdō, -ere -sēdī, -sessus, *a.*, take possession of, occupy, seize. 1

---

2. loca, locīs: for the repetition cf. II, **18,** 1; I, **29,** 3; **16,** 10. **iter . . . coepit:** northeast from Amiens, past the old camp on the Sabis through Tongres to Maestricht where he crossed the Meuse and marched down its right bank.

3. quibus: sc. *locīs.*

4. ab hīs: i. e., the Germans.

5. Germānōs etc.: put the speech into the direct form in both English and Latin. **neque . . . īnferre,** *had not taken the initiative in making* etc.

6. tamen . . . contendant, *and yet they did not refuse, if assailed, to use their weapons.* **quīn** is less courteous than *quōminus* which is more commonly employed after *recūsāre.* For the mode after *quīn* see on I, **3,** 20, and cf. III, **23,** 20.

7, 8. quīcumque etc.: Eng. order, **resistere** (*iīs*), **quīcumque** etc. **dēprecārī,** *beg off.*

9. ēiectōs domō: see **1,** 5.

12. ūnīs, *alone.*

13. reliquum nēminem, *no one besides.* The energy of this haughty speech is enhanced by the omission of the subject *sē* with the Infin. *dīcere, vēnisse, posse;* by the omission of conjunctions; and by the emphatic arrangement of words, as *nēminem.* Its tone of superiority recalls the speech of Divico, I, **13,** and of Ariovistus, I, **36.**

1. quae vīsum est, *what seemed best.* **quae** is the obj. of *respondēre* understood. What is the subj. of *vīsum est?* **sed** marks the contrast

He demands that the Germans withdraw from Gaul.

fuit ōrātiōnis: Sibi nūllam cum hīs amīcitiam esse posse, sī in Galliā remanērent; neque vērum esse, quī suōs fīnēs tuērī nōn potuerint, aliēnōs occupāre; neque ūllōs in Galliā vacāre agrōs, quī darī tantae praesertim multitūdinī sine iniūriā possint; sed licēre, sī velint, in Ubiōrum fīnibus cōnsīdere, quōrum sint lēgātī apud sē et dē Suēbōrum iniūriīs querantur et ā sē auxilium petant: hōc sē Ubiīs imperātūrum.

They try to gain time. Caesar refuses.

9. Lēgātī haec sē ad suōs relātūrōs dīxērunt et rē dēlīberātā post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversūrōs: intereā nē propius sē castra movēret, petiērunt. Nē id quidem Caesar ab sē impetrārī posse dīxit. Cōgnōverat enim māgnam partem equitātūs ab iīs aliquot diēbus ante praedandī frūmentandīque causā ad Ambivarītōs trāns Mosam

4. **tueor, -ērī, tuitus (tūtus) sum,** *a.*, look *or* gaze at, watch, regard, guard, protect. *

3. **propius,** *compar. adv.* [prope, near], nearer. *

6. **frūmentor,** 1. [frūmentum, grain], *a.*, fetch *or* get grain, forage. *

Ambivarītī, -ōrum, M., *a Belgic tribe west of the Meuse.* 1

Mosa, -ae, M., the Meuse *or* Maas *a river of Belgic Gaul.* *

---

between the first part of Caesar's reply, which he does not think it necessary to insert, and the conclusion (*exitus*) containing his demands. **sibi esse posse,** *he could have.*

2, 3. sibi: for case cf. **2,** 1; I, **7,** 10; II, **15,** 10. **amīcitiam:** a form of alliance between the Roman state and foreign powers. It bound each of the parties not to molest the friends or give aid to the enemies of the other. It was different from the form of treaty called *societās*, which was an alliance for offensive or defensive purposes. **vērum,** *reasonable.*

7, 8. apud sē querantur, *were with him to complain.* **dē Suēbōrum iniūriīs:** see **3,** 10–13. **hōc:** i. e., *ut eōs fīnibus suīs recipiant.*

2. post diem tertium, *on the third day*, i. e., the next day but one, since the present day was counted in.

3. propius sē, *nearer them.* For the Acc. see on I, **46,** 2. **castra movēret:** see Int. 140.

4. sē: for case cf. III, **6,** 10; II, **31,** 9; I, **23,** 11.

5. diēbus: for case cf. III, **20,** 5; I, **31,** 36; **18,** 26.

6. trāns Mosam: i. e., to the west side of the stream.

mīssam; hōs exspectārī equitēs atque ēius reī causā moram interpōnī arbitrābātur.

Sources and course of the Meuse and Rhine.

10. Mosa prōfluit ex mōnte Vosegō, quī est in fīnibus Lingonum, et parte quādam ex Rhēnō receptā, quae appellātur Vacalus, īnsulam efficit Batāvōrum, neque longius ab eō mīlibus passuum LXXX in Oceanum īnfluit. Rhēnus autem oritur ex Lēpontiīs, quī Alpēs incolunt, et longō spatiō per fīnēs Nantuātium, Helvētiōrum, Sēquanōrum, Mediōmātricum, Tribocōrum, Trēverōrum, citātus fertur et, ubi Ōceanō appropīnquāvit, in plūrēs dēfluit partēs multīs ingentibusque īnsulīs effectīs, quārum pars māgna ā ferīs bar-

7. **mora, -ae** [**moror,** delay], F., delay. 4

8. **inter-pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus** [**pōnō,** place], *a.*, place *or* put between, insert, interpose. *

1. **prō-fluō, -ere, flūxī,** [**fluō,** flow], *n.*, flow forth *or* along, issue, proceed. 1

Vosegus, -ī, M., *the* Vosges mountains, *west of the Rhine.* 1

3. **Vacalus, -ī,** M., the Waal, *a branch of the Rhine, near its mouth.* 1

Batāvī, -ōrum, M., the Batavians, *a Celtic people inhabiting Insula Batāvōrum; capital Lugdunum, the modern* Leyden. 1

5. **Lēpontiī, -ōrum,** M., *a Gallic people among the Alps between St. Gothard and Lake Maggiore.*

7. **Mediōmātricēs, -um (-ī, -ōrum)** M., *a Gallic people between the Vosges and Moselle about modern Metz.* 2

Tribocī, -ōrum (-ēs, -um) M., *a German tribe on the Rhine about modern* Strasburg. 2

citō, 1. [*freq. of* **cieō,** put in motion], *a.*, put in quick motion; hasten, incite. 1

8. **dē-fluō, -ere, flūxī, fluxus** [**fluō**] flow from *or* apart, separate, divide. 1

9. **in-gēns, -entis** [**in,** *neg.*+**gēns,** race, kind, lit. *not of the kind i. e. out of proportion*], enormous, huge, vast, great. 3

7, 8. **hōs exspectārī . . . interpōnī:** in view of Caesar's undoubted respect for the German cavalry, this reason may well have weighed strongly with him.

1. **ex mōnte Vosegō:** more correctly the plateau of Langres, north of the Cote d'or, which unites the Cevennes with the Vosges.

2. **parte quādam receptā,** *receiving an arm.*

3. **īnsulam efficit:** with the north arm of the Rhine and the North Sea.

4. **eō,** i. e., the Vacalus. **LXXX** the distance from the present confluence of the Waal and Meuse to the North Sea is much less than eighty miles; but a careful study of the old water courses of the Rhine has made it clear that these streams formerly united their waters farther east, near Battenburg.

6. **longō spatiō,** *for a long distance.*

7. **citātus,** *with a swift current.*

barīsque nātiōnibus incolitur, ex quibus sunt, quī piscibus atque ōvīs avium vīvere exīstimantur, multīsque capitibus. in Ōceanum īnfluit.

At Caesar's approach the Germans again seek delay and gain a truce.

11. Caesar cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum XII mīlibus abesset, ut erat cōnstitūtum, ad eum lēgātī revertuntur; quī in itinere congressī māgnopere, nē longius prōgrederētur, ōrābant. Cum id nōn impetrāssent, petēbant, utī ad eōs equitēs, quī āgmen antecessissent, praemitteret eōsque pūgnā prohibēret, sibique ut potestātem faceret in Ubiōs lēgātōs mittendī: quōrum sī prīncipēs āc senātus sibi iūreiūrandō fidem fēcisset, eā condiciōne, quae ā Caesare ferrētur, sē ūsūrōs ostendēbant: ad hās rēs cōnficiendās sibi trīduī spatium daret. Haec omnia Caesar eōdem illō pertinēre arbitrābātur, ut trīduī morā interpositā equitēs eōrum, quī abessent, reverterentur; tamen sēsē nōn longius mīlibus passuum quattuor aquātiōnis causā prōcessū-

10. piscis, -is, M., a fish, *collectively*, fish. 1
11. ōvum, -ī, N., an egg. 1
avis, -is, F., a bird. 1
13. aquātiō, -ōnis [aquor, get water], F., getting *or* bringing water. 1

---

11. ōvīs avium: a favorite article of food with the Hollanders of the present day, who dwell along the Zuyder Zee. **piscibus, ōvīs:** for case see on **1,** 16. **multīs capitibus:** inexact, according to good authorities, who claim that in Caesar's time the Rhine had but two mouths.

2. **ut erat cōnstitūtum:** see **9,** 2.

3. **in itinere congressī:** in the forenoon of the third day: see Int. 143.

5. **antecessissent:** see Int. 141.

7. **quōrum sī,** *and if their.* For trans. of the relative cf. II, **29,** 5; **13,** 4; I, **27,** 2; **14,** 4.

8, 9. **eā . . . ūsūrōs** (*esse*), *that they would avail themselves of those terms which were proposed by Caesar* (**8,** 6). **condiciōne:** for case cf. I, **5,** 10; **20,** 7.

10. **trīduī spatium:** this was too brief a time in which to do what they proposed. **daret:** what mode in the direct form? Cf. III, **8,** 19; I, **35,** 10; **7,** 20.

12. **equitēs eōrum:** see **9,** 7.

13. **aquātiōnis causā:** Caesar was approaching a small stream now called the Niers.

rum eō diē dīxit; hūc posterō diē quam frequentissimī convenīrent, ut dē eōrum postulātīs cōgnōsceret. Interim ad praefectōs, quī cum omnī equitātū antecesserant, mittit, quī nūntiārent, nē hostēs proeliō lacesserent et, sī ipsī lacesserentur, sustinērent, quoad ipse cum exercitū propius accessisset.

They treacherously attack and rout the Roman cavalry.

12. At hostēs ubi prīmum nostrōs equitēs cōnspēxērunt, quōrum erat quīnque mīlium numerus, cum ipsī nōn amplius octingentōs equitēs habērent, quod iī, quī frūmentandī causā ierant trāns Mosam, nōndum redierant, nihil timentibus nostrīs, quod lēgātī eōrum paulō ante ā Caesare discesserant atque is diēs indūtiīs erat ab hīs petītus, impetū factō celeriter nostrōs perturbāvērunt; rūrsus resistentibus, cōnsuētūdine suā ad pedēs dēsiluērunt,

14. **frequēns, -entis,** constant, regular; repeated, common, frequent; numerous, crowded, in great numbers. 3

15. **postulātum, -ī** [postulō, demand], N., demand, claim, requirement, request. 4

18. **quo-ad,** *adv.*, as long as, as far as; till, until. 4

3. **octingentī, -ae, -a** [octō+centum], *num. adj.*, eight hundred. 3

6. **indūtiae, -ārum,** [indu=in+eō, īre], F., cessation of hostilities, truce, armistice. 2

---

14. **hūc:** i. e., to the camp by the Niers. **quam:** for force cf. **3,** 1. **frequentissimī:** Caesar's purpose seems to have been to get as many of the chiefs as possible into his power. **convenīrent:** like *daret* above, line 10.

16, 17. **quī nūntiārent,** *men to give orders.* For the Subj. cf. I, **7,** 10; II, **17,** 2. For the omission of the antecedent cf. I, **1,** 2; II, **27,** 2; I, **21,** 4; **17,** 2.

18. **accessisset:** for mode see on *dum*, I, **7,** 18.

2. **quōrum ... mīlium:** a double Gen. depending on *numerus.* In such a case the governing noun is usually between the genitives.

3. **amplius octingentōs equitēs:** before nouns of quantity *amplius* and *plus* often do not influence the construction. So we may say in English 'more than 800' or '800 and more.' Contrast the use in I, **15,** 15. **octingentōs:** both Caesar and Tacitus bear witness to the efficiency of the German cavalry; the latter in fact mentions the Tencteri by name. Still it seems improbable that, with all their valor, the German cavalry would venture to attack a force more than six times their own number. Caesar seems to throw upon them the blame of the attack in order to justify his subsequent action. **habērent:** for the mode cf. I, **14,** 16; III, **7,** 4.

4. **iī, quī ierant:** see **9,** 6.

8. **resistentibus:** sc. *nostrīs* fr. line 5. **cōnsuētūdine:** see **2, 7.**

suffossīs equīs complūribusque nostrīs dēiectīs reliquōs in fugam coniēcērunt atque ita perterritōs ēgērunt, ut nōn prius fugā dēsisterent, quam in cōnspectum āgminis nostrī vēnissent. In eō proeliō ex equitibus nostrīs interficiuntur quattuor et septuāgintā, in hīs vir fortissimus, Pīsō Aquitānus, amplissimō genere nātus, cūius avus in cīvitāte suā rēgnum obtinuerat amīcus ab senātū nostrō appellātus. Hīc cum frātrī interclūsō ab hostibus auxilium ferret, illum ex perīculō ēripuit, ipse equō vulnerātō dēiectus, quoad potuit, fortissimē restitit: cum circumventus multīs vulneribus acceptīs cecidisset, atque id frāter, quī iam proeliō excesserat, procul animadvertisset, incitātō equō sē hostibus obtulit atque interfectus est.

13. Hōc factō proeliō, Caesar neque iam sibi lēgātōs au-

9. **suffodiō, -ere, fōdī, fossus** [fodiō, dig], *a.*, dig under, stab *or* pierce underneath. 1

13. **septuāgintā,** *indecl. num adj.*, seventy.

---

11. vēnissent: for mode cf. I, **19,** 13.

12, 13. quattuor et septuāgintā: a heavy loss in view of the small number of the enemy; see Int. 152.

14. amplissimō genere nātus, *descended from a very illustrious line.* **genere:** for the case see A. 244 *a*; B. 84; G. 395; H. 415 II; *B.* 215. **rēgnum:** monarchy was an exception in Gaul in Caesar's time, most of the states being democratic in form of government. The kings were elected and their power was not absolute. Caesar sought to revive monarchy in Gaul as an offset to the power of the nobility and priesthood.

15. amīcus: see on I, **3,** 13. The same title was conferred upon states with which Rome had concluded the form of treaty called *amīcitia:* see on **8,** 2.

16. interclūsō: trans. by a rel. clause.

1. hōc factō proeliō: the result of this engagement made it clear that little dependence could be placed upon the Gallic cavalry in case of a general battle. A bad effect would be produced upon the disaffected Gauls unless a brilliant victory followed. Caesar accordingly decided to attack the Germans without inquiring too closely into the causes of the cavalry engagement. **lēgātōs** etc.: in the conference which had been arranged for the next day; see **11, 14.**

2, 3. condiciōnēs: stated in **11,** 5. **ab iīs,** *by those:* for case

Caesar determines on decided action and detains German envoys.

diendōs neque condiciōnēs accipiendās arbitrābātur ab iīs, quī per dolum atque īnsidiās petītā pāce ūltrō bellum intulissent; exspectāre vērō, dum hostium cōpiae augērentur equitātusque reverterētur, summae dēmentiae esse iūdicābat, et cōgnitā Gallōrum īnfīrmitāte, quantum iam apud eōs hostēs ūnō proeliō auctōritātis essent cōnsecūtī, sentiēbat; quibus ad cōnsilia capienda nihil spatiī dandum exīstimābat. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus et cōnsiliō cum lēgātīs et quaestōre commūnicātō, nē quem diem pūgnae praetermitteret, oportūnissima rēs accidit, quod postrīdiē ēius diēī māne eādem et perfidiā et simulātiōne ūsī Germānī frequentēs omnibus prīncipibus māiōribusque nātū adhibitīs ad eum in castra vēnērunt, simul, ut dīcēbātur, suī pūrgandī

6. dēmentia, -ae, [**dē-mēns,** out of one's mind], F., madness, infatuation, folly. 1

10. quaestor, -ōris [**quaerō,** seek], M., a quaestor, *an officer in charge of the public revenues, or the finances of the army.* *

commūnicō, 1. [**commūnis,** common], *a.*, make common, communicate, impart, share. *

11. praeter-mittō, -ere, mīsī, mīssus, send *or* let go by; let pass, overlook. 3

12. māne, *adv.*, in the morning. 3

perfidia, -ae [**per-fidus,** faithless], F., treachery, falsehood, dishonesty, perfidy. *

simulātiō, -ōnis [**simulō,** make like], F., simulation, pretence, deceit. *

---

see A. 232 note; H. 388 note; *B.* 189, 1, *a.*

4. exspectāre etc., *that to wait . . . was* (*a sign of*) *the utmost folly.* Having determined to fight, right or wrong, Caesar's reason for engaging at once was a good one. The advantage to be gained by an immediate attack evidently weighed more with him than the possibility that he might be wrong in attacking at all.

5, 6. augērentur: for mode see on I, **7,** 18; cf. the mode with *quoad* **11,** 18. **dēmentiae:** for the case see on **5,** 4: what is here the subject of *esse?* Cf. I, **17,** 8; **10,** 3; **7,** 11. **īnfīrmitāte:** a consideration of great weight just then, in view of the disaffection among the Gauls forming the allied contingent in his own army, a symptom of which was the flight of the cavalry.

10. lēgātīs, quaestōre: see Int. 94, 95. **nē quem** etc., *not to let a day for fighting go by.*

11. rēs accidit: it was hardly an accident. Caesar himself had ordered them to return. **quod,** *inasmuch as.*

12. perfidiā: observe how Caesar multiplies his charges of faithless conduct.

13. frequentēs: cf. *frequentissimī,* **11,** 14.

14. ad eum . . . vēnērunt: this action seems to disprove Caesar's charge of perfidy.

causā, quod contrā, atque esset dictum et ipsī petīssent, proelium prīdiē commīsissent, simul ut, sī quid possent, dē indūtiīs fallendō impetrārent. Quōs sibi Caesar oblātōs gāvīsus illōs retinērī iussit, ipse ōmnēs cōpiās castrīs ēdūxit equitātumque, quod recentī proeliō perterritum esse exīstimābat, āgmen subsequī iūssit.

He unexpectedly attacks and storms their camp.

14. Aciē triplicī īnstitūtā et celeriter VIII mīlium itinere cōnfectō prius ad hostium castra pervēnit quam quid agerētur Germānī sentīre possent. Quī omnibus rēbus subitō perterritī, et celeritāte adventūs nostrī et discessū suōrum, neque cōnsiliī habendī neque arma capiendī spatiō datō, perturbantur, cōpiāsne adversus hostem dūcere, an castra dēfendere, an fugā salūtem petere praestāret. Quōrum

17. **gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum,** *n.*, be delighted, rejoice. 1

6. **adversus,** *prep. with acc.*, against. 1

7. **an,** *conj. used in second member of alternative questions*, or, or rather. *

14–16. **simul—simul:** used to denote the simultaneous occurrence of unlike things; *at once—and also.* **suī pūrgandī,** *of freeing themselves.* See on III, **6**, 3: is *pūrgandī* gerund or gerundive? Give gender, number and case of *suī*, and reason for each. **atque,** *contrary to what.* For use cf. I, **28**, 17; II, **6**, 4; III, **28**, 6. **ut** etc.: *to obtain whatever* (lit. *if anything*) *they could in the way of a truce by means of deceit.*

17. **quōs . . . gāvīsus:** because the Germans without their leaders would be less capable of resisting him. **retinērī:** does Caesar's action here differ materially from that of the Veneti (see III, **16**, 9, 10) which he punished so severely? **illōs:** not necessary after *quōs* but emphasizes the condition of the ambassadors and Caesar's immediate course.

1. **aciē triplicī:** see Int. 145. The legions probably marched in column of cohorts (see Int. 140) until the vicinity of the enemy was reached, when they deployed into line of battle.

3. **quid agerētur,** *what was going on.* For mode cf. I, **12**, 3. **possent:** for mode cf. I, **19**, 13.

4. **omnibus rēbus,** *by the whole state of affairs;* explained by the following ablatives.

5. **suōrum:** i. e., *prīncipum et māiōrum nātū*, **13**, 13.

6, 7. **spatiō datō,** *and because time was not afforded.* **perturbantur** etc., *they were in great perplexity,* (*not knowing*) *whether it were better to . . . or . . . or* etc. **-ne, an, an:** for the use of the particles in Double or Alternative questions see A. 211; G. 460; H. 353; *B.* 162 4. **praestāret:** imperfect, because *perturbantur* is a historical present.

timor cum fremitū et concursū sīgnificārētur, mīlitēs nostrī prīstinī diēī perfidiā incitātī in castra irrūpērunt. Quō locō quī celeriter arma capere potuērunt, paulisper nostrīs restitērunt atque inter carrōs impedīmentaque proelium commīsērunt: at reliqua multitūdō puerōrum mulierumque (nam cum omnibus suīs domō excesserant Rhēnumque trānsierant) passim fugere coepit; ad quōs cōnsectandōs Caesar equitātum mīsit.

The Germans flee with great loss.

15. Germānī post tergum clamōre audītō cum suōs interficī vidērent, armīs abiectīs sīgnīsque mīlitāribus relīctīs sē ex castrīs ēiēcērunt, et cum ad cōnfluentem Mosae et Rhēnī pervēnissent, reliquā fugā dēspērātā māgnō numerō interfectō reliquī sē in flūmen prae-

---

9. **ir (in-) -rumpō, -ere, rūpī, ruptus** [**rumpō**, break], *a.*, break in *or* into, storm. 5

14. **passim,** *adv.* [**passus,** *p. p. of* **pandō**, stretch out], hither and thither, in every direction. 1

2. **abiciō, -ere, -iēcī, iectus** [**iaciō**, hurl], *a.*, throw away *or* down, cast aside, abandon. *

4. **cōnfluēns, -entis** [**cōnfluō**, flow together], M., a flowing together, confluence. 1

5. **praecipitō,** 1. [**praeceps,** headlong], *a.*, throw *or* hurl headlong, precipitate. 2

---

9. **quō locō**=*in castrīs Germānōrum.*

11. **carrōs: impedimenta:** see **I, 26,** 6-10.

14, 15. **ad quōs . . . mīsit:** the cold-blooded cruelty of this order is almost incredible and has left an indelible stain upon Caesar's fame. When the proposal was made in the Roman Senate to proclaim a public thanksgiving for this victory Cato declared that Caesar ought to be delivered up to the Germans, in order to avert from Rome the wrath of the gods for his perfidious act done in her name.

1. **Germānī:** those in the camp who were resisting the Romans. **clāmōre:** the cries of the women and children.

4. **cōnfluentem Mosae et Rhēnī:** see on **10,** 4. *Rhēnī* here means the *Vacalus* (Waal) the southern branch of the Rhine, connecting it with the Meuse. The scene of this battle is by some placed at Coblentz in the angle between the Moselle and the Rhine. It is more satisfactory on the whole to follow the inference from the text and the local topography, that the battle took place near Goch on the Niers and that the routed Germans fled north to the Waal. **reliquā,** *further.*

5–7. **reliquī . . . periērunt:** probably an exaggeration. **sē**

cipitāvērunt atque ibi timōre, lassitūdine vī flūminis oppressī periērunt. Nostrī ad ūnum omnēs incolumēs perpaucīs vulnerātīs ex tantī bellī timōre, cum hostium numerus capitum CCCCXXX mīlium fuisset, sē in castra recēpērunt. Caesar iīs, quōs in castrīs retinuerat, discēdendī potestātem fēcit. Illī supplicia cruciātūsque Gallōrum veritī, quōrum agrōs vēxāverant, remanēre sē apud eum velle dīxērunt. Hīs Caesar lībertātem concessit.

Caesar resolves to cross the Rhine.

16. Germānicō bellō cōnfectō, multīs dē causīs Caesar statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundum; quārum illa fuit iūstissima, quod cum vidēret Germānōs tam facile impellī, ut in Galliam venīrent, suīs quoque rēbus eōs timēre voluit, cum intellegerent, et posse et audēre populī Rōmānī exercitum Rhēnum trānsīre. Accessit etiam, quod illa pars equitātūs Usipetum et Tencterōrum, quam suprā commemorāvī praedandī frūmentandīque causā Mosam trānsīsse neque proeliō interfuisse, post fugam suōrum sē

7. **per-eō, īre, iī (īvī), itus** [eō, go], *n.*, go through, pass away, be destroyed, perish. 4

1. **Germānicus, -a, -um** [Germānus, German], of *or* pertaining to the Germans, German, Germanic. 1

3. **iūstus, -a, -um** [iūs, right], in accordance with law *or* right, lawful, righteous, reasonable, valid, just. *

---

praecipitāvērunt, *plunged headlong.* **ad ūnum,** *to a man.*

8. ex . . . timōre, *after the fear; ex* is used in a temporal sense, but may be freely translated: *relieved from.*

10. discēdendī potestātem fēcit: what light does this action throw upon Caesar's real belief with respect to the charges he made against these chiefs?

11, 12. quōrum . . . vēxāverant: such as the Menapii, Ambivariti and possibly the Eburones and Condrusi.

13. lībertātem, *permission* (to remain).

3. illa, *the following.*

4, 5. suīs rēbus, *for their own possessions.* **cum intellegerent,** *on perceiving* (*since they would perceive*).

6. accessit: the subject is the subst. cl. *quod . . . recēperat.*

8. suprā: see **9**, 5. **commemorāvī:** see on *dēmōnstrāvimus*, II, **1**, 2.

trāns Rhēnum in fīnēs Sugambrōrum recēperat sēque cum iīs coniūnxerat. Ad quōs cum Caesar nūntiōs mīsisset, quī postulārent, eōs, quī sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent, sibi dēderent, respondērunt: Populī Rōmānī imperium Rhēnum fīnīre: sī sē invītō Germānōs in Galliam trānsīre nōn aequum exīstimāret, cūr suī quidquam esse imperiī aut potestātis trāns Rhēnum postulāret? Ubiī autem, quī ūnī ex Trānsrhēnānīs ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīserant, amīcitiam fēcerant, obsidēs dederant, māgnopere ōrābant, ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suēbīs premerentur; vel, sī id facere occupātiōnibus reīpūblicae prohibērētur, exercitum modo Rhēnum trānsportāret: id sibi ad auxilium spemque reliquī temporis satis futūrum. Tantum esse nōmen atque opīniōnem ēius exercitūs Ariovistō

Haughty reply of the Sugambri to his messengers.

10. **Sugambrī, -ōrum,** M., *a German tribe.* 5
14. **fīniō,** 4. [**fīnis,** limit], *a.*, limit, bound; determine, appoint; end, finish. 3
15. **cūr** (quōr=quārē), *interrog. adv.*, why? for what reason? 4
17. **Trānsrhēnānus, -a, -um** [**trāns**+**Rhēnus**], beyond *or* across the Rhine; *in pl. as subst.*, the people across the Rhine. 3
20. **occupātiō, -ōnis** [**occupō,** seize, occupy], F., seizing, occupying; occupation, business, engagement. 2
21. **trāns-pòrtō,** 1. [**portō,** carry], *a.*, carry over, convey across, remove, transport. *
23. **Ariovistus, -ī,** M., *king of the German tribe, Suēbī.* *

---

10. **in fīnēs:** see map. They must have swept around in the rear of Caesar's army.

13. **dēderent:** object of *postulārent.* For the omission of the conjunction cf. III, **11**, 3; **5**, 11. **respondērunt:** give the direct form of their answer in both Latin and English.

14. **sē** (also **suī**, line 15) refers to the subject of the dependent verb, i. e. to Caesar and not to the subject of the main verb, *respondērunt.*

15, 16. **suī . . . Rhēnum,** *that anything across the Rhine belong to his* (military) *authority or* (civil) *jurisdiction.* **suī** agreeing with *imperiī*, and understood (*suae*) with *potestātis.* **imperiī, potestātis:** dependent upon *esse*, not *quicquam*, cf. **5**, 4. **postulāret:** for mode see on I, **40**, 11.

17. **ūnī,** *alone.*

18. **amīcitiam:** see on **8**, 2. **ōrābant:** the envoys from the Ubii were then in camp: see **8**, 7.

20. **premerentur:** for mode cf. I, **16**, 17; **23**, 9; II, **11**, 17.

21. **trānsportāret:** for mode cf. I, **7**, 20.

pulsō et hōc novissimō proeliō factō etiam ad ūltimās Germānōrum nātiōnes, utī opīniōne et amīcitiā populī Rōmānī tūtī esse possint. Nāvium māgnam cōpiam ad trānsportandum exercitum pollicēbantur.

Description of Caesar's bridge across the Rhine.

17. Caesar hīs dē causīs, quās commemorāvī, Rhēnum trānsīre dēcrēverat; sed nāvibus trānsīre neque satis tūtum esse arbitrābātur, neque suae neque populī Rōmānī dīgnitātis esse statuēbat. Itaque, etsī summa difficultās faciendī pōntis prōpōnēbātur propter lātitūdinem, rapiditātem altitūdinemque flūminis, tamen id sibi contendendum aut aliter nōn trādūcendum exercitum exīstimābat. Ratiōnem pōntis hanc īnstituit. Tīgna bīna sēsquipedālia paulum ab īmō praeacūta dīmēnsa ad altitūdinem flūminis intervāllō

5. **rapiditās, -tātis** [rapidus, swift], F., swiftness. 1

8. **tīgnum, -ī,** N., log, beam, piece of timber. 2.

sēsqui-pedālis, -e [sēsqui, (*fr.* **semis, quī**) *more by a half* + **pēs,** foot], of a foot and a half eighteen-inch. 1

---

2. **Rhēnum trānsīre:** probably at Bonna (Bonn), so as to meet the wishes of the Ubii (see **16,** 18) and to be as near the Sugambri as possible. The bridge must have been over a quarter of a mile long. The time of its construction is placed by Rüstow, between the 12th and the 21st of June. **nāvibus** for case cf. I, **3,** 20; **53,** 7; II, **10, 7.**

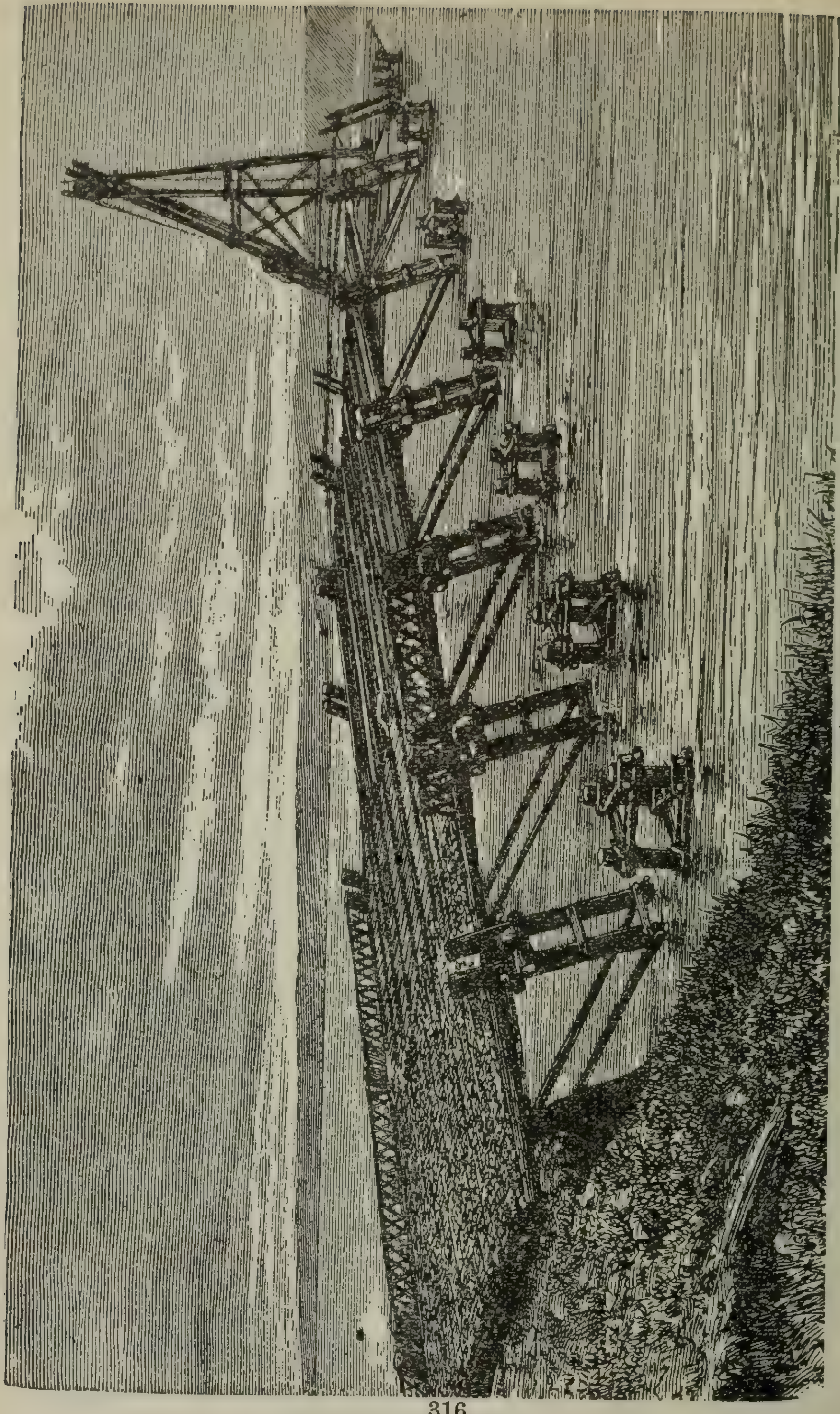
3. **satis tūtum:** the boats were probably small and could carry but few soldiers each. Broken up into so many small portions, the fighting power of the army would be greatly reduced and the enemy could more effectively oppose the landing. In case of defeat, the hazard of the retreat would be greatly increased.

4. **dīgnitātis esse,** *worthy of his own prestige* etc. For the genitive cf. **16,** 16. What is the subject of *esse?* If he depended upon the Ubii to help his army across, the effect upon the Germans would be much less than if he devised his own means of crossing. The very construction of the bridge would impress the barbarians with a high sense of the power and skill of the Romans.

4, 5. **etsī . . . prōpōnēbātur,** *although the difficulty of making a bridge was represented to him as very great.* **summa:** in predicate with the verb. **id contendendum** etc., *that he ought to strive for this* (i. e. *ut pōntem faceret*) *or else not* etc.

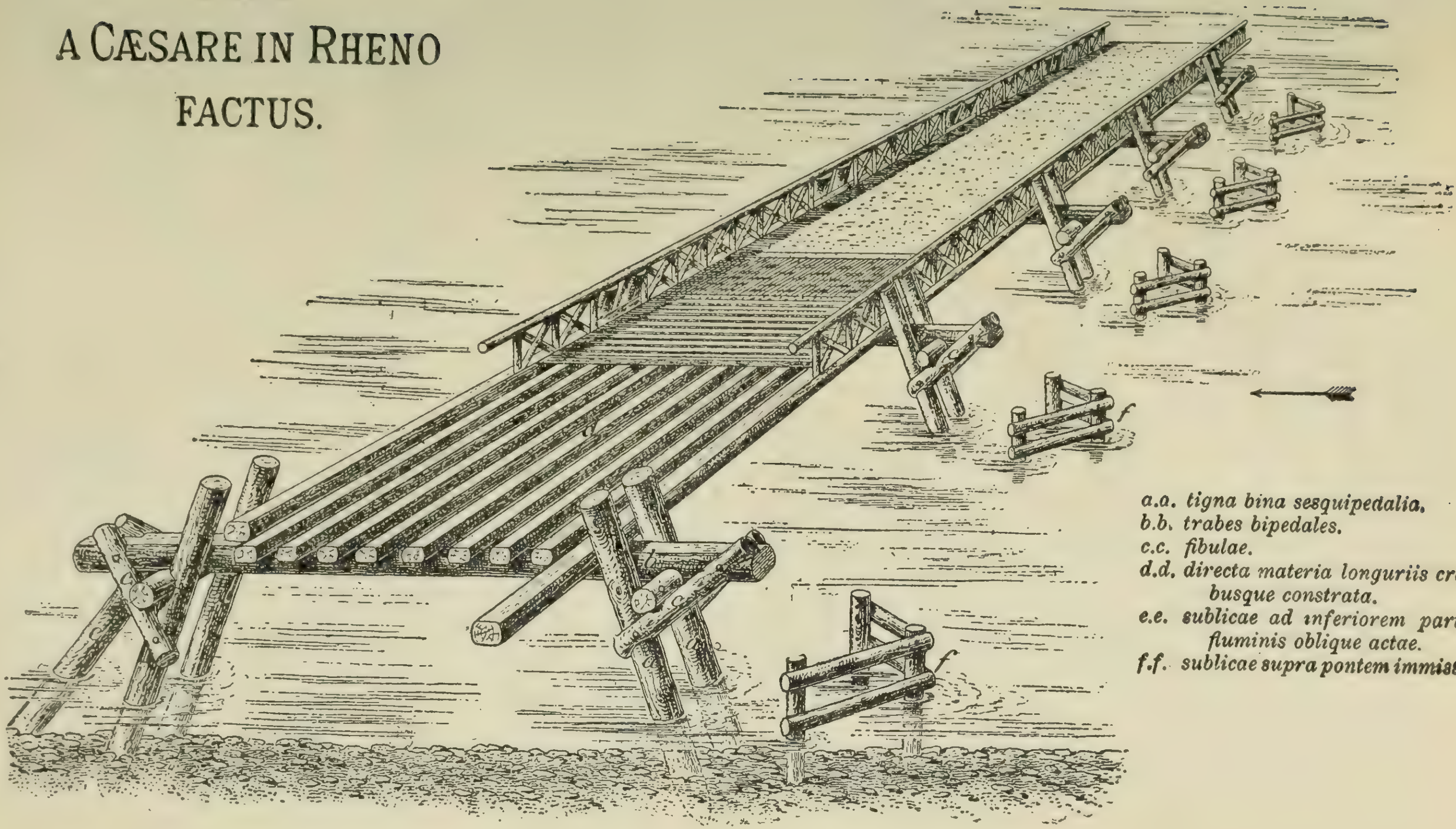
8. **bīna,** *in pairs.*

9. **dīmēnsa:** i. e., longer or shorter according to the depth of the river where they were driven into its bed. The average depth of the river at this point is about 16 feet. For the use of the participle cf. I, **11,** 10.



CAESAR'S BRIDGE.
(From the Museum de St. Germaine.)

PONS
A CÆSARE IN RHENO
FACTUS.



a.a. *tigna bina sesquipedalia.*
b.b. *trabes bipedales.*
c.c. *fibulae.*
d.d. *directa materia longuriis cratibusque constrata.*
e.e. *sublicae ad inferiorem partem fluminis oblique actae.*
f.f. *sublicae supra pontem immissae.*

pedum duōrum inter sē iungēbat. Haec cum māchinātiōnibus immīssa in flūmen dēfīxerat fistūcīsque adēgerat, nōn sublicae modo dērēctē ad perpendiculum, sed prōnē āc fastīgātē ut secundum nātūram flūminis prōcumberent, hīs item contrāria duo ad eundem modum iūncta intervāllō pedum XL ab īnferiōre parte contrā vim atque impetum flūminis conversa statuēbat. Haec utraque īnsuper bipedālibus trabibus immīssīs, quantum eōrum tīgnōrum iūnctūra dīstābat, bīnīs

11. im (**in-**)**mittō, -ere, mīsī, mīssus,** *a.*, send *or* let into, let in *or* down, insert, introduce. 5

dē-fīgō, -ere, fīxī, fīxus [**fīgō,** fix], *a.*, fix *or* fasten down, drive in, plant. 3

fistūca, -ae, F., beetle, pile-driver. 1

12. sublica, -ae, F., pile, stake, palisade. 3

dērēctē (**dīr-**) [**dērēctus,** straight], *adv.*, straight, directly, exactly. 1

perpendiculum, -ī [**per-pendō,** weigh carefully], N., plummet, plumb-line. 1

prōnē [**prōnus,** inclined], in an inclined position, sloping downwards. 2

fastīgātē [**fastīgātus,** sloping], sloping, in a sloping direction. 1

14. XL, *here for* **quadrāgēnī, -ae, -a,** *distr. num. adj.* [**quadrāgintā**], forty each, forty. 2

16. īn-super, *adv.* [**super,** above], above, on the top, from above. 2

bi-pedālis, -e [**bis,** twice + **pēs**], of two feet, two feet in length, thickness, etc. 1

17. iūnctūra, -ae [**iungō,** join], F., a joining, joint, fastening. 1

dīstō, -stāre [**dis-** apart], *n.*, stand apart; be apart, removed, *or* separated. 5

---

10. inter sē iungēbat: *he joined together*, by means of braces. This method of construction permitted the use of lighter timbers, which presented less surface to the current.

11. dēfīxerat, adēgerat: for the mode see on III, **14, 17.** **nōn** etc., *not vertical* (*dērēctē ad perpendiculum*) *like a pile.*

13. ut . . . prōcumberent, *so as to slope according to the flow of the stream.*

14. duō: sc. *tīgna* (with which *contrāria* agrees). Another double pile was driven into the bed of the river forty feet below the first and inclined toward it so that the tops of the two were about 25 feet apart, which would be the width of the bridge.

15. ab īnferiōre parte: (sc. *flūminis,*) i. e., down stream.

16. haec utraque: the corresponding double piles. They were connected by a beam 25 feet long and two feet thick whose ends were let in (*immīssīs*) between the *tīgna* filling the space exactly (cf. l. 9, *pedum duōrum*) and resting upon cross-ties. A pair of braces (*bīnīs fībulīs*) ran from each double pile to the beam.

utrimque fībulīs ab extrēmā parte distinēbantur; quibus disclūsīs atque in contrāriam partem revinctīs tanta erat operis fīrmitūdō atque ea rērum nātūra, ut, quō māior vīs aquae sē incitāvisset, hōc artius illigāta tenērentur. Haec dērēctā māteriā iniectā contexēbantur āc longuriīs crātibusque cōnsternēbantur; āc nihilō sēcius sublicae et ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis oblīquē agēbantur, quae prō ariete subiectae et cum omnī opere coniūnctae vim flūminis exciperent, et aliae item suprā pōntem mediocrī spatiō, ut, sī arborum truncī sive nā-

18. **utrimque,** *adv.* [**uterque,** both], on both sides. 5

fībula, -ae [*contr. of* **figūbula** *fr.* **fīgō,** fasten), F., a fastening, clasp, brace, pin. 1

disclūdō, -ere, clūsī, clūsus [**claudō,** shut, close], *a.*, shut off, hold *or* keep apart, separate. 2

20. **aqua, -ae,** F., water. *

21. **artē** [**artus,** narrow, tight], *adv.*, in narrow compass, closely, tightly.

il (in-) ligō, 1. [**ligō,** bind], tie *or* bind on, attach, fasten.

dērēctus, -a, -um (dīr-) [**dērigō,** straighten], direct, straight.

22. **iniciō, -ere, iēcī, iectus** [**iaciō,** hurl], *a.*, throw *or* cast into *or* upon, put *or* place on; put into, inspire, inject.

con-texō, -ere, texuī, textus [**texō,** plait], *a.*, plait, weave *or* bind together, unite, connect.

crātis, -is, F., wicker-worker, a hurdle; *in war*, fascines.

cōn-sternō, -ere, strāvī, strātus [**sternō,** strew], *a.*, strew over, cover, thatch.

23. **sēcius,** *comp. adv.*, less: **nihilō sēcius,** none the less.

24. **oblīquē** [**oblīquus,** slanting], in a slanting direction, obliquely.

26. **truncus, -ī,** M., stem, stock, trunk.

---

18. **ab extrēmā parte,** *at each end* of the beam. **quibus,** refers to *haec*, line 16. **disclūsīs,** *kept apart* by the beam.

19. **in contrāriam partem revinctīs,** *braced in opposite directions* by the *fībulae.*

20. **ea rērum nātūrā:** i. e., the relation of the various parts of the structure to each other.

21. **illigāta:** sc. *tigna.* **haec** i. e., the piers described above. It is estimated that there were about fifty of these in the bridge.

23. **sublicae:** shores to brace the whole pier.

24. **oblīquē:** driven in at a greater angle of inclination than the double pile so that its top was fastened to the latter. **prō ariete,** *acting as a buttress.*

25. **vim flūminis exciperent:** i. e., these shores reinforced the resisting power of the whole bridge. **aliae:** sc. *sublicae:* they were detached from the bridge so as to sustain all the force of trees, boats, etc. which might be swept down by the current.

vēs dēicendī operis causā essent ā barbarīs mīssae, hīs dēfēnsōribus eārum rērum vīs minuerētur, neu pōntī nocērent.

The army crosses into the country of the Sugambri who withdraw.

18. Diēbus decem, quibus māteria coepta erat comportārī, omnī opere effectō exercitus trādūcitur. Caesar ad utramque partem pōntis fīrmō praesidiō relīctō in fīnēs Sugambrōrum contendit. Interim ā complūribus cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt; quibus pācem atque amīcitiam petentibus līberāliter respondit obsidēsque ad sē addūcī iubet. At Sugambrī ex eō tempore, quō pōns īnstituī coeptus est, fugā comparātā hortantibus iīs quōs ex Tencterīs atque Usipetibus apud sē habēbant, fīnibus suīs excesserant suaque omnia exportāverant sēque in sōlitūdinem āc silvās abdiderant.

He ravages their country.

19. Caesar paucōs diēs in eōrum fīnibus morātus omnibus vīcīs aedificiīsque incēnsīs frūmentīsque succīsīs sē in fīnēs Ubiōrum recēpit, atque iīs auxilium suum pol-

10. ex-portō, 1. [portō, carry], *a.*, carry out *or* away, export. 1
sōlitūdō, -inis [sōlus, alone], F., loneliness, solitude; a lonely place, desert, wilderness. 2

2. suc-cīdō, -ere, cīdī, cīsus [sub + caedō, cut], *a.*, cut from beneath, cut through *or* down, fell. 3

---

27. dēiciendī operis, *for the purpose of throwing down the work.*
28. neu . . . nocērent, *and that they might not* etc. **pōntī**: for the case cf. I, **2**, 4; III, **14**, 3.

1. diēbus decem, quibus, *within ten days from the time when*, or *in ten days after:* see on III, **23**, 4. The actual time used in the construction of the bridge was probably much less: see on **17**, 2. **coepta erat**: for the voice see on I, **47**, 3.
3. partem, *ends.* **praesidiō**: in a "bridge-head" or entrenchment, enveloping the end of the bridge: see II, **5**, 18—20.
6. amīcitiam: see on **8**, 2. **petentibus**: trans. by a clause, *and when* etc.
8, 9. fugā comparātā: without awaiting the completion of the bridge. **hortantibus iīs,** *urged by those* (lit., *those urging them*). **quōs . . . habēbant**: mentioned in **16**, 6–10. It is probable that the survivors of the massacre (see note **15**, 5) also fled to the Sugambri.
10, 11. sōlitūdinem āc silvās =*sōlitūdinem silvārum.* For the figure of speech see on I, **31**, 45.

2. vīcīs . . . succīsīs: "The consequence must have been that in the next winter many Germans died of cold and hunger" (Long).

licitus, sī ab Suēbīs premerentur, haec ab iīs cōgnōvit Suēbōs, posteāquam per explōrātōrēs pōntem fierī comperissent, mōre suō conciliō habitō nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsisse, utī dē oppidīs dēmigrārent, līberōs, uxōrēs suaque omnia in silvīs dēpōnerent, atque omnēs, quī arma ferre possent, ūnum in locum convenīrent: hunc esse dēlēctum medium ferē regiōnum eārum, quās Suēbī obtinērent: hīc Rōmānōrum adventum exspectāre atque ibi dēcertāre cōnstituisse. Quod ubi Caesar comperit omnibus rēbus iīs cōnfectīs, quārum rērum causā trādūcere exercitum cōnstituerat, ut Germānīs metum iniceret, ut Sugambrōs ulcīscerētur, ut Ubiōs obsidiōne līberāret, diēbus omnīnō XVIII trāns Rhēnum cōnsūmptīs satis et ad laudem et ad ūtilitātem prōfectum arbitrātus sē in Galliam recēpit pōntemque rescidit.

The Suebi prepare resistance.

Caesar recrosses into Gaul.

5. **posteāquam** (posteā quam), *adv.* [**posteā**, afterwards], after.*

11. **hīc**, *adv.* here, in this place; (*of a place just mentioned*), there, in that place. 4

15. **obsidiō, -ōnis**, [**ob-sideō**, sit at, besiege], F., siege, investment, blockade; peril, oppression. *

līberō, 1. [**līber**, free], *a.*, make *or* set free, release, deliver. 5

17. **ūtilitās, -tātis** [**ūtilis**, useful], F., usefulness, utility, advantage, service. 2

---

5. **fierī**, *was being made.*

6, 7. **nūntiōs dīmīsisse utī dēmigrārent**, *had sent messengers* (to urge them) *to leave.*

8, 9. **dēpōnerent, convenīrent**: in the same constr. as *dēmigrārent*, above. **hunc**: sc. *locum*.

10, **delectum** etc., *as this* (*place*) *had been selected almost exactly the central point of the lands* etc.

11. **hīc, ibi**: both words refer to the same place.

14, 15. **ut . . . līberāret**: for the *ut* clauses cf. II, **31**, 9; **9**, 12; **2**, 7; I, **48**, 6; **30**, 8. The moral effect of this military demonstration was no doubt considerable. During the whole of the next year's campaigning on the Rhine frontier, the Germans could not be induced to cross the stream.

15. **obsidiōne**: the Ubii could not be driven from their homes; yet they were, so to speak, in a *state of siege.*

16, 17. **satis prōfectum** (*esse*), *that enough had been accomplished.* Give the principal parts of the verbs from which we get *profectum* and *prōfectum.* **ad laudem**: i. e., for the honor of Rome.

He plans an expedition to Britain.

20. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā Caesar, etsī in hīs locīs, quod omnis Gallia ad septentriōnēs vergit, mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficīscī contendit, quod omnibus ferē Gallicīs bellīs hostibus nostrīs inde subministrāta auxilia intellegēbat et, sī tempus annī ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen māgnō sibi ūsuī fore arbitrābātur, sī modo īnsulam adisset, et genus hominum perspēxisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cōgnōvisset; quae omnia ferē Gallīs erant incōgnita. Neque enim temerē praeter mercātōrēs illō adit quisquam, neque iīs ipsīs quicquam praeter ōram maritimam atque eās regiōnēs, quae sunt contrā Galliās, nōtum est. Itaque vocātīs ad sē undique mercātōribus neque quanta esset īnsulae māgnitūdō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum bellī habērent aut quibus īnstitūtīs ūterentur, neque quī essent ad māiōrum nāvium multitūdinem idōneī portūs, reperīre poterat.

1. **exiguus, -a, -um** [**exigō**, *drive or weigh out*], *weighed out exactly;* scanty, short, small, meagre, limited. *

9. **in-cōgnitus, -a, -um** [**cōgnōscō**, learn, know], not ascertained, unknown. 2

temerē, [cf. **temeritās,** chance], *adv.*, by chance, rashly, blindly. 4

---

1. **exiguā . . . reliquā:** the ablative absolute is concessive and the sentence contains besides a formal concessive clause, *etsī . . . hiemēs.* Cf. **3,** 10, and trans.: *although only a small part of the summer was left, in spite of the fact that the winters are early* (*mātūrae*) *because* etc.

4, 5. **quod hostibus . . . intellegēbat,** *because he knew that assistance was rendered from thence to our enemies.* **tempus annī:** cf. *exiguā aestāte*, line 1, above.

6. **māgnō . . . fore,** *it would be of great advantage to him.* For the case cf. I, **18,** 28; **25,** 6; II, **20,** 8; **30,** 9, 10.

7. **sī adisset,** *if he should* (*merely*) *visit.* For mode and tense see on II, **9,** 12.

9, 10. **temerē illō adit,** *incur the risk of going there.* **mercātōrēs:** the trade was controlled by the Veneti (see III, **8,** 3), the traders usually avoiding the land of the Belgae for the reason stated in I, **1,** 8. **iīs ipsīs**=*mercātōribus.*

12. **neque** etc., *he could not learn what the size of the island was* etc.

13, 14. **esset, incolerent:** for mode cf. I, **12,** 3.

15. **māiōrum nāvium:** i. e.. the ships of war and transports, which were much larger than the trading vessels used by the Gauls.

He proceeds against the Morini. Negotiations with the Britons.

21. Ad haec cōgnōscenda, priusquam perīculum faceret, idōneum esse arbitrātus C. Volusēnum cum nāvī longā praemittit. Huic mandat, ut explōrātīs omnibus rēbus ad sē quam prīmum revertātur. Ipse cum omnibus cōpiīs in Morinōs proficīscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trāiectus. Hūc nāvēs undique ex fīnitimīs regiōnibus et quam superiōre aestāte ad Veneticum bellum effēcerat classem iubet convenīre. Interim cōnsiliō ēius cōgnitō et per mercātōrēs perlātō ad Britannōs ā complūribus īnsulae cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt, quī polliceantur obsidēs dare atque imperiō populī Rōmānī obtemperāre. Quibus audītīs līberāliter pollicitus hortātusque, ut in eā sententiā permanērent, eōs domum remittit et cum iīs ūnā Commium, quem ipse Atrebatibus superātīs rēgem ibi cōnstituerat, cūius et virtūtem et cōnsilium probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrā-

6. **trāiectus, -ūs** [trāiciō, cross over], M., crossing over, crossing, passage. 2

10. **Britannus, -a, -um,** of Britain, British, Britannic: *in pl. as subst.*, the people of Britain, the Britons. 4

12. **ob-temperō, 1.** [temperō, rule], *n.*, be subject to rule, attend to, comply with, obey. 2

14. **Commius, -ī,** M., *a prince of the Atrebates* (*living in Belgic Gaul*).

16. **fidēlis, -e** [fidēs, faith], faithful, trustworthy, reliable. 2

1, 2. **priusquam . . . faceret,** *before incurring the risk.* For mode cf. I, **19,** 13; IV, **4,** 18; **12,** 11.

3. **Volusēnum:** see what Caesar says of him in III, **5,** 8. **nāvī longā:** see Int. 170. Sc. *eum* as subject of *esse* or object of *praemittit.*

7. **hūc:** refers in general to the country of the Morini, but specifically to the port in which the fleet was to assemble.

11, 12. **dare, obtemperāre:** a rare use of the complementary infinitive with a verb of promising. The usual construction is the (future) infinitive with subj. acc.

15. **rēgem:** Caesar mentions by name eleven Gallic kings. **ibi:** i. e., among the Atrebates.

16. **sibi fidēlem:** Commius, however, deserted Caesar in 52 B. C. **arbitrābātur,** *supposed,* indicates that the author knew better *when he wrote.* This, then, was written at the conclusion of the war.

bātur, cūiusque auctōritās in hīs regiōnibus māgnī habēbātur, mittit. Huic imperat, quās possit, adeat cīvitātēs hortēturque, ut populī Rōmānī fidem sequantur, sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet. Volusēnus perspectīs regiōnibus omnibus, quantum eī facultātis darī potuit quī nāvī ēgredī āc sē barbarīs committere nōn audēret, quīntō diē ad Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi perspēxisset renūntiat.

The Morini make terms.

22. Dum in hīs locīs Caesar nāvium parandārum causā morātur, ex māgnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī vēnērunt, quī sē dē superiōris temporis cōnsiliō excūsārent, quod hominēs barbarī et nostrae cōnsuētūdinis imperītī bellum populō Rōmānō fēcissent, sēque ea, quae imperāsset, factūrōs pollicerentur. Hōc sibi Caesar satis oportūnē accidisse arbitrātus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volēbat neque bellī gerendī propter annī tempus facultātem habēbat neque hās tantulārum rērum occupātiōnēs Britan-

charge], *a.*, release from a charge, free from blame; justify, excuse; make excuse *or* explanations, apologize. 1

4. **imperītus, -a, -um** [**perītus,**

experienced], inexperienced, unskilled, ignorant. *

6. **oportūnē** (**opp-**), *adv.*, fitly, at the right time. 1

3. **excūsō, 1.** [**causa,** cause,

---

17. **hīs regiōnibus:** in Belgic Gaul. **māgnī hābēbātur,** *was held in high estimation.* **māgnī:** for case see on I, **20,** 15.

18, 19. **adeat, hortētur:** what is omitted? Cf. I, **20,** 14; III, **5,** 11. **ut fidem sequantur,** *to continue under the protection.*

21, 22. **quī nōn audēret,** *seeing that he did not dare.* For the mode see on II, **15,** 14.

2. **morātur:** for the tense cf. III, **17,** 1; I, **27,** 8.

3. **temporis:** i. e., the previous summer. **cōnsiliō,** *behavior,* see III, **28.**

4. **hominēs barbarī,** *being strangers* or *since they were strangers.* For a like (predicate) use of *hominēs* see I, **2,** 14. **cōnsuētūdinis:** viz. of treating with clemency those who submitted.

5. **fēcissent:** for mode cf. I, **16,** 17.

8. **annī tempus:** i. e., there was not enough of the campaigning season left for both the reduction of the Morini and the expedition to Britain.

9. **hās . . . occupātiōnēs,** *engaging in such trivial matters.* **tantulārum:** for signification of the ending see on II, **30,** 2.

niae antepōnendās iūdicābat, māgnum iīs numerum obsidum imperat. Quibus adductīs eōs in fidem recēpit. Nāvibus circiter LXXX onerāriīs coāctīs cōnstrātīsque, quot satis esse ad duās trānsportandās legiōnēs exīstimābat, quod praetereā nāvium longārum habēbat, quaestōrī, lēgātīs praefectīsque distribuit. Hūc accēdēbant XVIII onerāriae nāvēs, quae ex eō locō ab mīlibus passuum octō ventō tenēbantur, quō minus in eundem portum venīre possent; hās equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum Q. Titūriō Sabīnō et L. Aurunculēiō Cottae lēgātīs in Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum, ab quibus ad eum lēgātī nōn vēnerant, dūcendum dedit; P. Sulpicium Rūfum lēgātum cum eō praesidiō, quod satis esse arbitrābātur, portum tenēre iussit.

Further preparations for the invasion.

23. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus nactus idōneam ad

Caesar crosses to Britain.

10. **ante-pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus** [pōnō, place], *a.*, place *or* set before, regard of more importance, prefer. 1

12. **onerārius, -a, -um** [onus, burden], fitted for burdens, transport: sc. **nāvis,** transportship, freight-ship. *

21. **Rūfus, -ī,** M., (red, red-headed), *The cognomen of* Publius Sulpicius, *Caesar's lieutenant.* 1

1. **nancīscor, -ī, nactus (nanctus) sum,** *a.*, get, obtain; meet with, find. *

11, 12. eōs: the Morini, not the hostages. **nāvibus onerāriīs:** see Int. 175.

12, 13. cōnstrātīs, *decked.* **duās legiōnēs:** the 7th and 10th. What would be the number of legionaries on each vessel? See Int. 87.

14. quod . . . habēbat, *the ships of war he had besides* (lit. *what of ships* etc.). Cf. III, **16,** 5.

15. hūc: i. e., in addition to the transports and the war ships. **XVIII:** it has been estimated that 450 horsemen with their horses could be conveyed in this number of transports.

16. eō locō ab: at the port of Ambleteuse. For *ab* cf. II, **30** 7; **7,** 9; its use with another preposition (*ex*) is exceedingly rare.

17. quō minus . . . possent, *from being able to* etc. For the mode see on I, **31,** 25. **eundem portum:** i. e., Boulogne.

18. equitibus distribuit: about twenty-five men and the same number of horses in each transport.

21. dūcendum: construe with *reliquum exercitum;* for its use cf. III, **11,** 11; I, **19,** 4.

22. portum: as in line 16.

1, 2. rēbus, *measures.* **idōneam tempestātem:** the wind was from the south and the weather

nāvigandum tempestātem tertiā ferē vigiliā solvit equitēsque in ūlteriōrum portum prōgredī et nāvēs cōnscendere et sē sequī iussit. Ā quibus cum paulō tardius esset administrātum, ipse hōrā diēī circiter quartā cum prīmīs nāvibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōnspēxit. Cūius locī haec erat nātūra, atque ita mōntibus angustē mare continēbātur, utī ex locīs superiōribus in lītus tēlum adigī posset. Hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenīrent, ad hōram nōnam in ancorīs expectāvit. Interim lēgātīs tribūnīsque mīlitum convocātīs et quae ex Volusēnō cōgnōvisset, et quae fierī vellet, ostendit monuitque, ut reī mīlitāris ratiō, māximē ut maritimae rēs postulārent, ut quae

2. **solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtus,** *a.*, loosen, untie, unbend, disengage; sc. **nāvēs,** weigh anchor, set sail, put to sea. 5

3. **cōn-scendō, -ere, -dī, -ēnsus** [scandō, climb], climb, mount; go on board, embark. 3

4. **tardē,** *adv.*, slowly, with delay. 1

6. **ex-pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus** [pōnō, place], put *or* set out; set on shore, disembark; set forth, explain. *

9. **lītus, -oris,** N., sea shore, beach, shore. *

nēquāquam [nec, + *abl. of quisquam*], in no way, by no means, not at all. 2

---

settled. **tertiā vigiliā:** about midnight of the 26th of August. **solvit:** sc. *nāvēs* or *ancorās.*

3. **sequī:** the same wind which had prevented them from joining the fleet at Boulogne (see **22,** 16) would be favorable now.

4. **ā . . . administrātum,** *since these (equitēs) executed his orders too slowly* to take advantage of the wind, which soon changed and kept the cavalry in port three days. **quibus:** for case cf. I, **14,** 6; III, **2,**5; how does this differ from **13,** 3?

6. **ibi:** probably a little southwest of Dover, where the chalk cliffs came close to the water's edge.

10. **reliquae nāvēs:** including the eighteen transports, of whose detention Caesar knew nothing. **convenīrent:** for mode cf. I, **7,** 18.

11. **in ancorīs,** *at anchor.*

13, 14. **ut, ut, ut:** the uses must be carefully distinguished. The two before *postulārent* are adverbs, *as*, and are ordinarily used with the indicative (cf. II, **22,** 1; **7,** 10; I, **22,** 3; **16,** 3); the subjunctive is due to *administrārentur* l. 16, see on I, **8,** 7. The *ut* before *quae* is not to be translated and might be omitted from the text without affecting the sense, see on II, **15,** 14.

celerem atque īnstabilem mōtum habērent, ad nūtum et ad tempus omnēs rēs ab iīs administrārentur. Hīs dīmīssīs et ventum et aestum ūnō tempore nactus secundum datō sīgnō et sublātīs ancorīs circiter mīlia passuum septem ab eō locō prōgressus, apertō āc plānō lītore nāvēs cōnstituit.

The Britons attack the Romans on landing.

24. At barbarī cōnsiliō Rōmānōrum cōgnitō praemīssō equitātū et essedāriīs, quō plērumque genere in proeliīs ūtī cōnsuērunt, reliquīs cōpiīs subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus ēgredī prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās, quod nāvēs propter māgnitūdinem nisi in altō cōnstituī nōn poterant, mīlitibus autem īgnōtīs locīs, impedītīs manibus, māgnō et gravī onere armōrum oppressīs simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in fluctibus cōnsistendum et cum hostibus erat pūgnandum, cum illī aut ex āridō aut

īn-stabilis, -e, unsteady. 1
nūtus, -ūs [**nuō,** nod], M., nod, sign, command. 3
mōtus, -ūs [**moveō,** move], M., movement, motion; political movement, uprising. *
15. **celer, -eris, -ere,** swift quick speedy, fast. **motus:** sudden.
18. **septem,** *indecl. num. adj.* seven. 2
2. **essedārius, -ī** [**esseda,** a war chariot], M., a soldier fighting from a war chariot, charioteer. 4
6. **īgnōtus, -a, -um,** unknown, unfamiliar; base. 1
9. **āridus, -a, -um** [**āreō,** be dry], dry; *neut. as subst.*, dry land. 4

---

16. **administrārentur:** depends upon *monuit* with *ut* omitted as in **21,** 18.
17. **aestum:** the tidal current turns west about 11:30 A. M., and runs west until 6:30 P. M.
19. **apertō . . . lītore:** the low shore of Romney, about seven miles west of Dover.

2, 3. **quo genere,** *a class* (of troops) *which;* for position of *genere* cf. III, **9,** 9; **21,** 10.
4. **ēgredī:** for mode see on II, **4,** 7.
5. **nisī** etc., *could not be moored except in deep water.*
6. **mīlitibus** etc., *the soldiers, burdened by the great and heavy weight of their armor, their hands occupied, the ground unknown* (*to them*), *had to leap* etc. For case of *mīlitibus* cf. I, **11,** 15; II, **20,** 1. **locīs:** abl. abs. For the gerundive constr. cf. II, **20,** 1. **oppressīs:** constr. with *mīlitibus.*
7, 8. **manibus:** abl. abs. **onere:** join with *oppressīs*, which agrees with *mīlitibus.* **in fluctibus:** the gradual shoaling of the water prevented the heavily laden ships from reaching shore. **cōnsistendum,** *get a footing.*
9. cum illī, *while the enemy.*

paulum in aquam prōgressī omnibus membrīs expedītīs nōtissimīs locīs audācter tēla cōnicerent et equōs īnsuēfactōs incitārent. Quibus rēbus nostrī perterritī atque hūius omnīnō generis pūgnae imperītī nōn eādem alacritāte āc studiō, quō in pedestribus ūtī proeliīs cōnsuērunt, ūtēbantur.

Caesar brings the war-ships into action.

25. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās, quārum et speciēs erat barbarīs inūsitātior et mōtus ad ūsum expedītior, paulum removērī ab onerāriīs nāvibus et rēmīs incitārī et ad latus apertum hostium cōnstituī atque inde fundīs, sagittīs, tormentīs hostēs prōpellī āc submovērī iussit; quae rēs māgnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit. Nam et nāvium figūrā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitātō genere tormentōrum permōtī barbarī cōnstitērunt āc paulum modo pedem retulērunt. Atque nostrīs mīlitibus cunctantibus, māximē propter altitūdinem maris, quī decimae

Bravery of a Roman signifer.

10. **membrum, -ī,** n., member of the body, limb. 2
nōtus, -a, -um, known; famous; notorious. *
11. **īnsuēfactus, -a, -um** [**insueō,** accustom + **faciō**], accustomed, well trained. 1

13. **alacritās, -tātis** [**alacer,** active], f., activity, spirit, eagerness. 3

5. **funda, -ae,** f., a sling. 5
sagitta, -ae, f., an arrow. 3
7. **figūra, -ae** [**fingō,** form], f., form, shape, figure. 5

---

12. **hūius** etc., *entirely unacquainted with this method of warfare.* How different it was from their usual method of fighting may be seen from Int. 148, 149.

13. **pūgnae:** for case cf. I, **2,** 14; I, **44,** 30; **21,** 10; **18,** 8.

14. **nōn ūtēbantur,** *did not exhibit.* **quō:** refers both to *alacritāte* and *studiō.*

2. **quārum . . . inūsitātior,** *whose form was less familiar,* than that of the trading vessels.

4. **latus apertum:** the right flank.

5. **fundīs, sagittīs:** see Int. 99.

6. **quae . . . fuit,** *these measures were of great advantage to our troops.*

7. **figūrā**=*speciēs* line 2. See Int. 179. **rēmōrum mōtū:** the Britons were not accustomed to the use of oars in propelling large vessels.

8, 9. **āc . . . retulērunt,** *and then withdrew a very little.* **atque,** *and now,* introducing a new and important incident.

10. **quī,** *the man who:* see Int. 120, 121. On the omission of the antecd. cf. I, **1,** 2; II, **27,** 2.

legiōnis aquilam ferēbat, obtestātus deōs, ut ea rēs legiōnī fēlīciter ēvenīret, 'Dēsilīte,' inquit, 'commīlitōnēs nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere: ego certē meum reī pūblicae atque imperātōrī officium praestiterō.' Hōc cum vōce māgnā dīxisset, sē ex nāvī prōiēcit atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostrī cohortātī inter sē, nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur, ūniversī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximīs nāvibus cum cōnspēxissent, subsecūtī hostibus appropīnquārunt.

After a fierce contest the Britons are forced to flee.

26. Pūgnātum est ab utrīsque ācriter. Nostrī tamen quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque fīrmiter īnsistere neque sīgna subsequī poterant, atque alius aliā ex nāvī quibuscumque sīgnīs occurrerat, sē aggregābat, māgnopere perturbābantur; hostēs vērō, nōtīs omnibus vadīs, ubī

11. **aquila, -ae,** F., an eagle: a standard, (*as the* **aquila** *was the chief standard of the legion*). 4

obtestor, 1. [**testor,** witness], *a.*, call to witness, appeal to, invoke. 1

12. **fēlīciter** [**fēlīx,** happy], happily, auspiciously. 1

ē-veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus [**veniō,** come], *a.*, come *or* turn out, result, happen. 1

inquam, -is, -it, *perf.*, **inquiī,** *defect. verb*, say. *

13. **certē,** *adv.* [*compare* **certus**], certainly; at least, at all events. 5

meus, -a, -um, *adj. pron.* [*cf. oblique cases of* **ego**], of me, my, mine, my own. *

17. **dēdecus, -oris** [**decus,** honor], N., dishonor, infamy. 1

2. **fīrmiter** [**fīrmus,** strong], strongly, steadily, firmly. 1

4. **aggregō, (ad-),** 1. [**ad** + **grex,** flock], *a.*, unite in flock, gather, assemble, attach one's self to, join, attach. 2

13, 14. **ego certē officium praestiterō,** *I, at least, shall have done my duty.* The tense indicates that the resolute soldier thought of his duty as already done.

16. **cohortātī inter sē,** *urging one another.* For *inter sē* see on I, **1,** 4.

17. **tantum dēdecus:** see especially Int. 124. **admitterētur,** *not to commit so disgraceful an act:* for mood cf. I, **3,** 5; II, **5,** 7.

18. **ex proximīs nāvibus** = *iī, quī in proximīs nāvibus erant.*

1. **pūgnātum est:** as in I, **22,** 9.

2, 3. **fīrmiter īnsistere,** *to get a firm footing.* **sīgna subsequī,** *keep up with the standards,* i. e., to keep their company formation. **alius . . . aliā** etc., *men from different ships.* For the elliptical use of *alius* cf. I, **39,** 12; II, **22,** 4.

4. **quibuscumque . . . aggregābat,** *gathered about whatever standards they chanced upon.* For a similar instance see II, **21,** 13.

5, 6. **nōtis . . . vadīs:** and hence where it was safe to go. **ubi cōn-**

ex lītore aliquōs singulārēs ex nāvī ēgredientēs cōnspēxerant, incitātīs equīs impedītōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs paucōs circumsistēbant, aliī ab latere apertō in ūniversōs tēla coniciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās longārum nāvium, item speculātōria nāvigia mīlitibus complērī iussit et, quōs labōrantēs cōnspēxerat, hīs subsidia submittēbat. Nostrī, simul in āridō cōnstitērunt, suīs omnibus cōnsecūtīs in hostēs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt, neque longius prōsequī potuērunt, quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque īnsulam capere nōn potuerant. Hōc ūnum ad prīstinam fōrtūnam Caesarī dēfuit.

The Britons make peace.

27. Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt; obsidēs datūrōs, quaeque imperāsset factūrōs pollicitī sunt. Ūnā cum hīs lēgātīs Commius Atrebas vēnit, quem suprā dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam praemīssum. Hunc illī ē nāvī ēgressum, cum ad eōs ōrātōris modō Caesaris

9. **scapha, -ae,** F., small boat, skiff. 1

10. **speculātōrius, -a, -um** [speculor, spy, reconnoitre], scouting, reconnoitering. 1

11. **labōrō, 1.** [labor, toil], *n.*, toil, work hard; be anxious, troubled, *or* perplexed; labor; suffer, be hard pressed. *

6. **ōrātor, -ōris** [ōrō, speak], M., one who speaks; speaker, orator; ambassador, envoy. 1

---

spēxerant, *as often as they saw:* the frequentative use of the pluperf. **aliquōs singulārēs:** for the fact see l. 2.

7. **plūrēs:** i. e., *hostēs.*

8. **latere apertō:** see on **25,** 4.

9. **scaphās:** carried upon the war-ships to facilitate communication with the land or with the fleet.

10. **speculātōria nāvigia:** see Int. 175.

12. **simul** (=*simul atque*), *as soon as.*

13. **longius,** *very far* from the sea-shore.

14, 15. **cursum . . . potuerant:** see on **23,** 4, and on **23,** 10. **hōc ūnum:** the pursuit by the cavalry was an important part of every regular engagement. Hence Caesar's apology for the deficiency here. As a matter of fact this was only the beginning of disaster to the expedition.

5. **suprā:** see **21,** 14.

6, 7. **hunc . . . comprehenderant,** *they had seized this man*

mandāta dēferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula coniēcerant, tum proeliō factō remīsērunt. In petendā pāce ēius reī culpam in multitūdinem contulērunt et propter imprūdentiam ut īgnōscerētur petīvērunt. Caesar questus, quod, cum ūltrō in continentem lēgātīs mīssīs pācem ab sē petīssent, bellum sine causā intulissent, īgnōscere imprūdentiae dīxit obsidēsque imperāvit; quōrum illī partem statim dedērunt, partem ex longīnquiōribus locīs arcessītam paucīs diēbus sēsē datūrōs dīxērunt. Intereā suōs remigrāre in agrōs iussērunt, prīncipēsque undique convenīre et sē cīvitātēsque suās Caesarī commendāre coepērunt.

The ships conveying the cavalry are driven back by a storm.

28. Hīs rēbus pāce cōnfīrmātā post diem quartum, quam est in Britanniam ventum, nāvēs XVIII, dē quibus suprā dēmōnstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex superiōre portū lēnī ventō solvērunt. Quae cum appropīnquārent Britanniae et ex castrīs vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō coorta est, ut nūlla eārum

9. **culpa, -ae,** F., blame, fault, guilt. 2
imprūdentia, -ae, F., want of foresight *or* forethought, ignorance, indiscretion. 3
10. **īgnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtus** [in- + (g)nōscō, know], *n.*, forgive, pardon. 5

14. **longīnquus, -a, -um** [longus, long], far off, distant, remote. 5
17. **commendō,** 1. [mandō, give into one's hands], *a.*, entrust entirely *or* completely, entrust, commend, surrender. 1

4. **lēnis, -e,** gentle, mild, smooth. *

(*Commius*) *as soon as he landed, although he was carrying Caesar's dispatches in the capacity of an envoy.* How Caesar regarded such an action in others is shown by his punishment of the Veneti, III, **16,** 10.

8, 9. **ēius reī:** the treatment of Commius. **imprūdentiam,** *ignorance* of the rights of envoys, or of the fact that Commius was clothed with that function.

10. **īgnōscerētur,** *that they might be pardoned.* How is an intransitive verb used in the passive. In what case would '*they*' be if expressed here?

11. **lēgātīs mīssīs:** see **21,** 10.

12. **intulissent:** for mode cf. I, **16,** 17; IV, **22,** 5. **īgnōscere imprūdentiae,** *that he overlooked their indiscretion.* For the case cf. I, **2,** 4.

1, 2. **post . . . ventum:** on August 30, the third day after his arrival, according to our reckoning.

cursum tenēre posset, sed aliae eōdem, unde erant profectae, referrentur, aliae ad īnferiōrem partem īnsulae, quae est propius sōlis occāsum, māgnō suī cum perīculō dēicerentur; quae tamen ancorīs iactīs cum fluctibus complērentur, necessāriō adversā nocte in altum profectae continentem petiērunt.

The tide and storm shatter the rest of the fleet.

29. Eādem nocte accidit, ut esset lūna plēna, quī diēs maritimōs aestūs māximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōnsuēvit, nostrīsque id erat incōgnitum. Ita ūnō tempore et longās nāvēs, quibus Caesar exercitum trānsportandum cūrāverat quāsque in āridum subdūxerat, aestus complēbat, et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligātae, tempestās afflīctābat, neque ūlla nostrīs facultās aut administrandī aut auxiliandī dabātur. Complūribus nāvibus frāctīs reliquae cum essent fūnibus, ancorīs reliquīsque armāmentīs āmīssīs ad nāvigandum inūtilēs, māgna, id quod necesse erat accidere,

1. **lūna, -ae** [*for* **lūc-na** *fr.* **lūceō**, give light], F., the moon. 3
6. **dē-ligō**, 1. [**ligō**, bind], bind *or* tie down, fasten, moor. 4
7. **auxilior**, 1. [**auxilium**, aid], *a.*, give aid, help, assist, render assistance. 3
8. **frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctus,** *a.*, break, shiver, smash; crush, subdue, discourage. 2

---

8. **ad īnferiōrem partem:** i. e., the southern shore, west of the location of the Roman camp.

9. **occāsum:** for case see on I, **46**, 2. **māgnō . . . dēicerentur,** *were driven from their course to their great peril.* **suī:** for case cf. II, **24**, 12; **8**, 2; I, **30**, 4; **14**, 8.

11. **adversā nocte,** *in the face of the night;* cf. II, **19**, 23.

2. **diēs,** *a time which.* **aestūs māximōs:** the 'spring' tide, said to rise 19 feet at Dover.

3. **nostrīs . . . incōgnitum:** the Romans were best acquainted with the Mediterranean Sea, in which high tides do not occur. **ūnō tempore:** there was a conjunction of a high tide and a storm.

5. **in āridum subdūxerat:** by means of tackle and rollers the ships were drawn up entirely beyond the reach of the ordinary waves. In the present instance, however, the unexpected 'spring tide' reached them.

6. **quae . . . dēligātae,** *which were riding at anchor.* It was not the custom to beach the transports.

7. **administrandī,** *to manage the ships.* **auxiliandī,** *to render assintance* from the shore.

9. **ancorīs:** see Int. 172.

10. **id quod:** *id* is often prefixed to a relative to summarize its antecedent, if the antecedent is a clause.

tōtīus exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae, quibus reportārī possent, et omnia deerant, quae ad reficiendās nāvēs ērant ūsuī, et, quod omnibus cōnstābat, hiemārī in Galliā oportēre, frūmentum hīs in locīs in hiemem prōvīsum nōn erat.

The Britons plan to renew hostilities.

30. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs prīncipēs Britanniae, quī post proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē collocūtī, cum equitēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānīs deesse intellegerent et paucitātem mīlitum ex castrōrum exiguitāte cōgnōscerent, quae hōc erant etiam angustiōra, quod sine impedīmentīs Caesar legiōnēs trānsportāverat, optimum factū esse dūxērunt rebelliōne factā frūmentō commeātūque nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem prōdūcere, quod hīs superātīs aut reditū interclūsīs nēminem posteā bellī īnferendī causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum cōnfīdēbant. Itaque rūrsus coniūrātiōne factā paulātim ex castrīs discēdere et suōs clam ex agrīs dēdūcere coepērunt.

11. **perturbātiō, -ōnis** [perturbō, disturb greatly], F., disturbance, alarm, confusion. 1

12. **re-portō,** 1. [portō, carry], *a.*, carry *or* bring back, convey. 2

9. **reditus, -ūs,** M., a going back, returning, return. 3

---

11. **neque enim,** etc: Caesar was in the very same situation that he had so carefully avoided at the Rhine. Cf. **17,** 2 and note.

13–15. **quod . . . erat,** *and because it was manifest to all that they must pass the winter in Gaul, supplies of grain had not been prepared in this place* (Britain) *for the winter.*

2. **convēnerant:** see **27,** 16.

3, 4. **equitēs . . . deesse,** *that the Romans were without* etc. **Rōmānīs:** for case see on I, **48,** 9.

7. **optimum:** pred. adj. in agreement with *prohibēre* and *prōdūcere.* **factū:** see on I, **3,** 18. **rebelliōne factā,** *to renew the war:* trans. as coordinate with the infinitives. **frūmentō:** for case cf. **9,** 4; III, **6,** 10.

8. **rem,** *operations.* **in hiemem prōdūcere:** so as to prevent the Romans' return to the continent.

9. **hīs superātīs,** *if these* (troops) *were overpowered:* abl. abs. **aut,** *or at least.*

11. **rūrsus:** i. e., returning to their former hostility.

12. **suōs ex agrīs dēdūcere:** see **27,** 15.

Caesar refits his fleet.

31. At Caesar, etsī nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cōgnōverat, tamen et ex ēventū nāvium suārum et ex eō, quod obsidēs dare intermīserant, fore id, quod accidit, suspicābātur. Itaque ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et frūmentum ex agrīs cotīdiē in castra cōnferēbat et quae gravissimē afflīctae erant nāvēs, eārum māteriā atque aere ad reliquās reficiendās ūtēbātur et quae ad eās rēs erant ūsuī ex continentī comparārī iubēbat. Itaque, cum summō studiō ā mīlitibus administrārētur, duodecim nāvibus āmīssīs, reliquīs ut nāvigārī commodē posset, effēcit.

The Britons attack the Roman foragers.

32. Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōnsuētūdine ūnā frūmentātum mīssā, quae appellābātur septima, neque ūllā ad id tempus bellī suspīciōne interpositā, cum pars hominum in agrīs remanēret, pars etiam in castra ventitāret, iī, quī prō portīs castrōrum in statiōne erant, Cae-

6. **afflīgō** (adf-), -ere, flīxī, flīctus, strike, overthrow; damage, injure. 4
aes, **aeris**, N., copper, bronze; *anything made of copper or bronze*, coin, money: **aes aliēnum**, another's money, debt. 4

---

2. **ex . . . eō**, *from the disaster to his ships and from the fact.*

6. **quae**, etc., *he employed the timber and metal of the ships which had been most disastrously shattered for fitting up the others.* **quae . . . nāvēs**: for the position of the anteced. and agreement of relative cf. I, **12**, 17; **22**, 15; **40**, 29; II, **19**, 16. **aere**: iron was not much used in the constructions of ships. For instance, the beak was made of copper or bronze, and the nails likewise.

7. **eās rēs**: i. e., the repairing and equipment of the vessels.

8, 9. **cum . . . administrārētur**, *since the work* (of refitting the fleet) *was pushed forward by the soldiers with the utmost energy.* **summō studiō**: due in part to their eager desire to leave (cf. **29**, 11. *perturbātiō*) and in part no doubt, to their loyalty to their commander (see Int. 53). **reliquīs**: sc. *nāvibus*. Explain the four different ablatives in the sentence.

10. **ut . . . posset**, *that the voyage could be readily made.* For mode of *posset* cf. I, **9**, 11; II, **11**, 5. How is **nāvigārī** used?

1. **geruntur**: for tense cf. **22**, 2.
2. **frūmentātum**: for the form and use cf. I, **11**, 5; **31**, 30; **18**, 18. **appellābātur**: see Int. 88.
3. **interpositā**, *having arisen.*
4. **hominum**, i. e., the natives. **in agrīs remanēret**: ostensibly engaged in labor in the fields close to the camp.
5. **ventitāret**: for signification see on II, **15**, 13.

sarī nūntiāvērunt pulverem māiōrem, quam cōnsuētūdō ferret, in eā parte vidērī, quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset. Caesar id, quod erat, suspicātus, aliquid novī ā barbarīs initum cōnsiliī, cohortēs, quae in statiōnibus erant, sēcum in eam partem proficīscī, ex reliquīs duās in statiōnem cohortēs succēdere, reliquās armārī et cōnfestim sēsē subsequī iussit. Cum paulō longius ā castrīs prōcessisset, suōs ab hostibus premī atque aegre sustinēre et cōnfertā legiōne ex omnibus partibus tēla conicī animadvertit. Nam quod omnī ex reliquīs partibus dēmessō frūmentō pars ūna erat reliqua, suspīcātī hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs noctū in silvīs dēlituerant: tum dispersōs dēpositīs armīs in metendō occupātōs subitō adortī paucīs interfectīs reliquōs incertīs ōrdinibus perturbāverant, simul equitātū atque essedīs circumdederant.

Their mode of fighting from war-chariots.

33. Genus hōc est ex essedīs pūgnae. Prīmō per omnēs partēs perequitant et tēla coniciunt atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ōrdinēs plē-

6. **pulvis, -eris,** M., dust. 1

11. **cōnfestim** [**festīnus,** in haste], hastily, at once, immediately. *

15. **dē-metō, -ere, messuī, messus** [**metō,** cut, mow], *a.*, mow *or* cut down, reap, harvest. 1

16. **dēlitīscō (ēscō), -ere, lituī** [*incept. of* **lateō,** hide], *n.*, hide away, skulk, lurk. 1

17. **metō, -ere, messuī, messus,** *a.*, cut, mow, reap. 1

19. **essedum, -ī,** N. (*a Celtic word*), *a two-wheeled war chariot of the Britons.* 5

circum-dō, dare, dedī, datus [**dō,** give], *a.*, give *or* put around, encompass, surround. *

2. **per-equitō, 1.** [**equitō,** *ride*], *n.*, ride about, ride hither and thither, ride through *or* around. 2

---

6. **quam cōnsuētūdō ferret,** *than ordinarily appeared.*

8, 9. **id, quod:** for use of *id* see on **29,** 10. **quod erat,** *which was really the fact.* **aliquid . . . initum** (*esse*) **cōnsiliī,** *that some new plan* etc. **cōnsiliī:** for the case cf. II, **8,** 8.

12. **paulō longius,** *a considerable distance.*

18. **incertīs ōrdinibus:** owing to the surprise, the ordinary formation in line of battle could not be made.

19. **essedīs:** we have no precise and reliable description of the British war-chariot.

1. **genus hōc est,** *this is the method.*

2. **perequitant:** sc. the subject *essedāriī,*

rumque perturbant, et cum sē inter equitum turmās īnsinuāvērunt, ex essedīs dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurīgae interim paulātim ex proeliō excēdunt atque ita currūs collocant, ut, sī illī ā multitūdine hostium premantur, expedītum ad suōs receptum habeant. Ita mōbilitātem equitum, stabilitātem peditum in proeliīs praestant, āc tantum ūsū cotīdiānō et exercitātiōne efficiunt, utī in dēclīvī āc praecipitī locō incitātōs equōs sustinēre et brevī moderārī āc flectere et per tēmōnem percurrere et in iugō īnsistere et sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere cōnsuērint.

Caesar rescues his foragers.

34. Quibus rēbus perturbātīs nostrīs novitāte pūgnae tempore oportunissimō Caesar auxilium tulit: namque ēius adventū hostēs cōnstitērunt, nostrī sē ex

4. **turma, -ae,** F., troop *or* squadron *of cavalry, the tenth part of an ala.* 5

īn-sinuō, 1. [**sinuō,** wind], *a. n.*, wind *or* work one's way into; work *or* introduce into; introduce; penetrate. 1

5. **aurīga, -ae** [**aurea,** headstall +**agō**], M., driver, charioteer. 1

6. **currus, -ūs** [**curro,** run], M., chariot, car; *fig.*, team. 1

8. **receptus, -ūs** [**recipiō,** withdraw], M., *a place of withdrawal,* retreat, refuge, shelter. 3

stabilitās, -tātis [**stabilis,** steady], F., steadiness, fixedness. 1

11. **moderor,** 1. [**modus,** limit], *a.*, limit, mitigate, temper, control, guide, regulate. 2

flectō, -ere, flēxī, flexus, *a.*, *n.*, bend, curve, turn, turn around, direct in turning. 2

12. **tēmō, -ōnis,** M., beam, pole (*esp. of a chariot*). 1

per-currō, -ere, cucurrī, (currī), cursus [**currō,** run], *a.*, run through *or* over, traverse, pass over *or* along. 1

13. **cito,** *adv.*, *comp.* **citius** *and superl.* **citissimē** [fr. **citus**], quickly, speedily. 1

1. **novitās, -tātis** [**novus,** new], F., newness, novelty, novel kind *or* nature, strangeness. 1

---

4. **cum īnsinuāvērunt:** see on III, **14,** 17. **turmās:** see Int. 101. Caesar had no cavalry with him; but the description here given is a general one.

7, 8. **illī:** those who alighted from the chariots, the warriors. **expedītum receptum,** *a safe retreat.* **habeant:** for mode cf. I, **6,** 5; **6,** 12; **25,** 10; II, **19,** 22.

10. **in . . . praecipitī,** *on sloping and even precipitous ground.*

11. **brevī,** *quickly;* lit., *within a short* (*time*).

1–3. **quibus . . . tulit,** *Caesar brought aid, at a critical moment, to our men who were confused by these tactics because of the unusual nature of the contest.* **rēbus:** for case

timōre recēpērunt. Quō factō ad lacessendum et ad committendum proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus suō sē locō continuit et brevī tempore intermīssō in castra legiōnēs redūxit. Dum haec geruntur nostrīs omnibus occupātīs, quī erant in agrīs reliquī, discessērunt. Secūtae sunt continuōs complūrēs diēs tempestātēs, quae et nostrōs in castrīs continērent et hostem ā pūgnā prohibērent. Interim barbarī nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsērunt paucitātemque nostrōrum mīlitum suīs praedicāvērunt et, quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum suī līberandī facultās darētur, sī Rōmānōs castrīs expulissent, dēmōnstrāvērunt. Hīs rēbus, celeriter māgnā multitūdine peditātūs equitātūsque coāctā, ad castra vēnērunt.

The Britons gather a large force and march against the Roman camp.

35. Caesar etsī idem, quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat, fore vidēbat, ut, sī essent hostēs pulsī, celeritāte perīculum effugerent, tamen nactus equitēs

They are defeated and flee.

8. **continuus, -a, -um** [**contineō,** hold together], holding together, unbroken, uninterrupted, continuous. *

12. **prae-dīcō, 1.** *a., n.,* speak before others; proclaim, state, declare. 5

praeda, -ae, [**praehendō** *fr.* **prehendō,** seize], F., *property seized in war;* booty, plunder, spoil. *

16. **peditātus, -ūs,** [**pedēs,** footman], M., foot soldiers, infantry. *

3. **ef-fugiō, -ere, fūgī** [**fugiō,** flee], *a., n.,* flee from *or* away, avoid, shun, escape. 3

(with **perturbātīs**) cf. **17,** 2. **novitātī:** for case cf. I, **2,** 12; **14,** 6; III, **21,** 11. **tempore:** for the case cf. I, **4,** 4; I, **50,** 1; **16,** 10.

4, 5. ad . . . esse, *was unfavorable for provoking a contest* etc.

7. haec: the attack of the Britons described in chap. **32.**

8. quī . . . reliquī: mentioned in **32,** 4. For the meaning and use of *reliquī* see on I, **12,** 7. **discessērunt:** they also repaired to the rendezvous (cf. **30,** 11).

9. diēs, *several days in succession:* for case of *diēs* cf. I, **3,** 12. **tempestātēs:** how does this expression differ from the similar one in III, **29,** 8?

12, 13. praedae faciendae: as Caesar had left all his baggage behind (cf. **30,** 5), the Britons were under a false impression. **suī līberandī** what kind of a pronoun is *suī?* Give its gender, number, and case. Is *līberandī* gerund or gerundive? Cf. **13,** 14; III, **6,** 3.

15. hīs rēbus, *at the mention of* etc.

1, 2. idem fore, *that the same thing would occur.*

circiter XXX, quōs Commius Atrebas, dē quō ante dictum est, sēcum trānsportāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castrīs cōnstituit. Commīssō proeliō diūtius nostrōrum mīlitum impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuērunt āc terga vertērunt. Quōs tantō spatiō secūtī, quantum cursū et vīribus efficere potuērunt, complūrēs ex iīs occīdērunt, deinde omnibus longē lātēque aedificiīs incēnsīs sē in castra recēpērunt.

They give hostages to Caesar, who goes back to Gaul.

36. Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus mīssī ad Caesarem dē pāce vēnērunt. Hīs Caesar numerum obsidum, quem ante imperāverat, duplicāvit eōsque in continentem addūcī iussit, quod propīnquā diē aequinoctiī īnfīrmīs nāvibus hiemī nāvigātiōnem subiciendam nōn exīstimābat. Ipse idōneam tempestātem nanctus paulō post mediam noctem nāvēs solvit: quae omnēs incolumēs ad continentem pervēnērunt; sed ex iīs onerāriae duae eōsdem, quōs reliquī, portūs capere nōn potuērunt et paulō īnfrā dēlātae sunt.

3. **duplicō**, 1. [**duō** + **plicō**, fold], *a.*, double; increase. 2

4. **aequinoctium, -ī** [**aequus**, equal + **nox**, night], N., the equinox. 2

5. **īn-fīrmus, -a, -um** [**fīrmus**, strong], not strong, weak, feeble; faint, discouraged. 4

9. **īnfrā**, *adv. and prep. with acc.* [*for* **īnfera** (*sc.* **parte**) *from* **īnferus**, below], below, beneath; inferior, under; after. 4

---

4. **ante**: see **21**, 13, 14. **dictum est**, *we have spoken.* How is the verb used here?

6. **commīssō proeliō**: see Int. 148, 149. **diūtius**, *for any length of time.*

7, 8. **āc**: for trans. see on III, **19**, 10. **quōs . . . potuērunt**, (*our troops*) *following these as far as their powers of running permitted.* **cursū et vīribus**: for the figure of speech cf. I, **31**, 45.

2. **hīs**, *in their case;* for the case see on I, **28**, 2.

3. **ante**: see **27**, 3.

4. **propīnqua diē aequinoctiī**, *at the near approach of the equinox.*

5. **īnfīrmīs . . . subiciendam** (*esse*), *that with shattered ships his* (*return*) *voyage should be exposed to the* (*equinoctial*) *storm.*

6. **idōneam tempestātem**, *favorable weather.*

8, 9. **ex iīs**: see on II, **3**, 2. **onerāriae** etc. English order: *duae onerāriae nōn potuērunt eōsdem portūs capere, quōs reliquī* (*mīlitēs*) *cēpērunt, et dēlātae sunt paulō īnfrā.* **et**: in the same sense as *āc* **35**, 6. **paulō īnfrā**: a short distance to the south of the port of Boulogne. For case of *paulō* cf. *diēbus* **9**, 5.

37. Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositī mīlitēs circiter trecentī atque in castra contenderent, Morinī, quōs Caesar in Britanniam proficīscēns pācātōs relīquerat, spē praedae adductī prīmō nōn ita māgnō suōrum numerō circumstetērunt āc, sī sēsē interficī nōllent, arma pōnere iussērunt. Cum illī orbe factō sēsē dēfenderent, celeriter ad clāmōrem hominum circiter mīlia sex convēnērunt. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnem ex castrīs equitātum suīs auxiliō mīsit. Interim nostrī mīlitēs impetum hostium sustinuērunt atque amplius hōrīs quattuor fortissimē pūgnāvērunt et paucīs vulneribus acceptīs complūrēs ex hīs occīdērunt. Posteā vērō quam equitātus noster in cōnspectum vēnit, hostēs abiectīs armīs terga vertērunt māgnusque eōrum numerus est occīsus.

The Morini revolt, attack Caesar's troops on landing, and are repulsed.

38. Caesar posterō diē T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum iīs legiōnibus, quās ex Britanniā redūxerat, in Morinōs, quī rebelliōnem fēcerant, mīsit. Quī cum prop-

Labienus ravages their country.

2. **trecentī, -ae, -a,** *card. num. adj.* [**tres-centum**], three hundred. 3

6. **orbis, -is,** M., *anything circular;* orb, ring, circle: **orbis terrārum,** the world. 4

---

1. **quibus ex nāvibus:** i. e., *onerāriae duae,* **36,** 8.

2. **castra:** at Boulogne, which P. Sulpicius Rufus had had made (see **22,** 21).

4. **pācātōs:** for the fact see **22,** 10, 11. **praedae:** the booty which they supposed the Romans were bringing back.

5. **māgnō . . . numerō,** *with an inconsiderable number.* For the figure cf. I, **1,** 8; III, **20,** 8.

6, 7. **orbe:** a formation similar to the hollow square (see Int. 140), assumed in circumstances of great danger. The soldiers faced out from the center, and stood mainly on the defensive. **hominum:** i. e., of the Morini; join with *mīlia.*

8. **omnem:** i. e., all that were at the camp, comprising the detachment that Caesar had intended to take with him to Britain, and whatever horsemen Rufus had with him.

9. **suīs auxiliō,** *to the assistance of his troops.* For cases cf. **20,** 6.

12. **posteā . . . quam** = *posteāquam.*

14. **māgnus numerus:** see Int. 152:

2. **iīs legiōnibus:** i. e., the 7th and 10th.

ter siccitātēs palūdum, quō sē reciperent, nōn habērent, quō superiōre annō perfugiō fuerant ūsī, omnēs ferē in potestātem Labiēnī pervēnērunt. At Q. Titūrius et L. Cotta lēgātī, quī in Menapiōrum fīnēs legiōnēs dūxerant, omnibus eōrum agrīs vāstātīs, frūmentīs succīsīs, aedificiīs incēnsīs, quod Menapiī sē omnēs in dēnsissimās silvās abdiderant, sē ad Caesarem recēpērunt. Caesar in Belgīs omnium legiōnum hīberna cōnstituit. Eō duae omnīnō cīvitātēs ex Britanniā obsidēs mīsērunt, reliquae neglēxērunt. Hīs rēbus gestīs ex litterīs Caesaris diērum vīgintī supplicātiō ā senātū dēcrēta est.

The Romans are quartered for the winter amoug the Belgae.

4. siccitās, -tātis [**siccus**, dry], F., drought, dryness. 2

5. perfugium, -ī [**perfugiō**, flee for refuge], N., place of refuge, shelter, asylum, refuge. 1

4, 5. quō sē reciperent, *a place to retreat*, lit., *whither they might retreat.* The clause is object of *habērent; quō*, is an adverb: see on II, **21,** 7. **quō perfugiō . . . ūsī,** *a place of refuge which they had used the previous year.* Our idiom would lead us to expect the genitive for *perfugiō* (i. e., *perfugiī, quō*) in apposition with *palūdum:* for its position here cf. III, **9,** 9 ;**21,** 10; and for its case I, **5,** 10. **superiōre annō:** for the fact see III, **28,** 9.

12, 13. reliquae neglēxērunt: a good reason in Caesar's mind for the expedition of the following year. **ex litterīs,** *in accordance with Caesar's despatches* to the Roman Senate. **diērum vīgintī supplicātiō:** see on II, **35,** 11, and notice the increased number of days.

BOOK. V—INVASION OF BRITAIN. REVOLT OF THE EBURONES AND TREVERI.

Reasons of policy and desire for personal glory led Caesar to undertake an invasion of Britain in force. It would impress both Gaul and Britain with the power of Rome, and cut off from the malcontents on the mainland a source of strength. Determined to carry the project into execution the next year, he planned for the winter of 55-54 B. C. the construction of a great fleet of a peculiar pattern. Leaving this in competent hands, he repaired to Illyricum to settle the affairs of that section, which had been disturbed by the revolt of the Pirustae.

At the beginning of June, 54 B. C., he returned from the East to find his fleet in readiness. Orders were given to collect the armament at Portus Itius. Meanwhile Caesar took necessary precautions against disturbances in his absence.

The army concentrated at Portus Itius numbered eight legions and four thousand Gallic and Spanish cavalry. Three legions and two thousand cavalry, under command of Labienus, were to guard the coast and keep open the communications. Unfavorable winds retarded the fleet twenty-five days; finally the wind changed and orders were given to embark.

Weighing anchor about sunset on the 20th of July, according to Napoleon III., the fleet came about noon to the coast of Britain near Deal. Caesar proceeded inland, leaving ten cohorts and three hundred cavalry to guard the camp and fleet. At a distance of twelve miles the natives were found in position to dispute the passage of a small stream (the Stour). Defeated here, they withdrew into a well-fortified stronghold, from which they were soon driven. Here Caesar halted and fortified a camp, On the following morning came the news of the partial destruction of the fleet by a great storm in the preceding night. Caesar at once ordered a retreat and hurried ahead to the shore. Viewing the scene of disaster, he gave orders for hauling the vessels on shore and enclosing them in a retrenchment, which was done by hard labor in ten days. He then again took up his march into the interior.

The interval had been utilized by the Britons in concentrating their forces, and Caesar found them in large numbers under the command of Cassivellaunus. After meeting with one reverse, the British chieftain determined not to combat with the Romans but to annoy and retard them on the march and thus to prolong the campaign. Caesar, on the other hand, determined to bring it to a conclusion as quickly as possible, and to this end advanced toward the territory of Cassivellaunus. Reaching the river Thames, he signally defeated the Britons there, and soon after captured the stronghold of Cassivellaunus, who thereupon made his submission. All the principal tribes of southeast Britain followed his example. Caesar exacted hostages and fixed an

annual tribute to be paid to the Roman state, and in the latter part of August returned to the continent. It can not be said that Caesar in any true sense subdued the island of Britain. His immediate object was doubtless gained in impressing the inhabitants with a due sense of respect for Roman military power. It may be that they were thenceforth less ready to strengthen the hands of Gallic revolt, but they were still substantially free.

In Gaul there had been a drought and a scanty harvest. Caesar in consequence of this fact found it necessary to divide his forces. This he did being careful, however, to keep them within what he thought was a safe distance of each other. The Gauls saw in this disposition of the Roman forces a chance to throw off the yoke of oppression. Sabinus and Cotta had been stationed with a legion and a half at Aduatuca among the Eburones. Ambiorix and Catuvolcus, the chiefs, instigated by the Treviran Indutiomarus, attacked the Roman camp, but were defeated. The wily Ambiorix then asked for a parley, and under the pretence of friendship induced the Romans to abandon their camp and march to join Labienus or Cicero, fifty miles away. He promised under oath not to hinder their passage. Scarcely had they gone two miles when they were attacked in a narrow defile, and after a desperate conflict prolonged from sunrise until the middle of the afternoon, were cut off almost to a man.

Before this great disaster became known, the Gauls suddenly attacked Cicero's camp among the Nervii. The besieged resisted with great energy and heroism, but their effective strength diminished daily and the outlook was becoming desperate. At last, after many attempts, a Nervian slave brought to Caesar news of his lieutenant's danger. Moving at once to the rescue, he defeated the Gauls and raised the siege. This success checked the projected general uprising, but the gravity of the situation led Caesar to forego his usual winter visit to Italy and remain in Gaul watching developments. The whole land was in a state of unrest; conspiracy was rife, and only the Aedui and the Remi were free from the infection of revolt.

In this outbreak Caesar received his first serious check, and while discipline and courage won the day for him, still his adversaries were encouraged by their partial success to make further trial in behalf of freedom. From this time the war took on a different aspect. Common hatred of Roman rule drew the people together and a measure of unity in effort became apparent.

REFERENCES FOR READING.

PLUTARCH: Caesar.
FROUDE: Caesar, a Sketch, pp. 233-249. (Harper's ed.).
TROLLOPE: Caesar, chap. VI. (Ancient Classics series).
MOMMSEN: History of Rome, vol. IV. pp. 313-321.
MERIVALE: History of Rome under the Empire, vol. I. pp. 384-398.
NAPOLEON: Julius Caesar, vol. II. chap. VIII.

COMMENTARIUS QUINTUS

Naval preparations for the invasion of Britain.

1. L. Domitiō, Ap. Claudiō cōnsulibus discēdēns ab hībernīs Caesar in Ītaliam, ut quotannīs facere cōnsuērat, lēgātīs imperat, quōs legiōnibus praefēcerat, utī quam plūrimās possent hieme nāvēs aedificandās veterēsque reficiendās cūrārent. Eārum modum fōrmamque dēmōnstrat. Ad celeritātem onerandī subductiōnēsque paulō facit humiliōrēs, quam quibus in nostrō marī ūtī cōnsuēvimus, atque id eō magis, quod propter crēbrās commūtātiōnēs aestuum minus māgnōs ibi fluctūs fierī cōgnōverat, ad onera āc multitūdinem iūmentōrum trānsportandam paulō lātiōrēs,

1. **Domitius, -ī,** M., *a Roman gentile name:* Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus, *consul in* 54 B. C., *fell at Pharsalus*; 48 B. C. 1

Ap., *abbreviation for the praenōmen* **Appius.** 1

Claudius, -ī, M., *a Roman gentile name:* Appius Claudius, *consul in* 54. B. C. 1

6. **onerō,** 1. [**onus,** load], *a.*, load, burden, freight *with anything;* burden, oppress, overwhelm. 1

subductiō, -ōnis [**dūcō,** lead], F., leading *or* drawing from beneath, drawing ashore, beaching. 1

1, 2. L. Domitiō, Ap. Claudiō cōnsulibus: in the year 54 B. C. **discēdēns ab hībernīs:** where was the army wintering? See IV, **38**, 10. **in Ītaliam:** see II, **35**, 9.

4. veterēs: i. e., those that had formed the fleet of the expedition to Britain in 55 B. C.

6. ad, *with a view to.*

7. humiliōrēs: (sc. *nāvēs*) with greater breadth of beam and less depth of hold. **quam quibus,** *than those which.* **nostrō marī:** what sea?

8. propter . . . aestuum: an incorrect reason.

9. onera: baggage of all kinds: see Int. 118, 119.

quam quibus in reliquīs ūtimur maribus. Hās omnēs āctuāriās imperat fierī, quam ad rem multum humilitās adiuvat. Ea, quae sunt ūsuī ad armandās nāvēs, ex Hispāniā apportārī iubet. Ipse conventibus Galliae citeriōris perāctīs in Īllyricum proficīscitur, quod ā Pīrūstīs fīnitimam partem prōvinciae incursiōnibus vāstārī audiēbat. Eō cum vēnisset, cīvitātibus mīlitēs imperat certumque in locum convenīre iubet. Quā rē nūntiātā Pīrūstae lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, quī doceant nihil eārum rērum pūblicō factum cōnsiliō, sēsēque parātōs esse dēmōnstrant omnibus ratiōnibus dē iniūriīs satisfacere. Perceptā ōrātiōne eōrum Caesar obsidēs imperat eōsque ad certam diem addūcī iubet; nisi ita fēcerint, sēsē bellō cīvitātem persecūtūrum dēmōnstrat. Iīs ad diem adductīs ut imperāverat, arbitrōs inter cīvitātēs dat, quī lītem aestiment poenamque cōnstituant.

He goes to Illyricum and receives the submission of the Pirustae.

11. **āctuārius, -a, -um** [**agō**, set in motion], pertaining to motion; swift sailing: **nāvis** *or* **nāvigium,** see Int. 175. 1

12. **humilitās, -tātis** [**humilis,** low], F., lowness, shallowness; humility, weakness. 2

13. **apportō** (ad-), 1. [**portō,** carry], *a.*, carry, bring, *or* convey to. 1

14. **per-agō -ere, ēgī, āctus** [**agō**], *a.*, drive *or* carry through; execute, accomplish, complete. 4

15. **Pīrūstae, -ārum,** M., *a people in Illyricum.* 2

16. **incursiō, -ōnis,** [**in-currō,** run against], F., onset; incursion, invasion, inroad, attack. 4

21. **percipiō, ere, cēpī, ceptus** [**capiō,** take], *a.*, take fully, acquire; perceive, hear, learn, bear through. 4

24. **arbitēr, -trī,** M., *a bystander:* a judge, umpire, arbitrator. 1

25. **līs, lītis,** F., strife, quarrel, lawsuit; damages. 1

---

11. **reliquīs maribus:** i. e., the different parts of the Mediterranean Sea. **āctuāriās:** see Int. 175.

12. **ad rem:** i. e., for being fitted with oars. **humilitās:** the low bulwarks making it easier to use oars and to load and unload the ships.

13. **ex Hispāniā:** from the time of its conquest, Spain furnished the Romans with materials for naval equipment, such as iron, copper, the esparto grass (*spartum,*) for cables etc.

14. **conventibus:** the proconsular courts, over which it was the duty of Caesar to preside.

16. **partem:** i. e., *Īllyricum.*

19. **eārum rērum** = *incursiōnum.*

20, 21. **omnibus ratiōnibus,** *in every way.* i. e., by giving hostages, and paying the damages and a fine.

25. **dat,** *appoints.* **quī aestiment,** *to assess.*

Caesar returns to Gaul and goes to the country of the Treveri.

2. Hīs cōnfectīs rēbus conventibusque perāctīs in citeriōrem Galliam revertitur atque inde ad exercitum proficīscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, circuitīs omnibus hībernīs singulārī mīlitum studiō in summā omnium rērum inopiā circiter sexcentās ēius generis, cūius suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, nāvēs et longās XXVIII invēnit īnstrūctās neque multum abesse ab eō, quīn paucīs diēbus dēdūcī possint. Collaudātīs mīlitibus atque iīs, quī negōtiō praefuerant, quid fierī velit, ostendit atque omnēs ad portum Itium convenīre iubet, quō ex portū commodissimum in Britanniam trāiectum esse cōgnōverat, circiter mīlium passuum XXX ā continentī: huic reī quod satis esse vīsum est mīlitum relīquit. Ipse cum legiōnibus expedītīs IIII et equitibus DCCC in fīnēs Trēverōrum proficīscitur, quod hī neque ad concilia veniēbant neque imperiō parēbant Germānōsque Trānsrhēnānōs sollicitāre dīcēbantur.

3. Haec cīvitās longē plūrimum tōtīus Galliae equitātū valet māgnāsque habet cōpiās peditum, Rhēnumque, ut

7. collaudō (conl-), 1. [laudō, praise], praise highly *or* in set terms, eulogize. 4

9. Itius, -a, -um, *sc.* **portus,** *a port of the Morini, whence Caesar embarked for Britain, perhaps* Boulogne, or Witsand. 2

10. commodus, -a, -um [modus, measure], in full measure; complete; suitable, favorable. 5

---

2. ad exercitum: still in winter quarters: cf. IV, **38,** 10.

3. circuitīs etc., *having made the rounds of* etc.

4, 5. in . . . inopiā: a concessive phrase, trans. *although there was* etc.

6, 7. neque . . . possint, *and that they were not far from being ready to be launched.*

11. cōgnōverat: by his experience of the previous year.

12. quod . . . mīlitum, *what seemed to be a sufficient force.* For the expression cf. IV, **22,** 14; III, **16,** 5.

13. expedītīs: see Int. 119.

14. concilia: see on IV, **6,** 9. Attendance upon these councils was made a test of fealty to Rome.

1. haec cīvitās: i. e., the Treveri. **equitātū:** for case cf. III, **17,** 12 (*rēbus*); **8,** 4; II, **17,** 14.

The rival chiefs, Indutiomarus and Cingetorix, seek his support.

suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, tangit. In eā cīvitāte duo dē prīncipātū inter sē contendēbant, Indutiomarus et Cingetorīx; ē quibus alter, simul atque dē Caesaris legiōnumque adventū cōgnitum est, ad eum vēnit, sē suōsque omnēs in officiō futūrōs neque ab amīcitiā populī Rōmānī dēfectūrōs cōnfīrmāvit quaeque in Trēverīs gererentur ostendit. At Indutiomarus equitātum peditātumque cōgere iīsque, quī per aetātem in armīs esse nōn poterant, in silvam Arduennam abditīs, quae ingentī māgnitūdine per mediōs fīnēs Trēverōrum ā flūmine Rhēnō ad initium Rēmōrum pertinet, bellum parāre īnstituit. Sed posteāquam nōnnūllī prīncipēs ex eā cīvitāte et familiāritāte Cingetorīgis adductī et adventū nostrī exercitūs perterritī ad Caesarem vēnērunt et dē suīs prīvātim rēbus ab eō petere coepērunt, quoniam cīvitātī cōnsulere nōn possent, veritus nē ab omnibus dēsererētur,

3. **tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctus,** *a.*, touch, reach, border on. 1

4. **Indutiomarus, -ī,** M., *a chief of the Treveri.*

5. **Cingetorīx, -īgis,** M., *a Treveran chieftain, rival of Indutiomarus.* *

10. **Arduenna, -ae,** F., the Ardennes, *a vast forest of northeast Gaul.* 4

14. **familiāritās, -tātis** [**familiāris,** of the family, intimate], F., familiar intercourse, intimacy. 1

16. **quoniam,** *adv.* [**quom = cum + iam,** now], when now, since, whereas. *

cōnsulō, -ere, -uī, -ltus, *a.*, *n.*, go to for advice, take counsel, consult: *with dat.*, take counsel for, study the interests of, promote the welfare of. *

---

3. **suprā**: in III, **11**, 2. **Rhēnum tangit**: this proximity to the Germans rendered the Treveri more restless and dangerous.

4. **Indutiomarus** was the father-in-law of Cingetorix.

5. **alter,** *the latter.* **simulatque,** *as soon as.*

6. **suōs,** *his party.*

10. **Arduennam**: it was the largest of the Gallic forests, extending over the most of the country between the Rhine, Meuse, and Moselle. It is the seat of the Belgian iron mines.

11. **māgnitūdine**: for case cf. IV, **1**, 20; III, **4**, 9; II, **6**, 11.

12. **initium**: i. e., the northern frontier.

13. **prīncipēs**: probably partizans of Indutiomarus, but personal friends of Cingetorix.

16. **cīvitātī**: for case cf. IV, **27**, 12; III, **14**, 3; II, **16**, 6 (*hīs*); I, **18**, 19.

17. **nē**: for meaning after verbs of fearing cf. II, **26**, 5; I, **27**, 10; **19**, 11.

lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittit: Sēsē idcircō ab suīs discēdere atque ad eum venīre nōluisse, quō facilius cīvitātem in officiō continēret, nē omnis nōbilitātis discessū plēbs propter imprūdentiam lāberētur: itaque esse cīvitātem in suā potestāte, sēsēque, sī Caesar permitteret, ad eum in castra ventūrum, suās cīvitātisque fōrtūnās ēius fideī permīssūrum.

Caesar decides to favor Cingetorix.

4. Caesar, etsī intellegēbat, quā dē causā ea dīcerentur, quaeque eum rēs ab īnstitūtō cōnsiliō dēterrēret, tamen, nē aestātem in Trēverīs cōnsūmere cōgerētur, omnibus ad Britannicum bellum rēbus comparātīs, Indutiomarum ad sē cum ducentīs obsidibus venīre iussit. Hīs adductīs, in iīs fīliō propīnquīsque ēius omnibus, quōs nōminātim ēvocāverat, cōnsolātus Indutiomarum hortātusque est, utī in officiō manēret; nihilō tamen sēcius prīncipibus Trēverōrum ad sē convocātīs hōs singillātim Cingetorīgī conciliāvit, quod cum meritō ēius ā sē fierī intellegēbat, tum māgnī

18. idcircō, *adv.* [**circa**, round about], on that (this) account, therefore. 1

21. lābor, -ī, lapsus sum, *n.*, slide, slip; fall in *or* away; go wrong; fail, be disappointed in. 2

4. Britannicus, -a, -um [**Britannia**], of Britain, British. 1

---

19. quō: for use cf. III, **16**, 9; II, **27**, 6; I, **14**, 14.

20, 21. propter imprūdentiam: as in IV, **27**, 9. **nē**, *for fear that.* **itaque . . . potestāte**, *therefore* (since he had remained at home) *the whole state was in his power*, and he alone had the right to treat with Caesar.

2. quae rēs: the submission of the chiefs to Caesar (cf. **3**, 13). **cōnsiliō**: i. e., *bellum parāre* (cf. **3**, 12).

3. aestātem: it was already June.

6. fīliō, propīnquīs: for case cf. I, **16**, 12.

8. prīncipibus: those who had held out with Indutiomarus.

9. hōs . . . conciliāvit: thus using his influence to secure for Cingetorix the power he coveted.

10, 11. quod etc., *and he not only knew that he was doing this* (active for passive) *in accordance with his* (Cingetorix's) *deserts, but also thought* etc. **cum . . . tum**: force when used correlatively? **meritō**: for case cf. IV, **2**, 10; III, **23**, 13; II, **13**, 12. **māgnī interesse**, *that it was of great importance.* **māgnī**: for case cf. IV, **21**, 17; with *interesse* the degree is expressed as here, or by an adverb as in II, **5**, 5.

interesse arbitrābātur ēius auctōritātem inter suōs quam plūrimum valēre, cūius tam ēgregiam in sē voluntātem perspēxisset. Id tulit factum graviter Indutiomarus, suam grātiam inter suōs minuī, et quī iam ante inimīcō in nōs animō fuisset, multō gravius hōc dolōre exārsit.

Caesar's fleet and troops assemble at Portus Itius.

5. Hīs rēbus cōnstitūtīs Caesar ad portum Itium cum legiōnibus pervenit. Ibi cōgnōscit LX nāvēs, quae in Meldīs factae erant, tempestāte rēiectās cursum tenēre nōn potuisse atque eōdem, unde erant profectae, revertisse; reliquās parātās ad nāvigandum atque omnibus rēbus īnstrūctās invenit. Eōdem equitātus tōtīus Galliae convenit numerō mīlium quattuor prīncipēsque ex omnibus cīvitātibus; ex quibus perpaucōs, quōrum in sē fidem perspēxerat, relinquere in Galliā, reliquōs obsidum locō sēcum dūcere dēcrēverat, quod cum ipse abesset mōtum Galliae verēbātur.

Treachery of Dumnorix.

6. Erat ūnā cum cēterīs Dumnorīx Aeduus, dē quō ante ā nōbīs dictum est. Hunc sēcum habēre in prīmīs cōnstituerat, quod eum cupidum rērum novārum, cupidum

15. ex-ārdēscō, -ere, ārsī, ārsus [*incho. of* ārdeō, burn], set on fire; be inflamed; be excited. 1

3. Meldī, -ōrum, M., *a Gallic people on the Marne about modern* Meaux. 1

---

12. cūius . . . perspēxisset, *since he had* etc. For trans. and mode cf. IV, **21**, 22; II, **15**, 14.

13. id . . . graviter, *was greatly vexed at this course;* explained by the clause *suam . . . minuī.*

14. quī . . . fuisset, *and although he had been; quī = cum* is with concessive (as well as causal) force takes the subjunctive.

3, 4. in Meldīs: across the Marne from the territory of the Suessiones. The vessels would follow the Marne and Seine down to the mouth of the latter: see on **1**, 4. **tempestāte rēiectās:** while sailing from the mouth of the Seine to Boulogne. **cursum tenēre:** as in IV, **26**, 14. **eōdem:** i. e., to the mouth of the Seine.

7. numerō: abl. of specification, in its common pleonastic use with numerals: cf. I, **49**, 8; **5**, 4. **mīlium:** join with *equitātus,* for case cf. II, **30**, 4; **5**, 21; I, **38**, 1; **5**, 8.

2. ante: see I, **3**, 14.

3, 4. cupidum . . . auctōritātis: see I, **18**, 8. **rērum, imperiī:**

imperiī, māgnī animī, māgnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis cōgnōverat. Accēdēbat hūc, quod in conciliō Aeduōrum Dumnorīx dīxerat sibi ā Caesare rēgnum cīvitātis dēferrī; quod dictum Aeduī graviter ferēbant, neque recūsandī aut dēprēcandī causā lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittere audēbant. Id factum ex suīs hospitibus Caesar cōgnōverat. Ille omnibus prīmō precibus petere contendit, ut in Galliā relinquerētur, partim quod īnsuētus nāvigandī mare timēret, partim quod religiōnibus impedīrī sēsē dīceret. Posteāquam id obstinātē sibi negārī vīdit, omnī spē impetrandī adēmptā prīncipēs Galliae sollicitāre, sēvocāre singulōs hortārīque coepit, utī in continentī remanērent: metū territāre: nōn sine causā fierī, ut Gallia omnī nōbilitāte spoliārētur; id esse cōnsilium Cae-

7. **dictum, -ī,** n., a saying, remark; command. 5
9. **hospes, -itis,** m., f., entertainer, host; guest, sojourner, stranger; hereditary *or* family friend. 3
11. **īnsuētus, -a, -um** [**suēscō,** accustom], unaccustomed, unused, unfamiliar with. 2
12. **religiō, -ōnis** [**ligō,** bind], f., reverence for the gods, piety, religion; religious matters (*rites, scruples, feelings,* etc.). 5
obstinātē, *adv.*, [**obstinātus,** resolved], firmly, inflexibly, resolutely. 1
13. **adimō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptus** [**emō,** take], *a.*, take away *to one's disadvantage*, remove. 2
14. **sē-vocō,** 1. [**vocō,** call], *a.*, call aside *or* apart; separate, withdraw. 1
15. **territō, -āre,** [*freq. of* **terreō,** frighten], *a.*, keep frightening, alarm. 4
16. **spoliō,** 1. [**spolium**], rob, despoil, plunder. 2

---

for case cf. IV, **24,** 13; II, **21,** 4; I, **44,** 30; **21,** 10. **animī, auctōritātis:** for case cf. IV, **2,** 7; II, **30,** 11; **27,** 12; **15,** 13.

5. **accēdēbat hūc,** *and besides.*

6, 7. **quod dictum,** *this statement.* **graviter ferēbant:** because they had, and preferred, a democratic form of government with an annual magistracy: see on *rēgnum,* IV, **12,** 14.

8. **audēbant:** because of their fear of Dumnorix, who was powerful and apparently unscrupulous.

11, 12. **nāvigandī:** gerund or gerundive? For case cf. *imperiī* l. 4. **timēret:** for mode cf. IV, **27,** 12; **16,** 19; II, **11,** 17; I, **23,** 9. **dīceret:** a peculiar idiom deserving careful study, see A. 321, Note 2, *ad fin.;* G. 541, N. 3; H. 516, II, 1; *B.* 286 1 *a.*

15. **territāre:** complementary with *coepit* supplied from l. 14. So also **interpōnere** and **pōscere,** below, while **fierī** l. 15 and **esse** l. 16 are in indirect discourse.

saris, ut quōs in cōnspectū Galliae interficere verērētur, hōs omnēs in Britanniam trāductōs necāret; fidem reliquīs interpōnere, iūsiūrandum poscere, ut, quod esse ex ūsū Galliae intellēxissent, commūnī cōnsiliō administrārent. Haec ā complūribus ad Caesarem dēferēbantur.

He flees, is overtaken and killed.

7. Quā rē cōgnitā Caesar, quod tantum cīvitātī Aeduae dīgnitātis tribuēbat, coërcendum atque dēterrendum, quibuscumque rēbus posset, Dumnorīgem statuēbat; quod longius ēius āmentiam prōgredī vidēbat, prōspiciendum, nē quid sibī āc reīpūblicae nocēre posset. Itaque diēs circiter XXV in eō locō commorātus, quod Cōrus ventus nāvigātiōnem impediēbat, quī māgnam partem omnis temporis in hīs locīs flāre cōnsuēvit, dabat operam, ut in officiō Dumnorīgem continēret, nihilō tamen sēcius omnia ēius cōnsilia cōgnōsceret: tandem idōneam nactus tempestātem mīlitēs equitēsque cōnscendere nāvēs iubet. At omnium impedītīs animīs, Dumnorīx cum equitibus Aeduōrum ā castrīs īnsciente Caesare domum discēdere coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā

4. āmentia, -ae [**mēns,** mind], F., bewilderment of mind, madness, folly. 2

6. commoror, 1. [**moror,** tarry], *n.*, tarry, wait, stop. 2

Cōrus, -ī, M., *the northwest wind.* 1

8. flō, 1. *a.*, blow. 1

---

18. trāductōs necāret, *take over and put to death.* **fidem interpōnere,** *he pledged his own word.* **reliquīs:** possibly the chiefs whom Caesar was leaving behind. These Dumnorix tries to draw from their allegiance.

1–3. quod . . . tribuēbat . . . statuēbat: since the Aedui were so influential, the plots of Dumnorix to draw them from their friendly attitude toward Rome and Caesar, were all the more dangerous.

7. māgnam partem: "Accordingly when the hydraulic windmills came into use in Holland, as they could not be turned to the varying winds, they were built so that the plane of the sails faced the northwest" (Moberly).

10. mīlitēs = *peditēs.*

11, 12. impedītīs, *occupied.* **cum equitibus Aeduōrum:** Dumnorix may have been their commander, as on a former occasion (I, 18 28, 29).

14. omnibus postpositīs, *disregarding everything else.*

Caesar intermīssā profectiōne atque omnibus rēbus postpositīs māgnam partem equitātūs ad eum īnsequendum mittit retrahīque imperat; sī vim faciat neque pareat, interficī iubet, nihil hunc sē absente prō sānō factūrum arbitrātus, quī praesentis imperium neglēxisset. Ille autem revocātus resistere āc sē manū dēfendere suōrumque fidem implōrāre coepit saepe clāmitāns līberum sē līberaeque esse cīvitātis. Illī, ut erat imperātum, circumsistunt hominem atque interficiunt: at equitēs Aeduī ad Caesarem omnēs revertuntur.

Caesar sails to Britain.

8. Hīs rēbus gestīs Labiēnō in continentī cum tribus legiōnibus et equitum mīlibus duōbus relīctō, ut portūs tuērētur et rem frūmentāriam prōvidēret, quaeque in Galliā gererentur cōgnōsceret cōnsiliumque prō tempore et prō

14. post-pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus [pōnō, place], *a.*, place behind, postpone; neglect, disregard.
16. re-trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractus [trahō, drag], drag *or* bring back.
17. sānus, -a, -um, sound *in body or mind*, discreet, sensible.
19. implōrō, 1. [plōrō, call out]. *a.*, beseech, entreat, implore.
20. clāmitō, 1. [*freq. of* **clāmō**, call out], *a.*, *n.*, call out loudly *or* repeatedly, exclaim.

---

16. interficī iubet: Dumnorix by his act of desertion had rendered himself liable to the penalty of death.

17. nihil prō sānō, *nothing rational.*

19. manū: i. e., with the weapons in his hands.

20. līberum . . . cīvitātis: the assertion is as creditable to the free spirit of Dumnorix as the record of it here is to Caesar's candor: see Int. 47.

21. erat imperātum: Caesar does not shrink from the responsibility of an act which doubtless seemed to him both just and expedient. **interficiunt:** this deed must have made a deep impression upon the Gallic nobles, who saw one of their order struck down for asserting his liberty of action. "Everyone who was conscious of similar sentiments — and they formed the great majority — saw in that catastrophe the picture of what was in store for himself" (Momm. vol. IV, p. 316).

2, 3. portūs tuērētur: as Sulpicius Rufus had done the year before; see IV, 22, 21. **rem frūmentāriam:** to be forwarded to Britain as needed. **quaeque** etc.: Caesar feared the effect of the death of Dumnorix.

4, 5. prō rē, *according to the occasion and circumstances.* **quīnque legiōnibus:** the 7th is the only one especially mentioned. About

rē caperet, ipse cum quīnque legiōnibus et parī numerō equitum, quem in continentī relīquerat, ad sōlis occāsum nāvēs solvit et lēnī Āfricō prōvēctus mediā circiter nocte ventō intermīssō cursum nōn tenuit et longius dēlātus aestū ortā lūce sub sinistrā Britanniam relīctam cōnspēxit. Tum rūrsus aestūs commūtātiōnem secūtus rēmīs contendit, ut eam partem īnsulae caperet, quā optimum esse ēgressum superiōre aestāte cōgnōverat. Quā in rē admodum fuit mīlitum virtūs laudanda, quī vēctōriīs gravibusque nāvigiīs nōn intermīssō rēmigandī labōre longārum nāvium cursum adaequārunt. Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus nāvibus merīdiānō ferē tempore, neque in eō locō hostis est vīsus; sed, ut posteā Caesar ex captīvīs cōgnōvit, cum māgnae manūs eō convēnissent,

7. **Āfricus, -a, -um,** of Africa: **ventus,** the southwest wind (*blowing from Africa to Italy*). 1

prō-vehō, -ere, vēxī, vēctus, *carry forward.— Usually passive:* move forward, advance, set sail. 1

11. **ēgressus, -ūs** [gradior, go], M., going forth, landing. 1

12. **laudō, 1.** [laus, praise], *a.*, praise, commend. 1

13. **vēctōrius, -a, -um** [vehō, carry], for carrying: **nāvigia,** transport-ships. 1

rēmigō, -āre [rēmus, oar + agō], *a.*, propel the oar; row. 1

15. **merīdiānus, -a, -um** [merīdiēs, midday], of midday: **tempus,** noon. 1

---

how large a force did Caesar have? See Int. 86. **parī numerō,** *and a force of cavalry equal* (to that) *which,* etc.

6, 7. **ad sōlis occāsum:** probably on the 20th of July. **nāvēs solvit,** *set sail.* From what port?

8. **cursum:** northwest. **longius:** past the place on the coast where Caesar wished to land. **aestū:** the tide was running toward the northeast. **ortā lūce,** *at daybreak:* abl. abs. expressing time cf. II, **35,** 6, 7.

10. **eam partem:** probably between Nalmer and Deal, about seven miles northeast of Dover. Follow on the map the route as described in the text.

11. **superiōre aestāte:** on the first expedition cf. IV, **23.**

13. **vēctōriīs . . . nāvigiīs,** *although the transports were heavily laden.* For trans. cf. II, **12,** 7. **vēctōriīs:** these were purposely built very broad of beam (cf. **1,** 10 and Int. 75), and were naturally much slower than the narrow warships.

14, 15. **accessum est:** trans. by personal constr.

multitūdine nāvium perterritae, quae cum annōtinīs prīvātīsque, quās suī quisque commodī causā fēcerat, amplius octingentae ūnō erant vīsae tempore, ā lītore discesserant āc sē in superiōra loca abdiderant.

Caesar encounters the natives for the first time and compels them to flee.

9. Caesar expositō exercitū et locō castrīs idōneō captō, ubi ex captīvīs cōgnōvit, quō in locō hostium cōpiae cōnsēdissent, cohortibus X ad mare relīctīs et equitibus CCC, quī praesidiō nāvibus essent, dē tertiā vigiliā ad hostēs contendit eō minus veritus nāvibus, quod in lītore mollī atque apertō dēligātās ad ancorās relinquēbat, et praesidiō nāvibusque Q. Ātrium praefēcit. Ipse noctū prōgressus mīlia passuum circiter XII hostium cōpiās cōnspicātus est. Illī equitātū atque essedīs ad flūmen prōgressī ex locō superiōre nostrōs prohibēre et proelium committere coepērunt. Repulsī ab equitātū sē in silvās abdidērunt locum nanctī ēgregiē et nātūrā et opere mūnītum, quem domesticī bellī, ut vidēbantur, causā iam ante praeparāverant; nam crēbrīs arboribus succīsīs omnēs introitūs erant praeclūsī. Ipsī

18. annōtinus, -a, -um [annus, year], of last year, a year old. 1

7. Ātrius, -ī, M., *a Roman gentile name:* Quintius Atrius, *an officer in Caesar's army.* 1

14. introitus, -ūs [intrō-eō, go within], M., going within, entrance, access. 1

praeclūdō, -ere, clūdī, clūsus [claudō, close], *a.*, close *or* shut in front, shut *or* cut off. 1

17, 18. eō: to the vicinity of the landing place. **prīvātīs:** belonging to wealthy officers or volunteers, or possibly to traders.

21. superiōra loca: i. e., the heights some twelve miles inland. For the case cf. I, **12**, 12.

1. locō: probably close to the sea-shore.

3. cohortibus X: a guard composed of a contingent of two cohorts from each of the five legions.

5, 6. eō minus veritus: Caesar did not heed the lesson of his previous experience; cf. IV; **29**. **mollī atque apertō:** cf. IV, **23**, 19, *apertō āc plānō.*

7. et connects *contendit* (l. 5) and *praefēcit.*

9. essedīs: see on IV, **32**, 19.

10. proelium committere: after the cavalry had forced the passage of the stream.

ex silvīs rārī prōpūgnābant nostrōsque intrā mūnītiōnēs ingredī prohibēbant. At mīlitēs legōnis septimae testūdine factā et aggere ad mūnītiōnēs adiectō locum cēpērunt eōsque ex silvīs expulērunt paucīs vulneribus acceptīs. Sed eōs fugientēs longius Caesar prōsequī vetuit, et quod locī nātūram īgnōrābat, et quod māgnā parte diēī consūmptā mūnītiōnī castrōrum tempus relinquī volēbat.

A storm damages the fleet.

10. Postrīdiē ēius diēī māne tripertītō mīlitēs equitēsque in expedītiōnem mīsit, ut eōs, quī fūgerant, persequerentur. Hīs aliquantum itineris prōgressīs, cum iam extrēmī essent in prōspectū, equitēs ā Q. Ātriō ad Caesarem vēnērunt, quī nūntiārent superiōre noctē māxumā coortā tempestāte prope omnēs nāvēs afflīctās atque in lītus ēiectās esse, quod neque ancorae fūnēsque subsisterent, neque nautae gubernātōrēsque vim tempestātis patī possent: itaque ex eō concursū nāvium māgnum esse incommodum acceptum.

1. **tripertītō**, *adv.*, [**tripertītus**] in *or* into three parts. 3
2. **expedītiō, -ōnis**, F., an enterprise against the enemy, expedition.
3. **aliquantus, -a, -um** [**alius** + **quantus**, how much], some; considerable; *in neut. as subst. with part. gen.*, a good deal, not a little: *in abl. as adv.*, in some degree, considerably. 2

---

15. rārī, *in small detachments.* **ingredī**: for the mode cf. IV, **24**, 4; II, **4**, 7.

16, 17. legiōnis septimae: this legion had met with a reverse on the previous expedition (see IV, **32**, 12–19.) and was no doubt eager to try conclusions with the foe again. **testūdine factā**: see Int. 155. **aggere**: a roughly-made mound of earth, trees, etc., high enough to permit the soldiers to reach the top of the breastwork. For a similar instance see III, **25**, 5, and note.

20, 21. mūnītiōnī castrōrum: see Int. 130–131. **tempus relinquī**: at what time of day did the Romans usually begin building the camp?

1. tripertītō: *in three detachments.*

2. expedītiōnem: the troops were in light marching order (*expedītī*).

3, 4. iam extrēmī: the rear guard of the Romans was still in sight of the camp.

5. nūntiārent: for mode cf. IV, **11**, 17; III, **11**, 11.

7. subsisterent, *hold firm.* For mode cf. I, **40**, 5 (*putārent*).

8. itaque: i. e., in consequence of the inability of the seamen to control their vessels.

It is hastily repaired and beached at the camp.

11. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs Caesar legiōnēs equitātumque revocārī atque itinere dēsistere iubet, ipse ad nāvēs revertitur; eadem ferē, quae ex nūntiīs litterīsque cōgnōverat, cōram perspicit, sīc ut āmīssīs circiter XL nāvibus reliquae tamen reficī posse māgnō negōtiō vidērentur. Itaque ex legiōnibus fabrōs dēligit et ex continentī aliōs arcessī iubet; Labiēnō scrībit, ut, quam plūrimās possit, iīs legiōnibus, quae sint āpud eum, nāvēs īnstituat. Ipse, etsī rēs erat multae operae āc labōris, tamen commodissimum esse statuit omnēs nāvēs subdūcī et cum castrīs ūnā mūnītiōne coniungī. In hīs rēbus circiterdiēs X cōnsūmit nē nocturnīs quidem temporibus ad labōrem mīlitum intermīssīs. Subductīs nāvibus castrīsque ēgregiē mūnītīs eāsdem cōpiās, quās ante, praesidiō nāvibus relīquit, ipse eōdem, unde redierat, prōficīscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, māiōrēs iam undique in eum locum cōpiae Britannōrum convēnerant summā imperiī bellīque administrandī commūnī cōnsiliō per-

The Britons unite under Cassivellaunus.

4. **cōram,** *adv.*, [**cum** + **ōs,** face], face to face, in person. 3

6. **faber, fabrī,** (*gen. pl.* **-brūm**), M., a workman *in wood, iron, brass, marble,* etc., a smith, carpenter, mechanic. *In the Roman army the fabrī or engineers were a separate corps under the praefectus fabrūm.*

11. **nocturnus, -a, -um** [**nox,** night], of *or* belonging to the night, nocturnal, by night. *

---

2. **revocārī:** from the pursuit.

6. **fabrōs:** as the engineering corps (see Int. 102) was distinct from the legion, it is clear from the expression *ex legiōnibus dēligit* that Caesar called for soldiers who understood carpentry to aid in the work.

10. **subdūcī:** see on IV, 29, 5. **castrīs:** see on 9, 1. This was a *castra nāvālia*, designed to keep open his communications by water with his base of supplies at *Portus Itius.* **ūnā mūnītiōne:** it has been estimated that the eight hundred vessels, if ranged in four lines, would occupy a strip of beach a mile long and three hundred and fifty feet wide. To enclose the space in addition to that required for five legions, two thousand horsemen, the ships' crews and camp followers, must have required fortifications of great extent.

14. **eōdem:** i. e., the camping-place on the Stour, near which the British stronghold was: cf. 9, 11 *locum*, and 21 *castrōrum*.

17. **summā . . . administrandī,** *the chief command and direction of the war,*

mīssā Cassivellaunō; cūius fīnēs ā maritimīs cīvitātibus flūmen dīvidit, quod appellātur Tamesis, ā marī circiter mīlia passuum LXXX. Huic superiōre tempore cum reliquīs cīvitātibus continentia bella intercesserant; sed nostrō adventū permōtī Britannī hunc tōtī bellō imperiōque praefēcerant.

Britain: its people, resources, productions, climate.

12. Britanniae pars interior ab iīs incolitur, quōs nātōs in īnsulā ipsā memoriā prōditum dīcunt, maritima pars ab iīs, quī praedae āc bellī īnferendī causā ex Belgiō trānsiērunt (quī omnēs ferē iīs nōminibus cīvitātum appellantur, quibus ortī ex cīvitātibus eō pervēnērunt) et bellō illātō ibi permānsērunt atque agrōs colere coepērunt. Hominum est īnfīnīta multitūdō crēberrimaque

18. **Cassivellaunus, -ī,** M., Caswallon, *the commander-in-chief of the Britons against Caesar.* *

19. **Tamesis, -is,** M., the Thames. 2

1. **interior, -ius,** *comp. adj.* (*sup.* **intimus**) [*prep.* **intrā,** within], inner, interior: *in pl. as subst.*, those in the interior. 5

4. **Belgium, -ī,** N., *the country of the Belgians.* 2

6. **colō, -ere, coluī, cultus,** till, cultivate; inhabit, dwell; honor, cherish; observe. 2

7. **īn-fīnītus, -a, -um** [**fīnis,** end, limit], endless, unlimited, boundless, countless. 3

---

18. Cassivellaunō: the king of the *Cassi,* a people living in a district comprised in the present counties of Hertford, Bedford and Buckingham.

21. LXXX: Caesar naturally gives the distance by the route followed from his landing place to the ford where he crossed the Thames. **huic . . . intercesserant,** *formerly incessant wars had occurred between him and the other tribes.*

In this and the next two chapters Caesar gives such items of information about Britain as he could gather from his own observation and the sources of knowledge open to him. His main purpose was to satisfy the lively curiosity felt by the Roman public with reference to this unknown land.

2. quōs . . . dīcunt, *whose birth upon the island itself is handed down, they say, by tradition.* Britain was very early settled by Celts from the continent, who were preceded by an Iberian race. Other barbarous peoples in lieu of historical data have adopted the same theory in regard to their own origin.

4. ex Belgiō: the ground for this statement was the existence in Britain of tribes called Atrebates, Belgae, etc.

5. quibus . . . pervēnērunt, *from which they have descended and migrated hither.* **cīvitātibus:** on the repetition of the antecedent cf. IV, **7,** 2; II, **18,** 1.

7. hominum, *of the population.*

aedificia ferē Gallicīs cōnsimilia, pecorum māgnus numerus. Ūtuntur aut nummō aureō aut tāleīs ferreīs ad certum pondus exāminātīs prō nummō. Nāscitur ibi plumbum album in mediterrāneīs regiōnibus, in maritimīs ferrum, sed ēius exigua est cōpia; aere ūtuntur importātō. Māteria cūiusque generis, ut in Galliā, est praeter fāgum atque abietem. Leporem et gallīnam et ānserem gustāre fās nōn putant; haec tamen alunt animī voluptātisque causā. Loca sunt temperātiōra quam in Galliā remīssiōribus frīgoribus.

9. **nummus, -ī,** m., a piece of money, coin. 2
aureus, -a, -um [**aurum,** gold], of gold, gold, golden. 1
tālea, -ae, f., rod, bar. 1
10. **exāminō,** 1. [**exāmen,** tongue of a balance], *a.*, weigh, balance. 1
plumbum, -ī, n., lead: sc. **album,** tin. 1
11. **albus, -a, -um,** white. 1
mediterrāneus, -a, -um, [**medius,** *in the middle*+**terra**], midland, inland, interior. 1
13. **fāgus, -ī,** f., a beech-tree beech (*timber*). 1
abiēs, -etis, f., the silver fir, fir-tree. 1
14. **lepus, -oris,** m., a hare. 1
gallīna, -ae [**gallus,** a cock], f., a hen. 1
ānser, -eris [cf. *Engl. gander*], m., a goose. 1
gustō, 1. *a.*, a taste, partake of, eat. 1
fās, *indecl.* [*inf.* **fāri,** to speak], n., divine sanction *or* law, *opp. to* **iūs,** human law; right. 4
15. **voluptās, -tātis** [**volō** wish], f., what one wishes; pleasure, delight, enjoyment, satisfaction. 2
temperātus, -a, -um [*p. p. of* **temperō,** temper], moderate, temperate, mild. 1
16. **remīssus, -a, -um** [*p. p. of* **remittō,** send back, relax], relaxed, not rigid, gentle, mild. 1

---

8. **Gallicīs:** the houses of the Gauls, it is said, were large, with high steep roofs covered with thatch; in shape they were like the Indian wigwam, but were substantially built of timbers.

9. **ūtuntur . . . aureō:** this statement has been verified by the finding of British gold coins antedating Caesar's time. **taleīs ferreīs,** *iron qars*, used as coins.

10, 11. **plumbum album:** the Phoenicians obtained tin from the Scilly Islands, off Cornwall, as early as the 11th century B. C. **mediterrāneīs regiōnibus:** i. e., Cornwall. Caesar's mistake was natural, he thinking only of the southeastern coast, from which the western parts of the island would seem to be *inland*.

12. **exigua cōpia** and for this reason, perhaps, used as money. **aere:** copper is now found in quantity in Cornwall and Devon, though the mines were not vigorously worked until the last century. **importātō,** probably from Sweden.

13. **fāgum atque abietem:** another mistake on Caesar's part. They are both said to be indigenous in Britain.

15. **animī . . . causa,** *for diversion*, as pets.

Its form and size.

13. Īnsula nātūrā triquetra, cūius ūnum latus est contrā Galliam. Hūius lateris alter angulus, quī est ad Cantium, quō ferē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs appelluntur, ad orientem sōlem, īnferior ad merīdiem spēctat. Hōc pertinet circiter mīlia passuum quīngenta. Alterum vergit ad Hispāniam atque occidentem sōlem; quā ex parte est Hibernia, dīmidiō minor, ut exīstimātur, quam Britannia, sed parī spatiō trānsmīssūs atque ex Galliā est in Britanniam. In hōc mediō cursū est īnsula, quae appellātur Mona: complūrēs praeterea minōrēs subiectae īnsulae exīstimantur; dē quibus īnsulīs nōnnūllī scrīpsērunt diēs continuōs XXX sub brūmā esse noctem. Nōs nihil dē eō percontātiōnibus reperiēbāmus,

1. **triquetrus, -a, -um** [**tri-** + (**quatrus** =) **quartus**], with three corners, triangular. 1
2. **angulus, -ī**, M., corner, angle. 2
3. **Cantium, -ī**, N., *a district in the southeast of England, now* Kent. 3
4. **merīdiēs, -ēī** [*for* **medīdiēs** = **medius** + **diēs**], M., midday, noon; the south. *
6. **occidō, -ere, cidī, cāsus**, fall *or* go down; set; be slain.
Hibernia, -ae, F., Ireland.
7. **dīmidius, -a, -um** [**medius**], divided in the middle, halved, half: *in neut. as subst.*, a half. 2
8. **trānsmīssus, -ūs** [**trāns-mittō**], M., sending across, passing over, passage. 1
9. **Mona, -ae**, F., (1) *in ancient writers usually the island* Anglesey; (2) *in Caesar probably the* Isle of Man. 1
11. **brūma, -ae** *for* **brevima** = **brevissima**], F., the shortest day, *i. e.*, the winter solstice; the winter. 1
12. **percontātiō, -ōnis** [**percontor**, inquire], F., inquiring, asking; question, inquiry. 2

---

3. **ferē omnēs**: possibly the Veneti brought their cargoes of tin across from Cornwall to the mouth of the Loire: see on IV, **20**, 9, 10. **ex Galliā**, *Gallic*.

4. **īnferior**: sc. *angulus:* i. e., Land's End. **hōc**: sc. *latus*. **pertinet,** *extends* towards the southwest.

5. **alterum**: sc. *latus*. **vergit ad Hispāniam**: a mistake prevailing long after Caesar's time.

7, 8. **dīmidiō minor,** *a half smaller*. **dīmidiō**: for case cf. III, **12**, 12; II, **20**, 4. **sed . . . atque,** *but the passage is of the same length as*. **spatiō**: for case cf. **3**, **11**; IV, **1**, 20. **atque**: for use cf. IV, **13**, 15; III, **28**, 6; **9**, 22; II, **6**, 4.

9. **Mona**: the Isle of Man, as is evident from the description. **mediō cursū,** *half way across.* Anglesey, to which Tacitus applies the name of Mona, is near the English coast.

10. **īnsulae**: probably the Hebrides and Orkney Islands.

nisi certīs ex aquā mēnsūrīs breviōrēs esse quam in continentī noctēs vidēbāmus. Hūius est longitūdō lateris, ut fert illōrum opīniō, DCC mīlium. Tertium est contrā septentriōnēs; cui partī nūlla est obiecta terra, sed ēius angulus lateris māximē ad Germāniam spectat. Hōc mīlia passuum octingenta in longitūdinem esse exīstimātur. Ita omnis īnsula est in circuitū vīciēs C mīlium passuum.

Customs of its inhabitants.

14. Ex hīs omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī, quī Cantium incolunt, quae regiō est marituma omnis, neque multum ā Gallicā differunt cōnsuētūdine. Interiōrēs plērīque frūmenta nōn serunt, sed lactē et carne vīvunt pellibusque sunt vestītī. Omnēs vērō sē Britannī vitrō

13. **mēnsūra, -ae** [**metior,** measure], F., measuring, measure. 2

15. **DCC,** *here for* **septingentī, -ae, -a** [**septem + centum**], seven hundred. 2

19. **vīciēs (vīciēns),** *num. adv.* [**vigintī,** twenty], twenty times. 1

4. **serō, -ere, sēvī, satus,** *a.*, sow, plant. 1

carō, carnis, F., flesh. 2

5. **vestiō,** 4. [**vestis,** clothes], clothe, dress, attire. 3

vitrum, -ī, N., glass, woad, *a plant used in dyeing blue.* 1

---

13. **certīs ex aquā mēnsūrīs,** *by exact measurements by means of water*, i. e., by the water-clock (*clepsydra*). This was constructed on the plan of the sand or hour glass in vogue in later times. The water dropped through a small hole in the bottom of the vessel containing it. **breviōrēs:** especially noticeable in the summer. The longest day at Rome is 15 hours; at London 16½ hours; in the north of Scotland, 18½ hours.

14, 15. **ut . . . opīniō,** *according to their opinion.* **DCC:** the exact length is about ninety Roman miles less.

16. **angulus** = *alter angulus:* line 2 above. Caesar does not mention the angle between the west and the "north" sides.

17. **octingenta:** the real length of this side is about 570 Roman miles.

1. **hīs:** the tribes of Britain.

3. **interiōrēs:** the inhabitants of the inland regions.

4. **nōn serunt:** in contrast with the people of Cantium, who cultivated the soil: cf. IV, **32,** 15; **31,** 5. **lacte . . . vīvunt:** cf. what Caesar says of the Germans in IV, **1,** 15, 16.

īnficiunt quod caeruleum efficit colōrem, atque hōc horridiōrēs sunt in pūgnā aspectū; capillōque sunt prōmīssō atque omnī parte corporis rāsā praeter caput et labrum superius. Uxōrēs habent dēnī duodēnīque inter sē commūnēs et māximē frātrēs cum frātribus parentēsque cum līberīs; sed sī quī sunt ex hīs nātī, eōrum habentur līberī, quō prīmum virgō quaequae dēducta est.

Skirmishes between the Britons and Romans.

15. Equitēs hostium essedāriīque ācriter proeliō cum equitātū nostrō in itinere cōnflīxērunt, tamen ut nostrī omnibus partibus superiōrēs fuerint atque eōs in silvās collēsque compulerint; sed complūribus interfectīs cupidius īnsecūtī nōnnūllōs ex suīs āmīsērunt. At illī intermīssō spatiō imprūdentibus nostrīs atque occupātīs in mūnī-

6. **īnficiō, -erē, fēcī, fectus** [faciō], *a.*, put on; stain, dye, tinge; taint, infect. 3

caeruleus, -a, -um [caelum, the sky], dark-colored, dark blue, sky-blue, azure. 1

color, -ōris, M., hue, color, tint. 3

horridus, -a, -um [horreō, stand on end, bristle], bristling, rough; unsightly, hideous, frightful. 1

7. **aspectus (ad-), -ūs** [adspiciō, look at], M., look; appearance, mien, aspect. 3

capillus, -ī [*Gr.* head], the hair *of the head.* 2

prō-mittō, -ere, mīsī, mīssus [mittō, send], *a.*, send forward *or* down; let hang down *or* grow (capillum *or* barbam). 1

8. **rādō, -ere, rāsī, rāsus,** *a.*, scrape, shave. 1

labrum, -ī [cf. lambō, lick, lap], N., lip, *fig.* rim, edge. 3

9. **dēnī, -ae, -a,** *distrib. num. adj.* [decem], ten each, ten at a time, by tens. 2

duodēnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.* [duodecem], twelve each, twelve at a time. 3

10. **parēns, -entis** [*p. of* pariō], M. *and* F., a parent, father, mother. 3

11. **virgō, -inis,** F., maiden, maid, virgin. 1

---

7. **aspectū:** for case cf. **3,** 1; III, **8,** 4; II, **6,** 1. **capillō . . . prōmīssō,** *they have flowing hair.* **capillō:** for case cf. **13,** 7; **3,** 11.

9. **habent . . . duodēnī,** (*parties of*) *ten or twelve have.*

11. **quō:** used adverbially for *ad quōs,* cf. II, **16,** 10.

1. **Equitēs:** the narrative broken off at the end of the 11th chapter is here resumed. **essedāriī:** see IV, **24,** 2.

6, 7. **imprūdentibus . . . occu-**

tiōne castrōrum subitō sē ex silvīs ēiēcērunt impetūque in eōs factō, quī erant in statiōne prō castrīs collocātī, ācriter pūgnāvērunt, duābusque mīssīs subsidiō cohortibus ā Caesare atque hīs prīmīs legiōnum duārum, cum hae perexiguō intermīssō locī spatiō inter sē cōnstitissent, novō genere pūgnae perterritīs nostrīs per mediōs audācissimē perrupērunt sēque inde incolumēs recēpērunt. Eō diē Q. Laberius Dūrus, tribūnus mīlitum, interficitur. Illī plūribus submīssīs cohortibus repelluntur.

Tactics of the Britons. Disadvantage of the Romans.

16. Tōtō hōc in genere pūgnae cum sub oculīs omnium āc prō castrīs dīmicārētur, intellēctum est nostrōs propter gravitātem armōrum, quod neque īnsequī cēdentēs possent neque ab sīgnīs discēdere audērent, minus aptōs esse ad hūius generis hostem, equitēs autem māgnō cum perīculō proeliō dīmicāre, propterea quod illī etiam cōnsultō

10. per-exiguus, -a, -um [**exiguus,** scanty, little], very small, very little. 1
13. Laberius, -ī, M., *a Roman gentile name:* Quintus Laberius Durus, *a military tribune.* 1
Dūrus, -ī, M., *a Roman cōgnōmen.* 1
6. cōnsultō [*abl. N. of* **cōnsultus,** well considered], *adv.*, deliberately, designedly, on purpose. 5

---

pātīs, *while our men were off their guard and engaged.* **mūnītiōne castrōrum:** see Int. 130, 131.

8. statiōne, *on guard.* Where were they posted? See IV, **32,** 5.

10. atque hīs prīmīs: *and these the first* (cohorts), i. e., the first cohort in each legion, which contained the picked men. The detailing of these cohorts emphasizes the greatness of the danger. **perexiguō,** *with a very little (portion of) space intervening between them.*

11. cōnstitissent: for mode cf. IV, **12,** 4; III, **7,** 4; **7,** 2. **novō genere:** showing that these cohorts did not belong to the 7th and 10th legions, which had had experience in the British mode of fighting on the former expedition.

12. per mediōs: through the space between the cohorts. The Roman formation in close ranks was not well adapted for meeting such attacks.

3. nostrōs: i. e., the infantry. **grāvitātem armōrum:** see Int. 104, ff.

4. ab sīgnīs discēdere: i. e., to break ranks and skirmish.

5. equitēs: corresponds to *nostrōs* above.

6. illī=*Britannī*

plērumque cēderent et, cum paulum ab legiōnibus nostrōs remōvissent, ex essedīs dēsilīrent et pedibus disparī proeliō contenderent. Equestris autem proeliī ratiō et cēdentibus et īnsequentibus pār atque idem perīculum īnferēbat. Accēdēbat hūc, ut numquam cōnfertī, sed rārī māgnīsque intervāllīs proeliārentur statiōnēsque dispositās habērent, atque aliōs aliī deinceps exciperent, integrīque et recentēs dēfetīgātīs succēderent.

The Britons renew their attacks and are repulsed.

17. Posterō diē procul ā castrīs hostēs in collibus cōnstitērunt rārīque sē ostendere et lēnius quam prīdiē nostrōs equitēs proeliō lacessere coepērunt. Sed merīdiē cum Caesar pābulandī causā trēs legiōnēs atque omnem equitātum cum C. Trebōniō lēgātō mīsisset, repente ex

8. **dis-pār, paris** [**pār,** equal], unequal, unlike, dissimilar, ill-matched. 2

11. **numquam** (**nunq-**), [**nē-** + **unquam,** ever], not ever, never. 4

13. **dēfetīgo** (**dēfat-**), 1. [**fatīgō,** weary], *a.*, completely weary, tire out, exhaust. 5

4. **pābulor,** 1. [**pābulum,** fodder], *a.*, get fodder, forage. 3

5. **Trebōnius, -ī,** M., *a Roman gentile name:* Caius Trebonius, *a friend of Cicero and Caesar who procured the Gallic province for Caesar and was appointed legate by him.* *

repente [*acc. N. of* **repēns,** sudden], *adv.*, suddenly, unexpectedly. 5

---

7. **nostrōs**=*equitēs.*

8. **essedīs:** see note IV, **32,** 19. **pedibus:** cf. the description of the maneuvre in IV, **33,** 5, ff. The chief advantage lay in the fact that the British fought on foot and chariot at once, while the Roman cavalry was not supported by the infantry.

9, 10. **et . . . pār,** *was the same, both when they retreated and advanced.*

11. **rārī:** as in **9,** 15.

12, 13. **aliōs aliī:** for use cf. IV, **26,** 3; II, **26,** 4; I, **39,** 12.

1. **procul ā castrīs:** apparently to lure the cavalry away from the main body.

2. **lēnius:** in contrast to the *ācriter* of **15,** 1.

4. **pābulandī:** see Int. 116. **trēs legiōnēs** etc.: an unusually large foraging party. The novel tactics of the British inspired respect. How large a force of cavalry had Caesar? Cf. **8,** 5 and 2.

5, 6. **lēgātō:** see Int. 94. **repente . . . advolāvērunt:** this recalls the maneuvre of the previous

omnibus partibus ad pābulātōrēs advolāvērunt, sīcubi ab sīgnīs legiōnibusque absisterent. Nostrī ācriter in eōs impetū factō reppulērunt neque fīnem sequendī fēcērunt, quoad subsidiō cōnfīsī equitēs, cum post sē legiōnēs vidērent, praecipitēs hostēs ēgērunt, māgnōque eōrum numerō interfectō neque suī colligendī neque cōnsistendī aut ex essedīs dēsiliendī facultātem dedērunt. Ex hāc fugā prōtinus, quae undique convēnerant, auxilia discessērunt, neque post id tempus umquam summīs nōbīscum cōpiīs hostēs contendērunt.

Caesar crosses the Thames and faces the enemy.

18. Caesar cōgnitō cōnsiliō eōrum ad flūmen Tamesim in fīnēs Cassivellaunī exercitum dūxit; quod flūmen ūnō omnīnō locō pedibus, atque hōc aegrē, trānsīrī potest. Eō cum vēnisset, animum advertit ad alteram flūminis rīpam māgnās esse cōpiās hostium īnstrūctās. Rīpa

6. **pābulātor, -ōris** [pābulor, forage], M., forager. 1
ad-volō, 1. [volō, fly], *n.*, fly to *or* against, rush on *or* at. 3
sīcubi, *adv.*, if in any place, if anywhere, wheresoever.
7. **ab-sistō, -ere, stitī** [sistō, stand], *n.*, stand from *or* aloof, withdraw; leave off, refrain, desist. 1

---

year (IV, **32,** 15, ff). **sīcubi** etc., *if in any place they* (the foragers) *withdrew* etc.

7. **nostrī:** the legionaries.

8. **sequendī,** *following* the enemy, who were not beaten yet, but slowly retreating.

9. **subsidiō cōnfīsī:** the cavalry did not repeat the mistake of the previous day in allowing themselves to be drawn away from the legions: cf. **16,** 7. **subsidiō** (sc. *legiōnum*): for case see on III, **27,** 5.

10. **praecipitēs . . ēgērunt:** the attack of the cavalry finally forced the enemy to flee.

12. **ex,** *after.*

1. **cōnsiliō:** viz., not to fight pitched battles but to prolong the war and wear out the Romans.

2. **fīnēs:** north of the Thames, in Middlesex and Buckinghamshire. **exercitum dūxit:** for the purpose of forcing the British leader to fight.

3. **ūnō omnīnō locō:** somewhere up the river from London, possibly as far as Kingston. To-day the Thames is fordable in a number of places between London and Shepparton. **atque hōc** (locō) **aegrē,** *and even there with much difficulty.*

4. **animum advertit=animadvertit,** and has the same construction.

autem erat acūtīs sudibus praefīxīs mūnīta, ēiusdemque generis sub aquā dēfīxae sudēs flūmine tegēbantur. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs ā captīvīs perfugīsque Caesar praemīssō equitātū cōnfestim legiōnēs subsequī iussit. Sed eā celeritāte atque eō impetū mīlitēs iērunt, cum capite sōlō ex aquā exstārent, ut hostēs impetum legiōnum atque equitum sustinēre nōn possent rīpāsque dīmitterent āc sē fugae mandārent.

Cassivellaunus resorts to guerilla warfare.

19. Cassivellaunus, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, omnī dēpositā spē contentiōnis dīmīssīs ampliōribus cōpiīs mīlibus circiter quattuor essedāriōrum relīctīs, itinera nostra servābat paulumque ex viā excēdēbat locīsque impedītīs āc silvestribus sēsē occultābat atque iīs regiōnibus, quibus nōs iter factūrōs cōgnōverat, pecora atque hominēs ex agrīs in silvās compellēbat et, cum equitātus noster līberius praedandī vāstandīque causā sē in agrōs ēiēcerat, omnibus

6. **acūtus, -a, -um** [*p. p. of* **acuō**, sharpen], sharpened, pointed. 2

sudis, -is, F., pile, stake. 4

prae-fīgō, -ere, fīxī, fīxus, [**fīgō**, fix], *a.*, fix *or* fasten before, set in front *or* on the end. 1

7. **tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctus,** *a.* cover, hide, conceal; defend, protect. *

10. **exstō (extō), -āre,** *n.*, stand out, extend above. 1.

2. **contentiō, -ōnis** [**contendō**, stretch out], F., stretching out, striving, struggle, contest. *

---

6. **praefīxīs:** i. e., projecting from the northern bank in contrast to the stakes driven into the bed of the stream (*sub aquā dēfīxae*).

8. **praemīssō equitātū:** Caesar probably sent the cavalry up and down the river, to cross and attack the enemy's flank.

9. **eā**, *such*, so also the following *eō*.

10. **cum . . . exstārent,** *although the head only* etc. This shows the value and extent of the legionary training.

1. **suprā:** in **17,** 13, 14.

2. **omnī . . . contentiōnis,** *having lost all hope of being able to continue the contest.*

2–4. **ampliōribus cōpiīs,** *the greater part of his troops.* Cassivellaunus soon saw that his infantry was useless against the legions. **itinera . . . servābat,** *kept watching our movements.* **locīsque,** etc: "We may conclude from this passage and the following narrative that the British chariots had very high wheels, which would enable them to pass more easily over the inequalities of the ground, and that they were very narrow" (Goehler).

8. **ēiēcerat:** for the mode cf. IV, **17,** 11; III, **14,** 17, 18.

viīs sēmitīsque essedāriōs ex silvīs ēmittēbat et māgnō cum perīculō nostrōrum equitum cum iīs cōnflīgēbat atque hōc metū lātius vagārī prohibēbat. Relinquēbātur, ut neque longius ab āgmine legiōnum discēdī Caesar paterētur, et tantum in agrīs vāstandīs incendiīsque faciendīs hostibus nocērētur, quantum labōre atque itinere legiōnāriī mīlitēs efficere poterant.

Submission of the Trinobantes.

20. Interim Trinobantēs, prope fīrmissima eārum regiōnum cīvitās, ex quā Mandubracius adulēscēns Caesaris fidem secūtus ad eum in continentem Galliam vēnerat, cūius pater in eā cīvitāte rēgnum obtinuerat interfectusque erat ā Cassivellaunō, ipse fugā mortem vītāverat, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt pollicenturque sēsē eī dēditūrōs atque imperāta factūrōs; petunt, ut Mandubracium ab iniūriā Cassivellaunī dēfendat atque in cīvitātem mittat, quī praesit

9. **sēmita, -ae,** F., narrow way, lane, foot-path. 2

12. **tantum** [*neut. acc. of* **tantus**], *adv.*, so much, so far, to such a degree *or* extent. 5

13. **incendium, -ī** [**incendō,** set fire to], N., burning, conflagration, fire. *

1. **Trinobantēs, -um,** M., *a tribe of southeast Britain capital Camulodunum, the modern* Colchester. 3

2. **Mandubracius, -ī,** M., *a prince of the Trinobantes who with his people went over to Caesar.* 4

10, 11. hōc metū: the demonstrative is, by a not infrequent Latin construction, attracted to the case of its noun (*hōc metū=metū hūius reī*): translate *from fear of this.* **relinquēbātur** etc., *the one course left was for Caesar to forbid* etc.

12, 13. et hostibus nocērētur, *and damage the enemy.* **hostibus:** for case cf. **3,** 16; IV, **27,** 12; III, **14,** 3; II, **16,** 6. **tantum** etc.: the foot soldiers could ravage only a comparatively narrow strip on either side of the line of march.

1, 2. eārum regiōnum, *of this section of the country,* that had united under the command of Cassivellaunus.

3, 4. ad eum . . . vēnerat: for the fact see IV, **21,** 10.

5. ipse: Mandubracius.

6. pollicentur, etc: this result was brought about by Caesar through the instrumentality of Mandubracius, who was with him. Diplomacy won Caesar many a victory.

8, 9. quī praesit, imperium obtineat: the first term (*praesit*) refers to the submission of others (as Cassivellaunus); the second (*imperium obtineat*) to absolutely in-

imperiumque obtineat. Hīs Caesar imperat obsidēs quadrāgintā frūmentumque exercituī Mandubraciumque ad eōs mittit. Illī imperāta celeriter fēcērunt, obsidēs ad numerum frūmentumque mīsērunt.

Other tribes submit. Caesar takes the stronghold of Cassivellaunus.

21. Trinobantibus dēfēnsīs atque omnī mīlitum iniūriā prohibitīs Cenimāgnī, Segontiacī, Ancalitēs, Bibrocī, Cassī legātiōnibus mīssīs sēsē Caesarī dēdunt. Ab hīs cōgnōscit nōn longē ex eō locō oppidum Cassivellaunī abesse silvīs palūdibusque mūnītum, quō satis māgnus hominum pecorisque numerus convēnerit. Oppidum autem Britannī vocant, cum silvās impedītās vāllō atque fossā mūniērunt, quō incursiōnis hostium vītandae causā convenīre cōnsuērunt. Eō proficīscitur cum legiōnibus: locum reperit ēgregiē nātūrā atque opere mūnītum, tamen hunc duābus ex partibus oppūgnāre contendit. Hostēs paulisper morātī mīlitum nostrōrum impetum nōn tulērunt sēsēque aliā ex parte oppidī ēiēcērunt. Māgnus ibi numerus pecoris repertus multīque in fugā sunt comprehēnsī atque interfectī.

After a third attempt, Cassivellaunus submits.

22. Dum haec in hīs locīs geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare suprā

2, 3. Cenimāgnī, -ōrum; 1 **Segontiacī, -ōrum,** 1 **Ancalitēs, -um;** 1 **Bibrocī, -ōrum;** 1 **Cassī, -ōrum;** 1 *tribes of Southeast Britain.* See map.

---

dependent authority. For the Subj. cf. **10,** 5; IV, **11,** 17; III, **11,** 11; II, **11,** 9; I, **15,** 5.

1. **dēfēnsīs:** against Cassivellaunus.

4, 5. **eō locō:** i. e., where the envoys met Caesar; perhaps at the crossing of the Thames. **oppidum Cassivellaunī:** identified by some authorities with the town St. Albans.

6. **oppidum** etc., *the Britons call* (*this*) *a town whenever* etc. The *oppidum* was intended for a place of refuge in case of attack—not for a permanent abode, as were the *oppida* of the Gauls. "They have groves instead of cities; for when they have enclosed a great circle of felled trees, they build huts for themselves and make folds for their herds, not indeed for any length of time" (Strabo).

2. **suprā:** in **14,** 2.

dēmōnstrāvimus, quibus regiōnibus quattuor rēgēs praeerant, Cingetorīx, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segovax, nūntiōs mittit atque hīs imperat, utī coāctīs omnibus cōpiīs castra nāvālia dē imprōvīsō adoriantur atque oppūgnent. Iī cum ad castra vēnissent, nostrī ēruptiōne factā multīs eōrum interfectīs, captō etiam nōbilī duce Lugotorīge suōs incolumēs redūxērunt. Cassivellaunus hōc proeliō nūntiātō, tot dētrīmentīs acceptīs, vāstātīs fīnibus, māximē etiam permōtus dēfectiōne cīvitātum, lēgātōs per Atrebatem Commium dē dēditiōne ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar cum cōnstituisset hiemāre in continentī prōpter repentīnōs Galliae mōtūs, neque multum aestātis superesset atque id facile extrahī posse intellegeret, obsidēs imperat et quid in annōs singulōs vēctigālis populō Rōmānō Britannia penderet, cōnstituit; interdīcit atque im-

4. **Cingetorīx, -īgis**; * **Carvilius, -ī**; 1 **Taximagulus, -ī**; 1 **Segovax (onax), -actis**: 1 *British princes ruling in Kent.*

8. **Lugotorīx, -īgis**, M., *a British chieftain*). 1

9. **dētrīmentum, -ī** [dē-terō, rub *or* wear out], N., loss, damage, injury; defeat. *

14. **ex-trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractus** [trahō, drag], *a.*, drag *or* draw out, waste *or* fritter away. 1

16. **pendō, -ere, pependī, pēnsus**, *a.*, weigh, weigh out; pay, pay out (*as money was weighed in payment.*)

inter-dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus [dīcō, say], *a.*, *say among other things*; intervene *by an order;* prohibit, exclude, interdict. *

---

3. **regiōnibus**: "The territory of Cantium we may suppose was divided into four parts, and each had a little king" (Long).

4. **Cingetorīx**: a different king from the Treveran: cf. **3** and **4**.

5. **castra nāvālia**: see on **11,** 10.

6. **dē imprōvīsō**; as in II, **3**, 1.

10, 11. **dēfectiōne cīvitātum**: see **21**, 2, 3. **Commium**: see IV, **27**, 4.

12. **in continentī**: i. e., in Gaul instead of Italy: see Int. 34.

13. **repentīnōs mōtūs**: Labienus doubtless kept Caesar fully informed of the state of Gaul.

14. **superesset**: it was now about the last of August. **atque id** etc., *and that this time* (if further delay was made) *could easily be* etc.

15. **quid . . . vēctīgālis**, *how much tribute each year*: an empty form, since no troops were left to enforce the collection and tribute.

16. **interdīcit atque imperat**: when two verbs are synonymous (or nearly so) one may be rendered by an adv., *he expressly forbids.*

perat Cassivellaunō, nē Mandubraciō neu Trinobantibus noceat.

Caesar returns to Gaul.

23. Obsidibus acceptīs exercitum redūcit ad mare, nāvēs invenit refectās. Hīs dēductīs, quod et captīvōrum māgnum numerum habēbat, et nōnnūllae tempestāte dēperierant nāvēs, duōbus commeātibus exercitum reportāre īnstituit. Āc sīc accidit, utī ex tantō nāvium numerō tot nāvigātiōnibus neque hōc neque superiōre annō ūlla omnīnō nāvis, quae mīlitēs portāret, dēsiderārētur; at ex iīs, quae inānēs ex continentī ad eum remitterentur priōris commeātūs expositīs militibus et quās posteā Labiēnus faciendās cūrāverat numerō LX, perpaucae locum caperent, reliquae ferē omnēs rēicerentur. Quās cum aliquamdiū Caesar frūstrā exspectāsset, nē annī tempore ā nāvigātiōne exclūderētur, quod aequinoctium suberat, necessāriō angustius mīlitēs collocāvit āc summā tranquillitāte cōnsecūtā, secundā initā cum solvisset vigiliā, prīmā lūce terram attigit omnēsque incolumēs nāvēs perdūxit.

4. **dē-pereō, -īre, -iī, itūrus,** *n.*, go to ruin, perish; be lost *or* undone. 2

8. **inānis, -e,** empty, void; abandoned, worthless; vain. 2

11. **aliquamdiū** [*fem. acc. of* **aliquis** (sc. **partem**) + **diū**, a long time], for a while, for some time, awhile. 2

12. **exclūdō, -ere, clūsī, clūsus** [**claudō**, shut], *a.*, shut out, cut off; hinder, prevent. 4

13. **angustē [angustus],** *adv.*, within a narrow space, closely. 1

---

2. **nāvēs refectās:** see **10,** 6–9 and **11,** 4 ff.

4. **commeātibus:** here in the original sense of *relays* or *trips.*

5, 6. **tot nāvigātiōnibus:** a concessive abl. abs., *in spite of so many voyages.*

7. **portāret:** for mode cf. *vēndant* IV, **2,** 2; III, **4,** 2; II, **5,** 16; I, **6,** 2.

9. **faciendās:** for constr. cf. IV, **22,** 21; III, **11,** 11; I, **19,** 4.

10. **numerō,** *to the number of.* **locum caperent,** *reached the land.*

12. **annī tempore:** it was now near the end of September. Caesar had been in Britain nearly three months.

13. **angustius,** *in rather close quarters.*

14, 15. **secundā vigiliā, prīmā lūce:** the voyage, therefore, occupied about nine hours.



NAVAL SCENE.

Caesar distributes his army among several tribes for the winter.

24. Subductīs nāvibus conciliōque Gallōrum Samarobrīvae perāctō, quod eō annō frūmentum in Galliā propter siccitātēs angustius prōvēnerat, coāctus est aliter āc superiōribus annīs exercitum in hībernīs collocāre legiōnēsque in plūrēs cīvitātēs distribuere. Ex quibus ūnam in Morinōs dūcendam C. Fabiō lēgātō dedit, alteram in Nerviōs Q. Cicerōnī, tertiam in Esubiōs L. Rosciō; quartam in Rēmīs cum T. Labiēnō in cōnfīniō Trēverōrum hiemāre iussit; trēs in Bellovacīs collocāvit; hīs M. Crassum quaestōrem et L. Munātium Plancum et C. Trebōnium lēgātōs praeficit. Unam legiōnem, quam proximē trāns Padum cōnscrīpserat, et cohortēs quīnque in Eburōnēs, quōrum pars māxima est inter Mosam āc Rhēnum, quī sub imperiō Ambiorigis et Catuvolcī erant, mīsit. Hīs mīlitibus Q. Titurium Sabīnum et L. Aurunculēium Cottam lēgātōs praeesse iussit. Ad hunc modum distribūtīs legiōnibus facillimē inopiae frūmentāriae sēsē mederī posse exīstimāvit. Atque hārum tamen omnium legiōnum hīberna, praeter eam, quam L. Rosciō in pācātissimam et quiētissimam partem dūcendam dederat, mīlibus passuum centum continēbantur. Ipse intereā, quoad legiōnēs collocātās mūnītaque hīberna cōgnōvisset, in Galliā morārī cōnstituit.

The Carnutes slay the friendly chief Tasgetius. Caesar's measures for their punishment.

25. Erat in Carnutibus summō locō nātus Tasgetius, cūius māiōrēs in suā cīvitāte rēgnum obtinuerant. Huīc Caesar prō ēius virtūte atque in sē benevolentiā, quod in omnibus bellīs singulārī ēius operā fuerat ūsus, māiōrum locum restituerat. Tertium iam hunc annum rēgnantem inimīcī multīs palam ex cīvitāte auctōribus interfēcērunt. Dēfertur ea rēs ad Caesarem. Ille veritus, quod ad plūrēs pertinēbat, nē cīvitās eōrum impulsū dēficeret, L. Plancum cum legiōne ex Belgiō celeriter in Car-

nūtēs proficīscī iubet ibique hiemāre, quōrumque operā cōgnōverat Tasgetium interfectum, hōs comprehēnsōs ad sē mittere. Interim ab omnibus [lēgātīs quaestōribusque], quibus legiōnēs trādiderat, certior factus est in hīberna perventum locumque [hībernīs] esse mūnītum.

Revolt of the Eburones under Ambiorix. Defeated, in an assault upon the camp of Sabinus, they demand a conference.

26. Diēbus circiter XV, quibus in hīberna ventum est, initium repentīnī tumultūs āc dēfectiōnis ortum est ab Ambiorige et Catuvolcō, quī cum ad fīnēs rēgnī suī Sabīnō Cottaeque praestō fuissent frūmentumque in hīberna comportāvissent, Indutiomarī Trēverī nūntiīs impulsī suōs concitāvērunt subitōque oppressīs līgnātōribus māgnā manū ad castrā oppūgnātum vēnērunt. Cum celeriter nostrī arma cēpissent vāllumque adscendissent atque ūnā ex parte Hispānīs equitibus ēmīssīs equestrī proeliō superiōrēs fuissent, dēspērātā rē hostēs suōs ab oppūgnātiōne redūxērunt. Tum suō mōre conclāmāvērunt, utī aliquī ex nostrīs ad colloquium prōdīret: habēre sēsē, quae dē rē commūnī dīcere vellent, quibus rēbus contrōversiās minuī posse spērārent.

In the conference Ambiorix craftily advises the Romans to withdraw to a place of safety.

27. Mittitur ad eōs colloquendī causā C. Arpinēius equēs Rōmānus, familiāris Q. Titurī, et Q. Iūnius ex Hispāniā quīdam, quī iam ante mīssū Caesaris ad Ambiorigem ventitāre cōnsuērat; apud quōs Ambiorix ad hunc modum locūtus est: Sēsē prō Caesaris in sē beneficiīs plūrimum eī cōnfitērī debēre, quod ēius operā stīpendiō līberātus esset, quod Aduātucīs, fīnitimīs suīs, pendere cōnsuēsset, quodque eī et fīlius et frātris fīlius ab Caesare remīssī essent, quōs Aduātucī obsidum numerō mīssōs apud sē in servitūte et catēnīs tenuissent; neque id, quod fēcerit dē oppūgnātiōne castrōrum, aut iūdiciō aut voluntāte suā fēcisse, sed coāctū cīvitātis, suaque

esse ēiusmodī imperia, ut nōn minus habēret iūris in sē multitūdō, quam ipse in multitūdinem. Cīvitātī porrō hanc fuisse bellī causam, quod repentīnae Gallōrum coniūrātiōnī resistere nōn potuerit. Id sē facile ex humilitāte suā probāre posse, quod nōn adeō sit imperītus rērum, ut suīs cōpiīs populum Rōmānum superārī posse cōnfīdat. Sed esse Galliae commūne cōnsilium: omnibus hībernīs Caesaris oppūgnandīs hunc esse dictum diem, nē qua legiō alterae legiōnī subsidiō venīre posset. Nōn facile Gallōs Gallīs negāre potuisse, praesertim cum dē recuperandā commūnī lībertāte cōnsilium initum vidērētur. Quibus quoniam prō pietāte satisfēcerit, habēre nunc sē ratiōnem officiī prō beneficiīs Caesaris: monēre, orāre Titurium prō hospitiō, ut suae āc mīlitum salūtī cōnsulat. Māgnam manum Germānōrum conductam Rhēnum trānsīsse; hanc affore bīduō. Ipsōrum essē cōnsilium, velintne prius, quam fīnitimī sentiant, ēductōs ex hībernīs mīlitēs aut ad Cicerōnem aut ad Labiēnum dēdūcere, quōrum alter mīlia passuum circiter quīnquāgintā, alter paulō amplius ab iīs absit. Illud sē pollicērī et iūreiūrandō cōnfīrmāre, tūtum iter per fīnēs datūrum. Quod cum faciat, et cīvitātī sēsē cōnsulere, quod hībernīs levētur, et Caesarī prō ēius meritīs grātiam referre. Hāc orātiōne habitā discēdit Ambiorix.

Roman officers discuss the proposal of Ambiorix.

28. Arpinēius et Iūnius, quae audiērunt, ad lēgātōs dēferunt. Illī repentīna rē perturbātī, etsī ab hoste ea dīcēbantur, tamen nōn neglegenda exīstimābant, māximēque hāc rē permovēbantur, quod cīvitātem īgnōbilem atque humilem Eburōnum suā sponte populō Rōmānō bellum facere ausam vix erat crēdendum. Itaque ad cōnsilium rem dēferunt, māgnaque inter eōs exsistit contrōversia. L. Aurunculēius complūrēsque tribūnī mīlitum

et prīmōrum ōrdinum centuriōnēs nihil temerē agendum neque ex hībernīs iniūssū Caesaris discēdendum exīstimābant; quantāsvis cōpiās Germānōrum sustinērī posse mūnītīs hībernīs docēbant: rem esse testimōniō, quod prīmum hostium impetum multīs ūltrō vulneribus illātīs fortissimē sustinuerint; rē frūmentāriā nōn premī; intereā et ex proximīs hībernīs et ā Caesare conventūra subsidia; postrēmō quid esse levius aut turpius, quam auctōre hoste dē summīs rēbus capere cōnsilium?

Sabinus favors the suggestion.

29. Contrā ea Titurius sērō factūrōs clāmitābat, cum māiōrēs manūs hostium adiūnctīs Germānīs convēnissent, aut cum aliquid calamitātis in proximīs hībernīs esset acceptum. Brevem cōnsulendī esse occāsiōnem. Caesarem arbitrārī profectum in Ītaliam; neque aliter Carnūtēs interficiendī Tasgetiī cōnsilium fuisse captūrōs, neque Eburōnēs, sī ille adesset, tantā contemptiōne nostrī ad castra ventūrōs esse. Nōn hostem auctōrem, sed rem spectāre: subesse Rhēnum; māgnō esse Germānīs dolōrī Ariovistī mortem et superiōrēs nostrās vīctōriās; ārdēre Galliam tot contumēliīs acceptīs sub populī Rōmānī imperium redāctam, superiōre glōriā reī mīlitāris exstinctā. Postrēmō quis hōc sibi persuādēret, sine certā spē Ambiorigem ad ēius modī cōnsilium dēscendisse? Suam sententiam in utramque partem esse tūtam: sī nihil esset dūrius, nūllō cum perīculō ad proximam legiōnem perventūrōs; sī Gallia omnis cum Germānīs cōnsentīret, ūnam esse in celeritāte positam salūtem. Cottae quidem atque eōrum, quī dissentīrent, cōnsilium quem habēre exitum? in quō sī nōn praesēns perīculum, at certe longīnquā obsidiōne famēs esset timenda.

Cotta opposes.

30. Hāc in utramque partem disputātiōne habitā, cum ā Cottā prīmīsque ōrdinibus ācriter resisterētur,

'Vincīte', inquit, 'sī ita vultis', Sabīnus, et id clāriōre vōce, ut māgna pars mīlitum exaudīret; 'neque is sum', inquit, 'quī gravissimē ex vōbīs mortis perīculō terrear; hī sapient; sī gravius quid acciderit, abs tē ratiōnem reposcent, quī, sī per tē liceat, perendinō diē cum proximīs hībernīs coniūnctī commūnem cum reliquīs bellī cāsum sustineant, nōn rēiectī et relēgātī longē ā cēterīs aut ferrō aut famē intereant.'

Sabinus prevails and the Romans prepare to leave camp.

31. Cōnsurgitur ex cōnsiliō; comprehendunt utrumque et ōrant, nē suā dissēnsiōne et pertināciā rem in summum perīculum dēdūcant: facilem esse rem, seu maneant, seu proficīscantur, sī modo ūnum omnēs sentiant āc probent; contrā in dissēnsiōne nūllam sē salūtem perspicere. Rēs disputātiōne ad mediam noctem perdūcitur. Tandem dat Cotta permōtus manūs: superat sententia Sabīnī. Prōnūntiātur prīmā lūce itūrōs. Cōnsūmitur vigiliīs reliqua pars noctis, cum sua quisque mīles circumspiceret, quid sēcum portāre posset, quid ex īnstrūmentō hībernōrum relinquere cōgerētur. Omnia excōgitantur, quārē nec sine perīculō maneātur et languōre mīlitum et vigiliīs perīculum augeātur. Prīmā lūce sīc ex castrīs proficīscuntur, ut quibus esset persuāsum, nōn ab hoste, sed ab homine amīcissimō [Ambiorige] cōnsilium datum, longissimō āgmine māximīsque impedīmentīs.

The Eburones attack them after their departure.

32. At hostēs, posteāquam ex nocturnō fremitū vigiliīsque dē profectiōne eōrum sēnsērunt, collocātīs īnsidiīs bipertītō in silvīs oportūnō atque occultō locō ā mīlibus passuum circiter duōbus Rōmānōrum adventum exspectābant, et cum sē māior pars āgminis in māgnam convallem dēmīsisset, ex utrāque parte ēius vallīs subitō sē ostendērunt novissimōsque premere et prīmōs prohibēre ascēnsū atque inīquissimō nostrīs locō proelium committere coepērunt.

Unfortunate management of the Roman leaders.

33. Tum dēmum Titurius, quī nihil ante prōvīdisset, trepidāre et concursāre cohortēsque dispōnere, haec tamen ipsa timidē atque ut eum omnia dēficere vidērentur; quod plērumque iīs accidere cōnsuēvit, quī in ipsō negōtiō cōnsilium capere cōguntur. At Cotta, quī cōgitāsset, haec posse in itinere accidere, atque ob eam causam profectiōnis auctor nōn fuisset, nūllā in rē commūnī salūtī deerat: et in appellandīs cohortandīsque mīlitibus imperātōris et in pūgnā mīlitis officia praestābat. Cum propter longitūdinem āgminis minus facile omnia per sē obīre et, quid quōque locō faciendum esset, prōvidēre possent, iussērunt prōnūntiāre, ut impedīmenta relinquerent atque in orbem cōnsisterent. Quod cōnsilium etsī in ēius modī cāsū reprehendendum nōn est, tamen incommodē accidit: nam et nostrīs mīlitibus spem minuit et hostēs ad pūgnam alacriōrēs effēcit, quod nōn sine summō timōre et dēspērātiōne id factum vidēbātur. Praetereā accidit, quod fierī necesse erat, ut vulgō mīlitēs ab sīgnīs discēderent, quaeque quisque eōrum cārissima habēret, ab impedīmentīs petere atque arripere properāret, clāmōre et flētū omnia complērentur.

Measures taken by the Eburones.

34. At barbarīs cōnsilium nōn dēfuit. Nam dūcēs eōrum tōtā aciē prōnūntiārī iussērunt, nē quis ab locō discēderet: illōrum esse praedam atque illīs reservārī, quaecumque Rōmānī relīquissent: proinde omnia in vīctōriā posita exīstimārent. Erant et virtūte et studiō pūgnandī parēs nostrī; tametsī ab dūce et ā fōrtūnā dēserēbantur, tamen omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnēbant, et quotiēns quaeque cohors prōcurrerat, ab eā parte māgnus numerus hostium cadēbat. Quā rē animadversā Ambiorix prōnūntiārī iubet, ut procul tēla cōniciant neu propius accēdant et, quam in partem Rōmānī impetum fēcerint, cēdant (levitāte armō-

rum et cotīdiānā exercitātiōne nihil iīs nocērī posse), rūrsus sē ad sīgna recipientēs īnsequantur.

Their disastrous effect. The Romans bravely resist.

35. Quō praeceptō ab iīs dīligentissimē observātō, cum quaepiam cohors ex orbe excesserat atque impetum fēcerat, hostēs vēlōcissimē refugiēbant. Interim eam partem nūdārī necesse erat et ab latere apertō tēla recipī. Rūrsus, cum in eum locum, unde erant ēgressī, revertī coeperant, et ab iīs, quī cesserant, et ab iīs, quī proximī steterant, circumveniēbantur; sīn autem locum tenēre vellent, nec virtūtī locus relinquēbātur, neque ab tantā multitūdine cōniecta tēla cōnfertī vītāre poterant. Tamen tot incommodīs cōnflīctātī, multīs vulneribus acceptīs resistēbant et māgnā parte diēī cōnsūmptā, cum ā prīmā lūce ad hōram octāvam pūgnārētur, nihil quod ipsīs esset indīgnum, committēbant. Tum T. Balventiō, quī superiōre annō prīmum pīlum dūxerat, virō fortī et māgnae auctōritātis, utrumque femur trāgulā trāicitur; Q. Lūcānius, ēiusdem ōrdinis, fortissimē pūgnāns, dum circumventō fīliō subvenit, interficitur: L. Cotta lēgātus omnēs cohortēs ōrdinēsque adhortāns in adversum ōs fundā vulnerātūr.

Sabinus desires to seek the protection of Ambiorix. Cotta opposes.

36. Hīs rēbus permōtus Q. Titurius, cum procul Ambiorigem suōs cohortantem cōnspēxisset, interpretem suum Cn. Pompēium ad eum mittit rogātum, ut sibi mīlitibusque parcat. Ille appellātus respondit: Si velit sēcum colloquī, licēre; sperāre ā multitūdine impetrārī posse, quod ad mīlitum salūtem pertineat; ipsī vērō nihil nocitum īrī, inque eam rem sē suam fidem interpōnere. Ille cum Cottā sauciō commūnicat, sī videātur, pūgnā ut excēdant et cum Ambiorige ūnā colloquantur: spērāre ab eō dē suā āc mīlitum salūte impetrārī posse. Cotta sē ad armātum hostem itūrum negat atque in eō persevērat.

While parleying Sabinus is slain. The Roman army is almost completely destroyed.

37. Sabīnus quōs in praesentiā tribūnōs mīlitum circum sē habēbat et prīmōrum ōrdinum centuriōnēs sē sequī iubet et, cum propius Ambiorigem accessisset, iūssus arma abicere imperātum facit suīsque, ut idem faciant, imperat. Interim, dum dē condiciōnibus inter sē agunt longiorque cōnsultō ab Ambiorige īnstituitur sermō, paulātim circumventus interficitur. Tum vērō suō mōre vīctōriam conclāmant atque ululātum tollunt impetūque in nostrōs factō ōrdinēs perturbant. Ibi L. Cotta pūgnāns interficitur cum māximā parte mīlitum. Reliquī sē in castra recipiunt, unde erant ēgressī. Ex quibus L. Petrosidius aquilifer, cum māgnā multitūdine hostium premerētur aquilam intrā vāllum prōiēcit, ipse prō castrīs fortissimē pūgnāns occīditur. Illī aegrē ad noctem oppūgnātiōnem sustinent; noctū ad ūnum omnēs dēspērātā salūte sē ipsī interficiunt. Paucī ex proeliō ēlapsī incertīs itineribus per silvās ad T. Labiēnum lēgātum in hīberna perveniunt atque eum dē rēbus gestīs certiōrem faciunt.

Ambiorix incites the Aduatuci and Nervii to arms.

38. Hāc vīctōriā sublātus Ambiorix statim cum equitātū in Aduātucōs, quī erant ēius rēgnō fīnitumī, proficīscitur; neque noctem neque diem intermittit peditātumque sēsē subsequī iubet. Rē dēmōnstrātā Aduātucīsque concitātīs, posterō diē in Nerviōs pervenit hortāturque, nē suī in perpetuum līberandī atque ulcīscendī Rōmānōs prō iīs, quās accēperint, iniūriīs occāsiōnem dīmittant: interfectōs esse lēgātōs duōs māgnamque partem exercitūs interīsse dēmōnstrat; nihil esse negōtiī, subitō oppressam legiōnem, quae cum Cicerōne hiemet, interficī; sē ad eam rem profitētur adiutōrem. Facile hāc ōrātiōne Nerviīs persuādet.

Other tribes unite: they attack Cicero's camp.

39. Itaque cōnfestim dīmīssīs nūntiīs ad Ceutrōnēs, Grudiōs, Levācōs, Pleumoxiōs, Geidumnōs,

quī omnēs sub eōrum imperiō sunt, quam māximās manūs possunt, cōgunt et dē imprōvīsō ad Cicerōnis hīberna advolant, nōndum ad eum fāmā dē Titūriī morte perlātā. Huīc quoque accidit, quod fuit necesse, ut nōnnūllī mīlitēs, quī līgnātiōnis mūnītiōnisque causā in silvās discessissent, repentīnō equitum adventū interciperentur. Hīs circumventīs māgnā manū Eburōnēs, Nerviī, Aduātucī atque hōrum omnium sociī et clientēs legiōnem oppūgnāre incipiunt. Nostrī celeriter ad arma concurrunt, vāllum cōnscendunt. Aegrē is diēs sustentātur, quod omnem spem hostēs in celeritāte pōnēbant atque hanc adeptī vīctōriam in perpetuum sē fore vīctōrēs cōnfidēbant.

Cicero writes to Caesar. Stout resistance of the Romans.

40. Mittuntur ad Caesarem cōnfestim ā Cicerōne litterae māgnīs prōpositīs praemiīs, sī pertulissent: obsessīs omnibus viīs mīssī intercipiuntur. Noctū ex māteriā, quam mūnītiōnis causā comportāverant, turrēs admodum CXX excitantur incrēdibilī celeritāte; quae deesse operī vidēbantur, perficiuntur. Hostēs posterō diē multō māiōribus coāctis cōpiīs castra oppūgnant, fossam complent. Eādem ratiōne, quā prīdiē, ab nostrīs resistitur. Hōc idem reliquīs deinceps fit diēbus. Nūlla pars nocturnī temporis ad labōrem intermittitur; nōn aegrīs, nōn vulnerātīs facultās quiētis datur. Quaecumque ad proximī diēī oppūgnātiōnem opus sunt, noctū comparantur; multae praeūstae sudēs, māgnus murālium pīlōrum numerus īnstituitur; turrēs contabulantur, pinnae lōrīcaeque ex crātibus attexuntur. Ipse Cicerō, cum tenuissimā valētūdine esset, nē nocturnum quidem sibi tempus ad quiētem relinquēbat, ut ūltrō mīlitum concursū āc vōcibus sibi parcere cōgerētur.

The Nervii try to allure Cicero from the camp. He refuses.

41. Tunc ducēs prīncipēsque Nerviōrum, quī aliquem sermōnis aditum causamque amīcitiae cum Cicerōne habēbant, colloquī sēsē velle dīcunt.

Factā potestāte, eadem, quae Ambiorix cum Tituriō ēgerat, commemorant: omnem esse in armīs Galliam; Germānōs Rhēnum trānsīsse; Caesaris reliquōrumque hīberna oppūgnārī. Addunt etiam dē Sabīnī morte; Ambiorigem ostentant fideī faciundae causā. Errāre eōs dīcunt, sī quicquam ab hīs praesidiī spērent, quī suīs rēbus diffidant; sēsē tamen hōc esse in Cicerōnem populumque Rōmānum animō, ut nihil nisi hīberna recūsent atque hanc inveterāscere cōnsuētūdinem nōlint; licēre illīs incolumibus per sē ex hībernīs discēdere et, quāscumque in partēs velint, sine metū proficīscī. Cicerō ad haec ūnum modo respondit: nōn esse cōnsuētūdinem populī Rōmānī accipere ab hoste armātō condiciōnem: sī ab armīs discēdere velint, sē adiūtōre ūtantur lēgātōsque ad Caesarem mittant; spērāre prō ēius iūstitiā, quae petierint, impetrātūrōs.

The Nervii invest Cicero's camp.

42. Ab hāc spē repulsī Nerviī vāllō pedum IX et fossā pedum XV hīberna cingunt. Haec et superiōrum annōrum cōnsuētūdine ā nōbis cōgnōverant et, quōs dē exercitū habēbant captīvōs, ab hīs docēbantur, sed nūllā ferrāmentōrum cōpiā, quae esset ad hunc ūsum idōnea, gladiīs cēspitēs circumcīdere, manibus sagulīsque terram exhaurīre cōgēbantur. Quā quidem ex rē hominum multitūdō cōgnōscī potuit: nam minus hōrīs tribus mīlium pedum XV in circuitū mūnītiōnem perfēcērunt, reliquīsque diēbus turrēs ad altitūdinem vāllī, falcēs testūdinēsque, quās īdem captīvī docuerant, parāre āc facere coepērunt.

They fire the Roman barracks.

43. Septimō oppūgnātiōnis diē māximō coortō ventō ferventēs fūsilī ex argillā glandēs fundīs et fervefacta iacula in casās, quae mōre Gallicō strāmentīs erant tēctae, iacere coepērunt. Hae celeriter īgnem comprehendērunt et ventī māgnitūdine in omnem locum castrō-

rum distulērunt. Hostēs māximō clāmōre sīcutī partā iam atque explōrātā vīctōriā turrēs testūdinēsque agere et scālīs vāllum ascendere coepērunt. At tanta mīlitum virtūs atque ea praesentia animī fuit, ut, cum undique flammā torrērentur māximāque tēlōrum multitūdine premerentur suaque omnia impedīmenta atque omnēs fōrtūnās cōnflagrāre intellegerent, nōn modo dēmigrandī causā dē vāllō dēcēderet nēmō, sed paene nē respiceret quidem quisquam, āc tum omnēs acerrimē fortissimēque pūgnārent. Hīc diēs nostrīs longē gravissimus fuit; sed tamen hunc habuit ēventum, ut eō diē māximus numerus hostium vulnerārētur atque interficerētur, ut sē sub ipsō vāllō cōnstīpāverant recessumque prīmīs ūltimī nōn dabant. Paulum quidem intermīssā flammā et quōdam locō turrī adāctā et contingente vāllum tertiae cohortis centuriōnēs ex eō, quō stābant, locō recessērunt suōsque omnēs remōvērunt, nūtū vōcibusque hostēs, sī introīre vellent, vocāre coepērunt; quōrum prōgredī ausus est nēmō. Tum ex omnī parte lapidibus cōniectīs dēturbātī, turrisque succēnsa est.

The rival exploits of two centurions.

44. Erant in eā legiōne fortissimī virī, centuriōnēs, quī prīmīs ōrdinibus appropīnquārent, T. Puliō et L. Vorēnus. Hī perpetuās inter sē contrōversiās habēbant, quīnam anteferrētur, omnibusque annīs dē locīs summīs simultātibus contendēbant. Ex hīs Puliō, cum ācerrimē ad mūnītiōnēs pūgnārētur, ‘Quid dubitās,’ inquit, ‘Vorēne? aut quem locum tuae probandae virtūtis exspectās? hīc diēs dē nostrīs contrōversiīs iūdicābit.’ Haec cum dīxisset, prōcēdit extrā mūnītiōnēs quaque pars hostium cōnfertissima est vīsa, irrumpit. Nē Vorēnus quidem sēsē vāllō continet, sed omnium veritus exīstimātiōnem subsequitur. Tum mediocrī spatiō relictō Puliō pīlum in hostēs immittit

atque ūnum ex multitūdine prōcurrentem trāicit; quō percussō et exanimātō hunc scūtīs prōtegunt, in hostem tēla ūniversī cōniciunt neque dant prōgrediendī facultātem. Trānsfīgitur scūtum Puliōnī et verūtum in balteō dēfīgitur. Avertit hīc cāsus vāgīnam et gladium ēdūcere cōnantī dextram morātur manum, impedītumque hostēs circumsistunt. Succurrit inimīcus illī Vorēnus et laborantī subvenit. Ad hunc sē cōnfestim ā Puliōne omnis multitūdō convertit: illum verūtō arbitrantur occīsum. Gladiō comminus rem gerit Vorēnus atque ūnō interfectō reliquōs paulum prōpellit; dum cupidius īnstat, in locum dēlātus īnferiōrem concidit. Huīc rūrsus circumventō fert subsidium Puliō, atque ambō incolumēs complūribus interfectīs summā cum laude sēsē intrā mūnītiōnēs recipiunt. Sīc fōrtūna in contentiōne et certāmine utrumque versāvit, ut alter alterī inimīcus auxiliō salūtīque esset neque dīiūdicārī posset, uter utrī virtūte anteferendus vidērētur.

Cicero informs Caesar of his peril.

45. Quantō erat in diēs gravior atque asperior oppūgnātiō, et māximē quod māgnā parte mīlitum cōnfectā vulneribus rēs ad paucitātem dēfēnsōrum pervēnerat, tantō crēbriōrēs litterae nūntiīque ad Caesarem mittēbantur; quōrum pars dēprehēnsa in cōnspectū nostrōrum mīlitum cum cruciātū necābātur. Erat ūnus intus Nervius nōmine Verticō, locō nātus honestō, quī ā prīmā obsidiōne ad Cicerōnem perfūgerat summamque eī fidem praestiterat. Hīc servō spē lībertātis māgnīsque persuādet praemiīs, ut litterās ad Caesarem dēferat. Hās ille in iaculō illigātās effert et Gallus inter Gallōs sine ullā suspiciōne versātus ad Caesarem pervenit. Ab eō dē perīculīs Cicerōnis legiōnisque cōgnōscitur.

Caesar directs his legates to relieve Cicero.

46. Caesar accēptīs litterīs hōrā circiter ūndecimā diēī statim nūntium in Bellovacōs ad M.

Crassum quaestōrem mittit, cūius hīberna aberant ab eō mīlia passuum XXV; iubet mediā nocte legiōnem proficīscī celeriterque ad sē venīre. Exit cum nūntiō Crassus. Alterum ad C. Fabium lēgātum mittit, ut in Atrebatum fīnēs legiōnem addūcat, quā sibi iter faciendum sciēbat. Scrībit Labiēnō, sī reī pūblicae commodō facere posset, cum legiōne ad fīnēs Nerviōrum veniat. Reliquam partem exercitūs, quod paulō aberat longius, nōn putat exspectandum; equitēs circiter quadringentōs ex proximīs hībernīs cōgit.

Crassus and Fabius respond.

47. Hōrā circiter tertiā ab antecursōribus dē Crassī adventū certior factus eō diē mīlia passuum XX prōcēdit. Crassum Samarobrīvae praeficit legiōnemque eī attribuit, quod ibi impedīmenta exercitūs, obsidēs cīvitātum, litterās pūblicās frūmentumque omne, quod eō tolerandae hiemis causā dēvēxerat, relinquēbat. Fabius, ut imperātum erat, nōn ita multum morātus in itinere cum legiōne occurrit. Labiēnus interitū Sabīnī et caede cohortium cōgnitā, cum omnēs ad eum Trēverōrum cōpiae vēnissent, veritus nē sī ex hībernīs fugae similem profectiōnem fēcisset, hostium impetum sustinēre nōn posset, praesertim quōs recentī vīctōriā efferrī scīret, litterās Caesarī remittit, quantō cum perīculō legiōnem ex hībernīs ēductūrus esset, rem gestam in Eburōnibus perscrībit, docet omnēs equitātūs peditātūsque cōpias Trēverōrum tria mīlia passuum longē ā suīs castrīs cōnsēdisse.

Caesar informs Cicero of coming relief.

48. Caesar cōnsiliō ēius probātō, etsī opīniōne trium legiōnum dēiectūs ad duās redierat, tamen ūnum commūnis salūtis auxilium in celeritāte pōnēbat. Venit māgnīs itineribus in Nerviōrum fīnēs. Ibi ex captīvīs cōgnōscit, quae apud Cicerōnem gerantur quantōque in perīculō rēs sit. Tum cuīdam ex equitibus Gallīs māgnīs praemiīs persuādet, utī ad Cicerōnem epistolam dēferat. Hanc Grae-

eīs cōnscrīptam litterīs mittit, nē interceptā epistolā nostra ab hostibus cōnsilia cōgnōscantur. Sī adīre nōn possit, monet, ut trāgulam cum epistulā ad ammentum deligātā intrā mūnītiōnem castrōrum abiciat. In litterīs scrībit, sē cum legiōnibus profectum celeriter affore; hortātur, ut prīstinam virtūtem retineat. Gallus perīculum veritus, ut erat praeceptum, trāgulam mittit. Haec cāsū ad turrim adhaesit neque ab nostrīs bīduō animadversa tertiō diē ā quōdam mīlite cōnspicitur, dēmpta ad Cicerōnem dēfertur. Ille perlēctam in conventū mīlitum recitat māximāque omnēs laetitiā afficit. Tum fūmī incendiōrum procul vidēbantur, quae rēs omnem dubitātiōnem adventūs legiōnum expulit.

The Gauls quit the siege and march against Caesar.

49. Gallī rē cōgnitā per explōrātōrēs obsidiōnem relinquunt, ad Caesarem omnibus cōpiīs contendunt. Haec erant armāta circiter mīlia LX. Cicerō datā facultāte Gallum ab eōdem Verticōne, quem suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, repetit, quī litterās ad Caesarem dēferat; hunc admonet, iter cautē dīligenterque faciat; perscrībit in litterīs, hostēs ab sē discessisse omnemque ad eum multitūdinem convertisse. Quibus litterīs circiter mediā nocte Caesar allātīs suōs facit certiōrēs eōsque ad dīmicandum animō cōnfīrmat. Posterō diē lūce prīmā movet castra et circiter mīlia passuum quattuor prōgressus trāns vallem et rīvum multitūdinem hostium cōnspicātur. Erat māgnī perīculī rēs tantulīs cōpiīs inīquō locō dīmicāre; tum, quoniam obsidiōne līberātum Cicerōnem sciēbat, aequō animō remittendum dē celeritāte exīstimābat: cōnsēdit et, quam aequissimō locō potest, castra commūnit atque haec, etsī erant exigua per sē, vix hominum mīlium septem, praesertim nūllīs cum impedīmentīs, tamen angustiīs viārum, quam māximē potest, contrahit, eō cōnsiliō, ut in summam contemptiōnem hostibus veniat. In-

terim speculātōribus in omnēs partēs dīmīssīs explōrat, quō commodissimē itinere vallēs trānsīrī possit.

Caesar feigns fear and retires within his works.

50. Eō diē parvulīs equestribus proeliīs ad aquam factīs utrīque sēsē suō locō continent: Gallī, quod ampliōrēs cōpiās, quae nōndum convēnerant, exspectābant; Caesar, sī forte timōris simulātiōne hostēs in suum locum ēlicere, posset, ut citrā vallem prō castrīs proeliō contenderet; sī id efficere nōn posset, ut explōrātīs itineribus minōre cum perīculō vallem rīvumque trānsīret. Prīmā lūce hostium equitātus ad castra accēdit proeliumque cum nostrīs equitibus committit. Caesar cōnsultō equitēs cēdere sēque in castra recipere iubet; simul ex omnibus partibus castra altiōre vāllō mūnīrī portāsque obstruī atque in hīs administrandīs rēbus quam māximē concursārī et cum simulātiōne agī timōris iubet.

By an unexpected sortie Caesar routs the Gauls.

51. Quibus omnibus rēbus hostēs invitātī cōpiās trādūcunt aciemque inīquō locō cōnstituunt, nostrīs vērō etiam dē vāllō dēductīs propius accēdunt et tēla intrā mūnītiōnem ex omnibus partibus cōniciunt praecōnibusque circummīssīs prōnūntiārī iubent, seu quis Gallus seu Rōmānus velit ante hōram tertiam ad sē trānsīre, sine perīculō licēre; post id tempus nōn fore potestātem: āc sīc nostrōs contempsērunt, ut obstrūctīs in speciem portīs singulīs ōrdinibus cēspitum, quod ea nōn posse intrōrumpere vidēbantur, aliī vāllum manū scindere, aliī fossās complēre inciperent. Tum Caesar omnibus portīs ēruptiōne factā equitātūque ēmīssō celeriter hostēs in fugam dat, sīc utī omnīnō pūgnandī causā resisteret nēmō, māgnumque ex eīs numerum occīdit atque omnēs armīs exuit.

He proceeds to the camp of Cicero.

52. Longius prōsequī veritus, quod silvae palūdēsque intercēdēbant neque etiam parvulō dē-

trīmentō illōrum locum relinquī vidēbat, omnibus suīs incolumibus cōpiīs eōdem diē ad Cicerōnem pervenit. Institūtās turrēs, testūdinēs mūnītiōnēsque hostium admīrātur; legiōne prōductā cōgnōscit nōn decimum quemque esse reliquum mīlitem sine vulnere: ex hīs omnibus iūdicat rēbus, quantō cum perīculō et quantā cum virtūte rēs sint administrātae: Cicerōnem prō ēius meritō legiōnemque collaudat: centuriōnēs singillātim tribūnōsque mīlitum appellat, quōrum ēgregiam fuisse virtūtem testimōniō Cicerōnis cōgnōverat. Dē cāsū Sabīnī et Cottae certius ex captīvīs cōgnōscit.



CONTIO.

Posterō diē contiōne habitā rem gestam prōpōnit, mīlitēs cōnsōlātur et cōnfīrmat; quod dētrīmentum culpā et temeritāte lēgātī sit acceptum, hōc aequiōre animō ferendum docet, quod beneficiō deōrum immortālium et virtūte eōrum expiātō incommodō neque hostibus diūtina laetitia neque ipsīs longior dolor relinquātur.

Retreat of Indutiomarus and his allies. Caesar decides to winter in Gaul.

53. Interim ad Labiēnum per Rēmōs incrēdibilī celeritāte dē vīctōriā Caesaris fāma perfertur, ut, cum ab hībernīs Cicerōnis mīlia passuum ab-

esset circiter LX, eōque post hōram nōnam diēī Caesar pervēnisset, ante mediam noctem ad portās castrōrum clāmor orerētur, quō clāmōre sīgnificātiō vīctōriae grātulātiōque ab Rēmīs Labiēnō fieret. Hāc fāmā ad Trēverōs perlātā Indutiomarus, quī posterō diē castra Labiēnī oppūgnāre dēcrēverat, noctū prōfugit cōpiāsque omnēs in Trēverōs redūcit. Caesar Fabium cum suā legiōne remittit in hīberna, ipse cum tribus legiōnibus circum Samarobrīvam trīnīs hībernīs hiemāre cōnstituit et, quod tantī mōtūs Galliae exstiterant, tōtam hiemem ipse ad exercitum manēre dēcrēvit. Nam illō incommmodō de Sabīnī morte perlātō omnēs ferē Galliae cīvitātēs dē bellō cōnsultābant, nūntiōs legātiōnēsque in omnēs partēs dīmittēbant et, quid reliquī cōnsiliī caperent atque unde initium bellī fieret, explōrābant nocturnaque in locīs dēsertīs concilia habēbant. Neque ūllum ferē tōtīus hiemis tempus sine sollicitūdine Caesaris intercessit, quīn aliquem dē cōnsiliīs āc mōtū Gallōrum nūntium acciperet. In hīs ab L. Rosciō, quem legiōnī tertiaedecimae praefēcerat, certior factus est, māgnās Gallōrum cōpiās eārum cīvitātum, quae Aremoricae appellantur, oppūgnandī suī causā convēnisse neque longius mīlia passuum octō ab hībernīs suīs āfuisse, sed nūntiō allātō dē vīctōriā Caesaris discessisse, adeō ut fugae similis discessus vidērētur.

Caesar confers with the Gallic chiefs. Suspected insubordination of nearly all the tribes.

54. At Caesar prīncipibus cūiusque cīvitātis ad sē ēvocātīs aliās territandō, cum sē scīre, quae fierent, dēnūntiāret, aliās cohortandō māgnam partem Galliae in officiō tenuit. Tamen Senonēs, quae est cīvitās in prīmīs fīrma et māgnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis, Cavarīnum, quem Caesar apud eōs rēgem cōnstituerat, cūius frāter Moritasgus adventū in Galliam Caesaris cūiusque māiōrēs rēgnum obtinuerant, interficere pūblicō

cōnsiliō cōnātī, cum ille praesēnsisset āc prōfūgīsset, usque ad fīnēs īnsecūtī rēgnō domōque expulērunt et, mīssīs ad Caesarem satisfaciendī causā lēgātīs, cum is omnem ad sē senātum venīre iussisset, dictō audiēntēs nōn fuērunt. Tantum apud hominēs barbarōs valuit, esse aliquōs repertōs prīncipēs īnferendī bellī, tantamque omnibus voluntātum commūtātiōnem attulit, ut praeter Aeduōs et Rēmōs, quōs praecipuō semper honōre Caesar habuit, alterōs prō vetere āc perpetuā erga populum Rōmānum fidē, alterōs prō recentibus Gallicī bellī officiīs, nūlla ferē cīvitās fuerit nōn suspecta nōbīs. Idque adeō haud sciō mīrandumne sit, cum complūribus aliīs dē causīs, tum māximē, quod eī, quī virtūte bellī omnibus gentibus praeferēbantur, tantum sē ēius opīniōnis dēperdidisse, ut ā populō Rōmānō imperia perferrent, gravissimē dolēbant.

The Treveri under Indutiomarus form a hostile alliance.

55. Trēverī vērō atque Indutiomarus tōtīus hiemis nūllum tempus intermīsērunt, quīn trāns Rhēnum lēgātōs mitterent, cīvitātēs sollicitārent, pecūniās pollicerentur, māgnā parte exercitūs nostrī interfectā multō minōrem superesse dīcerent partem. Neque tamen ūllī cīvitātī Germānōrum persuādērī potuit, ut Rhēnum trānsīret, cum sē bis expertōs dīcerent, Ariovistī bellō et Tenctērōrum trānsitū: nōn esse amplius fōrtūnam temptātūrōs. Hāc spē lapsus Indutiomarus nihilō minus cōpiās cōgere, exercēre, ā fīnitimīs equōs parāre, exulēs damnātōsque tōtā Galliā māgnīs praemiīs ad sē allicere coepit, Āc tantam sibi iam hīs rēbus in Galliā auctōritātem comparāverat, ut undique ad eum legātiōnēs concurrerent, grātiam atque amīcitiam pūblicē prīvātimque peterent.

Indutiomarus calls an armed council of the Gauls. He plans to attack Labienus.

56. Ubi intellexit ūltrō ad sē venīrī, alterā ex parte Senonēs Carnūtēsque cōnscientiā facinoris īnstigārī, alterā Nerviōs Aduātucōsque bellum Rōmānīs parāre, neque sibi voluntāriōrum cōpiās dēfore, sī ex fīnibus suīs prōgredī coepisset, armātum concilium indīcit. Hōc mōre Gallōrum est initium bellī: quō lēge commūnī omnēs pūberēs armātī convenīre cōnsuērunt: quī ex iīs novissimus convenit, in cōnspectū multitūdinis omnibus cruciātibus affectus necātur. In eō conciliō Cingetorigem, alterius prīncipem factiōnis, generum suum, quem suprā dēmōnstrāvimus Caesaris secūtum fidem ab eō nōn discessisse, hostem iūdicat bonaque ēius pūblicat. Hīs rēbus cōnfectīs in conciliō prōnūntiat arcessītum sē ā Senonibus et Carnūtibus aliīsque complūribus Galliae cīvitātibus: hūc itūrum per fīnēs Rēmōrum eōrumque agrōs populātūrum āc, priusquam id faciat, castra Labiēnī oppūgnātūrum. Quae fierī velit, praecipit.

Labienus, feigning fear, remains in the camp.

57. Labiēnus, cum et locī nātūrā et manū mūnītissimīs castrīs sēsē tenēret, dē suō āc legiōnis perīculō nihil timēbat; nē quam occāsiōnem reī bene gerendae dīmitteret, cōgitābat. Itaque ā Cingetorige atque ēius propīnquīs ōrātiōne Indutiomarī cōgnitā, quam in conciliō habuerat, nūntiōs mittit ad fīnitimās cīvitātēs equitēsque undique ēvocat: hīs certam diem conveniendī dīcit. Interim prope cotīdiē cum omnī equitātū Indutiomarus sub castrīs ēius vagābātur, aliās ut situm castrōrum cōgnōsceret, aliās colloquendī aut territandī causā: equitēs plērumque omnēs tēla intrā vāllum cōniciēbant. Labiēnus suōs intrā mūnītiōnem continēbat timōrisque opīniōnem, quibuscumque poterat rēbus, augēbat.

He makes a sudden sortie. Indutiomarus is slain, his army routed, and order restored in Gaul.

58. Cum māiōre in diēs contemptiōne Indutiomarus ad castra accēderet, nocte ūnā intrōmīssīs equitibus omnium fīnitimārum cīvitātum, quōs arcessendōs cūrāverat, tantā dīlīgentiā omnēs suōs custōdiīs intrā castra continuit, ut nūllā ratiōne ea rēs ēnūntiārī aut ad Trēverōs perferrī posset. Interim ex cōnsuētūdine cotīdiānā Indutiomarus ad castra accēdit atque ibi māgnam partem diēī cōnsūmit: equitēs tēla cōniciunt et māgnā cum contumēliā verbōrum nostrōs ad pūgnam ēvocant. Nūllō ab nostrīs datō respōnsō, ubi vīsum est, sub vesperum dispersī āc dissipātī discēdunt. Subitō Labiēnus duābus portīs omnem equitātum ēmittit: praecipit atque interdīcit, prōterritīs hostibus atque in fugam cōniectīs (quod fore, sīcut accidit, vidēbat) ūnum omnēs peterent Indutiomarum, neu quis quem prius vulneret, quam illum interfectum vīderit, quod morā reliquōrum spatium nactum illum effugere nōlēbat: māgna prōpōnit iīs, quī occīderint, praemia; submittit cohortēs equitibus subsidiō. Comprobat hominis cōnsilium fōrtūna, et cum ūnum omnēs peterent, in ipsō flūminis vadō dēprehēnsus Indutiomarus interficitur caputque ēius refertur in castra; redeuntēs, quōs possunt, cōnsectantur atque occīdunt. Hāc rē cōgnita omnēs Eburōnum et Nerviōrum, quae convēnerant, cōpiae discēdunt, paulōque habuit post id factum Caesar quiētiōrem Galliam.

BOOK VI.—CAMPAIGNS AGAINST THE TREVERI AND EBURONES.

The enforced leisure of the winter was improved by Caesar in making preparations for the coming struggle with the insurgents. Two legions were levied in Cisalpine Gaul, and a third was borrowed from Pompeius, making ten legions now under Caesar's command. Before the arrival of spring he put his army in motion toward the territory of the Belgae. Surprising the Nervii with four legions, he ravaged their country with fire and sword. Returning to winter-quarters he called an assembly of the Gauls, to which all gathered except the Senones, Carnutes and Treveri. He overawed the first two of these tribes by a prompt advance against them, and accepting hostages from them, he turned in pursuit of Ambiorix, the destroyer of Sabinus and his legions. The rebel chief was in hiding among the Menapii, with whom Caesar had several scores to settle. Hastening thither, he built bridges, burnt villages, and carried off cattle and men. Ambiorix, however, escaped. Receiving the submission of the Menapii, he marched up the left bank of the Rhine to the support of Labienus, who was in pursuit of the Treveri. By a pretended flight they were drawn into an engagement in which they were defeated with great slaughter. In order to overawe the Germans, who had rendered aid to the Treveri on this occasion, Caesar built another briuge across the Rhine some distance above the place where he had made the first, and crossed in force. But the results were even less fruitful than on the former occasion. After a short stay among the Ubii, Caesar withdrew, broke down enough of the bridge to render it useless to the Germans, and marched through the Ardennes in search of Ambiorix, the capture of whom he thought of the highest importance to the success of his efforts for the subjugation of Gaul. The forces of the wily chief were defeated, but he still eluded all his pursuers. Caesar divided his army into three bodies to facilitate the pursuit, and left all the baggage in charge of Cicero at Aduatuca, the scene of the terrible slaughter of the troops of Sabinus. Cicero, in spite of Caesar's warnings, let his troops leave the camp on foraging expeditions. A body of German horsemen, who had crossed the Rhine on a predatory excursion, learned of the rich booty in Cicero's camp and of the carelessness of the Roman general. They according-

ly made a sudden attack, which was repelled with great difficulty, leaving the Romans in a panic. Seven days after his departure Caesar returned, and restored the confidence of his men. Baffled in capturing Ambiorix, he turned upon the Eburones themselves, and with the assistance of their neighbors completely extirpated them. He then returned to the Senones and Carnutes and instituted an investigation of their revolt, which resulted in the condemnation to death of their chief Acco. Making such a strategic disposition of his forces as gave them control of the area of the revolt, Caesar repaired to Italy, where matters of great moment awaited his attention.

REFERENCES FOR READING.

PLUTARCH: Caesar.
FROUDE: Caesar: A Sketch. pp. 249–252. (Harper's ed.).
TROLLOPE: Caesar, chap. vii. (Ancient Classic Series).
MOMMSEN: History of Rome, vol. iv. pp. 321–323.
MERIVALE: History of Rome under the Empire, vol. i. chap. x. pp. 398–405.
NAPOLEON: Julius Caesar, vol. ii. chap. ix,



COMMENTARIUS SEXTUS.

Caesar procures new troops from Italy.

1. Multīs dē causīs Caesar māiōrem Galliae mōtum exspectāns per M. Silānum, C. Antistium Rēgīnum, T. Sextum lēgātōs dēlēctum habēre īnstituit: simul ab Cn. Pompēiō prōcōnsule petit, quoniam ipse ad urbem cum imperiō reīpūblicae causā remanēret, quōs ex Cisalpīnā Galliā cōnsul sacrāmentō rogāvisset, ad sīgna convenīre et ad sē proficīscī iubēret, māgnī interesse etiam in reliquum tempus ad opīniōnem Galliae exīstimāns tantās vidērī Ītaliae facultātēs, ut, sī quid esset in bellō dētrīmentī acceptum, nōn modo id brevī tempore sarcīrī, sed etiam māiōribus augērī cōpiīs posset. Quod cum Pompēius et reīpūblicae et amīcitiae tribuisset, celeriter cōnfectō per suōs dēlēctū tribus ante exāctam hiemem et cōnstitūtīs et adductīs legiōnibus duplicātōque eārum cohortium numerō, quās cum Q. Tituriō āmīserat, et celeritāte et cōpiīs docuit, quid populī Rōmānī disciplīna atque opēs possent.

The Treveri again form an alliance against him.

2. Interfectō Indutiomarō, ut docuimus, ad ēius propīnquōs ā Trēverīs imperium dēfertur. Illī fīnitimōs Germānōs sollicitāre et pecūniam pollicērī nōn dēsistunt. Cum ab proximīs impetrāre nōn possent, ūlteriōrēs temptant. Inventīs nōnnūllīs cīvitātibus iūreiūrandō inter sē cōnfīrmant obsidibusque dē pecūniā cavent; Ambiorigem sibi societāte et foedere adiungunt. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs Caesar cum undique bellum parārī vidēret, Nerviōs, Aduātucōs, Menapiōs adiūnctīs Cisrhēnānīs omnibus Germānīs esse in

armīs, Senonēs ad imperātum nōn venīre et cum Carnūtibus fīnititimīsque cīvitātibus cōnsilia commūnicāre, ā Trēverīs Germānōs crēbrīs legātiōnibus sollicitārī, mātūrius sibi dē bellō cōgitandum putāvit.

Caesar devastates the country of the Nervii. After a conference at Lutetia (Paris), he marches against the Senones.

3. Itaque nōndum hieme cōnfectā proximīs quattuor coāctīs legiōnibus dē imprōvīsō in fīnēs Nerviōrum contendit et, priusquam illī aut convenīre aut prōfugere possent, māgnō pecoris atque hominum numerō captō atque eā praedā mīlitibus concessā vāstātīsque agrīs in dēditiōnem venīre atque obsidēs sibi dare coēgit. Eō celeriter cōnfectō negōtiō rūrsus in hīberna legiōnēs redūxit. Conciliō Galliae prīmō vēre, ut īnstituerat, indictō, cum reliquī praeter Senonēs, Carnūtēs Trēverōsque vēnissent, initium bellī āc dēfectiōnis hōc esse arbitrātus, ut omnia postpōnere vidērētur, concilium Lutētiam Parīsiōrum trānsfert. Cōnfīnēs erant hī Senonibus cīvitātemque patrum memoriā coniūnxerant, sed ab hōc cōnsiliō āfuisse exīstimābantur. Hāc rē prō suggestū prōnūntiātā eōdem diē cum legiōnibus in Senonēs proficīscitur māgnīsque itineribus eō pervenit.

These submit; also the Carnutes.

4. Cōgnitō ēius adventū Accō, quī prīnceps ēius cōnsiliī fuerat, iubet in oppida multitūdinem convenīre. Cōnantibus, priusquam id efficī posset, adesse Rōmānōs nūntiātur. Necessāriō sententiā dēsistunt lēgātōsque dēprecandī causā ad Caesarem mittunt: adeunt per Aeduōs, quōrum antīquitus erat in fidē cīvitās. Libenter Caesar petentibus Aeduis dat veniam excūsātiōnemque accipit, quod aestīvum tempus īnstantis bellī, nōn quaestiōnis esse arbitrātur. Obsidibus imperātīs centum hōs Aeduīs custōdiendōs trādit. Eōdem Carnūtēs lēgātōs obsidēsque mittunt ūsī dēprecātōribus Rēmīs, quōrum erant in clientēlā: eadem ferunt

respōnsa. Peragit concilium Caesar equitēsque imperat cīvitātibus.

Caesar proceeds against the Menapii.

5. Hāc parte Galliae pācātā tōtus et mente et animō in bellum Trēverōrum et Ambiorigis īnsistit, Cavarīnum cum equitātū Senonum sēcum proficīscī iubet, nē quis aut ex hūius īrācundiā aut ex eō, quod meruerat, odiō cīvitātis mōtus exsistat. Hīs rēbus cōnstitūtīs, quod prō explōrātō habēbat Ambiorigem proeliō nōn esse contentūrum, reliqua ēius cōnsilia animō circumspiciēbat. Erant Menapiī propīnquī Eburōnum fīnibus, perpetuīs palūdibus silvīsque mūnītī, quī ūnī ex Galliā dē pāce ad Caesarem lēgātōs numquam mīserant. Cum hīs esse hospitium Ambiorigī sciēbat; item per Trēverōs vēnisse Germānīs in amīcitiam cōgnōverat. Haec prius illī dētrahenda auxilia exīstimābat quam ipsum bellō lacesseret, nē dēspērātā salūte aut sē in Menapiōs abderet aut cum Trānsrhēnānīs congredī cōgerētur. Hōc initō cōnsiliō tōtīus exercitūs impedīmenta ad Labiēnum in Trēverōs mittit duāsque legiōnēs ad eum proficīscī iubet; ipse cum legiōnibus expedītīs quīnque in Menapiōs proficīscitur. Illī nūllā coāctā manū locī praesidiō frētī in silvās palūdēsque cōnfugiunt suaque eōdem cōnferunt.

They sue for peace and give hostages.

6. Caesar partītīs cōpiīs cum C. Fabiō lēgātō et M. Crassō quaestōre celeriterque effectīs pontibus adit trīpertītō, aedificia vīcōsque incendit, māgnō pecoris atque hominum numerō potītur. Quibus rēbus coāctī Menapiī lēgātōs ad eum pācis petendae causā mittunt. Ille obsidibus acceptīs hostium sē habitūrum numerō cōnfīrmat, sī aut Ambiorigem aut ēius lēgātōs fīnibus suīs recēpissent. Hīs cōnfīrmātīs rēbus Commium Atrebatem cum equitātū custōdis locō in Menapiīs relinquit; ipse in Trēverōs proficīscitur.

The Treveri plan to attack Labienus. His strategy.

7. Dum haec ā Caesare geruntur, Trēverī māgnīs coāctīs peditātūs equitātūsque cōpiīs Labiēnum cum ūnā legiōne, quae in eōrum fīnibus hiemāverat, adorīrī parābant, iamque ab eō nōn longius bīduī viā aberant, cum duās vēnisse legiōnēs mīssū Caesaris cōgnōscunt. Positīs castrīs ā mīlibus passuum XV auxilia Germānōrum exspectāre cōnstituunt. Labiēnus hostium cōgnitō cōnsiliō spērāns temeritāte eōrum fore aliquam dīmicandī facultātem, praesidiō quīnque cohortium impedīmentīs relīctō, cum vīgintī quīnque cohortibus māgnōque equitātū contrā hostem proficīscitur et mīlle passuum intermīssō spatiō castra commūnit. Erat inter Labiēnum atque hostem difficilī trānsitū flūmen rīpīsque praeruptīs. Hōc neque ipse trānsīre habēbat in animō neque hostēs trānsitūrōs exīstimābat. Augēbātur auxiliōrum cotīdiē spēs. Loquitur [in cōnsiliō] palam, quoniam Germānī appropīnquāre dīcantur, sēsē suās exercitūsque fōrtūnās in dubium nōn dēvocātūrum et posterō diē prīmā lūce castra mōtūrum. Celeriter haec ad hostēs dēferuntur, ut ex māgnō Gallōrum equitum numerō nōnnūllōs Gallicīs rēbus favēre nātūra cōgēbat. Labiēnus noctū tribūnīs mīlitum prīmīsque ōrdinibus convocātīs, quid suī sit cōnsiliī, prōpōnit et, quō facilius hostibus timōris det suspiciōnem, māiōre strepitū et tumultū, quam populī Rōmānī fert cōnsuētūdō, castra mōvērī iubet. Hīs rēbus fūgae similem profectiōnem effēcit. Haec quoque per explōrātōrēs ante lūcem id tantā propīnquitāte castrōrum ad hostēs dēferuntur.

He lures them to an unfavorable position and utterly defeats them.

8. Vix āgmen novissimum extrā mūnītiōnēs prōcesserat, cum Gallī cohortātī inter sē, nē spērātam praedam ex manibus dīmitterent: longum esse perterritīs Rōmānīs Germānōrum auxilium exspectāre, neque suam patī dīgnitātem, ut tantīs cōpiīs tam exiguam manum

praesertim fugientem atque impedītam adorīrī nōn audeant, flūmen trānsīre et inīquō locō committere proelium nōn dubitant. Quae fore suspicātus Labiēnus, ut omnēs citrā flūmen ēliceret, eādem ūsus simulātiōne itineris placidē prōgrediēbātur. Tum praemīssīs paulum impedīmentīs atque in tumulō quōdam collocātīs, ‘Habētis,’ inquit, ‘mīlitēs, quam petīstis, facultātem: hostem impedītō atque inīquō locō tenētis: praestāte eandem nōbīs ducibus virtūtem, quam saepenumerō imperātōrī praestitistis, atque illum adesse et haec cōram cernere exīstimāte.’ Simul sīgna ad hostem convertī aciemque dīrigī iubet et paucīs turmīs praesidiō ad impedīmenta dīmīssīs reliquōs equitēs ad latera dispōnit. Celeriter nostrī clāmōre sublātō pīla in hostēs immittunt. Illī, ubi praeter spem, quōs modo fugere crēdēbant, īnfestīs sīgnīs ad sē īre vīdērunt, impetum ferre nōn potuērunt āc prīmō concursū in fugam cōniectī proximās silvās petiērunt. Quōs Labiēnus equitātū cōnsectātus māgnō numerō interfectō, complūribus captīs paucīs post diēbus cīvitātem recēpit. Nam Germānī, quī auxiliō veniēbant, perceptā Trēverōrum fugā sēsē domum recēpērunt. Cum hīs propīnquī Indutiomarī, quī dēfectiōnis auctōrēs fuerant, comitātī eōs ex cīvitāte excessērunt. Cingetorigī, quem ab initiō permānsisse in officiō dēmōnstrāvimus, prīncipātus atque imperium est trāditum.

Second passage of the Rhine. Caesar receives the submission of the Ubii and plans to go against the Suebi.

9. Caesar, postquam ex Menapiīs in Trēverōs vēnit, duābus dē causīs Rhēnum trānsīre cōnstituit; quārum ūna erat, quod auxilia contrā sē Trēverīs mīserant, altera, nē ad eōs Ambiorix receptum habēret. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus paulum suprā eum locum, quō ante exercitum trādūxerat, facere pontem īnstituit. Nōtā atque īnstitūtā ratiōne māgnō mīlitum studiō paucīs diēbus opus efficitur. Fīrmō in Trēverīs ad pontem praesidiō

relīctō, nē quis ab hīs subitō mōtus orerētur, reliquās cōpiās equitātumque trādūcit. Ubiī, quī ante obsidēs dederant atque in dēditiōnem vēnerant, purgandī suī causā ad eum lēgātōs mittunt, quī doceant neque auxilia ex suā cīvitāte in Trēverōs mīssa neque ab sē fidem laesam: petunt atque ōrant, ut sibi parcat, nē commūnī odiō Germānōrum innocentēs prō nocentibus poenās pendant; sī amplius obsidum velit darī, pollicentur. Cōgnitā Caesar causā reperit ab Suēbīs auxilia mīssa esse; Ubiōrum satisfactiōnem accipit, aditūs viāsque in Suēbōs perquīrit.

The Suebi retire within the forest Bacenis.

10. Interim paucīs post diēbus fit ab Ubiīs certior Suēbōs omnēs in ūnum locum cōpiās cōgere atque iīs nātiōnibus, quae sub eōrum sint imperiō, dēnūntiāre, ut auxilia peditātūs equitātūsque mittant. Hīs cōgnitīs rēbus rem frūmentāriam prōvidet, castrīs idōneum locum dēligit; Ubiīs imperat, ut pecora dēdūcant suaque omnia ex agrīs in oppida cōnferant, spērāns barbarōs atque imperītōs hominēs inopiā cibāriōrum adductōs ad inīquam pūgnandī condiciōnem posse dēdūcī, mandat, ut crēbrōs explōrātōrēs in Suēbōs mittant quaeque apud eōs gerantur cōgnōscant. Illī imperāta faciunt et paucīs diēbus intermīssīs referunt: Suēbōs omnēs, posteāquam certiōrēs nūntiī dē exercitū Rōmānōrum vēnerint, cum omnibus suīs sociōrumque cōpiīs, quās coēgissent, penitus ad extrēmōs fīnēs sē recēpisse: silvam esse ibi īnfīnītā māgnitūdine, quae appellātur Bacēnis; hanc longē intrōrsus pertinēre et prō nātīvō mūrō obiectam Cherūscōs ab Suēbīs Suēbōsque ab Cherūscīs iniūriīs incursiōnibusque prohibēre: ad ēius initium silvae Suēbōs adventum Rōmānōrum exspectāre cōnstituisse.

Contrast of Gallic and German customs.

11. Quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est, nōn aliēnum esse vidētur dē Galliae Germāniaeque mōribus et quō differant hae nātiōnēs inter sēsē, prōpōnere.

Existence of two parties in Gaul.

In Galliā nōn sōlum in omnibus cīvitātibus atque in omnibus pāgīs partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulīs domibus factiōnēs sunt, eārumque factiōnum prīncipēs sunt, quī summam auctōritātem eōrum iūdiciō habēre exīstimantur, quōrum ad arbitrium iūdiciumque summa omnium rērum cōnsiliōrumque redeat. Idque ēius reī causā antīquitus īnstitūtum vidētur, nē quis ex plēbe contrā potentiōrem auxiliī egēret: suōs enim quisque opprimī et circumvenīrī nōn patitur, neque, aliter sī faciat, ūllam inter suōs habeat auctōritātem. Haec eadem ratiō est in summā tōtīus Galliae; namque omnēs cīvitātēs in partēs dīvīsae sunt duās.

The leading tribes: the Aedui, Sequani, Remi.

12. Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factiōnis prīncipēs erant Aeduī, alterius Sēquanī. Hī

6. **factiō, -ōnis,** [faciō], F., making, doing: combination. party, faction. ⁎

8. **arbitrium, -ī** [arbiter, judge], N., decision *or* judgment *of the arbiter;* opinion, discretion, pleasure. 3

11. **egeō, egēre, eguī,** *a*., need, want, lack; be without *or* destitute. 2

---

1. **locum:** as the military movements of this campaign were comparatively unimportant, Caesar introduces at this point an interesting account of the life and manners of the Gauls and Germans.

4. **omnibus cīvitātibus:** for the number see Int. 68.

6. **singulīs domibus:** some members of a family being the supporters of one chief, others of his rival. **factiōnēs:** see Int. 69.

7. **eōrum:** the commons.

8. **quōrum:** the chiefs (*prīncipēs*).

9. **redeat,** *is referred.* **ēius reī:** explained by the clause *nē . . . egēret.*

11, 12. **auxiliī:** for the case see A. 223; G. 405, N. 2; H. 410 V., 1; *B.* 212. What case usually follows such verbs? **quisque:** i. e., each chief. **opprimī . . . patitur:** i. e., his position obliged him to protect his dependents.

13, 14. **in summā,** *in general.* **tōtīus Galliae:** depends upon *ratiō,* for case cf. IV, **16**, 16. **partēs duās:** i. e., national parties headed by the Druids and nobles respectively: see Int. 78.

1, 2. **vēnit:** in 58 B. C. **alterius . . . Sēquanī:** cf. I, **31**, 10, *alterius Arvernōs.* The Arverni preceded the Sequani in the leadership of

cum per sē minus valērent, quod summa auctōritās antīquitus erat in Aeduīs māgnaeque eōrum erant clientēlae, Germānōs atque Ariovistum sibi adiūnxerant eōsque ad sē māgnīs iactūrīs pollicitātiōnibusque perdūxerant. Proeliīs vērō complūribus factīs secundīs atque omnī nōbilitāte Aeduōrum interfectā tantum potentiā antecesserant, ut māgnam partem clientium ab Aeduīs ad sē trādūcerent obsidēsque ab iīs prīncipum filiōs acciperent et pūblicē iūrāre cōgerent, nihil sē contrā Sēquanōs cōnsiliī initūrōs, et partem fīnitimī agrī per vim occupātam possidērent Galliaeque tōtīus prīncipātum obtinērent. Quā necessitāte adductus Diviciacus auxiliī petendī causā Rōmam ad senātum profectus imperfectā rē redierat. Adventū Caesaris factā commūtātiōne rērum, obsidibus Aeduīs redditīs, veteribus clientēlīs restitūtīs, novīs per Cae-

4. clientēla, -ae [**cliēns,** a client], F., *the relation of client and patron;* patronage, vassalage; dependents, vassals. 5

6. iactūra, -ae [**iaciō,** throw], F., throwing away; loss, expense. 4

10. iūrō, 1. [**iūs,** right], *n.*, swear one's rights, take an oath, swear. 2

14. Rōma, -ae, F., Rome. 3

imperfectus, -a, -um [**faciō**], not made *or* done, unaccomplished. 1

---

this faction.

3. antīquitus: before the time when the Romans began to support the Aedui against the Arverni: see Int. 79.

4. māgnae, *numerous.* **clientēlae:** among these were the Bellovaci, Bituriges, Senones and Segusiavi.

6. iactūrīs pollicitātiōnibus: cf. the assertion of Ariovistus in I, **44,** 5, *māgnīs praemiīs.*

7. nōbilitāte . . . interfectā: cf. what Diviciacus says in I, **31,** 18, 19.

8. potentiā: for case cf. V, **14,** 7; III, **8,** 4; II, **17,** 14; I, **48,** 12.

10, 11. nihil . . . initūrōs: cf. the more definite statement in I, **31,** 23–26.

12. occupātam: trans. by a relative clause, *which had been* etc.

14. Rōmam profectus: in 63 B. C. **imperfectā rē,** *without accomplishing his purpose.* The senate was busily engaged in investigating the conspiracy of Catiline, and did not give him a definite answer.

15. commūtātiōne, *a change* in the political relations of the parties, resulting from the defeat of Ariovistus; cf. I, **51–53.**

16, 17. novīs (sc. *clientēlīs*) . . . **comparātīs:** give an example from I, **28,** 14 ff.

sarem comparātīs, quod hī, quī sē ad eōrum amīcitiam aggregāverant, meliōre condiciōne atque aequiōre imperiō sē ūtī vidēbant, reliquīs rēbus eōrum grātiā dīgnitāteque amplificātā, Sequānī prīncipātum dīmīserant. In eōrum locum Rēmī successerant: quōs quod adaequāre apud Caesarem grātiā intellegēbātur, iī, quī propter veterēs inimīcitiās nūllō modō cum Aeduīs coniungī poterant, sē Rēmīs in clientēlam dicābant. Hōs illī dīligenter tuēbantur: ita et novam et repente collēctam auctōritātem tenēbant. Eō tum statū rēs erat, ut longē prīncipēs habērentur Aeduī, secundum locum dīgnitātis Rēmī obtinērent.

Two classes of nobility: the Knights and Druids.

13. In omnī Galliā eōrum hominum, quī aliquō sunt numerō atque honōre, genera sunt duo. Nam plēbēs paene servōrum habētur locō, quae nihil audet per sē, nūllō adhibētur cōnsiliō. Plērīque, cum aut aere aliēnō aut māgnitūdine tribūtōrum aut iniūriā potentiōrum premuntur, sēsē in servitūtem dicant nōbilibus, quibus in hōs eadem omnia sunt iūra, quae dominīs in servōs. Sed dē hīs duōbus

22. **inimīcitia, -ae** [**amīcitia**, friendship], F., enmity, hostility. 1
23. **dicō,** 1. proclaim; consecrate, devote, assign, give over. 2
25. **status, -ūs,** M., position, condition, station. 3
5. **tribūtum, -ī** [**tribuō**, assign], N., tribute. 2
7. **dominus, -ī,** M., ruler, lord, master. 1

---

17. **eōrum** = *Aeduōrum.*

18. **sē ūtī,** *that they enjoyed.*

19. **reliquīs rēbus,** *by all other means:* in addition to the means mentioned above.

20. **Rēmī:** see on II, 3, 2 and 4.

21. **adaequāre:** sc. the object, *Aeduōs.* How is the verb **intellegēbātur** used here?

24, 25. **repente collēctam:** i. e., within the five years since Caesar's arrival. **tum:** in 53 B. C.

26. **habērentur,** *were regarded.*

3. **plēbēs:** see Int. 76.

4. **aere aliēnō:** in early times the lower classes were always more or less in debt to the higher orders. This fact has been explained as being due to the absorption of capital by the nobles, to whom the toilers had to apply for means to purchase the necessary implements for working the land.

5. **iniūriā potentiōrum:** cf. **11,** 10, *contrā potentiōrem.*

6. **quibus,** for case (so *dominīs,* l. 7) cf. IV, **8,** 2; III, **13,** 14; II, **15,** 10.

Power of the Druids.

generibus alterum est druidum, alterum equitum. Illī rēbus dīvīnīs intersunt, sacrificia pūblica āc prīvāta prōcūrant, religiōnēs interpretantur: ad eōs māgnus adulēscentium numerus disciplīnae causā concurrit, māgnōque hī sunt apud eōs honōre. Nam ferē dē omnibus contrōversiīs pūblicīs prīvātīsque cōnstituunt, et sī quod est admīssum facinus, sī caedēs facta, sī dē hērēditāte, dē fīnibus contrōversia est, īdem dēcernunt, praemia poenāsque cōnstituunt; sī quī aut prīvātus aut populus eōrum dēcrētō nōn stetit, sacrificiīs interdīcunt. Haec poena apud eōs est gravissima. Quibus ita est interdictum, hī numerō impiōrum āc scelerātōrum habentur, hīs omnēs dēcēdunt, aditum sermōnemque dēfugiunt, nē quid ex contāgiōne incommodī accipiunt, neque hīs petentibus iūs redditur

8. **druidēs, -um**, M., *the* Druids, *an ancient priestly caste in Gaul and Britain.* *
9. **sacrificium, -ī** [**sacrificō**, offer sacrifice], N., a sacrifice. 4
prō-cūrō, 1. [**cūrō**, care for], *a.*, take care of, attend to; expiate *or* avert (*evil*) by sacrifice. 1
10. **interpretor**, 1. [**interprēs**, an interpreter], *a.*, explain, expound, determine. 1
12. **contrōversia, -ae** [**contrō**, *fr.* **cōntrā+versus**, turned], F., dispute, quarrel, controversy. *
13. **caedēs, -is** [**caedō**, cut], F., cutting; (*of persons*) slaughter, massacre, murder. *
14. **hērēditās, -tātis** [**hēres**, an heir], F., heirship, inheritance; an inheritance. 1
16. **dēcrētum, -ī** [**dēcernō**, decide], N., decision, decree, order. 3
stō, stāre, stetī, status, *n.*, stand. 4
18. **impius, -a, -um** [**pius**, dutiful], undutiful, impious, wicked. 1
scelerātus, -a, -um [**scelus**, crime], stained with crime, reprobate, accursed. 2
dē-cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus [**cēdō**, go], *n.*, go away, withdraw, depart from. 5
19. **sermō, -ōnis** [**serō**, connect], M., connected words; conversation, discourse. 3
dē-fugiō, -ere, fūgī [**fugiō**, flee], flee away from, shun, avoid. 1
contāgiō, -ōnis [**cum + tangō**, touch], F., touching, contact; noxious contact, contagion; contamination, pollution. 1

---

8. **druidum**: see Int. 72–75. The word is commonly derived from *drūs*, oak. The religious services of the Druids were held in oak-groves. **intersunt**, *officiate at*, the word denoting active participation.

11, 12. **hī**: the Druids. **eōs**: the common people.

13. **sī . . . admīssum**, *if any crime has been committed.*

16. **sacrificiīs interdīcunt**: a form of excommunication.

neque hōnōs ūllus commūnicātur. Hīs autem omnibus druidibus praeest ūnus, quī summam inter eōs habet auctōritātem. Hōc mortuō aut sī quī ex reliquīs excellit dīgnitāte, succēdit, aut, sī sunt plūrēs parēs, suffrāgiō druidum, nōnnumquam etiam armīs dē prīncipātū contendunt. Hī certō annī tempore in fīnibus Carnūtum, quae regiō tōtīus Galliae media habētur, cōnsīdunt in locō cōnsecrātō. Hūc omnēs undique, quī contrōversiās habent, conveniunt eōrumque dēcrētīs iūdiciīsque parent. Disciplīna in Britanniā reperta atque inde in Galliam trānslāta esse exīstimātur, et nunc, quī dīligentius eam rem cōgnōscere volunt, plērumque illō discendī causā proficīscuntur.

Their privileges and doctrines.

14. Druidēs ā bellō abesse cōnsuērunt neque tribūta ūnā cum reliquīs pendunt, mīlitiae vacātiōnem omniumque rērum habent immūnitātem. Tantīs excitātī praemiīs et suā sponte multī in disciplīnam conveniunt et ā parentibus propīnquīsque mittuntur. Māgnum ibī

23. **excellō, -ere, celsus,** *a.*, *n.*, be eminent *or* superior, surpass, excel. 1
24. **suffrāgium, -ī,** N., ballot, vote, suffrage; decision, judgment, election. 2
27. **cōnsecrō,** 1. [**sacrō,** dedicate], dedicate, consecrate. 2
30. **trāns-ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus,** carry across, transfer. 3
31. **illō,** *adv.* [**ille,** that], to that place, thither, there. 2

2. **mīlitia, -ae** [**mīles,** soldier], F., military service, warfare. 3
vacātiō, -ōnis [**vacō,** be without], F., freedom, exemption, immunity. 1
3. **immūnitās, -tātis** [**im-mūnis** without duty], F., freedom from public services *or* charges, immunity. 1

---

27. **locō:** this place was probably on the site of the town of Dreux.

28, 29. **dēcrētīs, iūdiciīs:** for case cf. V, **19,** 13; IV, **27,** 12; III, **14,** 3; II, **16,** 6 (*hīs*); I, **25,** 20.

31. **illō:** the center of the Druid worship in Britain was on the island of Anglesey.

2. **mīlitiae vacātiōnem:** the instance of the Druid Diviciacus proves that a military life was not outside of the range of choice of a Druid. **tantīs,** *these great:* lit., *so great* (as these).

4. **praemiīs:** i. e., the privileges mentioned in the preceding sentence.

numerum versuum ēdiscere dīcuntur. Itaque annōs nōnnūllī vīcēnōs in disciplīna permanent. Neque fās esse exīstimant ea litterīs mandāre, cum in reliquīs ferē rēbus, pūblicīs prīvātīsque ratiōnibus, Graecīs litterīs ūtantur. Id mihi duābus dē causīs īnstituisse videntur, quod neque in vulgum disciplīnam efferrī velint, neque eōs, quī discunt, litterīs cōnfīsōs minus memoriae studēre; quod ferē plērīsque accidit, ut praesidiō litterārum dīligentiam in perdiscendō āc memoriam remittant. Imprīmīs hōc volunt persuādēre, nōn interīre animās, sed ab aliīs post mortem trānsīre ad aliōs, atque hōc māximē ad virtūtem excitārī putant, metū mortis neglēctō. Multa praetereā dē sīderibus atque eōrum mōtū, dē mundī āc terrārum māgnitūdine, dē rērum nātūrā, dē

6. **versus -ūs** [vertō, turn], M., turning; a verse *of poetry;* a line *of writing.* 1

ē-discō, -ere, didicī [discō, learn], *a.*, learn in detail *or* by heart; learn. 1

7. **vīcēnī, -ae, -a,** *distr. num. adj.* [vīgintī, twenty], twenty each, twenty. 1

13. **per-discō, -ere, didicī** [discō], *a.*, learn thoroughly, get by heart, know well. 1

15. **inter-eō, īre, iī (īvī), itus** [eō, go], *n.*, go among *a crowd and so be lost;* be lost, perish; fall in battle, be slain. *

anima, -ae, F., breath, life, soul. 1

17. **sīdus, -eris,** N., star, constellation, heavenly body. 1

18. **mundus, -ī** [mundus, well ordered], M., the universe world. 1

---

9. **ratiōnibus:** e. g., in public registers: see on I, **29**, 2. **ūtantur:** for mood cf. IV, **12**, 3; III, **7**, 4; I, **26**, 6. **id:** i. e., *neque . . . mandāre*, use writen notes.

10–12. **in vulgum . . . velint:** the Roman patricians, too, guarded very jealously their exclusive privileges in connection with the state religion. **vulgum:** cf. the similar phrase in I, **46**, 9, and explain the difference in form. **disciplīnam:** including the knowledge of the sacred chants and formulae, which gave men access to the gods. **eōs . . . studēre:** depends upon *velint.* **litterīs:** for case cf. *iūdiciīs* **13**, 29. **minus studēre,** *pay less attention to.*

14. **hōc:** introduces the following infinitive clauses. **persuadēre,** *convince* (men) *of this.*

15. **ab aliīs . . . ad aliōs:** the doctrine of the transmigration of souls. It is not known whence the Druids derived it. The burial customs of the Gauls indicate that this was not the belief of the masses.

deōrum immortālium vī āc potestāte disputant et iuventūtī trādunt.

The knights. Their warlike habits.

15. Alterum genus est equitum. Hī, cum est ūsus atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod ferē ante Caesaris adventum quotannīs accidere sōlēbat, utī aut ipsī iniūriās īnferrent aut illātās prōpulsārent), omnēs in bellō versantur, atque eōrum ut quisque est genere cōpiīsque amplissimus, ita plūrimōs circum sē ambactōs clientēsque habet. Hanc ūnam grātiam potentiamque nōvērunt.

Religion. Human sacrifices.

16. Nātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum dēdita religiōnibus, atque ob eam causam quī sunt affectī graviōribus morbīs quīque in proeliīs perīculīsque versantur, aut prō victimīs hominēs immolant aut sē immolātūrōs vovent administrīsque ad ea sacrificia druidibus

19. dis-putō, 1. [**putō,** think], *a.*, think over; debate about, discuss. 1

3. sōleō, -ēre, solitus sum, *n.*, be wont, be accustomed.

4. prōpulsō, 1. [*freq. of* **prōpellō,** drive forth *or* away], *a.*, drive forth *or* off, drive back, repel. 2

6. ambactus, -ī, (*a celtic word,*) M., *one led around;* dependent, retainer, vassal. 1

3. morbus, -ī, M., sickness, disease, malady. 2

4. victima, -ae [**vitta,** the fillet *placed about the head of sacrificial victims*], F., sacrifice, victim. 1

immolō, 1. [**mola,** *the meal sprinkled over victims*], *a.*, sprinkle sacrificial meal; sacrifice, immolate. 3

5. vōveō, -ēre, vōvī, vōtus, *a.*, *n.*, devote, vow. 1

ad-minister, -trī, M., assistant, attendant; priest. 1

---

1. alterum genus: cf. **13,** 7, 8. **equitum:** the Gallic knights, forming with the Druids the nobility.

2, 3. quod . . . quotannīs . . . sōlēbat: see Int. 70.

6. ambactōs, *retainers:* a class of hired servants, intermediate between slaves and clients.

7. nōvērunt: for force of the tense see on I, **19,** 11.

1. nātiō . . . dēdita, *the Gallic race is entirely devoted.*

3. graviōribus; i. e., such as would not yield to the simple remedies of the Druids.

4. hominēs immolant: there seem to have been two kinds of human sacrifice, first, the immolation of prisoners of war in honor of the Gallic gods corresponding to Mars and Mercury; second, the offering of the lives of criminals in honor of Saturn. These sacrifices—of which Caesar gives us no instance coming under his own observation—appear to have ceased entirely after the conquest.

ūtuntur, quod, prō vītā hominis nisi hominis vīta reddātur, nōn posse deōrum immortālium nūmen plācārī arbitrantur, pūblicēque ēiusdem generis habent īnstitūta sacrificia. Aliī immānī māgnitūdine simulācra habent, quōrum contexta vīminibus membra vīvīs hominībus complent; quibus succēnsīs circumventī flammā exanimantur hominēs. Supplicia eōrum, quī in fūrtō aut in latrōciniō aut aliquā noxiā sint comprehēnsī, grātiōra dīs immortālibus esse arbitrantur; sed cum ēius generis cōpia dēfēcit, etiam ad innocentium supplicia dēscendunt.

The deities. Their attributes.

17. Deum māximē Mercurium colunt: hūius sunt plūrima simulācra; hunc omnium inventōrem

7. **nūmen, -inis,** N., divine will *or* power, divinity, deity. 1
plācō, 1. *a.*, reconcile; appease, pacify, placate. 1
9. **simulācrum, -ī** [simulō, make like], N., image, figure, statue. 2
10. **vīvus, -a, -um** [vīvō, live], alive, living. 5
succendō, -ere, cendī, cēnsus, [candeō, glow], *a.*, set on fire from below, kindle. *
11. **flamma, -ae,** F., blaze, fire, flame. 2
12. **fūrtum, -ī** [fūr, a thief], N., theft, robbery. 1
latrōcinium, -ī [latrō, robber], N., robbery, brigandage, bandit war. 3
noxia, -ae [noceō, injure], F., injury, crime, offence. 1
13. **grātus, -a, um,** pleasing, agreeable. 2
14. **in-nocēns, -entis** [noceō], not injuring, harmless, innocent: *in pl. as subst.*, the blameless *or* upright. 2
15. **dē-scendō, -ere, -dī, -ēnsus** [scandō, climb], *a.*, climb *or* go down, descend; have recourse to, resort. 5

1. **Mercurius, -ī,** M., Mercury, *the messenger of the gods: the god of eloquence, of roads, of traders and thieves, the bestower of prosperity.* 1
2. **inventor, -ōris** [in-veniō, come upon], M., inventor, discoverer, author. 1

9, 10. simulācra :colossal statues in the form of men. **quōrum ... complent,** *whose limbs, formed of interwoven osiers, they fill with living men.* **hominibus**: for the case see A. 248 *c* 2; G. 405; H. 421, II; *B.* 218, 8.

12, 13. sint comprehēnsī: for the mood cf. V, **23**, 7; IV, **2**, 2; (*vēndant*); III, **4**, 2; II, **35**, 3; I, **6**, 4.

1. Mercurium: the Gallic Teutates, the German Woden, the worship of whom was general throughout Europe.

2. simulācra: not statues, but symbolic representations. Statues of the gods did not appear in Gaul until the time of the Roman occupation.

artium ferunt, hunc viārum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad quaestūs pecūniae mercātūrāsque habēre vim māximam arbitrantur. Post hunc Apollinem et Mārtem et Iovem et Minervam. Dē hīs eandem ferē, quam reliquae gentēs, habent opīniōnem: Apollinem morbōs dēpellere, Minervam operum atque artificiōrum initia trādere, Iovem imperium caelestium tenēre, Mārtem bella regere. Huic, cum proeliō dīmicāre cōnstituērunt, ea, quae bellō cēperint, plērumque dēvovent: cum superāvērunt, animālia capta immolant reliquāsque rēs in ūnum locum cōnferunt. Multīs in cīvitātibus hārum rērum exstrūctōs tumulōs locīs cōnsecrātīs cōnspicārī

3. **ars, artis,** F., skill, art; artifice. 1

4. **quaestus, -ūs** [**quaerō,** seek to gain], M., gaining, acquiring, acquisition, profit. 1

pecūnia, -ae, F., property, wealth; money. *

mercātūra, -ae [**mercor,** purchase], F., trade, commerce. 1

5. **Apollō, -inis,** M., Apollo, *son of Jupiter and Latona, god of the sun; god of divination, healing, music, poetry etc.* 1

Mārs, -tis, M., Mars, *the god of war, of husbandry, of shepherds, of seers; fig.*, battle, war. 2

Iuppiter (Iūpiter), Iovis [**Iovis-pater**], M., Jupiter (Jove,) *the chief Roman deity, father of gods and men, god of the heavens and air.* 1

6. **Minerva, -ae,** F., Minerva, *the goddess of wisdom, identical with the Greek Athene, the goddess of the arts and sciences.* 1

8. **artificium, -ī** [**artifex,** artificer], N., a trade, handicraft; artifice, trick. 2

9. **caelestis, -e** [**caelum,** heaven], heavenly, divine, celestial; *in pl. as subst.*, celestial beings *or* objects. 1

11. **animal, -ālis** [**animus,** breath of life], N., a living creature, animal. 2

3, 4. **viārum . . . ducem:** i. e., the god points out the way (*viārum*) and brings the traveller to his destination (*itinerum*). **ad quaestūs pecūniae,** *for acquiring wealth*, by banking, loaning money. **pecūniae:** for case cf. IV, **28,** 9; II, **24,** 12; I, **14,** 8. **mercātūrās:** gains from the sale of merchandise.

5. **Apollinem:** Apollo was probably identical with the Gallic god Belen, Mars with Esus or Hesus, Jupiter with Taranis, god of thunder (Celtic *taran=thunder*). The name of the divinity corresponding to Minerva is not known.

6. **reliquae gentēs:** e. g., the Greeks and Romans.

11, 12. **dēvovent:** cf. *sē immolātūrōs vovent*, **16,** 4. **animālia:** both man and beast. **reliquās rēs:** i. e., the portion consecrated to the gods.

licet; neque saepe accidit, ut neglēctā quispiam religiōne aut capta apud sē occultāre aut posita tollere audēret, gravissimumque eī reī supplicium cum cruciātū cōnstitūtum est.

Their reputed origin. Reckoning of time. Respect for fathers.

18. Gallī sē omnēs ab Dīte patre prōgnātōs praedicant idque ab druidibus prōditum dīcunt. Ob eam causam spatia omnis temporis nōnnumerō diērum, sed noctium fīniunt; diēs nātālēs et mēnsium et annōrum initia sīc observant, ut noctem diēs subsequātur. In reliquīs vītae īnstitūtīs hōc ferē ab reliquīs differunt, quod suōs līberōs, nisi cum adolēvērunt, ut mūnus mīlitiae sustinēre possint, palam ad sē adīre nōn patiuntur fīliumque puerīlī aetāte in pūblicō in cōnspectū patris assistere turpe dūcunt.

14. **quispiam, quaepiam, quid- (quod-) piam,** *indef. pron.*, any one, anything, any. 2

1. **Dīs, Dītis,** M., Dis, *the Greek* Pluto, *brother of Jupiter and Neptune, and god of the infernal regions, the realm of darkness and night.* 1

4. **nātālis, -e [nātus,** born], pertaining to birth: **diēs,** birthday. 1

5. **ob-servō,** 1. [**servō,** give heed], *a.*, heed, observe, mark, celebrate. 4

7. **ad-olēscō, -ere, olēvī, ultus** [*incept. of* **ad-oleō,** cause to grow], *n.*, grow up, reach maturity *or* man's estate. 1

mūnus, -eris, N., service, duty, burden. 3

8. **palam,** *adv.*, openly, publicly. 3

puerīlis, -e [puer, child], childish, boyish, youthful. 1

9. **as(ad-)sistō, -ere, stitī [sistō,** stand], *n.*, stand (by *or* near). 1

---

15. **capta . . . occultāre:** cf. the crime of Achan and its punishment (Josh. 7).

16. **supplicium:** the punishments of the Gauls were exceedingly severe, that by fire being the most common.

1. **Dīte . . . prōgnātōs,** *sprung from the god of night,* i.e., apparently, *aborigines.* Cf. V, 12, 2, *nātōs in īnsulā.*

3, 4. **nōn numerō . . . fīniunt:** so also the Greeks, Germans, and Jews. The Welsh call a week "eight nights." Our "fortnight" and "se'en-night" show the same usage.

4. **mēnsium:** the months began with the first quarter of the moon.

5. **subsequātur:** i. e., the Gauls counted their days from sunset to sunset.

6. **ab reliquīs:** sc. *populīs:* e. g. the Romans and the Greeks.

8. **palam . . . adīre,** *to approach them in public.*

10. **dūcunt:** for trans. cf. I, 3, 7.

Dowries. 19. Virī, quantās pecūniās ab uxōribus dōtis nōmine accēpērunt, tantās ex suīs bonīs aestimātiōne factā cum dōtibus commūnicant. Hūius omnis pecūniae coniūnctim ratiō habētur frūctūsque servantur: uter eōrum vītā superāvit, ad eum pars utrīusque cum frūctibus superiōrum temporum pervenit. *Power of husbands.* Virī in uxōrēs, sīcutī in līberōs, vītae necisque habent potestātem; et cum paterfamiliae illūstriōre locō nātus dēcessit, ēius propīnquī conveniunt et, dē morte sī rēs in suspīciōnem venit, dē uxōribus in servīlem modum quaestiōnem habent et, sī compertum est, īgnī atque omnibus tormentīs excruciātās interficiunt. Fūnera sunt *Funeral rites.* prō cultū Gallōrum māgnifica et sūmptuōsa; om-

1. **dōs, dōtis** [dō, give], F., a marriage gift *or* portion, dowry. 2
2. **aestimātiō, -ōnis** [aestimō, value, reckon], F., valuation. 1
3. **con-iūnctim** [iungō, join], *adv.*, jointly, unitedly, in common. 1
4. **frūctus, -ūs,** M., enjoyment; fruit, crops; profit. 4
7. **paterfamiliāe, patrisfamiliāe** [pater], M., head of a family, householder. 2
8. **il (in-)lūstris, -e** [lūstrō, purify, illumine], illumined, resplendent; distinguished, illustrious. 3
9. **servīlis, -e** [servus, slave], of *or* like a slave, servile. 2
10. **quaestiō, -ōnis** [quaerō, inquire], F., an inquiry, investigation, examination. 5
11. **ex-cruciō,** 1. [cruciō, torture], *a.*, torture greatly, torment, rack. 3
fūnus, -eris [*Sancr.*, DHU-, burn], N., funeral rites, funeral, burial. 2
12. **māgnificus, -a, -um** [māgnus + faciō], splendid, grand, magnificent. 1
sūmptuōsus, -a, -um [sūmptus, expense], expensive, sumptuous, lavish. 1

---

1. **virī** etc., *whatever property husbands have received from their wives as dowry.*

2, 3. **tantās . . . commūnicant:** in like manner the Roman husband often gave a *dōnātiō propter nūptiās* to meet the *dōs* of his wife.

4. **ratiō habētur,** *an account is kept.*

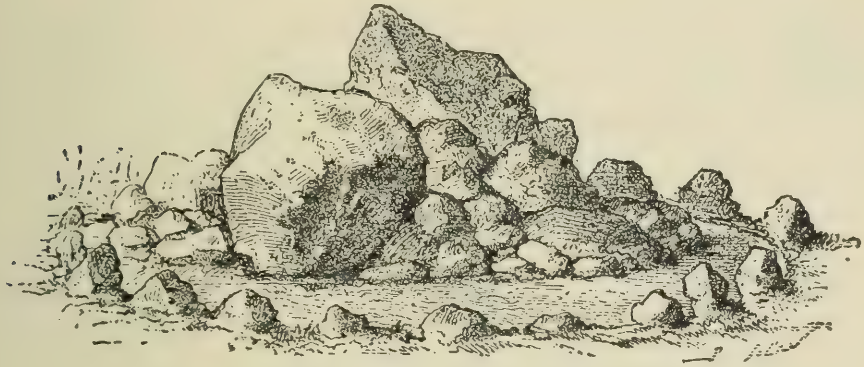
5. **eum:** the survivor.

7. **vītae . . . potestātem:** the Roman husband had legally the same power.

9, 10. **in servīlem modum:** i. e., under torture, which was the Roman method of examining slaves. **sī** (*scelus*) **compertum est,** *if their guilt is established.*

11. **fūnera:** the burning of the dead was not the only method used by the Gauls. Livy tells us that the Cisalpine Gauls buried their dead, and tombs have been found in Transalpine Gaul, whose contents indicate that they were anterior to the time of Caesar.

niaque, quae vīvīs cordī fuisse arbitrantur, in īgnem īnferunt, etiam animālia, āc paulō suprā hanc memoriam servī et clientēs, quōs ab iīs dīlēctōs esse cōnstābat, iūstīs fūnebribus cōnfectīs ūnā cremābantur.



GALLIC BURIAL MOUND

Management of state affairs.

20. Quae cīvitātēs commodius suam rem pūblicam administrāre exīstimantur, habent lēgibus sānctum, sī quis quid dē rē pūblicā ā fīnitimīs rumōre aut fāmā accēperit, utī ad magistrātum dēferat nēve cum quō aliō commūnicet, quod saepe hominēs temerāriōs atque im-

13. **cor, cordis,** N., the heart, *esp. as the seat of the passions and affections:* **cordī esse,** be dear. 1

15. **dīligō, -ere, lēxī, lēctus** [**dis-** + **legō,** choose], *a.*, single *or* choose out, esteem highly, love, be attached to. *

fūnebris, -e [**fūnus,** a funeral] of a funeral: *in neut. pl. as subst.*, funeral rites. 1

3. **sanciō, -īre, sānxī, sānctus** [cf. **sacer,** sacred], *a.*, make sacred *or* inviolable, ordain, ratify, sanction.

5. **temerārius, -a, -um** [**temerē,** by chance], imprudent, rash, indiscreet. 2

---

13. **vīvīs cordī fuisse,** *were dear to them when alive.* The graves which have been opened contained vases, jars, rings, armor, etc. **cordī**: a dative of purpose.

14. **animālia:** the bones of hunting dogs and horses have been found in Gallic tombs. **suprā hanc memoriam,** *before our time.*

1. **cīvitātēs:** attraction of the the antecedent. **commodius:** the Gauls were often controlled in their public measures by mere rumors; cf. IV, 5, 9, *hīs rēbus atque audītiōnibus.*

3, 4. **quis, quid, quō:** signif. after *sī* and *nēve?*

perītōs falsīs rumōribus terrērī et ad facinus impellī et dē summīs rēbus cōnsilium capere cōgnitum est. Magistrātūs quae vīsa sunt occultant, quaeque esse ex ūsū iudicāvērunt, multitūdinī prōdunt. Dē rē pūblicā nisi per concilium loquī nōn concēditur.

The different customs of the Germans. Religion, Discipline of youth.

21. Germānī multum ab hāc cōnsuētūdine differunt. Nam neque druidēs habent, quī rēbus dīvīnīs praesint, neque sacrificiīs student. Deōrum numerō eōs sōlōs dūcunt, quōs cernunt et quōrum apertē opibus iuvantur, Sōlem et Vulcānum et Lūnam, reliquōs nē fāmā quidem accēpērunt. Vīta omnis in vēnātiōnibus atque in studiīs reī mīlitāris cōnsistit: ā parvīs labōrī āc dūritiae student. Quī diūtissimē impūberēs permānsērunt, māximam inter suōs ferunt laudem: hōc alī stātūram, alī vīrēs nervōsque

6. **falsus, -a, -am** [*p. p. of* **fallō**, deceive], deceived; false, unfounded. 1
terreō, 2. *a.*, frighten, alarm, terrify. 4

4. **cernō, -ere, crēvī, certus,** *a.*, separate; discern, distinguish, perceive. *
apertē [**apertus,** open], *adv.*, openly, manifestly. 2

5. **Vulcānus (Vol-), -ī,** M., Vulcan, *the god of fire and metals; fig.*, fire. 1

7. **dūritia, -ae** [**dūrus,** hard], F., hardness, hardship. 1

8. **impūbēs, -eris** [**pūbēs,** adult], immature, young; unmarried, chaste. 1

8, 9. **quaeque . . . prōdunt,** *whatever they decide is advantageous, they lay before the people.* **per concilium:** i. e., in a formal meeting of the tribe.

2. **neque druidēs habent:** while the Germans had a priesthood, it did not enjoy the exclusive privileges or the political power of the Druids.

3. **sacrificiīs student:** from Tacitus we learn that they did sacrifice to their gods. It is probably true, however, that they were not so religious by nature as the Gauls; cf. **16,** 1, *nātiō dēdita religiōnibus.*

4. **quōs** etc.: i. e., a simple nature worship. **opibus:** such as heat, cold, and light.

5, 6. **reliquōs . . . accēpērunt:** but Tacitus, who is a better authority on the Germans than Caesar, names Mercury, Mars and Hercules as their principal deities. Mercury is identified with Woden or Odin.

7. **cōnsistit,** *is spent.*

cōnfīrmārī putant. Intrā annum vērō vīcēsimum fēminae nōtitiam habuisse in turpissimīs habent rēbus: cūius reī nūlla est occultātiō, quod et prōmiscuē in flūminibus perluuntur et pellibus aut parvīs rēnōnum tegimentīs ūtuntur māgnā corporis parte nūdā.

Agriculture. Community of land.

22. Agricultūrae nōn student, māiorque pars eōrum vīctūs in lacte, cāseō, carne cōnsistit. Neque quisquam agrī modum certum aut fīnēs habet propriōs; sed magistrātūs āc prīncipēs in annōs singulōs gentibus cōgnātiōnibusque hominum, quī ūnā coiērunt, quantum et quō locō vīsum est agrī attribuunt atque annō post aliō trānsīre cōgunt. Ēius reī multās afferunt causās; nē assiduā cōnsuētūdine captī,

10. **vīcēsimus, -a, -um,** *ord. num. adj.* [vīgintī], the twentieth. 1
fēmina, -ae, F., a female, *esp. a* woman. 2
nōtitia, -ae [nōtus, known], F., celebrity, fame; acquaintance with, knowledge. 2
12. **occultātiō, -ōnis** [occultō, conceal], F., concealing, concealment. 1
prōmiscuē, [**prōmiscuus,** in common], *adv.*, promiscuously, indiscriminately, in common. 1
per-luō, luere, luī, lūtus [luō, wash], *a.*, *n.*, wash, lave, bathe. 1
13. **rēnō, -ōnis,** M., a deer-skin; fur cloak *made of reindeer skins.* 1

2. **vīctus, -ūs** [vīvō, live]. M. living; means of living, food, victuals. 4
cāseus, -ī, M., cheese. 1
3. **proprius, -a, um,** one's own, peculiar, individual. 2
4. **cōgnātiō, -ōnis** [cō-gnātus, connected by birth], F., blood relationship; kinsman; family, clan. 2
5. **co-eō, īre, iī (īvī), itus** [eō], *n.*, go *or* come together, assemble, meet, unite. 1
6. **aliō,** *adv.* [*old dative of* **alius**], to another place, elsewhere. 1
7. **assiduus (ad-), -a, -um** [sedeō, sit], close at hand, ever present; continual, incessant, constant. 3

---

12. **occultātiō,** *means of hiding.*

1, 2. **agricultūrae nōn student:** i. e., in comparison with the Gauls they paid little attention to it. Tacitus says that the cultivation of the soil was left to women and old men. **māiorque . . . cōnsistit:** cf. IV, 1, 15. This is confirmed by Tacitus.

3, 4. **fīnēs propriōs,** *individual lands;* see on IV, 1, 14 *prīvātī agrī.* **magistrātūs, prīncipēs:** what is the distinction between these? **in annōs** etc., *assign each year to the families and kinsmen and those who have assembled with them as much land, in any locality, as they see fit.*

7. **reī,** *practice, custom.* **afferunt:** i. e., the Germans themselves.

studium bellī gerendī agricultūrā commūtent; nē lātōs fīnēs parāre studeant, potentiōrēsque humiliōrēs possessiōnibus expellant; nē accūrātius ad frīgora atque aestūs vītandōs aedificent; nē quā oriātur pecūniae cupiditās, quā ex rē factiōnēs dissēnsiōnēsque nāscuntur; ut animī aequitāte plēbem contineant, cum suās quisque opēs cum potentissimīs aequārī videat.

Social and military organization.

23. Cīvitātibus māxima laus est quam lātissimē circum sē vāstātīs fīnibus sōlitūdinēs habēre. Hōc proprium virtūtis exīstimant, expulsōs agrīs fīnitimōs cēdere, neque quemquam prope audēre cōnsistere; simul hōc sē fore tūtiōrēs arbitrantur, repentīnae incursiōnis timōre sublātō. Cum bellum cīvitās aut illātum dēfendit aut īnfert, magistrātūs, quī eī bellō praesint, ut vītae necisque habeant potestātem, dēliguntur. In pāce nūllus est commūnis magistrātus, sed prīncipēs regiōnum atque pāgōrum inter suōs iūs dīcunt contrōversiāsque minuunt. Latrōcinia nūllam habent īnfāmiam, quae extrā fīnēs cūiusque cīvitātis fiunt, atque ea iuventūtis exercendae āc dēsidiae minuendae causā fierī praedicant.

10. **accūrātē** (ad-) [**accūrātus**, carefully done], *adv.*, carefully, with care, elaborately. 1

12. **dissēnsiō, -ōnis** [**dis-sentiō**, think differently], F., disagreement, dissension. 5

aequitās, -tātis [**aequus**, equal], F., equality, uniformity; impartiality, fairness, equity. 1

10. **īnfāmia, -ae** [**īnfāmis**, of ill repute], F., ill-repute, disgrace, degradation.

12. **exerceō**, 2. [**arceō**, ward *or* drive off], *a.*, drive forward, engage busily; practice, train, exercise. *

---

8. **agricultūrā**: see on *pretiō* I, 18, 9.

12. **animī aequitāte**, *in a contented frame of mind.*

1. **māxima laus** etc., cf. IV, 3, 1.

3. **proprium virtūtis**, *a mark of valor.* **expulsōs** etc.: translate by coordinate clauses.

6. **dēfendit**, *repels.*

9. **regiōnum, pāgōrum**: some authorities make the first refer to the territory, the second to the inhabitants; others consider the *pāgus* a subdivision of the *regiō.*

10. **minuunt**, *settle.* **latrōcinia . . . īnfāmiam**: this opinion was universal among primitive peoples.

Atque ubi quis ex prīncipibus in conciliō dīxit sē ducem fore, quī sequī velint, prōfiteantur, cōnsurgunt iī, quī et causam et hominem probant, suumque auxilium pollicentur atque ā multitūdine collaudantur; quī ex hīs secūtī nōn sunt, in dēsertōrum āc prōditōrum numerō dūcuntur, omniumque hīs rērum posteā fidēs dērogātur. Hospitem violāre fās nōn putant; quī quāque dē causā ad eōs vēnērunt, ab iniūriā prohibent, sānctōs habent, hīsque omnium domūs patent vīctusque commūnicātur.

Decadence of the Gauls. Military superiority of the Germans.

24. Āc fuit anteā tempus, cum Germānōs Gallī virtūte superārent, ūltrō bella īnferrent, propter hominum multitūdinem agrīque inopiam trāns Rhēnum colōniās mitterent. Itaque ea, quae fertilissima Germāniae sunt, loca circum Hercyniam silvam, quam Eratosthenī et quibusdam Graecīs fāmā nōtam esse videō, quam

dēsidia, -ae [sedeō, sit], F., sitting still; inactivity, indolence. 1

14. **prōfiteor, -ērī, fessus sum** [fatior, confess], *a.*, *n.*, confess publicly, avow *or* declare one's purpose. 4

cōn-surgo, -ere, surrēxī, surrēctus [surgō, rise], *n.*, arise together *or* in a body, rise up; *of a session*, break up. 2

16. **dēsertor, -ōris** [dē-serō, abandon], M., a deserter. 1

17. **prōditor, -ōris** [prō-dō, betray], M., betrayer, traitor. 1

18. **dē-rogō, 1.** [rōgō, ask], *a.*, modify a law; detract from, take away, withdraw. 1

violō, 1. [vīs, violence], *a.*, injure, outrage, violate. 2

4. **colōnia, -ae** [colōnus, a husbandman], F., a colony; *abstract for concrete*, colonists, planters. 1

fertilis, -e [ferō, bear], fruitful, fertile, productive. 2

5. **Hercynius, -a, -um,** Hercynian: **silva,** the Hercynian forest, *the mountain country of Germany extending from the Black Forest to the Bohemian Highlands.* 2

Eratosthenēs, -is, M., *a distinguished Greek astronomer, philosopher, geographer, and poet, born at Cyrene,* B. C. 276; *died at Alexandria,* B. C. 196. 1

---

13. **sē ducem fore:** i. e., of some piratical expedition.

14. **quī . . . prōfiteantur,** *let any who wish to follow volunteer;* an indirect quotation of the challenge of the leader.

16. **ex hīs:** those who have thus publicly pledged their support.

17, 18. **omnium rērum fidēs,** *all confidence.*

illī Orcyniam appellant, Volcae Tectosagēs occupāvērunt atque ibi cōnsēdērunt: quae gēns ād hōc tempus hīs sēdibus sēsē continet summamque habet iūstitiae et bellicae laudis opīniōnem. Nunc, quod in eādem inopiā, egestāte, patientiā, quā ante, Germānī permanent, eōdem vīctū et cultū corporis ūtuntur, Gallīs autem prōvinciārum propīnquitās et trānsmarīnārum rērum nōtitia multa ad cōpiam atque ūsūs largītur, paulātim assuēfactī superārī multīsque vīctī proeliīs nē sē quidem ipsī cum illīs virtūte comparant.

Extent of the Hercynian forest. Its fauna.

25. Hūius Hercyniae silvae, quae suprā dēmōnstrāta est, lātitūdō novem diērum iter expedītō patet: nōn enim aliter fīnīrī potest, neque mēnsūrās itinerum nōvērunt. Oritur ab Helvētiōrum et Nemetum et

7. **Orcynia, -ae,** *adj.*, F., *a Greek name for the Hercynian forest.* 1

Volcae, -ārum, M., *a people of southern Gaul, including the* Arecomici and Tectosages. 3

Tectosagēs, -um, M., *a branch of the Volcae in Gallia Narbonensis.* 1

9. **bellicus, -a, -um** [**bellum**], of *or* in war, military. 1

10. **egestās, -tātis** [**egeō,** need], F., need, want, poverty. 1

patientia, -ae [**patior,** suffer], F., the quality of bearing *or* suffering, patience, endurance. 2

12. **trāns-marīnus, -a, -um** [**mare,** sea], from across *or* beyond the sea, transmarine, foreign. 1

15. **comparō,** 1. [**com-pār,** equal to], *a.*, set in pairs, place in comparison, compare. 2

4. **Nemetēs, -um,** M., *a German tribe on the Rhine about modern Speier.* 2

8, 9. **ibi:** in modern Bavaria. **hīs sēdibus sēsē continet:** i. e., they had successfully resisted the Germans, a proof of their superiority. **laudis,** *for prowess.*

10, 11. **in . . . Germānī,** *in the same (condition of) poverty, want, and endurance (of hardships) as they formerly (were).*

12. **trānsmarīnārum** etc.: see Int. 57.

13, 14. **largītur,** *supplies.* **assuēfactī superārī:** e. g., by the Germans.

1. **suprā:** cf. 24, 5.

2. **lātitūdō:** the breadth from north to south. **novem diērum iter:** i. e., a distance of from 200 to 250 miles.

3. **nōn aliter:** i. e., than by the length of a "day's march." **mēnsūrās:** e. g., miles, paces.

4. **novērunt:** sc. *Germāni.* **oritur** etc., trace its limits on the map.

Rauricōrum fīnibus rēctāque flūminis Dānuviī regiōne pertinet ad fīnēs Dācōrum et Anartium; hinc sē flectit sinistrōrsus dīversīs ā flūmine regiōnibus multārumque gentium fīnēs propter māgnitūdinem attingit; neque quisquam est hūius Germāniae, quī sē aut adīsse ad initium ēius silvae dīcat, cum diērum iter LX prōcesserit, aut, quō ex locō oriātur, accēperit; multaque in eā genera ferārum nāscī cōnstat, quae reliquīs in locīs vīsa nōn sint; ex quibus quae māximē differant ā cēterīs et memoriae prōdenda videantur, haec sunt.

26. Est bōs cervī figūrā, cūius ā mediā frōnte inter aurēs ūnum cornū existit excelsius magisque dērēctum hīs, quae nōbīs nōta sunt, cornibus: ab ēius summō sīcut *The reindeer.*

5. **rēctus, -a, -um** [**regō**, direct], direct, straight.
Dānuvius, -iī, M., *the* Danube. 1
6. **Dācī, -ōrum**, M., *inhabitants of the province, Dacia.*
Anartēs, -ium, M., *a German tribe near the Hercynian forest.* 1
hinc, *adv.*, [*for* **hince**, *fr.* **hīc**, here], from here, hence. 2
sinistrōrsus, *adv.*, [**sinister**, left + **vertō**], turned to the left, to the left. 1
11. **fera, -ae** [**ferus**, wild], a wild beast, wild animal.

1. **bōs, bovis**, M., F., ox, bull; cow: *in pl.* cattle.
cervus, -ī, M., stag, deer: *in pl. by meton.*, forked stakes, *used to break cavalry charges.*
2. **auris, -is** [*cf.* **audiō**], F., an ear.
excelsus, -a, -um [**excellō**, be eminent], eminent, elevated, high, tall.
3. **sīc-ut** (**sīc-utī**) *adv.*, so far as, just as, as.

---

5. **rēctā . . . regiōne**, *in a course parallel with the river Danube.*

6. **sinistrōrsus**: i. e., the northeast. The river here takes an abrupt turn to the south and leaves the forest highlands.

8. **hūius Germāniae**: i. e., western Germany.

9, 10. **initium**: i. e., the eastern extremity. **diērum iter LX**: about 600 miles. **quō ex locō oriātur**: i. e., where the *initium* is.

13. **haec**, *the following.*

1. **bōs cervī figūrā**: the Romans called any large animal that they did not know *bōs*. Here Caesar means the reindeer, which in early times had a wide range in Europe, extending as far as the south of France. **ā mediā frōnte**, *from the middle of the forehead.*

2. **ūnum cornū existit**: a mistake most satisfactorily accounted for by the assumption that neither Caesar nor his informants had ever seen the reindeer.

3. **hīs cornibus**: for the case cf. III, 5, 1; II, 7, 11; I, 22, 3. **ab . . . summō**, *from its top:* for the use of the adjective cf. II, 18, 2.

palmae rāmīque lātē diffunduntur. Eadem est fēminae marisque nātūra, eadem fōrma māgnitūdōque cornuum.

The elk. 27. Sunt item, quae appellantur alcēs. Hārum est cōnsimilis caprīs figūra et varietās pellium, sed māgnitūdine paulō antecēdunt mutilaeque sunt cornibus et crūra sine nōdīs articulīsque habent, neque quiētis causā prōcumbunt, neque, sī quō afflīctae cāsū conciderunt, ērigere sēsē aut sublevāre possunt. Hīs sunt arborēs prō cubīlibus: ad eās sē applicant atque ita paulum modo reclīnātae quiētem capiunt. Quārum ex vestīgiīs cum est animadversum ā vēnātōribus, quō sē recipere cōnsuērint, omnēs eō locō aut ab rādīcibus subruunt aut accīdunt arborēs, tantum ut summa speciēs eārum stantium relinquātur. Hūc cum sē cōnsuētūdine re-

4. **palma, -ae,** F., the palm *of the hand*, the hand; the palm-tree; a broom of palm twigs.
diffundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsus [dis- + fundō, pour], *n.*, pour *or* spread out, branch widely.
5. **mās, maris,** masculine, male: *subst.*, a male.

1. **alcēs, -is,** F., an elk; (?) moose-deer. 1
2. **capra, -ae,** F., a she-goat. 1
varietās, -tātis [varius, different], F., difference, diversity, variety. 2
3. **mutilus, -a, -um,** maimed, mutilated, without. 1
crūs, crūris, N., the leg *below the knee*, shank; the leg. 1
nōdus, -ī, M., knot, joint. 1
4. **articulus, -ī,** [*dim. of* artus, joint], M., a little joint, knuckle, knot. 1
quiēs, -ētis, F., rest, repose, quiet. 5
6. **cubīle, -is** [cubō, lie down], N., couch, bed, resting-place, lair. 1
7. **ap(ad-)plicō, 1.** [plicō, fold], *n.*, fold *or* bring near, attach, apply, bend toward, incline, lean. 1
re-clīnō, 1. *n.*, bend *or* lean back, recline. 1
8. **vēnātor, -ōris** [vēnor, hunt], M., hunter. 1
9. **quō,** *interrog. adv.*, whither, to what place *or* person *or* thing. 5
rādīx, -īcis, F., a root. 5
10. **accīdo, -ere, cīdi, cīsus** [caedō, cut], *a.*, cut at *or* into, cut deep, hew, notch. 1

4, 5. **eadem . . . cornuum:** on the contrary the horns of the female are smaller than those of the male.

1. **alcēs,** *elk.* It is to-day found only in northern Europe, having moved north on account of the changes in the climate.

2. **varietās pellium,** *varied color.*

3. **cornibus:** for case cf. 12, 8. **sine nōdīs:** the same notion was long prevalent at Rome regarding the elephant.

10. **summa speciēs,** *the general appearance.*

clīnāvērunt, īnfīrmās arborēs pondere affligunt atque ūnā ipsae concidunt.

Description of the urus.

28. Tertium est genus eōrum, quī ūrī appellantur. Hī sunt māgnitūdine paulō īnfrā elephantōs, speciē et colōre et figūrā taurī. Māgna vīs eōrum est et māgna vēlōcitās, neque hominī neque ferae, quam cōnspēxērunt, parcunt. Hōs studiōsē foveīs captōs interficiunt; hōc sē labōre dūrant adulēscentēs atque hōc genere vēnātiōnis exercent, et quī plūrimōs ex hīs interfēcērunt, relātīs in pūblicum cornibus, quae sunt testimōniō, māgnam ferunt laudem. Sed assuēscere ad hominēs et mānsuēfierī nē parvulī quidem exceptī possunt. Amplitūdō cornuum et figūra et speciēs multum ā nostrōrum boum cornibus differt. Haec studiōsē conquīsīta ab labrīs argentō circumclūdunt atque in amplissimīs epulīs prō pōculīs ūtuntur.

1. **ūrus, -ī,** M., wild ox, bison. 1
2. **elephantus, -ī,** M., an elephant; ivory. 1
3. **taurus, -ī,** M., bull; ox. 1
4. **vēlōcitās, -tātis** [**vēlōx,** swift], F., swiftness, rapidity. 1
5. **parcō, -ere, pepercī, parsus** [**parcus,** frugal], *n.*, act *or* use carefully, spare, not injure. *
studiōsē [**studiōsus,** eager], *adv.*, eagerly, zealously, carefully. 1
fovea, -ae [**fodiō,** dig], F., a whole *dug in the earth*, pitfall, snare. 1
6. **dūrō,** 1. [**dūrus,** hard], *a.*, make hardy, harden. 1
8. **testimōnium, -ī** [**testor,** be a witness], N., witness, evidence, proof. 4
9. as **(ad-)suēscō, -ere, suēvī, suētus** [**suēscō,** accustom], *a.*, *n.*, accustom, habituate; become accustomed *or* familiarized. 1
mānsuēfaciō, -ere, fēcī, factus [**mānsuēscō,** grow tame + **faciō**], *a.*, tame; *in pass.*, **mānsuēfīō,** be tamed. 1
12. **argentum, -ī,** N., silver; silver plate *or* coin; money. 2
circumclūdō, -ere, clūdī, clusus [**claudō,** shut], *a.*, shut in, enclose around, surround. 1
13. **epulae, -ārum,** F., feast, banquet. 1
pōculum, -ī [cf. **pōtō,** drink], N., drinking-vessel, cup, bowl, goblet. 1

---

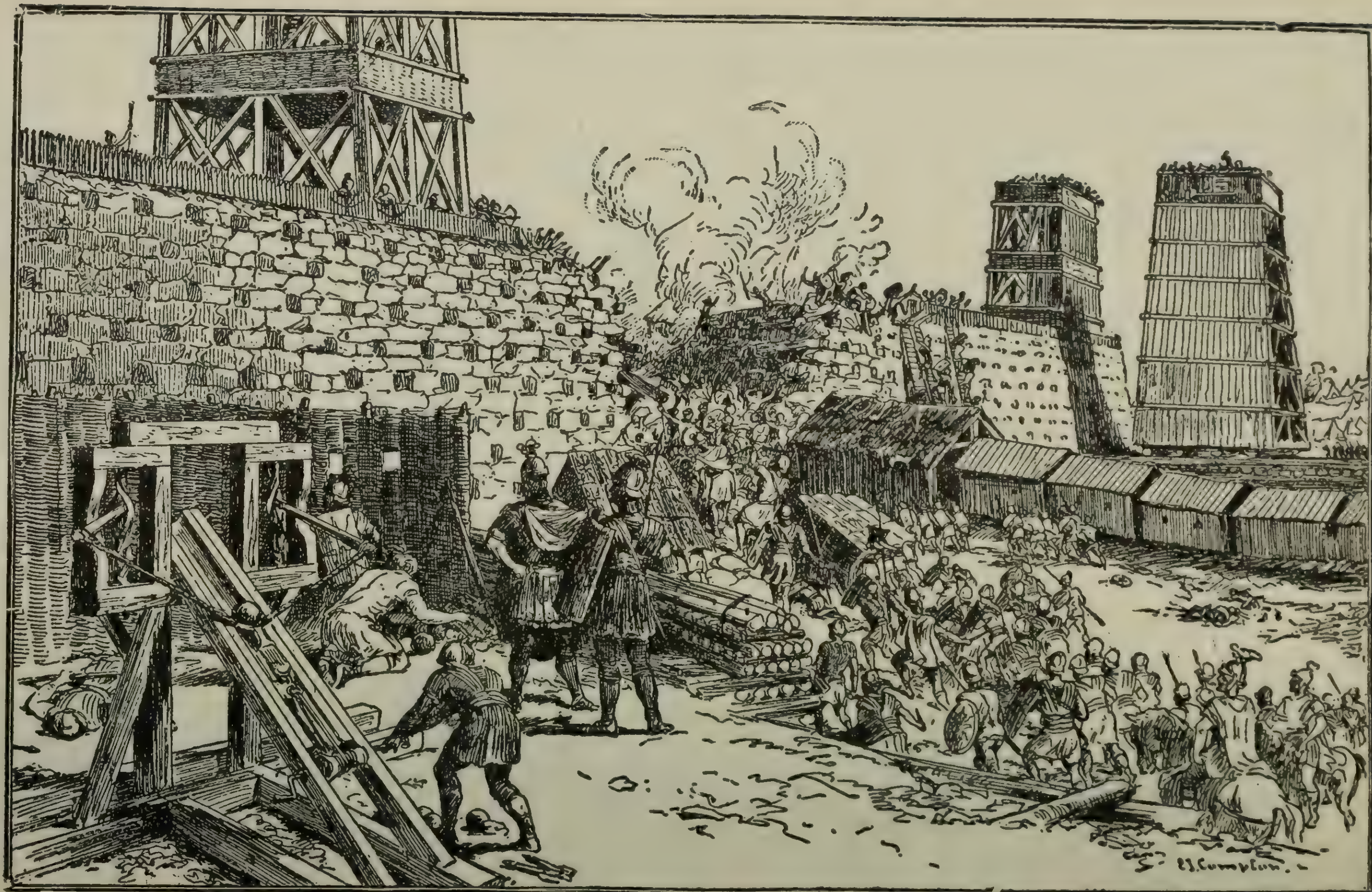
1. **ūrī**: the German auerochs or urochs (*mountain or wild ox*) which has long been extinct in Europe. Some identify it with the bison, though the description here given does not fit that animal.

2, 3. **hī sunt speciē** etc., *these have the appearance* etc. **speciē**: for case cf. V, **14,** 7; IV, **1,** 20; III, **13,** 8; II, **18,** 4; I, **39,** 5.

4. **hominī, ferae:** for case cf. **13,** 28.

9, 10. **nē . . . exceptī,** *not even if taken while young.*

12. **ab . . . argentō,** *with a rim of silver.*



STORMING A CITY.

Caesar returns into Gaul from the Suebi and goes against Ambiorix.

29. Caesar, postquam per Ubiōs explōrātōrēs comperit Suēbōs sēsē in silvās recēpisse, inopiam frūmentī veritus, quod, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, minimē hominēs Germānī agricultūrae student, cōnstituit nōn prōgredī longius; sed nē omnīnō metum reditūs suī barbarīs tolleret atque ut eōrum auxilia tardāret, reductō exercitū partem ūltimam pontis, quae rīpās Ubiōrum contingēbat, in longitūdinem pedum ducentōrum rescindit, atque in extrēmō ponte turrim tabulātōrum quattuor cōnstituit praesidiumque cohortium duodecim pōntis tuendī causā pōnit māgnīsque eum locum mūnītiōnibus fīrmat. Eī locō praesidiōque C. Volcācium Tullum adulēscentem praefēcit. Ipse, cum mātūrēscere frūmenta inciperent, ad bellum Ambiorigis profectus per Arduennam silvam, quae est tōtīus Galliae māxima atque ā rīpīs Rhēnī fīnibusque Trēverōrum ad Nerviōs pertinet mīlibusque amplius quīngentīs in longitūdinem patet, L. Minucium Basilum cum omnī equitātū praemittit, sī quid celeritāte itineris atque oportūnitāte temporis prōficere posset, monet, ut īgnēs in castrīs fierī prohibeat, nē qua ēius adventūs procul sīgnificātiō fīat: sēsē cōnfestim subsequī dīcit.

Ambiorix is surprised by Basilus and narrowly escapes.

30. Basilus, ut imperātum est, facit. Celeriter contrāque omnium opīniōnem cōnfectō itinere multōs in agrīs inopīnantēs dēprehendit; eōrum indiciō ad ipsum Ambiorigem contendit, quō in locō cum paucīs equitibus esse dīcēbātur. Multum cum in omnibus rēbus, tum in rē mīlitārī potest fōrtūna. Nam sīcut māgnō accidit cāsū, ut in ipsum incautum etiam atque imparātum incideret, priusque ēius adventus ab hominibus vidērētur, quam fāma āc nūntius afferrētur, sīc māgnae fuit fōrtūnae omnī mīlitārī īnstrūmentō, quod circum sē habēbat, ēreptō,

rēdīs equīsque comprehēnsīs ipsum effugere mortem. Sed hōc factum est, quod aedificiō circumdatō silvā, ut sunt ferē domicilia Gallōrum, quī vītandī aestūs causā plērumque silvārum āc flūminum petunt propīnquitātēs, comitēs familiārēsque ēius angustō in locō paulisper equitum nostrōrum vim sustinuērunt, Hīs pūgnantibus illum in equum quīdam ex suīs intulit: fugientem silvae tēxērunt. Sīc et ad subeundum perīculum et ad vītandum multum fōrtūna valuit.

He disbands his forces.

31. Ambiorix cōpiās suās iūdiciōne nōn condūxerit, quod proeliō dīmicandum nōn exīstimārit, an tempore exclūsus et repentīnō equitum adventū prohibitus, cum reliquum exercitum subsequī crēderet, dubium est; sed certē dīmīssīs per agrōs nūntiīs sibi quemque cōnsulere iussit. Quōrum pars in Arduennam silvam, pars in continentēs palūdēs profūgit: quī proximī Ōceanō fuērunt, hī īnsulīs sēsē occultāvērunt, quās aestūs efficere cōnsuērunt: multī ex suīs fīnibus ēgressī sē suaque omnia aliēnissimīs crēdidērunt. Catuvolcus, rēx dīmidiae partis Eburōnum, quī ūnā cum Ambiorige cōnsilium inierat, aetāte iam cōnfectus cum labōrem bellī aut fugae ferre nōn posset, omnibus precibus dētestātus Ambiorigem, quī ēius cōnsiliī auctor fuisset, taxō, cūius māgna in Galliā Germāniāque cōpia est, sē exanimāvit.

Suicide of his colleague, Catuvolccs.

Submission of the Segni and Condrusi. Cicero is placed in charge of the stores.

32. Sēgnī Condrūsīque ex gente et numerō Germānōrum, quī sunt inter Eburōnēs Trēverōsque, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt ōrātum, nē sē in hostium numerō dūceret neve omnium Germānōrum, quī essent citrā Rhēnum, ūnam esse causam iūdicāret; nihil sē dē bellō cōgitāsse, nūlla Ambiorigī auxilia mīsisse. Caesar explōrātā rē quaestiōne captīvōrum, sī quī ad eōs Eburōnēs ex fugā convēnissent, ad sē ut redūcerentur, im-

perāvit: sī ita fēcissent, fīnēs eōrum sē violāturum negāvit. Tum cōpiīs in trīs partēs distribūtīs impedīmenta omnium legiōnum Aduātucam contulit. Id castellī nōmen est. Hōc ferē est in mediīs Eburōnum fīnibus, ubi Titurius atque Aurunculēius hiemandī causā cōnsēderant. Hunc cum reliquīs rēbus locum probārat, tum quod superiōris annī mūnītiōnēs integrae manēbant, ut mīlitum labōrem sublevāret. Praesidiō impedīmentīs legiōnem quartamdecimam relīquit, ūnam ex hīs tribus, quās proximē cōnscrīptās ex Ītaliā trādūxerat. Eī legiōnī castrīsque Q. Tullium Cicerōnem praeficit ducentōsque equitēs eī attribuit.

Caesar divides his troops and continues in pursuit of Ambiorix.

33. Partītō exercitū T. Labiēnum cum legiōnibus tribus ad Ōceanum versus in eās partēs, quae Menapiōs attingunt, proficīscī iubet; C. Trebonium cum parī legiōnum numerō ad eam regiōnem, quae ad Aduātucōs adiacet, dēpopulandam mittit; ipse cum reliquīs tribus ad flūmen Scaldem, quod īnfluit in Mosam, extrēmāsque Arduennae partīs īre cōnstituit, quō cum paucīs equitibus profectum Ambiorigem audiēbat. Discēdēns post diem septimum sēsē reversūrum cōnfīrmat, quam ad diem eī legiōnī, quae in praesidiō relinquēbātur, dēbērī frūmentum sciēbat. Labiēnum Treboniumque hortātur, sī reīpūblicae commodō facere possint, ad eam diem revertantur, ut rūrsus commūnicātō cōnsiliō explōrātīsque hostium ratiōnibus aliud initium bellī capere possint.

Straits of the Romans. Caesar invites allies with the hope of plunder.

34. Erat, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, manus certa nūlla, nōn oppidum, nōn praesidium, quod sē armīs dēfenderet, sed in omnīs partīs dispersa multitūdō. Ubi cuīque aut vallēs abdita aut locus silvestris aut palūs impedīta spem praesidiī aut salūtis aliquam offerēbat, cōnsēderat. Haec loca vīcīnitātibus erant nōta, māgnam-

que rēs dīligentiam requīrēbat nōn in summā exercitūs tuendā (nūllum enim poterat ūniversīs ab perterritīs āc dispersīs perīculum accidere), sed in singulīs mīlitibus cōnservandīs; quae tamen ex parte rēs ad salūtem exercitūs pertinēbat. Nam et praedae cupiditās multōs longius ēvocābat, et silvae incertīs occultīsque itineribus cōnfertōs adīre prohibēbant. Sī negōtium cōnficī stirpemque hominum scelerātōrum interficī vellet, dīmittendae plūrēs mānūs dīdūcendīque erant mīlitēs: sī continēre ad sīgna manipulōs vellet, ut īnstitūta ratiō et cōnsuētūdō exercitūs Rōmānī postulābat, locus ipse erat praesidiō barbarīs, neque ex occultō īnsidiandī et dispersōs circumveniendī singulīs deerat audācia. Ut in ēiusmodī difficultātibus, quantum dīligentiā prōviderī poterat, prōvidēbātur, ut potius in nocendō aliquid praetermitterētur, etsī omnium animī ad ulcīscendum ārdēbant, quam cum aliquō mīlitum dētrīmentō nocērētur. Dīmittit ad fīnitimās cīvitātēs nūntiōs Caesar: omnēs ēvocat spē praedae ad dīripiendōs Eburōnēs, ut potius in silvīs Gallōrum vīta quam legiōnārius mīles perīclitētur, simul ut māgnā multitūdine circumfūsā prō talī facinore stirps āc nōmen cīvitātis tollātur. Māgnus undique numerus celeriter convenit.

The Sugambri, Germans, come to share the plunder of the Eburones and march against Cicero at Aduatuca.

35. Haec in omnibus Eburōnum partibus gerēbantur, diēsque appetēbat septimus, quem ad diem Caesar ad impedīmenta legiōnemque revertī cōnstituerat. Hīc, quantum in bellō fōrtūna possit et quantōs afferat cāsūs, cōgnōscī potuit. Dissipātīs āc perterritīs hostibus, ut dēmōnstrāvimus, manus erat nūlla, quae parvam modo causam timōris afferret. Trāns Rhēnum, ad Germānōs pervenit fāma, dīripī Eburōnēs atque ūltrō omnēs ad praedam ēvocārī. Cōgunt equitum duo mīlia Sugambrī, quī sunt proximī Rhēnō, ā quibus receptōs ex fugā Tencterōs

atque Usipetēs suprā docuimus. Trānseunt Rhēnum nāvibus ratibusque trīgintā mīlibus passuum īnfrā eum locum, ubi pōns erat perfectus praesidiumque ā Caesare relīctum: prīmōs Eburōnum fīnēs adeunt: mūltōs ex fugā dispersōs excipiunt, māgnō pecoris numerō, cūius sunt cupidissimī barbarī, potiuntur. Invītātī praedā longius prōcēdunt. Nōn hōs palūs in bellō latrōciniīsque nātōs, nōn silvae morantur. Quibus in locīs sit Caesar, ex captīvīs quaerunt; profectum longius reperiunt omnemque exercitum discessisse cōgnōscunt. Atque ūnus ex captīvīs: 'Quid vōs,' inquit, 'hanc miseram āc tenuem sectāminī praedam, quibus licet iam esse fōrtūnātissimos? Tribus hōrīs Aduātucam venīre potestis: hūc omnēs suās fōrtūnās exercitus Rōmānōrum contulit: praesidiī tantum est, ut nē mūrus quidem cingī possit, neque quisquam ēgredī extrā mūnītiōnēs audeat.' Oblātā spē Germānī quam nactī erant praedam in occultō relinquunt; ipsī Aduātucam contendunt ūsī eōdem duce, cūius haec indiciō cōgnōverant.

Cicero, unwarily, sends five cohorts to forage.

36. Cicerō, quī omnēs superiōrēs diēs praeceptīs Caesaris summā dīligentiā mīlitēs in castrīs continuisset āc nē cālōnem quidem quemquam extrā mūnītiōnem ēgredī passus esset, septimō diē diffīdēns dē numerō diērum Caesarem fidem servātūrum, quod longius prōgressum audiēbat neque ūlla dē reditū ēius fāma afferēbātur, simul eōrum permōtus vōcibus, quī illīus patientiam paene obsessiōnem appellābant, [siquidem ex castrīs ēgredī nōn licēret], nūllum ēiusmodī cāsum exspectāns, quō novem oppositīs legiōnibus māximōque equitātū dispersīs āc paene dēlētīs hostibus in mīlibus passuum tribus offendī posset, quīnque cohortēs frūmentātum in proximās segetēs mittit, quās inter et castra ūnus omnīnō collis intererat. Complūrēs erant ex legiōnibus aegrī relīctī; ex quibus quī hōc spatiō diērum con-

valuerant, circiter CCC, sub vēxillō ūnā mittuntur; māgna praetereā multitūdō cālōnum, māgna vis iūmentōrum, quae in castrīs subsēderant, factā potestāte sequitur.

The Sugambri surprise Cicero's camp.

37. Hōc ipsō tempore et cāsū Germānī equitēs interveniunt prōtinusque eōdem illō, quō vēnerant, cursū ab decumanā portā in castra irrumpere cōnantur, nec prius sunt vīsī obiectīs ab eā parte silvīs, quam castrīs appropīnquārent, usque eō, ut quī sub vāllō tenderent mercātōrēs recipiendī suī facultātem nōn habērent. Inopīnantēs nostrī rē novā perturbantur, āc vix prīmum impetum cohors in statiōne sustinet. Circumfunduntur ex reliquīs hostēs partibus, sī quem aditum reperīre possent. Aegrē portās nostrī tuentur, reliquōs aditūs locus ipse per sē mūnītiōque dēfendit. Tōtīs trepidātur castrīs, atque alius ex aliō causam tumultūs quaerit; neque quō sīgna ferantur, neque quam in partem quisque conveniat, prōvident. Alius castra iam capta prōnūntiat, alius dēlētō exercitū atque imperātōre vīctōrēs barbarōs vēnisse contendit; plērīque novās sibi ex locō religiōnēs fingunt Cottaeque et Titurīī calamitātem, quī in eōdem occīderint castellō, ante oculōs pōnunt. Tālī timōre omnibus perterritīs cōnfīrmātur opīniō barbarīs, ut ex captīvō audierant, nūllum esse intus praesidium. Perrumpere nītuntur sēque ipsī adhortantur, nē tantam fōrtūnam ex manibus dīmittant.

Valiant exploit of Sextius Baculus.

38. Erat aeger in praesidiō relīctus P. Sextius Baculus, quī prīmum pīlum apud Caesarem dūxerat, cūius mentiōnem superiōribus proeliīs fēcimus, āc diem iam quīntum cibō caruerat. Hīc diffīsus suae atque omnium salūtī inermis ex tabernāculō prōdit: videt imminēre hostēs atque in summō esse rem discrīmine: capit arma ā proximīs atque in portā cōnsistit. Cōnsequuntur hunc centuriōnēs

ēius cohortis, quae in statiōne erat; paulisper ūnā proelium sustinent. Relinquit animus Sextium gravibus acceptīs vulneribus: aegrē per manūs tractus servātur. Hōc spatiō interpositō reliquī sēsē cōnfīrmant tantum, ut in mūnītiōnibus cōnsistere audeant speciemque dēfēnsōrum praebeant.

The foragers return and are attacked by the Sugambri.

39. Interim cōnfectā frūmentātiōne mīlitēs nostrī clāmōrem exaudiunt: praecurrunt equitēs; quantō rēs sit in perīculō cōgnōscunt. Hīc vērō nūlla mūnītiō est, quae perterritōs recipiat: modo cōnscrīptī atque ūsus mīlitāris imperītī ad tribūnum mīlitum centuriōnēsque ōra convertunt; quid ab hīs praecipiātur exspectant. Nēmō est tam fortis, quīn reī novitāte perturbētur. Barbarī sīgna procul cōnspicātī oppūgnātiōne dēsistunt: redīsse prīmō legiōnēs crēdunt, quās longius discessisse ex captīvīs cōgnōverant, posteā dīspectā paucitāte ex omnibus partibus impetum faciunt.

The foragers regain the camp with great loss.

40. Cālōnēs in proximum tumulum prōcurrunt. Hinc celeriter dēiectī sē in sīgna manipulōsque cōniciunt; eō magis timidōs perterrent mīlitēs. Aliī, cuneō factō ut celeriter perrumpant, cēnsent, quoniam tam propīnqua sint castra, et sī pars aliqua circumventa ceciderit, at reliquōs servārī posse cōnfīdunt; aliī, ut in iugō cōnsistant atque eundem omnēs ferant cāsum. Hōc veterēs nōn probant mīlitēs, quōs sub vēxillō ūnā profectōs docuimus. Itaque inter sē cohortātī duce C. Trebōniō, equite Rōmānō, quī eīs erat praepositus, per mediōs hostēs perrumpunt incolumēsque ad ūnum omnēs in castra perveniunt. Hōs subsecūtī cālōnēs equitēsque eōdem impetū mīlitum virtūte servantur. At iī, quī in iugō cōnstiterant, nūllō etiam nunc ūsū reī mīlitāris perceptō neque in eō, quod probāverant, cōnsiliō permanēre, ut sē locō superiōre dēfenderent, neque eam quam

prōdesse aliīs vim celeritātemque vīderant imitārī potuērunt, sed sē in castra recipere cōnātī inīquum in locum dēmīsērunt. Centuriōnēs, quōrum nōnnūllī ex īnferiōribus ōrdinibus reliquārum legionūm virtūtis causā in superiōres erant ōrdinēs hūius legiōnis trāductī, nē ante partam reī mīlitāris laudem āmitterent, fortissimē pūgnantēs concīdērunt. Mīlitum pars hōrum virtūte submōtīs hostibus praeter spem incolumis in castra pervēnit, pars ā barbarīs circumventa periit.

The Germans withdraw. Caesar's arrival allays the fear of the Romans.

41. Germānī dēspērātā expūgnatiōne castrōrum, quod nostrōs iam cōnstitisse in mūnītiōnibus vidēbant, cum eā praedā, quam in silvīs dēposuerant, trāns Rhēnum sēsē recēpērunt. Āc tantus fuit etiam post discessum hostium terror, ut eā nocte, cum C. Volusēnus mīssus cum equitātū ad castra vēnisset, fidem nōn faceret adesse cum incolumī Caesarem exercitū. Sīc omnium animōs timor praeoccupāverat, ut paene aliēnātā mente dēlētīs omnibus cōpiīs equitātum sē ex fugā recēpisse dīcerent neque incolumī exercitū Germānōs castra oppūgnātūrōs fuisse contenderent. Quem timōrem Caesaris adventus sustulit.

Caesar's reflections on the inroad of the Sugambri.

42. Reversus ille, ēventūs bellī nōn īgnōrāns, ūnum, quod cohortēs ex statiōne et praesidiō essent ēmīssae, questus—nē minimum quidem cāsū locum relinquī debuisse—multum fōrtūnam in repentīnō hostium adventū potuisse iūdicāvit, multō etiam amplius, quod paene ab ipsō vāllō portīsque castrōrum barbarōs āvertisset. Quārum omnium rērum māximē admīrandum vidēbātur, quod Germānī, quī eō cōnsiliō Rhēnum trānsierant, ut Ambiorigis fīnēs dēpopulārentur, ad castra Rōmānōrum dēlātī optātissimum Ambiorigī beneficium obtulērunt.

Punishment of the Eburones. Vain attempts to seize Ambiorix.

43. Caesar rūrsus ad vēxandōs hostēs profectus māgnō coāctō numerō ex fīnitimīs cīvitātibus in omnēs partēs dīmittit. Omnēs vīcī atque omnia

aedificia, quae quisque cōnspēxerat, incendēbantur; praeda ex omnibus locīs agēbātur; frūmenta nōn sōlum ā tantā multitūdine iūmentōrum atque hominum cōnsumēbantur, sed etiam annī tempore atque imbribus prōcubuerant, ut, sī quī etiam in praesentiā sē occultāssent, tamen hīs dēductō exercitū rērum omnium inopiā pereundum vidērētur. Āc saepe in eum locum ventum est tantō in omnīs partīs dīvīsō equitātū, ut modo vīsum ab sē Ambiorigem in fugā circumspicerent captīvī nec plānē etiam abīsse ex cōnspectū contenderent, ut spē cōnsequendī illātā atque īnfīnītō labōre susceptō, quī sē summam ā Caesare grātiam initūrōs putārent, paene nātūram studiō vīncerent, semperque paulum ad summam fēlīcitātem dēfuisse vidērētur, atque ille latebrīs aut saltibus sē ēriperet et noctū occultātus aliās regiōnēs partēsque peteret nōn māiōre equitum praesidiō quam quattuor, quibus sōlīs vītam suam committere audēbat.

Punishment of Acco, chief of the Senones. Winter arrangements.

44. Tālī modō vāstātīs regiōnibus exercitum Caesar duārum cohortium damnō Durocortōrum Rēmōrum redūcit, conciliōque in eum locum Galliae indictō dē coniūrātiōne Senonum et Carnūtum quaestiōnem habēre īnstituit; et dē Accōne, quī prīnceps ēius cōnsiliī fuerat, graviōre sententiā prōnūntiātā mōre māiōrum supplicium sūmpsit. Nōnnūllī iūdicium veritī prōfūgērunt. Quibus cum aquā atque īgnī interdīxisset, duās legiōnēs ad fīnēs Trēverōrum, duās in Lingonibus, sex reliquās in Senonum fīnibus Agedincī in hībernīs collocāvit frūmentōque exercituī prōvīsō, ut īnstituerat, in Ītaliam ad conventūs agendōs profectus est.

BOOK. VII.—VERCINGETORIX: GENERAL UPRISING OF THE GAULS: ALESIA.

The Celts were again beaten, but still not utterly cast down. Caesar's action in leaving Gaul at this perilous juncture was due in part to political conditions necessitating his proximity to the political agitation at Rome, and in part to his knowledge of the Celtic character. What he had not counted upon was the spirit of unity which under the teaching of misfortune had taken root throughout the land; nor had he counted upon the appearance of a genius akin to his own to direct into well-planned channels of effort the determination of a gallant race to regain its freedom.

The special anxieties of Caesar in the direction of Rome were well known to the insurgents, and they conceived that the time had come for a general uprising. The massacre of a number of Romans at Cenabum (Orleans) gave the signal. Instantly the patriots in every quarter were in agitation. The revolt spread with remarkable rapidity. Through the influence of Vercingetorix, henceforth the master spirit in the Celtic councils, the Arverni, who had hitherto been staunch friends of Rome, joined the patriotic party and led almost all the south land with them. In the east everything depended upon the decision of the Aedui, who still hesitated. At this crisis Caesar, unheralded, crossed the Alps and Cevennes, secretly traversed the hostile territory and joined his army, thus destroying all the hopes that the patriots had cherished of driving the legions out of Gaul in his absence.

Vercingetorix had now to solve the problem of making head against the Romans. Feeling their superiority in the field, he devised a plan of campaign which consisted in the avoidance of a general engagement, the laying waste the country far and wide, the destruction of towns and magazines of supplies, and the constant harassing of the enemy's forces.

Ere the close of the winter the hostile movements of the Celtic patriots forced Caesar to break up camp and march against them. Accordingly, he moved south to Cenabum, the scene of the first outbreak, destroyed the town, and crossed the Loire into the country of the Bituriges. Vercingetorix sent his cavalry into the country with orders to burn everything within the reach of the Roman foraging parties. Twenty towns of the Bituriges were burned in a single day. The same fate was decreed to their capital, Avaricum, but yielding to the prayers

of the Bituriges, Vercingetorix consented to defend it. Only after great efforts was Caesar able to reduce the place. An awful carnage followed the successful assault of the Romans. Only eight hundred escaped to the camp of Vercingetorix out of the forty thousand who were engaged in the defense.

Undismayed by this disaster, Vercingetorix used it to stimulate the Gauls to still greater efforts. The Roman general had divided his army, sending Labienus with four legions north toward Agedincum and Lutetia, while he with six legions followed Vercingetorix. Labienus was checked in his attempt upon Lutetia by Camulogenus. Vercingetorix took a strong position under the walls of Gergovia, the capital of the Arverni and an impregnable fortress. Caesar could not afford to linger long before Gergovia, and after an unsuccessful assault, he accepted his first personal defeat at the hands of the Gauls, and withdrew. A rapid march brought him to Sens, where he was joined by Labienus, who had succeeded in surprising and routing the Gauls in his front.

As a result of the reverse at Gergovia the Aedui threw of the yoke of allegiance to Rome, and their capital, Bibracte, became the center of patriotic effort. Caesar having strengthened his cavalry by a force of German horsemen, and having procured supplies from the same source, slowly advanced toward the country of the Aedui. At the Vingeanne river the Gallic leader made the fatal mistake of departing from his plan of avoiding a battle. The usual result followed. The Gauls were badly defeated and retreated to Alesia. Caesar followed them and at once invested the fortress. Alesia fell, and with it sank the last hope of Gallic independence; for while the loss of the fortress might be retrieved, the loss of the brave and able leader could not. With a few exceptions the allied tribes quietly submitted. The conciliatory policy which Caesar now adopted soon healed the wounds of war, and the Gauls ever remained faithful to him and to his fortunes.

REFERENCES FOR READING.

PLUTARCH: Caesar.
FROUDE: Caesar, a sketch, pp. 270–290. (Harper's ed.).
TROLLOPE: Caesar, chap. viii. (Ancient Classic Series).
MOMMSEN: History of Rome, vol. iv. pp. 323–349.
MERIVALE: History of Rome under the Empire, vol. ii, chap. xii.
NAPOLEON: Julius Caesar, vol. ii, chap. x.

COMMENTARIUS SEPTIMUS.

Important events at Rome. The Gauls plan a revolt.

1. Quiētā Galliā Caesar, ut cōnstituerat, in Ītaliam ad conventūs agendōs proficīscitur. Ibi cōgnōscit dē Clodiī caede, dē senātūsque cōnsultō certior factus, ut omnēs iūniōrēs Ītaliae coniūrārent, dēlēctum tōtā prōvinciā habēre īnstituit. Eae rēs in Galliam Trānsalpīnam celeriter perferuntur. Addunt ipsī et affingunt rumōribus Gallī, quod rēs poscere vidēbātur, retinērī urbānō mōtū Caesarem neque in tantīs dissēnsiōnibus ad exercitum venīre posse. Hāc impulsī occāsiōne, quī iam ante sē populī Rōmānī imperiō subiectōs dolērent, līberius atque audācius dē bellō cōnsilia inīre incipiunt. Indictīs inter sē prīncipēs Galliae conciliīs silvestribus āc remōtīs locīs queruntur dē Accōnis morte; posse hunc cāsum ad ipsōs recidere dēmōnstrant: miserantur commūnem Galliae fōrtūnam: omnibus pollicitātiōnibus āc praemiīs dēposcunt, quī bellī initium faciant et suī capitis perīculō Galliam in lībertātem vindicent. Imprīmīs ratiōnem esse habendam dīcunt, priusquam eōrum clandestīna cōnsilia efferantur, ut Caesar ab exercitū interclūdātur. Id esse facile, quod neque legiōnēs audeant absente imperātōre ex hībernīs ēgredī, neque imperātor sine praesidiō ad legiōnēs pervenīre possit. Postrēmō in aciē praestāre interficī, quam nōn veterem bellī glōriam lībertātemque, quam ā māiōribus accēperint, recuperāre.

The Carnutes take the initiative.

2. Hīs rēbus agitātīs prōfitentur Carnūtēs sē nūllum perīculum commūnis salūtis causā recūsā-

re prīncipēsque ex omnibus bellum factūrōs pollicentur et, quoniam in praesentiā obsidibus cavēre inter sē nōn possint, nē rēs efferātur, ut iūreiūrandō āc fidē sanciātur, petunt, collātīs mīlitāribus sīgnīs, quō mōre eōrum gravissimā caerimōniā continētur, nē factō initiō bellī ā reliquīs dēserantur. Tum collaudātīs Carnūtibus, datō iūreiūrandō ab omnibus, quī aderant, tempore ēius reī cōnstitūtō ab conciliō discēditur.

They massacre the Romans at Cenabum.

3. Ubi ea diēs vēnit, Carnūtēs Gutruātō et Conconnetodumnō ducibus, dēspērātīs hominibus, Cēnabum sīgnō datō concurrunt cīvēsque Rōmānōs, quī negōtiandī causā ibi cōnstiterant, in hīs C. Fūfium Citam, honestum equitem Rōmānum, quī reī frūmentariae iūssū Caesaris praeerat, interficiunt bonaque eōrum dīripiunt. Celeriter ad omnēs Galliae cīvitātēs fāma perfertur. Nam ubi quae māior atque illūstrior incidit rēs, clāmōre per agrōs regiōnēsque sīgnificant; hunc aliī deinceps excipiunt et proximīs trādunt, ut tum accidit. Nam quae Cēnabī oriente sōle gesta essent, ante prīmam cōnfectam vigiliam in fīnibus Arvernōrum audīta sunt, quod spatium est mīlium passuum circiter CLX.

Many tribes unite under Vercingetorix, King of the Arverni.

4. Similī ratiōne ibi Vercingetorix, Celtillī fīlius, Arvernus, summae potentiae adulēscēns, cūius pater prīncipātum Galliae tōtīus obtinuerat et ob eam causam, quod rēgnum appetēbat, ā cīvitāte erat interfectus, convocātīs suīs clientibus facile incendit. Cōgnitō ēius cōnsiliō ad arma concurritur. Prohibētur ab Gobannitiōne, patruō suō, reliquīsque prīncipibus, quī hanc temptandam fōrtūnam nōn exīstimābant, expellitur ex oppidō Gergoviā; nōn dēstitit tamen atque in agrīs habet dēlēctum egentium āc perditōrum. Hāc coāctā manū, quōscumque adit ex cīvitāte, ad suam sententiam perdūcit; hortātur, ut

commūnis lībertātis causā arma capiant, māgnīsque coāctīs cōpiīs adversāriōs suōs ā quibus paulō ante erat ēiectus, expellit ex cīvitāte. Rēx ab suīs appellātur. Dīmittit quōque versus lēgātiōnēs; obtestātur, ut in fidē maneant. Celeriter sibi Senonēs, Parisiōs, Pictonēs, Cadurcōs, Turonōs, Aulercōs, Lemovīcēs, Andōs reliquōsque omnēs, quī Ōceanum attingunt, adiungit; omnium cōnsensū ad eum dēfertur imperium. Quā oblātā potestāte omnibus hīs cīvitātibus obsidēs imperat, certum numerum mīlitum ad sē celeriter addūcī iubet, armōrum quantum quaeque cīvitās domī quodque ante tempus efficiat, cōnstituit; imprīmīs equitātuī studet. Summae dīligentiae summam imperiī sevēritātem addit; māgnitūdine suppliciī dubitantēs cōgit. Nam māiōre commīssō dēlīctō īgnī atque omnibus tormentīs necat, leviōre dē causā auribus dēsectīs aut singulīs effossīs oculīs domum remittit, ut sint reliquīs documentō et māgnitūdine poenae perterreant aliōs.

The Bituriges join the league.

5. Hīs suppliciīs celeriter coāctō exercitū Lucterium Cadurcum, summae hominem audāciae, cum parte cōpiārum in Rutenōs mittit; ipse in Biturigēs proficīscitur. Ēius adventū Biturigēs ad Aeduōs, quōrum erant in fidē, lēgātōs mittunt, subsidium rogātum, quō facilius hostium cōpiās sustinēre possint. Aeduī dē cōnsiliō lēgātōrum, quōs Caesar ad exercitum relīquerat, cōpiās equitātūs peditātūsque subsidiō Biturigibus mittunt. Quī cum ad flūmen Ligerim vēnissent, quod Biturigēs ab Aeduīs dīvidit, paucōs diēs ibi morātī neque flūmen trānsīre ausī domum revertuntur lēgātīsque nostrīs renūntiant sē Biturigum perfidiam veritōs revertisse, quibus id cōnsiliī fuisse cōgnōverint, ut, sī flūmen trānsīssent, ūnā ex parte ipsī, alterā Arvernī sē circumsisterent. Id eāne dē causā, quam lēgātīs prōnūntiārunt,

an perfidiā adductī fēcerint, quod nihil nōbīs cōnstat, nōn vidētur prō certō esse pōnendum. Biturigēs eōrum discessū statim sē cum Arvernīs coniungunt.

Caesar returns to Gaul.

6. Hīs rēbus in Ītaliam Caesarī nūntiātīs, cum iam ille urbānās rēs virtūte Cn. Pompēī commodiōrem in statum pervēnisse intellegeret, in Trānsalpīnam Galliam profectus est. Eō cum vēnisset, māgnā difficultāte afficiēbātur, quā ratiōne ad exercitum pervenīre posset. Nam sī legiōnēs in prōvinciam arcesseret, sē absente in itinere proeliō dīmicātūrās intellegēbat; sī ipse ad exercitum contenderet, nē iīs quidem, quī eō tempore quiētī vidērentur, suam salūtem rēctē committī vidēbat.

He thwarts the plans of Lucterius against Narbo.

7. Interim Lucterius Cadurcus in Rutenōs mīssus eam cīvitātem Arvernīs conciliat. Prōgressus in Nitiobrogēs et Gabalōs ab utrīsque obsidēs accipit et māgnā coāctā manū in prōvinciam Narbōnem versus irruptiōnem facere contendit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnibus cōnsiliīs antevertendum exīstimāvit, ut Narbōnem prōficīscerētur. Eō cum vēnisset, timentēs cōnfīrmat, praesidia in Rutenīs prōvinciālibus, Volcīs Arecomicīs, Tolosātibus circumque Narbōnem, quae loca hostibus erant fīnitima, cōnstituit, partem cōpiārum ex prōvinciā supplēmentumque, quod ex Ītaliā addūxerat, in Helviōs, quī fīnēs Arvernōrum contingunt, convenīre iubet.

He surprises the Arverni. Vercingetorix comes to their assistance.

8. Hīs rēbus comparātīs repressō iam Lucteriō et remōtō, quod intrāre intrā praesidia perīculōsum putābat, in Helviōs proficīscitur. Etsī mōns Cevenna, quī Arvernōs ab Helviīs disclūdit, dūrissimō tempore annī altissimā nive iter impediēbat, tamen discussā nive sex in altitūdinem pedum atque ita viīs patefactīs summō mīlitum sudōre ad fīnēs Arvornōrum pervēnit. Quibus op-

pressīs inopīnantibus, quod sē Cevennā ut mūrō mūnītōs exīstimābant, āc nē singulārī quidem umquam hominī eō tempore annī sēmitae patuerant, equitibus imperat, ut quam lātissimē possint vagentur et quam māximum hostibus terrōrem īnferant. Celeriter haec fāma āc nūntiī ad Vercingetorigem perferuntur; quem perterritī omnēs Arvernī circumsistunt atque obsecrant, ut suīs fōrtūnīs cōnsulat, ne ab hostibus dīripiantur, praesertim cum videat omne ad sē bellum trānslātum. Quōrum ille precibus permōtus castra ex Biturigibus movet in Arvernōs versus.

Caesar prepares for the war. Vercingetorix proceeds to besiege the Boian allies in Gergovia.

9. At Caesar bīduum in hīs locīs morātus, quod haec dē Vercingetorige ūsū ventūra opīniōne praecēperat, per causam supplēmentī equitātūsque cōgendī ab exercitū discēdit, Brūtum adulēscentem hīs cōpiīs praeficit; hunc monet, ut in omnīs partēs equitēs quam lātissimē pervagentur: datūrum sē operam, nē longius trīduō ā castrīs absit. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus suīs inopīnantibus quam māximīs potest itineribus Viennam pervēnit. Ibi nanctus recentem equitātum, quem multīs ante diēbus eō praemīserat, neque diurnō neque nocturnō itinere intermīssō per fīnēs Aeduōrum in Lingonēs contendit, ubi duae legiōnēs hiemābant, ut, sī quid etiam dē suā salūte ab Aeduīs inīrētur cōnsiliī, celeritāte praecurreret. Eō cum pervēnisset, ad reliquās legiōnēs mittit priusque omnēs in ūnum locum cōgit, quam dē ēius adventū Arvernīs nūntiārī posset. Hāc rē cōgnitā Vercingetorix rūrsus in Biturigēs exercitum redūcit atque inde profectus Gorgobinam, Bōiōrum oppidum, quōs ibi Helvēticō proeliō vīctōs Caesar collocāverat Aeduīsque attribuerat, oppūgnāre īnstituit.

Caesar decides to bring them relief.

10. Māgnam haec rēs Caesarī difficultātem ad cōnsilium capiendum afferēbat, sī reliquam partem

hiemis ūnō locō legiōnēs continēret, nē stīpendiāriīs Aeduōrum expūgnātīs cūncta Gallia dēficeret, quod nūllum amīcīs in eō praesidium vidēret positum esse: sī mātūrius ex hībernīs ēdūceret, nē ab rē frūmentāriā dūrīs subvēctiōnibus labōrāret. Praestāre vīsum est tamen omnēs difficultātēs perpetī, quam tantā contumēliā acceptā omnium suōrum voluntātēs aliēnāre. Itaque cohortātus Aeduōs dē supportandō commeātū praemittit ad Bōiōs quī dē suō adventū doceant hortenturque, ut in fidē maneant atque hostium impetum māgnō animō sustineant. Duābus Agedincī legiōnibus atque impedīmentīs tōtīus exercitūs relīctīs ad Bōiōs proficīscitur.

Caesar storms Vellaunodunum and Cenabum.

11. Alterō diē cum ad oppidum Senonum Vellaunodūnum vēnisset, nē quem post sē hostem relinqueret, quō expedītiōre rē frūmentāriā ūterētur, oppūgnāre īnstituit eōque bīduō circumvāllāvit; tertiō diē mīssīs ex oppidō lēgātīs dē deditiōne arma cōnferrī, iūmenta prōdūcī, DC obsidēs darī iubet. Ea quī cōnficeret, C. Trebōnium lēgātum relinquit, ipse ut quam prīmum iter faceret. Cēnabum Carnūtum proficīscitur; quī tum prīmum allātō nūntiō dē oppūgnātiōne Vellaunodūnī, cum longius eam rem ductum īrī exīstimārent, praesidium Cēnabī tuendī causā, quod eō mitterent, comparābant. Hūc bīduō pervenit. Castrīs ante oppidum positīs diēī tempore exclūsus in posterum oppūgnātiōnem differt quaeque ad eam rem ūsuī sint mīlitibus imperat et, quod oppidum Cēnabum pōns flūminis Ligeris contingēbat, veritus, nē noctū ex oppidō prōfugerent, duās legiōnēs in armīs excubāre iubet. Cēnabēnsēs paulō antē mediam noctem silentiō ex oppidō ēgressī flūmen trānsīre coepērunt. Quā rē per explōrātōrēs nūntiātā Caesar legiōnēs, quās expedītās esse iusserat, portīs incensīs intrōmittit atque oppidō potītur perpaucīs ex hostium numerō dēsīderātīs, quīn cūnctī

caperentur, quod pontis atque itinerum angustiae multitūdinī fugam interclūserant. Oppidum dīripit atque incendit, praedam mīlitibus dōnat, exercitum Ligerem trādūcit atque in Biturigum fīnēs pervenit.

Vercingetorix leaves Gergovia and marches to Noviodunum.

12. Vercingetorix, ubi dē Caesaris adventū cōgnōvit, oppūgnātiōne dēstitit atque obviam Caesarī proficīscitur. Ille oppidum Biturigum positum in viā Noviodūnum oppūgnāre īnstituerat. Quō ex oppidō cum lēgātī ad eum vēnissent ōrātum, ut sibi īgnōsceret suaeque vītae cōnsuleret, ut celeritāte reliquās rēs cōnficeret, quā plēraque erat cōnsecūtus, arma cōnferrī, equōs prōdūcī, obsidēs darī iubet. Parte iam obsidum trāditā, cum reliqua administrārentur, centuriōnibus et paucīs mīlitibus intrōmīssīs, quī arma iūmentaque conquīrerent, equitātus hostium procul vīsus est, quī āgmen Vercingetorigis antecesserat. Quem simulatque oppidānī cōnspēxērunt atque in spem auxiliī vēnērunt, clāmōre sublātō arma capere, portās claudere, mūrum complēre coepērunt. Centuriōnēs in oppidō cum ex sīgnificātiōne Gallōrum novī aliquid ab iīs inīrī cōnsiliī intellēxissent, gladiīs dēstrictīs portās occupāvērunt suōsque omnēs incolumēs recēpērunt.

A cavalry contest, favorable to Caesar who receives the submission of Noviodunum and departs for Avaricum.

13. Caesar ex castrīs equitātum ēdūcī iubet, proelium equestre committit; labōrantibus iam suīs Germānōs equitēs circiter CCCC submittit, quōs ab initiō sēcum habēre īnstituerat. Eōrum impetum Gāllī sustinēre nōn potuērunt atque in fugam coniectī multīs āmīssīs sē ad āgmen recēpērunt. Quibus prōflīgātīs rūrsus oppidānī perterritī comprehēnsōs eōs, quōrum operā plēbem concitātam exīstimābant, ad Caesarem perdūxērunt sēsēque eī dēdidērunt. Quibus rēbus confectīs Caesar ad oppidum Avaricum, quod erat māximum mūnītissimumque in fīnibus

Biturigum atque agrī fertilissimā regiōne, profectus est, quod eō oppidō receptō cīvitātem Biturigum sē in potestātem redāctūrum cōnfīdēbat.

Vercingetorix urges the Gauls to cut off the Romans from supplies by destroying their own crops and cities.

14. Vercingetorix tot continuīs incommodīs Vellaunodūnī, Cēnabī, Noviodūnī acceptīs suōs ad concilium convocat. Docet longē aliā ratiōne esse bellum gerendum, atque anteā gestum sit. Omnibus modīs huīc reī studendum, ut pābulātiōne et commeātū Rōmānī prohibeantur. Id esse facile, quod equitātū ipsī abundent et quod annī tempore subleventur. Pābulum secārī nōn posse; necessāriō dispersōs hostēs ex aedificiīs petere: hōs omnēs cotīdiē ab equitibus dēlērī posse. Praetereā commūnis salūtis causā reī familiāris commoda neglegenda; vīcōs atque aedificia incendī oportēre hōc spatiō obvia quōqueversus, quō pābulandī causā adīre posse videantur. Hārum ipsīs rērum cōpiam suppetere, quod, quōrum in fīnibus bellum gerātur, eōrum opibus subleventur: Rōmānōs aut inopiam nōn latūrōs aut māgnō cum perīculō longius ab castrīs prōcessūrōs: neque interesse, ipsōsne interficiant impedīmentīsne exuant, quibus āmīssīs bellum gerī nōn possit. Praetereā oppida incendī oportēre, quae nōn mūnītiōne et lōcī nātūrā omnī sint perīculō tūta, nē suīs sint ad dētractandam mīlitiam receptācula neu Rōmānīs prōposita ad cōpiam commeātūs praedamque tollendam. Haec sī gravia aut acerba videantur, multō illa gravius aestimārī dēbēre, līberōs, coniugēs in servitūtem abstrahī, ipsōs interficī; quae necesse accidere vīctīs.

Avaricum is spared at the request of its inhabitants.

15. Omnium cōnsēnsū hāc sententiā probātā ūnō diē amplius XX urbēs Biturigum incenduntur. Hōc idem fit in reliquīs cīvitātibus: in omnibus partibus incendia cōnspiciuntur: quae etsī māgnō cum dolōre omnēs

ferēbant, tamen hōc sibi sōlāciī prōpōnēbant, quod sē prope explōrātā vīctōriā celeriter āmīssa reciperātūrōs cōnfīdēbant. Dēlīberātur dē Avaricō in commūnī conciliō, incendī placēret, an dēfendī. Prōcumbunt omnibus Gallīs ad pedēs Biturigēs, nē pulcherrimam prope tōtīus Galliae urbem, quae praesidiō et ōrnāmentō sit cīvitātī, suīs manibus succendere cōgerentur: facile sē locī nātūrā dēfēnsūrōs dīcunt, quod prope ex omnibus partibus flūmine et palūde circumdatā ūnum habeat et perangustum aditum. Datur petentibus venia dissuādente prīmō Vercingetorige, post concēdente et precibus ipsōrum et misericordiā volgī. Dēfēnsōrēs oppidō idōneī dēliguntur.

Vercingetorix, stationed near Avaricum, harasses the Roman foragers.

16. Vercingetorix minōribus Caesarem itineribus subsequitur et locum castrīs dēligit palūdibus silvīsque mūnītum ab Avaricō longē mīlia passuum XVI. Ibi per certōs explōrātōrēs in singula diēī tempora, quae ad Avaricum agerentur, cōgnōscēbat et, quid fierī vellet, imperābat. Omnīs nostrās pābulātiōnēs frūmentātiōnēsque observābat dispersōsque, cum longius necessāriō prōcēderent, adoriēbātur māgnōque incommodō afficiēbat, etsī, quantum ratiōne prōviderī poterat, ab nostrīs occurrēbātur, ut incertīs temporibus dīversīsque itineribus īrētur.

The Romans bravely endure the hardships of the siege.

17. Castrīs ad eam partem oppidī positīs Caesar, quae intermīssa ā flūmine et ā palūdibus aditum, ut suprā dīximus, angustum habēbat, aggerem apparāre, vīneās agere, turrēs duās cōnstituere coepit; nam circumvāllāre locī nātūra prohibēbat. Dē rē frūmentāriā Bōiōs atque Aeduōs adhortārī nōn dēstitit: quōrum alterī, quod nūllō studiō agēbant, nōn multum adiuvābant alterī nōn māgnīs facultātibus, quod cīvitās erat exigua et

īnfīrma, celeriter, quod habuērunt, cōnsūmpsērunt. Summā difficultāte reī frūmentāriae affectō exercitū tenuitāte Bōiōrum, indīligentiā Aeduōrum, incendiīs aedificiōrum, usque eō ut complūrēs diēs frūmentō mīlites caruerint et pecore ex longīnquiōribus vīcīs adāctō extrēmam famem sustentārent, nūlla tamen vōx est ab iīs audīta populī Rōmānī māiestāte et superiōribus vīctōriīs indīgna. Quīn etiam Caesar cum in opere singulās legiōnēs appellāret et, sī acerbius inopiam ferrent, sē dīmīssūrum oppūgnātiōnem dīceret, ūniversī ab eō, nē id faceret, petēbant: sīc sē complūrēs annōs illō imperante meruisse, ut nūllam īgnōminiam acciperent, nusquam infectā rē discēderent: hōc sē īgnōminiae lātūrōs locō, sī inceptam oppūgnātiōnem relīquissent: praestāre omnīs perferre acerbitātēs, quam nōn cīvibus Rōmānīs, quī Cēnabī perfidiā Gallōrum interīssent, parentārent. Haec eadem centuriōnibus tribūnīsque mīlitum mandābant, ut per eōs ad Caesarem dēferrentur.

Vercingetorix moves nearer Avaricum. Caesar proceeds against him.

18. Cum iam mūrō turrēs appropīnquāssent, ex captīvīs Caesar cōgnōvit Vercingetorigem cōnsūmptō pābulō castra mōvisse propius Avaricum atque ipsum cum equitātū expedītīsque, quī inter equitēs proeliārī cōnsuēssent, īnsidiandī causā eō profectum, quō nostrōs posterō diē pābulātum ventūrōs arbitrārētur. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs mediā nocte silentiō profectus ad hostium castra māne pervēnit. Illī celeriter per explōrātōrēs adventū Caesaris cōgnitō carrōs impedīmentaque sua in artiōrēs silvās abdidērunt, cōpiās omnīs in locō ēditō atque apertō īnstrūxērunt. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar celeriter sarcinās cōnferrī, arma expedīrī iussit.

He withdraws because of the strong position of the Gauls.

19. Collis erat lēniter ab īnfimō acclīvis. Hunc ex omnibus ferē partibus palūs difficilis atque impedīta cingēbat nōn lātior pedibus quīnquāgintā. Hōc sē colle interruptīs pontibus Gallī fīdūciā locī continēbant generātimque distribūtī [in cīvitātēs] omnia vada [āc saltūs] ēius palūdis obtinēbant sīc animō parātī, ut, sī eam palūdem Rōmānī perrumpere cōnārentur, haesitantēs premerent ex locō superiōre, ut, quī propīnquitātem locī vidēret, parātōs prope aequō Marte ad dīmicandum exīstimāret, quī inīquitātem condiciōnis perspiceret, inānī simulātiōne sēsē ostentāre cōgnōsceret. Indīgnantēs mīlitēs Caesar, quod cōnspectum suum hostēs perferre possent tantulō spatiō interiectō, et sīgnum proeliī exposcentēs ēdocet, quantō dētrīmentō et quot virōrum fortium morte necesse sit cōnstāre vīctōriam; quōs cum sīc animō parātōs videat, ut nūllum prō suā laude perīculum recūsent, summae sē inīquitātis condemnārī dēbēre, nisi eōrum vītam suā salūte habeat cāriōrem. Sīc mīlitēs cōnsōlātus eōdem diē redūcit in castra reliquaque, quae ad oppūgnātiōnem pertinēbant oppidī, administrāre īnstituit.

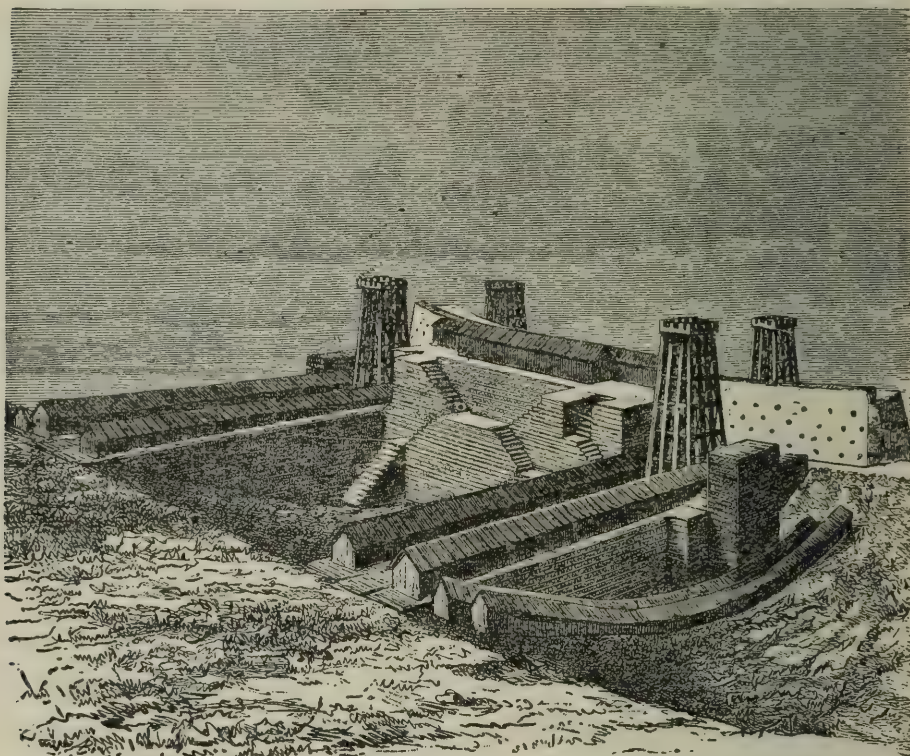
Vercingetorix successfully defends himself against a charge of treason.

20. Vercingetorix, cum ad suōs redīsset, prōditiōnis īnsimulātus, quod castra propius Rōmānōs mōvisset, quod cum omnī equitātū discessisset, quod sine imperiō tantās cōpiās relīquisset, quod ēius discessū Rōmānī tantā oportūnitāte et celeritāte vēnissent: nōn haec omnia fōrtuītō aut sine cōnsiliō accidere potuisse; rēgnum illum Galliae mālle Caesaris concessū quam ipsōrum habēre beneficiō—tālī modō accūsātus ad haec respondit: Quod castra mōvisset, factum inopiā pābulī etiam ipsīs hortantibus: quod propius Rōmānōs accessisset, persuāsum locī

oportūnitāte, quī sē ipse sine mūnītiōne dēfenderet: equitum vērō operam neque in locō palūstrī dēsīderārī dēbuisse et illīc fuisse ūtilem, quō sint prōfectī. Summam imperiī sē cōnsultō nūllī discēdentem trādidisse, nē is multitūdinis studiō ad dīmicandum impellerētur, cuī reī propter animī mollitiem studēre omnēs vīdēret, quod diūtius labōrem ferre nōn possent. Rōmānī sī cāsū intervēnerint, fōrtūnae, sī alicūius indiciō vocātī, huīc habendam grātiam, quod et paucitātem eōrum ex locō superiōre cōgnōscere et virtūtem dēspicere potuerint; quī dīmicāre nōn ausī turpiter sē in castra recēperint. Imperium sē ā Caesare per prōditiōnem nūllum dēsīderāre, quod habēre vīctōriā posset, quae iam esset sibi atque omnibus Gallīs explōrāta: quīn etiam ipsīs remittere, sī sibi magis honōrem tribuere, quam ab sē salūtem accipere videantur. 'Haec ut intellegātis,' inquit, 'ā mē sincerē prōnūntiārī, audīte Rōmānōs mīlitēs.' Prōdūcit servōs, quōs in pābulātiōne paucīs ante diēbus excēperat et famē vinculīsque excruciāverat. Hī iam ante ēdoctī, quae interrogātī prōnūntiārent, mīlitēs sē esse legiōnāriōs dīcunt; famē et inopiā adductōs clam ex castrīs exīsse, sī quid frūmentī aut pecoris in agrīs reperīre possent: similī omnem exercitum inopiā premī, nec iam vīrēs sufficere cūiusquam nec ferre operis labōrem posse· itaque statuisse imperātōrem, sī nihil in oppūgnātiōne oppidī prōfēcissent, trīduō exercitum dēdūcere. 'Haec,' inquit, 'ā mē,' Vercingetorix, 'beneficia habētis, quem prōditiōnis īnsimulātis; cūius operā sine vestrō sanguine tantum exercitum vīctōrem famē cōnsūmptum vidētis; quem turpiter sē ex fugā recipientem nē quā cīvitās suīs fīnibus recipiat, ā mē prōvīsum est.'

The Gauls, reassured, send him re-enforcements.

21. Conclāmat omnis multitūdō et suō mōre armīs concrepat, quod facere in eō cōnsuērunt, cūius ōrātiōnem approbant; summum esse Vercingetorigem ducem nec dē ēius fidē dubitandum, nec māiōre ratiōne bellum administrārī posse. Statuunt, ut decem mīlia hominum dēlēcta ex omnibus cōpiīs in oppidum mittantur, nec sōlīs Biturigibus commūnem salūtem committendam cēnsent, quod



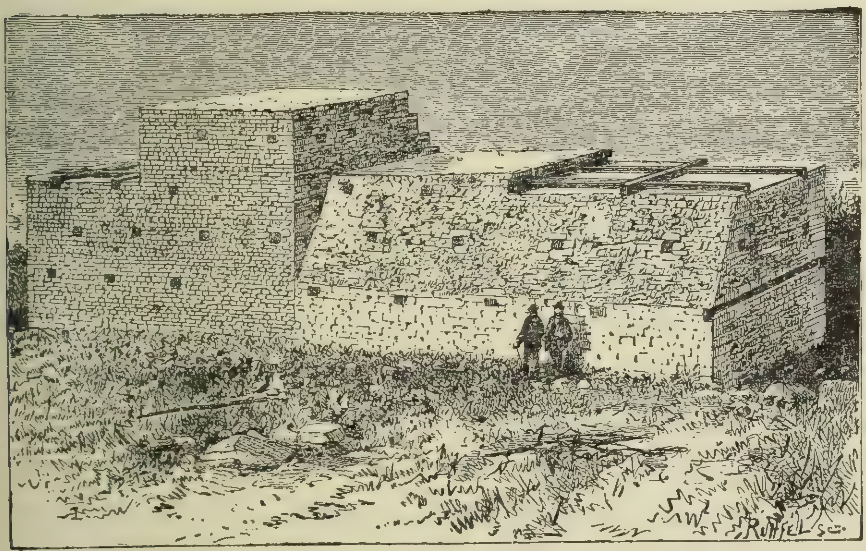
ROMAN WORKS OF APPROACH AT AVARICUM.

paene in eō, sī id oppidum retinuissent, summam vīctōriae cōnstāre intellegēbant.

Able defense of the Gauls in Avaricum.

22. Singulārī mīlitum nostrōrum virtūtī cōnsilia cūiusquemodī Gallōrum occurrēbant, ut est summae genus sollertiae atque ad omnia imitanda et efficienda, quae ā quōque trāduntur, aptissimum. Nam et laqueīs falcēs āvertēbant, quās, cum dēstināverant, tormentīs intrōr-

sus redūcēbant, et aggerem cunīculīs subtrahēbant, eō scientius, quod apud eōs māgnae sunt ferrāriae atque omne genus cunīculōrum nōtum atque ūsitātum est. Tōtum autem mūrum ex omnī parte turribus contabulāverant atque hās coriīs intēxerant. Tum crēbrīs diurnīs nocturnīsque ēruptiōnibus aut aggerī īgnem īnferēbant, aut mīlitēs occupātōs in opere adoriēbantur et nostrārum turrium altitūdinem, quantum hās cotīdiānus agger expresserat, commīssīs suārum turrium



GALLIC WALL.

mālīs adaequābant et apertōs cunīculōs praeūstā et praeacūtā māteriā et pice fervefactā et māximī ponderis saxīs morābantur moenibusque appropīnquāre prohibēbant.

Description of a Gallic wall.

23. Mūrī autem omnēs Gallicī hāc ferē fōrmā sunt. Trabēs dērēctae, perpetuae, in longitūdinem paribus intervāllīs dīstantēs inter sē bīnōs pedēs in solō collocantur. Hae revinciuntur intrōrsus et multō aggere vestiuntur; ea autem, quae dīximus, intervālla grandibus in fronte saxīs efferciuntur. Hīs collocātīs et coāgmentātīs alius īnsuper

ōrdō additur, ut idem illud intervāllum servētur neque inter sē contingant trabēs, sed paribus intermīssae spatiīs singulae singulīs saxīs interiectīs artē contineantur. Sīc deinceps omne opus contēxitur, dum iūsta mūrī altitūdō expleātur. Hōc cum in speciem varietātemque opus dēfōrme nōn est alternīs trabibus āc saxīs, quae rēctīs līneīs suōs ōrdinēs servant, tum ad ūtilitātem et dēfēnsiōnem urbium summam habet oportūnitātem, quod et ab incendiō lapis et ab ariete māteria dēfendit, quae perpetuīs trabibus pedēs quadrāgēnōs plērumque intrōrsus revincta neque perrumpī neque distrahī potest.

The besieged Gauls fire the Roman works and make a sally.

24. Hīs tot rēbus impedītā oppūgnātiōne mīlitēs, cum tōtō tempore frīgore et assiduīs imbribus tardārentur, tamen continentī labōre omnia haec superāvērunt et diēbus XXV aggerem longum pedēs CCCXXX, altum pedēs LXXX exstrūxērunt. Cum is mūrum hostium paene contingeret, et Caesar ad opus cōnsuētūdine excubāret mīlitēsque hortārētur, nē quod omnīnō tempus ab opere intermitterētur, paulō ante tertiam vigiliam est animadversum fūmāre aggerem, quem cunīculō hostēs succenderant, eōdemque tempore tōtō mūrō clāmōre sublātō duābus portīs ab utrōque latere turrium ēruptiō fīēbat: aliī facēs atque āridam māteriem dē mūrō in aggerem ēminus iaciēbant, picem reliquāsque rēs, quibus īgnis excitārī potest, fundēbant, ut quō prīmum occurrerētur aut cuī reī ferrētur auxilium, vix ratiō inīrī posset. Tamen, quod īnstitūtō Caesaris semper duae legiōnēs prō castrīs excubābant plūrēsque partītīs temporibus erant in opere, celeriter factum est, ut aliī ēruptiōnibus resisterent, aliī turrēs redūcerent aggeremque interscinderent, omnis vērō ex castrīs multitūdō ad restinguendum concurreret.

They are repulsed into the town.

25. Cum in omnibus locīs cōnsūmptā iam reliquā parte noctis pūgnārētur semperque hostibus spēs vīctōriae redintegrārētur, eō magis, quod deūstōs pluteōs turrium vidēbant nec facile adīre apertōs ad auxiliandum animadvertēbant, semperque ipsī recentēs dēfessīs succēderent omnemque Galliae salūtem in illō vestīgiō temporis positam arbitrārentur, accidit īnspectantibus nōbīs, quod dīgnum memoriā vīsum praetereundum nōn exīstimāvimus. Quīdam ante portam oppidī Gallus per manūs sēvī āc picis trāditās glēbās in īgnem ē regiōne turris prōiciēbat: scorpiōne ab latere dextrō trāiectus exanimātusque concidit. Hunc ex proximīs ūnus iacentem trānsgressus eōdem illō munere fungēbātur; eādem ratiōne ictū scorpiōnis exanimātō alterī successit tertius et tertiō quartus, nec prius ille est ā prōpūgnātōribus vacuus relīctus locus, quam restinctō aggere atque omnī ex parte summōtīs hostibus fīnis est pūgnandī factus.

The Gauls are prevented from evacuating by the entreaties of their women.

26. Omnia expertī Gallī, quod rēs nūlla successerat, posterō diē cōnsilium cēpērunt ex oppidō prōfugere, hortante et iubente Vercingetorige. Id silentiō noctis cōnātī nōn māgnā iactūrā suōrum sēsē effectūrōs spērābant, propter eā quod neque longē ab oppidō castra Vercingetorigis aberant, et palūs, quae perpetua intercēdēbat, Rōmānōs ad īnsequendum tardābat. Iamque hōc facere noctū apparābant, cum mātrēsfamiliae repentē in pūblicum prōcurrērunt flentēsque prōiectae ad pedēs suōrum omnibus precibus petiērunt, nē sē et commūnēs līberōs hostibus ad supplicium dēderent, quōs ad capiendam fugam nātūrae et vīrium īnfīrmitās impedīret. Ubi eōs in sententiā perstāre vidērunt, quod plērumque in summō perīculō timor misericordiam nōn recipit, conclāmāre et sīgnificāre dē fugā Rōmānīs coepērunt. Quō timōre perterritī Gallī, nē ab

equitātū Rōmānōrum viae praeoccupārentur, cōnsiliō dēstitērunt.

Caesar makes an assault.

27. Posterō diē Caesar prōmōtā turrī dīrēctīsque operibus, quae facere īnstituerat, māgnō coortō imbre nōn inūtilem hanc ad capiendum cōnsilium tempestātem arbitrātus, quod paulō incautius custōdiās in mūrō dispositās vidēbat, suōs quoque languidius in opere versārī iussit et, quid fierī vellet, ostendit. Legiōnibusque inter castra vīneāsque in occultō expedītīs cohortātus, ut aliquandō prō tantīs labōribus frūctum vīctōriae perciperent, iīs, quī prīmī mūrum ascendissent, praemia prōposuit mīlitibusque sīgnum dedit. Illī subitō ex omnibus partibus ēvolāvērunt mūrumque celeriter complēvērunt.

The town is taken and pillaged.

28. Hostēs rē novā perterritī, mūrō turribusque dēiectī in forō āc locīs patentiōribus cuneātim cōnstitērunt, hōc animō, ut, sī quā ex parte obviam venīrētur, aciē īnstrūctā dēpūgnārent. Ubi nēminem in aequum locum sēsē dēmittere, sed tōtō undique mūrō circumfundī vīdērunt, veritī, nē omnīnō spēs fugae tollerētur, abiectīs armīs ūltimās oppidī partēs continentī impetū petīvērunt, parsque ibi, cum angustō exitū portārum sē ipsī premerent, ā mīlitibus, pars iam ēgressa portīs ab equitibus est interfecta. Nec fuit quisquam, quī praedae studēret. Sīc et Cēnabī caede et labōre operis incitātī nōn aetāte cōnfectīs, nōn mulieribus nōn īnfantibus pepercērunt. Dēnique ex omnī numerō, quī fuit circiter mīlium XL, vix DCCC, quī prīmō clāmōre audītō sē ex oppidō ēiēcerant, incolumēs ad Vercingetorigem pervēnērunt. Quōs ille multā iam nocte silentiō ex fugā excēpit veritus, nē qua in castrīs ex eōrum concursū et misericordiā vulgī sēditiō orerētur, ut procul in viā dispositīs familiāribus suīs prīncipibusque cīvitātum disparandōs dēdūcendōsque ad

suōs cūrāret, quae cuīque cīvitātī pars castrōrum ab initiō obvēnerat.

29. Posterō diē conciliō convōcātō cōnsolātus cohortātusque est, nē sē admodum animō dēmitterent neu perturbārentur incommodō. Nōn virtūte neque in aciē vīcisse Rōmānōs, sed artificiō quōdam et scientiā oppūgnātiōnis, cūius reī fuerint ipsī imperītī. Errāre, sī quī in bellō omnīs secundōs rērum prōventūs exspectent. Sibi numquam placuisse Avaricum dēfendī, cūius reī testēs ipsōs habēret; sed factum imprūdentiā Biturigum et nimiā obsequentiā reliquōrum, utī hōc incommodum acciperētur. Id tamen sē celeriter māiōribus commodīs sānātūrum. Nam quae ab reliquīs Gallīs cīvitātēs dissentīrent, hās suā dīligentiā adiūnctūrum atque ūnum cōnsilium tōtīus Galliae effectūrum, cūius cōnsēnsuī nē orbis quidem terrārum possit obsistere; idque sē prope iam effectum habēre. Intereā aequum esse ab iīs commūnis salūtis causā impetrārī, ut castra mūnīre īnstituerent, quō facilius repentīnōs hostium impetūs sustinērent.

Vercingetorix tries to reanimate his forces.

30. Fuit haec ōrātiō nōn ingrāta Gallīs, et māximē, quod ipse animō nōn dēfēcerat tantō acceptō incommodō neque sē in occultum abdideret et cōnspectum multitūdinis fūgerat; plūsque animō prōvidēre et praesentīre exīstimābātur, quod rē integrā prīmō incendendum Avaricum, post dēserendum cēnsuerat. Itaque ut reliquōrum imperātōrum rēs adversae auctōritātem minuunt, sīc hūius ex contrāriō dīgnitās incommodō acceptō in diēs augēbātur. Simul in spem veniēbant ēius affīrmātiōne dē reliquīs adiungendīs cīvitātibus; prīmumque eō tempore Gallī castra mūnīre īnstituērunt; et sīc sunt animō cōnfīrmātī hominēs īnsuētī labōris, ut omnia, quae imperārentur, sibi patienda exīstimārent.

His success.

He gains new allies.

31. Nec minus, quam est pollicitus, Vercingetorix animō labōrābat, ut reliquās cīvitātēs adiungeret, atque eās dōnīs pollicitātiōnibusque alliciēbat. Huīc reī idōneōs hominēs dēligēbat, quōrum quisque aut ōrātiōne subdolā aut amīcitiā facillime capere posset. Quī Avaricō expūgnātō refūgerant, armandōs vestiendōsque cūrat; simul ut dēminūtae cōpiae redintegrārentur, imperat certum numerum mīlitum cīvitātibus, quem et quam ante diem in castra addūcī velit, sagittāriōsque omnēs, quōrum erat permāgnus numerus in Galliā, conquīrī et ad sē mittī iubet. Hīs rēbus celeriter id, quod Avaricī dēperierat, explētur. Interim Teutomatus, Ollovicōnis fīlius, rēx Nitiobrogum, cūius pater ab senātū nostrō amīcus erat appellātus, cum māgnō equitum suōrum numerō et quōs ex Aquitāniā condūxerat ad eum pervenit.

The Aedui ask Caesar to decide between two rival chieftains.

32. Caesar Avaricī complūrēs diēs commorātus summamque ibi cōpiam frūmentī et reliquī commeātūs nanctus exercitum ex labōre atque inopiā reficit. Iam prope hieme cōnfectā cum ipsō annī tempore ad gerendum bellum vocārētur et ad hostem proficīscī cōnstituisset, sīve eum ex palūdibus silvīsque ēlicere sīve obsidiōne premere posset, lēgātī ad eum prīncipēs Aeduōrum veniunt ōrātum, ut māximē necessāriō tempore cīvitātī subveniat; summō esse in perīculō rem, quod, cum singulī magistrātūs antīquitus creārī atque rēgiam potestātem annum obtinēre cōnsuēssent, duo magistrātum gerant et sē uterque eōrum lēgibus creātum esse dīcat. Hōrum esse alterum Convīctolitāvem, flōrentem et illūstrem adulēscentem, alterum Cotum, antīquissimā familiā nātum atque ipsum hominem summae potentiae et māgnae cōgnātiōnis, cūius frāter Valetiacus proximō annō eundem magistrātum gesserit. Cīvitātem esse omnem in armīs; dīvīsum senātum, dīvī-

sum populum, suās cūiusque eōrum clientēlās. Quod sī diūtius alātur contrōversia, fore utī pars cum parte cīvitātis cōnflīgat. Id nē accidat, positum in ēius dīligentiā atque auctōritāte.

He decides according to their laws.

33. Caesar, etsī ā bellō atque hoste discēdere dētrīmentōsum esse exīstimābat, tamen nōn īgnōrāns, quanta ex dissēnsiōnibus incommoda orīrī cōnsuēssent, nē tanta et tam coniūncta populō Rōmānō cīvitās, quam ipse semper aluisset omnibusque rēbus ōrnāsset, ad vim atque arma dēscenderet, atque ea pars, quae minus sibi cōnfīderet, auxilia ā Vercingetorige arcesseret, huīc reī praevertendum exīstimāvit, et, quod lēgibus Aeduōrum iīs, quī summum magistrātum obtinērent, excēdere ex fīnibus nōn licēret, nē quid dē iūre aut dē lēgibus eōrum dēminuisse vidērētur, ipse in Aeduōs proficīscī statuit senātumque omnem et quōs inter contrōversia esset ad sē Decetiam ēvocāvit. Cum prope omnis cīvitās eō convēnisset docērēturque, paucīs clam convocātīs aliō locō, aliō tempore atque oportuerit frātrem ā frātre renūntiātum, cum lēgēs duo ex ūnā familiā vīvō utrōque nōn sōlum magistrātūs creārī vetārent, sed etiam in senātū esse prohibērent, Cotum imperium dēpōnere coēgit, Convīctolitāvem, quī per sacerdōtēs mōre cīvitātis intermīssīs magistrātibus esset creātus, potestātem obtinēre iussit.

Caesar sends Labienus to the north and marches upon Gergovia.

34. Hōc dēcrētō interpositō cohortātus Aeduōs, ut contrōversiārum āc dissēnsiōnis oblivīscerentur atque omnibus omīssīs rēbus huīc bellō servīrent eaque, quae meruissent, praemia ab sē, dēvīctā Galliā, exspectārent equitātumque omnem et peditum mīlia decem sibi celeriter mitterent, quae in praesidiīs reī frūmentāriae causā dispōneret, exercitum in duās partēs dīvīsit: quattuor legiōnēs in Senonēs Parisiōsque Labiēnō dūcendās

dedit, sex ipse in Arvernōs ad oppidum Gergoviam secundum flūmen Elaver dūxit: equitātūs partem illī attribuit, partem sibi relīquit. Quā rē cōgnitā Vercingetorix omnibus interruptīs ēius flūminis pontibus ab alterā flūminis parte iter facere coepit.

He finds Vercingetorix at the passage of the Elaver.

35. Cum uterque utrīque esset exercitus in cōnspectū ferēque ē regiōne castrīs castra pōneret, dispositīs explōrātōribus, nēcubi effectō ponte Rōmānī cōpiās trādūcerent, erat in māgnīs Caesarī difficultātibus rēs, nē māiōrem aestātis partem flūmine impedīrētur, quod nōn ferē ante autumnum Elaver vadō trānsīrī sōlet. Itaque, nē id accideret, silvestrī locō castrīs positīs ē regiōne ūnīus eōrum pontium, quōs Vercingetorix rescindendōs cūrāverat, posterō diē cum duābus legiōnibus in occultō restitit; reliquās cōpiās cum omnibus impedīmentīs, ut cōnsuēverat, mīsit partītīs quibusdam cohortibus, utī numerus legiōnum cōnstāre vidērētur. Hīs quam longissimē possent prōgredī iūssīs, cum iam ex diēī tempore coniectūram caperet in castra perventum, īsdem sublicīs, quārum pars īnferior integra remanēbat, pontem reficere coepit. Celeriter effectō opere legiōnibusque trāductīs et locō castrīs idōneō dēlēctō reliquās cōpiās revocāvit. Vercingetorix rē cōgnitā, nē contrā suam voluntātem dīmicāre cōgerētur, māgnīs itineribus antecessit.

Situation of Gergovia. Position of the two armies.

36. Caesar ex eō locō quīntīs castrīs Gergoviam pervēnit equestrīque eō diē proeliō levī factō, perspectō urbis sitū, quae posita in altissimō monte omnīs aditūs difficilēs habēbat, dē expūgnātiōne dēspērāvit, dē obsessiōne nōn prius agendum cōnstituit, quam rem frūmentāriam expedisset. At Vercingetorix castrīs prope oppidum positīs mediocribus circum sē intervāllīs sēparātim singulārum cīvitātum cōpiās collocāverat, atque omnibus ēius

iugī collibus occupātīs, quā dispicī poterat, horribilem speciem praebēbat prīncipēsque eārum cīvitātum, quōs sibi ad cōnsilium capiendum dēlēgerat, prīmā lūce cotīdiē ad sē convenīre iubēbat, seu quid commūnicandum, seu quid administrandum vidērētur, neque ūllum ferē diem intermittēbat, quīn equestrī proeliō interiectīs sagittāriīs, quid in quōque esset animī āc virtūtis suōrum, perīclitārētur. Erat ē regiōnē oppidī collis sub ipsīs rādīcibus montis ēgregiē mūnītus atque ex omnī parte circumcīsus; quem sī tenērent nostrī, et aquae māgnā parte et pābulātiōne līberā prohibitūrī hostēs vidēbantur. Sed is locus praesidiō ab hīs, nōn nimis fīrmō tamen, tenēbātur. Silentiō noctis Caesar ex castrīs ēgressus, priusquam subsidiō ex oppidō venīrī posset, dēiectō praesidiō potītus locō duās ibi legiōnēs collocāvit fossamque duplicem duodēnum pedum ā māiōribus castrīs ad minōra perdūxit, ut tūtō ab repentīnō hostium incursū etiam singulī commeāre possent.

Plot to detach the Aeduans from Caesar's support.

37. Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Convīctolitāvis Aeduus, cuī magistrātum adiūdicātum ā Caesare dēmōnstrāvimus, sollicitātus ab Arvernīs pecūniā cum quibusdam adulēscentibus colloquitur; quōrum erat prīnceps Litaviccus atque ēius frātrēs, amplissimā familiā nātī adulēscentēs. Cum hīs praemium commūnicat hortāturque, ut sē līberōs et imperiō nātōs meminerint. Ūnam esse Aeduōrum cīvitātem, quae certissimam Galliae vīctōriam dētineat; ēius auctōritāte reliquās continērī; quā trāductā locum cōnsistendī Rōmānīs in Galliā nōn fore. Esse nōnnūllō sē Caesaris beneficiō affectum, sīc tamen, ut iūstissimam apud eum causam obtinuerit; sed plūs commūnī lībertātī tribuere. Cūr enim potius Aeduī dē suō iūre et dē lēgibus ad Caesarem disceptātōrem, quam Rōmānī ad Aeduōs veniant? Celeriter

adulēscentibus et ōrātiōne magistrātūs et praemiō dēductīs, cum sē vel prīncipēs ēius cōnsiliī fore profitērentur, ratiō perficiendī quaerēbātur, quod cīvitātem temerē ad suscipiendum bellum addūcī posse nōn cōnfīdēbant. Placuit, ut Litaviccus decem illīs mīlibus, quae Caesarī ad bellum mitterentur, praeficerētur atque ea dūcenda cūrāret, frātrēsque ēius ad Caesarem praecurrerent. Reliqua quā ratiōne agī placeat, cōnstituunt.

Its furtherance through Litaviccus.

38. Litaviccus acceptō exercitū, cum mīlia passuum circiter XXX ab Gergoviā abesset, convocātīs subitō mīlitibus lacrimāns: 'Quō proficīscimur,' inquit 'mīlitēs? Omnis noster equitātus, omnis nōbilitās interiit: prīncipēs cīvitātis, Eporedorix et Viridomarus, īnsimulātī prōditiōnis ab Rōmānīs indictā causā interfectī sunt. Haec ab hīs cōgnōscite, quī ex ipsā caede fūgērunt: nam ego frātribus atque omnibus meīs propīnquīs interfectīs dolōre prohibeor, quae gesta sunt, prōnūntiāre'. Prōdūcuntur hī, quōs ille ēdocuerat, quae dīcī vellet, atque eadem, quae Litaviccus prōnūntiāverat, multitūdinī expōnunt: omnēs equitēs Aeduōrum interfectōs, quod collocūtī cum Arvernīs dīcerentur; ipsōs sē inter multitūdinem mīlitum occultāsse atque ex mediā caede fūgisse. Conclāmant Aeduī et Litaviccum obsecrant, ut sibi cōnsulat. 'Quasi vērō,' inquit ille, 'cōnsiliī sit rēs, āc nōn necesse sit nōbīs Gergoviam contendere et cum Arvernīs nōsmet coniungere. An dubitāmus, quīn nefāriō facinore admīssō Rōmānī iam ad nōs interficiendōs concurrant? Proinde, sī quid in nōbīs animī est, persequāmur eōrum mortem, quī indīgnissimē interiērunt, atque hōs latrōnēs interficiāmus'. Ostendit cīvēs Rōmānōs, quī ēius praesidiī fīdūciā ūnā erant: māgnum numerum frūmentī commeātūsque dīripit, ipsōs crūdēliter excruciātōs interficit. Nūntiōs tōtā cīvitāte Aeduōrum di-

mittit, eōdem mendāciō dē caede equitum et prīncipum permovet; hortātur, ut similī ratiōne, atque ipse fēcerit, suās iniūriās persequantur.

Caesar is informed of the plot by Eporedorix.

39. Eporedorix Aeduus, summō locō nātus adulēscēns et summae domī potentiae, et ūnā Viridomarus, parī aetāte et grātiā, sed genere disparī quem Caesar ab Diviciacō sibi trāditum ex humilī locō ad summam dīgnitātem perdūxerat, in equitum numerō convēnerant nōminātim ab eō ēvocātī. Hīs erat inter sē dē prīncipātū contentiō, et in illā magistrātuum contrōversiā alter prō Convīctolitāvī, alter pro Cotō summīs opibus pūgnāverant. Ex hīs Eporedorix cōgnitō Litaviccī cōnsiliō mediā ferē nocte rem ad Caesarem dēfert; ōrat, nē patiātur cīvitātem prāvīs adulēscentium cōnsiliīs ab amīcitiā populī Rōmānī dēficere; quod futūrum prōvideat, sī sē tot hominum mīlia cum hostibus coniūnxerint, quōrum salūtem neque propīnquī neglegere neque cīvitās levī mōmentō aestimāre posset.

The Aeduans under Litaviccus yield. The leader escapes.

40. Māgnā affectus sollicitūdine hōc nūntiō Caesar, quod semper Aeduōrum cīvitātī praecipuē indulserat, nūllā interpositā dubitātiōne legiōnēs expedītās quattuor equitātumque omnem ex castrīs ēdūcit, nec fuit spatium tālī tempore ad contrahenda castra, quod rēs posita in celeritāte vidēbātur: C. Fabium lēgātum cum legiōnibus duābus castrīs praesidiō relinquit. Frātrēs Litaviccī cum comprehendī iussisset, paulō ante reperit ad hostēs fūgisse. Adhortātus mīlitēs, nē necessāriō tempore itineris labōre permoveantur, cupidissimīs omnibus prōgressus mīlia passuum XXV āgmen Aeduōrum cōnspicātus immīssō equitātū iter eōrum morātur atque impedit interdīcitque omnibus, nē quemquam interficiant. Eporedorigem et Viridomarum, quōs illī interfectōs exīstimābant, inter equitēs versārī suōs-

que appellāre iubet. Hīs cōgnitīs et Litaviccī fraude perspectā Aeduī manūs tendere, dēditiōnem sīgnificāre et prōiectīs armīs mortem dēprecārī incipiunt. Litaviccus cum suīs clientibus, quibus mōre Gallōrum nefās est etiam in extrēmā fōrtūnā dēserere patrōnōs, Gergoviam perfūgit.

Attack on Fabius, encamped near Gergovia. Caesar hastens to his relief.

41. Caesar nūntiīs ad cīvitātem Aeduōrum mīssīs, quī suō beneficiō cōnservātōs docērent, quōs iūre bellī interficere potuisset, tribusque hōrīs [noctis] exercituī ad quiētem datīs castra ad Gergoviam mōvit. Mediō ferē itinere equitēs ā Fabiō mīssī, quantō rēs in perīculō fuerit, expōnunt. Summīs cōpiīs castra oppūgnāta dēmōnstrant, cum crēbrō integrī dēfessīs succēderent nostrōsque assiduō labōre dēfatīgārent, quibus propter māgnitūdinem castrōrum perpetuō esset iīsdem in vāllō permanendum, Multitūdine sagittārum atque omnis generis tēlōrum multōs vulnerātos; ad haec sustinenda māgnō ūsuī fuisse tormenta. Fabium discessū eōrum duābus relīctīs portīs obstruere cēterās pluteōsque vāllō addere et sē in posterum diem similemque cāsum apparāre. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs Caesar summō studiō mīlitum ante ortum sōlis in castra pervēnit.

Plots and outrages of the Aedui.

42. Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Aeduī prīmīs nūntiīs ab Litaviccō acceptīs nūllum sibi ad cōgnōscendum spatium relinquunt. Impellit aliōs avāritia, aliōs īrācundia et temeritās, quae māximē illī hominum generī est innāta, ut levem audītiōnem habeant prō rē compertā. Bona cīvium Rōmānōrum dīripiunt, caedēs faciunt, in servitūtem abstrahunt. Adiuvat rem prōclīnātam Convīctolitāvis plēbemque ad furōrem impellit, ut facinore admīssō ad sānitātem revertī pudeat. M. Aristium, tribūnum mīlitum, iter ad legiōnem facientem fidē datā ex oppidō

Cabillōnō ēdūcunt: idem facere cōgunt eōs, quī negōtiandī causā ibi cōnstiterant. Hōs continuō in itinere adortī omnibus impedīmentīs exuunt; repūgnantēs diem noctemque obsident; multīs utrimque interfectīs māiōrem multitūdinem ad arma concitant,

Duplicity of the Aedui. Caesar plans to abandon the siege of Gergovia.

43. Interim nuntiō allātō, omnēs eōrum mīlitēs in potestāte Caesaris tenērī, concurrunt ad Aristium, nihil pūblicō factum cōnsiliō dēmōnstrant; quaestiōnem dē bonīs dīreptīs dēcernunt, Litaviccī frātrumque bona pūblicant, lēgātōs ad Caesarem suī purgandī grātiā mittunt. Haec faciunt reciperandōrum suōrum causā; sed contāminātī facinore et captī compendiō ex dīreptīs bonīs, quod ea rēs ad multōs pertinēbat, et timōre poenae exterritī cōnsilia clam dē bellō inīre incipiunt cīvitātēsque reliquās lēgātiōnibus sollicitant. Quae tametsī Caesar intellegēbat, tamen quam mītissimē potest lēgātōs appellat: nihil sē propter īnscientiam levitātemque vulgī gravius dē cīvitāte iūdicāre neque dē suā in Aeduōs benevolentiā dēminuere. Ipse māiōrem Galliae mōtum exspectāns, nē ab omnibus cīvitātibus circumsisterētur, cōnsilia inībat, quemadmodum ā Gergoviā discēderet ac rūrsus omnem exercitum contraheret, nē profectiō nāta ā timōre dēfectiōnis similis fugae vidērētur.

He finds a favorable position for an attack.

44. Haec cōgitantī accidere vīsa est facultās bene gerendae reī. Nam cum in minōra castra operis perspiciendī causā vēnisset, animum advertit collem, quī ab hostibus tenēbātur, nūdātum hominibus, quī superiōribus diēbus vix prae multitūdine cernī poterat. Mīrātus quaerit ex perfugīs causam, quōrum māgnus ad eum cotīdiē numerus cōnfluēbat. Cōnstābat inter omnēs, quod iam ipse Caesar per explōrātōrēs cōgnōverat, dorsum esse ēius iugī prope aequum, sed hunc silvestrem et angustum, quā esset

aditus ad alteram partem oppidī: vehementer huīc illōs locō timēre nec iam aliter sentīre, ūnō colle ab Rōmānīs occupātō, sī alterum āmīsissent. quīn paene circumvāllātī atque omnī exitū et pābulātiōne interclūsī vidērentur: ad hunc mūniendum hominēs ā Vercingetorige ēvocātōs.

He maneuvers to deceive the Gauls.

45. Hāc rē cōgnitā Caesar mittit complūrēs equitum turmās eōdem mediā nocte; imperat hīs ut paulō tumultuōsius omnibus locīs vagentur. Prīmā lūce māgnum numerum impedīmentōrum ex castrīs mūlōrumque prōdūcī dēque hīs strāmenta dētrahī mūliōnēsque cum cassidibus equitum speciē āc simulātiōne collibus circumvehī iubet. Hīs paucōs addit equitēs, quī lātius ostentātiōnis causā vagentur. Longō circuitū eāsdem omnēs iubet petere regiōnēs. Haec procul ex oppidō vidēbantur, ut erat ā Gergoviā dēspectus in castra, neque tantō spatiō, certī quid esset, explōrārī poterat Legiōnem ūnam eōdem iugō mittit et paulum prōgressam īnferiōre cōnstituit locō silvīsque occultat. Augētur Gallīs suspiciō atque omnēs illō ad mūnītiōnem cōpiae trādūcuntur. Vacua castra hostium Caesar cōnspicātus tēctīs īnsīgnibus suōrum occultātīsque sīgnīs mīlitāribus rārōs mīlitēs nē ex oppidō animadverterentur, ex māiōribus castrīs in minōra trādūcit lēgātīsque, quōs singulīs legiōnibus praefēcerat, quid fierī velit, ostendit: imprīmīs monet, ut contineant mīlitēs, nē studiō pūgnandī aut spē praedae longius prōgrediantur; quid inīquitās locī habeat incommodī prōpōnit: hōc ūnā celeritāte posse vītārī; occāsiōnis esse rem, nōn proeliī Hīs rēbus expositīs sīgnum dat et ab dextrā parte aliō ascensū eōdem tempore Aeduōs mittit.

The Romans capture the Gallic camp outside the walls.

46. Oppidī mūrus ā plāniciē atque initiō ascēnsūs rēctā regiōne, sī nūllus amfrāctus intercēderet, MCC passūs aberat: quidquid hūc circuitūs

ad molliendum clīvum accesserat, id spatium itineris augēbat. A mediō ferē colle in longitūdinem, ut nātūra montis ferēbat, ex grandibus saxīs sex pedum mūrum, quī nostrōrum impetum tardāret, praedūxerant Gallī atque īnferiōre omnī spatiō vacuō relīctō superiōrem partem collis usque ad mūrum oppidī dēnsissimīs castrīs complēverant. Mīlitēs datō sīgnō celeriter ad mūnītiōnem perveniunt eamque trānsgressī trīnīs castrīs potiuntur; āc tanta fuit in castrīs capiendīs celeritās, ut Teutomatus, rēx Nitiobrogum, subitō in tabernāculō oppressus, ut merīdiē conquiēverat, superiōre corporis parte nūdā, vulnerātō equō vix sē ex manibus praedantium mīlitum ēriperet.

Caesar restrains his soldiers who are eager to follow up their advantage.

47. Cōnsecūtus id, quod animō prōposuerat, Caesar receptuī canī iussit, legiōnisque decimae, quācum erat, continuō sīgna cōnstituit. At reliquārum legiōnum mīlitēs nōn exaudītō sonō tubae, quod satis māgna vallēs intercēdēbat, tamen ā tribūnīs mīlitum lēgātīsque, ut erat ā Caesare praeceptum, retinēbantur. Sed ēlātī spē celeris vīctōriae et hostium fugā et superiōrum temporum secundīs proeliīs nihil adeō arduum sibi esse exīstimāvērunt, quod nōn virtūte cōnsequī possent, neque fīnem prius sequendī fēcērunt, quam mūrō oppidī portīsque appropīnquārunt. Tum vērō ex omnibus urbis partibus ortō clāmōre quī longius aberant repentīnō tumultū perterritī, cum hostem intrā portās esse exīstimārent sēsē ex oppidō ēiēcērunt. Mātrēsfamiliae dē mūrō vestem argentumque iactābant et pectore nūdō prōminentēs passīs manibus obtestābantur Rōmānōs, ut sibi parcerent neu, sīcut Avaricī fēcissent, nē ā mulieribus quidem atque īnfantibus abstinērent: nōnnūllae dē mūrīs per manūs dēmīssae sēsē mīlitibus trādēbant. L. Fabius, centuriō legiōnis VIII, quem inter suōs eō diē dīxisse

cōnstābat, excitārī sē Avaricēnsibus praemiīs neque commīsūrum ut prius quisquam mūrum ascenderet, trēs suōs nactus manipulārēs atque ab iīs sublevātus mūrum ascendit; hōs ipse rūrsus singulōs exceptāns in mūrum extulit.

The Gauls recieve reinforcements.

48. Interim iī, quī ad alteram partem oppidī, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, mūnītiōnis causā convēnerant, prīmō exaudītō clāmōre, inde etiam crēbrīs nūntiīs incitātī, oppidum ā Rōmānīs tenērī, praemīssīs equitibus māgnō cursū eō contendērunt. Eōrum ut quisque prīmus vēnerat, sub mūrō cōnsistēbat suōrumque pūgnantium numerum augēbat. Quōrum cum māgna multitūdō convēnisset, mātrēsfamiliae quae paulō ante Rōmānīs dē mūrō manūs tendēbant, suōs obtestārī et mōre Gallicō passum capillum ostentāre līberōsque in cōnspectum prōferre coepērunt. Erat Rōmānīs nec locō nec numerō aequa contentiō; simul et cursū et spatiō pūgnae dēfatīgātī nōn facile recentēs atque integrōs sustinēbant.

Caesar changes position and stations reserves.

49. Caesar cum inīquō locō pūgnārī hostiumque augērī cōpiās vidēret, praemetuēns suīs ad T. Sextium lēgātum, quem minōribus castrīs praesidiō relīquerat, mīsit, ut cohortēs ex castrīs celeriter ēdūceret et sub īnfimō colle ā dextrō latere hostium cōnstitueret, ut, sī nostrōs locō depulsōs vīdisset, quō minus līberē hostēs īnsequerentur, terrēret. Ipse paulum ex eō locō cum legiōne prōgressus, ubi cōnstiterat, ēventum pūgnae exspectābat.

Panic caused by the arrival of the Aeduans.

50. Cum ācerrimē comminus pūgnārētur, hostēs locō et numerō, nostrī virtūte cōnfīderent, subitō sunt Aeduī vīsī ā latere nostrīs apertō, quōs Caesar ab dextrā parte aliō ascēnsū manūs distinendae causā mīserat. Hī similitūdine armōrum vehementer nostrōs perterruērunt, āc tametsī dextrīs umerīs exsertīs animadvertēbantur, quod

īnsīgne pācātōrum esse cōnsuèrat, tamen id ipsum suī fallendī causā mīlitēs ab hostibus factum exīstimābant. Eōdem tempore L. Fabius centuriō quīque ūnā mūrum ascenderant circumventī atque interfectī mūrō praecipitābantur. M. Petronius, ēiusdem legiōnis centuriō, cum portās excīdere cōnātus esset, ā multitūdine oppressus āc sibi dēspērāns multīs iam vulneribus acceptīs manipulāribus suīs, quī illum secūtī erant: 'Quoniam,' inquit, 'mē ūnā vōbīscum servāre nōn possum, vestrae quidem certē vītae prōspiciam, quōs cupiditāte glōriae adductus in perīculum dēdūxī. Vōs datā facultāte vōbīs cōnsulite.' Simul in mediōs hostēs irrūpit duōbusque interfectīs reliquōs ā portā paulum submōvit. Cōnantibus auxiliārī suīs: 'Frūstrā,' inquit, 'meae vītae subvenīre cōnāminī, quem iam sanguis vīrēsque dēficiunt. Proinde abīte, dum est facultās, vōsque ad legiōnem recipite.' Ita pūgnāns post paulum concidit āc suīs salūtī fuit.

Exploit of Petronius.

51. Nostrī, cum undique premerentur, XLVI centuriōnibus āmīssīs dēiectī sunt locō. Sed intolerantius Gallōs īnsequentēs legiō decima tardāvit, quae prō subsidiō paulō aequiōre locō cōnstiterat. Hanc rūrsus XIII legiōnis cohortēs excēpērunt, quae ex castrīs minōribus ēductae cum T. Sextiō lēgātō cēperant locum superiōrem. Legiōnēs, ubi prīmum plāniciem attigērunt, īnfestīs contrā hostēs sīgnīs cōnstitērunt. Vercingetorix ab rādīcibus collis suōs intrā mūnītiōnēs redūxit. Eō diē mīlitēs sunt paulō minus septingentī dēsīderātī.

The Romans retire with loss.

52. Posterō diē Caesar cōntiōne advocātā temeritātem cupiditātemque mīlitum reprehendit, quod sibi ipsī iūdicāvissent, quō prōcēdendum aut quid agendum vidērētur, neque sīgnō recipiendī datō cōnstitissent neque ā tribūnīs mīlitum lēgātīsque retinērī

Caesar reproaches his soldiers for rashness and praises their valor.

potuissent. Exposuit, quid inīquitās locī posset, quod ipse ad Avaricum sēnsisset, cum sine duce et sine equitātū dēprehēnsīs hostibus explōrātam vīctōriam dīmīsisset, nē parvum modo dētrīmentum in contentiōne propter inīquitātem locī acciderat. Quantō opere eōrum animī māgnitūdinem admīrārētur, quōs nōn castrōrum mūnītiōnēs, nōn altitūdō montis, nōn mūrus oppidī tardāre potuisset, tantō opere licentiam arrogantiamque reprehendere, quod plūs sē quam imperātōrem dē vīctōriā atque exitū rērum sentīre exīstimārent; nec minus sē ab mīlite modestiam et continentiam quam virtūtem atque animī māgnitūdinem dēsīderāre.

The Gauls decline to fight. Caesar retires among the Aedui.

53. Hāc habitā cōntiōne et ad extrēmam ōrātiōnem cōnfīrmātīs mīlitibus, nē ob hanc causam animō permovērentur neu, quod incommodum inīquitās locī attulisset, id virtūtī hostium tribuerent, eadem dē profectiōne cōgitāns, quae ante sēnserat, legiōnēs ex castrīs ēdūxit aciemque idōneō locō cōnstituit. Cum Vercingetorix nihilō magis in aequum locum dēscenderet, levī factō equestrī proeliō atque eō secundō in castra exercitum redūxit. Cum hōc idem posterō diē fēcisset, satis ad Gallicam ostentātiōnem minuendam mīlitumque animōs cōnfīrmandōs factum exīstimāns in Aeduōs mōvit castra. Nē tum quidem īnsecūtīs hostibus tertiō diē ad flūmen Elaver pervēnit; pontem reficit eōque exercitum trādūxit.

He seeks a renewal of their allegiance.

54. Ibi ā Viridomarō atque Eporedorige Aeduīs appellātus discit cum omnī equitātū Litaviccum ad sollicitandōs Aeduōs profectum: opus esse ipsōs antecēdere ad cōnfīrmandam cīvitātem. Etsī multīs iam rēbus perfidiam Aeduōrum perspectam habēbat atque hōrum discessū mātūrārī dēfectiōnem cīvitātis exīstimābat, tamen eōs retinendōs nōn cōnstituit, nē aut īnferre iniūriam vidērētur

aut daret timōris aliquam suspiciōnem. Discēdentibus hīs breviter sua in Aeduōs merita exposuit, quōs et quam humilēs accēpisset, compulsōs in oppida, multātōs agrīs, omnibus ēreptīs cōpiīs, impositō stīpendiō, obsidibus summā cum contumēliā extortīs, et quam in fōrtūnam quamque in amplitūdinem dēdūxisset, ut nōn sōlum in prīstinum statum redīssent, sed omnium temporum dīgnitātem et grātiam antecessisse vidērentur. Hīs datīs mandātīs eōs ab sē dīmīsit.

Noviodunum, the store house for the Romans, is destroyed by the Gauls.

55. Noviodūnum erat oppidum Aeduōrum ad rīpās Ligeris oportūnō locō positum. Hūc Caesar omnēs obsidēs Galliae, frūmentum, pecūniam pūblicam, suōrum atque exercitūs impedīmentōrum māgnam partem contulerat, hūc māgnum numerum equōrum hūius bellī causā in Ītaliā atque Hispāniā coēmptum mīserat. Eō cum Eporedorix Viridomarusque vēnissent et dē statū cīvitātis cōgnōvissent, Litaviccum Bibracte ab Aeduīs receptum, quod est oppidum apud eōs māximae auctōritātis, Convīctolitāvem magistratum māgnamque partem senātūs ad eum convēnisse, lēgātōs ad Vercingetorigem dē pāce et amīcitiā conciliandā pūblicē mīssōs, nōn praetermittendum tantum commodum exīstimāvērunt. Itaque interfectīs Noviodūnī custōdibus quīque eō negōtiandī causā convēnerant pecūniam atque equōs inter sē partītī sunt; obsidēs cīvitātum Bibracte ad magistrātum dēdūcendōs cūrāvērunt; oppidum, quod ā sē tenērī nōn posse iūdicābant, nē cuī esset ūsuī Rōmānīs, incendērunt; frūmentī quod subitō potuērunt nāvibus āvēxērunt, reliquum flūmine atque incendiō corrūpērunt. Ipsī ex fīnitimīs regiōnibus cōpiās cōgere, praesidia custōdiāsque ad rīpās Ligeris dispōnere equitātumque omnibus locīs iniciendī timōris causā ostentāre coepērunt, sī ab rē frūmentāriā Rōmānōs exclūdere [aut adductōs inopiā ex prōvinciā

expellere] possent. Quam ad spem multum eōs adiuvābat, quod Liger ex nivibus crēv rat, ut omnīnō vadō nōn posse trānsīrī vidērētur.

Caesar crosses the Loire and goes to join Labienus

56. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs Caesar mātūrandum sibi cēnsuit, sī esset in perficiendīs pontibus perīclitandum, ut prius, quam essent māiōrēs eō coāctae cōpiae, dīmicāret. Nam nē commūtātō cōnsiliō iter in prōvinciam converteret, ut nēmō nōn tum quidem necessāriō faciendum exīstimābat, cum īnfāmia atque indīgnitās reī et oppositus mōns Cevenna viārumque difficultās impediēbat, tum māximē quod abiūnctō Labiēnō atque iīs legiōnibus, quās ūnā mīserat, vehementer timēbat. Itaque admodum māgnīs diurnīs nocturnīsque itineribus cōnfectīs contrā omnium opīniōnem ad Ligerem vēnit vadōque per equitēs inventō prō reī necessitāte oportūnō, ut brāchia modo atque umerī ad sustinenda arma līberī ab aquā esse possent, dispositō equitātū, quī vim flūminis refringeret, atque hostibus prīmō aspectū perturbātīs incolumem exercitum trādūxit frūmentumque in agrīs et pecoris cōpiam nactus replētō hīs rēbus exercitū iter in Senonēs facere īnstituit.

Labienus marches on Lutetia (Paris). He is opposed by Camulogenus.

57. Dum haec apud Caesarem geruntur, Labiēnus eō supplēmentō, quod nūper ex Ītaliā vēnerat, relīctō Agedincī, ut esset impedīmentīs praesidiō, cum quattuor legiōnibus Lutētiam proficīscitur. Id est oppidum Parisiōrum, quod positum est in īnsulā flūminis Sēquanae. Cūius adventū ab hostibus cōgnitō māgnae ex fīnitimīs cīvitātibus cōpiae convēnērunt. Summa imperiī trāditur Camulogēnō Aulercō, quī prope cōnfectus aetāte tamen propter singulārem scientiam reī mīlitāris ad eum est honōrem ēvēctus. Is cum animadvertisset perpetuam esse palūdem, quae īnfluerat in Sēquanam atque illum omnem locum

māgnoperē impedīret, hīc cōnsēdit nostrōsque trānsitū prohibēre īnstituit.

58. Labiēnus prīmō vīneās agere, crātibus atque aggere palūdem explēre atque iter mūnīre cōnābātur. Postquam id difficilius cōnfierī animum advertit, silentiō ē castrīs tertiā vigiliā ēgressus eōdem quō vēnerat itinere Metiosēdum pervēnit. Id est oppidum Senonum in īnsulā Sēquanae positum, ut paulō ante dē Lutētiā dīximus. Dēprēnsīs nāvibus circiter quīnquāgintā celeriterque coniūnctīs atque eō mīlitibus iniectīs et reī novitāte perterritīs oppidānīs, quōrum māgna pars erat ad bellum ēvocāta, sine contentiōne oppidō potītur. Refectō ponte, quem superiōribus diēbus hostēs resciderant, exercitum trādūcit et secundō flūmine ad Lutētiam iter facere coepit. Hostēs rē cōgnitā ab iīs, quī Metiosēdō fūgerant, Lutētiam incendī pontēsque ēius oppidī rescindī iubent; ipsī profectī ā palūde ad rīpās Sēquanae ē regiōne Lutētiae contrā Labiēnī castra cōnsīdunt.

Labienus captures Metiosedum. The Gauls burn Lutetia and march against him.

59. Iam Caesar ā Gergoviā discessisse audiēbātur, iam dē Aeduōrum dēfectiōne et secundō Galliae mōtū rumōrēs afferēbantur, Gallīque in colloquiīs interclūsum itinere et Ligere Caesarem inopiā frūmentī coāctum in prōvinciam contendisse cōnfīrmābant. Bellovacī autem dēfectiōne Aeduōrum cōgnitā, quī ante erant per sē īnfidēlēs, manūs cōgere atque apertē bellum parāre coepērunt. Tum Labiēnus tantā rērum commūtātiōne longē aliud sibi capiendum cōnsilium, atque anteā sēnserat, intellegēbat, neque iam, ut aliquid acquīreret proeliōque hostēs lacesseret, sed ut incolumem exercitum Agedincum redūceret, cōgitābat. Namque alterā ex parte Bellovacī, quae cīvitās in Galliā māximam habet opīniōnem virtūtis, īnstābant, alteram Camulogēnus

Perplexity of Labienus.

parātō atque īnstrūctō exercitū tenēbat; tum legiōnēs ā praesidiō atque impedīmentīs interclūsās māximum flūmen distinēbat. Tantīs subitō difficultātibus obiectīs ab animī virtūte auxilium petendum vidēbat.

He divides his troops and withdraws.

60. Sub vesperum cōnsiliō convocātō cohortātus, ut ea, quae imperāsset, dīligenter industriēque administrārent, nāvēs, quās Metiosēdō dēdūxerat, singulās equitibus Rōmānīs attribuit et prīmā cōnfectā vigiliā quattuor mīlia passuum secundō flūmine silentiō prōgredī ibique sē exspectāre iubet. Quīnque cohortēs, quās minimē fīrmās ad dīmicandum esse exīstimābat, castrīs praesidiō relinquit; quīnque ēiusdem legiōnis reliquās dē mediā nocte cum omnibus impedīmentīs adversō flūmine māgnō tumultū proficīscī imperat. Conquīrit etiam lintrēs: hās māgnō sonitū rēmōrum incitātās in eandem partem mittit. Ipse post paulō silentiō ēgressus cum tribus legiōnibus eum locum petit, quō nāvēs appellī iusserat.

He crosses the Seine. The Gauls pursue.

61. Eō cum esset ventum, explōrātōrēs hostium, ut omnī flūminis parte erant dispositī, inopīnantēs, quod māgna subitō erat coorta tempestās, ab nostrīs opprimuntur; exercitus equitatusque equitibus Rōmānīs administrantibus, quōs eī negōtiō praefēcerat, celeriter trānsmittitur. Ūnō ferē tempore sub lūcem hostibus nūntiātur in castrīs Rōmānōrum praeter cōnsuētūdinem tumultuārī et māgnum īre āgmen adversō flūmine sonitumque rēmōrum in eādem parte exaudīrī et paulō īnfrā mīlitēs nāvibus trānsportārī. Quibus rēbus audītīs, quod exīstimābant tribus locīs trānsīre legiōnēs atque omnēs perturbātōs dēfectiōne Aeduōrum fugam parāre, suās quoque cōpiās in trēs partēs distribuērunt. Nam praesidiō ē regiōne castrōrum relīctō et parvā manū Metiosēdum versus mīssā, quae tantum prō-

grederētur, quantum nāvēs prōcessissent, reliquās cōpiās contrā Labiēnum dūxērunt.

Labienus defeats the Gauls and joins Caesar.

62. Prīmā luce et nostrī omnēs erant trānsportātī et hostium aciēs cernēbātur. Labiēnus mīlitēs cohortātus, ut suae prīstinae virtūtis et secundissimōrum proeliōrum retinērent memoriam atque ipsum Caesarem, cūius ductū saepenumerō hostēs superāssent, praesentem adesse exīstimārent, dat sīgnum proeliī. Prīmō concursū ā dextrō cornū, ubi septima legiō cōnstiterat, hostēs pelluntur atque in fugam cōniciuntur; ab sinistrō, quem locum duodecima legiō tenēbat, cum prīmī ōrdinēs hostium trānsfīxī pīlīs concidissent, tamen ācerrimē reliquī resistēbant, nec dabat suspiciōnem fugae quisquam. Ipse dux hostium Camulogēnus suīs aderat atque eōs cohortābātur. Incertō etiam nunc exitū vīctōriae, cum septimae legiōnis tribūnīs esset nūntiātum, quae in sinistrō cornū gererentur, post tergum hostium legiōnem ostendērunt sīgnaque intulērunt. Nē eō quidem tempore quisquam locō cessit, sed circumventī omnēs interfectīque sunt. Eandem fōrtūnam tulit Camulogēnus. At iī, quī in praesidiō contrā castra Labienī erant relīctī, cum proelium commīssum audīssent, subsidiō suīs iērunt collemque cēpērunt, neque nostrōrum mīlitum vīctōrum impetum sustinēre potuērunt. Sīc cum suīs fugientibus permīxtī, quōs nōn sīlvae montēsque tēxērunt, ab equitātū sunt interfectī. Hōc negōtiō cōnfectō Labiēnus revertitur Agedincum, ubi impedīmenta tōtīus exercitūs relīcta erant; inde diē tertiō cum omnibus cōpiīs ad Caesarem pervēnit.

More tribes join the revolt. Dissapointment of the Aedui.

63. Dēfectiōne Aeduōrum cōgnitā bellum augētur. Lēgātiōnēs in omnēs partēs circummittuntur: quantum grātiā, auctōritāte, pecūniā valent, ad sollicitandās cīvitātēs nītuntur; nactī obsidēs

quōs Caesar apud eōs dēposuerat, hōrum suppliciō dubitantēs territant. Petunt ā Vercingetorige Aeduī, ut ad sē veniat ratiōnēsque bellī gerendī commūnicet. Rē impetrātā contendunt, ut ipsīs summa imperiī trādātur, et rē in contrōversiam dēductā tōtīus Galliae concilium Bibracte indīcitur. Conveniunt undique frequentēs. Multitūdinis suffrāgiīs rēs permittitur: ad ūnum omnēs Vercingetorigem probant imperātōrem. Ab hōc conciliō Rēmī, Lingonēs, Trēverī āfuērunt: illī, quod amīcitiam Rōmānōrum sequēbantur; Trēverī, quod aberant longius et ā Germānīs premēbantur, quae fuit causa, quārē tōtō abessent bellō et neutrīs auxilia mitterent. Māgnō dolōre Aeduī ferunt sē dēiectōs prīncipātū, queruntur fōrtūnae commūtātiōnem et Caesaris indulgentiam in sē requīrunt, neque tamen susceptō bellō suum cōnsilium ā reliquīs sēparāre audent. Invītī summae speī adulēscentēs, Eporedorix et Viridomarus, Vercingetorigī parent.

Plans of Vercingetorix.

64. Ipse imperat reliquīs cīvitātibus obsidēs diemque huīc reī cōnstituit. Omnēs equitēs, quīndecim mīlia numerō, celeriter convenīre iubet: peditātū, quem anteā habuerat, sē fore contentum dīcit, neque fōrtūnam temptātūrum aut in aciē dīmicātūrum, sed, quoniam abundet equitātū, perfacile esse factū frūmentātiōnibus pābulātiōnibusque Rōmānōs prohibēre; aequō modo animō sua ipsī frūmenta corrumpant aedificiaque incendant, quā reī familiāris iactūrā perpetuum imperium lībertātemque sē cōnsequī videant. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus Aeduīs Segusiāvīsque, quī sunt fīnitimī prōvinciae, decem mīlia peditum imperat; hūc addit equitēs octingentōs. Hīs praeficit frātrem Eporedorigis bellumque īnferrī Allobrogibus iubet. Alterā ex parte Gabalōs proximōsque pāgōs Arvernōrum in Helviōs, item Rutenōs Cadurcōsque ad fīnēs Volcārum Arecomicōrum dēpopulandōs mit-

tit. Nihilō minus clandestīnīs nūntiīs legātiōnibusque Allobrogās sollicitat, quōrum mentēs nōndum ab superiōre bellō resēdisse spērābat. Hōrum prīncipibus pecūniās, cīvitātī autem imperium tōtīus prōvinciae pollicētur.

Preparations of Caesar.

65. Ad hōs omnēs cāsūs prōvīsa erant praesidia cohortium duārum et vīgintī, quae ex ipsā coāctā prōvinciā ab L. Caesare lēgātō ad omnēs partēs oppōnēbantur. Helviī suā sponte cum fīnitimīs proeliō congressī pelluntur et C. Valeriō Domnotaurō, Cabūrī fīliō, prīncipe cīvitātis, complūribusque aliīs interfectīs intrā oppida āc mūrōs compelluntur. Allobrogēs crēbrīs ad Rhodanum dispositīs praesidiīs māgnā cum cūrā et dīligentiā suōs fīnēs tuentur. Caesar, quod hostēs equitātū superiōrēs esse intellegēbat et interclūsīs omnibus itineribus nūllā rē ex prōvinciā atque Ītaliā sublevārī poterat, trāns Rhēnum in Germāniam mittit ad eās cīvitātēs, quās superiōribus annīs pācāverat, equitēsque ab hīs arcessit et levis armātūrae peditēs, quī inter eōs proeliārī cōnsuērant. Eōrum adventū, quod minus idōneīs equīs ūtēbantur, ā tribūnīs mīlitum reliquīsque equitibus Rōmānis atque ēvocātīs equōs sūmit Germānīsque distribuit.

Vercingetorix counsels an attack.

66. Intereā, dum haec geruntur, hostium cōpiae ex Arvernīs equitēsque, quī tōtī Galliae erant imperātī, conveniunt. Māgnō hōrum coāctō numerō, cum Caesar in Sēquanōs per extrēmōs Lingonum fīnēs iter faceret, quō facilius subsidium prōvinciae ferrī posset, circiter mīlia passuum decem ab Rōmānīs trīnīs castrīs Vercingetorix cōnsēdit convocātīsque ad concilium praefectīs equitum vēnisse tempus vīctōriae dēmōnstrat. Fugere in prōvinciam Rōmānōs Galliāque excēdere. Id sibi ad praesentem obtinendam lībertātem satis esse; ad reliquī temporis pācem atque ōtium parum prōficī: māiōribus enim coāctīs cōpiīs reversūrōs neque

fīnem bellandī factūrōs. Proinde in āgmine impedītōs adorīrentur. Sī peditēs suīs auxilium ferant atque in eō morentur, iter facere nōn posse; sī, id quod magis futūrum cōnfīdat, relīctīs impedīmentīs suae salūtī cōnsulant, et ūsū rērum necessāriārum et dīgnitāte spoliātum īrī; nam dē equitibus hostium, quīn nēmō eōrum prōgredī modo extrā āgmen audeat, nē ipsōs quidem dēbēre dubitāre. Id quō māiōre faciant animō, cōpiās sē omnēs prō castrīs habitūrum et terrōrī hostibus futūrum. Conclāmant equitēs: sānctissimō iūreiūrandō cōnfīrmārī oportēre, nē tēctō recipiātur, nē ad līberōs, nē ad parentēs, ad uxōrem aditum habeat, quī nōn bis per āgmen hostium perequitāsset.

The Gauls are defeated with loss.

67. Probātā rē atque omnibus iūreiūrandō adāctīs posterō diē in trēs partēs distribūtō equitātū duae sē aciēs ā duōbus lateribus ostendunt, ūna ā prīmō āgmine iter impedīre coepīt. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar suum quoque equitātum tripertītō dīvīsum contrā hostem īre iubet. Pūgnātur ūnā omnibus in partibus. Cōnsistit āgmen; impedīmenta intrā legiōnēs recipiuntur, Sī quā in parte nostrī labōrāre aut gravius premī vidēbantur, eō sīgna īnferrī Caesar aciemque cōnstituī iubēbat; quae rēs et hostēs ad īnsequendum tardābat et nostrōs spē auxiliī cōnfīrmābat. Tandem Germānī ab dextrō latere summum iugum nanctī hostēs locō dēpellunt: fugientēs usque ad flūmen, ubi Vercingetorix cum pedestribus cōpiīs cōnsēderat, persequuntur complūrēsque interficiunt. Quā rē animadversā reliquī, nē circumīrentur veritī, sē fugae mandant. Omnibus locīs fit caedēs. Trēs nōbilissimī Aeduī captī ad Caesarem perdūcuntur: Cotus, praefectus equitum, quī contrōversiam cum Convīctolitāvī proximīs comitiīs habuerat, et Cavarillus, quī post dēfectiōnem Litaviccī pedestribus cōpiīs praefuerat, et Eporedorix,

quō duce ante adventum Caesaris Aeduī cum Sēquanīs bellō contenderant.

They retire to Alesia. Caesar pursues and lays siege.

68. Fugātō omnī equitātū Vercingetorīx cōpiās, ut prō castrīs collocāverat, redūxit prōtinusque Alesiam, quod est oppidum Mandūbiōrum, iter facere coepit celeriterque impedīmenta ex castrīs ēdūcī et sē subsequī iussit. Caesar impedīmentīs in proximum collem dēductīs duābus legiōnibus praesidiō relīctīs secūtus, quantum diēī tempus est passum, circiter tribus mīlibus hostium ex novissimō āgmine interfectīs alterō diē ad Alesiam castra fēcit. Perspectō urbis sitū perterritīsque hostibus, quod equitātū, quā māximē parte exercitūs cōnfīdēbant, erant pulsī, adhortātus ad labōrem mīlitēs circumvāllāre īnstituit.

1. **fugō, 1.** put to flight, chase: rout. 1

Vercingetorīx, -īgis, M., *chief of the Averni and commander of the combined Gallic forces in 52 B. C. at Alesia.* *

3. **Alesia, -ae,** F., *a town of the Mandūbiī, now* Alise Ste. Reine. *

Mandūbiī, -ōrum, M., *a Gallic people between the Aedui and Lingones.* 3

11. **circum-vāllō, 1.** [vālum, rampart], *a.*, surround with a rampart, beleaguer, invest. 4

---

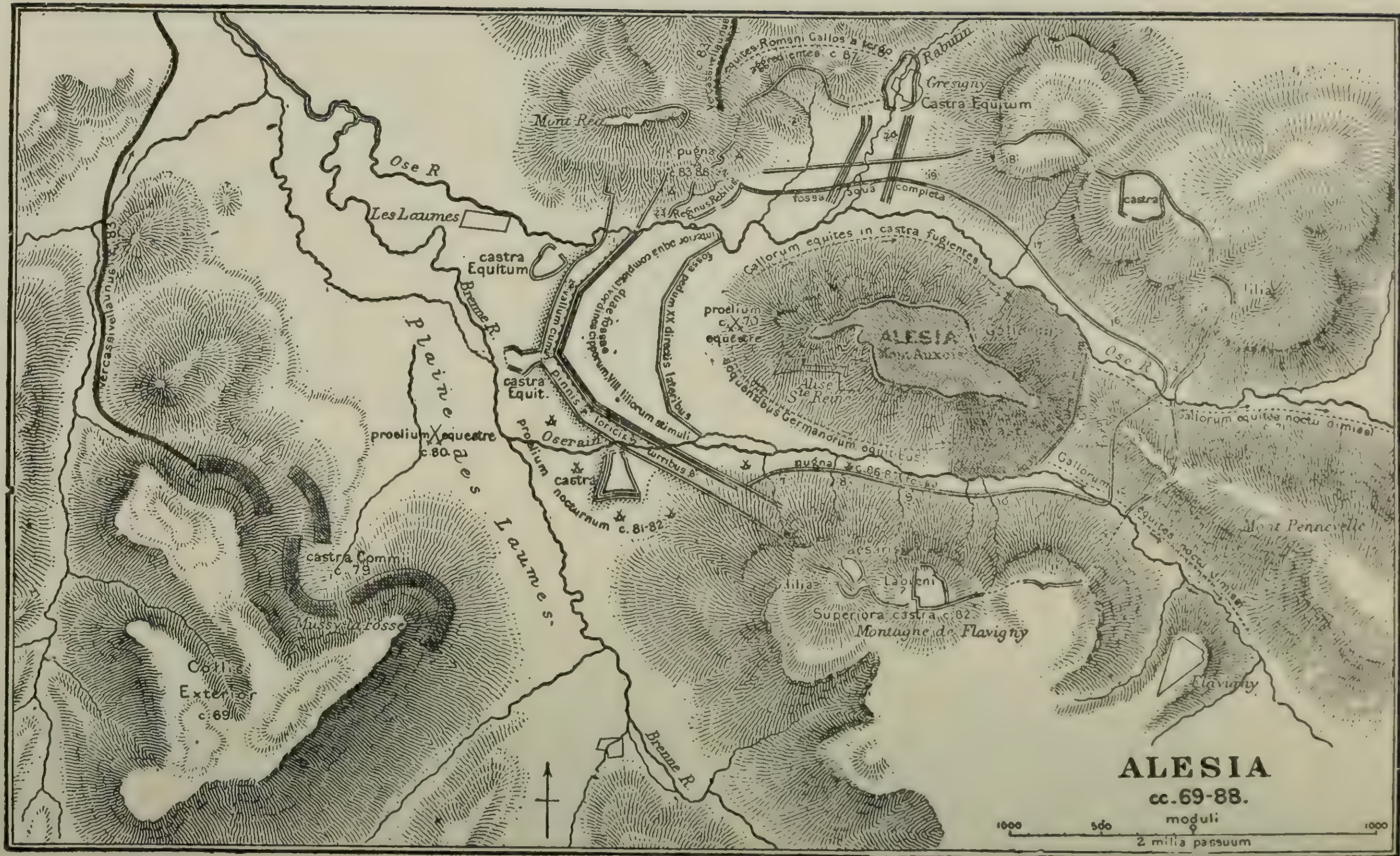
2. **ut . . . collocāverat:** i. e., without returning to camp.

3, 4. **Alesiam . . . coepit:** the distance is about forty miles. **quod:** for gender cf. II, 1, 4; I, 38, 3.

8. **alterō diē:** i. e., on the second day of the march, which began the day after the battle. **ad Alesiam:** this is Alise Ste. Reine, as has been proved by the excavations made on the site by order of the Emperor Napoleon III during the years 1862–65. The ancient town covered the whole of the oval plateau of Mont Auxois, which is one and a quarter miles long east and west and one half a mile across in the widest place. The base of the hill is six miles in circumference. The slopes rise very gradually to a wall of rock on all sides except the east where a low neck of land connects the hill with the high ground on that side.

9. **perspectō urbis sitū:** this reconnoissance convinced Caesar that it would be difficult to take the place by assault. The Roman army approached from the east.

11. **circumvāllāre:** see Int. 156, 157. Caesar had eleven legions — about 50,000 men — 5,000 Gallic and German cavalry and 10,000 auxiliary troops.



London: George Bell & Sons.

69. Ipsum erat oppidum Alesia in colle summō admodum ēditō locō, ut nisi obsidiōne expūgnārī nōn posse vidērētur; cūius collis rādīcēs duo duābus ex partibus flūmina subluēbant. Ante id oppidum plāniciēs circiter mīlia passuum tria in longitūdinem patēbat; reliquīs ex omnibus partibus collēs mediocrī interiectō spatiō parī altitūdinis fastīgiō oppidum cingēbant. Sub mūrō quae pars collis ad orientem sōlem spectābat, hunc omnem locum cōpiae Gallōrum complēverant fossamque et māceriam sex in altitūdinem pedum praedūxerant. Ēius mūnītiōnis, quae ab Rōmānīs īnstituēbātur, circuitus XI mīlia passuum tenēbat. Castra

Situation and defences of Alesia.

4. **sub-luō, -ere, lūtus** [luō, wash], *a.*, wash underneath, wash. 1
7. **fastīgium, -ī** [fastīgō, make pointed], N., *the top of a gable;* summit, elevation, height; declivity, descent, slope. 3
cingō, -ere, cinxī, cinctus, *a.*, encircle, surround, encompass, invest. *
9. **māceria, -ae,** F., a wall of soft clay; enclosure, wall. 2
10. **prae-dūcō, -ere. dūxī, ductus** [dūcō, lead], *a.*, lead before; make *or* construct before *or* in front. 2
11. **XI,** for **ūndecim,** *ind. num. adj.*, eleven.

---

2. **admodum ēditō locō:** about 550 feet above the surrounding plain. **nisi obsidiōne:** the site was not so elevated as that of Gergovia, but the defeat there had warned Caesar against taking any risks. Another defeat might undo the work of years.

3, 4. **duo flūmina:** the Lutosa (*Ose*) on the north and Osera (*Oserain*) on the south, both emptying into the Brenne. **ante id oppidum:** on the west. **plāniciēs:** the plain of Laumes.

5, 6. **longitūdinem:** north and south. **reliquīs . . . partibus:** on the north, east and south. **collēs:** a series of hills separated from Mont Auxois by the valleys of the Ose and Oserain. **mediocrī spatiō:** about one mile. **interiectō:** between the *collēs* and Mont Auxois.

8. **hunc omnem locum:** the eastern slope of the elevation, the level top being occupied by the town.

9. **fossam:** extending from the Ose to the Oserain. The Gauls expected the Romans to follow them along the low ridge between the two streams, by which alone the position could be stormed.

10. **ēius mūnītiōnis:** the Roman lines of investment, consisting of the camps and redoubts. In order to hem in the Gauls until they were finished, Caesar must first have seized all the hills and distributed his forces temporarily.

11. **castra:** four on the heights (except Mont Rea) for infantry and four on the plain for cavalry, have been excavated.

oportūnīs locīs erant posita ibique castella XXIII facta; quibus in castellīs interdiū statiōnēs pōnēbantur, nē qua subitō ēruptiō fieret: haec eadem noctū excubitōribus āc fīrmīs praesidiīs tenēbantur.

The Gauls are severely beaten in a cavalry contest.

70. Opere īnstitūtō fit equestre proelium in eā plāniciē, quam intermīssam collibus tria mīlia passuum in longitūdinem patēre suprā dēmōnstrāvimus. Summā vī ab utrīsque contenditur. Labōrantibus nostrīs Caesar Germānōs submittit legiōnēsque prō castrīs cōnstituit. Praesidiō legiōnem additō nostrīs animus augētur: hostēs in fugam coniectī sē ipsī multitūdine impediunt atque angustiōribus portīs relīctīs coartantur. Germānī ācrius usque ad mūnītiōnēs sequuntur. Fit māgna caedēs: nōnnūllī relīctīs equīs fossam trānsīre et māceriam trānscendere cōnantur. Paulum legiōnēs Caesar, quās prō vāllō cōnstituerat, prōmoverī iubet.

14. excubitor, -ōris [cubō, lie down], M., *one who lies out* or *on guard;* watchman, sentinel. 1

7. ad-dō, dere, didī, ditus [dō, give], *a.*, give *or* impart to, annex, add. *

12. ibique, *there,* i. e., in the lines of investment.

1. fit equestre proelium: Vercingetorix tried to break the Roman lines and escape. **opere:** the building of redoubts and camps.

2. plāniciē: here, naturally, was the weakest portion of the line of investment. The Gauls advanced along the northern and southern slopes of Mont Auxois.

5. Germānōs: a body of about 1,000 horse which Caesar had drawn from the subject tribes in order to offset the numerically superior cavalry force of the enemy. They were much superior to his Gallic horse and had already done good service. **prō castrīs:** those within supporting distance, on Mont Rea and Mont Flavigny.

6. praesidiō . . . additō: as a moral support; cf. V, 17, 9, *cōnfīsī*, etc.

8. portīs: in the *māceriae* on the west, extending down the slopes of Mont Auxois to the two streams see map.

10. fossam: not the one mentioned in 69, 9, but the one in front of the *māceriae* referred to in the previous note. **māceriam trānscendere:** because the gates were blocked.

11. prō vāllō=*prō castrīs*, line 5, above.

Nōn minus, quī intrā mūnītiōnēs erant, perturbantur Gallī: venīrī ad sē cōnfestim exīstimantēs ad arma conclāmant: nōnnūllī perterritī in oppidum irrumpunt. Vercingetorīx iubet portās claudī, nē castra nūdentur. Multīs interfectīs complūribus equīs captīs Germānī sēsē recipiunt.

Vercingetorix dismisses his cavalry and orders a general levy of the Gauls.

71. Vercingetorīx, priusquam mūnītiōnēs ā Rōmānīs perficiantur, cōnsilium capit, omnem ā sē equitātum noctū dīmittere. Discēdentibus mandat, ut suam quisque eōrum cīvitātem adeat omnēsque, quī per aetātem arma ferre possint, ad bellum cōgant. Suā in illōs merita prōpōnit obtestāturque, ut suae salūtis ratiōnem habeant neu sē optimē dē commūnī lībertāte meritum hostibus in cruciātum dēdant. Quod sī indīligentiōrēs fuerint, mīlia hominum dēlēcta LXXX ūnā sēcum interitūra dēmōnstrat. Ratiōne initā sē exiguē diērum XXX habēre frūmentum, sed paulō etiam longius tolerāre posse parcendō. Hīs datīs mandātīs, quā erat nostrum opus intermīssum, secundā vigiliā silentiō equitātum mittit. Frūmentum omne ad sē

6. **ob-testor, 1.** [**testor,** witness], *a.*, call to witness, protest, appeal to, entreat, implore. 4

7. **optimē,** *adv.* [*superl. of* bene], very well, highly. 2

8. **in-dīligēns, -entis** [dīligēns, heedful], heedless, careless, negligent. 1

13. **silentium, -ī** [**sileō,** be silent], N., silence: *in abl. as adv.*, in silence. *

---

13. **nōn minus:** than the horsemen who had just been routed. **quī . . . erant:** the Gallic infantry in the camp under the walls of Alesia.

2, 3. **omnem equitātum:** about 15,000. **dīmittere:** they were useless in the city and would only help consume the limited supply of provisions; and he depended upon them to bring an army to his rescue.

9. **mīlia . . . LXXX:** it seems probable that the number is exaggerated, there not being room on the plateau for so large an army in addition to the inhabitants of Alesia.

12. **quā:** on the east. The cavalry fled up the valleys of the Ose and Oserain.

referrī iubet: capitis poenam iīs, quī nōn pāruerint, cōnstituit: pecus, cūius māgna erat cōpia ā Mandūbiīs compulsa, virītim distribuit: frūmentum parcē et paulātim mētīrī īnstituit. Cōpiās omnēs, quās prō oppidō collocāverat, in oppidum recēpit. Hīs ratiōnibus auxilia Galliae exspectāre et bellum parat administrāre.

Caesar's works of investment.

72. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs ex perfugīs et captīvīs Caesar haec genera mūnītiōnis īnstituit. Fossam pedum vīgintī dērēctīs lateribus dūxit, ut ēius fossae solum tantundem patēret, quantum summae fossae labra dīstārent; reliquās omnēs mūnītiōnēs ab eā fossā pedēs CCCC redūxit, id hōc cōnsiliō, quoniam tantum esset necessāriō spatium complexus, nec facile tōtum opus corōnā mīlitum cingerētur, nē dē imprōvīsō aut noctū ad mūnītiōnēs hostium multitūdō advolāret, aut interdiū tēla in nostrōs operī dēstinātōs conicere possent. Hōc intermīssō spatiō duās fossās

16. virītim [vir, man], *adv.*, man by man, singly, individually. 1
parcē [parcus, sparing], *adv.*, sparingly, frugally, carefully. 1

4. tantundem, *adv.* [tantus, so great], just as great *or* far, just so far. 1

---

16. virītim distribuit: in order that they might be eaten first, since there was nothing to feed them on.

2. haec genera: the description in this and the next chapter applies especially to the works in the plain of Laumes, though in general it is true of the whole contravallation. **īnstituit:** in the plain west of Alesia, since the strongest fortifications were needed there.

3. pedum vīgintī: in width. This trench was eight or nine feet deep. **dūxit:** from the Ose to the Oserain.

5. reliquās mūnītiōnēs: the main works of contravallation. **pedēs CCCC:** i. e., at each end of the trench. The fortifications were not parallel with it.

6, 7. id: i. e., both *fossam .. dūxit* and *reliquās . . . redūxit.* **tantum spatium:** the distance around Mont Auxois.

11. eādem altitūdine: i. e., the two trenches were of the same depth, which the excavation shows was 8 or 9 feet.

XV pedēs lātās, eādem altitūdine perdūxit, quārum interiōrem campestribus āc dēmīssīs locīs aquā ex flūmine dērīvātā complēvit. Post eās aggerem āc vāllum XII pedum exstrūxit.

View of the plain of Laumes looking towards Mont Réa from the site occupied by Caesar, c. 85 (Plan *), with a restoration of the Roman lines and the walls of Alesia.



Huic lōrīcam pinnāsque adiēcit, grandibus cervīs ēminenti-

12. campester (tris), -tris, -tre [**campus,** a plain], of a plain, flat, level: **loca,** level country. 4

dē-mittō, -ere, mīsī, mīssus [**mittō**], *a.*, send away *or* down, thrust down: **sē,** descend: **sē animō,** lose courage: *in p. p. as adj.*, low-lying, low. *

dērīvō, 1. [**rīvus,** stream], *a.*, draw off. 1

14. lōrīca, -ae [**lōrum,** thong], F., a leather cuirass, corselet; breast-work, parapet. 3

pinna, -ae, F., feather, pinion; parapet, battlement *of stakes between which spears could be thrown.* 2

grandis, -e, of large size, full grown, great. 4

ēmineō, -ēre, -uī, *n.*, stand out, project. 3

---

interiōrem: the one nearer the town. The form of the trench is shown in the sectionof the works.

12. campestribus . . locīs: i. e., this water-ditch did not extend all around Alesia. The dry ditch, however, formed a part of the whole contravallation. **ex flūmine:** the Oserain. The gravel washed into the ditch by the water was easily traced by the excavators nearly half its length.

13. post eās: Caesar describes the works from the point of view of Alesia. **aggerem:** an earthwork parallel with the outer trench. **vāllum:** a line of palisades at the top of the slope of the *agger.* As the trench was over eight feet deep, the entire height of the face of the contravallation was over twenty feet.

14. lōrīcam: a breastwork of hurdles supported by the *vāllum.* **pinnās:** these were set upon the top of the *lōrīca:* see elevation of rampart. **cervīs:** large limbs of trees sunk into the *agger* at the base of the parapet with their forked branches projecting horizontally.

bus ad commīssūrās pluteōrum atque aggeris, quī ascēnsum hostium tardārent, et turrēs tōtō opere circumdedit, quae pedēs LXXX inter sē dīstārent.

His works of defence.

73. Erat eōdem tempore et māteriārī et frūmentārī et tantās mūnītiōnēs fierī necesse dēminūtīs nostrīs cōpiīs, quae longius ā castrīs prōgrediēbantur; āc nōnnumquam opera nostra Gallī temptāre atque ēruptiōnem ex oppidō plūribus portīs summā vī facere cōnābantur. Quārē ad haec rūrsus opera addendum Caesar putāvit, quō minōre numerō mīlitum mūnītiōnēs dēfendī possent. Itaque truncīs arborum admodum fīrmīs rāmīs abscīsīs atque hōrum dēlibrātīs āc praeacūtīs cacūminibus perpetuae fossae quīnōs pedēs altae dūcēbantur. Hūc illī stīpitēs dēmīssī et ab īnfimō re-

15. **commīssūra, -ae** [com-mittō, unite], F., uniting; joint, seam, junction. 1

pluteus, -ī, M., shed, mantelet (*of hurdles covered with hides to protect besiegers*); defence, breastwork. 3

1. **māterior, -ārī** *a.*, procure wood. 1

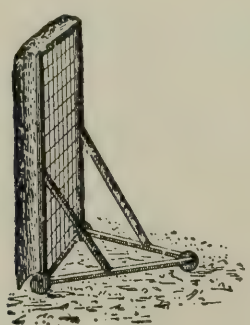
8. **dē-librō, -āre, -ātus** [liber, bark], *a.*, strip off the bark *or* rind, peel. 1

9. **cacūmen, -inis,** N., the top, tip, summit, point. 1

10. **stīpes, stīpitis** [*cf.* stīpō, compress], M., log, stock, trunk *of a tree.* 2

---

15. **pluteōrum:** which, bound together, formed the *lōrīca*.



Pluteus.

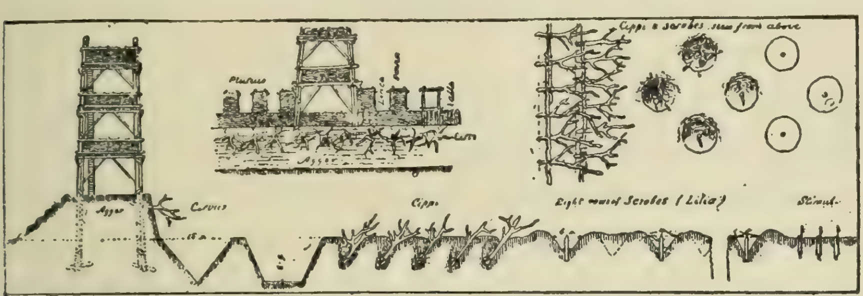
16. **tōtō opere:** not the whole length of the contravallation, but the portion running across the plain, about a mile and a half in length.

17. **dīstārent:** there were about 100 of these towers.

7. **numerō:** it is estimated that there would have been one man only for each three feet of the length of the fortifications with no reserves. **truncīs:** trunks of trees with stout branches peeled and sharpened were set in trenches parallel with the contravallation.

10. **hūc:** i. e., *in fossās.*

vinctī, nē revellī possent, ab rāmīs ēminēbant. Quīnī ērant ōrdinēs coniūnctī inter sē atque implicātī; quō quī intrāverant, sē ipsī acūtissimīs vāllīs induēbant. Hōs cippōs appel-



Section of the Roman 'munitiones' before Alesia. Elevation of rampart. Bird's-eye view of 'cippi' and caltrops.

lābant. Ante hōs oblīquīs ōrdinibus in quīncuncem dispositīs scrobēs trium in altitūdinem pedum fodiēbantur paulātim angustiōre ad īnfimum fastīgiō. Hūc teretēs stīpitēs feminis crassitūdine ab summō praeacūtī et praeūstī dēmittēbantur

11. re-vellō (vol-), **-ere, vellī, vulsus** [vellō, pluck], *a.*, pull, pluck *or* tear away. 2

12. implicō, 1, [plicō, fold], *a.*, enfold, entwine, unite closely. 1

13. vāllus, -ī, M., a stake *for a palisade;* a palisade.

cippus, -ī, M., pillar, post, boundary-stone; a palisade *or* stockade *formed of trunks of trees driven into the ground.* 1

14. oblīquus, -a, -um, sidelong, slanting, oblique. 1

quīncunx, -uncis [quīnque + uncia, twelfth], M., five twelfths; **quīncunx,** *anything arranged in oblique lines or rows thus* ⁚·⁚·⁚ 1

15. scrobis, -is, F., M., ditch, trench, pit. 3

fodiō, -ere, fōdī, fossus, *a.*, dig. 1

16. teres, -etis, *adj.* [terō, rub], rubbed *or* rounded off, smooth. 1

femur, -inis (-oris), N., the thigh. 1

17. prae-ūstus, -a, -um [*p. p. of* **praeurō** *used as adj.*], burned in front *or* at the end. 3

11, 12. **quīnī . . . implicātī:** there were five rows of these set so close together that their projecting branches interlaced and formed a sort of abatis.

13. **vāllīs:** these were the branches (*rāmīs*) of the rows of tree trunks. **cippōs appellābant:** sc. *mīlitēs:* probably in jest. They were a novelty.

14. **ante hōs:** i. e., toward Alesia.

15, 16. **scrobēs:** in the plain of Laumes more than 50 of these were found, others on the heights, dug in the solid rock. **paulātim . . . fastīgiō:** the pits were funnel-shaped.

17. **praeūstī:** so as to harden the wood.

ita, ut nōn amplius digitīs quattuor ex terrā ēminērent; simul cōnfīrmandī et stabiliēndī causā singulī ab īnfimō solō pedēs terrā exculcābantur, reliqua pars scrobis ad occultandās īnsidiās vīminibus āc virgultīs integēbātur. Hūius generis octōnī ōrdinēs ductī ternōs inter sē pedēs dīstābant. Id ex similitūdine flōris līlium appellābant. Ante haec tāleae pedem longae ferreīs hāmīs īnfīxīs tōtae in terram īnfodiēbantur mediocribusque intermīssīs spatiīs omnibus locīs disserēbantur; quōs stimulōs nōminābant.

Extent of the works of investment.

74. Hīs rēbus perfectīs regiōnēs secūtus quam potuit aequissimās prō locī nātūrā XIIII mīlia passuum complexus parēs ēiusdem generis mūnītiōnēs, dīversās

19. **stabiliō**, 4. [**stabilis**, firm], a., make firm *or* stable, stay, fix. 1
20. **exculcō, -āre** [**calcō**, trample], *a.*, trample out, stamp *or* tread down. 1
21. **in-tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctus** [**tegō**, cover], cover over, protect. 3
octōnī, -ae, -a, *num. distr.* [**octō**, eight], eight at a time, eight (each.) 2
22. **similitūdō, -inis** [**similis**, like], F., likeness, resemblance. 2
23. **flōs, flōris**, M., blossom, flower. 1
līlium, -ī, N., lily; *a name jocosely given to the* scrobes, *dug out in form of a lily.* 1
24. **hāmus, -ī**, M., hook. 1
īn-fīgō, -ere, fīxī, fīxus [**fīgō**, fix], *a.*, fix *or* fasten in *or* on. 1
īn-fodiō, -ere, fōdī, fossus [**fodiō**, dig], *a.*, dig in, drive in deep, plant, bury. 1
25. **dis-serō, -ere** [**serō**, sow], *a.*, sow here and there; plant *or* set at intervals. 1
26. **stimulus, -ī**, M., goad; stake, *concealed beneath the ground as a defence.* 2

2. **XIIII** *or* **XIV** [=**quatuordecim**, *an ind. num. adj.*], fourteen.

19, 20. **singulī . . . exculcābantur**: i. e., the bottom of each pit was filled in with firmly trodden earth to the depth of a foot.
23. **līlium**: the funnel-shaped pit (*scrobis*) representing the calyx and the stake (*stīpes*) the pistil. **ante haec**: i. e., still toward the town. **tāleae**: square wooden stakes with barbed hooks of iron set in their tops. These were buried close together so that only the hooks were above the surface. Five of these were found in the excavations.
26. **stimulōs**: Caesar's language seems to imply that the soldiers gave names in jest to these novelties.

3, 4. **mūnītiōnēs**: the lines of circumvallation designed to repel the attack of the Gallic army of relief. In the plain of Laumes they are parallel to the lines of contravalation and the space between is 600

ab hīs, contrā exteriōrem hostem perfēcit, ut nē māgnā quidem multitūdine, sī ita accidat, mūnītiōnum praesidia circumfundī possent; āc nē cum perīculō ex castrīs ēgredī cōgātur, diērum xxx pābulum frūmentumque habēre omnēs convēctum iubet.

A contingent imposed on each Gallic tribe for the relief of Alesia.

75. Dum haec ad Alesiam geruntur, Gallī conciliō prīncipum indictō nōn omnēs eōs, quī arma ferre possent, ut cēnsuit Vercingetorīx, convocandōs statuunt, sed certum numerum cuique cīvitātī imperandum, nē tantā multitūdine cōnfūsā nec moderārī nec discernere suōs nec frūmentandī ratiōnem habēre possent. Imperant Aeduīs atque eōrum clientibus, Segūsiāvīs, Ambivarētīs, Aulercīs Brannovīcibus, Brannoviīs, mīlia xxxv; parem numerum Arvernīs adiūnctīs Eleutetīs, Cadurcīs, Gabalīs, Vel-

4. **exterī, -ae, -a,** *pl. only in use*, outside, outer, external; foreign. *sup.*, **extrēmus** *or* **extimus.** 3

8. **con-vehō, vehere, vēxī, vēctus** [**vehō**, carry], *a.*, carry *or* bring together, collect, fetch in. 1

2. **in-dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus** [**dīcō**, say], *a.*, say publicly, proclaim, announce, appoint. *

3. **cēnseō, -ēre, -uī, -sus,** *a.*, estimate, reckon; be of opinion, think, decide. *

5. **cōn-fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsus** [**fundō**, pour], *a.*, pour together, mingle; confuse, disorder; *in p. p. as adj.*, confused, disordered, indiscriminate. 1

dis-cernō, -ere, crēvī, cretus, [**cernō**, discern], *a.*, separate; distinguish, discern. 1

7. **Ambivarētī, -ōrum,** M., *clients of the Aedui.* 2

8. **Brannovīcēs, -um,** M., *a part of the Aulerci* II, **34,** 3. 1

Brannoviī, -ōrum, M., *a Celtic people, clients of the Aedui.* 1

XXXV, *for* **trīgintā quīnque,** *an ind. num. adj.*, thirty-five. 1

9. **Arvernī, -ōrum,** M., *a powerful people of Celtic Gaul, rivals of the Aedui.* *

Eleutetī, -ōrum, M., *clients of the Aedui.* 1

Cadurcī, -ōrum, M., *a people of Aquitania.* 5

Gabalī, -ōrum, M., *a Celtic people, clients of the Arverni.* 3

Vellaviī, -ōrum, M., *a Celtic people, clients of the Arverni.* 1

---

feet wide. Elsewhere it varies greatly. **dīversās ab hīs:** i. e., facing in the opposite direction. These works were not continuous, being interrupted where the slopes were steep.

1, 2. **conciliō . . . indictō:** probably at Bibracte, the capital of the Aedui, about 50 miles S. W. of Alesia.

7, 19. Note on the map of Gaul the geographical position of these

laviīs, quī sub imperiō Arvenōrum esse cōnsuērunt; Sēquanīs, Senonibus, Biturīgibus, Santonīs, Rutēnīs, Carnūtibus duodēna mīlia; Bellovacīs x; octōna Pictonibus et Turonīs et Parīsiīs et Helvētiīs; Ambiānīs, Mediomātricīs, Petrocoriīs, Nerviīs, Morinīs, Nitiobrogibus quīna mīlia; Aulercīs Cenomānīs totidem; Atrebatibus iv; Veliocassīs totidem; Lemovīcibus et Aulercīs Eburovīcibus terna; Rauricīs et Bōiīs bīna; xxx ūniversīs cīvitātibus, quae Oceanum attingunt quaeque eōrum cōnsuētūdine Aremoricae appellantur, quō sunt in numerō Cōriosolitēs, Redonēs, Ambibariī, Caletēs, Osismī, Lexoviī, Venellī. Ex hīs Bellovicī suum numerum nōn complēvērunt, quod sē suō nōmine atque arbitriō cum Rōmānīs bellum gestūrōs dīcerent neque cūiusquam imperiō obtemperātūrōs; rogātī tamen ab Commiō prō ēius hospitiō duo mīlia ūnā mīsērunt.

11. **Rutēnī, -ōrum,** M., *a Celtic people, partly in the Province.* *

12. **Parīsiī, -ōrum,** M., *a Celtic people, chief city* Lutetia, *now Paris.* 5

13. **Petrocoriī, -ōrum,** M., *a Celtic people on the right bank of the Garumna.* 1

14. **Nitiobrogēs, -um,** M., *a people of Aquitania, chief city* Aginnum. 4

Cenomānī, -ōrum, M., *a branch of the Aulerci, cf. the* Brannovices *l.* 8 *above.* 1

15. **Lemovīcēs, -um,** M., *a Celtic people, chief city now Limoges.* 4

18. **Aremoricae, -ārum,** F. *adj.* [*a Celtic word*], maritime. 2

19. **Ambibariī, -ōrum,** M., *a people of North-western Gaul, in what is now Normandy.* 1

23. **hospitium, -ī** [**hospes,** host *or* guest], N., the relation of host and guest, guest-friendship, hospitality. 5

---

tribes and on the map of France the corresponding modern names. Observe how few of the Gallic tribes, outside of the province were not engaged in this struggle for freedom. The principal people not included in this list were the Remi, Treveri and Lingones (cf. **63,** 11–15) and the Helvii and and Volcae (cf. **64,** 13–15). The Aquitani were not considered Gauls.

20–22. **Bellovacī . . . nōn complēvērunt,** *the Bellovaci did not send their full contingent.* **suō . . . arbitriō,** *on their own account and in accord with their own ideas.* **quod . . . dīcerent:** The Bellovaci fought Caesar bravely but ineffectually the following year.

The Gallic relief army, under Commius, sets out for Alesia.

76. Hūius operā Commiī, ut anteā dēmōnstrāvimus, fidēlī atque ūtilī superiōribus annīs erat ūsus in Britanniā Caesar; quibus ille prō meritīs cīvitātem ēius immūnem esse iusserat, iūra lēgēsque reddiderat atque ipsī Morinōs attribuerat. Tamen tanta ūniversae Galliae cōnsēnsiō fuit lībertātis vindicandae et prīstinae bellī laudis recuperandae, ut neque beneficiīs neque amīcitiae memoriā movērentur, omnēsque et animō et opibus in id bellum incumberent. Coāctīs equitum VIII mīlibus et peditum circiter CCL haec in Aeduōrum fīnibus recēnsēbantur, numerusque inībātur, praefectī cōnstituēbantur. Commiō Atrebatī, Viridomarō et Eporedorīgī Aeduīs, Vercassivellaunō Avernō, cōnsōbrīnō Vercingetorīgis, summa imperiī trāditur. Hīs dēlēctī ex cīvitātibus attribuuntur, quōrum cōnsiliō bellum administrārētur. Omnēs alacrēs et fīdūciae plēnī ad Alesiam proficīscuntur, neque erat omnium quisquam, quī aspectum modo tantae multitūdinis sustinērī posse arbitrārē-

4. immūnis, -e [mūnus, duty], free from duty *or tribute*, unburdened, untaxed. 1

6. cōnsēnsiō, -ōnis [cōnsensiō, agree], F., agreement, unanimity. 1

9. in-cumbō, -ere, cubuī, cubitus [cubō, lie down], *n.*, recline *or* lean upon, bend to; apply *or* devote one's self. 1

10. re-cēnseō, -ēre, cēnsuī, cēnsus [cēnseō, take, estimate], *a.*, count over, enumerate, review. 1

12. Viridomarus, -ī, M., *an Aeduan chief.* *

Eporedorīx, -īgis, M., *an Aeduan chief.* *

Vercassivellaunus, -ī, M., *a chief of the Arverni, cousin of Vercingetorix.* 4

13. cōn-sōbrīnus, -ī [soror, sister], M., a mother's sister's son; first cousin. 1

15. fīdūcia, -ae [fīdō, confide], F., confidence, trust, reliance. 3

---

1. anteā: cf. IV, **21, 27, 35.**

4. cīvitātem ēius: the Atrebates.

5, 6. ipsī = *Commiō.* **Morinōs:** as a punishment for their obstinate resistance, they had been reduced to the position of a subject state. **ūniversae Galliae:** not absolutely true; see note **75,** 7–19.

9. coāctīs: see Int. 176.

14. quōrum cōnsiliō: they formed a representative war council.

17. aspectum . . . multitūdinis: in the eyes of the savage numbers constitute strength.

tur, praesertim ancipitī proeliō, cum ex oppidō ēruptiōne pūgnārētur, forīs tantae cōpiae equitātūs peditātūsque cernerentur.

Council of the Gauls in Alesia. Desperate measures proposed by Critognatus.

77. At iī, quī Alesiae obsidēbantur, praeteritā diē, quā auxilia suōrum exspectāverant, cōnsūmptō omnī frūmentō, īnsciī quid in Aeduīs gererētur, conciliō convocātō dē exitū suarum fōrtūnārum cōnsultābant. Ac variīs dictīs sententiīs, quārum pars dēditiōnem, pars, dum vīrēs suppeterent, ēruptiōnem cēnsēbat, nōn praetereunda ōrātiō Critōgnātī vidētur propter ēius singulārem et nefāriam crūdēlitātem. Hīc summō in Arvernīs ortus locō et māgnae habitus auctōritātis: 'Nihil', inquit, 'dē eōrum sententiā dictūrus sum, quī turpissimam servitūtem dēditiōnis nōmine appellant, neque hōs habendōs cīvium locō neque ad cōnsilium adhibendōs cēnseō. Cum hīs mihi rēs sit, quī ēruptiōnem probant; quōrum in cōnsiliō omnium vestrum cōnsēnsū prīstinae residēre virtūtis memoria vidētur. Animī est ista mollitia, nōn virtūs, paulisper inopiam ferre nōn posse. Quī sē ūltrō mortī offerant, facilius reperiuntur, quam quī dolōrem patienter ferant. Atque ego hanc senten-

19. **forīs**, *adv.*, out of doors, abroad, without. 1

5. **cōnsultō**, 1. [*freq. of* **cōnsulō**, deliberate], reflect, consider, take counsel. 2

7. **Critōgnātus, -ī**, M., *a chief of the Arverni.* 2

8. **nefārius, -a, -um** [**nefās**, impiety], impious, nefarious, execrable. 2

crūdēlitās, -tātis, [**crūdēlis**, cruel], F., cruelty, barbarity. 2

14. **re-sideō, -ēre, sēdī** [**sedeō**, sit], *n.*, sit *or* remain behind, remain, abide. 2

15. **iste, -a, -ud** (*gen.* **istīus**), that (*near you*), that (*which you speak of*), that, this, the very. 1

mollitia, -ae [**mollis**, soft], F., softness, tenderness, weakness, irresolution. 1

17. **patienter** [**patior**, suffer], *adv.*, with sufferance *or* submission, patiently. 1

---

18. **ancipitī proeliō**: i. e., a simultaneous attack on the Roman intrenchments by the besieged and the army of relief: cf. I, 26, 1.

3. **in Aeduīs**: at Bibracte, the place of rendezvous.

tiam probārem (tantum apud mē dīgnitās potest), sī nūllam praeterquam vītae nostrae iactūram fierī vidērem: sed in cōnsiliō capiendō omnem Galliam respiciāmus, quam ad nostrum auxilium concitāvimus. Quid hominum mīlibus LXXX ūnō locō interfectīs propīnquīs cōnsanguineīsque nostrīs animī fore exīstimātīs, sī paene in ipsīs cadāveribus proeliō dēcertāre cōgentur? Nōlīte hōs vestrō auxiliō exspoliāre, quī vestrae salūtis causā suum perīculum neglēxērunt, nec stultitiā āc temeritāte vestrā aut animī imbēcillitāte omnem Galliam prōsternere et perpetuae servitūtī subicere. An, quod ad diem nōn vēnērunt, dē eōrum fidē cōnstantiāque dubitātis? Quid ergō? Rōmānōs in illīs ūlteriōribus mūnītiōnibus animīne causā cotīdiē exercērī putātis? Sī illōrum nūntiīs cōnfīrmārī nōn potestis omnī aditū praesaeptō, hīs ūtiminī testibus appropīnquāre eōrum adventum; cūius reī timōre exterritī diem noctemque in opere versantur. Quid

21. **concitō**, 1. [*freq. of* **concieō**, stir up], *a.*, stir up, rouse, instigate, incite. 5

24. **vester, -tra, -trum** [**vōs**], *poss. pron.*, you, yours, of you. 5

ex-spoliō, 1. [**spoliō**, spoil], *a.*, spoil *or* plunder completely, rob, utterly deprive of. 1

26. **stultitia, -ae** [**stultus**, foolish], F., folly. 1

temeritās, -tātis [**temerē**, by chance, rashly], F., chance, accident; rashness, indiscretion. 5

imbēcillitās, -tātis [**imbēcillis**, weak], F., weakness, feebleness, pusillanimity. 1

27. **prō-sternō, -ere, strāvī, strātus** [**sternō**, strew], *a.*, throw forward *or* to the ground, overthrow, ruin. 1

28. **cōnstantia, -ae** [**cōnstāns**, firm], F., firmness, steadfastness, resolution. 2

29. **ergō**, *adv.*, in consequence, therefore, then. 2

31. **prae-saepiō, -īre, -psī, ptus** [**saepiō**, hedge in], *a.*, hedge *or* block up, barricade. 1

33. **ex-terreō**, 2. [**terreō**, frighten], *a.*, frighten outright, strike with terror, scare. 2

---

18. **dīgnitās**: i. e., the authority of the advocates of a sortie.

29. **ūlteriōribus mūnītiōnibus**: the outer line of Roman works; cf. **74**, 1–3.

30. **animī causā**: cf. V, **12**, 15.

31. **omnī aditū praesaeptō**: the blockade must have been very effective. **hīs** = *Rōmānīs*.

33. **diem noctemque**: the Romans constructed their vast works in less than forty days.

ergō meī cōnsiliī est? Facere, quod nostrī māiōrēs nēquāquam parī bellō Cimbrōrum Teutonumque fēcērunt; quī in oppida compulsī āc similī inopiā subāctī eōrum corporibus, quī aetāte ad bellum inūtilēs vidēbantur, vītam tolerāvērunt neque sē hostibus trādidērunt. Cūius reī sī exemplum nōn habērēmus, tamen lībertātis causā īnstituī et posterīs prōdī pulcherrimum iūdicārem. Nam quid illī simile bellō fuit? Dēpopulātā Galliā Cimbrī māgnāque illātā calamitāte fīnibus quidem nostrīs aliquandō excessērunt atque aliās terrās petiērunt; iūra, lēgēs, agrōs, lībertātem nōbīs relīquērunt. Rōmānī vērō quid petunt aliud aut quid volúnt, nisi invidiā adductī, quōs fāmā nōbilēs potentēsque bellō cōgnōvērunt, hōrum in agrīs cīvitātibusque cōnsīdere atque hīs aeternam iniungere servitūtem? Neque enim unquam aliā condiciōne bella gessērunt. Quod sī ea, quae in longīnquīs nātiōnibus geruntur, īgnōrātis, respicite fīnitimam Galliam, quae in prōvinciam redācta, iūre et lēgibus commūtātīs secūribus subiecta perpetuā premitur servitūte.

36. **subigō, -ere, ēgī, āctus** [agō, lead], *a.*, lead *or* bring under; overcome, subdue; incite, constrain. 1

40. **pulcher, -chra, -chrum,** beautiful, handsome; noble, honorable. 2

42. **aliquandō** [aliquis, some one], at some time, at length, finally. 2

44. **invidia, -ae** [in-videō, look upon with ill-will], F., envy, hatred, malice. 2

45. **fāma, -ae,** [*inf.* fārī, to speak], F., common talk, reputation, fame; rumor, report. *

46. **aeternus, -a, -um** [*for* aeviturnus, *fr.* aevum, age], everlasting, endless. 1

47. **in-iungō, -ere, -iūnxi, iūnctus** [iungō, join], *a.*, join *or* fasten on to, attach; impose, enjoin. 1

50. **secūris, -is** [secō, cut], F., axe; the lictor's axe, *a sign of authority.* 1

34, 35. **nēquāquam parī:** i. e., to the present war. **bellō . . . Teutonumque:** see Int. 63.

42. **aliās terrās:** to Spain. See Momm: vol. III, p. 224.

50. **secūribus,**=*imperiō Rōmānō*, the axe and fasces being the symbol of Roman power,

Non-combatants vainly endeavor to leave Alesia.

78. Sententiīs dictīs cōnstituunt, ut iī, quī valetūdine aut aetāte inūtilēs sint bellō, oppidō excēdant, atque omnia prius experiantur, quam ad Critōgnātī sententiam dēscendant: illō tamen potius ūtendum cōnsiliō sī rēs cōgat atque auxilia morentur, quam aut dēditiōnis aut pācis subeundam condiciōnem. Mandūbiī, quī eōs oppidō recēperant, cum līberīs atque uxōribus exīre cōguntur. Hī cum ad mūnītiōnēs Rōmānōrum accessissent, flentēs omnibus precibus ōrābant, ut sē in servitūtem receptōs cibō iuvārent. At Caesar dispositīs in vāllō custōdiīs recipī prohibēbat.

Arrival of the Gallic allies under Commius.

79. Intereā Commius reliquīque ducēs, quibus summa imperiī permīssa erat, cum omnibus cōpiīs ad Alesiam perveniunt et colle exteriōre occupātō nōn longius mīlle passibus ab nostrīs mūnītiōnibus cōnsīdunt. Posterō diē equitātū ex castrīs ēductō omnem eam plāniciem, quam in longitūdinem tria mīlia passuum patēre dēmōnstrāvimus,

2. valētūdō, -inis [valeō, be strong], F., state of health, health; ill-health, infirmity. 2

---

6. Mandūbiī: the citizens of the town and the refugees from the surrounding country.



Secūris et Gladiī.

11. (*eōs*) **recipī prohibēbat:** according to Dio Cassius, this whole multitude perished from hunger between the Roman lines and the town. The Romans themselves suffered great privations.

1, 2. quibus . . . permīssa erat: cf. 76, 11, 12.

3. colle exteriōre: the hill bounding the plain of Laumes on the southwest: see plan.

4. cōnsīdunt: probably without fortifying the position; see Int. 186.

5. eam plāniciem: the plain of Laumes.

complent pedestrēsque cōpiās paulum ab eō locō abditās in locīs superiōribus cōnstituunt. Erat ex oppidō Alesiā dēspectus in campum. Concurrunt hīs auxiliīs vīsīs; fit grātulātiō inter eōs atque omnium animī ad laetitiam excitantur. Itaque prōductīs cōpiīs ante oppidum cōnsīdunt et proximam fossam crātibus integunt atque aggere explent sēque ad ēruptiōnem atque omnēs cāsūs comparant.

The German cavalry win victory for the Romans. The Gauls retire within Alesia.

80. Caesar omnī exercitū ad utramque partem mūnītiōnum dispositō, ut, sī ūsus veniat, suum quisque locum teneat et nōverit, equitātum ex castrīs ēdūcī et proelium committī iubet. Erat ex omnibus castrīs, quae summum undique iugum tenēbant, dēspectus, atque omnēs mīlitēs intentī pūgnae prōventum exspectābant. Gallī inter equitēs rārōs sagittāriōs expedītōsque levis armātūrae interiēcerant, quī suīs cēdentibus auxiliō succurrerent et nostrōrum equitum impetūs sustinērent. Ab his complūrēs dē imprōvīsō vulnerātī proe-

9. grātulātiō, -ōnis [grātulor, express joy], F., expression of joy, congratulation, rejoicing. 3

10. laetitia, -ae [laetus, glad], F., gladness, joy, delight. 2

12. ex-pleō, plēre, plēvī, plētus [pleō, fill], *a.*, fill out *or* up; finish, complete. *

6. prōventus, -ūs [prō-veniō, come forward], M., a coming forth; growth, produce; issue, result. 2.

9. suc-currō (sub-) -ere, currī, cursus [currō, run], *n.*, run under *or* to the help of; assist, succor. 2

---

7. ab eō locō: where the cavalry was drawn up. **paulum abditās:** i. e., within easy supporting distance.

8. erat: . . . dēspectus: see View of the plain of Laumes, p. 475.

11, 12. ante oppidum: on the west. **proximam fossam:** the one described in **72, 2.** **aggere:** materials of all kinds.

1. exercitū: i. e., the infantry, in distinction from *equitātum* (line 3). **ad utramque partem:** the two lines of defense, facing the town and relieving army respectively; see View of the plain of Laumes, p. 475.

4, 5. ex omnibus castrīs: referring to the infantry camps on the heights surrounding Alesia.

7. rārōs sagittāriōs: an imitation of the German arrangement (Int. 193, 194).

10. complūrēs: sc. *equitum Rōmānōrum.*

liō excēdēbant. Cum suōs pugnā superiōrēs esse Gallī cōnfīderent et nostrōs multitūdine premī vidērent, ex omnibus partibus et iī, quī mūnītiōnibus continēbantur, et hī, quī ad auxilium convēnerant, clāmōre et ululātū suōrum animōs cōnfīrmābant. Quod in cōnspectū omnium rēs gerēbātur neque rēctē āc turpiter factum celārī poterat, utrōsque et laudis cupiditās et timor īgnōminiae ad virtūtem excitābat. Cum ā merīdiē prope ad sōlis occāsum dubiā vīctōriā pūgnārētur, Germānī ūnā in parte cōnfertīs turmīs in hostēs impetum fēcērunt eōsque propulērunt; quibus in fugam coniectīs sagittāriī circumventī interfectīque sunt. Item ex reliquīs partibus nostrī cēdentēs usque ad castra īnsecūtī suī colligendī facultātem nōn dedērunt. At iī, quī ab Alesiā prōcesserant, maestī, prope vīctōriā dēspērātā sē in oppidum recēpērunt.

United attack upon the Roman works by the Gauls within and without Alesia.

81. Unō diē intermīssō Gallī atque hōc spatiō magnō crātium, scālārum, harpagōnum numerō effectō mediā nocte silentiō ex castrīs ēgressī ad

14. **ululātus, -ūs** [ululō, howl], M., howling, yell, shrieking. 2
16. **rēctē** [**rēctus,** straight], *adv.*, straightly; rightly, well. 2
turpiter [**turpis,** base], *adv.*, basely, shamefully, disgracefully. 3
17. **īgnōminia, -ae** [in, *neg.* + **nōmen**], F., *deprivation of one's good name:* disgrace, dishonor. 3
24. **maestus, -a, -um** [maereō, be sad], sad, melancholy, dejected. 1

2. **scālae, -ārum** [*cf.* **scandō**], F., *pl.*, staircase, ladder, scaling-ladder. 2
harpagō, -ōnis, M., a hook, grappling-hook, grapple. 1

---

11. **superiōrēs esse**: in numbers and tactical skill. **Gallī**: i. e., the spectators.
13. **iī**: the besieged. **hī**: the army of relief.
18. **dubiā vīctōriā,** *without result.*
19. **Germānī**: who had turned the tide in former cavalry fights; cf. **67,** 10 and **70,** 4.
21. **sagittāriī**: cf. line 7. They could not keep up with the horseman as the German foot did.

1. **Gallī**: those belonging to the army of relief.
2. **harpagōnum**: grappling hooks fastened to long poles, with which to pull down the breastworks on the Roman ramparts.

campestrēs mūnītiōnēs accēdunt. Subitō clāmōre sublātō, quā sīgnificātiōne quī in oppidō obsidēbantur dē suō adventū cōgnōscere possent, crātēs prōicere, fundīs, sagittīs, lapidibus nostrōs dē vāllō prōturbāre reliquaque, quae ad oppūgnātiōnem pertinent, parant administrāre. Eōdem tempore clāmōre exaudītō dat tubā sīgnum suīs Vercingetorīx atque ex oppidō ēdūcit. Nostrī, ut superiōribus diēbus suus cuique erat locus attribūtus, ad mūnītiōnēs accēdunt; fundīs lībrīlibus sudibusque, quās in opere disposuerant, āc glandībus Gallōs prōterrent. Prōspectū tenebrīs adēmptō multa utrimque vulnera accipiuntur. Complūra tormentīs tēla coniciuntur. At M. Antōnius et C. Trebōnius lēgātī, quibus hae partēs ad dēfendendum obvēnerant, quā ex parte nostrōs

12. **lībrīlis, -e** [**lībra,** a pound], *adj.*, of a pound weight: **fundae,** *slings which throw stones of a pound weight.* 1

glāns, glandis, F., an acorn; nut; ball *of lead or clay for shooting,* bullet, slug. 2

13. **prō-terreō,** 2. [**terreō,** frighten], *a.*, frighten *or* drive away, affright. 2

tenebrae, -ārum, F., darkness. 1

15. **Antōnius, -ī,** M., *a Roman gentile name:* Marcus Antonius (Mark Antony), *one of Caesar's legates in Gaul, a triumvir with Lepidus and Octavius.*

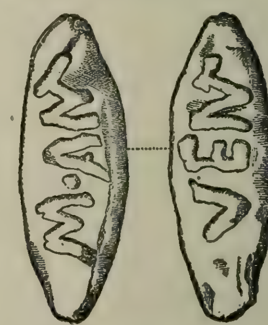
---

4. **campestrēs mūnītiōnēs:** those in the plain of Laumes.

8. **quae . . . pertinent:** see Int. 155.

9. **tubā:** i. e., with the Gallic musical instrument called the *carynx*, which was quite long, slightly curved and had a mouthpiece representing the head of an animal.

11, 12. **fundīs lībrīlibus:** stones weighing a pound to which cords or straps were tied for hurling them. **sudibus:** stakes with sharpened points hardened by fire, used as a rude sort of javelin. Large numbers of these and the *fundae lībrīlēs* had been prepared and piled up on the ramparts. **glandibus:** see Int. 112.



Glandēs.

16. **hae partēs:** the defences in the plain.

premī intellēxerant, hīs auxiliō ex ūlterioribus castellīs dēductōs submittēbant.

82. Dum longius ab mūnītiōne aberant Gallī, *Their repulse and retreat.* plūs multitūdine tēlōrum prōficiēbant; posteāquam propius successērunt, aut sē stimulīs inopīnantēs induēbant aut in scrobēs dēlātī trānsfodiēbantur aut ex vāllō āc turribus trāiectī pīlīs mūrālibus interībant. Multīs undique vulneribus acceptīs nūllā mūnītiōne perruptā, cum lūx appeteret, veritī, nē ab latere apertō ex superiōribus castrīs ēruptiōne circumvenīrentur, sē ad suōs recēpērunt. At interiōrēs, dum ea, quae ā Vercingetorīge ad ēruptiōnem praeparāta erant, prōferunt, priōrēs fossās explent, diūtius in hīs rēbus administrandīs morātī prius suōs discessisse cōgnōvērunt, quam mūnītiōnibus appropīnquārent. Ita rē īnfectā in oppidum revertērunt.

4. **trāns-fodiō, -īre, fōdī, fossus** [fodiō, dig], *a.*, dig *or* thrust through, transfix. 1

trā (trāns-) -iciō, -ere, iēcī, iectus [iaciō, hurl], *a.*, hurl across *or* over, hurl through, transfix, pierce. 4

6. **ap-petō(ad-), -ere, petīvī, petītus** [petō, seek], *a.*, seek for, aim at, encroach upon, approach. 6

9. **prō-ferō, ferre, tūlī, lātus,** bring forth *or* forward, produce, furnish. 3

---

1. **longius,** *at a considerable distance.*

2. **plūs . . . prōficiēbant:** their fire was heavier and more effective and the Roman loss was greater than afterwards when the Gauls reached the pit-falls and trenches.

5, 6. **pīlīs mūrālibus:** large javelins, hurled by engines. **cum lūx appeteret:** when had the attack begun? **multīs . . . perruptā:** trans. the first abl. abs. by a concessive clause, the next as a principal clause.

7. **ex superiōribus castrīs:** the two on Mont Flavigny.

8. **interiōrēs:** the Gauls *within* the circle of the Roman siege works, i. e., the army of Vercingetorix.

10. **priōrēs fossās:** i. e., they succeeded in filling the first two of the three ditches, but were defeated without being able to get within striking distance of the ramparts. The foresight of Caesar in providing so many obstacles prevented a simultaneous attack on the fortifications themselves, which would probably have been successful.

The relief army tries to force Caesar's lines on the north.

83. Bis māgnō cum dētrīmentō repulsī Gallī, quid agant, cōnsulunt: locōrum perītōs adhibent: ex hīs superiōrum castrōrum sitūs mūnītiōnēsque cōgnōscunt. Erat ā septentriōnibus collis, quem propter māgnitūdinem circuitūs opere circumplectī nōn potuerant nostrī: necessāriō paene inīquō locō et lēniter dēclīvī castra fēcerant. Haec C. Antistius Rēgīnus et C. Canīnius Rebilus lēgātī cum duābus legiōnibus obtinēbant. Cōgnitīs per explōrātōrēs regiōnibus ducēs hostium LX mīlia ex omnī numerō dēligunt eārum cīvitātum, quae māximam virtūtis opīniōnem habēbant; quid quōque pactō agī placeat, occultē inter sē cōnstituunt: adeundī tempus dēfīniunt, cum merīdiēs esse videātur. Hīs cōpiīs Vercassivellaunum Arvernum, ūnum ex quattuor ducibus, propīnquum Vercingetorīgis, praeficiunt. Ille ex castrīs prīmā vigiliā ēgressus prope cōnfectō sub lūcem itinere post mōntem sē occultāvit mīlitēsque ex

5. **circum-plector, plectī, plexus sum** [**plectō,** plait], fold one's self about, enfold, surround. 1

7. **Antistius, -ī,** M., *a Roman gentile name:* Caius Antistius Reginus, *Caesar's lieutenant.* 3

Rēgīnus, -ī, M., a Roman cognomen; see **Antistius.** 3

Canīnius, -ī, M., *a Roman gentile name:* Caius Caninius Rebilus, *a legate of Caesar.*

Rebilus, -ī, M., a Roman cognomen; see **Canīnius.** 2

11. **pactum, -ī** [**pacīscor,** agree upon], N., agreement, arrangement, compact; manner, way. 1

occultē [**occultus,** concealed], *adv.*, in concealment, secretly. 1

12. **dē-fīniō** 4, [**fīniō,** bound], *a.*, set bounds to, mark off, limit; define, determine. 1

---

1. **bis . . . repulsī**: cf. **80** and **82.**

2. **perītōs**: some of the Mandubii.

3. **superiōrum castrōrum**: i. e., the camps on the heights north of Alesia.

4. **collis**: Mont Rea, N. W. of Alesia.

5, 6. **opere**: the lines of circumvallation. **inīquō locō**: explained by the words **lēniter dēclīvī.** The camp, being on the slope of the hill, could be commanded by the Gauls on the summit.

8. **duābus legiōnibus**: on account of its exposed position, this camp had a strong force to guard it.

15, 16. **cōnfectō . . . itinere**: a circuitous march of about a dozen miles

nocturnō labōre sēsē reficere iussit. Cum iam merīdiēs appropīnquāre vidērētur, ad ea castra, quae suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, contendit; eōdemque tempore equitātus ad campestrēs mūnītiōnēs accēdere et reliquae cōpiae prō castrīs sēsē ostendere coepērunt.

Vercingetorix joins in the attack. Straits of the Romans.

84. Vercingetorīx ex arce Alesiae suōs cōnspicātus ex oppidō ēgreditur; crātīs, longuriōs, mūsculōs, falcēs reliquaque, quae ēruptiōnis causā parāverat, prōfert. Pūgnātur ūnō tempore omnibus locīs, atque omnia temptantur: quae minimē vīsa pars fīrma est, hūc concurritur. Rōmānōrum manus tantīs mūnītiōnibus distinētur nec facile plūribus locīs occurrit. Multum ad terrendōs nostrōs valet clāmor, quī post tergum pūgnantibus exstitit, quod suum perīculum in aliēnā vident virtūte cōnstāre: omnia enim plērumque, quae absunt, vehementius hominum mentēs perturbant.

Valorous fighting of both armies.

85. Caesar idōneum locum nactus, quid quāque in parte gerātur, cōgnōscit; labōrantibus sub-

1. **arx, arcis** [arceō, shut up; ward off], F., citadel, fortress, stronghold. 2
3. **mūsculus, -ī** [mūs, mouse], M., a little mouse; a small shed *or* mantelet *used in sieges, for the protection of the soldiers while working.* 1

---

19. **equitātus:** from the main camp.

20. **reliquae . . . ostendere:** as on the occasion of the first battle: cf. **79,** 7, *pedestrēs . . . cōnstituērunt.*

3. **mūsculōs,** see Int. 161. **falcēs:** see note III, **14,** 16.

4. **prōfert:** Vercingetorix probably directed his main attack against that part of the contravallation opposite the camp at the foot of Mont Rea, so as to co-operate with Vercassivellaunus.

3. **post tergum:** the Romans formed two lines placed back to back, so that each line had the enemy behind it.

9. **suum perīculum . . . cōnstāre,** their own peril or safety depended upon the safety of others behind them.

10. **quae absunt:** i. e., what is out of sight.

1. **idōneum locum:** on the slope of the hill of Flavigny where the two lines of works terminate: see View of the plain of Laumes p. 475. One of the two camps on this hill is

mittit. Utrīsque ad animum occurrit, ūnum esse illud tempus, quō māximē contendī conveniat: Gallī, nisi perfrēgerint mūnītiōnēs, dē omnī salūte dēspērant; Rōmānī, sī rem obtinuerint, fīnem labōrum omnium exspectant. Māximē ad superiōrēs mūnītiōnēs labōrātur, quō Vercassivellaunum mīssum dēmōnstrāvimus. Inīquum locī ad dēclīvitātem fastīgium māgum habet mōmentum. Aliī tēla coniciunt, aliī testūdine factā subeunt; dēfatīgātīs in vicem integrī succēdunt. Agger ab ūniversīs in mūnītiōnem coniectus et ascēnsum dat Gallīs et ea, quae in terrā occultāverant Rōmānī, contegit; nec iam arma nostrīs nec vīrēs suppetunt.

Caesar rallies his troops.

86 Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs Caesar Labiēnum cum cohortibus sex subsidiō labōrantibus mittit: imperat, sī sustinēre nōn possit, dēductīs cohortibus ēruptiōne pūgnet: id nisi necessāriō nē faciat. Ipse adit reliquōs, cohortātur, nē labōrī succumbant; omnium superiōrum dīmicātiōnum frūct-

8. **dēclīvitās, -tātis** [dēclīvis, sloping downwards], F., slope, declivity. 1

9. **mōmentum, -ī** [*for* movimentum *fr.* moveō, move], N., *means or cause of* motion; a short time, moment; weight, influence, importance. 2

13. **con-tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctus** [tegō, cover], *a.*, cover up, hide, conceal; dissemble, shield. 1

5. **suc-cumbō, -ere, cubuī, cubitus** [cubō, lie down], *n.*, fall *or* sink down; yield, succumb. 1

dīmicātiō, -ōnis [dīmicō, fight], F., fighting, contest, encounter. 1

---

supposed to have been Caesar's headquarters, partly from the fact that it was defended by a triple fosse on the north.

6, 7. **māximē . . . labōrātur:** great numbers of coins bearing the names of Gallic chiefs and peoples were found in the excavations at this point, and attest the truth of Caesar's statement.

8. **inīquum locī:** see note **83**, 5, *inīquō locō.*

10. **testūdine factā:** see Int. 166. The Gauls had adopted Roman methods of attack.

11. **agger:** see note **79**, 12. **in mūnītiōnem:** the additional obstacles placed in front of the *agger.* **ea:** i. e., the *scrōbēs, līlia* etc.

1. **Labiēnum:** probably stationed on the hill northeast of Alesia. **id:** i. e., *ēruptiōne pūgnet.*

4. **reliquōs:** the soldiers defending the works in the plain, exposed to the general assault: cf. **83**, 19, 20, text. **adit:** Caesar galloped down the line from his position on the northern slope of Mont Flavigny: see note **85**,1.

um in eō diē atque hōrā docet cōnsistere. Interiōrēs dēspērātīs campestribus locīs propter māgnitūdinem mūnītiōnum loca praerupta exscēnsū temptant: hūc ea, quae parāverant, cōnferunt. Multitūdine tēlōrum ex turribus prōpūgnantēs dēturbant, aggere et crātibus fossās explent, falcibus vāllum āc lōrīcam rescindunt.

87. Mittit prīmō Brūtum adulēscentem cum cohortibus Caesar, post cum aliīs C. Fabium lēgātum; postrēmō ipse, cum vehementius pūgnārētur, integrōs subsidiō addūcit. Restitūtō proeliō āc repulsīs hostibus eō, quō Labiēnum mīserat, contendit; cohortēs quattuor ex proximō castellō dēdūcit, equitum partem sē sequī, partem circumīre exteriōrēs mūnītiōnēs et ab tergō hostēs adorīrī iubet. Labiēnus, postquam neque aggerēs neque fossae vim hostium sustinēre poterant, coāctīs ūnā XL cohortibus, quās ex proximīs praesidiīs dēductās fōrs obtulit, Caesarem per nūntiōs facit certiōrem, quid

His conduct of the battle.

8. **exscēnsus, -ūs,** M., (*only in abl. sing.*), a scaling, storming, storm. 1

10. **dē-turbō,** 1. [**turbō,** disturb], *a.*, thrust *or* cast down; drive off, dislodge. 2

2. **Fabius, -ī,** M., *a Roman gentile name:* Caius Fabius, *one of Caesar's lieutenants.* *

postrēmō, *adv.* [**postrēmus,** last], at last, finally. 4

6, 7. **interiōrēs:** see note **82,** 8. **dēspērātīs campestribus locīs:** cf. **84,** 2, 3. They now transfer their efforts to the works on the slope of Mont Flavigny, which were less formidable than those in the plain, because of the nature of the surface (*loca praerupta*).

1. **mittit:** i. e., to this threatened point. **Brūtum:** III, **11,** 11, 12.

4, 5. **eō contendit:** he rides across the plain to the intrenchments on the slope of Mont Rea **castellō:** these redoubts were situated between the two lines of works.

6, 7. **circumīre . . . adorīrī:** the cavalry leave the camp at Gresigny and pass around to the rear of the enemy on Mont Rea.

9. **XL:** it is difficult to believe that so large a force (one third of Caesar's whole army) could be gotten together so easily. Some authorities would read XI.



faciendum exīstimet. Accelerat Caesar, ut proeliō intersit.

Utter defeat of the Gauls. They retire within Alesia and to their homes.

88. Eius adventū ex colōre vestītūs cōgnitō, quō īnsīgnī in proeliīs ūtī cōnsuerat, turmīsque equitum et cohortibus vīsīs, quās sē sequī iusserat, ut dē locīs superiōribus haec dēclīvia et dēvēxa cernēbantur, hostēs proelium committunt. Utrimque clāmōre sublātō excipit rūrsus ex vāllō atque omnibus mūnītiōnibus clāmor. Nostrī omīssīs pīlīs gladiīs rem gerunt. Repente post tergum equitātus cernitur; cohortēs aliae appropīnquant. Hostēs terga vertunt; fugientibus equitēs occurrunt. Fit māgna caedēs. Sedulius, dūx et prīnceps Lemovīcum, occīditur: Vercassivellaunus Arvernus vīvus in fugā comprehenditur: sīgna mīlitāria LXXIV ad Caesarem referuntur: paucī ex tantō numerō sē incolumēs in castra recipiunt. Cōnspicātī ex oppidō caedem et fugam suōrum dēspērātā salūte cōpiās ā mūnītiōnibus redūcunt. Fit prōtinus hāc rē audītā ex castrīs Gallōrum fuga. Quod nisi crēbrīs subsidiīs āc tōtīus diēī labōre mīlitēs essent dēfessī, omnēs hostium cōpiae dēlērī po-

11. **ac(ad-)-celerō,** 1. [celer, quick], quicken, hurry, hasten, make haste. 1

4. **dēvēxus, -a, -um** [dēvehō, carry away or down], sloping: *in pl. as subst. sc.* **loca,** slopes, hillsides. 1

10. **Sedulius, -ī,** M., *a leader of the Lemovices.* 1

10, 11. **quid . . . exīstimet:** viz., a sally.

1. **vestītūs:** see Int. 96.

4. **locīs superiōribus:** the summit of Mont Rea. **dēclīvia et dēvēxa:** the level of the plain in front of Mont Rea.

5. **hostēs . . . committunt:** they hoped to break the Roman lines by a supreme effort before Caesar could arrive: see Int. 181.

7. **gladiīs rem gerunt:** i. e., they make the sally and come to close quarters. See Int. 149.

8. **equitātus:** cf. 87, 7. **cohortēs aliae:** those which were following Caesar. He had probably ridden ahead to take part in the sally.

12, 13. **tantō numerō:** cf. 83, 9

15, 16. **fit . . . fuga:** probably they feared an immediate attack by the Romans upon their fortified position.

tuissent. Dē mediā nocte mīssus equitātus novissimum āgmen cōnsequitur: māgnus numerus capitur atque interficitur; reliquī ex fugā in cīvitātēs discēdunt.

Capitulations of Vercingetorix and the Gauls.

89. Posterō diē Vercingetorīx conciliō convocātō id bellum sē suscēpisse nōn suārum necessitātum, sed commūnis lībertātis causā dēmōnstrat, et quoniam sit fōrtūnae cēdendum, ad utramque rem sē illīs offerre, seu morte suā Rōmānīs satisfacere seu vīvum trādere velint. Mittuntur dē hīs rēbus ad Caesarem lēgātī. Iubet arma trādī, prīncipēs prōdūcī. Ipse in mūnītiōne prō castrīs cōnsēdit: eō ducēs prōdūcuntur; Vercingetorīx dēditur, arma prōiciuntur. Reservātīs Aeduīs atque Arvernīs, sī per eōs cīvitātēs reciperāre posset, ex reliquīs captīvīs tōtō exercituī capita singula praedae nōmine distribuit.

Caesar quarters his troops. Honors at Rome.

90. Hīs rēbus cōnfectīs in Aeduōs proficīscitur; cīvitātem recipit. Eō lēgātī ab Arvernīs mīssī quae imperāret sē factūrōs pollicentur. Imperat māgnum numerum obsidum. Legiōnēs in hīberna mittit. Captīvōrum circiter XX mīlia Aeduīs Arvernīsque reddit. T. Labiēnum cum duābus legiōnibus et equitātū in Sēquanōs proficīscī iubet: huic M. Semprōnium Rutilum attribuit. C. Fabium

7. **Semprōnius, -ī,** M., *a Roman gentile name.* 1

Rutilus, -ī, M., *cognomen of Caesar's lieutenant,* Marcus Semprōnius. 1

---

18. **mīssus:** in pursuit of the army of succor.

20. **ex fugā discēdunt:** see Int: 183.

4. **sē offerre:** the conduct of Vercingetorix in defeat shows that he was of the true heroic mould.

7. **in mūnītiōne:** Plutarch and Florus give vivid pictures of this scene.

8. **Vercingetorīx dēditur:** according to Dio Cassius, he was led in Caesar's great triumph in 45 B. C., and afterwards put to death by order of his conqueror.

9. **Aeduīs, Arvernīs:** why were these particular tribes spared?

10, 11. **capita singula:** i. e., each soldier received a Gallic prisoner as his slave. These captives would be sold to the buyers who supplied the slave market at Rome.

1. **in Aeduōs:** probably to Bibracte, which had been the gathering place of the allies: see note 76, 9.

7. **huic . . . attribuit:** i. e., Ru-

lēgātum et L. Minucium Basilum cum legiōnibus duābus in Rēmīs collocat, nē quam ā fīnitimīs Bellovacīs calamitātem accipiant. C. Antistium Rēgīnum in Ambivarētōs, T. Sextium in Biturīgēs, C. Canīnium Rebilum in Rutēnōs cum singulīs legiōnibus mittit. Q. Tullium Cicerōnem et P. Sulpicium Cabillōnī et Matiscōne in Aeduīs ad Ararim reī frūmentāriae causā collocat. Ipse Bibracte hiemāre cōnstituit. Hīs cōgnitīs Rōmae diērum vīgintī supplicātiō redditur.

8. **Minucius, -ī,** M., *a Roman gentile name.* 2
Basilus, -ī, M., *cognomen of Caesar's lieutenant,* Lucius Minucius. 3
12. **Cicerō, -ōnis,** [**cicer,** a vetch *or* small pea], M., *a Roman cognomen*: Quintus Tullius, *brother of the famous orator, one of Caesar's legates.* *
13. **Cabillōnum, -ī,** N., *an important town of the Aedui on the Arar.* 2
Matiscō, -ōnis, M., *a city of the Aedui on the Arar.* 1

---

tilus was placed under the orders of Labienus.

9, 10. **nē . . . accipiant:** cf. **63,** 12 and **75,** 20. **Antistium Rēgīnum:** seq. Caesar gives the names of 24 different persons who acted as his *lēgātī* in the Gallic war.

15. **supplicātiō:** see on **II, 35,** 10.



INDEX

TO THE NOTES AND INTRODUCTION.

VOCABULARY.

This vocabulary contains all words found in the text given in this book. To all words occurring in the annotated portions of the text, numbers are affixed, showing the place of first occurrence, where the Page-Vocabulary will give a full treatment of the word. If a word occurs first in chapters 30–50 of book 1, the place of its second occurrence is also given. Words unaccompanied by reference numbers do not occur in the annotated portions of the text.

A.

A., *abbreviation for praenomen* **Aulus.** I, **6**, 16.
a. = **ante** (before), I, **6**, 16.
ā (*before consonants*), **ab** (*before a vowel or a consonant*), **abs** (with, *tē* and *-que* (*prep. with abl.*, from, away from, at, by, on, on the side of. I, **1**, 4.
ab-dō, dere, didī, ditus [**dō**, give] *a.*, give *or* put away, remove, withdraw, hide, conceal. I, **12**, 12.
abdūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus [**dūcō**, lead], *a.*, lead away, draw, *or* carry off, withdraw. I, **11**, 7.
ab-eō, -īre, -īvī(iī), -itus, *n.*, go away, depart; issue.
abiciō, -ere, -iēcī, iectus [**iaciō**, hurl], *a.*, throw away *or* down, cast aside, abandon. IV, **15**, 2.
abiēs, -ietis, F., silver-fir; fir tree. V, **12**, 13.
ab-iungō, -ere iūnxī, iūnctus, *a.*, disjoin, remove.
abscīdō, -ere, cīdī, cīsus [**caedō**, cut], *a.*, cut *or* lop off, tear off *or* away. III, **14**, 19.
absēns, -entis [*pr. p. of* **absum**], absent, at a distance. I, **32**, 12; III, **17**, 19.
ab-similis, -e, unlike. III, **14**, 16.
ab-sistō, -ere, stitī, withdraw; leave off. V, **17**, 7.
abstineō, 2. [**teneō**, hold], *a.*, and *n.*, hold off, keep aloof from, refrain. I, **22**, 12.
abs-trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractus, to drag away, carry away by force. III, **2**, 14.
ab-sum, esse, āfuī, āfutūrus, *n.*, be away from, be absent *or* distant, be wanting *or* free from. I, **1**, 8.
ab-undō, 1, overflow; abound.
āc, I, **3**, 23, *see* **atque.**
accēdō, -ere, -essī, -essum, [**ad** + **cēdō**], approach, draw near to, arrive at, come to; to be added; **accēdēbat,** *it was added.* I, **19**, 2.
ac-celerō, 1, hasten. VII, **87**, 11.
acceptus, -a, -um, popular with, beloved by (*with dative*). I, **3**, 16.
ac-cidō, -ere, cidī [**cadō**, fall], *n.*, fall to *or* upon; befall, happen, fall to the lot of, occur: **accidit,** it happens. I, **14**, 4.
ac-cīdō, -ere, cīdī, -cīsus, cut into. VI, **27**, 10.
ac-cipiō, -ere, cēpī, ceptus [**ad**+ **capiō**], *a.*, take *or* receive to one's self, accept; experience, suffer; learn, hear, take; *in p. p. as adj.*, acceptable, beloved, popular. I, **3**, 16.
acclīvis (**ad-**), **-e** [**clīvus**, a slope], sloping upwards, rising, ascending. II, **29**, 7.

acclīvitās (adc-), **-tātis**, F., ascent. II, **18**, 4.
Accō, -ōnis, M., *a chief of the Aedui.*
ac(ad) -commodātus, -a, -um, fit, adapted to, appropriate. III, **13**, 5.
accomodō (adc-), 1. [**commodō**, adjust], *a.*, adjust *or* adapt to one's self, fit *or* put on. II, **21**, 11.
accūrātē, *adv.*, carefully. VI, **22**, 10.
ac-currō, -ere, cucurrī (currī) cursus [**ad+currō**, run], *n.*, run *or* hasten to, run up *or* rush to. I, **22**, 5.
accūsō, 1. [**ad+causa**] *a.*, *n.*, *bring a case or charge against:* blame, censure, accuse. I, **16**, 15.
acerbē, *adv.*, harshly, bitterly.
acerbitās, -tātis, F., harshness, rigor.
acerbus, -a, -um, harsh, biting, severe.
ācerrimē, *superl. of* **ācriter.**
acervus, -ī [**acer**, sharp, pointed], M., a heap, mass. II, **32**, 10.
aciēs, -ēī (old gen. **aciē**), [cf. **ācer**, sharp], F., sharp point *or* edge *of a weapon;* sharp *or* keen sight, glance; a line (*as forming an edge*), battle line; **prīma**, the van; **media**, the centre; **novissima**, the rear. I, **22**, 8.
ac-quīrō, -ere, quīsīvī, quīsītus, seek *or* get in addition, win, acquire.
ācriter [**ācer**, sharp], *adv.*, sharply, keenly, fiercely, vigorously. I, **26**, 1.
āctuārius, -a, -um, swift sailing. V, **1**, 11.
āctus, *see* **agō.**
acūtus, -a, -um [*p. p. of* **acuō**, sharpen], sharpened, pointed. V, **18**, 6.
ad, *prep. with acc.*, to, towards, against; among, near, at, about (*with numerals*); at, till (*of time*). I, **1**, **8**.
adāctus, *see* **adigō.**
ad-aequō, 1. [**aequō**, level *or* equal], *a.*, *n.*, make level with *or* equal to, equalize, equal, keep up with. I, **48**, 19; II, **32**, 10.
ad-amō, 1, love strongly; covet. I, **31**, 15.
ad-dō, dere, didī, ditus [**dō**, give], *a.*, give *or* impart to, annex, add. VII, **70**, 6.
ad-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus [**dūcō**, lead], *a.*, lead *or* draw to. I, **3**, 1.
ademptus, *see* **adimō.**
ad-eō, *adv.*, to such an extent, so much, so very.
ad-eō, īre, iī, itus [**eō**, go], *a.*, *n.*, go to, approach, visit; assail, attack. II, **7**, 8.
adeptus, *see* **adipīscor.**
ad-equitō, 1, ride to *or* up. I, **46**, 3.
ad-haereō, -ēre, haesī, haesus, cling *or* stick to, adhere.
ad-hibeō, 2. [**habeō**, have], *a.*, have *or* bring to, bring in, summon, employ, use. I, **20**, 17.
ad-hortor, 1, encourage, incite.
ad-hūc, *adv.*, hitherto. III, **22**, 7.
ad-iaceō, -ēre, -uī, lie near *or* close to, adjoin.
Adiatunnus, -ī, M., *the leader of the Sotiates.* III, **22**, 2.
adiciō, -icere, -iēcī, -iectus [**ad-iaciō**], *a.*, throw to: **tēlum adicī** (reach); **aggerem** (throw up).—*Fig.*, add: **adiecta plāniciēs** (with the addition of). III, **1**, 15.
adigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus [**agō**], *a.*, drive *or* bring by force; thrust, plunge (*of weapons*); bind (*by an oath*). II, **21**, 7.
adimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptus [**emō**, take], *a.*, take away *to one's disadvantage*, remove. V, **6**, 13.
adipīscor, -ī, -eptus sum, attain to, gain.
aditus, -ūs, [**ad+eō**, go], M., going to, approach, means of approach, access. I, **43**, 13; II, **15**, 9.
ad-iūdicō, 1, adjudge, assign, ascribe.
ad-iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūnctus, join to, attach; apply to: *p. p. as adj.*, adjoining; suitable to. III, **2**, 17.

ad-iūtor, -ōris, M., helper, abettor, coadjutor.

ad-iuvō, -āre, iūvī, iūtus [**iuvō**, aid], *a.*, aid, help, assist; contribute to, support. II, **17**, 12.

Admagetobriga, -ae, F., *a Gallic town* (*location unknown*). I, **31**, 43.

ad-mātūrō, 1, ripen, hasten.

ad-minister, -trī, M., attendant, priest. VI, **16**, 5.

administrō, 1, *a.*, to serve, attend, wait upon, manage, guide. II, **20**, 15.

ad-mīror, 1. [**mīror**, wonder], *a.*, wonder at, be surprised, admire. I, **14**, 13.

ad-mittō, -ere, mīsī, mīssus [**mittō**, send], *a.*, send to; let in, admit; let go *or* loose; permit; incur. I, **22**, 5.

ad-modum, *adv.*, [**modus**, measure], up to the measure *or* degree; very much, very; *with num.*, fully; *with neg.*, at all. III, **13**, 4.

ad-moneō, 2, warn; remind.

adolēscō, -ere, -olēvī, -ultus, grow up. VI, **18**, 7.

ad-orior, orīrī, ortus sum [**orior**, arise], *a.*, rise against, assail, attack; begin, attempt. I, **13**, 13.

ad-scīscō, -ere, scīvī, scītus [**scīscō**, *incep. of* **sciō**, approve], *a.*, *take upon acquaintance*, approve; admit *or* receive (*as allies*). I, **5**, 13.

ad-sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, be near *or* present, be at hand; aid, assist. I, **16**, 9.

Aduātuca, -ae, F., *a stronghold of the Eburones, now Tongres.*

Aduātucī, -ōrum, M., *a people of Belgic Gaul, descended from the Cimbri and Teutones.* II, **4**, 27.

adulēscēns, -entis [**adolēscō**, grow up], M., F., youth; young man *or* woman, *from seventeen to forty years of age.* I, **47**, 11; III, **7**, 7.

adulēscentia, -ae, F., youth. I, **20**, 6.

adulēscentulus, -ī, M., stripling. III, **21**, 4.

adventus, -ūs, [**veniō**, come], M., coming to, arrival, approach. I, **7**, 7.

ad-versārius, -ī, M., antagonist, foe.

ad-versus, -a, -um [**versus** *p. p. of* **vertō**, turn], *turned to or against;* opposite, fronting; adverse, unfavorable. I, **18**, 26.

ad-versus, *prep. w. acc.*, opposite to, against. IV, **14**, 6.

ad-vertō, -ere, vertī versus [**vertō**, turn], *a.*, turn to, turn toward *or* against: **animum**, observe, notice. I, **24**, 1.

ad-vocō, 1, call to, summon.

ad-volō, 1. [**volō**, fly], *n.*, fly to *or* against, rush on *or* at. V, **17**, 6.

aedificium, -ī, [**aedificō**, build], N., building, edifice, structure. I, **5**, 5.

aedificō, 1. [**aedēs**, building+**faciō**], *a.*, build, construct; erect, establish. III, **9**, 3.

Aeduus, -a, -um, of the Aedui, Aeduan; *as subst.*, an Aeduan; *in pl.*, the Aedui, *a powerful Gallic tribe between the upper waters of the Saone and Loire.* I, **3**, 15.

aeger, -gra, -grum, ill, sick; wounded; afflicted, dejected.

aegerrimē, I, **13**, 5. *Superl. of* **aegrē**.

aegrē, *adv.*, (**aeger**), hardly, with difficulty, scarcely; *comp.* **aegrius**, *sup.* **aegerrimē**. II, **6**, 3.

Aemilius, -ī, M., I, **23**, 7.

aequāliter, *adv.*, equally. II, **18**, 2.

aequinoctium, -ī, [**aequus**, equal +**nox**, night], N., the equinox. IV, **36**, 4.

aequitās, -tātis [**aequus**, equal], F., equality, uniformity; impartiality, fairness, justice, equity. I, **40**, 8; VI, **22**, 12.

aequō, 1. [**aequus**, equal], *a.*, make even *or* equal, equalize. I, **25**, 2.

aequus, -a, -um, even, level, equal; equitable, impartial, just. I, **43**, 2; III, **17**, 20.

aerarius, -a, -um, of copper, copper. III, **21**, 11.

aereus, -a, -um, of bronze. V, **12**, 9.

aes, aeris, N., copper, bronze; *anything made of copper or bronze,* coin, money: **aes aliēnum,** another's money, debt. IV, **31**, 6.

aestās, -tātis, F., summer. I, **54**, 5; II, **2**, 3.

aestimātiō, -ōnis, F., valuation. VI, **19**, 2.

aestimō, (-umō), 1. (**aes,** copper, money), *a.*, value, reckon, estimate, regard, consider. III, **20**, 4.

aestīvus, -a, -um, of summer, summer.

aestuārium, -ī [**aestus,** an undulating], N., low marsh-land, tidal inlet, estuary, marsh. II, **28**, 3.

aestus, -ūs, M., heat, boiling, surging; tide. **minuente aestū,** at ebb tide. III, **12**, 3.

aetās, aetātis [*contr. of* **aevitās,** *fr.* **aevum,** age], F., period of life, age. II, **16**, 8.

aeternus, -a, -um, everlasting. VII, **77**, 46.

afferō (ad-), ferre, attulī, allātus, *a.*, bring, take *or* carry to, present, occasion, cause, bring forward, allege. I, **43**, 22; II, **1**, 3.

af (ad-) -ficiō, -ere, fēcī, fectus [**faciō**], *a.*, do to, treat, affect; **māgnō dolōre afficere,** to annoy greatly. I, **2**, 14.

af (ad-) -fīgō, -ere, fīxī, fīxus, fasten to. III, **14**, 15.

af (ad-) -fingō, -ere, finxī, fictus, form, devise; ascribe; fabricate.

affīnitās, -tātis, [**fīnis,** adjacent] F., alliance by marriage, relationship. I, **18**, 19.

af (ad-) -fīrmātiō, -ōnis, F., declaration, assertion.

affīxus, *see* **affigō.**

afflīctō (ad-), 1. [*freq. of* **afflīgō,** strike against, damage], *a.*, damage greatly, shatter, injure; harass, distress. III, **12**, 5.

afflīctus, *see* **afflīgō.**

afflīgō (adf-), -ere, flīxī, flīctus, strike, overthrow; damage, injure. IV, **31**, 6.

Āfricus, -ī, M., S. W. wind. V, **8**, 7.

Agedincum, -ī, N., *chief town of the Senones, now Sens.*

ager, agrī, M., field; territory, district; land, ground. I, **2**, 9.

agger, aggeris, M., embankment, mound; rampart. II, **12**, 11.

ag (ad) -gredior, gredī, gressus sum [**ad** + **gradior,** step, advance], *a.*, *n.*, advance to *or* against, approach; assault, attack. I, **12**, 10.

aggregō, (ad-), 1. [**ad** + **grex,** flock], *a.*, unite in flock; gather, assemble; attach one's self to, join, attach. IV, **26**, 4.

agitō, 1, impel, incite; harass; devise, debate.

āgmen, -inis [**agō,** set in motion], N., a moving body; a marching column; army; **in āgmine,** on the march; **prīmum āgmen,** the van. I, **15**, 6.

agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus, *a.*, *n.*, set in motion; drive (*of animals*); move forward, advance (*of military works*); do, transact, carry on (*of business*); discuss, speak; hold (**conventum**); give, render (**grātiās**); plead, (**causam** *or* **rem**); **quod agitur,** the matter in hand; **rēs agitur,** something is at stake. I, **13**, 3.

agricultūra, -ae [**ager**+**colō,** cultivate], F., cultivation of the land, agriculture. III, **17**, 11.

alacer, -cris, -cre, lively, eager, active, ready, joyous. III, **19**, 16.

alacritās, -tātis, F., liveliness, ardor. I, **41**, 2; IV, **24**, 13.

ālārius, -a, -um, on the wings; *pl. as subst.*, auxiliaries. I, **51**, 3.

albus, -a, -um, white; colorless. V, **12**, 11.

alcēs, -is, F., elk. VI, **27**, 1.

Alesia, -ae, F., *a town of the Mandubii, now* Alise Ste. Reine. VII, **68**, 3.

aliās, *adv.* [**alius,** another], at another place, elsewhere, at another time. **aliās . . . aliās,** at one time . . . at another. II, **29**, 15.

aliēnō, 1, make another's *or* foreign; estrange; separate, cut off.

aliēnus, -a, -um, [**alius,** other], of *or* belonging to another, another's; strange, alien, unfamiliar; inopportune, unfavorable. I, **15**, 6.

aliō, *adv.*, to another place, person, *or* thing. VI, **22**, 6.

aliquam -diū, *adv.*, for some time. I, **40**, 19; V, **23**, 11.

aliquandō [**aliquis,** some one], at some time, at length, finally. VII, **77**, 42.

aliquantō, *adv.*, somewhat. III, **13**, 2.

aliquantus, -a, -um, [**alius**+**quantus,** how much], some; considerable; *in neut. as subst. with part. gen.*, a good deal, not a little; *in abl. as adv.* in some degree, considerably. V, **10**, 3.

aliquis, -quae, -quid, [**alius,** other +**quis**] and **aliquī, -qua, -quod** [**alius**+**quī**] *indef. pron.*, some one, something; anyone, anything, any. I, **14**, 4.

aliquot [**alius**+**quot**], *indecl., num. adj.*, some, a few, several. III, **1**, 19.

aliter, *adv.*, otherwise. II, **19**, 2.

alius, -a, -ud, *gen.* **alīus,** another, other; *alius . . . alius*, one . . . another; *in pl.* some . . . others. I, **1**, 2.

allātus, *see* **afferō.**

al (ad-) **liciō, -ere, lēxī, lectus,** attract, *or* allure to, entice.

Allobrogēs, -um, M., *a powerful Gallic people between the Rhone and Isere.* I, **6**, 7.

alō, -ere, -uī, -itus, *a.*, nourish, feed, support; promote, foster, encourage. I, **18**, 3.

Alpēs, -ium, F., *pl.*, the Alps *mountains, separating Italy from Switzerland, France and Austria.* I, **10**, 11.

alter, -era, -erum (*gen.* **alterius,** *dat.* **alterī**), the other (*of two*); second; the one; **alter . . . alter,** the one . . . the other; **alterī . . . alterī,** the one party . . . the other. I, **2**, 9.

alternus, -a, -um, one after another, in turn.

altitūdō, -inis, [**altus,** high, perpendicular], F., height; depth. I, **8**, 5.

altus, -a, -um, [*p. p. of* **alō,** nourish, promote], high, lofty; deep; *neut. as subst.*, the deep, the sea. I, **2**, 8.

alūta, -ae, F., dressed leather. III, **13**, 9.

ambactus, -ī, M., vassal. VI, **15**, 6.

Ambarrī, -ōrum, M., *clients of the Aedui, between the Saone and Rhone.* I, **11**, 8.

Ambiānī, -ōrum, M., *a Belgian tribe, chief town* Samarobriva, *now* Amiens. II, **4**, 26.

Ambibariī, -ōrum, M., *a small tribe in Celtic Gaul.* VII, **75**, 19.

Ambiliātī, -ōrum, M., III, **9**, 27.

Ambiorīx, -īgis, M., *king of the Eburones.*

Ambivarētī, -ōrum, M., *clients of the Aedui.* VII, **75**, 7.

Ambivarītī, -ōrum, M., IV, **9**, 6.

ambō, -ae, -ō, both.

āmentia, -ae [**mēns,** mind], F., bewilderment of mind, folly, insanity. I, **40**, 10; V, **7**, 4.

ammentum, -ī, N., strap *or* thong, *fastened to the shaft of a javelin to aid its propulsion.*

amfrāctus, -ūs, M., circuitous route.

amīcitia, -ae, [**amīcus,** friend], F., friendship. I, **3**, 6.

amīcus, -a, -um, [**amō**], *adj.*, friendly, well disposed: **praesidium** (*devoted*); *as noun*, M., a friend, an ally.

amīcus, -ī, M., friend, ally. I, **3**, 13.

ā-mittō, -ere, mīsī, mīssus, send away; let go; lose, dismiss. I, **28**, 7.

amor, -ōris, M., love. I, **20**, 8.

amplē, *adv.*, largely: *comp.* **amplius,** more, farther. I, **43**, 11.

amplificō, 1. [**amplus,** full all around+**faciō**], *a.*, extend, enlarge, increase, expand. II, **14**, 12.

amplitūdō, -inis [**amplus,** large on both sides], F., wide extent, size; importance, consequence. IV, **3,** 11.
amplius, *comp. adv.*, more, farther. I, **15,** 15.
amplus, -a, -um, of large extent, spacious, large. III, **8,** 1.
an, *conj., used as second member of alternative questions*, or, or rather. I, **40,** 46; IV, **14,** 7.
Anartēs, -ium, M., *A German tribe near the Hercynian forest.* VI, **25,** 6.
Ancalitēs, -ium, M., V, **21,** 2.
anceps, ancipitis [**ambō,** both+**caput,** head], two headed, with two sides *or* fronts, double; doubtful, wavering. I, **26,** 1.
ancora, -ae, F., anchor. III, **13,** 8.
Andēs, -ium, M., *a Gallic people in modern Anjou about modern* Angers. II, **35,** 7.
angulus, -ī, M., corner. V, **13,** 2.
angustē, *adv.*, narrowly; in close quarters. V, **23,** 13.
angustiae, -ārum [**angustus,** narrow], F., *pl.*, narrowness; a narrow place *or* pass, strait, defile; straits, difficulties, perplexity. I, **9,** 2.
angustus, • -a, -um, [**angō,** squeeze], compressed, confined, straitened, narrow. I, **2,** 16.
anima, -ae, F., breath, life, soul. VI, **14,** 15.
animadvertō, -ere, -tī, -sus, (**animus+ad+vertō**), to turn the mind to; to notice; **in:** to punish. I, **19,** 6.
animal, -ālis [**animus,** breath of life], N., a living creature, animal. VI, **17,** 11.
animus, -ī, M., soul, spirit; mind, intellect; feelings, character; resolution, courage. I, **1,** 9.
annōtinus, -a, -um, of last year. V, **8,** 18.
annus, -ī, M., year. I, **3,** 7.
annuus, -a, -um, yearly. I, **16,** 14.
ānser, -eris, M., goose. V, **12,** 14.
ante, (1) *adv.*, before, above, previously (2) *prep. w. acc.*, before, in advance. I, **3,** 14.
anteā, *adv.*, formerly, before, previously, once; *always with a verb.* I, **17,** 2.
ante-cēdō, -ere, cessī [**cēdō,** go], *a., n.*, go before, precede, excel, surpass. III, **8,** 5.
ante-cursor, -ōris, M., forerunner: *pl.* vanguard.
ante-ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, bear *or* carry before; prefer.
antemna, -ae, F., sail-yard, yard-arm, sail. III, **14,** 17.
ante-pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus, place before; prefer. IV, **22,** 10.
ante-vertō, -ere, -tī, -sus, turn *or* go before; precede; anticipate; prefer.
antīquitus, *adv.*, [**antīquus,** ancient], from early *or* ancient times, long ago, anciently. II, **4,** 4.
antīquus, -a, -um, (**ante,** before), former, old, ancient. I, **18,** 21.
Antistius, -ī, M., *a Roman gentile name:* Caius Antistius Reginus, *Ceasar's lieutenant.* VII, **83,** 7.
Antōnius, -ī, M., VII, **81,** 15.
Ap., *abbrev. for* **Appius.**
aperiō, -īre, -uī, apertus [**ab+pariō,** bring forth], *a., bring forth from;* expose; *in p. p. as adj.*, exposed, unprotected. I, **25,** 16.
apertē [**apertus,** open], *adv.*, openly, manifestly. VI, **21,** 4.
apertus, -a, -um, exposed. I, **25,** 16, see **aperiō.**
Apollō, -inis, M., Apollo. VI, **17,** 5.
ap (ad-)-parō, 1, prepare; provide.
ap (ad)-pellō, 1. (**pellō,** drive), *a., n.*, drive *or* go to *to accost;* accost, address, call by name, name, call. I, **1,** 3.
appellō, -ere, pulī, pulsus, drive *or* force to; bring to *or* in, land. III, **12,** 9.
appetō (ad-), -ere, -īvī (-iī), petītus [**petō,** seek], *a.*, seek for, aim at, encroach upon, approach. I, **40,** 6; VII, **82,** 6.

Appius, -ī, M., a *Roman praenomen.* V, **1,** 1.
ap (ad-) -plicō, 1, apply; lean. VI, **27,** 7.
ap (ad-) -portō, 1, carry to; V, **1,** 13.
ap-probō, 1, favor, approve.
ap- (ad-) propīnquō 1. [**propīnquus,** near], *n.*, come near *or* close to, approach. II, **10,** 18.
appulsus, *see* **appellō.**
Apr. *or* **Aprīl.,** *abbrev. for* **Aprīlis -e** [**aperiō,** open], *adj.*, of April, April. I, **6,** 16.
aptus, -a, -um, [*p. p. of obsol.* **apō,** fasten, fit], fitted, suited, adapted: **illīs aptiōra,** more favorable to their side. III, **13,** 17.
apud, *prep. with acc.*, at, among, near, with; (*with persons*) at the house of, in the presence of. I, **2,** 1.
aqua, -ae, F., water. IV, **17,** 20.
aquātiō, -ōnis, F., getting water. IV, **11,** 13.
aquila, -ae, F., an eagle: a standard, (*as the* **aquila** *was the chief standard of the legion*). IV, **25,** 11.
Aquilēia, -ae, F. *a city of Cisalpine Gaul, still retaining its ancient name.* I, **10,** 10.
aquilifer, -erī, M., standard-bearer, first centurion of the first cohort.
Aquitānia, -ae, F., Aquitania; *Southwestern Gaul between the Garonne and Pyrenees.* I, **1,** 21.
Aquitānus, -a, -um, of Aquitania, Aquitanian; *in pl. as subst.*, the Aquitani or Aquitanians, *inhabiting south-western Gaul.* I, **1,** 2.
Arar, -aris (*acc.* **-im**), M., *a river of Belgic Gaul rising in the Vosges and emptying into the Rhone, the modern* Saone. I, **12,** 1.
arbiter, -trī, M., umpire, judge. V, **1,** 24.
arbitrium, -ī [**arbiter,** judge], N., decision *or* judgment (*of the arbiter*); opinion, discretion, pleasure. I, **36,** 4; VI, **11,** 8.
arbitror, 1. [**arbiter,** witness; judge], *a., and n.*, witness, testify; judge, decide; think, believe. I, **2,** 16.
arbor, -oris, F., tree. II, **17,** 17.
arcessō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus, summon. I, **31,** 13; II, **20,** 5.
ārdeō, -ēre, -sī, -sus, burn, blaze; be inflamed.
Arduenna, -ae, F., the Ardennes, *a vast forest of northeast Gaul.* V, **3,** 10.
arduus, -a, -um, high, steep, difficult. II, **33,** 9.
Aremoricae , -ārum, F., *adj.*, [*a Celtic word*], maritime. VII, **75,** 18.
argentum, -ī, N., silver; silver plate *or* coin; money. VI, **28,** 12.
argilla, -ae, F., white clay, marl.
āridus, -a, -um [**āreō,** be dry], dry; *neut. as subst.*, dry land. IV, **24,** 9.
ariēs, arietis, M., a ram; battering-ram, *a long beam for demolishing walls, one end of which was capped with iron in the form of a ram's head;* brace, buttress. II, **32,** 3.
Ariovistus, -ī, M., *king of the German tribe, Suebi.* I, **31,** 32; IV, **16,** 23.
Aristius, -ī, M., Marcus Aristius, *a military tribune.*
arma, -ōrum, N. *pl. objects fitted to the body;* armor, arms, equipments; *by meton.*, battle, war. I, **4,** 9.
armāmenta, -ōrum [**arma**], N., implements, gear; *esp.* tackle *or* rigging *of a ship.* III, **14,** 20.
armātūra, -ae [**armō**], F., armor, equipment; armed soldiers *always with adjective* **levis.** II, **10,** 12.
armō, 1. [**arma**], arm, equip; *in p. p. as adj.*, armed; *as subst.* armed men. I, **40,** 20; II, **4,** 15.
Arpinēius, -ī, M., Caius Arpineius, *Caesar's lieutenant.*
arripiō, -ere, ripuī, reptus, *a.*, take *or* seize hurriedly.
arroganter, *adv.*, presumptuously. I, **40,** 33.
ar (ad)-rogantia, -ae [**arrogāns,** arrogant], F., arrogance, haughti-

ness, presumption, insolence. I, **33**, 21.
ars, artis, F., skill art; artifice. VI, **17**, 3.
artē, *adv.*, closely. IV, **17**, 21.
articulus, -ī, M., joint. VI, **27**, 4.
artificium, -ī [**artifex**, artificer], N., a trade, handicraft; artifice, trick. VI, **17**, 8.
artus, -a, -um, close, narrow, confined.
Arvernī, -ōrum, M., *a people of Celtic Gaul, chief town Gergovia, now Auvergne.* I, **31**, 11; VII, **75**, 10.
arx, arcis [**arceō**, shut up, ward off], F., citadel, fortress, stronghold. I, **38**, 14; VII, **84**, 1.
ascendō, -ere, -dī, cēnsus [**ad**+ **scandō**, climb], *a.*, *n.*, climb up to, ascend, mount, climb. I, **21**, 7.
ascēnsus, -ūs [**ascendō**, climb up], M., climbing up, ascending; approach, ascent. I, **21**, 4.
aspectus (**ad-**), **-ūs** [**adspiciō**, look at], M., look; appearance, mien, aspect. V, **14**, 7.
asper, -era, -erum, rough, harsh.
assiduus (**ad-**), **-a, -um** [**sedeō**, sit], close at hand, ever present; continual, incessant, constant. VI, **22**, 7.
as(ad-)-sistō, -ere, stitī, stand by. VI, **18**, 9.
as(ad-)-suēfaciō, -ere, -fēcī, -factus, accustom. IV, **1**, 19.
as(ad-)-suēscō, -ere, suēvī, suētus, accustom. VI, **28**, 9.
at, *conj.*, but, at least. I, **43**, 26; II, **23**, 12.
atque, (**āc** *only before cons.*) [**ad**+ **-que**], *adds something important while* **et** *associates objects of equal importance*, and also, and even, and; *after words denoting a comparison*, with, as; *after words of difference*, than, from. I, **1**, 7.
Atrebas, -bātis, M., an Atrebatian; **Atrebatēs, -um** (**-ī, -ōrum**), the Atrebates, *a Belgic tribe. The name survives in Artois and Arras.* II, **4**, 25.
Atrius, -ī, M., V, **9**, 7.
at(ad-)-texō, -ere, texuī, textus, weave to, join closely.
at(ad)tingō, -ere, tigī, tāctus [**tangō**, touch], *a.*, touch *or* border on, reach, extend to, arrive at, attain. I, **1**, 17.
attribuō (**ad-**), **-ere, -uī, -ūtus** [**tribuō**, assign], *a.*, assign, allot. III, **1**, 18.
auctor, -ōris [**augeō**, increase], M., one who produces, creates, *or* originates; promoter, instigator, originator, author. III, **17**, 7.
auctōritās, -tātis [**auctor**, producer], F., a producing influence, character, authority, reputation. I, **3**, 1.
auctus, -a, -um, *partic. adj.* (**augeō**), increased, abundant. I, **43**, 21.
audācia, -ae [**audāx**, bold], F., boldness, daring, courage; presumption, effrontery. I, **18**, 7.
audācter (**audāciter**) [**audāx**, bold], *adv.*, boldly, fearlessly, daringly. I, **15**, 9.
audeō, -ēre, ausus sum, *semi-dep. a.*, dare, risk, venture. I, **18**, 10.
audiō, 4. *a.*, hear, hear of; *in pr. p. as adj.*, obedient. I, **39**, 27; II, **12**, 6.
audītiō, -ōnis [**audiō**, hear], F., hearing; hearsay, report. IV, **5**, 9.
augeō, -ēre, auxī, auctus, *a.*, *n.*, increase, augment, enhance, add to. I, **18**, 11.
Aulercī, -ōrum, M., *a Gallic people divided into four branches;* (1) Aulerci Eburovices, *in modern* dept. de l'Eure, *in Normandy;* (2) Aulerci Cenomani; (3) Aulerci Brannovices, *in modern* dept. le Brennois; (4) Aulerci Diablintes, *in modern* dept. de la Sarthe. II, **34**, 3.
Aulus, -ī, M., *a Roman praenomen.* I, **6**, 15.
aureus, -a, -um, of gold. V, **12**, 9.
aurīga, -ae, M., charioteer. IV, **33**, 5.
auris, -is, F., ear. VI, **26**, 2.

Aurunculēius, -ī, M., *a Roman gentile name. E. g.,* **L. Aurunculēius Cotta,** *one of Caesar's lieutenants.* II, **11,** 10.
Ausci, -ōrum, M., III, **27,** 4.
ausus, *see* **audeō.**
aut, *conj., used where the difference is important, or exclusive,* or; *aut . . . aut,* either . . . or. I, **1,** 13.
autem, *conj.,* but (*a weak adversative*), however, now, on the other hand; morever. I, **2,** 15.
autumnus, -ī, M., autumn.
auxiliāris, -e, auxiliary. III, **25,** 3.
auxilior, 1 [**auxilium,** aid], *a.,* give aid, help, assist, render assistance. IV, **29,** 7.
auxilium, -ī [**augeō,** increase, promote], N., help, assistance, aid; *in pl.* auxiliary troops, reinforcements. I, **11,** 5.
Avāricēnsis, -e, of Avaricum.
Avāricum, -ī, N., *the stronghold of the Bituriges, now* Bourges.
avāritia, -ae [**avārus,** greedy], F., greed, covetousness. I, **40,** 40.
ā-versus, -a, -um, see **āvertō.**
ā-vertō, -ere, vertī, versus [**vertō,** turn], *a.,* turn away from *or* away, turn aside; turn back, repulse, estrange; *in p. p. as adj.,* turned away, retreating. I, **16,** 7.
avis, -is, F., bird. IV, **10,** 11.
avus, -ī, M., grandfather, ancestor. I, **12,** 20.
Axona, -ae, M., *a river of Gallia Belgica* (*now the* Aisne) *a tributary of the Isara* (Oise). II, **5,** 13.

B.

Bacēnis, -is, sc. *silva,* the forest Bacenis, *between the Cherusci and Suebi.*
Baculus, -ī, M., *a cognomen. See* **Sextius.** VII, **90,** 10.
Baliāris, -e, Balearic. II, **7,** 3.
balteus, -ī, M., girdle, belt.
Balventius, -ī, M., *a Roman nomen. E. g.,* Titus Belventius, *one of Caesar's centurions.*
barbarus, -a, -um, foreign, barbarous; *as subst.* savages. I, **31,** 15; II, **35,** 2.
Basilus, -ī, M., *cognomen of Caesar's lieutenant.* Lucius Minucius. VII, **90,** 8.
Batāvī, -ōrum, M., IV, **10,** 3.
Belgae, -ārum, M., the Belgae *or* Belgians, *a nation of mixed German and Celtic origin, inhabiting northern Gaul.* I, **1,** 2.
Belgium, -ī, N., the country of the Belgae. V, **12,** 4.
bellicōsus, -a, -um, [**bellum,** war], full of war, warlike. I, **10,** 5.
bellicus, -a, -um, military. VI, **24,** 9.
bellō, 1. [**bellum,** war], *n.,* make *or* carry on war, wage war. 1, **2,** 14.
Bellovacī -ōrum, M., *a Belgic tribe between the Sequana, Samara, and Isara. The modern city Beauvais derives its name from it. Their town Bratuspantium* (II, **13**) *is the ruin Bratuspante near the modern Breteuil.* II, **4,** 13.
bellum, -ī, N., war. I, **1,** 11.
bene [**benus=bonus,** good], well, rightly, successfully: *comp.* **melius;** *sup.* **optimē.** III, **18,** 10.
beneficium, -ī [**bene,** well+**faciō**], N., well-doing, benefit, favor, kindness. I, **9,** 9.
benevolentia, -ae, F., good-will, kindness.
Bibracte, -is, N., *the chief town of the Aedui.* I, **23,** 3.
Bibrax, -ctis, F., *a town of the Remi, supposed to be the modern* Bievre. II, **6,** 2.
Bibrocī, -ōrum, M., V, **21,** 3.
bīduum, -ī [**bis,** twice+**diēs**], N., space *or* period of two days, two days. I, **23,** 1.
biennium, -ī, two years. I, **3,** 7.
Bigerriōnēs, -um, M., III, **27,** 3.
bīnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.* [**bis,** twice], two each, two apiece, by twos. III, **15,** 2.
bi-pedālis, -e, of two feet. IV, **17,** 16.

bipertītō, *adv.* [**bis**+**partior**, divide], in two parts *or* divisions, in two ways. I, **25**, 19.

bis, *num. adv.* [*for* **duis**, *fr.* **duo**, two], on two occasions, twice. III, **12**, 4.

Bitūrigēs, -um, M., *a tribe of Central Gaul in two branches, the Vibisci around Bordeaux, and the Cubi around Bourges.* I, **18**, 15.

Boduōgnātus, -ī, M., II, **23**, 15.

Bōiī, -ōrum, M., *a powerful Celtic tribe of Central Gaul in modern Bourbonnais. Part migrated to northern Italy and another part to Germany.* I, **5**, 11.

bonitās, -tātis, F., goodness. I, **28**, 12.

bonus, -a, -um, *comp.* **melior**, *sup.* **optimus**, good, beneficial, profitable, well disposed, (*with* **animō**) friendly; *as subst.* **bonum, -ī**, profit, advantage; **bona, -ōrum**, goods, property, estate; **bonī, -ōrum**, the good, good men, *or* citizens. I, **6**, 12.

bōs, bovis, M., F., ox; cow. VI, **26**, 1.

brāchium, (bracch-) -ī, N., the arm *from the hand to the elbow*, forearm. I, **25**, 10.

Brannovīcēs, -ium, M., VII, **75**, 8.

Brannoviī, -ōrum, M., *a Gallic tribe, dependents of the Aedui.* VII, **75**, 8.

Bratuspantium, -ī, N., II, **13**, 5.

brevis, -e, short, brief, transitory. I, **40**, 36; III, **4**, 1.

brevitās, -tātis, F., shortness, brevity. II, **20**, 7.

breviter, *adv.*, briefly.

Britannia, -ae, F., Britain, Great Britain (*England and Scotland*). II, **4**, 20.

Britannicus, -a, -um, of Britain, British. V, **4**, 4.

Britannus, -a, -um, of Britain, British, Britannic: *in pl. as subst.*, the people of Briton, the Britons. IV, **21**, 10.

brūma, -ae, F., the winter solstice. V. **13**, 11.

Brūtus, -ī, M., *a Roman family name. E. g.*, Decimus Junius Brutus Albinus, *one of Caesar's legati in the Gallic war, and in the war with Pompeius. He took part in the conspiracy against Caesar, and was killed in Gaul by order of Antonius.* III, **11**, 11.

C.

C, sign for 100. I, **2**, 17.

C., *abbrev. for praenomen* **Gaius**.

Cabillōnum, -ī, N., *an important town of the Aedui on the Arar.* VII, **90**, 13.

Cabūrus, -ī, M., Caius Valerius Caburus, *a Celt honored with Roman citizenship by C. Valerius Flaccus, father of (C. Valerius) Procillus and Domnotaurus.* I, **47**, 11.

cacūmen, -inis, N., top; point. VII, **73**, 9.

cadāver, -eris [**cadō**, fall], N., a fallen *or* dead body, carcass, corpse. II, **27**, 10.

cadō, -ere, cecidī, cāsus, *n.*, fall; fall in battle, be slain, die. I, **15**, 7.

Cadurcī, -ōrum, M., *an Aquitanian tribe.* VII, **75**, 9.

caedēs, -is [**caedō**, cut], F., cutting; (*of persons*) slaughter, massacre, murder. VI, **13**, 13.

caedō, -ere, cecīdī, caesus, cut, kill, slay. III, **29**, 1.

caelestis, -e, heavenly. VI, **17**, 9.

caerimōnia, -ae, F., a sacred rite; sacredness.

Caeroesī, -ōrum, M., *a tribe in Belgic Gaul.* II, **4**, 28.

caeruleus, -a, -um, azure. V, **14**, 6.

Caesar, -aris, M., (1), Caius Julius Caesar, *conqueror of Gaul, and author of the Commentaries*, (2) Lucius Julius Caesar, *a kinsman and lieutenant of the former.* I, **7**, 1.

caesus, *see* **caedō**.

Cāius, -ī, M. *See* **Gāius**.

calamitās, -tātis, F., misfortune, defeat. I, **12**, 17.

Caletī, -ōrum (-es, -um), M., *a Belgic*

tribe near the mouth of the Seine. II, **4**, 27.

callidus, -a -um, shrewd. III, **18**, 2.

cālō, -ōnis [**cāla,** a log of wood], M., a soldier's servant, camp porter *or* follower. II, **24**, 5.

campester (tris), -tris, -tre [**campus,** a plain], of a plain, flat, level: **loca,** level country. VII, **72**, 12.

campus, -ī, M., plain; open space *or* country. III, **26**, 14.

Camulogēnus, -ī, M., *a chief of the Aulerci.*

Canīnius, -ī, M., VII, **83**, 7.

canō, -ere, cecinī, cantus, sing; sound; recite; predict.

Cantabrī, -ōrum, M., III, **26**, 15.

Cantium, -ī, N., *a district in the southeast of England, now* Kent. V, **13**, 3.

capillus, -ī, M., the hair. V, **14**, 7.

capiō, -ere, cēpī, captus, *a.*, take, capture, seize; take up; obtain. I, **1**, 16.

capra, -ae, F., wild she-goat, roe, VI, **27**, 2.

captīvus, -ī, [**capiō,** take], M., captive, prisoner. I, **22**, 3.

captus, -ūs, M., seizing; capacity. IV, **3**, 6.

captus, *see* **capiō.**

caput, capitis, N., the head (*of men and animals*); person, individual; a head *or* leader; a section *or* chapter; mouth (*of a river*): **capitis poena,** capital punishment. I, **29**, 6.

careō, 2, be without, be free from; miss, want.

carīna, -ae, F., hull. III, **13**, 2.

Carnūtēs, -um, M., *a Gallic people between the Seine and Loire, about modern* Chartres. II, **35**, 7.

carō, carnis, F., flesh. V, **14**, 4.

carpō, -ere, carpsī, carptus, pluck; rend; censure. III, **17**, 16.

carrus, -ī, M., N., cart. I, **3**, 3.

cārus, -a, -um, dear, costly; valued; beloved.

Carvilius, -ī, M., V, **22**, 4.

casa, -ae, F., cottage, hut, hovel.

cāseus, -ī, M., cheese. VI, **22**, 2.

Cassī, -ōrum, M., V, **21**, 3.

Cassiānus, -a, -um, of Cassius. I, **13**, 7.

cassis, -idis, F., helmet.

Cassius, -ī, M., *a Roman gentile name:* Lucius Cassius Longinus, *consul 107 B. C., slain by the the Tigurini in battle.* I, **7**, 13.

Cassivellaunus, -ī, M., Caswallon, *the commander-in-chief of the Britons against Caesar.* V, **11**, 18.

castellum, -ī, [**castrum,** fort], N., fortress, redoubt, outwork. I, **8**, 7.

Casticus, -ī, M., I, **3**, 10.

castrum, ī, N., fort, stronghold: *in pl.*, **castra, castrōrum,** fortified camp, camp. I, **12**, 8.

cāsus, -ūs, [**cadō,** fall], M., *what befalls;* accident, chance, misfortune: **cāsū,** by chance. 1, **12**, 16.

Catamantaloedēs, -is, M., I, **3**, 10.

catēna, -ae, F., chain, fetter. I, **47**, 20; III, **13**, 9.

Catuvolcus, -ī, M., *a chief of the Eburones.*

Caturīgēs, -um, M., I, **10**, 13.

causa, -ae, F., cause, reason, grounds, motive; *in abl. after a gen.*, for the sake of; **causam dīcere,** to plead a case. I, **1**, 11.

cautē, *adv.*, cautiously; safely.

cautēs, -is, F., reef. III, **13**, 22.

cautus, *see* **caveo.**

Cavarillus, -ī, M., *an Aeduan noble.*

Cavarinus, -ī, M., *a chief of the Senones.*

caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautus, *n.*, be cautious *or* on one's guard; take heed *or* precautions. I, **14**, 5.

cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus, go; go away; give way, yield; grant, concede. II, **19**, 12.

celer, -eris, -ere, swift, quick; precipitate. IV, **23**, 15.

celeritās, -tātis, [**celer,** swift], F., swiftness, quickness, speed. I, **48**, 18; II, **12**, 13.

celeriter, [**celer,** quick], *adv.*, quickly, rapidly, speedily. I, **18**, 3.

cēlō, 1, *a.*, keep covered or hidden, secrete, conceal; *in pass.*, escape observation, be unnoticed. II, **32**, 11.

Celtae, -ārum, M., I, **1**, 3.

Celtillus, -ī, M., *an Arvernian chief, father of Vercingetorix.*

Cenabēnsēs, -ium, M., *the people of* **Cenabum.**

Cenabum, -ī, N., *a town of the Carnutes, now* Orleans.

Cenimāgnī, -ōrum, M., V, **21**, 2.

Cenomānī, -ōrum, M., *a tribe in* N. E. Gaul.

cēnseō, -ēre, -uī, -sus, *a.*, estimate, reckon; be of opinion, think, decide. I, **35**, 16; VII, **75**, 3.

cēnsus, -ūs, M., enumeration. I, **29**, 10.

centum (c), *indecl. num.*, a hundred. I, **2**, 17.

centuriō, -ōnis [**centum**, a hundred], M., centurion; *the commander of the century, the sixtieth part of a legion.* I, **39**, 20; II, **17**, 1.

cernō, -ere, crēvī, certus, *a.*, separate; discern, distinguish, perceive. VI, **21**, 4.

certāmen, -inis, [**certō**, strive], N., strife, struggle, contest, combat. III, **14**, 22.

certē, *adv.*, [*compare* **certus**], certainly; at least, at all events. IV, **25**, 13.

certō, 1, contend, strive, struggle.

certus, -a, -um, [*for* **crētus**, *p. p. of* **cernō**], decided; certain, sure, fixed: **certiōrem facere**, to inform. I, **7**, 8.

cervus, -ī, M., deer. VI, **26**, 1.

cēspes (caes-), **-itis**, [**caedō**, cut], M., a cut sod, turf. III, **25**, 5.

cēterus, -a, -um, (*in pl. only in Caesar*), the rest of, the remainder; *as subst.*, the rest, remaining, others.

Ceutrōnēs, -um, M., (1), *a Belgic tribe in Western Flanders.* (2), *a tribe of the Province in Savoy about modern Centron.* I, **10**, 12.

Cevenna, -ae, F., *the Cevennes mts. in the south of Gaul.*

Cheruscī, -ōrum, M., *a German tribe between the Weser and Elbe.*

cibārius, -a, -um, pertaining to food; *n. pl. as subst.*, provisions. I, **5**, 8.

cibus, -ī, M., food. IV, **1**, 17.

Cicerō, -ōnis, [**cicer**, a vetch *or* small pea], M., *a Roman cognomen:* Quintus Tullius, *brother of the famous orator, one of Caesar's legates.* VII, **90**, 12.

Cimberius, -ī, M. I, **37**, 7.

Cimbrī, -ōrum, M., *a Celtic people from the Cimbric Chersonese (Jutland). Having invaded Italy they were defeated by C. Marius near Verona,* 101 B. C. I, **33**, 17; II, **4**, 7.

Cingetorīx, -īgis, M., *a Treveran chieftain, a rival of Indutiomarus.* V, **3**, 5.

cingō, -ere, cinxī, cinctus, *a.*, encircle, surround, invest, encompass. I, **38**, 10; VII, **69**, 7.

cippus, -ī, M., pillar, stockade. VII, **73**, 13.

circinus, -ī, M., a pair of compasses. I, **38**, 9.

circiter, *adv. and prep. with acc.* [**circus**, circle], about, near. I, **15**, 13.

circuitus, -ūs [**circumeō**, go around, M., going around; a winding path, circuit: **in circuitū**, all around. I, **21**, 4.

circum [**circus**, a circle], *adv. and prep. with acc.*, around, about; among. I, **10**, 10.

circum-cīdō, -ere, cīdī, cīsus, cut out *or* off, isolate.

circumcīsus, *see* **circumcīdō**.

circum-clūdō, -ere, clūsī, clūsus, surround. IV, **28**, 12.

circum-dō, dare, dedī, datus [**dō**, give], *a.*, give *or* put around, encompass, surround. I, **38**, 13; IV, **32**, 19.

circum-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, lead *or* draw around. I, **38**, 9; III, **26**, 5.

circum (circu-) **-eō, īre, īvī (iī), itus** [**eō**, go], *a.*, go *or* march around, traverse, visit. III, **25**, **8**.

circum-fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsus, surround; overwhelm.
circumiciō, -ere, iēcī, iectus [**iaciō**], *a.*, hurl, set *or* place around. II, **6**, 5.
circum-mittō, -ere, mīsī, missus, send around.
circum-mūniō, 4, wall around; fortify. II, **30**, 4.
circum-plector, plectī, plexus sum, enfold. VII, **83**, 5.
circum-sistō, -ere, stitī [**sistō,** stand], *a.*, stand, flock *or* rally around, surround, hem in. I, **48**, 17; III, **15**, 2.
circum-spiciō, -ere, spēxī, spectus, look (around) for, examine.
circum-vāllō, 1. [**vālum,** rampart], *a.*, surround with a rampart, beleaguer, invest. VII, **68**, 11.
circum-vehor, vehī, vēctus sum, ride *or* sail around.
circum-veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus [**veniō,** come], *a.*, come around, surround, encompass; invest, circumvent. I, **25**, 16.
cis, *prep. with acc.*, on this side, II, **3**, 9.
Cisalpīnus, -a, -um, Cisalpine, *lying on the south side of the Alps.*
Cisrhēnānus, -a, -um, on this (the western) side of the Rhine.
citātus, *see* **citō**
citerior, -ius, *adj. comp.*, [**cis,** on this side], nearer, hither; **Gallia Citerior**=(*Cisalpīna*), Cisalpine Gaul, *on the nearer* (*Italian*) *side of the Alps.* I, **10**, 15.
citō, 1, incite. IV, **10**, 7.
citō, *adv. comp.*, **citius,** *sup.* **citissimē,** quickly, speedily. IV, **33**, 12.
citrā, *adv.* and *prep. with acc.*, this side, within. I, **12**, 7.
citrō, *adv.*, hither. I, **42**, 10.
cīvis, -is, M., F., citizen.
cīvitās, -tātis [**cīvis,** citizen], F., citizenship; the citizens (*as forming a community*), state, city, nation, commonwealth. I, **2**, 4.
clam [**cēlō,** conceal], *adv.*, secretly, unawares. III, **18**, 8.
clāmitō, 1, exclaim. V, **7**, 20.
clāmor, -ōris [**clāmō,** cry out], M., outcry, noise, din, clamor. II, **11**, 17.
clandestīnus, -a, -um, hidden, secret.
clārus, -a, -um, clear, loud.
classis, -is, F., class, division; army, *called out for duty; esp.* fleet, *including the marines.* III, **11**, 12.
Claudius, -ī, M., *a Roman praenomen. E. g.*, Appius Claudius Pulcher, *cos.* 54 B. C. V, **1**, 1.
claudō, -ere, clausī, clausus, *a.*, shut, close; shut in, enclose. I, **25**, 15.
clavus, -ī, M., spike. III, **13**, 8.
clēmentia, -ae [**clēmēns,** gentle], F., gentleness, kindness, mercy, clemency. II, **14**, 11.
cliēns (**cluēns**), **-entis** [**clueō,** hear one's self called], M., F., vassal, dependent, retainer. I, **4**, 6.
clientēla, -ae [**cliēns,** a client], F., *the relation of client and patron;* patronage, vassalage; dependents, vassals. VI, **12**, 4.
clīvus, -ī, M., declivity, slope; ascent.
Clōdius, -ī, M., *the plebian form of* **Claudius.** *E. g.*, P. Clodius Pulcher, *murdered by Milo.*
Cn., *abbrev. for* **Gnaeus.**
coacervō, 1. [**acervō,** heap up], *a.*, heap *or* mass together, pile one upon another. II, **27**, 10.
coāctus, -ūs, M., compulsion.
co-āgmentō, 1, join, connect.
Cocosātēs, -um, M., III, **27**, 5.
coēmō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptus [**cum** +**emō**], *a.*, buy, buy up, purchase. I, **3**, 4.
co-eō, īre, īvī (**iī**), assemble. VI, **22**, 5.
coepī, coepisse, *defect.* [**cum**+ **apō** (**apiō**), take hold], *a.*, *have taken hold;* began, commenced, undertook. *P. p.*, **coeptus, -a, -um,** begun, commenced. I, **15**, 11.
coeptus, *see* **coepī.**

coërceō, 2. [**arceō**, shut up], *a.*, shut up completely, restrain, check. I, **17**, 11.
cōgitō, 1. [**cum+agitō**, put in quick motion; consider], *a.*, *n.*, consider thoroughly *or* carefully, ponder, reflect; think, purpose, plan. I, **33**, 7; III, **24**, 10.
cōgnātiō, **-ōnis** [**cō-gnātus**, connected by birth], F., blood relationship; kinsman; family, clan. VI, **22**, 4.
cōgnōscō, **-ere**, **-nōvī**, **-nitus** [**cum +(g)nōscō**, know], *n.*, know thoroughly; learn, ascertain; study, investigate. I, **19**, 1.
cōgō, **-ere**, **coēgī**, **coāctus** [**cum+agō**, lead], *a.*, lead *or* bring together, collect, draw together, compress; force, compel, constrain. I, **4**, 3.
cohors, **-tis**, F., cohort. I, **40**, 48; II, **5**, 20.
cohortātiō, **-ōnis**, F., cheering. II, **25**, 1.
co-hortor, 1. [**cum+hortor**, encourage], *a.*, encourage greatly, animate, rally. I, **25**, 3.
collātus, *see* **cōnferō**.
collaudō (**conl-**), 1. [**laudō**, praise], praise highly *or* in set terms, eulogize. V, **2**, 7.
colligō, 1. [**cum+ligō**, bind], *a.*, bind *or* fasten together, unite, hamper. I, **25**, 8.
colligō, (**con-**), **-ere**, **lēgī**, **lēctus** [**legō**, gather], *a.*, gather together, collect, assemble; recover one's senses *or* courage, rally. III, **6**, 3.
collis, **-is**, M., hill. I, **22**, 8.
collocō, 1. [**locō**, place], *a.*, place together, place, set, station; arrange; **nūptum collocāre**, to give in marriage. I, **18**, 16.
colloquium, **-ī** [**colloquor**, talk together], N., talking together, conversation; conference, parley; communication, interview. I, **34**, 3.
colloquor, **-ī**, **locūtus sum** [**cum+loquor**, speak], *n.*, speak with, converse, confer. I, **19**, 16.
colō, **-ere**, **coluī**, **cultus**, cultivate; inhabit, dwell; honor, cherish. V, **12**, 6.
colōnia, **-ae**, F., settlement. VI, **24**, 4.
color, **-ōris**, M., hue, tint, color.
com-būrō, **-ere**, **būssī**, **būstus**, burn up. I, **5**, 6.
comes, **-itis**, M., F., companion.
comitium, **-ī**, N., place of assembly *or* meeting; *pl.*, an election.
comitor, 1, accompany, follow.
commeātus, **-ūs** [**commeō**, go and return, make a trip], M., communication, trip; supplies, provisions, (*military*) stores. I, **34**, 9; II, **5**, 16.
commemorō, 1. [**memor**, mindful], *a.*, call to mind, remind, state, mention. I, **14**, 3.
com-mendō, 1, entrust; surrender. IV, **27**, 17.
commeō, 1. [**meō**, **go**], *n.*, go, resort; *with ad*, resort to, visit. I, **1**, 8.
com-minus, *adv.*, [**manus**, hand], hand to hand, in close contest. I, **52**, 8.
com-mittō, **-ere**, **mīsī**, **mīssus**, [**mittō**, send], *a.*, send *or* bring together, unite, join; commit, cause, do; **proelium committere**, join *or* begin battle. I, **13**, 18.
Commius, **-ī**, M., IV, **21**, 14; V, **22**, 11.
commodē [**commodus**, convenient], conveniently, readily, easily; **nōn satis commodē**, not very easily. I, **25**, 9.
commodum, **-ī** [**commodus**, convenient], N., convenience, interest, advantage. I, **35**, 17; III, **22**, 5.
commodus, **-a**, **-um** [**modus**, measure], in full measure; complete; suitable, favorable. V, **2**, 10.
commone-faciō, **-ere**, **fēcī**, **factus**, remind forcibly. I, **19**, 16.
commoror, 1. [**moror**, tarry], *n.*, tarry, wait, stop. V, **7**, 6.

com-moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus [**moveō**, move], *a.*, move *or* excite thoroughly, rouse, agitate. I, **13**, 4.
commūnicō, 1. [**commūnis**, common], *a.*, make common, communicate, impart, share. IV, **13**, 10.
com-mūniō, 4. [**mūniō**, fortify], *a.*, fortify strongly, intrench. I, **8**, 7.
commūnis, -e [**mūniō**, serve], serving together; *hence*, common, general, universal, ordinary. I, **30**, 14; II, **4**, 12.
com-mūtātiō, -ōnis [**mūtō**, change], F., a changing, change. I, **14**, 14.
com-mūtō, 1. [**mūtō**, change], *a.*, change *or* alter completely, change; exchange. I, **23**, 11.
com-parō, 1 [**parō**, prepare], *a.*, prepare, get ready; supply, furnish, muster, equip. I, **3**, 3.
comparō, 1. [**com-par**, equal to], *a.*, set in pairs, place in comparison, compare. I, **31**, 41; VI, **24**, 15.
compellō, -ere, pulī, pulsus [**com+pellō**], to drive together, assemble, collect; to force, compel, constrain. II, **23**, 4.
compendium, -ī, N., gain, profit.
com-periō -īre, perī, pertus, *a.*, find out with certainty, discover, ascertain. I, **22**, 4.
com-plector, -ī, plexus sum [**plectō**, braid], *a.*, embrace, clasp, enclose. I, **20**, 2.
com-pleō, -ere, plēvī, plētus [**pleō**, fill], *a.*, fill up *or* completely, complete. I, **24**, 7.
complūrēs, -a, [**plūs**, more], several, many; a great many. I, **8**, 12.
com-pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus, place together, unite.
com-portō, 1. [**portō**, carry], *a.*, carry together, collect. I, **16**, 9.
com-prehendō (prēndō), ere, -dī, -ēnsus [**preheneō**, grasp], *a.*, grasp *or* lay hold of on both sides, seize, catch, take; comprehend, comprise. III, **14**, 17.
com-probō, 1, approve, sanction; establish.
compulsus, *see* **compellō**.
cōnātum, -ī, N., trial, attempt. I, **3**, 18.
cōnātus, -ūs, M., attempt. I, **8**, 16.
con-cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus [**cēdō**, go], *a.*, *n.*, go away, depart, withdraw; grant, yield. I, **7**, 15.
con-certō, 1, contend *or* dispute zealously, debate.
con-cessus, -ūs, M., concession, permission.
con-cīdō, -ere, cidī, cīsus, cut down, slay, kill. I, **12**, 11.
concidō, -ere, cīdī [**cadō**, fall], *n.*, fall down *or* together, collapse, fall. III, **14**, 19.
conciliō, 1. [**concilium**, assembly], *a.*, assemble *or* bring together; gain *or* win over; reconcile, conciliate. I, **3**, 21.
concilium, -ī [**calō**, call], N., gathering, assembly, council. I, **18**, 3.
con-cipiō, -ere, cēpī, ceptus, receive, conceive.
concīsus, *see* **concīdō**.
concitō, 1. [*freq. of* **concieō**, stir up], *a.*, stir up, rouse, instigate, incite. VII, **77**, 21.
con-clāmō, 1. [**clāmō**, cry out], *a.*, *n.*, shout *or* cry out together, call aloud, cry *or* shout out. I, **47**, 19; III, **18**, 10.
con-clūdō, -ere, clūdī, clūsus, [**claudō**, close], *a.*, shut up, imprison, close, confine: **conclūsum mare**, an inland sea.
con-crepō, -āre, crepuī, crepitus, rattle, creak, clash.
con-currō, -ere, currī, cursus [**currō**, run], *a.*, *n.*, run *or* rush together; encounter, engage in conflict; concur, happen together. I, **48**, 16; II, **20**, 3.
con-cursō, 1, run about, traverse; skirmish.
con-cursus, -ūs [**cursus**, running], M., a running together, rush, onset; collision, encounter; attack. I, **8**, 16.
con-demnō, 1, convict, sentence.

condiciō, -ōnis, F., agreement, stipulation, terms. I, **28,** 17.
con-dōnō, 1. [dōnō, give], *a., n.,* give freely; give up; pardon, forgive. I, **20,** 17.
Condrūsī, -ōrum, M., *clients of the Treveri, east of the Meuse about modern* Condroz. II, **4,** 28.
con-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, [dūcō, lead], *a.,* lead *or* bring together, assemble; conduct; hire. I, **4,** 7.
cōnfectus, *see* **cōnficiō.**
cōnferciō,-īre, fersī, fertum, crowd together.
cōn-ferō, ferre, contulī, collātus [ferō, bring], *a.,* bring *or* get together, collect, gather; ascribe to, charge; **sē,** retreat, take refuge: **sīgna,** join battle. I, **16,** 9.
cōnfertus, -a, -um [*p. p. of* **cōnferciō,** crowd together], dense, thick, compact. I, **24,** 11.
cōnfestim [**festīnus,** in haste], hastily, at once, immediately. IV, **32,** 11.
cōn-ficiō, -ere, fēcī, fectus [**faciō**], make *or* do thoroughly, complete, accomplish; finish up, exhaust; furnish, prepare. I, **3,** 6.
cōn-fīdō, -ere, fīsus sum [**fīdō,** trust], *n.,* trust completely, rely on, feel confident, hope; *in p. p. as adj.,* trusting in, relying upon. I, **23,** 11.
cōn-fīgō, -ere, fīxī, fīxus, fasten. III, **13,** 8.
cōn-fīnis, -e, adjoining, contiguous.
cōnfīnium, -ī, N., confine, boundary.
cōn-fīō, cōn-fierī, cōnfectus sum, to be accomplished.
cōnfīrmātiō, -ōnis, F., assurance. III, **18,** 13.
cōn-fīrmō, 1. [**fīrmus,** strong], *a.,* establish, strengthen, encourage; declare, assert. I, **3,** 6.
cōn-fīsus, -a, -um, relying upon. V, **17,** 9.
cōn-fiteor, -ērī, fessus sum, acknowledge, confess.
cōnfīxus, *see* **cōnfīgō.**
cōn-flagrō, 1, *n.,* burn, be on fire.
cōn-flīctō, 1, come in conflict, collide.
cōn-flīgō, -ere, flīxī, flīctus, *a., n.,* strike *or* clash together, dash against, contend, fight. II, **5,** 7.
cōn-fluēns, fluentis, F., a flowing together. IV, **15,** 4.
cōn-fluō, -ere, flūxī, flow together.
cōn-fugiō, -ere, fūgī, flee, take refuge.
cōn-fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsus, mingle; confuse. VII, **75,** 5.
congredior, -gredī, -gressus sum [**gradior,** step], *a., n.,* step *or* come together, meet, encounter; engage in conflict, contend. I, **36,** 8. II, **23,** 11.
con-iciō, icere, iēcī, iectus, [**iaciō**], *a.,* hurl *or* throw together; cast; let fall; put together logically, conjecture. I, **26,** 9.
con-iectūra, -ae, F., inference, conjecture.
con-iūnctim, *adv.,* jointly. VI, **19,** 3.
con-iungō, -ere, iūnxī, -iūnctus [**iungō,** join], *a.,* join with *or* together, connect, unite. I, **37,** 11; II, **3,** 10.
con-iūnx, iugis, M., F., consort; spouse; husband; wife.
con-iūrātiō, -ōnis, [**iurō,** take an oath], F., swearing together, plot, conspiracy; secret league. I, **2,** 3.
con-iūrō, [**iūrō,** swear], 1. *n.,* swear *or* take an oath together, league together, conspire. II, **1,** 6.
cōnor, 1. *a.,* attempt, endeavor, try. I, **3,** 16.
con-quiēscō, -ere, quiēvī, quiētus, rest, repose; be idle.
con-quīrō, -ere, quīsīvī, quīsītus [**quaerō,** search], *a.,* seek for carefully, search for, hunt up. I, **27,** 8.
conquīsītus, *see* **con-quīrō.**
cōn-sanguineus, -a, -um, [**sanguis,** blood], of the same blood; *as subst.,* kinsman, relative. I, **11,** 9.
cōn-scendō, -ere, -dī, -ēnsus [**scandō,** climb], climb, mount; go on board, embark. IV, **23,** 3.

cōn-scientia, -ae, F., consciousness, knowledge, sense.

cōn-scīscō, -ere, -scīvī, -scītus, [**scīscō,** resolve], *a.*, resolve upon, appoint, determine, decree. I, **4,** 12.

cōn-scius, -a, -um, [**sciō,** know], *sharing in knowledge;* conscious; aware of. I, **14,** 5.

cōn-scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus [**scrībō,** write], *a.*, write together in a list, register; levy, enroll, enlist. I, **10,** 9.

cōnsecrō, 1. [**sacrō,** dedicate], dedicate, consecrate. VI, **13,** 27.

cōn-sector, 1, [**sector,** *freq. of* **sequor,** follow], *a.*, follow eagerly, pursue, chase. III, **15,** 10.

cōnsecūtus, *see* **cōn-sequor.**

cōnsēnsiō, -ōnis, F., agreement. VII, **76,** 6.

cōnsēnsus, -ūs, [**cōnsēntiō,** think together, agree], M., united opinion, agreement, coalition, consent. I, **30,** 14; II, **28,** 6.

cōnsentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus [**sentiō,** feel], *a.*, *n.*, think together, agree, combine; conspire. II, **3,** 6.

cōn-sequor, sequī, secūtus sum [**sequor,** follow], *a.*, follow up, go after, pursue; reach, overtake; gain, attain, succeed. I, **13,** 2.

cōn-servō, 1, [**servō,** save], save; spare, protect, maintain. II, **12,**15

Cōnsidius, -ī, M., Publius Considius, *one of Caesar's officers.* I, **21,** 10.

cōn-sīdō, -ere, sēdī, sessus [**sīdō,** sit down], *n.*, sit down together, settle; take a position, halt, encamp. I, **21,** 2.

cōnsilium, -ī, [*cf.* **cōnsul**], N., consultation, deliberation; counsel, design, measure; plan; judgment, prudence, wisdom; an assembly for deliberation, a council. I, **5,** 10.

cōn-similis, -e, very like, similar. II, **11,** 5.

cōnsistō, -ere, stitī, [**con-sistō**], *n.*, take a stand *or* position, keep one's position, stand, form, (*of soldiers*); stop, halt, remain, stay; consist in, depend *or* rest on. I, **13,** 16.

cōnsōbrīnus, -ī, M., first cousin. VII, **76,** 13.

cōn-sōlor, 1, [**sōlor,** comfort], *a.*, cheer, comfort. I, **20,** 14.

cōnspectus, -ūs [**cōnspiciō,** descry], M., perception, observation; sight, view, presence. I, **11,** 6.

cōn-spiciō, -ere, spēxī, spectus, [**speciō,** look], *a.*, look at attentively, observe, descry, perceive. I, **47,** 18; II, **21,** 14.

cōnspicor, 1, [**spec-** in obsol. **speciō,** look], *a. and n.*, look closely, observe, descry, perceive. I, **25,** 17.

cōn-spīrō, 1, combine. III, **10,** 10.

cōnstanter [**cōnstō,** stand together, be consistent *or* steadfast], uniformly, consistently; resolutely. II, **2,** 8.

cōnstantia, -ae, [**cōnstāns,** firm], F., firmness, steadfastness. I, **40,** 18; VII, **77,** 28.

cōn-sternō, 1, confound, perplex, dismay.

cōn-sternō, -ere, strāvī, strātus, strew over. IV, **17,** 22.

cōn-stīpō, 1, press *or* crowd closely.

cōn-stituō, -ere, stituī, stitūtus [**statuō,** set up], *a.*, set up, station; put together; establish, settle, determine. I, **3,** 2.

cōn-stō, -āre, stitī, stātus, stand firm; agree; be settled. III, **6,** 6.

cōnstrātus, *see* **cōn-sternō.**

cōn-suēscō, -ere, suēvī, suētus [**suēscō,** become used], *n.*, become accustomed, be wont: *pf. used as pres. and plupf. as impf.*; *in p. p. as adj.*, accustomed, usual, wonted. I, **14,** 13.

cōnsuētūdō, -inis, [**cōnsuēscō**], F., habit, custom, practice. I, **31,** 41; II, **17,** 5.

cōnsuētus, *see* **cōnsuēscō.**

cōnsul, -ulis, [*cf. cōn-sedeō, cōnsilium*], M., a consul, *one of the two chief magistrates elected annually by the Roman people.* I, **2,** 2.

cōnsulātus, -ūs, M., consulship. I, 35, 4.

cōnsulō, -ere, -uī, -ltus, *a.*, *n.*, go to for advice, take counsel, consult; *with dat.*, take counsel for, study the interests of, promote the welfare of. V, 3, 16.

cōnsultō, 1, [*freq.* of **cōnsulō,** deliberate], reflect, consider, take counsel. VII, 77, 5.

cōnsultō [*abl. N. of* **cōnsultus,** well considered], *adv.*, deliberately, designedly, on purpose. V, 16, 6.

cōnsultum, -ī [cōnsulō, deliberate], N., *result of deliberation;* decree, enactment, decision. I, 43, 16.

cōn-sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus [sūmō, take], *a.*, *take together or all at once;* devour, consume, destroy; use up, waste, pass. I, 11, 15.

cōn-surgō, -ere, surrēxī, surrēctus [surgō, rise], *n.*, arise together *or* in a body, rise up; *of a session,* break up. VI, 23, 14.

con-tabulō, 1, floor over; build in stories.

con-tāgiō, -ōnis, F., contact; pollution. VI, 13, 19.

con-tāminō, 1, mingle; corrupt; pollute.

con-tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctus, cover up. VII, 85, 12.

con-temnō, -ere, tempsī, temptus, despise, disdain.

contemptiō, -ōnis [contemnō, despise], F., disdain, contempt. III, 17, 15.

contemptus, -ūs, M., scorn. II, 30, 10.

con-tendō, -ere, tendī, tentus [tendō, stretch], *n.*, push forward, hasten; strive, contend, fight. I, 1, 13.

contentiō, -ōnis [contendō, stretch out, struggle], F., stretching out, striving, struggle, contest. I, 44, 32; V, 19, 2.

con-tentus, -a, -um, satisfied, pleased.

con-texō, -ere, texuī, textus, weave together. IV, 17, 22.

continēns, -entis [*pres. p. of* **continēō,** hold together], holding together; continuous, extensive; contiguous, neighboring; self-controlled, continent; *as subst.*, mainland, continent. III, 28, 9

continenter [continēns], *adv.*, continously, without interruption, continually. I, 1, 11.

continentia, -ae, F., restraint, moderation.

contineō,-ēre, -uī, tentus [teneō], *a.*, hold together; hold in check, restrain; enclose, contain, bound. I, 1, 16.

contingō, -ere, tigī, tāctus [tangō, touch], *a.*, and *n.*, touch, reach; extend to, attain to; concern; befall, happen to. I, 38, 13.

continuātiō, -ōnis, F., succession. III, 29, 9.

continuō, *adv.*, immediately, forthwith.

continuus, -a, -um, [contineō, hold together], holding together, unbroken, uninterrupted, continuous. I, 48, 7.

contiō, -ōnis, F., assembly.

contrā, *adv.*, (I, 18, 10) *and prep. with acc.*, on the other hand; opposite. I, 40, 29; II, 1, 4.

con-trahō, -ere trāxī, tractus [trahō, draw], *a.*, draw *or* bring together, assemble; draw into smaller compass, contract. I, 34, 10.

contrārius, -a, -um, [contra], lying over against, opposite, facing. II, 18, 5.

contrōversia, -ae [contrō, *fr.* **contrā+versus,** turned], F., dispute, quarrel, controversy. VI, 13, 12.

contumēlia, -ae [*cf.* **contumāx,** unruly], F., affront, indignity, injury, violence. I, 14, 8.

con-valēscō, -ere, valuī, gain health *or* strength, recover.

convallis, -is, F., defile. III, 20, 17.

con-vehō, -ēre, vēxī, vēctus, collect. VII, **74**, 8.

con-veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus [**veniō,** come], *a., n.,* come together, assemble, convene, meet; come to, arrive; agree, to be agreed upon, be convenient *or* suitable. I, **6**, 15.

conventus, -ūs [**veniō,** come], M., coming together, meeting, assembly. I, **18**, 5.

con-vertō, -ere, vertī, versus, [**vertō,** turn], *a., n.,* turn completely, turn *or* wheel around; turn, change: **itinere conversō,** altering his course; **sīgna convertere,** to change front. I, **23**, 12.

Convīctolitāvis, -is, M., *an Aeduan chief.*

con-vincō, -ere, vīcī, vīctus, overpower; convict. I, **40**, 41.

con-vocō, 1. [**vocō,** call], *a.,* call together, summon, assemble. I, **16**, 11.

co-orior, orīrī, ortus sum [**cum**+**orior,** rise], *n.,* arise, spring up, rise with force, break forth. III, **7**, 6.

cōpia, -ae [**cum**+**ops,** power], F., supply, plenty, abundance; *in pl.,* resources, forces, troops. I, **2**, 5.

cōpiōsus, -a, -um, wealthy. I, **23**, 4.

cōpula, -ae, F., grapnel. III, **13**, 20.

cor, cordis, N., heart. VI, **19**, 13.

cōram, *adv.* [**cum**+**ōs,** face], face to face, in person. I, **32**, 12; V, **11**, 4.

Coriosolitēs, -um, M., *a Gallic people in modern Brittany near modern* Corseult. *A people of N. W. Gaul.* II, **34**, 3.

corium, -ī, N., skin, hide, leather.

Cornelius, -ī, M., *a Roman nomen. E. g.,* L. Cornelius Sulla, *the famous Dictator.* I, **21**, 11.

cornū, -ūs, N., horn; wing (*of an army*). I, **52**, 3; II, **23**, 13.

corōna, -ae, F., wreath, garland, chaplet; tiara, coronet, crown; circle, crowd. III, **16**, 11.

corpus, -oris, N., body; person. I, **25**, 10.

cor-rumpō, -ere, rūpī, ruptus, destroy, ruin, waste,

cortex, -icis, M., F., bark. II, **33**, 7.

Cōrus, -ī, M., the northwest wind. V, **7**, 6.

cotīdiānus, -a, -um, *adj.,* every day, daily; usual, customary. I, **1**, 12.

cotīdiē [**quot,** how many, every+**diēs**], daily, every day. I, **16**, 1.

Cotta, -ae, M., *a Roman cognomen; see* **Auruncul**ē**ius.**

Cotus, -ī, M., *an Aeduan noble.*

Cn., *abbrev. for* **Gnaeus.**

crassitūdō, -inis, F., thickness. III, **13**, 8.

Crassus, -ī, M., I, **21**, 11.

crātis, -is, F., hurdle. IV, **17**, 22.

crēber, -bra, -brum [**creō, crēscō**], thick, close, repeated, numerous, frequent; *comp.* **crēbrior;** *superl.,* **crēberrimus.** II, **1**, 2.

crēbrō, *adv.,* repeatedly, often.

crēdō, dere, didī, ditus [*Sanscrit* **krat,** trust+**dō**], *a.,* give trust *or* confidence, trust, entrust, believe, suppose. II, **33**, 6.

cremō, 1, burn to ashes. I, **4**, 4.

creō, 1. *a.,* create, produce, elect, appoint. I, **16**, 14.

crēsco, -ere, crēvī, crētus [*incept. of* **creō,** create], *n., begin to create:* grow *or* increase (*in size, power, age, etc.*); become famous or prominent. I, **20**, 6.

Crētēs, -um, M., II, **7**, 2.

crīmen, -inis, N., accusation; crime, offence.

Critōgnātus, -ī, M., *a chief of the Arverni.* VII, **77**, 7.

cruciātus, -ūs [**cruciō,** crucify], M., crucifying, torture, torment. I, **31**, 7; II, **31**, 13.

crūdēlitās, -tātis, [**crūdēlis,** cruel], F., cruelty, harshness. I, **32**, 12. VII, **78**, 8.

crūdēliter [**crūdēlis,** cruel], *adv.,* cruelly. I, **31**, 44.

crūs, crūris, N., leg. VI, **27**, 3.
cubīle, -is, N., couch. VI, **27**, 6.
culmen, -inis, N., top, ridge. III, **2**, 16.
culpa, -ae, F., blame, fault, guilt. IV, **27**, 9.
cultus, -ūs [**colō**] M., cultivation; training, culture, dress; civilization. I, **1**, 7.
cum, *conj., with indic., simply defining the time when*, when, while, whenever; *with subj., showing the situation in which the event occurred*, when; *with subj., showing the situation as tending to cause the event*, since, because; *with subj., showing the situation as tending to prevention*, though, although. I, **1**, 13.
cum, *prep. with abl.*, with, along with, together with. I, **1**, 10.
cunctātiō, -ōnis [**cunctor**, delay], F., delaying, delay, hesitation, reluctance. III, **18**, 13.
cunctor, 1. *n.*, delay, hesitate, be reluctant. III, **23**, 19.
cūnctus, -a, -um [*contr. for* **coniūnctus**, *joined together*], all together, all. II, **29**, 3.
cuneātim, *adv.*, in wedge shape.
cuneus, -ī, M., wedge.
cunīculus, -ī, M., coney; burrow; tunnel, mine. III, **21**, 9.
cupidē, [**cupidus**, desirous], *adv.*, desirously, eagerly. I, **15**, 5.
cupiditās, -tātis, [**cupidus**], F., eagerness, desire, greed, avarice. I, **2**, 3.
cupidus, -a -um [**cupiō**, desire], desirous, eager, zealous, fond. I, **2**, 14.
cupiō, -ere, cupīvī (iī), cupītus, *a., n.*, long *or* be eager for, desire; wish well to, favor. I, **18**, **19**.
cūr (**quōr**=**quārē**), *rel. and interrog. adv.*, why, for what reason. I, **40**, 6; IV, **16**, 15.
cūra, -ae [*cf.* **caveō**, take care], F., care, anxiety, attention. I, **33**, 3.
cūrō, 1, [**cūra**, care], *a.*, care for, take care, provide, arrange, cause to be done. I, **13**, 3.
currō, -ere, cucurrī, cursus, run, hasten.
currus, -ūs, M., chariot; team. IV, **33**, 6.
cursus, -ūs [**currō**, run], M., running, speed; course, career; passage. I, **48**, 19; II, **23**, 2.
custōdia, -ae, F., custody, guard (*state of being guarded*).—*Plur.* guards, keepers. II, **29**, 13.
custōdiō, 4, protect, defend.
custōs, -ōdis, M.. F., guardian, watchman. I, **20**, 21.

D.

D, sign for 500. III, **22**, 3.
D., *abbrev. for praenomen* **Decimus**. III, **11**, 11.
d.=**diem**. I, **6**, 16.
Dācī, -ōrum, M., the inhabitants of the province Dacia. VI, **25**, 6.
damnō, 1. [**damnum**, damage], *a.*, declare guilty, sentence, condemn. I, **4**, 3.
dē, *prep. with abl.*, down from, from; of, out of; concerning, for, with respect to; on account of, about, in regard to. I, **1**, 11.
dēbeō, 2. [*contr. for* **dē-habeō**], *a., n.*, *have from* (*one's possessions*) *and hence*, owe, be bound *or* under obligations; be due, ought. I, **11**, 8.
dē-cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus [**cēdō**, go], *n.*, go from *or* away, depart, withdraw, leave, forsake. I, **31**, 35; VI, **13**, 18.
decem, (x), *indecl. num.*, ten. I, **4**, 5.
dē-cernō, -ere, -crēvī, -crētus, decree. II, **35**, 11.
dē-certō, 1. [**certō**, contend], *n.*, fight to the end, fight out, struggle fiercely *or* earnestly, vie, contend. I, **42**, 11; II, **10**, 15.
dēcessus, -ūs, M., departure. III, **13**, 3.
Decetia, -ae, F., *a town of the Aedui, now* **Decize**.
dēcidō, -ere, cidī, [**cadō**, fall], fall from *or* down, fall off. I, **48**, 16,

decimus, -a, -um, [**decem,** ten], tenth. I, **40,** 47; II, **21,** 3.
Decimus, -ī, M., *a praenomen.* III, **11,** 11.
dē-cipiō, -ere, cēpī, ceptus, entrap; deceive. I, **14,** 6.
dē-clārō, 1, declare. I, **50,** 13.
dē-clīvis, -e [**clīvus,** a slope], sloping downwards, declining; *as subst.*, slope. II, **18,** 3
dē-clīvitās, -tātis, F., slope. VII, **85,** 8.
dēcrētum, -ī [**dēcernō,** decide], N., decision, decree, order. VI, **13,** 16.
dēcrētus, *see* **dēcernō.**
decumānus, -a, -um, [**decimus,** tenth], of *or* pertaining to the tenth; decuman: **decumāna porta,** the rear gate. II, **24,** 5.
decuriō, -ōnis, M., decuria. I, **23,** 7.
dē-currō, -ere, currī (cucurrī), cursus [**currō,** run], *n.*, run from *or* away, hurry off; run down. II, **19,** 21.
dēdecus, -oris, N., dishonor. IV, **25,** 17.
dediticius, -a, -um, [**dēdō,** surrender], surrendered, subject; *as subst.*, one surrendered (*formally*), prisoner. I, **27,** 11.
dēditiō, -ōnis [**dēdō,** give up], F., giving up; surrender, capitulation. I, **27,** 2.
dēditus, *see* **dēdō.**
dē-dō, -ere, didī, ditus, [**dō,** give], *a.*, give up *or* over, yield, surrender; **sē dēdere,** submit, surrender. II, **15,** 7.
dē-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus [**dūcō,** lead], *a.*, lead down *or* away, withdraw, conduct, induce, influence; launch (**nāvēs**). I, **44,** 36; II, **2,** 3.
dēfatīgātiō, -ōnis, F., weariness. III, **19,** 8.
dē-fatīgō, 1. (**defet-**), [**fatīgō,** weary], *a.*, completely weary, tire out, exhaust. I, **40,** 25; V, **16,** 13.
dēfectiō, -ōnis, [**dēficiō,** fail], F., falling away, desertion, revolt. III, **10,** 4.
dē-fendō, -ere, fendī, fēnsus, *a.*, keep *or* ward off, repel; defend, protect; support, maintain. I, **11,** 4.
dēfēnsiō, -ōnis, [**dēfendō**], F., a defending, defence. II, **7,** 4.
dēfēnsor, -ōris [**dēfendō**] M., *one who wards off or averts;* defender, protector. II, **6,** 7.
dē-ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *a.*, bring from *or* down, convey; confer, bestow. II, **4,** 23.
dēfessus, -a, -um, [*p. p. of* **dēfetīscor,** grow weary], wearied, exhausted, faint. I, **25,** 11.
dēficiō, -ere, fēcī, fectus [**faciō**], *a.*, *n.*, fail, fall away, desert. II, **10,** 11.
dē-fīgō, -ere, fīxī, fīxus, [**fīgō,** fix], *a.*, fix *or* fasten down, drive in, plant. IV, **17,** 11.
dē-fīniō, 4, mark off. VII, **83,** 12,
dēfīxus, *see* **dēfīgō.**
dē-fluō, -ere, flūxī, fluxus, flow apart. IV, **10,** 8.
dē-fōrmis, -e [**fōrma,** form], misshapen, deformed, unsightly; debasing, disgraceful. IV, **2,** 6.
dē-fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitus, flee from. VI, **13,** 19.
dē-iciō, -ere, iēcī, iectus [**iaciō,** hurl], *a.*, hurl *or* cast down; dislodge; kill; foil, disappoint. I, **8,** 12.
dēiectus, -ūs, M., declivity. II, **8,** 10.
deinceps, *adv.* [**deinde,** thence+**capiō**], next in succession, one after the other, in turn, successively. III, **29,** 1.
de-inde (dein), *adv.* [**dē+inde,** thence], from thence; thereupon, then; next. I, **25,** 1.
dēlātus, *see* **dēferō.**
dē-lectō, 1, delight. IV, **2,** 4.
dēlēctus, -ūs, M., selection, choice.
dēleō, -ēre, lēvī, lētus [**linō,** rub over], *a*., rub out, efface, destroy, annihilate. II, **27,** 6.
dē-līberō, 1. [**lībra,** balance], *a.*,

weigh well, consider carefully, deliberate. I, **7**, 19.
dē-librō, 1, peel. VII, **73**, 8.
dēlīctum, -ī, N., fault, offence.
dē-ligō, 1. [ligō, bind], *a.*, bind *or* tie down, fasten, moor. I, **53**, 6; IV, **29**, 6.
dē-ligō, -ere, lēgī, lectus [**legō**, choose], pick *or* choose out, select, cull; levy, gather. I, **3**, 9.
dē-litēscō, -ere, lituī, lurk. IV, **32**, 16.
dēmentia, -ae, M., madness. IV, **13**, 6.
dē-metō, -ere, messuī, messus, reap. IV, **32**, 15.
dē-migrō, 1. [**migrō**, move, migrate], *n.*, move from *or* away, emigrate, remove. IV, **4**, 8.
dē-minuō, -ere, minuī, minūtus [**minuō**, lessen], *a.*, lessen, diminish, impair. I, **18**, 21.
dēmīssus, *see* **dēmittō**.
dē-mittō, -ere, mīsī, mīssus [**mittō**, send], *a.*, send away *or* down, cast *or* thrust down: **sē**, descend; **sē animō**, lose courage; *in p. p. as adj.*, low; dejected, downcast. I, **32**, 5; VII, **72**, 12.
dēmō, -ere, dēmpsī, dēmptus, take away, remove.
dē-mōnstrō, 1. [**mōnstrō**, show], *a.*, point out, declare precisely, show, prove, explain. I, **11**, 13.
dē-moror, 1, delay. III, **6**, 16.
dēmum, *adv.* [*acc. of* **dēmus**, (*superl. of* **dē**), downmost], at length, at last, finally. I, **17**, 1.
dē-negō, 1, deny; refuse. I, **42**, 7.
dēnī, -ae, -a, *distr. num. adj.*, [**decem**, ten], ten each, ten at a time, by tens. I, **43**, 7; V, **14**, 8.
dēnique, *adv.* [**deinde**, then+ -**que**], and then, thereupon, finally, at last. I, **22**, 12.
dēnsus, -a, -um, closely set *or* packed, thick, dense. II, **22**, 5.
dē-nūntiō, 1. [**nūntiō**, announce], *a.*, announce, (*officially, by a herald, etc.*), declare; give *or* send notice, warn, threaten. I, **36**, 15.
dē-pellō, -ere, pulī, pulsus [**pellō**, drive], *a.*, drive from *or* away, ward off. III, **25**, 3.
dē-perdō, -ere, perdidī, perditus [**perdō**, destroy], *a.*, destroy utterly, ruin; lose entirely, forfeit, lose. I, **43**, 21; III, **28**, 16.
dē-pereō, -īre, -iī, itūrus, *n.*, go to ruin, perish; be lost *or* undone. V, **23**, 4.
dē-pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus [**pōnō**, place], *a.*, place down *or* aside, put away *or* off; place, station, deposit; give up; entrust. I, **14**, 11.
dēpopulor, 1. *dep. a.*, lay waste, ravage; sweep away, destroy. I, **11**, 10.
dē-portō, 1, carry away. III, **10**, 10.
dē-poscō, -ere, poposcī, demand; call for.
dēpositus, *see* **dē-pōnō**.
dē-precātor [**dēprecor**, avert by entreaty], M., mediator, intercessor. I, **9**, 4.
dē-precor, 1. [**precor**, pray], pray against, pray for deliverance, beseech, entreat, plead for. II, **31**, 7.
dē-prehendō, -ere, -dī, -sus, take away, seize upon.
dē-pūgnō, 1, fight decisively; contend.
dēpulsus, *see* **dē-pellō**.
dērēctē, *adv.*, straight. IV, **17**, 12.
dē-rēctus, -a, -um, straight. IV, **17**, 21.
dē-rīvō, 1, divert. VII, **72**, 12.
dē-rogō, 1, take away. VI, **23**, 18.
dē-scendō, -ere, -dī, -ēnsus [**scandō**, climb], *a.*, climb *or* go down, descend; have recourse to, resort. VI, **16**, 14.
dē-secō, -āre, secuī, sectus, cut away *or* off.
dē-serō, -ere, seruī, sertus [**serō**, join], *a.*, disjoin, disunite, abandon, desert; *p. p. as adj.*, deserted, solitary. I, **45**, 4; II, **25**, 10.
dēsertor, -ōris, M., deserter. VI, **23**, 16.
dēsertus, *see* **dēserō**.

dē-sīderō, 1, crave. IV, **2**, 3.
dēsidia, -ae, F., inactivity. VI, **23**, 12.
dē-sīgnō, 1, indicate. I, **18**, 2.
dēsiliō, -īre, siluī, sultus, [**saliō**, leap], *n*., leap from *or* down, alight, dismount. IV, **2**, 8.
dē-sistō, -ere, stitī, stitus, [**sistō**, stand], *n*., stand *or* leave off; abandon, cease, give up. I, **8**, 16.
dēspērātiō, -ōnis, F., hopelessness, despair.
dē-spērō, 1. [**spēs**, hope], *a*., *n*., cease to hope, despair. I, **18**, 25.
dēspērātus, *see* **dēspērō**.
dēspiciō, -ere, spēxī, spectus [**speciō**, look], *a*., look down upon, scorn, despise. I, **13**, 16.
dēspoliō, 1, deprive; plunder. II, **31**, 9.
dē-stinō, 1. [*obsol.* **stanō**=**statuō**, place], *a*., place *or* fasten down, secure, make fast, determine, destine, appoint. III, **14**, 17.
dē-stituō, -ere, stituī, stitūtus [**statuō**, set up], *a*., set *or* place aside, forsake, desert. I, **16**, 19.
dē-stringō, -ere, strinxī, strictus [**stringō**, bind, strip], *a*., unbind, strip *or* draw off; unsheathe, draw (**gladium**). I, **25**, 5.
dē-sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, be wanting, be absent from, fail. I, **40**, 40; II, **21**, 12.
dē-super, *adv*., from above; above.
dēterior, -ius, *comp. adj*., worse. I, **36**, 10.
dē-terreō, 2, [**terreō**, frighten], *a*., frighten away *or* off, hinder, deter, prevent. I, **17**, 5.
dē-testor, 1, execrate; deprecate.
dē-tineō, -ēre, -uī, tentus, [**teneō**, hold], *a*., hold off *or* back; hinder, detain. III, **12**, 14.
dē-tractō, 1, decline, refuse.
dē-tractus, *see* **dē-trahō**.
dē-trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractus [**trahō**, draw *or* drag], *a*., draw off *or* away, withdraw, take off, remove; disparage, detract. I, **42**, 17; II, **25**, 14.
dētrīmentōsus, -a, -um, hurtful.
dētrīmentum, -ī [**dē-terō**, rub *or* wear out], N., *rubbing or wasting away;* harm, loss, injury; disaster, defeat. I, **44**, 15; V, **22**, 9.
dē-trūdō, -ere, trūsī, trūsus, thrust *or* strip off. II, **21**, 12.
dē-turbō, 1. [**turbō**, disturb], *a*., thrust *or* cast down; drive off, dislodge. VII, **86**, 10.
de-ūrō, -ere, ūssī, ūstus, burn up, destroy.
deus, -ī, M., god, deity. I, **12**, 16.
deūstus, *see* **de-ūrō**.
dē-vehō, -ere, vēxī, vēctus, carry away.
dē-veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus, *n*., come down, go *or* come to. II, **21**, 3.
dē-vēxus, -a, -um, sloping. VII, **88**, 4.
dē-vincō, -ere, vīcī, vīctus, conquer completely, subdue.
dē-vocō, 1, call off *or* away, recall.
dē-voveō, -ēre, vōvī, vōtus [**voveō**, vow], *a*., *n*., vow away; consecrate; devote; *in p. p. as subst*., a sworn follower. III, **22**, 3.
dexter, -tera (-tra), -terum (-trum), to *or* on the right, right. I, **52**, 3; II, **23**, 13.
dextra, -ae [**dexter**, right *sc.* **manus**], F., the right hand. I, **20**, 14.
Diablintēs (-trēs), -um, M., III, **9**, 27.
diciō, -ōnis, F., dominion, authority, rule, sway. I, **31**, 26; II, **34**, 5.
dicō, 1, proclaim; consecrate, devote, assign, give over. VI, **12**, 23.
dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus, *a*., say, tell, speak, name, mention, express. I, **1**, 15.
dictiō, -ōnis [**dīcō**, speak], F., speaking, pleading; **causae dictiō**, defence, answer to a charge. I, **4**, 4.
dictum, -ī, N., saying, remark; command. I, **39**, 27; V, **6**, 7.
dī-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus [**dis-** apart+**dūcō**], *a*., lead in different directions, lead *or* draw

apart, separate, divide. III, **23**, 16.
diēs, -ēī, M., F., day: **in diēs**, from day to day. I, **4**, 4.
dif-ferō, ferre, distulī, dīlātus, [**dis-**, apart], *a. and n.*, bear apart, disperse, spread; defer, distract; be different, differ. I, **1**, 4.
difficilis, -e, [**dis-+facilis**, easy], not easy, hard, troublesome, difficult. I, **6**, 3.
difficultās, -tātis [**difficilis**, difficult], F., difficulty, trouble, embarassment. II, **20**, 7.
difficulter, *adv.*, with difficulty.
dif-fīdō, -ere, fīsus sum, distrust; despair.
dif-fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsus, pour *or* spread out. VI, **26**, 4.
digitus, -ī, M., finger; *as measure of length*, an inch, the 16th part of a Roman foot; **digitus pollex**, the thumb. III, **13**, 8.
dīgnitās, -tātis [**dīgnus**, worthy] worthiness, merit, rank. I, **43**, 21; III, **16**, 4.
dīgnus, -a, -um, worthy, deserving, fitting.
dīiūdicō, 1, distinguish; decide.
dīlēctus, -a, -um, beloved, dear.
dīligenter [**dīligēns**], *adv.*, carefully; with exactness, pains *or* care. II, **5**, 4.
dīligentia, -ae [**dīligēns**, heedful], F., heedfulness, painstaking, care. I, **40**, 12; III, **20**, 8.
dīligō, -ere, lēxī, lēctus [**dis+legō**, choose], *a.*, single *or* choose out, esteem highly, love, be attached to. VI, **19**, 15.
dī-mētior, -īrī, mēnsus sum, measure out *or* off. II, **19**, 14.
dīmicātiō, -ōnis, F., fight. VII, **86**, 5.
dī-micō, 1. [**micō**, brandish], *n.*, brandish (*one's weapons*) in different directions; *hence* fight, struggle, contend. II, **21**, 10.
dīmidium, -ī, N., *see* **dīmidius**.
dīmidius, -a, -um [**medius**], divided in the middle, halved half; *in neut. as subst.*, a half. V, **13**, 7.
dī-mittō, -ere, mīsī, mīssus [**dīs-**, apart], *a.*, send apart *or* away, break up, dismiss; release, abandon, renounce. I, **18**, 4.
dī-rigō, -ere, rēxī, rēctus, distribute; lay out.
dirimō, -ere, -ēmī, -ēmptus, interrupt. I, **46**, 12.
dīripiō, -ere, ripuī, reptus [**rapiō**, seize], *a.*, rend *or* tear asunder; plunder, pillage. II, **17**, 11.
Dīs, Dītis, M., Dis; Pluto. VI, **18**, 1.
dis-cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus[**cēdō**, go], *n.*, go apart *or* away, depart, leave, retire, forsake. I, **14**, 23
disceptātor, -ōris, M., judge, umpire.
dis-ceptō, 1. decide, arbitrate.
dis-cernō, -ere, crēvī, crētus, discern. VII, **75**, 5.
discessus, -ūs, [**discēdō**, go asunder], M., a going asunder, departure, withdrawal; defection. II, **14**, 1.
disciplīna, -ae, [*contr. of* **discipulīna**, *fr.* **discipulus**, learner], F., learning, instruction, drill, discipline. I, **40**, 17; IV, **1**, 19.
disclūdō, -ere, clūsi, clūsus [**claudō**, shut, close], *a.*, shut off, hold *or* keep apart, separate. IV, **17**, 18.
discō, -ere, didicī, *a.*, *n.*, learn, be taught. I, **13**, 16.
discrīmen, -inis, N., interval; distinction; decision; crisis.
dis-cutiō, -ere, cussī, cussus, strike asunder, shatter, destroy.
disiciō, -ere, iēcī, iectus, [**iaciō**, hurl], *a.*, hurl apart *or* aside; scatter, rout, disperse. I, **25**, 5.
dis-pār, paris[**pār**, equal], unequal, unlike, dissimilar, ill-matched, V, **16**, 8.
dis-parō, 1, separate.
dispergō, -ere, spersī, spersus, [**spargō**, scatter], spread, scatter; *in p. p. as adj.*, dispersed, scattered. 1, **40**, 28; III, **28**, 12

dis-pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus [**pōnō,** place], *a.*, place apart *or* about; distribute, arrange, station. I, **8,** 6.

disputātiō, -ōnis, F., argument, discussion.

dis-putō, 1, discuss, debate about. VI, **14,** 19.

dissēnsiō, -ōnis, [**dis-sentiō,** think differently], F., disagreement, dissension. VI, **22,** 12.

dis-sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, differ, disagree.

dis-serō, -ere, sow *or* set at intervals. VII, **73,** 25.

dis-simulō, 1. disguise. IV, **6,** 10.

dis-sipō, 1. [*obsol.* **supō=iaciō**], *a.*, spread on all sides, scatter, disperse. II, **24,** 16.

dis-suādeō, -ēre, suāsī, suāsus, advise against.

distineō, -ēre, tinuī, tentus [**teneō,** hold], *a.*, hold or keep apart; sunder, divide, isolate. II, **5,** 6.

dīstō, -stāre [**dis-** apart], *n.*, stand apart; be apart, removed, *or* separated. IV, **17,** 17.

dis-trahō, -ere, trāxī, trāctus, pull asunder, divide.

dis-tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [**tribuō,** assign], *a.*, assign apart, divide, distribute. III, **10,** 11.

dītissimus, *superl. of* **dīves.**

diū, *adv.* [**diēs**], by day, *cf.* **noctū;** for a long time, long; **quam diū,** as long as; *comp.* **diūtius,** longer, too long, any longer; *superl.* **diūtissimē.** I, **14,** 12.

diurnus, -a, -um [**diēs,** day), of the day, by day, daily. I, **38,** 15.

diūtinus, -a, -um, of long duration, long.

diūturnitās, -tātis [**diūturnus,** prolonged], F., long duration. I, **40,** 25; III, **4,** 8.

diūturnus, -a, -um, long. I, **14,** 16.

dīversus, -a, -um [*p. p. of* **dīvertō,** turn in different directions], facing different ways, opposite, contrary; diverse, different. II, **22,** 13.

dīves, dīvitis, wealthy, rich. I, **2,** 2.

Dīvicō, -ōnis, M., *an Helvetian chieftain.* I, **13,** 7.

dī-vidō, -ere, vīsī, vīsus [**dis-** apart], *a.*, divide, sunder, separate; *in p. p. as adj.*, divided. I, **1,** 1.

dīvīnus, -a, -um [**dīvus,** divine] of the gods, celestial, divine. II, **31,** 4.

Diviciacus, -ī, (1), *a chief of the Aedui, brother of Dumnorix and friendly to the Romans.* (2), *a chief of the Suessiones.* I, **3,** 15.

dō, dare, dedī, datus, *a.*, give, bestow, confer; furnish, present; yield, give up: **in fugam dare,** put to flight. I, **3,** 17.

doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctus, *a.*, show, teach, instruct; inform. I, **43,** 12; II, **5,** 5.

documentum, -ī, N., example; proof, evidence.

doleō, 2, *n.*, feel *or* suffer (*bodily*) pain, suffer; feel (*mental*) pain, be distressed *or* annoyed, grieve. I, **14,** 14.

dolor, -ōris [**doleō,** grieve], M., grief, distress, pain (*physical or mental*); vexation, annoyance. I, **2,** 14.

dolus, -ī, M., craft, tricks, treachery. I, **13,** 17.

domesticus, -a, -um [**domus**], of *or* belonging to the home, home, domestic. II, **10,** 16.

domicilium, -ī, N., a fixed abode *or* residence, dwelling, home, domicile. I, **30,** 10; II, **29,** 17.

dominor, 1, be master; rule. II, **31,** 14.

dominus, -ī, M., master. VI, **13,** 7.

Domitius, -ī, M., *a Roman nomen. E. g.* L. Domitius Ahenobarbus, *cos.* 54, B. C. V, **1,** 1.

domus, -ūs (**-ī** *in loc.*) *dat.* **domuī** (**domō**), *abl.* **domō,** F., house; home; native country *or* home, I, **5,** 7.

dōnō, 1. [**dōnum,** gift], *a.*, give. bestow, endow with. I, **47,** 12.

Donnotaurus, -ī, *see* **Valerius.**

dōnum, -ī, N., present, gift.
dorsum, -ī, N., back; ridge.
dōs, dōtis [dō, give], F., a marriage gift *or* portion, dowry. VI, **19,** 1.
druidēs, -um, M., *the* Druids, *an ancient priestly caste in Gaul and Britain.* VI, **13,** 8.
Dūbis, -is, M., the Doubs. I, **38,** 9.
dubitātiō, -ōnis [**dubitō,** doubt], F., doubt, uncertainty. I, **14,** 2.
dubitō, 1., *a., n., have two opinions,* waver in judgment, be uncertain, doubt. I, **17,** 8.
dubius, -a, -um [**duo**], uncertain, doubtful. I, **3,** 19.
ducentī, -ae, -a(cc), *card. num.,* two hundred. I, **2,** 17.
dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, *a.,* lead, conduct, guide, draw; bring, fetch; trace, construct, extend; deem, consider, judge; protract, defer. I, **3,** 7.
ductus, -ūs, M., conducting, leading; command.
dum, *conj.,* while, as long as; till, until; provided that, if only. I, **7,** 18.
Dumnorīx, -īgis, M., *an Aeduan chieftain, brother of Diviciacus.* I, **13,** 14.
duo, duae, duo, *num. adj.,* two. I, **6,** 1.
duo-decim (xii), *indecl. num.,* twelve. I, **5,** 4.
duo-decimus, -a, -um, *ord. num.,* twelfth. II, **23,** 13.
duodēnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.* [**duodecim**], twelve each, twelve at a time. V, **14,** 8.
duo-dē-vīgintī, *card. num.,* eighteen. II, **5,** 21.
duplex, plicis [**plicō,** bend, fold], two-fold, double. II, **29,** 8.
duplicō, 1. [**duō+plicō,** fold], *a.,* double; increase. IV, **36,** 3.
dūritia, -ae, F., hardship. VI, **21,** 7.
dūrō, 1, harden. VI, **28,** 6.
Dūrocortorum, -ī, N., *the capital of the Remi, now* Rheims.
dūrus, -a, -um, hard, rough, difficult; severe, inclement, unfavorable. I, **48,** 16.
Dūrus, -ī, M., a cognomen, see **Laberius.**
dux, ducis [**dūcō,** lead], M., F. leader, guide, commander. I, **21,** 6.

E.

ē (*only before consonants*) **ex** (*before vowels and consonants*), *prep. with abl.* out, out of, from: **ex itinere,** on the march; **ūnā ex parte,** on one side. I, **2,** 8.
eā, *adv.,* on that side *or* way, there.
Eburōnēs, -um, M., *clients of the Treveri, living between the Meuse and Rhine.* II, **4,** 28.
Eburovīcēs, -um, M., II, **34,** 3.
ē-discō, -ere, didicī, learn thoroughly, get by heart. VI, **14,** 6.
ēditus, -a, -um, elevated, lofty. II, **8,** 7.
ē-dō, dere, didī, ditus, give out; inflict. I, **31,** 45.
ē-doceō, 2. [**doceō,** teach], *a.,* teach thoroughly, inform in detail, explain. III, **18,** 5.
ē-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus [**dūcō,** lead], *a.,* lead out *or* forth, draw forth. I, **10,** 10.
ef-farciō, -īre, fertus, stuff, fill out.
ef-fēminō, 1. [**femina,** woman], *a.,* make effeminate, enervate, enfeeble. I, **1,** 9.
efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātus, *a.,* bring *or* carry out, carry *or* take away; spread *or* publish abroad, make known; elate, puff up. I, **5,** 9.
efficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectus [**ex+faciō**], *a.,* make *or* do completely, complete, perform, accomplish, effect. I, **38,** 14; II, **5,** 18.
ef-fodiō, -ere, fōdī, fossus, dig out; mine.
ef-fugiō, -ere, fūgī [**fugiō,** flee], *a., n.,* flee from *or* away, avoid, shun, escape. IV, **35,** 3.
egēns, -entis, *partic. adj.* [**egeō**], in want, needy, destitute.

egeō, egēre, eguī, *a.* need, want, lack; be without *or* destitute. VI, **11,** 11.
egestās, -tātis, F., poverty. VI, **24,** 10.
ego, meī, etc. *first pers. pron.*, I; *pl.* **nōs,** we, us, etc. I, **40,** 17; II, **9,** 13.
ego-met, *emphatic for* **ego,** I myself, I for my part.
ēgredior, -gredī, -gressus [**gradior,** step], *a., n.*, step *or* go out, come forth, depart; march out, make a sortie; land (*from a ship*), disembark. I, **27,** 13.
ēgregiē [**ēgregius,** excellent], excellently, admirably, remarkably. II, **29,** 4.
ēgregius, -a, -um [**ē+grex,** herd], *out of the common herd;* superior, eminent, remarkable. I, **19,** 10.
ēgressus, -ūs, M., going forth. V, **8,** 11.
ē-iciō, -ere, iēcī, iectus, cast *or* drive out, expel. IV, **7,** 9.
ēiusmodī, of such a sort *or* kind, such.
ē-lābor, -ī, lapsus sum, slip away, glide off, escape.
ē-lātus, *see* **efferō.**
Elaver, -eris, M., *a river of Aquitania,* the Allier.
ē-lēctus, *see* **ēligō.**
elephantus, -ī, M., F., elephant; ivory. VI, **28,** 2.
Eleutetī, -ōrum, M., *a Gallic tribe tributary to the Arverni.* VII, **75,** 9.
ē-liciō, -ere, -uī, -itus, draw *or* entice out, lure forth.
ē-ligō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus [**legō,** choose], *a.*, choose *or* pick out, select; *in pf. partic.*, picked (men, etc.) II, **4,** 16.
Elusātēs, -um, M., III, **27,** 4.
ē-migrō, 1, remove. I, **31,** 50.
ē-mineō, -ēre, -uī, project. VII, **72,** 14.
ēminus, *adv.* aloof, at a distance.
ē-mittō, -ere, mīsī, mīssus [**mittō,** send], *a.*, let go, send out *or* forth, release; hurl, discharge. I, **25,** 10.
emō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptus, buy, procure, purchase. I, **16,** 15.
ē-nāscor, -ī, nātus sum, be born from; spring up. II, **17,** 18.
enim, *conj. corroborative and explanatory* [**e-(i)** fr. **is+nam,** for], in fact, really; for, but, now; **sed enim,** but in fact, however. I, **14,** 13.
ē-nītor, -ī, nīsus (nīxus) sum, struggle out; strive, struggle.
ē-numerō, 1, reckon up; recount.
ē-nūntiō, 1. *a.*, report, declare, disclose. I, **4,** 1.
eō, īre, īvī(iī), itūrus, *n.*, go, proceed, march, pass. I, **6,** 13.
eō, *adv.*, in *or* to that place, there; thither; therefore. I, **25,** 12.
eōdem, *adv.* [**īdem** *sc.* **locō**], to the same place, to the same point, result, end, etc. I, **4,** 7.
ephippiātus, -a, -um, caparisoned. IV, **2,** 12.
ephippium, -ī, N., horse-cloth, riding-pad, caparison; housing, trappings. IV, **2,** 11.
epistola, -ae, F., letter, epistle.
Eporedorīx, -īgis, M., VII, **76,** 12.
epulae, -ārum, F., viands; banquet. VI, **28,** 13.
eques, -itis, M., a horseman; a rider. —*Plur.* cavalry. Then (*as orig. serving on horseback*), a knight (*one of the moneyed class at Rome, next in rank to the senate*). Also, a knight (*of Gaul, of a corresponding class*). I, **15,** 8.
equester, -tris, -tre [**eques,** horseman], of *or* belonging to a horseman, equestrian; of cavalry, cavalry. I, **18,** 26.
equitātus, -ūs, [**equitō,** ride], M., *a riding;* cavalry, horsemen. I, **15,** 2.
equus, -ī, M., horse. I, **22,** 5.
Eratosthenēs, -is, M., VI, **24,** 5.
ē-rēctus, see **ērigō.**
ergā, *prep. with acc.*, towards, in respect of.
ergō, *adv.*, therefore. VII, **77,** 29.
ērigō, -ere, rēxī, rēctus [**regō.** direct], *a.*, lift *or* raise (up); *p. p*,

as adj., standing upright, high. III, **13**, 4.

ē-ripiō, -ere, -uī, -reptus [**rapiō**, seize], *a.*, wrest *or* take away, extort, deprive; rescue, relieve, save. I, **4**, 8.

errō, 1, wander; err.

ē-rumpō, -ere, rūpī, ruptus, break forth. III, **5**, 13.

ēruptiō, -ōnis, [**rumpō**, break out], F., a breaking out, bursting forth, sortie, sally. II, **33**, 11.

essedārius, -ī [**esseda**, a war chariot], M., a soldier fighting from a war chariot, charioteer. IV, **24**, 2.

essedum, -ī, N. (*a Celtic word*), *a two-wheeled war chariot of the Britons.* IV, **32**, 19.

Esubiī, -ōrum, M., *a Gallic people near the Veneti, near modern* Essey. II, **34**, 3.

et, and, and further, also, too, even; *et . . . et*, both . . . and. I, **1**, 5.

etiam [**et+iam**], *conj.*, and also, even also. I, **1**, 17.

et-sī, *conj.*, even if, although. I, **46**, 6; III, **24**, 4.

ē-vādō, -ere, vāsī, vāsus, escape. III, **19**, 13.

ē-vellō, -ere, vellī, vulsus, pluck out. I, **25**, 8.

ē-veniō, īre, vēnī, ventus, result. IV, **25**, 12.

ēventus, -ūs [**veniō**, come], M., out-come, issue, result, consequence. II, **22**, 9.

ēvocātus, *see* **ēvocō**.

ēvocō, 1, [**vocō**, call], *a.*, call forth *or* out, summon. III, **20**, 12.

ēvolō, 1, fly *or* rush forth. III, **28**, 13.

ex, *see* **ē**.

ex-āctus, *see* **exigō**.

ex-agitō, 1. [*freq. of* **agō**, set in motion], *a.*, drive out *or* away, stir up, rouse, disturb, harass, persecute. II, **29**, 15.

ex-āminō, 1, weigh. V, **12**, 10.

exanimō, 1. [**animus**, breath], *a.*, deprive of breath *or* life, render breathless, exhaust; *in p. p. as adj.*, breathless, exhausted. II, **23**, 3.

ex-ārdēscō, -ere, ārsī, ārsus, kindle; be inflamed *or* enraged. V, **4**, 15.

ex-audiō, 4, hear (*from a distance*), discern. II, **11**, 17.

ex-cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus [**cēdō**, go], *n.*, go out *or* away, withdraw, retire. II, **25**, 11.

ex-cellō, -ere, -uī, celsus, surpass. VI, **13**, 23.

excelsus, -a, -um, eminent; high. VI, **26**, 2.

ex-ceptō, 1, take out *or* up; catch.

ex-cīdō, -ere, cīdī, cīsus, hew away.

ex-cipiō, -ere, cēpī, ceptus [**capiō**, take], *a.*, take out, off, *or* up, catch, receive; take up (*in turn*), succeed; intercept. I, **52**, 9; III, **5**, 12.

excitō, 1. [**citō**, rouse], *a.*, call *or* rouse forth, excite, animate, arouse; erect, construct (*towers*); kindle (*fires*). III, **10**, 8.

exclūdō, -ere, clūsī, clūsus [**claudō**, shut], *a.*, shut out, cut off; hinder, prevent. V, **23**, 12.

ex-cōgitō, 1, think out, contrive, devise, invent.

ex-cruciō, 1. [**cruciō**, torture], *a.*, torture greatly, torment, rack. VI, **19**, 11.

excubitor, -ōris, M., watchman. VII, **69**, 14.

ex-cubō, -āre, -uī, -itus, lie *or* camp out; keep guard.

ex-culcō, 1, trample. VII, **73**, 20.

excursiō, -ōnis [**excurrō**, run forth], F., a running out *or* forth, sally, sortie. II, **30**, 2.

excūsātiō, -ōnis, F., excusing; declining.

ex-cūsō, 1, justify; apologize. IV, **22**, 3.

exemplum, -ī, [**eximō**, take out], N., selection; pattern, model; precedent, example; warning, punishment. I, **8**, 10.

ex-eō, īre, īvī (iī), itus [**eō**, go], *n.*, go from *or* out, depart from, leave. I, **2**, 5.

exerceō, 2. [**arceō**, ward *or* drive off], *a.*, drive forward, engage busily; practice, train, exercise. I, **48**, 12; VI, **23**, 12.

exercitātiō, -ōnis [**exercitō,** *freq. of* **exerceō,** exercise], F., exercising, training; practice, experience. I, **39**, 5; III, **19**, 9.

exercitātus, -a, -um *p. p. of* **exercitō,** train *or* practice well], well trained, skilled, versed. I, **36**, 18; II, **20**, 9.

exercitus, -ūs [**exerceō,** train], M., *a trained or disciplined body of men*, an army. I, **3**, 21.

ex-hauriō, -īre, hausī, haustus, draw out, empty, exhaust.

ex-igō, -ere, ēgī, āctus, finish, pass; determine. III, **28**, 1.

exiguē, *adv.*, meagerly, scarcely.

exiguitās, -tātis [**exiguus,** scant], F., scantiness, meagerness, want. II, **21**, **9**.

exiguus, -a, -um [**exigō,** *drive or weigh out*], *weighed out exactly;* scanty, short, small, meagre, limited. IV, **20**, 1.

eximius, -a, -um, eminent, II, **8**, 2.

exīstimātiō, -ōnis [**exīstimō,** estimate], F., judging, opinion. I, **20**, 9.

ex-īstimō 1. [**aestimō,** compute], *a.*, estimate, reckon, think, consider. I, **6**, 13.

exitus, -ūs [**eō,** go], M., going out, exit; issue, result, end. III, **8**, 14.

ex-pediō, 4, extricate, free.

expedītiō, -ōnis, F., campaign, enterprise, expedition. V, **10**, 21.

expedītus, -a, -um, [*p. p. of* **expediō,** disengage], unimpeded, free unobstructed, light armed: *as subst.*, a light armed soldier. I, **6**, 6.

ex-pellō, -ere, pulī, pulsus [**pellō,** drive], *a.*, drive out *or* forth, expel. II, **4**, 5.

experior, -perīrī, -pertus sum, prove, try, test, experience. I, **31**, 52; II, **16**, 7.

ex-piō, 1, atone for, expiate; avenge.

ex-pleō, plēre, plēvī, plētus [**pleō,** fill], *a.*, fill out *or* up; finish, complete. VII, **79**, 12.

explōrātor, -ōris, M., explorer, scout, spy. I, **12**, 5.

explōrātus, *see* **ex-plōrō.**

ex-plōrō, 1. [**plōrō,** weep, flow], *a.*, cause to flow out, search *or* find out, investigate; spy out, reconnoitre. II, **4**, 10.

ex-pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus [**pōnō,** place], put *or* set out; set on shore, disembark; set forth, explain. IV, **23**, 6.

ex-portō, 1, carry away. IV, **18**, 9.

ex-poscō, -ere, poposcī, entreat, demand.

exprimō, -ere, -pressī, -pressus [**premō,** press], *a.*, press out, extort, elicit; raise. I, **32**, 8.

expūgnātiō, -ōnis, F., taking by assault, storming.

ex-pūgnō, 1. [**pūgnō,** fight], *a.*, take *or* carry by storm, capture by assault; overpower, sack. I, **11**, 8.

exquīrō, -ere, quīsīvī, quīsītus [**quaerō,** search], *a.*, seek *or* search out, inquire, investigate. I, **41**, 11; III, **3**, 6.

ex-sequor, -ī, secūtus sum, follow out, exercise. I, **4**, 9.

ex-serō, -ere, -uī, -tus, thrust *or* put out; uncover.

ex-sistō, -ere, stitī [**sistō,** cause to stand], *n.*, stand *or* come forth, appear, arise, ensue. III, **15**, 8.

ex-spectō, 1. [**spectō,** look at], *a.*, look out, wait; look out for, await, expect; anticipate, apprehend. I, **11**, 14.

ex-spoliō, 1, rob. VII, **77**, 24.

ex-stinguō, -ere, -nxī, -nctus, put out, quench; destroy.

ex-stō, -āre, stitī, stand out; be prominent; exist. V, **18**, 10.

ex-struō, -ere, strūxī, strūctus [**struō,** build], *a.*, build *or* pile up, rear, construct, build. II, **30**, 5.

exterior, -ius, *comp. adj.*, outer, exterior. VII, **74**, 4.
exter (exterus), extera, exterum, outer; foreign: *sup.* **extrēmus.**
ex-terreō, 2. [**terreō,** frighten], *a.*, frighten outright, strike with terror, scare. VII, **77**, 33.
ex-timēscō, -ere, timuī, dread. III, **13**, 24.
ex-torqueō, -ēre, torsī, tortus, wrest *or* force from, extort.
extrā [contr. fr. **exterā,** sc. **parte**], *adv. and prep. with acc.*, out of, outside of, beyond, without. I, **10**, 18.
ex-trahō, -ere, trāxī, trāctus, draw out; prolong; waste away. V, **22**, 14.
extrēmus, -a, -um, [*superl. of* **exter,** outer], outermost, utmost, farthest, extreme. I, **1**, 19.
ex-trūdō, -ere, trūsī, trūsus, thrust *or* shut out. III, **12**, 7.
exul, -ulis, M., and F., wanderer, exile.
exuō, uere, uī, ūtus, draw out *or* off, put *or* strip off, divest, despoil. III, **6**, 10.
ex-ūrō, -ere, -ūssī, -ūstus, burn up. I, **5**, 11.
exūtus, *see* **exuō.**

F.

faber, -brī, M., workman; mechanic. V, **11**, 6.
Fabius, -ī, M., *a nomen. E. g.*, (1) C. Fabius, *one of Caesar's lieutenants.* VII, **87**, 2. (2) L. Fabius, *a centurion of the VIII legion.* (3) Q. Fabius Maximus, *victor over the Gauls* 121 B. C. I, **45**, 6.
facile [**facilis,** easy], *adv.*, easily, readily. *Comparative,* **facilius,** *superl.*, **facillimē.** I, **2**, 6.
facinus, -oris [**fāciō,** do], N., deed, misdeed, outrage, crime; I, **40**, 40; III, **9**, 8.
faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus, *a.*, *and n.*, make, do, accomplish, effect, form; *pass.* **fīō, fierī, factus.** I, **2**, 4.
factiō, -ōnis [**faciō,** make], F., making, doing; combination, party, faction. I, **31**, 10; VI, **11**, 6.
factum, -ī, [*p. p. of* **faciō,** *half noun, half participle, to be trans. according to the context*], N., act, action, exploit, thing done, deed. III, **14**, 25.
factus see **fīō.**
facultās, -tātis [*old adj.*, **facul**= **facilis,** easy], F., ability, power, privilege, opportunity; resources, means. I, **7**, 16.
fāgus, -ī, F., beech tree *or* timber. V, **12**, 13.
fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsus, deceive, cheat, disappoint. II, **10**, 9.
falsus, -a, -um, deceived; false. VI, **20**, 6.
falx, falcis, F., sickle, pruning-hook, falchion. III, **13**, 15.
fāma, -ae, [*inf.* **fārī,** to speak], F., common talk, reputation, fame; rumor, report. VII, **77**, 45.
famēs, -is, F., hunger; want. I, **28**, 8.
familia, -ae [**famulus,** house-servant], F., the slaves of a household; vassals, dependents, retinue; household, establishment. I, **4**, 5.
familiāris, -ē [**familia,** household], pertaining to the household, personal, private; *as subst.*, intimate friend; **rēs,** personal property, estate. I, **18**, 11.
familiāritās, -tātis, F., intimacy. V, **3**, 14.
fās, N., *indecl.*, right. I, **50**, 15; V, **12**, 14.
fastīgātē, *adv.*, sloping. IV, 17, 12.
fastīgātus, -a, -um, sloping. II, **8**, 10.
fastīgium, -ī [**fastīgō,** make pointed], N., *the top of a gable;* summit, elevation, height; declivity, descent, slope. VII, **69**, 7.
fātum, -ī, N., fate lot. I, **39**, 17.
faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautus, favor. I, **18**, 18.
fax, facis, F., firebrand, torch.

fēlīcitās, -tātis, [fēlīx, happy], F., happiness, good success *or* fortune. I, **40**, 41.
fēlīciter, *adv.*, happily. IV, **25**, 12.
fēmina, -ae, F., female, woman. VI, **21**, 10.
femur, -inis, N., the thigh. VII, **73**, 17.
fera, -ae, F., wild animal. VI, **25**, 11.
ferāx, -ācis, fertile. II, **4**, 17.
ferē, *adv.*, almost, nearly, about, for the most part. I, **1**, 12.
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *a.*, *n.*, carry, bring; endure, suffer, withstand; receive, report: **ferunt,** they say. I, **13**, 14.
ferrāmentum, -ī, N., an iron tool *or* implement.
ferrāria, -ae, F., an iron mine.
ferreus, -a, -um, of iron, iron. III, **13**, 8.
ferrum, -ī, N., iron, steel; *anything made of iron*, axe, sword, spear-point, chain, etc. I, **25**, 8.
fertilis, -e [ferō, bear], fruitful, fertile, productive. VI, **24**, 4.
fertilitās, -tātis, F., productiveness. II, **4**, 4.
ferus, -a, -um, wild; *as subst.*, wild beast. I, **31**, 15; II, **4**, 24.
fervefaciō, -ere, fēcī, factus, heat, melt.
fervēns, -entis, [**ferveō,** be red hot], heated, glowing, hot.
fībula, -ae, F., fastening. IV, **17**, 18.
fictus, *see* **fingō.**
fidēlis, -e [fidēs, faith], faithful, trustworthy, reliable. IV, **21**, 16.
fidēs, -eī [fidō, confide], F., good faith, confidence; pledge, promise; assurance. I, **3**, 22.
fīdūcia, -ae [fīdō, confide], F., confidence, trust, reliance. VII, **76**, 15.
figūra, -ae [fingō, form], F., form, shape, figure. IV, **25**, 6.
fīlia, -ae, F., daughter. I, **3**, 17.
fīlius, -ī, M., son. I, **3**, 11.
fingō, -ere, finxī, fictus, [*cf.* figūra, form], *a.*, form, shape, devise, invent. I, **39**, 15; IV, **5**, 12.
fīniō, 4. [fīnis limit], *a.*, limit, bound; determine, appoint; end, finish. IV, **16**, 14.
fīnis, -is [*cf.* **findō,** divide], M., boundary, limit, border; *in pl.*, boundaries, territory, country. I, **1**, 13.
fīnitimus, -a, -um [fīnis, limit, border], bordering on, adjoining, neighboring; *in pl. as subst.*, neighbors. I, **2**, 13.
fīō, fierī, factus sum (*pass. of* **faciō**), be made *or* done; come to pass, result, happen. I, **2**, 12.
fīrmiter, *adv.*, strongly. IV, **26**, 2.
fīrmitūdō, -inis [fīrmus, strong], F., strength, firmness, solidity. III, **13**, 18.
fīrmō, 1, strengthen, fortify; establish.
fīrmus, -a, -um, strong, stable, vigorous, firm. I, **3**, 23.
fistūca, -ae, F., pile-driver. IV, **17**, 11.
Flaccus, -ī, M. I, **47**, 12.
flāgitō, 1, demand. I, **16**, 2.
flamma, -ae, F., fire, blaze. VI, **16**, 11.
flectō, -ere, flēxī, flexus, *a.*, *n.*, bend, curve, turn, turn around, direct in turning. IV, **33**, 11.
fleō, -ēre, flēvī, flētus, *a.*, *n.*, weep, shed tears, lament. I, **20**, 13.
flētus, -ūs, M., weeping; tears. I, **33**, 2.
flō, 1, blow. V, **7**, 8.
flōrēns, -entis [flōreō, flower], flowering, blooming; flourishing, prosperous. I, **30**, 7; IV, **3**, 6.
flōs, flōris, M., blossom, flower.
fluctus, -ūs [fluō, flow], M., flowing, billow, flood, wave. III, **13**, 5.
flūmen, -inis fluō, flow], N., a flowing; river, stream. I, **1**, 5.
fluō, -ere, flūxī, fluxus, flow, run. I, **6**, 8.
fodiō, -ere, fōdī, fossus, dig. VII, **73**, 15.

foedus, -eris, N., compact, treaty, alliance.
forem=essem.
fore=futūrus esse.
forīs, *adv.*, abroad. VII, **76,** 19.
fōrma, -ae, F., form, shape, appearance. III, **14,** 16.
fors, fortis [**ferō**], F., chance: **forte,** *abl. as adv.*, by chance, perchance. II, **21,** 2.
fortis, -e, strong, valiant, brave. I, **1,** 6.
fortiter [**fortis,** brave], *adv.*, bravely, stoutly, courageously. II, **11,** 16.
fortitūdō, -inis, F., courage. I, **2,** 16.
fortuītō, *adv.*, by chance.
fortūna, -ae [**fors,** chance], F., luck, chance; good fortune, success; property, estate. I, **11,** 15.
fortūnātus, -a, -um, prospered, fortunate.
forum, -ī, N., a public place; court market.
fossa, -ae [*p. p. fem. of* **fodiō,** dig], F., trench, ditch. I, **8,** 6.
fovea, -ae, F., pitfall. VI, **28,** 5.
frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctus, *a.*, break, crush, subdue, discourage. I, **31,** 21; IV, **29,** 8.
frāter, -tris, M., brother. I, **3,** 15.
frāternus, -a, -um [**frāter,** brother], brotherly, fraternal, of a brother. I, **20,** 9.
fraus, -dis, F., cheating, deception.
fremitus, -ūs [**fremō,** murmur], M., murmuring, a confused noise, din. II, **24,** 10.
frequēns, -entis, constant, regular; repeated, common, frequent; numerous, crowded, in great numbers. IV, **11,** 14.
frētus, -a, -um, relying upon. III, **21,** 2.
frīgidus, -a, -um, cold. IV, **1,** 21.
frīgus, -oris [**frīgeō,** be cold *or* chilly], N., cold weather, cold; *pl.*, **frīgora, -um,** cold seasons. I, **16,** 3.
frōns, -tis, F., brow; front. II, **8,** 10.
frūctuōsus, -a, -um, productive. I, **30,** 10.
frūctus, -ūs, M., enjoyment; fruit, crops; profit. IV, **19,** 4.
frūmentārius, -a, -um [**frūmentum,** grain], of *or* pertaining to grain; **rēs,** supply of grain, provisions: (**loca**) productive. I, **23,** 5.
frūmentātiō, -ōnis, F., getting grain or fodder, foraging.
frūmentor, 1, get grain. IV, **12,** 4.
frūmentum, -ī, N., grain; *in pl.*, crops. I, **3,** 5.
frūor, -ī, frūctus sum, enjoy. III, **22,** 5.
frūstrā, *adv.*, [**fraus,** deceit], in deception *or* error; without effect, in vain. III, **4,** 6.
fuga, -ae, F., flight. I, **11,** 12.
fugiō, -ere, fūgī, *n.*, flee, fly, run away; escape. I, **53,** 2; II, **11,** 13.
fugitīvus, -a, -um, [**fugiō,** flee], fleeing, *as subst.* a runaway slave. I, **23,** 7.
fugō, 1, put to flight, chase; rout. VII, **68,** 1.
fūmō, 1, smoke, fume.
fūmus, -ī, M., smoke. II, **7,** 10.
funda, -ae, F., sling. IV, **25,** 5.
funditor, -ōris, M., slinger. II, **7,** 3.
fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsus, *a.*, pour, discharge, scatter; overthrow, rout. III, **6,** 10.
fungor, -ī, fūnctus sum, perform, execute, discharge.
fūnis, -is, M., rope; cable. III, **13,** 9.
fūnus, -eris, N., funeral. VI, **19,** 11.
furor, -ōris [**furō,** rage], M., rage frenzy, madness. I, **40,** 10; II, **3,** 11.
fūrtum, -ī, N., theft. VI, **16,** 12.
fūsilis, -e, liquid, molten.
futūrus, *see* **sum.**

G.

Gabalī, -ōrum, M., *a Gallic tribe.* VII, **15,** 9.

Gabīnius, -ī, M., *a Roman gentile name.* Aulus Gabinius, *consul with Lucius Piso, 58 B. C.* I, **6,** 16.

gaesum, -ī, N., a heavy iron javelin (*of the Gauls*). III, **4,** 4.

Gāius, -ī, M., *a praenomen.* I, **40,** 14; III, **5,** 7.

Galba, -ae, M., (1) *a king of the Suessiones.* (2) Servius Sulpicius Galba, *a legatus of Caesar in Gaul, said to have been one of his assassins.* II, **13,** 2.

galea, -ae, F., helmet. II, **21,** 11.

Gallia, -ae [**Gallius, -a, -um,** Gallic], F., Gaul, *the country of the Galli, including France, Belgium, Netherlands, Switzerland, Italy north of the Po, and the Rhine provinces of Germany.* I, **1,** 1.

Gallicus, -a, -um [**Gallia**], pertaining to Gaul *or* the Gauls, Gallic. I, **22,** 6.

gallīna, -ae, F., hen. V, **12,** 14.

Gallus, -a, -um, of Gaul, Gallic; *in pl. as subst.*, the Gauls, *inhabiting Central Gaul, Northern Italy, etc.* I, **1,** 3.

Garumna, -ae, M., the Garonne, *a river forming the boundary between Aquitania and Celtic Gaul.* I, **1,** 5.

Garumnī, -ōrum, M., III, **27,** 4.

Gatēs, -um, M., III, **27,** 4.

gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum, rejoice. IV, **13,** 17.

gāvīsus *see* **gaudeō.**

Geidumnī, -ōrum, M., *a Belgic tribe, dependents of the Nervii.*

Genāva -ae, F., *a city of the Allobroges, now* Geneva. I, **6,** 10.

gener, -erī, M., son-in-law.

generātim [**genus,** race *or* tribe], *adv.*, by tribes, nation by nation. I, **51,** 8.

gēns, gentis [**genō,** *old form of* **gignō,** beget], F., race; clan, tribe, people. II, **28,** 2.

genus, -eris [**gen-** in **gīgnō,** beget], N., descent, origin; race, class, tribe; sort, kind, nature. I, **48,** 2; III, **14,** 6.

Gergovia, -ae, F., *the chief town of the Arverni.*

Germānī, -ōrum, M., *pl.*, men of the hills, hill-folk. II, **4,** 29.

Germānia, -ae, F., Germany, *including the country between the Rhine, the Danube, the Vistula, and the sea.* IV, **4,** 4.

Germānicus, -a, -um [**Germānus,** German], of *or* pertaining to the Germans, German, IV, **16,** 1.

Germānus, -ī, [Celtic *Gairmean*, one who shouts the war cry, or *wehr-mann*, war-man, warrior], M., a German; *in pl.* the Germans; *Germānus, -a, -um*, German. I, **1,** 10.

gerō, -ere, gessī, gestus, *a.*, bear, carry, wield; (*of war*) carry on, perform, wage, conduct. I, **1** 11.

gladius, -ī, M., sword. I, **25,** 5.

glāns, glandis, F., acorn; bullet. VII, **81,** 12.

glēba (**glae-**), **-ae,** F., clod of earth, sod.

glōria, -ae, F., glory, renown, honor, fame. I, **2,** 15.

glōrior, 1. [**glōria,** glory], *n.*, glory, glory in, boast of. I, **14,** 12.

Gnaeus (**Cn.**), **-ī,** M. IV, **1,** 1.

Gobannitiō, -ōnis, M., an Avernian chief.

Graecus, -a, -um, of *or* belonging to the Greeks, Greek, Grecian. I, **29,** 2.

Grāiocelī, -ōrum, M., I, **10,** 13.

grandis, -e, great, large, bulky I, **43,** 2; VII, **72,** 14.

grātia, -ae [**gratus,** pleasing], F., favor, good will, gratitude; esteem, influence, popularity; **grātiās agere,** thank. I, **9,** 5.

grātulātiō, -ōnis, [**grātulor,** express joy], F., expression of joy, congratulation, rejoicing. I, **53,** 20; VII, **78,** 9.

grātulor, 1, congratulate; thank. I, **30**, 3.

gratus, -a, -um, pleasing, agreeable, acceptable, welcome. I, **33**, 39; VI, **16**, 13.

gravis, -e, heavy, oppressive, hard, severe; serious, important, advanced (*of age*). I, **20**, 2.

gravitās, -tātis [**gravis**, heavy], F., heaviness, weight; power, dignity. IV, **3**, 11.

graviter, *adv.*, heavily, with greater weight, with force.—Fig., severely, seriously: **graviter ferre**: take to heart, be annoyed; **premere**, press hard.

gravor, 1, be unwilling. I, **35**, 6.

Grudiī, -ōrum, M., *a Belgic tribe, clients of the Nervii.*

gubernātor, -ōris [**gubernō**, steer *or* pilot], M., steersman, pilot. III, **9**, 4.

gustō, 1, taste. V, **12**, 14.

H.

habeō, 2, *a. and n.*, have, hold, possess; consider, regard. I, **2**, 16.

haesitō, 1, stick *or* cling fast, remain fixed.

hāmus, -ī M., hook. VII, **73**, 24.

harpagō, ōnis, M., grapple. VII, **81**, 2.

Harūdēs, -um, M., *a German tribe from Jutland, which joined the army of Ariovistus.* I, **31**, 36.

haud, *adv.*, not, by no means, not at all.

Helvēticus, -a, -um, of the Helvetii, Helvetian.

Helvētius, -a, -um, of the Helvetii, Helvetian; *as subst.*, M., one of the Helvetii, an Helvetian; *pl.*, the Helvetii. I, **1**, 11.

Helviī, -ōrum, M., *a Gallic tribe between the Rhone and Cevennes.*

Hercynia, -ae, F., the Hercynian forest. VI, **24**, 5.

hērēditās, -tātis, F., inheritance, VI, **13**, 14.

hīberna, -ōrum, N., see **hībernus.**

hībernāculum, -ī, [**hībernō**, pass the winter], N., a wintering-place; *in pl.*, huts *or* tents for wintering, winter quarters. II, **35**, 9.

Hibernia, -ae, F., Ireland.

hībernus, -a, -um, of *or* belonging to winter, cold, winter; *in n. pl., as subst.*, **hīberna, -ōrum**, (sc. **castra**), winter camp, winter quarters. I, **10**, 10.

hīc, haec, hōc, *gen.* **hūius**, *dem. pron., used for what is near in space, time, or thought*, this, this man (woman *or* thing); *in pl.*, these, they, etc.; *used of what precedes with more emphasis than* **is. hīc . . . ille**, the one . . . the other; the latter (*as nearer*) . . . the former (*as more remote*). I, **1** 3.

hīc, *adv.*, here, in this place; (*of a place just mentioned*), there in that place. IV, **19**, 11.

hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūrus, [**hiems**, winter], *n.*, pass the winter, winter. I, **10**, 10.

hiems, (hiemps), hiemis, [*Sanscrit*, **himas** snow], F., winter time, winter. III, **7**, 4.

hinc, *adv.*, hence. VI, **25**, 6.

Hispānia, -ae, F., Spain, *the country of the Hispani, including the whole peninsula.* I, **1**, 22.

Hispānus, -a, -um, Spanish.

homō, -inis, [*cf.* **humus**, earth], M., human being, man; *in pl.*, mankind, humanity, men. I, **2**, 14.

honestus, -a, -um, [**honor**, honor], honorable, worthy, distinguished, eminent. I, **53**, 17.

honōrificus, -a, -um, conferring honor. I, **43**, 17.

honōs, (honor], -ōris, M., honor, regard, glory, distinction.

hōra, -ae, F., hour. *The Roman hour was the twelfth part of the day or night (reckoning between sunrise and sunset), varying according to the season.* I, **26**, 5.

horreō, -ēre, -uī, dread. I, **32**, 13.

horribilis, -e, dreadful, horrible.

horridus, -a -um, bristling; hideous. V, **14**, 6.

hortor, 1. exhort, encourage, urge strongly, cheer. I, **19**, 19.

hospes, -itis M., F., host, entertain-

er; guest, friend. I, **53**, 18; V, **6**, 9.

hospitium, -ī [**hospes**, host *or* guest], N., the relation of host and guest; friendship, hospitality. I, **31**, 21; VII, **75**, 23.

hostis, -is, M., F., *stranger, foreigner;* (*public*) enemy, foe; *pl.*, the enemy. I, **11**, 11.

hūc, *adv.* [*old form for* **hōc** *fr.* **hīc**], to this place, hither, here. I, **38**, 14; III, **19**, 2.

hūius-modī, of this sort, kind *or* nature. III, **3**, 11.

hūmānitās, -tātis, [**hūmānus,** human], M., humanity, courteousness, refinement. I, **1**, 7.

hūmānus, -a, -um [**homō,** man], natural to man, human; civilized, refined, cultivated. IV, **3**, 7.

humerus, (**umerus**), **-ī,** M., the shoulder.

humilis, -e [**humus,** the ground], on the ground; low, humble, abject. IV, **3**, 13.

humilitās, -tātis, F., lowness; humility. V, **1**, 12.

I.

I, *sign for* one.

iaceō, -ēre iacuī, lie; be slain. II, **27**, 9.

iaciō, -ere, iēcī, iactus, *a., make* or *cause to go;* throw, cast fling; throw up, construct. II, **6**, 6.

iactō, 1. [*freq. of* **iaciō,** hurl], *a.*, throw *or* hurl repeatedly, toss; (*of words*) talk about, mention, discuss. I, **18**, 3.

iactūra, -ae, F., loss. VI, **12**, 6.

iaculum, -ī, N., javelin.

iam, *adv.*, now (*denoting immediate occurrence in ref. to the past, present or future, while* nunc *emphasizes the present*), already, by this time, at length. I, **5**, 3.

ibī (ibi), *adv.*, there. I, **10**, 9.

Iccius, -ī, M., *a chief of the Remi.* II, **3**, 2.

ictus, -ūs, [**īcō,** strike], M., stroke, blow, thrust. I, **25**, 7.

Īd., *abbrev. for* **Īdūs.**

idcircō, *adv.*, therefore. V, **3**, 18.

īdem, eadem, idem [**is**+ **-dem**], *dem. adj. pron.*, the same; this very, also. I, **3**, 16.

identidem, *adv.*, repeatedly. II, **19**, 10.

idōneus, -a, -um, fit, suitable, adapted. II, **8**, 6.

Īdūs, -uum, F., *pl.*, the Ides, *the time of the full moon; the 15th of March, May, July, and October, and 13th of other months.* I, **7**, 20.

īgnis, -is, M., fire. I, **4**, 4.

īgnōbilis, -e, unknown, ignoble.

īgnōminia, -ae, F., disgrace. VII, **80**, 17.

īgnōrō, 1. [**īgnārus,** not knowing] *a.*, not know, be ignorant of, be unacquainted with; fail to observe, overlook: *pass.*, be unobserved, unrecognized. I, **27**, 12.

īgnōscō, -ere, -nōvī, -nōtus [**in-** +(**g**)**nōscō,** know], *n.*, forgive, pardon. I, **45**, 6; IV, **27**, 10.

īgnōtus, -a, -um, unknown, unfamiliar; base. IV, **24**, 6.

illātus, *see* **īnferō.**

ille, illa, illud, *gen.* **illīus,** *dat.* **illī,** *dem. adj. pron.* (*of what is remote in time, place, thought, etc. cf.* **hīc**), that: *as subst.* he, she, it; that man, that woman, etc.; **hīc** . . . **ille,** this . . . that, the latter . . . the former. I, **3**, 18.

illīc [**ille,** that+**ce**], in that place, there. I **18**, 16.

il(in-)-ligō, 1, attach. IV, **17**, 21.

illō, *adv.*, there. VI, **13**, 31.

il(in-)-lūstris, -e, illumined; distinguished. VI, **19**, 8.

Illyricum, -ī, N., Illyria, *lying northeast of the Adriatic, forming a part of Caesar's province.* II, **35**, 6.

imbēcillitās, -tātis, F., weakness. VII, **77**, 26.

imber, imbris, M., a rainstorm, rain (*esp. sudden, heavy, or violent*). III, **29**, 10.

imitor, 1. imitate, copy after.

immānis, -e [*old Lat.* **manus**=**bonus,** good], out of proportion, huge. IV, **1**, 20.

im-mineō, -ēre, ——, ——, project hang over; touch on.
im (in-) mittō, -ere, mīsī, mīssus, *a.*, send *or* let into, let in *or* down, insert, introduce. IV, **17**, 11.
im-molō, 1, sacrifice. VI, **16**, 4.
immortālis, -e [**in-+mortālis,** mortal], not mortal, immortal. I, **12**, 16.
immūnis, -e, unburdened. VII, **76**, 4.
immūnitās, -tātis, F., immunity. VI, **14**, 3.
im-pār, paris, uneven, unequal.
im-parātus, -a, -um, not ready *or* prepared.
impedīmentum, -ī [**impediō,** hinder], N., hindrance, obstacle: *pl.* baggage *or* luggage (*of an army*), baggage-train) *including the draught animals*). I, **24**, 10.
im-pediō, 4. [**in+pēs,** foot], *a.*, *entangle the feet;* hamper, obstruct, embarrass, hinder: *in p. p. as adj.*, encumbered with baggage, burdened, hampered, hindered. I, **12**, 10.
im-pedītus, -a, -um, encumbered, hampered. I, **12**, 10.
impellō (in-), -ere, pulī, pulsus [**pellō,** drive], *a.*, drive *or* urge on, incite, instigate, impel. I, **40**, 10; II, **14**, 4.
im-pendeō (in-), -ēre [**pendeō,** hang], *n.*, hang *or* be suspended over, overhang, impend, threaten. I, **6**, 5.
im-pēnsus, -a, -um, expensive; great. IV, **2**, 4.
imperātor, -ōris [**imperō,** command], M., commander-in-chief, general. I, **40**, 15; II, **25**, 19.
imperātum, -ī, N., order, command, II, **3**, 7.
im-perfectus, -a, -um, unaccomplished. VI, **12**, 14.
imperītus, -a, -um [**perītus,** experienced], inexperienced, unskilled, ignorant. I, **40**, 30; IV, **22**, 4.
imperium, -ī [**imperō,** command], N., command, order; authority, sway; supreme power, dominion, sovereignty; supreme military command, highest official power. I, **2**, 6.
imperō, 1. [**in+parō,** procure], *a.*, *n.*, make requisition upon, demand from, enjoin *or* levy upon, command. I, **7**, 5.
impetrō, 1. [**patrō,** accomplish], *a.*, obtain (*by request, entreaty, exertion*), accomplish, succeed in obtaining (*one's request*); **impetrāre ā (ab),** gain permission from, persuade; **sī nōn impetrāret,** if he failed to obtain his request. I, **9**, 5.
impetus, -ūs [**petō,** attack], M., attack, onset, charge; impetuosity, force, vehemence. I, **22**, **11.**
im-pius, -a, -um, wicked. VI, **13**, 18.
im-plicō, 1, entwine. VII, **73**, 12.
implōrō, 1. [**plōrō,** call out], *a.*, beseech, entreat, implore. I, **31**, 25; V, **7**, 19.
impōnō, -ere, posuī, positus [**pōnō,** *place*], place upon, set on, put *or* impose on; mount; embark. I, **42**, 19.
im-portō, 1. [**portō,** carry], *a.*, carry *or* bring in, import. I, **1**, 9.
im (in-) -prīmīs, *adv.* [*abl. pl. of* **prīmus**], among the first; in the first place, particularly. I, **33**, 7; III, **10**, 5.
im-probus, -a, -um, wicked. I, **17**, 5.
im-prōvīsō, *adv.*, I, **13**, 13.
im-prōvīsus, -a, -um [**prō+videō,** see], not seen before, unforseen, unexpected: *abl.* **imprōvīsō,** *adv.*, unexpectedly, suddenly. I, **13**, 13.
im (in-), -prūdēns, -entis [**prūdēns,** forseeing], not forseeing, off one's guard, imprudent, unwary. III, **29**, 2.
imprūdentia, -ae, F., want of foresight *or* forethought, ignorance, indiscretion. IV, **27**, 9.
im-pūbēs, -eris, immature; chaste. VI, **21**, 8.

impūgnō, 1. [in+pūgnō, fight], *a.*, fight against, attack, assail. I, **44**, 20; III, **26**, 12.
impulsus, *see* **impellō**.
impulsus, **ūs**, M., instigation, impulse. V, **25**, 8.
impūne, *adv.*, without punishment. I, **14**, 12.
impūnitās, **-tātis**, F., impunity. I, **14**, 16.
īmus, *superl. of* **īnferus**. III, **19**, 1.
in, *prep. with acc. and abl.*, (*a*) *with acc.* (*of motion*), into, to, among, in, towards, against; (*of time*) up to, till, for; on, about; *with abl.*, (*of space*) in, upon, among, over, at, within; (*of time*) in, during, at, in the course of; on, upon, in the case of. I, **1**, 1.
inānis, **-e**, empty. V, **23**, 8.
in-cautē, *adv.*, unwarily.
in-cautus, **-a**, **-um**, heedless, unwary.
incendium, **-ī**, N., conflagration. V, **19**, 13.
in-cendō, **-ere**, **cendī**, **cēnsus** [**candeō**, shine], *a.*, set fire to, fire, burn; inflame, excite, rouse. I, **5**, 5.
in-certus, **-a**, **-um** [**certus**, determined], uncertain, indefinite, vague, untrustworthy. IV, **5**, 11.
in-cidō, **-ere**, **cidī**, [**cadō**, fall], *n.*, fall into *or* upon; fall in with, meet; happen, befall. I, **53**, 15; II, **14**, 13.
in-cīdō, **-ere**, **cīdī**, **cīsus**, cut into. II, **17**, 17.
incipiō, **-ere**, **cēpī**, **ceptus** [**capiō**, take], *a.*, undertake, begin, commence. II, **2**, 5.
in-citō, 1. [**cieō**, rouse], *a.*, rouse, instigate, incite. I, **4**, 8.
in-cōgnitus, **-a**, **-um** [**cōgnōscō**, learn, know], not ascertained, unknown. IV, **20**, 9.
in-colō, **-ere**, **coluī**, ——, [**colō**, cultivate], *a. and n.*, inhabit, live, dwell in. I, **1**, 2.
in-columis, **-e**, unhurt, uninjured. I, **53**, 23; III, **6**, 16.
in-commodē, *adv.*, inconveniently, unseasonably.
in-commodum, **-ī** [**commodum**, convenience], N., inconvenience, loss, trouble, disaster, defeat. I, **13**, 12.
in-crēdibilis, **-e** [**crēdibilis**, worthy of belief], unworthy of belief, unlikely, extraordinary. I, **12**, 2.
increpitō, **-āre**, [*freq. of* **increpō**, chide], *a.*, call *or* cry out to, chide, taunt, banter, blame. II, **15**, 13.
in-cumbō, **-ere**, **cubuī**, **cubitus**, recline upon; bend to. VII, **76**, 9.
incursiō, **-ōnis**, F., onset. V, **1**, 16.
incursus, **-ūs**, M., inroad, attack.
incūsō, 1. [**causa**, cause *or* case], *a.*, bring a case *or* charge against, complain of, upbraid, blame. I, **40**, 3; II, **15**, 13.
inde, *adv.* [**im** *loc. fr.* **is**,+**de**], from that place, from there, thence. I, **10**, 17.
indicium, **-ī** [**indicō**, disclose], N., disclosure, information. I, **4**, 1.
in-dīcō, **-ere**, **dīxī**, **dictus** [**dīcō**, say], *a.*, say publicly, proclaim, announce, appoint. I, **30**, 12; VII, **75**, 2.
in-dicō, 1, point out, announce.
in-dictus, **-a**, **-um**, unsaid.
in-dīgnē, *adv.*, unworthily, dishonorably.
indīgnitās, **-tātis** [**indīgnus**, unworthy], F., unworthiness, outrage, disgrace. II, **14**, 6.
indīgnor, 1. deem unworthy, resent.
in-dīgnus, **-a**, **-um**, unworthy, shameful.
in-dīligēns, **-entis**, heedless. VII, **71**, 8.
in-dīligenter, *adv.*, carelessly. II, **33**, 5.
indīligentia, **-ae**, F., heedlessness.
in-dūcō, **-ere**, **dūxī**, **ductus**, [**dūcō**, lead], *a.*, lead *or* draw on; induce, influence, instigate. I, **2**, 3.
indulgentia, **-ae**, F., forbearance; affection.
indulgeō, **-ēre**, **-dulsī**, **-dultus**, [in+**dulcis**, pleasant], be pleas-

ant *or* indulgent to, treat with favor *or* kindness, favor; yield or be addicted to. I, **40**, 49.
in-duō, -ere, duī, dūtus, *a.*, put on: **sē induere,** fall into *or* upon, become entangled in. II, **21**, 11.
industriē, *adv.*, diligently.
indūtiae, -ārum, F., truce. IV, **12**, 6.
Indutiomarus, -ī, M., V, **3**, 4.
in-eō, īre, īvī (iī), itus, *a.*, *n.*, go into, enter upon, begin; adopt, undertake, form (**cōnsilium**), estimate (**numerum**). II, **2**, 3.
inermis, -e, [**arma,** arms], without arms, *or* weapons, unarmed, II, **27**, 4.
inermus, -a, -um, unarmed. I, **40**, 19.
in-ers, ertis, inactive; cowardly. IV, **2**, 11.
īnfāmia, -ae, F., ill repute. VI, **23**, 10.
īn-fāns, -antis, not speaking: *as subst.*, infant.
īn-fectus, -a, -um, not done, unaccomplished.
īnferior, -ius, *comp. of* **īnferus.** I, **1**, 19.
īn-ferō, ferre, intulī, illātus [**ferō,** bear], *a.*, bear, bring, *or* make upon, inflict; **sīgna īnferre,** to advance the standards, to attack. I, **1**, 13.
īnferus, -a, -um, low, below, underneath: *comp.* **īnferior,** lower, inferior: *sup.* **īnfimus,** *or* **īmus,** lowest, last, at the foot *or* bottom. I, **1**, 19.
īnfēstus, -a, -um, disturbed; dangerous.
īnficiō, -ere, fēcī, fectus, stain. V, **14**, 5.
īn-fidēlis, -e, untrustworthy, faithless.
īn-fīgō, -ere, fīxī, fīxus, fasten in. VII, **73**, 24.
īnfimus, II, **18**, 5, *superl. of* **īnferus.**
īnfīnītus, -a, -um, endless. V, **12**, 7.
īnfīrmitās, -tātis, [**īn-firmus,** not strong], F., weakness, fickleness, inconstancy. IV, **5**, 1.
īn-fīrmus, -a, -um [**fīrmus,** strong], not strong, weak, feeble; faint, discouraged. III, **24**, 9.
īn-flectō, -ere, flēxī, flexus [**flectō,** bend], *a.*, *n.*, bend in, bend, curve, inflect. I, **25**, 8.
īn-fluō, -ere, fluxī, fluxus [**fluō,** flow], *n.*, flow in *or* into, empty into. I, **8**, 3.
īn-fodiō, -ere, fōdī, fossus, dig *or* drive in. VII, **73**, 24.
īnfrā, *adv. and prep. with acc.* [*for* **īnfera** (*sc.* **parte**) *from* **īnferus,** below], below, beneath; inferior, under; after. IV, **36**, 9.
in-gēns, -entis [**in,** *neg.*+**gēns,** race, kind, lit. *not of the kind i. e. out of proportion*], enormous, huge, vast, great. I, **39**, 4; IV, **10**, 9.
in-grātus, -a, -um, disagreeable.
ingredior, gredī, gressus sum, [**gradior,** step, go], *a.*, *n.*, go *or* walk into, march *or* advance upon, enter. II, **4**, 7.
in-iciō, -ere, iēcī, iectus [**iaciō,** hurl], *a.*, throw *or* cast into *or* upon, put *or* place on; put into, inspire, infuse, inject. I, **45**, 14. IV, **17**, 22.
inimīcitia, -ae, F., enmity. VI, **12**, 22.
in-imīcus, -a, -um [**amīcus,** friendly], unfriendly, hostile: *as subst.*, an enemy (*personal*). I, **7**, 16.
inīquitās, -tātis, F., inequality, unfairness; unfavorable position. II, **22**, 9.
inīquus, -a, -um [**aequus,** even, just], uneven, unjust, unfair, unfavorable. I, **44**, 12; II, **10**, 10.
initium, -ī [**in-eō,** go into], N., beginning, commencement, origin. I, **1**, 15.
in-iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūnctus, join to; impose. VII, **77**, 47.
in-iūria, -ae, F., wrong, injustice; outrage. I, **7**, 17.
in-iūssū, *abl. from* **iniūssus, -ūs,** [**iubeō,** order], without command *or* order. I, **19**, 4.
in-nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum [**nāscor,** be born], *n.*, be born in,

be begotten *or* engendered in, spring up, arise. *P. p. as adj.*, inborn, ingrained. I, **41**, 3.
in-nītor, -ī, nīxus (nīsus) sum, lean upon. II, **27**, 3.
in-nocēns, -entis, harmless; upright. VI, **16**, 14.
innocentia, -ae, F., integrity. I, **40**, 41.
inopia, -ae [**inops,** needy], F., need, want, poverty, destitution. I, **27**, 1.
in-opīnāns, -antis [**opīnor,** suppose], not supposing, unawares. I, **12**, 10.
inquam, -is, -it; *perf.*, **inquiī,** *def. verb*, say. IV, **25**, 12.
īn-sciēns, -entis [**sciō,** know], unaware, ignorant. I, **19**, 5.
īnscientia, -ae, F., ignorance. III, **10**, 15.
īn-scius, -a, -um [**sciō,** know], not knowing, ignorant, unconscious, unawares. IV, **4**, 14.
īn-sequor, sequī, secūtus sum [**sequor,** follow]; *a.*, *n.*, follow up *or* after, pursue; press close, harass. I, **15**, 6.
īn-serō, -ere, seruī, sertus, thrust in. III, **14**, 15.
īnsidiae, -ārum [**sedeō,** sit], F., *pl.*, a sitting *or* lying in wait; ambush, ambuscade: **per īnsidiās** *or* **ex īnsidiīs,** by artifice *or* stratagem. I, **13**, 17.
īnsidior, 1, lie in ambush.
īnsīgnis, -e [**sīgnō,** mark], marked, remarkable; *in neut. as subst.*, mark, sign, signal, decoration. I, **12**, 17.
īn-siliō, -īre, siluī, leap in *or* on. I, **52**, 11.
īn-simulō, 1, charge, blame, accuse.
īn-sinuō, 1, wind into; penetrate. IV, **33**, 4.
īn-sistō, -ere, stitī, [**sistō,** place, stand], *a.*, *n.*, stand upon; stand firm; press on, pursue. II, **27**, 9.
īnsolenter [**īn-solēns,** unwonted], *adv.*, unusually; arrogantly. I, **14**, 11.
īn-spectō, 1, look at, view.
īn-stabilis, -e, unsteady. IV, **23**, 15.
īnstar, N., *indecl.*, likeness. II, **17**, 19.
īnstīgō, 1, goad on, stimulate.
īn-stituō, -ere, stituī, stitūtus [**statuō,** set up], *a.*, *n.*, set up *or* in order, establish; set in array, draw up, form, devise; instruct, educate; begin, adopt; set on foot, determine, decide. I, **14**, 21.
īnstitūtum, -ī [**īnstituō,** set up, establish], N., a fixed course, principle *or* arrangement; habit, institution, custom. I, **1**, 4.
īn-stō, stāre, stitī, statūrus [**stō,** stand], *n.*, stand upon *or* near, be at hand, press on; impend, threaten. I, **16**, 10.
īnstrūmentum, -ī, N., implement, tool; apparatus.
īn-struō, -ere, strūxī, strūctus [**struō,** build], *a.*, build upon, build, construct; form, draw up, array. I, **22**, 8.
īnsuēfactus, -a, -um, accustomed. IV, **24**, 11.
īnsuētus, -a, -um, unaccustomed. V, **6**, 11.
īnsula, -ae, F., island. III, **9**, 21.
īn-super, *adv.* [**super,** above], above, on the top, from above. IV, **17**, 16.
integer, tegra, tegrum [**tangō,** touch], untouched, intact, whole, fresh, unimpaired. III, **4**, 5.
in-tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctus, cover over; protect. VII, **73**, 21.
intellegō, -ere, -lēxī, lēctus [**inter+legō,** choose, select], *a.*, select *or* distinguish between; understand, know, ascertain, perceive. I, **10**, 4.
in-tendō, -ere, tendī, tentus, [**tendō,** stretch], *n.*, stretch out *or* to, extend; direct *the eyes, ears,* or *mind,* be intent *or* absorbed, strive. III, **22**, 1.
inter, *prep. with acc.*, between, amid, among; *in reciprocal relation*, with by, from. I, **1**, 4.
inter-cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus [**cēdō,** go], *n.*, go *or* come between, lie between, intervene, pass; occur *or* be between, happen. 1, **7**, 18.
intercipiō, -ere, cēpī, cēptus

[capiō, take], *a.*, take *or* catch between (*one point and another*); interrupt, intercept, cut off. II, **27**, 11.

interclūdō, -ere, clūdī, clūsus [claudō, shut], *a.*, shut *or* cut off, obstruct, hinder. I, **23**, 11.

inter-dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictus [dīcō, say], *a.*, *say among other things;* intervene *by an order;* prohibit, exclude, interdict. I, **46**, 11; V, **22**, 16.

inter-diū, *adv.*, during the day, by day. I, **8**, 14.

inter-dum, [**dum,** while], *adv.*, meanwhile, in the meantime; at times, sometimes. I, **14**, 15.

inter-eā, *adv.*, meantime, meanwhile, in the interim. I, **8**, 1.

inter-eō, īre, īvi (iī), itūrus, perish. VI, **14**, 15.

interficiō, -ere, fēcī, fectus [**faciō,** make], *a.*, *make from among;* make away with, kill, destroy. I, **12**, 15.

intericiō, -ere, iēcī, iectus [**iaciō**], *a.*, throw *or* hurl between; put, set *or* place between; interpose, interject. II, **7**, 19.

interim, *adv.*, meanwhile, in the meantime: **interim . . . interim,** sometimes . . . sometimes. I, **16**, 1.

interior, -ius, interior. V, **12**, 1.

interitus, -ūs, M., destruction.

inter-mittō, -ere, mīsī, mīssus [**mittō,** send], *a.*, *n.*, send between, interrupt, discontinue, leave off. I, **26**, 15.

interneciō, -ōnis [**necō,** destroy], F., extermination, annihilation, utter destruction. I, **13**, 19.

inter-pellō, 1, interrupt. I, **44**, 28.

inter-pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus [**pōnō,** place], place between, insert, interpose. I, **42**, 15; IV, **9**, 8.

interpres, -etis, M., F., interpreter; mediator. I, **19**, 13.

interpretor, 1, explain. VI, **13**, 10.

inter-rogō, 1, ask, inquire.

inter-rumpō, -ere, rūpī, ruptus, break off *or* through; destroy.

inter-scindō, -ere, scidī, scissus [**scindō,** cut, destroy], *a.*, cut through, tear *or* break down, cut off (*between two points*). II, **9**, 12.

inter-sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *n.*, be *or* lie between, intervene; be apart; be present, take part in; *impers.* **interest,** it concerns, it is important; there is a difference, an interval. I, **15**, 15.

inter-vāllum, -ī [**vāllum,** intrenchment], N., *the space between two palisades or the 200 feet between the rampart and tents;* interval (*of space or time*). I, **22**, 16.

inter-veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus, come between, intervene.

inter-ventus, -ūs, M., interposition. III, **15**, 11.

in-texō, -ere, texuī, textus, weave in *or* together. II, **33**, 7.

intoleranter, *adv.*, intolerable, excessively.

intrā, *prep. with acc.* [*for* **interā,** *sc.* **parte**], within, into. I, **32**, 14; II, **4**, 7.

in-trītus, -a, -um, unwearied. III, **26**, 4.

intrō, 1, *a.*, go *or* walk into, enter, penetrate. II, **17**, 20.

intrō-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus [**intrō,** within], lead *or* bring in, march in, introduce. II, **5**, 9.

intro-eō, īre, īvī(iī), itus, enter.

introitus, -ūs, M., entrance. V, **9**, 14.

intrō-mittō, -ere, mīsī, mīssus, send *or* let in. II, **33**, 19.

intrōrsus(um), *adv.*, within. II, **18**, 6.

intrō-rumpō, -ere, rūpī, ruptus, break in.

in-tueor, 2, look upon; protect. I, **32**, 5.

intus, *adv.*, within.

in-ūsitātus, -a, -um [**ūtor**], unusual, uncommon, strange, startling. II, **31**, 2.

in-ūtilis, -e [**ūtilis,** useful], use-

less, worthless, unserviceable. II, **16**, 9.

in-veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus [**veniō**, come], *a.*, come upon, meet, find out, discover. I, **53**, 5; II, **16**, 2.

inventor, -ōris, M., author. VI, **17**, 2.

inveterāscō, -ere, -rāvī, -rātūrus, grow old. II, **1**, 10.

invicem, *adv.*, in turn. IV, **1**, 11.

in-vīctus, -a, -um, indomitable. I, **36**, 17.

in-videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus, envy. II, **31**, 10.

invidia, -ae, F., hatred. VII, **77**, 44.

in-violātus, -a, -um, [**violō**, injure], uninjured, unharmed, inviolate. III, **9**, 10.

invītō, 1, *a.*, invite, summon, urge. I, **35**, 6; IV, **6**, 5.

invītus, -a, -um, against one's wish *or* will, unwilling, reluctant; **sē invītō**, against his will. I, **8**, 7.

Iovis, *see* **Iupiter.**

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, *gen.*, **ipsīus,** self (*as opp. to some one else*); himself, herself, etc.; he, she, it, etc. (*emphatic*); *as adj.*, very, (his, her, their) own. I, **1**, 2.

īrācundia, -ae, F., irritability, anger.

īrācundus, -a, -um, irritable. I, **31**, 47.

ir-rīdeō, -ēre, rīsī, rīsus, jeer. II, **30**, 6.

irrīdiculē, *adv.*, without humor. I, **42**, 20.

ir (in-) -rumpō, -ere, rūpī, ruptus [**rumpō**, break], *a.*, break in *or* into, storm. IV, **14**, 9.

ir (in-) -ruptiō, -ōnis, F., attack. VII, **70**, 6.

is, ea, id, *gen.* **ēius,** *weak. dem. pron. referring to some person or object named in the context,* this, that; he, she, it, they, etc.; **is ut,** such as; *with comparatives* **eō** (*abl.*), the, all the; **eō magis,** all the more; **eō** (*abl. as adv.*), on this account, therefore; **eā** *sc. viā*) in that way (*only* V, **51**, 9); I, **1**, 8.

iste, -a, -ud, that, this, the very.

ita, *adv.*, so, thus, in this way; as follows; **ita . . . ut,** even as, just as; **ut . . . ita,** in proportion to, although . . . yet. I, **11**, 5.

Ītalia, -ae, [*for* **Vitalia,** *the land of oxen*], F., Italy, *sometimes* (*in Caesar*) *including Cisalpine Gaul.* I, **10**, 8.

ita-que [**ita**, so], and so, therefore, accordingly. I, **9**, 10.

item, *adv.*, in like manner, so, also, just so. I, **3**, 14.

iter, itineris [*for* **itiner,** *fr. p. p. of* **eō**, go], N., *a going, way,* route; journey, march. I, **3**, 5.

iterum, *adv.*, again, anew, a second time; for the second time; twice. I, **31**, 18.

Itius, -ī, M., V, **2**, 9.

iuba, -ae, F., mane. I, **48**, 19.

iubeō, -ēre, iūssī, iūssus, *a.*, order, bid, command, enjoin. I, **5**, 9.

iūdicium, -ī [**iūdex**, judge], N., judicial proceedings, trial; judicial opinion *or* decision, judgment; court. I, **4**, 5.

iūdicō, 1, [**iūdex**, a judge], *a.*, pass judgment, judge, decide, determine. I, **12**, 4.

iugum, -ī [**iungō**, join], N., yoke; ridge, crest. I, **7**, 15.

iūmentum, -ī [*for* **iugimentum** *fr.* **iugum**, yoke], N., yoke *or* draft animal, beast of burden. I, **3**, 3.

iūnctūra, -ae, F., joining. IV, **17**, 17.

iungō, -ere, iūnxī, iūnctus, *a.*, join *or* unite together, join, yoke, attach, connect. I, **8**, 12.

iūnior, *see* **iuvenis.**

Iūnius, -ī, M., *a Roman nomen. E. g.*, (1) Decimus Junius Brutus, *commander of Caesar's fleet.* III, **11**, 12. (2) Q. Junius, *a Spaniard.*

Iūpiter, Iovis, Jupiter *or* Jove. VI, **17**, 5.

Iūra, -ae, M., the Jura, *a mountain range from the Rhine to the Rhone.* I, **2**, 10.

iūrō, 1, [**iūs**, right], *n.*, affirm one's

rights, make oath, swear. I, **31**, 28; VI, **12**, 10.
iūs, iūris, N., right (*in nature and character*), justice, rights; legal rights, law; authority. I, **4**, 9.
iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī [**iūs**, right+**iūrō**, swear], N., *swearing to one's rights*, an oath. I, **3**, 22.
iūssū [*abl. of* **iūssus**], by command, by order.
iūstitia, -ae [**iūstus**, just], F., justice, rectitude, uprightness. I, **19**, 10.
iūstus, -a, -um [**iūs**, right], in accordance with law *or* right, lawful, righteous, reasonable, valid, just. I, **43**, 13; IV, **16**, 3.
iuvenis, -e, young.
iuventūs, ūtis, F., the time *or* period of youth, *from seventeen to forty-five years;* the youth, the young men. III, **16**, 3.
iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtus, aid, assist, to help. I, **26**, 19.
iūxtā, *adv.*, next, near. II, **26**, 1.

K.

Kalendae, -ārum (**Kal**), F., the Calends, the first day of the Roman month. I, **6**, 16.

L.

L, *sign for* 50.
Laberius, -ī, M., *a Roman nomen. E. g.*, Q. Laberius Durus, *a tribune.* V, **15**, 13.
Labiēnus, -ī, M., *a Roman family name;* Titus Attius Labienus, *Caesar's most trusted lieutenant in the Gallic War. In the Civil War he aided Pompey and was slain at Munda. 45, B. C.* I, **10**, 8.
lābor, -ī, lapsus sum, slip; go wrong. V, **3**, 21.
labor, -ōris, M., toil, effort, striving; labor, hardship. I, **44**, 44; III, **5**, 13.
labōrō, 1. [**labor**, toil], *n.*, toil, work hard; be anxious, troubled, *or* perplexed; labor, suffer, be hard pressed. I, **31**, 6; IV, **26**, 11.
labrum, -ī, N., lip; edge. V, **14**, 8.
lāc, lactis, N., milk. IV, **1**, 15.
lacēssō, -ere, -īvī, -ītus [**laciō**, entice, move], *a.*, arouse, harass, provoke, irritate, attack. I, **15**, 10.
lacrima, -ae, F., tear. I, **20**, 1.
lacrimō, 1, weep.
lacus, -ūs, M., lake. I, **2**, 10.
laedō, -ere, laesī, laesus, hurt, damage.
laetātiō, -ōnis, F., rejoicing.
laetitia, -ae, F., joy. VII, **78**, 10.
laetus, -a, -um, joyful. III, **18**, 18.
languidē, *adv.*, faintly.
languidus, -a, -um, faint, sluggish.
languor, -ōris, M., faintness, lassitude.
lapis, -idis, M., stone. I, **46**, 3; II, **6**, 6.
laqueus, -ī, M., noose, snare.
largior, 4. [**largus**, large], give largely *or* freely; bribe. I, **18**, 12.
largiter, *adv.*, freely. I, **18**, 15.
largītiō, -ōnis, F., bribery. I, **9**, 5.
lassitūdō, -inis, [**lassus**, weary], F., weariness, faintness, exhaustion, lassitude. II, **23**, 3.
lātē [**lātus**, wide], *adv.* widely, extensively. I, **2**, 12.
latebra, -ae, F., hiding place.
lateō, -ēre, -uī, *n.*, escape notice, lurk, lie concealed *or* hidden. II, **19**, 16,
lātitūdō, -inis [**lātus**, wide], F., width, extent, breadth. I, **2**, 17.
Latovīcī, -ōrum, M., *a German tribe north of the Tulingi.* I, **5**, 9.
latrō, -ōnis, M., freebooter, bandit, robber. III, **17**, 9.
latrōcinium, -ī, N., brigandage. VI, **16**, 12.
lātus, -a, -um, broad, wide, extensive. I, **2**, 8.
lātus, *see* **ferō**.
latus, -eris [*cf.* **lātus**, wide], N., side; wing *or* flank *of an army.* I, **5**, 16.
laudō, 1, praise. V, **8**, 12.
laus, laudis, F., praise, commendation, renown, popularity. I; **40**, 14; IV, **3**, 1.

lavō, -āre (-ere,) lāvī, lautus(lōtus), wash; bathe. IV, **1**, 24.
laxō, 1, loosen. II, **25**, 17.
lēgātiō, -ōnis [lēgō, despatch], F., embassy, legation; commission; the office of an ambassdor. I, **3**, 9.
lēgātus, -ī, [lēgō, despatch, delegate], M., *one with delegated powers;* embassador, envoy, legate; lieutenant, legatus. I, **7**, 8.
legiō, -ōnis [legō, choose], F., a chosen number, a levy; a legion. I, **7**, 6.
legiōnārius, -a, -um [legiō, legion], relating to a legion, legionary. I, **42**, 18; II, **27**, 6.
Lemannus, -ī (*with or without* **lacus**), M., Lake Leman, Lake Geneva. I, **2**, 11.
Lemovīcēs, -um, M., VII, **75**, 15.
lēnis, -e, gentle, mild, smooth. IV, **28**, 4.
lēnitās, -tātis, F., smoothness. I, **12**, 13.
lēniter [lēnis], *adv.*, softly, smoothly, gently, gradually. II, **3**, 10.
Lēpontiī, -ōrum, M., IV, **10**, 5.
lepus, -oris, M., hare. V, **12**, 14.
Leucī, -ōrum, M., I, **40**, 35.
Levācī, -ōrum, M., *a Gallic tribe between the Marne and Moselle.*
levis, -e, light (*in weight*), slight; light-minded, fickle, inconstant. II, **10**, 2.
levitās, -tātis, F., restlessness. II, **1**, 11.
levō, 1, lighten, ease, relieve.
lēx, lēgis, F., law, statute, enactment. I, **1**, 4.
Lexoviī, -ōrum, M., *a Gallic tribe southwest of the Seine; capital,* Noviomagus, *now* Lisieux. III, **9**, 26.
libenter [libēns, willing], willingly, gladly. with pleasure. I, **44**, 17; III, **18**, 15.
līber, -era, -erum, unrestrained, free; undisputed. I, **44**, 42; V, **7**, 20.
līberālitās, -tātis [līber, free], F., *freedom in giving, etc.;* generosity. I, **18**, 7.
līberāliter [līberālis], graciously, generously, kindly. II, **5**, 1.
līberē [līber, free], *adv.*, freely, without restraint; generously. I, **18**, 5.
līberī, -ōrum [līber, free], M., *the free members of the household (as opp. to slaves)*; children. I, **11**, 7.
līberō, 1. [līber, free], *a.*, make *or* set free, release, deliver. IV, **19**, 15.
lībertās, -tātis [līber, free], F., freedom, liberty, independence. I, **17**, 10.
lībrīlis, -e, of a pound weight. VII, **81**, 12.
licentia, -ae, F., license; presumption; lawlessness.
liceor, 2. [liceō, offer for sale], *a.*, *n.*, bid for, bid (*at an auction*). I, **18**, 10.
licet, -ēre, licuit (licitum est), *impers.*, it is lawful, I have permission, it is permitted, one may, one is allowed; **licet mihi,** I may; **petere ut liceat,** to ask permission. I, **7**, 13.
Liger, -eris, M., the Loire. III, **9**, 3.
līgnātiō, -ōnis, F., procuring wood.
līgnātor, -ōris, M., wood-forager.
līlium, -ī, N., lily. VII, **73**, 23.
līnea, -ae, F., linen thread; line.
Lingonēs, -um, M., *A Gallic tribe in the Vosges near the sources of the Maas and Marne; capital, Andematunnum, the modern Langres.* I, **26**, 15.
lingua, -ae, F., tongue; dialect. language. I, **1**, 3.
lingula, -ae, F., a little tongue. III, **12**, 2.
linter, lintris, F., M., skiff, river *or* ferry boat. I, **12**, 4.
līnum, -ī, N., flax; canvass. III, **13**, 10.
Liscus, -ī, M., *a chief magistrate of the Aedui.* I, **16**, 12.
Litāviccus, -ī, M., *an Aeduan noble.*
līs, lītis, F., strife; lawsuit; damages. V, **1**, 25.

littera (**lītera**), **-ae**, F., a letter *of the alphabet, a written* sign, mark, *or* character; *in pl.*, letter, epistle, missive. I, **26**, 18.

lītus, -oris, N., sea shore, beach, shore. IV, **23**, 9.

locus, -ī, M., *and plural* **loca, -ōrum**, N., place, position, locality. I, **2**, 7.

longē [**longus**], *adv.*, far, far away, absent, distant. I, **1**, 7.

longinquus, -a, -um [**longus**, long], far off, distant, remote. I, **47**, 14; IV, **27**, 14.

longitūdō, -inis [**longus**], F., length, extent; long duration. I, **2**, 17.

longurius, -ī [**longus**], M., a long pole. III, **14**, 16.

longus, -a, -um, long. V, **8**, 14.

loquor, -ī, locūtus sum, *n.*, speak, talk, converse. I, **20**, 21.

lōrīca, -ae, F., corselet; parapet. VII, **72**, 14.

Lūcānius, -ī, M., *a Roman nomen; e. g.*, Q. Lucanius, *a centurion.*

Lūcius, -ī, M., *a Roman praenomen.* I, **22**, 11.

Lucterius, -ī, M., *a chief of the Cadurci.*

Lugotorīx, -īgis, M., V, **22**, 8.

lūna, -ae [*for* †**lūc-na** *fr.* **lūceō**, give light], F., the moon. I, **50**, 15; IV, **29**, 1.

Lutētia, -ae, F., *the capital of the Parisii now* Paris.

lūx, lūcis, F., light. I, **22**, 1.

lūxuria, -ae, F., extravagance, profusion. II, **15**, 10.

M.

M., *abbrev. for praenomen* **Marcus.**

M, as numeral=1000.

māceria, -ae, F., enclosure, wall. VII, **69**, 9.

māchinātiō, -ōnis [**māchinor**, contrive], F., a mechanical contrivance, machine, engine, derrick. II, **30**, 7.

maestus, -a, -um, dejected. VII, **80**, 24.

magis, *comp. adv.* [**māgnus**], more, rather, in a higher degree. I, **13**, 17.

magistrātus, -ūs [**magister**, master], M., public office, magistracy; public officer, magistrate; body of officers, government. I, **4**, 10.

māgnitūdō, -inis, [**māgnus**, great], F., greatness, great size, extent, stature (*corporum*). I, **39**, 4; II, **12**, 12.

māgnō opere=**māgnopere** [**māgnus**,+**opus**, work], *adv., with great labor;* especially, greatly, exceedingly, earnestly. I, **13**, 15.

māgnus, -a, -um (*comp.*, **māior**, *superl.*, **māximus**), great (*in size, quantity*, or *degree*), large; abundant, much; important, extensive; **māgnī** (*gen. sing. neut.*), of great importance; **māgnīs itineribus**, by forced marches. I, **2**, 14.

māiestās, -tātis, F., greatness, honor.

māior, māius [*comp. of* **māgnus**], greater (*in degree, size, time, etc.*); older: *in pl. as subst.* (*with or without* **nātū**), ancestors. I, **13**, 16.

malacia, -ae, F., a calm *at sea.* III, **15**, 7.

male [**malus**, bad], badly, ill, adversely: 1 (*comp.* **pēius** (1); *sup.* pessimē). I, **40**, 39.

maleficium, -ī [**malum**, evil+**faciō**], N., doing evil, mischief, harm, injury. I, **7**, 11.

Mallius, -ī, M., *a Roman nomen. E. g.*, L. Mallius, *governor of further Spain*, 78 B. C. III, **20**, 7.

mālō, mālle, māluī [**magis**+**volō**, wish], *a., n.*, wish more *or* rather, prefer. III, **8**, 16.

mālus, -ī, M., mast, pole, beam. III, **14**, 17.

malus, -a, -um, *adj.*, evil, bad, injurious.

mandātum, -ī [**mandō**, enjoin command], N., charge, injunction order, command. I, **35**, 2; II **5**, 10.

mandō, 1. [**manus**+**dō**, give,], *a., give into one's hands:* entrust,

commit; enjoin, order, command. I, 12, 11.
Mandūbiī, -ōrum, M., VII. 68, 3.
Mandubracius, -ī, M. V, 20, 2.
māne, *indecl.*, N., morning: *as adv.*, in the morning. IV, 13, 12.
maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsus, *n.*, remain, continue, abide, stay. I, 36, 12; IV, 1, 11.
manipulāris, -e, of a maniple; *as subst.*, common soldier.
manipulus, -ī, [manus+pleō, fill], M., a handful (*of hay, about a pole, anciently used as a standard*), a company (*of two centuries, the third of a cohort*), maniple. II, 25, 17.
mānsuēfaciō, -ere, fēcī, factus, tame. VI, 28, 9.
mānsuētūdō, -inis, [mānsuētus, tame], F., tameness; gentleness, compassion. II, 14, 11.
manus, -ūs, F., the hand; **in manibus,** near at hand; *as the instrument of war*, force, courage; an armed troop, band, company. I, 25, 10.
Marcomanī, -ōrum, M., I, 51, 9.
Marcus, -ī, M., *a Roman praenomen.*
mare, -is, N., sea; **mare Oceanum,** the ocean. III, 7, 7.
maritimus, (-umus) -a, -um, *adj.*, of the sea, sea-, maritime, naval, on the sea: **aestus** (in the sea); **ora** (the sea shore). II, 34, 4.
Marius, -ī, M., I, 40, 14.
Mārs, -tis, M., Mars. VI, 17, 5.
mās, maris, masculine; *as subst.*, a male. VI, 26, 5.
matara, -ae, F., Celtic javelin. I, 26, 10.
māter, -tris, F., mother. I, 18, 15.
māterfamiliae, a matron. I, 50, 12.
māteria, -ae, māteriēs, -em (*only in nom. and acc. sing.*) [māter], F., matter, materials *of which anything is composed*, timber, *dressed for building.* IV, 17, 21.
māterior, 1. procure wood. VII, 73, 1.
Mātiscō, -ōnis, M., *a city of the Aedui, now* Macon. VII, 90, 13.
mātrimōnium, -ī, [māter], N., marriage, wedlock, matrimony: **in mātrimōnium dare,** to give in marriage; **in mātrimōnium dūcere,** to marry. I, 3, 17.
Matrona, -ae, M., the Marne. I, 1, 5.
mātūrē [*old abl. of* mātūrus], *adv.*, early, speedily. I, 33, 20; IV, 6, 2.
mātūrēscō, -ere, mātūruī, become ripe.
mātūrō, 1. [mātūrus, ripe], *a.*, *n.*, ripen, bring to maturity; quicken, hasten, accelerate. I, 7, 2.
mātūrus, -a, -um, ripe; of proper age, mature; timely, early. I, 16, 4.
māximē, *adv.*, in the highest degree, especially.
māximus, -a, -um, [*sup. of* māgnus], greatest, largest. I, 3, 3.
medeor, -ērī, remedy, cure.
mediocris, -cre [medius, the middle of], middling, ordinary, moderate. III, 20, 8.
mediocriter, *adv.*, moderately. I, 39, 8.
Mediōmātricēs, -um, (-ī, -ōrum), M., VI, 10, 7; VII, 75, 13.
mediterrāneus, -a, -um, midland, inland. V, 12, 11.
medius, -a, -um, in the middle *or* midst, in the middle of, intervening. I, 24, 4.
Meldī, -ōrum, M., V, 5, 3.
melior, *comparative of* **bonus.**
membrum, -ī, N., member of the body, limb. IV, 24, 10.
meminī, -isse, *def. a., n.*, remember, recollect. III, 6, 13.
memoria, -ae, [memor, mindful], F., recollection, memory. I, 7, 13.
Menapiī, -ōrum, M., *a Belgic tribe between the Meuse and Sheldt.* II, 4, 26.
mendācium, -ī, N., falsehood, fiction.
mēns, -entis, F., the thinking faculty, mind, intellect; thought,

purpose, determination. I, **39**, 9; III, **19**, 18.
mēnsis, -is, M., month. I, **5**, 8.
mēnsūra, -ae, F., measure. V, **13**, 13.
mentiō, -ōnis, F., naming, mention.
mercātor, -ōris, [mercor, trade], M., merchant, trader. I, **1**, 8.
mercātūra, -ae, F., trade. VI, **17**, 4.
mercēs, -ēdis, F., pay. I, **31**, 13.
Mercurius, -ī, M., Mercury. VI, **17**, 1.
mereō, *and* **mereor,** 2. *a.*, deserve, merit, be worthy of; win, earn. I, **11**, 6.
merīdiānus, -a, -um, of mid-day *or* noon. V, **8**, 15.
merīdiēs, -ēī, [*for* **medidiēs,** *from* **medius,** middle + **diēs**], M., the middle of the day, midday, noon; the south. I, **50**, 5; V, **13**, 4.
meritō, *adv.*, justly, deservedly.
meritum, -ī, [**mereor,** deserve], N., desert, service, merit, favor. I, **14**, 4.
Messāla, -ae, M., *a Roman family name*, Marcus Valerius Messala, *consul 61, B. C.* I, **2**, 2.
mētior, -īrī, mēnsus sum, *n.*, deal *or* measure out, distribute. I, **16**, 10.
Metiosēdum, -ī, N., *a town of the Senones, now* Melun.
Mētius, -ī, M., Marcus Metius, *an envoy of Caesar to Ariovistus.* I, **47**, 15.
metō, -ere, messuī, messus, mow. IV, **32**, 17.
metus, -ūs [metuō, fear], M., fear, dread, anxiety, apprehension. IV, **4**, 16.
meus, -a, -um, *adj. pron.* [*cf. oblique cases of* **ego**], of me, my, mine, my own. IV, **25**, 13.
mīles, -itis, M., soldier; private (*opp. to imperātor*), infantry (*opp. to equitēs*): **mīlitēs imperāre,** levy soldiers upon. I, **7**, 5.
mīlia, *see* **mīlle.**
mīlitāris, -e [mīles, soldier], of a soldier, military, martial: **rēs mīlitāris,** the science of warfare. I, **21**, 10.
mīlitia, -ae, F., military service. VI, **14**, 2.
mīlle, *num. adj.* (*indecl. in sing.*), a thousand; *pl.*, **mīlia (mīllia) -um,** N., thousands (*a subst., usually followed by part. gen.*): **mīlia passuum,** thousands of paces, miles. I, **2**, 17.
Minerva, -ae, F., Minerva. VI, **17**, 6.
minimē [minimus,] *superl. adv.*, least, very little; by no means, not at all. I, **1**, 8.
minimus, -a, -um, *superl. of* **parvus.**
minor, *comp. of* **parvus.**
Minucius, -ī, M., *a Roman nomen. E. g.*, L. Minucius Basilus, *commander of cavalry.* VII, **90**, 8.
minuō, -ere, -uī, minūtus [minus, less], *a.*, *n.*, lessen, impair, diminish, violate (**māiestātem**) settle, (**contrōversiās**). I. **20**, 7.
minus, *adv.*, less. 1, **2**, 12.
mīror, 1. *a.*, *n.*, wonder *or* marvel at, admire, be astonished. I, **32**, 6.
mīrus, -ā, -um [mīror, wonder at], strange, astonishing. I, **34**, 10.
miser, -era, -erum [maereō, be sad], wretched, miserable, pitiable, unfortunate, sad. I, **32**, 9; II, **28**, 10.
misericordia, -ae [misereō, pity + **cor,** the heart], F., pity, sympathy, mercy, compassion. II, **28**, 10.
miseror, 1. [**miser,** wretched], *a.*, bewail, lament over, deplore. I, **39**, 18.
mīssus, -ūs, M., sending, despatching.
mītissimē, *superl. adv.*, very mildly *or* gently.
mittō, -ere, mīsī, mīssus, *a.*, send, send off, let go, despatch; hurl, discharge. I, **7**, 8.
mōbilis, -e, changeable. IV, **5**, 3.
mōbilitās, -tātis [mōbilis, movable], F., movableness, activity,

speed; changeableness, fickleness, inconstancy. II, **1**, 11.

mōbiliter, *adv.*, easily. III, **10**, 8.

moderor, 1. [**modus**, limit], *a.*, limit, mitigate, temper control, guide, regulate. IV, **33**, 11.

modestia, -ae, F., moderation, self-control; propriety.

modo, *adv.* [**modus**, measure], *with measure* or *limit;* only, merely; even, just, at least, but: *of time*, just now, recently; **nōn modo . . . sed etiam**, not only, . . . but also. I, **16**, 4.

modus, -ī, M., measure, quantity, manner, method, style. I, **41**, 1; II, **31**, 3.

moenia, -ium, N., *pl.*, [**mūnio**,] defensive walls, ramparts, bulwarks, fortifications, defenses, a walled town. II, **6**, 6.

mōlēs, -is, F., mass; dike. III, **10**, 8.

molestē, *adv.*, with annoyance. II, **1**, 10.

mōlīmentum, -ī, N., effort; difficulty. I, **34**, 10.

molitus, -a, -um, *see* **molō.**

molliō, 4, soften, ease; weaken.

mollis, -e, soft, tender, yielding, inconstant. III, **19**, 17.

mollitia, -ae, F., weakness. VII, **77**, 15.

mollitiēs, ēī, F., timidity, weakness. VII, **20**, 15.

molō, -ere, -uī, -itus, grind. I, **5**, 8.

mōmentum, -ī, N., moment; importance. VII, **85**, 9.

Mona, -ae, F., the Isle of Man. V, **13**, 9.

moneō, 2. *a.*, warn, advise, admonish, teach. I, **20**, 19.

mōns, mōntis, M., mountain; mountain range. I, **1**, 22.

mora, -ae, F., delay. II, **15**, 7.

morbus, -ī, M., disease. VI, **16**, 3.

Morinī, -ōrum, M. II, **4**, 26.

morior, morī, mortuus sum, die. I, **4**, 10.

Moritasgus, -ī, M., *a Chief of the Senones.*

moror, 1. [**mora**, a delay], *n.*, delay, tarry, linger. I, **26**, 17.

mors, -tis, F., death. I, **4**, 11.

mōs, mōris, M., manner, custom, way: *pl.*, customs, morals, character. I, **4**, 2.

Mosa, -ae, M., the Meuse *or* Maas *a River of Belgic Gaul.* IV, **9**, 6.

mōtus, -ūs, [**moveō**, move], M., movement, motion; political movement, uprising. IV, **23**, 15.

moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus, *a.*, set in motion, move; excite, influence; occasion, remove, break up. I, **15**, 1.

mulier, -eris, F., woman, wife. I, **29**, 5.

mūliō, -ōnis, M., muliteer.

multitūdō, -inis, [**multus**], F., a great number, multitude. I, **2**, 15.

multō, 1. fine, mulct.

multō, *adv.*, by far, much.

multum, *adv.*, [*acc. of* **multus**, much], much, very, greatly, especially. III, **9**, 13.

multus, -a, -um, *comp.* **plūs**, *sup.* **plūrimus**, much; *pl.* many. I, **3**, 12.

mūlus, -ī, M., a mule.

Munātius, -ī, M., *a Roman nomen.* L. Munatius Plancus, *Caesar's lieutenant.*

mundus, -ī, M., universe; world. VI, **14**, 18.

mūnīmentum, -ī, N., fortification. II, **17**, 19.

mūniō, 4. [*cf.* **moenia**, walls], *a.*, defend with a wall, fortify, defend protect. I, **24**, 9.

mūnītiō, -ōnis, [**mūniō**, fortify], F., fortifying, fortifications, works intrenchments. I, **8**, 15.

mūnītus, *see* **mūniō.**

mūnus, -eris, N., duty, burden; present. I, **43**, 11; VI, 18, 7.

mūrālis, -e, [**mūrus**, wall, pertaining to a wall, mural. III, **14**, 16.

mūrus, -ī [*cf.* **moenia**], M., a wall, *esp.* a wall for defence. I, **8**, 5.

mūsculus, -ī, M., mantelet, VII, **84**, 3.

mutilus, -a, -um, maimed; without. VI, **23**, 3.

N.

nactus, -a, -um, *see* **nancīscor.**
nam, *conj.*, for, now: *introducing an explanation.* I, **12,** 13.
Namméius, -ī, M., *a noble Helvetian, sent as ambassador to Caesar.* I, **7,** 9.
Namnetēs, -um, M., III, **9,** 26.
namque [**nam,** for+ **-que**], *conj.*, for, indeed, for; *more emphatic than* **nam.** I, **38,** 6; III **13,** 1.
nancīscor, -ī, nactus (nanctus) sum, *a.*, get, obtain; meet with, find. I, **53,** 7; IV, **23,** 1.
Nantuātes, -um, M., *a Gallic people on the Loire, about* Nantes. III, **1,** 3.
Narbō, -ōnis, M., *a town of the Roman province, now* Narbonne. III, **20,** 10.
nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, *n.*, be born or produced; rise, spring up, proceed. II, **18,** 4.
Nasua, -ae, M. I, **37,** 8.
nātālis, -e, natal. VI, **18,** 4.
nātiō, -ōnis, [**nāscor,** be born], F., race, tribe, people, nation: *usually applied to a distant and barbarous people.* I, **53, 9;** II, **35,** 3.
nātīvus, -a, -um, native, natural.
nātūra, -ae, [**nātus,** birth], F., nature, constitution, character. I, **2,** 7.
nātus, -ūs [**nāscor,** be born], M., birth: **māiōrēs nātū,** greater by birth; elders, ancestors. II, **13,** 7.
nauta (*contr. of* **nāvita**), **-ae** [**nāvis**], M., sailor, seaman, mariner. III, **9,** 4.
nauticus, -a, -um, nautical. III, **8,** 4.
nāvālis, -e, naval. III, **19,** 14.
nāvicula, -ae [*dim of* **nāvis,** vessel], F., skiff, small vessel. I, **53,** 6.
nāvigātiō, -ōnis, [**nāvigō,** sail], F., sailing, voyage, navigation. III, **9,** 14.
nāvigium, -ī [**nāvigō,** sail], N., a sailing vessel, boat, craft; sailing, navigation. III, **14,** 18.
nāvigō, 1. [**nāvis+agō,** put in motion], *n.*, set sail, sail; proceed. III, **8,** 4.
nāvis, -is, F., ship, boat; **nāvis longa,** galley, ship of war; **nāvis onerāria,** a transport. I, **8,** 12.
nāvō, 1, do zealously. II, **25,** 20.
nē, (*a*), *conj. with subj.*, that . . . not, for fear that; not to; *after words of danger or fear*, that; (*b*), *adv.*, not; *with words of command*, do not, let not, not to; **nē . . . quidem** (*enclosing the expression emphasized*), not even. I, **4,** 7.
-ne, *enclitic.* I, **50,** 14.
nec, see **neque.**
necessāriō, *adv.* [*abl. cf.*, **necessārius**], unavoidably, under compulsion. I, **51,** 7; III, **14,** 19.
necessārius, -a, -um, needful, requisite, necessary; **necessāria, -ōrum,** necessities (of life), supplies; **necessārius, -ī,** kinsman, friend, client, patron. I, **11,** 9.
necesse, *indecl. adj.* [**nē+cēdō,** yield], unyielding; unavoidable, indispensible, necessary. IV, **5,** 11.
necessitās, -tātis, [**necesse,** necessary], F., necessity, constraint, compulsion. II, **11,** 17.
necessitūdō, -inis, F., intimacy. I, **43,** 15.
nec-ne, *conj.*, or not. I, **50,** 14.
necō, 1. [**nex,** death], *a.*, put to death, kill, murder. I, **53,** 23; III, **16,** 11.
nēcubi, *adv.*, lest anywhere.
nefārius, -a, -um, impious. VII, **77,** 8.
nefās, N., *indecl.*, an impious deed, sin.
neglegō, -ere, -lēxī, lēctus, [**nec+legō,** pick up, choose], *a.*, not heed, disregard, neglect. I, **35,** 19; III, **10,** 5.
negō, 1. [**nē+aiō,** say], *a.*, *n.*, say no, deny, refuse, say . . . not. I, **8,** 9.
negōtior, 1. carry on business, traffic.

negōtium, -ī, [**nec+ōtium,** leisure], N., concern, business, undertaking, matter; **negōtium dare,** employ, assign a matter; **quid negōtiī,** what business. I, **34,** 12; II, **2,** 5.

Nemetēs, -um, M., I, **51,** 9; VI, **25,** 4.

nēmō, *acc.* **neminem** [**nē+homō,** man], M., *no man;* no one, nobody. I, **18,** 11.

nēquāquam [**nec,**+*abl. of quisquam*], in no way, by no means, not at all. IV, **23,** 9.

neque (nec), *conj. and adv.*, [**nē+-que**], and not, not, nor; **neque (nec) . . . neque,** neither . . . nor. I, **4,** 11.

nē-quīquam (-quic(d)quam), *adv.*, in vain. II, **27,** 12.

nēquis, qua, quod (quid), *indef. pron.*, lest any one *or* anything, some one, etc. I, **20,** 2.

Nervicus, -a, -um, of the Nervii. III, **5,** 6.

Nerviī, -ōrum, M., *a Belgic tribe, between the (modern) Sambre and Schelde in Namur and Hennegau.* II, **4,** 26.

nervus, -ī, M., sinew, tendon, nerve; *in pl.*, energy, power. I, **20,** 7.

neu, II, **21,** 15. see **nēve.**

neuter, -tra, -trum (*gen.* **-trīus,** *dat.* **-trī**) [**ne+uter**], neither: *in pl.*, neither side, neither party. II, **9,** 6.

nēve (neu), *conj.*, [**nē+ve,** or], and not, nor; **nēve (neu) . . . nēve,** neither . . . nor. I, **26,** 19.

nex, necis [**necō,** slay], F., violent death, slaughter, murder; death. I, **16,** 14.

nihil (nīl) [cf. **nihilum** fr. **nē+hilum,** a whit, anything], N., *indecl.*, nothing; *acc. as adv.*, not at all, in no way. I, **11,** 13.

nihilō, *adv.*, by no means; none. I, **5,** 1.

nimis, *adv.*, too much, too.

nimius, -a, -um, beyond measure, too great, excessive.

nisi, *conj.*, **nē—sī,** if] *not if;* if not, if . . . not, except, unless. I, **22,** 9.

Nitiobrogēs, -um, M., *an Aquitanian tribe.* VII, **75,** 14.

nītor, -ī, nīsus (nīxus) sum, *n.*, rest, *or* rely upon; climb, advance; strive, endeavor. I, **13,** 17.

nix, nivis, F., snow.

nōbilis, -ē, [**nōscō,** know], well known, famous, noted. I, **2,** 1.

nōbilitās, -tātis [**nōbilis**], F., celebrity; noble birth, nobility; the nobility, the nobles. I, **2,** 3.

noceō, -ēre, -uī, *n.*, injure, hurt. III, **13,** 18.

noctū, *adv.*, by night. I, **8,** 14.

nocturnus, -a, -um [**nox,** night], at night, nocturnal. I, **38,** 15; V, **11,** 11.

nōdus, -ī, M., knot; joint. VI, **27,** 3.

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī (**nē+volō,** wish], *a., n.*, not wish, be unwilling; *imper.* **nōlī (nōlite)** *with infin.* do not. I, **16,** 8.

nōmen, -inis, N., name; reputation, renown; account. I, **13,** 19.

nōminātim, [**nōminō,** name], by name, expressly, in detail. 1, **29,** 3.

nōminō, 1. [**nōmen,** name], *a.*, call by name, name, mention, give a name to. II, **18,** 3.

nōn [*contr. fr.* **nē ūnum**], not, no. I, **3,** 19.

nōnāgintā, *card. num.*, ninety. I, **29,** 9.

nōn-dum, *adv.*, not yet. I, **6,** 12.

nōnnihil, *adv.*, somewhat. III, **17,** 16.

nōn-nūllus, -a, -um [**nūllus,** none], some, several: *in pl. as subst.*, some, several. I, **6.** 8.

nōn-numquam(nunquam),[**numquam,** never], sometimes. I, **8,** 14.

nōnus, -a, -um, *ord. num.*, ninth. II, **23,** 1.

Nōrēia, -ae, F., *a town in Noricum, now* Neumarkt. I, **5,** 12.

Nōricus, -a, -um, Norican, belonging to Noricum (*a country between*

the Danube and the Alps). I, **5**, 12.
nōscō, -ere, nōvī, nōtus, *a.*, learn, become acquainted *or* familiar with; *in pf.*, have learned (*and hence*) know. III, **9**, 21.
noster, -tra, -trum [**nōs**], our, ours, our own; *in pl. as subst.*, our men, our troops. I, **1**, 3.
nōtitia, -ae, F., fame; knowledge. VI, **21**, 10.
nōtus, -a, -um, known; famous; notorious. IV, **24**, 10.
novem, *card. num.*, nine.
novitās, -tātis, F., newness; strangeness. IV, **34**, 1.
Noviodūnum, -ī, N., (1) *the capital of the Suessiones, the modern* Soissons, (2) *a city of the Bituriges, now* Nouan; (3) *a city of the Aedui, now* Nevers. II, **12**, 4.
novus, -a, -um, new, novel, fresh: **rēs novae**, a change of government, revolution; **novissimus, -a, -um,** *sup.*, latest, last: **āgmen** (*the rear*). I, **9**, 7.
nox, noctis, F., night.
noxia, -ae, F., VI, **16**, 12.
nūbō, -ere, nūpsī, nūptum, marry. I, **18**, 18.
nūdō, 1, *a.*, strip, (expose, lay bare, deprive of. II, **6**, 7.
nūdus, -a, -um, naked, unclothed; unprotected. I, **25**, 11.
nūllus, -a, -um, *gen.*, **nūllīus** [**nē**+**ūllus**], not any, none, no: *as subst.*, no one, none. I, **7**, 12.
num, *interrog. implying a negative reply.* I, **14**, 8.
nūmen, -inis, N., divinity. VI, **16**, 7.
numerus, -ī, M., number, quantity; account, estimation. I, **3**, 4.
Numidae, -ārum, M., *the Numidians, a people of North Africa, in modern Algiers.* II, **7**, 2.
nummus, -ī, M., coin. V, **12**, 9.
numquam (nun-) *adv.*, [**nē**+**umquam,** ever], never. I, **44**, 23, V, **16**, 11.
nunc, *adv.*, now, at present, at this time. I, **31**, 16; II, **4**, 21.
nūntiō, 1. [**nūntius**], *a.*, announce, send news, report, make known. I, **7**, 1.
nūntius, -ī, M., messenger, courier; message, tidings; command, injunction. I, **26**, 18.
nūper [*for* **novum -per** *fr.* **novus,** new], newly, recently, not long ago. I, **6**, 8.
nusquam, nowhere, in no case. VII, **17**, 19.
nūtus, -ūs [**nuō,** nod], M., nod, sign, command. I, **31**, 46; IV, **23**, 15.

O.

ob, *prep. with acc.*, on account of, for; *in comp.*, opposed to, to, against; **ob eam (hanc) causam,** for this reason; **quam ob rem,** wherefore. I, **4**, 8.
ob-aerātus, -a, -um, in debt: *as subst.*, debtor. I, **4**, 6.
ob-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, extend. II, **8**, 12.
ob-eō, īre, iī(īvī), itus, go to, meet.
ob-iciō, icere, iēcī, iectus [**iaciō,** throw], *a.*, hurl *or* place in the way, set against *or* in front; expose; throw up, *in p. p. as adj.*, opposed, lying in the way. I, **26**, 8.
obiectus, -a, -um, opposite. V, **13**, 16.
obitus, -ūs, M., destruction. II, **29**, 15.
oblātus, *see* **offerō.**
oblīquē, *adv.*, obliquely. IV, **17**, 24.
oblīquus, -a, -um, slanting. VII, **73**, 14.
oblīvīscor, -ī, oblītus sum [**op**+**līveō,** become dark], *a.*, *have the mind darkened;* forget. I, **14**, 8.
ob-secrō, 1. [**sacer,** sacred], *a.*, implore (*on sacred grounds*), entreat, beseech. I, **20**, 2.
obsequentia, -ae, F., complaisance, compliance.
ob-servō, 1. [**servō,** give heed], *a.*, heed, observe, mark, regard celebrate. I, **45**, 10; VI, **18**, 5.
obses, -idis [**ob**+**sedeō,** sit, M., F., hostage; pledge, security. I, **9**, 11.

obsessiō, -ōnis, F., blocking up, blockade, siege.
obsideō, -ēre, sēdī, sessus [**sedeō**, sit], *a.*, sit in the way of, obstruct, beset, besiege, blockade. III, **23**, 17.
obsidiō, -ōnis, [**ob-sideō**, sit at, besiege], F., siege, investment, blockade; peril, oppression. IV, **19**, 14.
ob-sīgnō, 1. sign. I, **39**, 19.
ob-sistō, -ere, stitī, stitus, oppose, resist.
obstinātē, *adv.*, resolutely. V, **6**, 12.
ob-stringō, -ere, strinxī, strictus [**stringō**, tie], *a.*, bind, hold (*under obligations*). I, **9**, 9.
ob-struō, -ere, strūxī, strūctus, build against, stop up, obstruct.
ob-temperō, 1. [**temperō**, rule], *n.*, be subject to rule, attend to, comply with, obey. IV, **21**, 12.
obtestor, 1. [**testor**, witness], *a.*, call to witness, appeal to, invoke. IV, **25**, 11.
obtineō, -ēre, -uī, tentus [**teneō**, hold], *a.*, hold (*against the claim of another*), retain, obtain, possess; maintain, have control of. I, **1**, 15.
ob-veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus [**veniō**, come], *n.*, come in the way, come to, meet; fall to one's lot. II, **23**, 4.
ob-viam, *adv.*, in the way, to meet, in face of, towards.
occāsiō, -ōnis [**ob+cadō**, fall], F., occasion, opportunity. III, **18**, 10.
occāsus, -ūs, [**oc-cidō**, fall down, set], M., falling *or* going down, setting: *with* **sōlis**, sunset, the west. I, **1**, 23.
oc-cidō, -ere, cidī, cāsus, fall *or* go down, set; be slain. V, **13**, 6.
oc-cīdō, -ere, cīdī, cīsus [**caedō**, cut, slay], *a.*, cut *or* strike down, destroy; cut off, kill, slay. I, **7**, 14.
occultātiō, -ōnis, F., concealment. VI, **21**, 11.
occultē, *adv.*, secretly. VII, **83**, 11.
occultō, 1. [*freq. of* **occulō**, hide], *a.*, hide, secrete; keep secret, conceal. I, **27**, 12.
occultus, -a, -um [**occulō**, cover up], covered, concealed, secret: **in occultō** (N. *as subst.*), in a secluded *or* secret place. I, **32**, 11; II, **18**, 7.
occupātiō, -ōnis [**occupō**, seize, occupy], F., seizing, occupying; occupation, business, engagement. IV, **16**, 20.
occupō, 1. [**ob+capiō**], *a.*, seize upon, take possession of; hold, possess. I, **3**, 13.
oc-currō, -ere, currī (cucurrī), cursus [**ob+currō**, run], *n.*, run in the way of, run to meet, meet; happen upon, encounter; suggest itself, occur, oppose. I, **33**, 20.
ōceanus, -ī, M., the great *or* outer sea, the ocean: *used once as adj., with* **mare**. I, **1**, 17.
Ocelum, -ī, N., *a town of the Graioceli in Piedmont, now Oulx or Usseau.* I, **10**, 15.
octāvus, -a, -um, *ord. num.*, eighth. II, **23**, 10.
octingentī, -ae, -a, *card. num.*, eight hundred. IV, **12**, 3.
octō(VIII), *card. num.*, eight. I, **21**, 3.
octōdecim(XVIII), *card., num.*, eighteen. I, **23**, 5.
Octōdūrus, -ī, M., III, **1**, 14.
octōgintā(LXXX), *card. num.*, eighty. I, **2**, 17.
octōnī, -ae, -a, *distr. num.*, eight at a time, eight. VII, **73**, 21.
oculus, -ī, M., eye. I, **12**, 3.
ōdī, ōdisse, *def.* (*pf. with signif. of pres.*), *a.*, hate, detest. I, **18**, 19.
odium, -ī, N., hatred.
of-fendō, -ere, fendī, fēnsus [**ob+fendō**, strike], *a.*, strike against, wound, harm: **animum offendere**, wound the feelings. I, **19**, 12.
offēnsiō, -ōnis, F., wounding; offence. I, **19**, 19.
offerō, (obf-), offerre, obtulī, oblātus, *a.*, bring in one's way, present, offer, exhibit; proffer, bestow. II, **21**, 2.

officium, -ī [**opus,** work+**faciō**], N., service, function, allegiance, duty; official duty, business. I, **40,** 7; III, **11,** 4.

Ollovicō, -ōnis, M., *a chief of the Nitiobroges.*

omittō, -ere, mīsī, missus, [**ob**], *a.*, let go *or* fall; give up, neglect; pass over, omit. II, **17,** 22.

omnīnō, *adv.* [**omnis**], altogether, wholly, in all. I, **6,** 1.

omnis, -e, all, every, the whole. I, **1,** 1.

onerārius, -a, -um [**onus,** burden], fitted for burdens, transport: *sc.* **nāvis,** transportship, freight-ship. IV, **22,** 12.

onerō, 1, load; burden. V, **1,** 6.

onus, -eris, N., load, burden. II, **30,** 11.

opera, -ae [*fem. of* **opus,** work], F., work, service, pains, attention. II, **25,** 20.

opīniō, -ōnis [**opīnor,** think], F., way of thinking, opinion, reputation, impression, expectation. II, **3,** 2.

oportet, -ēre, -uit [**opus,** need], *impers.* it is necessary, needful, becoming, proper; (*I, you, he, etc.*) must, ought. I, **4,** 3.

oppidānus, -a, -um [**oppidum**], of *or* pertaining to a town: *in pl. as subst.* townspeople, inhabitants of a town. II, **7,** 3.

oppidum, -ī, N., town; stronghold. I, **5,** 4.

op-pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus, place against *or* opposite; oppose.

oportūnē, *adv.*, seasonably. IV, **22,** 6.

oportūnitās (oppor), -tātis [**opportūnus,** fit], F., fitness, convenience, suitableness; fit time, favorable position *or* opportunity; advantage. III, **12,** 12.

opportūnus, -a, -um [**ob+portus,** before the port], fit, convenient, opportune. I, **30,** 10; II, **8,** 6.

oppositus, *see* **oppōnō.**

opprimō (obp-), -ere, pressī, pressus [**premō,** press], *a.*, press against *or* down; overwhelm, overpower, destroy; fall upon, surprise. I, **44,** 35; III, **2,** 7.

op-pūgnātiō, -ōnis [**oppūgnō,** storm], F., a storming, besieging, assault, attack. II, **6,** 4.

op-pūgnō, 1. [**ob+pūgnō,** fight], *a.*, fight against, fight, attack, assault, storm. I, **5,** 13.

ops, ōpis [**Ops,** the goddess of plenty], F., power, help, strength; *pl.*, wealth, resources; authority, influence. I, **20,** 7.

optātus, -a, -um, wished, longed for, desirable.

optimē, I, **45,** 3; VII, **71,** 7. *superl. of* **bene.**

optimus, *superl. of* **bonus.**

opus, operis, N., work, labor; military works, fortifications; a work (*of art, literature, or architecture*); **nātūrā et opere,** by nature and art; **māgnō opere,** *adv. phrase*, much, greatly, earnestly; **tantō opere,** so much, so greatly; **quantō opere,** how much, how greatly. I, **8,** 6.

opus, *indecl.* [*cf.* **opus,** work, deed], need, necessity; *used in the predicate with the Nom. of the thing needed:* **opus est,** it is necessary. I, **34,** 6; II, **8,** 17.

ōra, -ae, F., border, margin; coast, shore. III, **8,** 2.

ōrātiō, -ōnis [**ōrō,** speak], F., a speaking, speech, language; a speech, address, argument. I, **3,** 21.

ōrātor, -ōris, M., speaker; envoy. IV, **27,** 6.

orbis, -is, M., *anything circular;* orb, ring, circle: **orbis terrārum,** the world. IV, **37,** 6.

Orcynia, -ae, F., VI, **24,** 7.

ōrdō, -inis, M., row, order, arrangement, series, rank. I, **40,** 2; II, **11,** 3.

Orgetorīx, -īgis, M., *a chief of the Helvetii.* I, **2,** 2.

oriēns, -entis, *pres. part. of* **orior**

orior, orīrī, ortus, *n.*, arise, begin, spring up, rise: **oriēns sōl,** the rising sun, the east. I, **1,** 19.

ōrnāmentum, -ī [ōrnō, adorn], n., mark of honor, distinction. I, **44**, 14.
ōrnō, 1, adorn, furnish, equip: *in p. p. as adj.*, equipped, furnished, fitted out. III, **14**, 6.
ōrō, 1. [**ōs,** mouth], *a.*, *n.*, speak, plead, entreat. I, **20**, 14.
ortus, -ūs, m., rising; beginning.
ōs, ōris, n., mouth; face, features, countenance.
Osismī, -ōrum, m., *a Gallic people in modern Brittany.* II, **34**, 2.
os-tendō, -ere, tendī, tentus [ob +**tendō,** stretch], *a.*, stretch towards *or* in the way; present, show, point out, declare. I, **8**, 12.
ostentātiō, -ōnis, f., show, display; pretence.
ostentō, 1, show, exhibit.
ōtium, -ī, n., leisure; inactivity; peace.
ōvum, -ī, n., egg. IV, **10**, 11.

P.

pābulātiō, -ōnis [**pābulum,** fodder], f., getting fodder, foraging. I, **15**, 12.
pābulātor, -ōris, m., forager. V, **17**, 6.
pābulor, 1, forage. V, **17**, 4.
pābulum, -ī [*cf.* **pāscō,** feed *and* **pānis,** bread], n., food, fodder, sustenance. I, **16**, 5.
pācō, 1. [**pāx,** peace], *a.*, make peaceful, subdue, pacify: *in p. p. as adj.*, peaceful, quiet, subdued. I, **6**, 8.
pactum, -ī, n., arrangement; manner. VII, **83**, 11.
Padus, -ī, m., the Po, *the principal river of Italy.*
Paemānī, -ōrum, m., *a Belgic tribe.* II, **4**, 28.
paene, *adv.*, nearly, almost. I, **11**, 6.
pāgus, -ī, [*cf.* **pangō,** fix], m., *a place with fixed boundaries;* village; district, province, canton. **Tigurīnus pāgus,** *one of the four Helvetian cantons, the country of the Tigurini, perhaps in modern Zurich.* I, **12**, 12.
palam, *adv.*, openly. VI, **18**, 7.
palma, -ae, f., palm; palm-tree. VI, **26**, 4.
palūs, -ūdis, f., marsh, morass, swamp. I, **40**, 26; II, **9**, 1.
palūster, -tris, -tre, marshy.
pandō, -ere, pandī, passus (pānsus) [*cf.* **pateō,** extend], *a.*, *n.*, spread *or* stretch out, extend: **passīs capillīs,** with disheveled hair; **passīs manibus,** with outstretched hands. I, **51**, 12; II, **13**, 11.
pār, paris, equal, alike, equal to, a match for: **est,** it is fit *or* proper; **pār atque,** the same as. I, **28**, 17.
parcē, *adv.*, sparingly. VII, **71**, 16
parcō, -ere, perpercī, parsus, spare. VI, **28**, 5.
parēns, -entis, m., f., parent. V, **14**, 10.
parentō, 1, honor *or* avenge deceased parents *or* kindred.
pāreō, 2. [*cf.* **pariō,** bring forth], *n., come forth, be clear;* obey, submit, yield to, comply with, be subject to. **I, 27, 6.**
pariō, -ere, peperī, partus, bring forth; procure, obtain.
Parīsiī, -ōrum, m., *a Gallic tribe about modern Paris.* VII, **75**, 12.
parō, 1, *a.*, provide means, prepare, get ready, procure; *p. p. as adj.*, ready, prepared. I, **5**, 3.
pars, partis, f., part, piece, portion, share; party, faction; direction, side; place, district. I, **1**, 1.
partim, *adv.* [*acc., of* **pars**], partly, in part; **partim . . . partim,** some . . . others. II, **1**, 8.
partior, 4. [**pars,** part], *a.*, part, share, divide, distribute. III, **10**, 10.
partus, *see* **pariō.**
parum, *adv.* [**parvus,** little], little, too little, not enough, not very. III, **18**, 14.
parvulus, -a, -um [*dim. of* **parvus,** little], small, insignificant, slight:

ab parvulīs, from childhood. II, 30, 2.
parvus, -a, -um, *comp.*, minor, *superl.* minimus, little, small, insignificant. I, 18, 9.
passim, *adv.*, in all directions. IV, 14, 14.
passus,-ūs [*p. p. of* pandō, extend], M., a pace, *a measure of 4 feet, 10 1-4 inches, (five Roman feet)*. I, 2, 17.
passus, *see* pandō *and* patior.
patefaciō, facere, fēcī, factus [pateō, open], *a.*, make *or* throw open, open. II, 32, 12.
patefīō, fierī, factūs, *pass. of* patefaciō.
patēns, -entis [pateō], open, exposed. I, 10, 6.
pateō, -ēre, -uī, *n.*, lie *or* be open; stretch out, extend. I, 2, 18.
pater, -tris, M., father; *in pl.*, ancestors; senators.
pater-familiae, patris-familiae, father *or* head of a family. VI, 19, 7.
patienter, *adv.*, patiently. VII, 77, 15.
patientia, -ae, F., suffering; endurance. VI, 24, 10.
patior, patī, passus sum, *a.*, *n.*, bear, endure, suffer, permit, allow. I, 6, 13.
patrius, -a, -um, paternal; ancestral. II, 15, 14.
patrōnus, -ī, M., protector, defender, patron.
patruus, -ī, M., a paternal uncle.
paucus, -a, -um, (*usually in pl.*) [*cf.* paulus, little], little, few; *in pl. as subst.*, a few.
paucitās, -tātis [paucus, few], F., fewness, scarcity, small number. III, 2, 10.
paulātim [paulum, a little], *adv.*, little by little, by degrees, gradually. I, 33, 12; II, 8, 10.
paulisper, *adv.* [paulum, a little], a short time, a little while. II, 7, 6.
paulō, *adv.* [paulus, little], a little, somewhat. II, 20, 4.
paululum, *adv.*, a very little. II, 8, 7.
paulum, *adv.*, a little, somewhat. I, 50, 2; II, 25, 21.
pāx, pācis [pācō, pacify], F., peace. I, 3, 6.
peccō, 1, sin. I, 47, 15.
pectus, -oris, N., the breast.
pecūnia, -ae, F., property; money. VI, 17, 4.
pecus, -oris, N., cattle, a herd: *esp. of* small cattle, sheep. III, 29, 7.
pedālis, -e, of a foot *in thickness or diameter*. III, 13, 7.
pedes, peditis [pēs, foot], M., foot soldier: *pl.*, infantry, foot. I, 42, 12; II, 24, 2.
pedester, -tris, -tre [pēs], on foot, pedestrian; pedestrēs cōpiae, infantry. II, 17, 15.
peditātus, -ūs [pedes, footman], M., foot soldiers, infantry. IV, 34, 16.
Pedius, -ī, M., *a Roman nomen. E. g.* Q. Pedius, *one of Caesar's lieutenants.* II, 2, 4.
pēius, I, 31, 31, *comp. of* male.
pellis, -is, F., a hide, a skin (*either on or off the body of an animal*): sub pellibus in tents, *i. e.* in the field. II, 33, 3.
pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsus, *a.*, beat, strike, push, drive; drive out, expel, repulse. I, 7, 14.
pendō, -ere, pependī, pēnsus, *a.*, weigh, weigh out; pay, pay out (*as money was weighed in payment*); suffer (*punishment*). I, 36, 13; V, 22, 17.
penes, *prep. with acc.*, with, in the power of.
penitus, *adv.*, inwardly; deeply; thoroughly.
per, *prep. with acc.*, through, throughout, by means of, through the agency of, on account of: *in composition*, through, very, thoroughly. I, 3, 23.
per-agō, -ere, ēgī, āctus, lead through; complete. V, 1, 14.
per-angustus, -a, -um, very narrow.
per-cipiō, -ere, cēpī, ceptus, acquire; perceive. V, 1, 21.

percontātiō, -ōnis, F., inquiry. I, **39,** 3; V, **13,** 12.
per-currō, -ere, currī, cursus, run along *or* over. IV, **33,** 12.
per-cutiō, -ere, cussī, cussus, strike *or* thrust through, slay.
per-discō, -ere, didicī, learn thoroughly. VI, **14,** 13.
perdō, -ere, didī, ditus [**dō,** give], *a.*, give over, ruin; *in p. p. as adj.*, desperate, ruined. III, **17,** 9.
per-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus [**dūcō,** lead], *a.*, lead through *or* along, conduct, convey; bring over, carry along, construct, extend. I, **8,** 6.
perendinus, -a, -um, after to-morrow.
per-eō, īre, iī(īvī), itus [**eō,** go], *n.*, go through, pass away, be destroyed, perish. I, **53,** 11; IV, **15,** 7.
per-equitō, 1. [**equitō,** ride], *n.*, ride about, ride hither and thither, ride through *or* around. IV, **33,** 2.
per-exiguus, -a, -um, very little. V, **15,** 10.
per-facilis, -e, very easy. I, **2,** 5.
per-ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus [**ferō,** bear], *a.*, bear *or* carry through, convey; announce, report; submit to, endure. I, **17,** 8.
per-ficiō, -ere, fēcī, fectus [**faciō**], *a.*, make *or* do thoroughly *or* completely; achieve, accomplish, perfect. I, **3,** 18.
perfidia, -ae [**per-fidus,** faithless], F., treachery, falsehood, dishonesty, perfidy. IV, **3,** 12.
per-fringō, -ere, frēgī, frāctus [**frangō,** break], *a.*, break *or* burst through. I, **25,** 5.
perfuga, -ae, M., refugee, deserter. I, **28,** 5.
per-fugiō, -ere, fūgī, [**fugiō,** flee], *n.*, flee for refuge, take refuge in; desert. I, **27,** 7.
perfugium, -ī, N., refuge. IV, **38,** 5.
pergō, -ere, perrēxī, perrēctus, go on. III, **18,** 20.
perīclitor, 1. [**perīculum,** trial, danger], *a.*, try, test, prove; endanger, risk. II, **8,** 4.
perīculōsus, -a, -um [**perīculum,** danger], full of danger, dangerous, perilous. I, **33,** 14.
perīculum, -ī, N., experiment, trial; risk, hazard, danger. I, **5,** 7.
perītus, -a, -um, tried, experienced, skilled; familiar with, accustomed to. I, **21,** 10.
perlātus, *see* **per-ferō.**
perlegō, -ere, lēgī, lēctus, 3, *a.*, read through, read. V, **48,** 16.
per-luō, -ere, luī, lūtus, bathe. VI, **21,** 12.
per-māgnus, -a, -um, very great, vast.
per-maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsus [**maneō,** remain], *n.*, stay through *or* to the end; hold out, endure. I, **32,** 7; III, **8,** 15.
per-misceō, -ēre, miscuī, mīxtus, mix thoroughly, mingle.
per-mittō, -ere, mīsī, mīssus [**mittō,** send], *a.*, let go *or* loose; give up *or* over, entrust, commit. I, **30,** 15; II, **3,** 5.
permīxtus, *see* **permisceō.**
per-moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus [**moveō,** move], *a.*, move thoroughly, rouse, incite, instigate. I, **3,** 1.
per-mulceō, -ēre, mulsī, mulsus, soothe. IV, **6,** 11.
perniciēs, -ēī, F., destruction. I, **20,** 8.
per-paucī, -ae, -a [**paucus,** few], very few, but very few. I, **6,** 5.
perpendiculum, -ī, N., plummet. IV, **17,** 12.
per-petior, -ī, pessus sum, suffer, bear patiently.
perpetuō [**perpetuus,** continuous], *adv.*, continuously, constantly; forever. I, **31,** 26; VII, **41,** 9.
perpetuus, -a, -um [**perpetuō,** cause to continue], continuous, uninterrupted, perpetual, permanent; entire: **in perpetuum,** forever. I, **35,** 13; III, **2,** 16.
per-quīrō, -ere, quīsīvī, quīsītus, ask after, search for.

per-rumpō, -ere, rūpī, ruptus [**rumpō**, break], *n.*, *a.*, break through, force one's way *or* passage. I, **8**, 15.

per-scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, write out, register.

per-sequor, sequī, secūtus sum [**sequor,** follow], *a.*, follow through *or* on, continue in, pursue, follow up; avenge (**mortem**). I, **13**, 11.

persevērō, 1. [**per-sevērus,** very strict], *n.*, *abide by, adhere to;* persist, persevere. I, **13**, 11.

per-solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtus, pay (in full). I, **12**, 18.

perspiciō, -ere, spēxī, spectus [*obsol.* **speciō,** look], *a.*, look *or* see through, discern, perceive; view, examine, inspect. I, **40**, 9; II, **11**, 7.

per-stō, -āre, stitī, stātūrus, stand fast *or* firm, persist.

per-suādeō, -ēre, suāsī, suāsus [**suādeō,** advise], *a.*, *n.*, advise prevailingly; convince, persuade. I, **2**, 4.

per-terreō, 2. [**terreō,** frighten], *a.*, frighten thoroughly, terrify greatly. I, **18**, 30.

pertinācia, -ae [**pertināx** (*fr.* **pertineō,** hold through), *that holds fast*], F., perseverence; obstinacy, pertinacity. I, **42**, 9.

per-tineō, 2. *no p. p.* [**teneō,** hold], *n.*, hold *or* reach to, extend; pertain, have reference to. I, **1**, 9.

pertulī, *see* **perferō.**

perturbātiō, -ōnis, F., confusion. IV, **29**, 11.

per-turbō, 1. [**turbō,** disturb], *a.*, disturb greatly, throw in confusion, confound, embarass, disturb. I, **39**, 9; II, **11**, 18.

per-vagor, 1, range through, overrun.

per-veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus [**veniō,** come], *n.*, come through; come to, arrive at, reach; attain to, come into possession of. I, **7**, 4.

pēs, pedis, M., the foot; a foot (*as a measure*); **pedibus,** on foot; **pedem referre,** retreat. I, **8**, **5**.

petō, -ere, -īvī(iī), -ītus, *a.*, seek, aim at, make for, attack, try *or* go to get; ask, entreat: **petere ut liceat,** to ask permission. I, **19**, 19.

Petrocoriī, -ōrum, M., *a Gallic tribe north of Dordogne.* VII, **75**, 13.

Petrōnius, -ī, M., *a nomen. E. g.*, Marcus Petronius, *a centurion of the 8th legion.*

Petrosidius, -ī, M., *a nomen. E. g.*, Lucius Petrosidius, *a standard bearer.*

phalanx, -ngis (*Gr. acc. pl.* **phalangas**), F., a compact band of troops, phalanx. I, **24**, 12.

Pictonēs, -um, *a Gallic tribe, south of the Loire.* III, **11**, 12.

pietās, -tātis, F., devotion, loyalty.

pīlum, -ī, N., heavy javelin, pike. I, **25**, 4.

pīlus, -ī, M., century, centurion; **prīmī pīlī, centuriō,** chief centurion. III, **5**, 6.

pinna, -ae, F., pinion; battlement. VII, **72**, 14.

Pirustae, -ārum, M., V, **1**, 15.

piscis, -is, M., fish. IV, **10**, 10.

Pīsō, -ōnis, M., *a Roman family name,* Marcus Papius Piso Calpurnianus, *Consul with Messala, 61, B. C.* I, **2**, 2.

pix, picis, F., pitch.

placeō, 2. [*cf.* **plācō,** appease], *n.*, please, satisfy; *often impers.* seem good, be decided, resolved *or* determined. I, **34**, 1; III, **3**, **14**.

placidē, *adv.*, gently, calmly.

plācō, 1, appease. VI, **16**, 7.

Plancus, -ī, M., *cognomen of* L. Minutius, *Caesar's lieutenant.*

plānē [**plānus,** even, plain], plainly, clearly, distinctly. III, **26**, 9.

plāniciēs (**plānit-**), **-ēī** [**plānus,** level], F., level ground, flat surface, plain. I, **43**, 1; II, **8**, 7.

plānus, -a, -um, even, level, flat, plain. III, **13**, 2.

plēbs, (**plēbēs**), **plēbis,** F., populace, common people. I, **3**, **16**.

plēnē, *adv.*, fully. III, **3**, 2.

plēnus, -a, -um [**pleō** *in* **compleō**, fill], full, complete. III, **2**, 8.
plērīque, -aeque, -aque, *adj. pl.*, very many, the most of. II, **4**, 3.
plērumque, *adv.* [**plērusque,** the greater part], for the most part, commonly, frequently. I, **40**, 22; II, **30**, 9.
Pleumoxiī, -ōrum, M., *a Belgic tribe, dependents of the Nervii.*
plumbum, -ī, N., lead. V, **12**, 10.
plūrimum [*sup. of* **multum**], most, very much, exceedingly, especially. I, **3**, 20.
plūrimus and **plūs,** *see* **multus,** I, **3**, 12.
pluteus, -ī, M., shed; breastwork. VII, **72**, 15.
pōculum. -ī, N., cup. VI, **28**, 14.
poena, -ae [**pūniō,** punish], F., punishment, penalty. I, **4**, 3.
poeniteō, -ēre, 2, repent. *Always impers.*, it repents, (one) is sorry. IV, **5**, 10.
pollex, -icis, M., the thumb. III, **13**, 8.
polliceor, 2. [**prō**+**liceor,** bid, offer], *a.*, *n.*, hold forth, offer, promise. I, **14**, 17.
pollicitātiō, -ōnis [**polliceor,** promise], F., promise, offer. III, **18**, 4.
Pompēius, -ī, M., *a Roman gentile name, esp.* Cn. Pompeius Magnus, *triumvir with Caesar and Crassus, defeated by Caesar at Pharsalia, and murdered in Egypt by Ptolemy, 48 B. C.* IV, **1**, 2.
pondus, -eris, N., weight. II, **29**, 9.
pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus [for **posnō** *fr.* **por** (**prō**)+**sinō,** let], *a.*, place, put, set aside; appoint, station, regard; pitch (**castra**): *pass.*, be situated, dependent. I, **16**, 4.
pōns, pōntis, M., bridge. I, **7**, 6.
populātiō, -ōnis, F., ravaging. I, **15**, 12.
populor, 1. *a.*, devastate, ravage, lay waste. I, **11**, 3.
populus, -ī, M., the people, the mass, the crowd; a people *or* nation. I, **3**, 12.
por-rigō, -ere, rexī rēctus, extend. II, **19**, 12.
porrō, *adv.* farther on; furthermore, then.
porta, -ae [**portō,** carry], F., *the place left for an entrance, over which the plow was carried marking the limits of a city, hence* gate. II, **24**, 6.
portō, 1. *a.*, carry, transport, bring. I, **5**, 6.
portōrium, -ī, N., toll, tariff. I, **18**, 9.
portus, -ūs [**portō,** carry; *cf.* **porta**], M., harbor, haven, port. III, **8**, 6.
poscō, -ere, poposcī [*cf.* **precor,** ask], *a.*, ask, demand, request (*stronger than* **petō,** *less strong than* **flāgitō**). I, **27**, 7.
positus, *see* **pōnō.**
possessiō, -ōnis, [**possīdō,** take possession of], F., taking possession of, seizing; possession, occupation; a possession, property. I, **11**, 12.
possideō, -ēre, sēdī, -sessus [**potis,** able+**sedeō,** sit], *a.*, *sit as master*; hold possession of, occupy, hold, possess. I, **34**, 8; II, **4**, 18.
possīdō, -ere, sēdī, sessus, take possession of, seize. IV, **7**, 11.
possum, posse, potuī [**potis,** able, +**sum**], *n.*, be able, can; to have power *or* influence; **plūrimum posse,** to be very powerful. I, **2**, 13.
post, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, after; behind, back, beneath, afterwards. I, **5**, 1.
posteā, *adv.* [**post,** after], after this, afterwards. I, **21**, 11.
posteāquam (**posteā quam**), *adv.* [**posteā,** afterwards], after. I, **31**, 14; IV, **19**, 5.
posterus, -a, -um [**post,** after], after, following, next; *in* M. *pl. as subst.*, posterity; *sup.* **postrēmus** *or* **postumus.** I, **15**, 1.
post-pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus, postpone; neglect. V, **7**, 14.

post-quam, *conj.*, after that, after, as soon as. I, **24**, 1.

postrēmō, *adv.* finally, at last. VII, **87**, 2.

postrēmus, *see* **posterus**.

postrīdiē, *adv.* [**posterus**, following+**diēs**], on the day following, the next day: **postrīdiē ēius diēī**, on the next *or* following day. I, **23**, 1.

postulātum, -ī [**postulō**, demand], N., demand, claim, requirement, request. IV, **11**, 15.

postulō, 1, [**poscō**, demand], *a.*, request, ask, demand. I, **31**, 30; II. **4**, 16.

potēns, -entis [*pr. p. of* **possum**], *adj.*, powerful, influential. I, **3**, 23.

potentātus, -ūs, M., chief power. I, **31**, 11.

potentia, -ae [**potēns**, powerful], F., power, authority, influence, dominion. I, **18**, 5.

potestās, -tātis [**possum**, be able], F., ability, power; dominion; authority. I, **16**, 15.

potior, -īrī, -ītus sum [**potis**, powerful], *a.*, become master of, get control *or* possession of; obtain, possess. I, **2**, 6.

potius, *comp. adv.*, rather. I, **45**, 4; II, **10**, 15.

prae, *prep. with abl.*, before, in front of; in comparison with; *in comp.*, before, on account of, surpassing, very. II, **30**, 10.

prae-acūtus, -a, -um, sharp in front *or* at the end, sharpened, pointed. II, **29**, 9.

praebeō, 2. [**prae+habeō**], *a.*, hold out, proffer, offer, furnish, present. II, **17**, 20.

prae-caveō, -ēre, cāvī, cautus, take precautions. I, **38**, 5.

prae-cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus, [**cēdō**, go], *a.*, go before; precede, surpass, excell. I, **1**, 12.

praeceps, -cipitis [**caput**, head], headforemost, headlong; steep, precipitous, hasty, precipitate. II, **24**, 8.

praeceptum, -ī, N., direction, injunction, command.

praecipiō, -ere, cēpī, ceptus [**capiō**, take], *a.*, take *or* obtain beforehand, anticipate; instruct, bid, order. I, **22**, 9.

praecipitō, 1. [**praeceps**, headlong], *a.*, throw *or* hurl headlong, precipitate. IV, **15**, 5.

praecipuē [**praecipuus**, special], *adv.*, especially, particularly, chiefly. I, **40**, 49.

praecipuus, -a, -um, especial.

prae-clūdō, -ere, clūsī, clūsus, shut *or* cut off. V, **9**, 14.

praecō, -ōnis, M., herald.

Praecōnīnus, -ī, M., III, **20**, 6.

prae-currō, -ere, currī, cursus, run before, precede.

praeda, -ae [**praehendō**, *fr.* **prehendō**, seize], F., *property seized in war;* booty, plunder, spoil. IV, **34**, 12.

prae-dicō, 1. [**dicō**, proclaim], *a.*, proclaim publicly *or* before others; publish, state, declare. I, **39**, 5; IV, **34**, 12.

praedor, 1. [**praeda**, booty], *a.*, make booty, plunder, rob, despoil. II, **17**, 16.

prae-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, lead *or* construct before. VII, **69**, 10.

praefectus, -ī [**praeficiō**, set over], M., overseer, commander, officer, general (**equitum**); governor of a province. I, **39**, 10; III, **7**, 9.

prae-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātus [**prae+ferō**], *a.*, place before, esteem above, prefer to (**quam**): **sē alicui** (*show one's self better than*). II, **27**, 7.

praeficiō, -ere, fēcī, fectus [**faciō**, make], *a.*, make *or* place before *or* over, put in command of. I, **10**, 8.

prae-fīgō, -ere, fīxī, fīxus, fix before. V, **18**, 6.

prae-metuō, -ere, fear beforehand, be apprehensive.

prae-mittō, -ere, mīsī, mīssus [**mittō**, send], *a.*, send before *or*

in advance; dispatch. I, **15**, 4.
praemium, -ī [prae-emō, buy *or* get before others], N., advantage, distinction, prize, reward. I, **43**, 14; III, **18**, 4.
prae-occupō, 1, seize upon beforehand, preoccupy.
prae-optō, 1, prefer. I, **25**, 10.
prae-parō, 1. [parō, prepare], *a.*, prepare beforehand, provide. III, **14**, 15.
prae-pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus [pōnō, place], place *or* put before *or* over, put in command of. I, **54**, 7.
prae-rumpō, -ere, ruptus [rumpō, break], *a.*, break off, tear away. III, **14**, 18.
prae-saepiō(sēp-), -īre, psī, -tus, hedge *or* block up. VII, **77**, 31.
prae-scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *a.*, *n.*, write beforehand; order, direct, prescribe. I, **36**, 5; II, **20**, 10.
praescrīptum, -ī, N., command. I, **36**, 4.
praesēns, -entis, *pres. part. of* **praesum.**
praesentia, -ae, F., presence, the present moment: **in praesentiā**, for the moment, at the moment. I, **15**, 12.
prae-sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, feel beforehand, presage.
prae-saepiō, -īre, -psī, -ptus, [saepiō, hedge in], *a.*, hedge *or* block up, barricade. VII, **77**, 31.
praesertim [prae+serō, join], *placed foremost;* particularly, especially. I, **16**, 17.
praesidium, -ī [praeses, guard], N., guard, garrison; safeguard, defence; redoubt, stronghold. I, **8**, 6.
praestō, *adv.*, at hand, ready.
prae-stō, stāre stitī, stātūrus (stitus) [stō, stand], *a*, *n.*, stand *or* place before, show, supply, furnish; be superior *or* preeminent, excel, surpass. *Impers.* **praestat**, it is better. I, **2**, 6.
prae-sum, esse, fuī, futūrus [prae, before], *n.*, be before *or* over, be in command of, rule over. I, **16**, 13.
praeter, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, along by, beyond, contrary to; except, besides. I, **11**, 13.
praetereā, *adv.* [praeter, beyond], beyond this, besides, furthermore. I, **34**, 7; III, **17**, 9.
praeter-eō, īre, īvī(iī), itus [praeter, beyond+eō], *a.*, *n.*, go beyond *or* past, pass by; omit, neglect, reject: *in p. p. as adj.*, past: *as subst.*, the past. I, **20**, 20.
praeteritus, *see* **praetereō.**
praeter-mittō, -ere, mīsī, mīssus, send *or* let go by; let pass, overlook. IV, **13**, 11.
praeter-quam, *adv.*, besides, except. I, **5**, 6.
praetor, -ōris, M., president; general, judge. I, **21**, 6.
praetōrius, -a, -um, praetorian. I, **40**, 48.
prae-ūrō, -ere, ussī, ūstus, burn in front *or* at the end. VII, **73**, 17.
prae-vertō, -ere, -tī, -sus, precede; anticipate; prefer.
prāvus, -a, -um, perverse, wrong.
premō, -ere, pressī, pressus, *a.*, press, oppress, burden, annoy, press upon, press hard. I, **52**, 14; II, **24**, 15.
prēndō, -ere, -dī, -ēnsus, seize, grasp. I, **20**, 14.
pretium -ī, N., price. I, **18**, 9.
prex, precis, (*in sing. only in abl.*) [precor, pray], F., prayer, request, entreaty; a good wish; imprecation. I, **16**, 18.
prīdiē, *adv.* [pri- in prior+diēs], on the day before. I, **23**, 9.
prīmipīlus, -ī [prīmus+pīlus, a century *or* maniple], M., the first *or* chief centurion. II, **25**, 8.
prīmō, [*abl. of* **prīmus**, first], *adv.*, at first, in the first place. I, **31**, 13; II, **8**, 1.
prīmum, *adv.* [prīmus, first], first, at first, in the first place: **cum prīmum**, as soon as. I, **25**, 1.

prīmus, -a, -um, *superl. adj:* (*comp.* **prior**), first; foremost, chief. I, **10**, 19.

prīnceps, -ipis [**prīmus+capiō**], M., *taking the first place;* chief, most prominent, principal; *as subst.* chief *or* principal person, leader. I, **7**, 9.

prīncipātus, -ūs [**prīnceps,** chief], M., chief place *or* position; chief authority, leadership. I, **3**, 15.

prior, prius, *comp. adj.* [*superl.* **prīmus**], former, previous, prior, first: *in pl. as subst.,* those in advance. II, **11**, 16.

prīstinus, -a, -um [for **priustinus** fr. **prior**], former, primitive, original. I, **13**, 12.

prius. *adv.* [**prior,** former], before, sooner, previously; **prius quam** (**priusquam**), before. I, **19**, 12.

priusquam, *adv.* sooner than, before. I, **19**, 12.

prīvātim, *adv.* [**prīvātus,** private], privately, individually, as private citizens. I, **17**, 4.

prīvātus, -a, -um [*p. p. of* **prīvō,** set apart], apart from *publicity;* private, personal, individual. I, **5**, 5.

prō, *prep. with abl.* [*cf.* **prae**], before, in front of; for, in behalf of; on account of, in consideration of, in proportion to. I, **2**, 15.

probō, 1. [**probus,** good], *a.*, consider good, approve; test, prove; show, demonstrate. I, **3**, 18.

prō-cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus [**cēdō,** go], *n.*, go forth *or* forward, proceed, advance. I, **38**, 1; II, **20**, 4.

Procillus, -ī, M., *a cognomen, see* **Valerius.**

prō-clīnō, 1, bend forward, incline, totter.

prō-cōnsul, -is, M., a proconsul, *one who at the close of his consulship in Rome became governor of a province: one invested with the powers of a consul or military governor.* III, **20**, 7.

procul, *adv.*, afar off, from afar, aloof. II, **30**, 5.

prōcumbō, -ere, cubuī, cubitum [**cubō,** lie down], *n.*, lean *or* fall forwards, sink *or* lie down, fall. II, **27**, 2.

prō-cūrō, 1, care for; expiate. VI, **13**, 9.

prō-currō, -ere, currī, cursus [**currō,** run], *n.*, run *or* rush forward, rush out, charge. I, **52**, 6.

prōd-eō, -īre, -iī, itus [**prō+eō,** go], go *or* come forth, go forward, advance. I, **48**, **17**.

prōditiō, -ōnis, F., betrayal, treason.

prōditor, -ōris, M., traitor. VI, **23**, 17.

prōdō, -dere, -didī, ditus, *a.*, give forth, publish, betray, transmit, hand down: **memoriam:** preserve, hand down (*to posterity*); **memoriā prōditum:** told in tradition, handed down. I, **13**, 20.

prō-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus, [**dūcō,** lead], *a.*, lead out *or* forth, bring forth, produce; draw up (**cōpiās**); prolong, protract. I, **48**, 7; III, **17**, 13.

proelior, 1. [**proelium,** battle], *n.*, join *or* engage in battle, fight. II, **23**, 11.

proelium, -ī, N., battle, contest, engagement. I, **1**, 13.

profectiō, -ōnis [**proficīscor,** set out], F., a setting out, start, departure. I, **3**, 8.

prōfectus see **prōficiō.**

profectus see **proficīscor.**

prō-ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, bring forth, produce. VII, **82**, 9.

prōficiō, -ere, fēcī, fectus, [**faciō**], *a.*, *n.*, make progress, advance; profit, effect, accomplish. III, **26**, 12.

proficīscor, -ī, profectus sum, *n.*, set out, start, depart; go, proceed. I, **3**, 2.

pro-fiteor, -ērī, fessus sum, avow. VI, **23**, 14.

prō-flīgō, 1. [*obsol.* **flīgō,** strike], *a.*, strike to the ground; overcome; put to flight. II, **23**, **10**.

prō-fluō, -ere, flūxī, fluxus, flow forth. IV, **10,** 1.
prōfugiō, -ere, fūgī, [fugiō, flee], *n.*, flee from *or* before, run away, escape. I, **31,** 29; II, **14,** 9.
prō-gnātus, -a, -um [nāscor, be born], born, descended, sprung. II, **29,** 11.
prōgredior, gredī, gressus sum [gradior, step], *n.*, step *or* go forward, come *or* march out, advance, proceed, go. I, **50,** 3; II, **10,** 10.
pro-hibeō, 2. **[habeō],** *a.*, have, hold, *or* keep from *or* forth; restrain; keep, prevent. I, **1,** 14.
prō-iciō, -ere, iēcī, iectus [iaciō, throw], *a.*, throw forward *or* away, project; cast; reject, abandon. I, **27,** 3.
pro-inde, *adv.*, hence, accordingly, therefore.
prōlātus, *see* **prōferō.**
prō-mineō, 2, project, extend.
prōmiscuē, *adv.*, in common. VI, **21,** 12.
prō-mittō, -ere, mīsī, mīssus, send forward, let grow. V, **14,** 7.
prō-moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus [moveō, move], *a.*, move forward, advance, extend, enlarge; put off. I, **48,** 1; II, **31,** 5.
prō-munturium, -ī, N., headland. III, **12,** 2.
prōmptus, -a, -um, ready. III, **19,** 16.
prōnē, *adv.*, sloping downwards. IV, **17,** 12.
prō-nūntiō (nūnciō), 1. **[nūntiō,** announce], *a.*, announce *or* set forth, publish; tell, relate, report. IV, **5,** 8.
prope, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, near, nigh, hard by, at hand; nearly, almost. I, **22,** 10.
prō-pellō, -ere, pulī, pulsus [pellō, drive], *a.*, drive *or* thrust forward, propel, urge on; put to flight, rout, dislodge. I, **15,** 9.
properō, 1. **[properus,** quick], *a.*, *n.*, hasten, accelerate; make *or* do with haste. II, **11,** 4.
propīnquitās, -tātis [propīnquus, neighboring, near], F., nearness, vicinity; nearness of blood, relationship. II, **4,** 11.
propīnquus, -a, -um [prope, near], near, neighboring, close at hand; *in pl. as subst.* relatives. I, **16,** 16.
propius, *compar. adv.* **[prope,** near], nearer. I, **42,** 3; IV, **9,** 3.
prō-pōnō, -ere, posuī, positus [pōnō, place], *a.*, place *or* put forward, set forth, present, propose, explain, declare, promise, offer, purpose. I, **17,** 2.
proprius, -a, -um, one's own. VI, **22,** 3.
propter [*for* **propiter** *fr.* **prope,** near], (1) *adv.* near, at hand. (2) *prep. with acc.*, near, close to; on account of, because of, for; by means of, through. I, **9,** 2.
propter-eā, *conj.*, on this account, therefore. I, **1,** 7.
prōpūgnātor, -ōris, M., defender.
pro-pūgnō, 1. *n.*, fight forth, make sallies; fight for, defend. II, **7,** 5.
prōpulsō, 1.. [*freq. of* **prōpellō,** drive forth *or* away], *a.*, drive forth *or* back, repel. I, **49,** 11; VI, **15,** 4.
prōra, -ae, F., prow. III, **13,** 4.
prō-ruō, -ere, ruī, rutus, overthrow. III, **26,** 8.
prō-sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, [sequor, follow], follow (*in a friendly or hostile manner*), accompany, attend, continue, pursue. II, **5,** 1.
prōspectus, -ūs, [prōspiciō, look forth], M., a lookout, view, prospect. II, **22,** 5.
prōspīciō, -ere, spēxī, spectus [speciō, look], *n.*, look forward, look out; look to beforehand, see to, provide for. I, **23,** 5.
prō-sternō, -ere, strāvī, strātus, prostrate. VII, **77,** 27.
prō-sum, prōdesse, prōfuī, be for *or* of use, benefit.
prō-tegō, -ere, tēxī, tectus, cover.

prō-terreō, 2, frighten off. VII, **81**, 13.
prōtinus, *adv.* [**tenus**, *prep. fr.* **teneō**, hold], continuously; forthwith, immediately. II, **9**, 7.
prō-turbō, 1. [**turbō**, disturb], *a.*, drive in confusion, dislodge, repulse. II, **19**, 20.
prō-vehō, **-ere**, **vēxī**, **vēctus**, set sail. V, **8**, 7.
prō-veniō, **-īre**, **vēnī**, **ventus**, come forth, arise, be produced.
prōventus, **-ūs**, M., result. VII, **80**, 6.
prō-videō, **-ēre**, **vīdī**, **vīsus** [**videō**, see], *a.*, *n.*, see beforehand, foresee, care for, provide. II, **22**, 7.
prōvincia, **-ae** [**prō-vincō**, extend by conquest], F., charge *or* administration *of a province;* province. I, **1**, 7.
prōvinciālis, **-e**, of a province.
prō-volō, 1, fly *or* rush forth. II, **19**, 19.
proximē, *adv.*, last, lately. I, **24**, 6.
proximus **-a**, **-um**, [*superl, fr.* **propior**, nearer], nearest, next to, next; last. I, **1**, 10.
prūdentia, **-ae**, F., foresight. II, **4**, 22.
Ptianiī, **-ōrum**, M., III, **27**, 3.
pūbēs, **-eris**, grown up, adult; *pl. as subst.*, adults.
pūblicē, [**pūblicus**, public], at state cost, on behalf of the state, officially. I, **16**, 2.
pūblicō, 1, adjudge to public use; confiscate.
pūblicus, **-a**, **-um**, [*for* **populicus** *fr.* **populus**, people], of the state *or* people, common, public. I, **12**, 19.
Pūblius, **-ī**, M., *a praenomen.* I, **21**, 10.
pudeō, 2, *gen. impers.*, be ashamed, feel shame.
pudor, **-ōris** [**pudet**, it shames], M., shame, modesty, sense of shame *or* honor. I, **39**, 14.
puer, **-erī**, M., boy, child; son: *in pl.*, children (*of both sexes*); **ā puerō** (**puerīs**), from childhood. I, **29** 5.
puerīlis, **-e**, childish. VI, **18**, 8.
pūgna, **-ae** [**pūgnō**, fight], F., a fight, battle; contest, dispute. I, **25**, 6.
pūgnō, 1. [*cf.* **pugil**, a boxer], *n.*, fight, give battle, contend; oppose; strive. I, **25**, 9.
pulcher, **-chra**, **-chrum**, beautiful; noble. VII, **77**, 40.
Puliō, **-ōnis**, M., Publius Pulio, *a centurion of Cicero's legion.*
pulsus, *see* **pellō**.
pulsus, **-ūs**, M., stroke. III, **13**, 15.
pulvis, **-eris**, M., dust. IV, **32**, 6.
puppis, **-is**, F., stern *or* poop *of a ship.* III, **13**, 4.
pūrgō, 1. [**pūrus**, clean+**agō**], *a.*, clean, clear, excuse, exonerate; *in p. p. as adj.*, freed from blame *or* suspicion, exonerated. I, **28**, 3.
putō, 1. *a.*, *cleanse;* clear up, adjust; reckon, estimate, think. I, **7**, 15.
Pȳrēnaeus, **-a**, **-um**, Pyrenean, Pyrenees. I, **1**, 21.

Q.

quā, *adv.* [*abl. fem. of* **quī**], by which way *or* road, in which direction *or* place, where. I, **6**, 4.
quadrāgēnī, **-ae**, **-a**, *distr. num.* forty each. IV, **17**, 14.
quadrāgintā (**XL**), *card. num.* forty. I, **2**, 17.
quadringentī, **-ae**, **-a**, *card. num.* four hundred. I, **5**, 4.
quaerō, **-ere**, **quaesīvī**, **quaesītus**, *a.*, seek *or* look for, inquire, ask, examine, investigate. I, **18**, 4.
quaestiō, **-ōnis**, F., inquiry. VI, **19**, 10.
quaestor, **-ōris** [**quaerō**, seek], M., a quaestor, *one of a class of officers in charge of the public revenues or the finances of the army;* quartermaster. I, **52**, 2; IV, **13**, 10.
quaestus, **-ūs**, M., gain. VI, **17**, 3.
quālis, **-e** [**quis**], *interrog.*, of what

sort, kind *or* nature, what; *rel.*, of such a sort, kind *or* nature, such as, as. I, **21**, 3.

quam, *adv. with interrog.*, how, how much; *with comp.*, as, than; *with sup.*, as possible; *with expressions of time*, after; **quam diū,** as long as. I, **3**, 3.

quam-ob-rem, *adv. interrog.*, (I, **50**, 10) *and rel.*, wherefore, why. I, **34**, 1.

quamvīs, *adv.*, however. IV, **2**, 12.

quandō, *indef. adv.*, ever. III, **12**, 7.

quantō opere (quantopere), *adv.*, how greatly, how much. II, **5**, 5.

quantus, -a, -um [*cf. interrog.* **quam,** how?], *a. interrog.*, how much? how great? how large? what? *b. relative*, as much, as great (large) as; **tantum . . . quantum,** as much (great *or* far) as; *in acc. as adv.*, how much; *in abl.*, as, as much as. I, **17**, 13.

quantusvīs, -avīs, -umvīs, however great.

quārē [*abl. of* **quī** *and* **rēs**], *adv.*, *by which thing;* wherefore, why. I, **13**, 18.

quartus, -a, -um, *ord. num.*, fourth. I, **12**, 7.

qua-si, *adv.*, as if, just as if.

quattuor, *card. num.*, four. I, **12**, 13.

quatuor-decim, *card. num.*, fourteen. I, **36**, 18; VII, **74**, 2.

-que, (*always affixed to the word or some part of the expression it connects*), and. I, **1**, 8.

quem-ad-modum, *adv.*, in what way *or* manner, just as, as, how. 1, **36**, 2; III, **16**, 7.

queror, -ī, questus sum, *a.*, *n.*, complain, bewail, lament. I, **16**, 19.

quī, quae, quod, *rel. pron.*, who, which, what, that: *often implying an antecedent*, he who *or* those who. I, **1**, 1.

quī-cumque (-cunque), quae-cumque, quod-cumque, *indef. rel. pron.* [**cumque,** ever], whoever, whatever, everyone who, everything that. I, **31**, 51; IV, **7**, 7.

quid, *adv. interrog.*, why? I, **49**, 19.

quīdam, quaedam, quoddam (quiddam), *indef. pron.*, a certain, some; some one (body *or* thing). I, **30**, 13; II, **17**, 4.

quidem, *adv.*, (*emphasizing the expression before it*) indeed, at any rate, at least, truly: **nē . . . quidem,** not even. I, **16**, 5.

quiēs, -ētis, F., repose. VI, **27**, 4.

quiētus, -a, -um, in repose, undisturbed, peaceful.

quīn [**quī+nē**], *conj.*, *by which not*, that not, but that; *after negative words of doubt or hindrance*, but what, that, from, to; **quīn etiam,** nay even, moreover. I, **3**, 20.

quīnam, *see* **quisnam.**

quīncunx, -uncis, M., five-twelfths. VII, **73**, 14.

quīndecim [**quīnque,** five+**decem**], *indecl. num.*, fifteen. I, **15**, 13.

quīngentī, -ae, -a [**quīn-que,** five +**centum**], five hundred. I, **15**, 8.

quīnī, -ae, -a [**quīnque**], *distrib. num. adj.*, five each, five at a time. I, **15**, 15.

quinquāgintā, *card. num.*, fifty. I, **41**, 12; II, **4**, 24.

quīnque, *card. num.*, five. I, **10**, 12.

quīntus, -a, -um (v), *ord. num.*, fifth. I, **6**, 16.

Quīntus, -ī, M., *a praenomen.* I, **45**, 6; II, **2**, 3.

quis, quae, quid (quod), (1), *interrog. pron.*, who? which? what? (2), *indef. pron.* (*especially after* **sī, nisi, num, nē**), anyone, anything, any; somebody, some, something. I, **7**, 20.

quisnam, (quīnam), quaenam, quodnam (quidnam), *interrog. pron.*, who then? what pray? II, **30**, 7.

quis-piam, quae-piam, quid-(quod-)piam, any. VI, **17**, 14.

quisquam, quaequam, quidquam (quicquam), any; any person *or* thing. I, **19**, 12.

quisque, quaeque, quid(quic) que (*adj.*, quodque), *gen.* cūiusque, *universal indef. pron.*, each one, each; every one, every, all. I, **5**, 8.

quisquis, quaeque, quodquod *or* **quidquid**, *or* **quicquid**, *indef. pron.*, whoever, whatever, each, all. I, **19**, 12; II, **17**, 15.

quī-vīs, quaevīs, quidvīs (quod-) [volō, wish], *indef. pron.* who *or* what you wish; any one, anything, any whatever, any. II, **31**, 12.

quō [*old dat. of* quī], *adv.*, (1) *interrog.*, whither? to what place? (2), *rel.* whither, to *or* into which, as far as; (3) *indef.* (*after* sī, nē, *etc.*) if any whither, if to any place. I, **48**, 17; II, **8**, 17.

quo-ad, *adv.*, as long as, as far as; till, until. IV, **11**, 18.

quod, *conj.* [*adv. acc. of the neuter of* quī], as to which, in that, that, because. I, **1**, 7.

quō-minus, *conj.*, so that not, that not, from. I, **31**, 25; IV, **22**, 17.

quoniam, *adv.* [quom=cum+iam, now], when now; since. I, **35**, 3; V, **3**, 16.

quoque, *adv. following the word emphasized*, also, too, even. I, **1**, 12.

quōque-versum, *adv.*, in every direction. III, **23**, 5.

quot, *adj.*, *indecl.*, how many.

quotannīs [quot, how many, every+annus], *adv.*, every year, yearly. I, **36**, 13; IV, **1**, 9.

quotiēns [quot, how many], how many times, how often, as often as. I, **43**, 17.

R.

rādīx, -īcis, F., root; *in pl. with* mōntis *or* collis, foot, base. I, **38**, 12; VI, **27**, 9.

rādō, -ere, rāsī, rāsus, scrape; shave. V, **14**, 8.

rāmus, -ī, M., branch, bough, twig. II, **17**, 18.

rapiditās, -tātis, F., swiftness. IV, **17**, 5.

rapīna, -ae, F., plunder. I, **15**, 12.

rārus, -a, -um, loose, thin; scattered, far apart; few. III, **12**, 15.

ratiō, -ōnis [reor, reckon], F., reckoning, account, estimate; design, plan, course, means; motive, principle, reason. I, **28**, 10.

ratis, -is, F., raft; bark, vessel. I, **8**, 12.

Rauricī, -ōrum, M., *a tribe on the upper Rhine.* I, **5**, 9.

rebelliō, -ōnis [rebellō, renew war], F., renewal of war *or* hostilities. III, **10**, 4.

Rebilus, -ī, M., VII, **83**, 7.

re-cēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus, go back, retire.

recēns, -entis, *adj.*, recent, fresh, new, vigorous. I, **14**. 8.

re-cēnseō, -ēre, cēnsuī, cēnsus, review. VII, **76**, 10.

receptāculum, -ī, N., retreat, refuge.

receptus, *see* **re-cipiō.**

receptus, -ūs [recipiō, withdraw], M., *a place of withdrawal*, retreat, refuge, shelter. IV, **33**, 8.

recessus, -ūs, M., going back, retreat.

re-cidō, -ere, cidī, recāsūrus, fall *or* spring back; return; relapse.

reciperō, 1, recover, regain. III, **8**, 9.

re-cipiō, -ere, cēpī, ceptus [capiō, take], *a.*, take *or* get back, recover: **sē**, withdraw, retire, retreat; **ad sē**, take to one's self, accept, receive. I, **5**, 13.

re-citō, 1, read out, rehearse.

re-clīnō, 1, bend back. VI, **27**, 7.

rēctē, *adv.*, rightly. VII, **80**, 16.

rēctus, -a, -um, straight. VI, **25**, 5.

recuperō, 1, regain. VII, **76**, 7.

recūsō, 1. [re+causa, cause], *a.*, *n.*, *make cause against* or *objection to;* refuse, reject, repudiate, ob-

ject to: **quōminus**, refuse to. I, **31**, 25; III, **22**, 9.

rēda, -ae, F., a wagon (*with four wheels*). I, **51**, 10.

red-dō, -ere, reddidī, redditus [**re-+dō**], *a.*, give back, return, restore; make *or* cause to be, render. I, **35**, 10; II, **5**, 16.

redemptus, *see* **redimō.**

red-eō, īre, īvī (iī), itus [**re-+eō**, go], *n.*, go *or* turn back, return; be brought *or* reduced; fall to, descend. I, **29**, 10.

redigō, -ere, ēgī, āctus [**agō**, put in motion], *a.*, drive *or* bring back; get together, collect; render, reduce. I, **45**, 7; II, **14**, 5.

redimō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptus [**emō**, buy], *a.*, buy back, repurchase; buy up, purchase. I, **18**, 10.

redintegrō, 1. *a.*[**re-+integrō**, make whole], make whole again, renew, restore, revive. I, **25**, 18.

reditiō, -ōnis, F., return. I, **5**, 7.

reditus, -ūs, M., a going back, returning, return. IV, **30**, 9.

Redonēs, -um, M., *a Gallic people in Brittany near the modern* Rennes. II, **34**, 3.

re-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus [**dūcō**, lead], *a.*, lead *or* bring back, draw back; restore, replace. I, **28**, 2.

re-ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus [**ferō**, bear], bear *or* carry back; give back, restore; **sē referre** (*or* **pedem referre**), go back, retreat; **grātiam referre**, return thanks. I, **25**, 12.

reficiō, -ere, fēcī, fectus [**faciō**], *a.*, remake, renew, refresh, recruit (*body or mind*). III, **5**, 13.

refringō, -ere, frēgī, frāctus [**frangō**, break], *a.*, break in *or* open; break, destroy. II, **33**, 18.

re-fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitus, flee for safety, escape.

Rēgīnus, -ī, M., *see* **Antistius**, VII. **83**, 7.

regiō, -ōnis [**regō**, direct, mark (*by a line*)], F., direction, line; boundary; quarter, district, region, country. I, **44**, 36; II, **4**, 19.

rēgius, -a, -um, of a king, royal.

rēgnō, 1, reign, rule.

rēgnum, -ī [**rēx**, king], N., kingly *or* royal authority, royal power; sovereignty; kingdom. I, **2**, 3.

regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctus, guide, direct, control. III, **13**, 13.

re-gredior, -ī, gressus sum, go *or* turn back, retreat.

rēiciō, -ere, iēcī, iectus [**iaciō**, hurl], *a.*, hurl *or* drive back, repel; cast down *or* off, reject. I, **24**, 11.

re-languēscō, -ere, languī, grow faint. II, **15**, 11.

relātus, *see* **re-ferō.**

re-lēgō, 1, send away, despatch; banish.

relīctus, -a, -um, *see* **re-linquō.**

religiō, -ōnis, F., religion. V, **6**, 12.

re-linquō, -ere, līquī, līctus [**linquō**, leave], *a.*, leave behind, leave, abandon; *pass.*, be left, remain. I, **9**, 1.

reliquus, -a, -um [**relinquō**, leave], left, remaining, the rest, the rest of; **reliquum, -ī,** N., remainder, residue, rest. I, **1**, 12.

re-maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsus [**maneō**, remain], *n.*, stay *or* remain behind, remain. I, **39**, 5; IV, **1**, 12.

rēmex, -igis, M., rower. III, **9**, 3.

rēmigō, 1, row. V, **8**, 13.

re-migrō, 1. [**migrō**, move], *n.*, move *or* go back, return. IV, **4**, 16.

reminīscor, -ī [**mēns**, mind], *a.*, call to mind, remember. I, **13**, 11.

re-mīssus, -a, -um, relaxed; mild. V, **12**, 16.

re-mittō, -ere, mīsī, mīssus [**mittō**, send], *a.*, send *or* drive back, return, restore; remit, release, relax. I, **43**, 26; II, **15**, 12.

re-mollēscō, -ere, become enervated. IV, **2**, 14.

re-mōtus, -a, -um, remote, distant. I, **31**, 51.

re-moveō, -ēre, mōvī, mōtus [**moveō**, move], *a.*, move back *or* away, remove, withdraw. I, **19**, 14.
re-mūneror, 1, reward. I, **44**, 43.
rēmus, -ī, M., oar. III, **13**, 15.
Rēmus, -a, -um, belonging to, *or* one of the Remi, *as subst. pl.*, the Remi, *a Belgic people.*
rēnō, -ōnis, M., deer-skin. VI, **21**, 13.
re-novō, 1. [**novus**, new], *a.*, renew. III, **2**, 7.
re-nūntiō, 1. [**nūntius**], *a.*, bring back word, bring news, report; proclaim, declare. I, **10**, 1.
repellō, -ere, repulī (reppulī), repulsus [**re-+pellō**, beat, drive], *a.*, beat *or* drive back, repel, repulse. I, **8**, 16.
repente, *adv.* [**repēns**, sudden], suddenly, unexpectedly. I, **52**, 6; V, **17**, 5.
repentīnō, *adv.*, unexpectedly, without warning. II, **33**, 10.
repentīnus, -a, -um [**repēns**, sudden], sudden, unlooked for, unexpected, hasty. I, **13**, 4.
reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertus [**pariō**, procure], *a.*, procure; find; find out, discover, ascertain. I, **18**, 6.
re-petō, -ere, petīvī (petiī), petītus [**pētō**, seek], *a.*, seek *or* ask again, exact, demand back; inflict (**poenās**). I, **30**, 5.
re-pleō, -ēre, plēvī, plētus, replenish, supply, fill up.
re-portō, 1. [**portō**, carry], *a.*, carry *or* bring back, convey. IV, **29**, 12.
re-poscō, -ere, demand back, claim, exact.
re-praesentō, 1, exhibit; do at once. I, **40**, 43.
re-prehendō, -ere, -dī, -hēnsus, [**prehendō**, seize], *a.*, hold back *or* fast, seize hold of; criticise, blame, censure. I, **20**, 18.
reprimō, -ere, pressī, pressus [**premō**, press], *a.*, press *or* keep back, curb, check, restrain. III, **14**, 3.
repudiō, 1, reject. I, **40**, 10.
re-pūgnō, 1. [**pūgnō**, fight], *n.*, fight back; resist, oppose. I, **19**, 8.
repulsus, *see* **repellō.**
re-quīrō, -ere, -sīvī, -sītus, require, demand; miss, look in vain for.
rēs, reī, F., thing, object, matter, event, affair, occurrence, circumstance: **rēs familiāris**, property; **rēs frūmentāria**, supplies; **rēs mīlitāris**, warfare; **novae rēs**, revolution; **rēs pūblica**, the state, the public interests. I, **2**, 12.
re-scindō, -ere, scidī, scissus [**scindō**, cleave], *a.*, cut away *or* down, break up, destroy. I, **7**, 7.
re-scīscō, -ere, scīvī, scītus, learn. I, **28**, 1.
re-scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, write again; re-enlist. I, **42**, 23.
re-servō, 1. [**servō**, save, keep], *a.*, keep back, save up, reserve. I, **53**, 22; III, **3**, 14.
re-sideō, -ēre, sēdī, remain. VII, **77**, 14.
re-sīdō, -ere, sēdī, grow calm.
resistō, -ere, stitī, stitum, to halt, stop, stand still; to withstand, oppose; to continue, remain. I, **25**, 20.
respiciō, -ere, spēxī, spectus [*obsol.*, **speciō**, look], *a.*, look back *or* about; have respect to, regard. II, **24**, 7.
re-spondeō, -ēre, spondī, spōnsus [**spondeō**, promise], *a.*, *make return;* reply, answer. I, **7**, 19.
respōnsum, -ī [**respondeō**, answer], N., reply, answer; advice. I, **14**, 23.
rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae [**rēs**, matter+**pūblicus**], public affairs; state, commonwealth. I, **33**, 12; II, **5**, 5.
re-spuō, -ere, spuī, spurn. I, **42**, 5.
re-stinguō, -ere, -nxī, -nctus, extinguish, quench.
restituō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [**statuō**,

set up], *a.*, set up again, re-establish, restore. I, **18**, 22.

retineō, 2. [**teneō**, hold], *a.*, hold *or* keep back, detain; restrain, hinder; retain, preserve, maintain. I, **18**, 4.

re-trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractus, drag *or* call back. V, **1**, 16.

re-vellō, -ere, vellī, vulsus (vol-) [**vellō**, pluck], *a.*, pluck *or* tear away, pull *or* tear out. I, **52**, 11; VII, **73**, 11.

re-vertō, -ere, vertī, *n.*, *used almost exclusively in the perfect tenses and* **re-vertor, -ī, versus sum,** *used in the imperfect tenses* [**vertō**, turn], *n.*, turn back *or* again; return. I, **7**, 20.

re-vinciō, -īre, vinxī, vinctus [**vinciō**, bind], *a.*, bind back *or* fast, fasten, bind. III, **13**, 9.

re-vocō, 1, *a.*, call back, recall, call off, withdraw. II, **20**, 3.

rēx, rēgis, M., king. I, **31**, 32; II, **4**, 18.

Rhēnus, -ī, M., the Rhine, *forming the boundary between Gallia and Germania.* I, **1**, 10.

Rhodanus, -ī, M., *a Gallic river, now* the Rhone. I, **1**, 16.

rīpa, -ae, F., bank (*of a stream*). I, **6**, 15.

rīvus, -ī, M., small stream.

rōbur, -oris, N., oak. III, **13**, 6.

rogō, 1. *a.*, *n.*, ask, question, request; propose (**iūs**); bring forward (**magistrātum**); administer the oath to (**mīlitēs**). I, **11**, 5.

Rōma, -ae, F., Rome. I, **31**, 29; VI, **12**, 14.

Rōmānus, -a, -um, Roman: *as subst.*, a Roman. I, **3**, 12.

Rōscius, -ī, M., *a Roman nomen. E. g.*, Lucius Roscius, *a lieutenant of Caesar.*

rōstrum, -ī [**rōdō**, gnaw, consume], N., beak *of a bird;* mouth *of an animal;* beak or prow *of a ship.* III, **13**, 18.

rota, -ae, F., wheel. I, **26**, 10.

rubus, -ī, M., bramble. II, **17**, 18.

Rūfus, -ī, M., *a cognomen. See* **Sulpicius.**

rūmor, -ōris, M., hearsay, report, rumor, common opinion, reputation. II, **1**, 2.

rūpēs, -is, F., rock, cliff. II, **29**, 6.

rūrsus, (rūrsum), *adv.* [*for* **reversus**, *from* **revertō**, turn back], *backwards;* again, back again, anew. I, **25**, 17.

Rutēnī, -ōrum, M., *a Gallic tribe between the Cadurci and Gabali.* I, **45**, 6; VII, **75**, 11.

Rutilus, -ī, M., VII, **90**, 7.

S.

Sabīnus, -ī, M., *a Roman cognomen:* Quintus Titurius Sabinus, *one of Caesar's lieutenants.* II, **5**, 20.

Sabis, -is, M., II, **16**, 2.

sacerdōs, -ōtis, M., priest.

sacrāmentum, -ī, N., oath.

sacrificium, -ī, N., sacrifice. VI, **13**, 9.

saepe, often, frequently; many times; *minimē saepe*, very rarely. I, **1**, 8.

saepenumerō, *adv.* [**saepe**, often +**numerus**], oftentimes, repeatedly, frequently. I, **33**, 8.

saepēs, -is, [**saepiō**, hedge in], F., hedge. II, **17**, 19.

saeviō, -īre, -iī, -ītus, [**saevus**, raging], *n.*, rage; be fierce *or* violent. III, **13**, 21.

sagitta, -ae, F., arrow. IV, **25**, 5.

sagittārius, -ī, [**sagitta**, an arrow], M., bowman, archer. II, **7**, 2.

sagulum, -ī, N., a small military *or* traveling cloak.

saltus, -ūs, M., forest, thicket, jungle.

salūs, salūtis [**salveō**, be well], F., health, welfare; preservation, security, safety. I, **27**, 11.

Samarobrīva, -ae, F., *a Gallic city, now Amiens.*

sanciō, -īre, sānxī, sānctus [*cf.* **sācer**, sacred], *a.*, ordain, ratify, sanction. I, **30**, 17; VI, **20**, 2.

sānctus, -a, -um [**sanciō**, make

sacred], sacred, holy, inviolable. III, **9**, 10.

sanguis, -inis, M., blood.

sānitās, -tātis [**sānus**, sound (*in mind or body*)], F., soundness of body, good health; soundness of mind, good sense, discretion, sanity. I, **42**, 6.

sānō, 1, make sound, restore, heal.

Santonī, -ōrum, (ēs, -um), M., *a Gallic tribe between the Loire and Garonne.* I, **10**, 3.

sānus, -a, -um, sound; sensible. V, **7**, 17.

sapiō, -ere, -īvī, taste; be wise; discern.

sarcina, -ae, F., pack; luggage. I, **24**, 8.

sarcinae, -ārum, [**sarciō**, mend, restore], F., *pl.*, baggage *or* luggage (*of the individual soldier*), packs. I, **24**, 8.

sarmentum, -ī, N., brushwood. III, **18**, 19.

satis (sat), *adv. and indec. adj.*, enough, sufficiently; sufficient, satisfactory. **satis causae**, sufficient reason. I, **3**, 7.

satis-faciō, -ere, fēcī, factus [**faciō**, make], *n.*, make *or* do enough for, make *or* give satisfaction, satisfy; apologize, ask pardon. I, **14**, 19.

satisfactiō, -ōnis [**satisfaciō**, give satisfaction], F., satisfaction, amends; excuse, apology. I, **41**, 10.

saucius, -a, -um, wounded, hurt. III, **4**, 12.

saxum, -ī, N., rock, large stone. II, **29**, 9.

scālae, -ārum, F., steps; ladder. VII, **81**, 2.

Scaldis, -is, M., the Scheldt, *a river of Belgic Gaul.*

scapha, -ae, F., skiff. IV, **26**, 9.

scelerātus, -a, um, accursed. VI, **13**, 18.

scelus, -eris, N., crime. I, **14**, 15.

scienter, *adv.*, expertly, skilfully. VII, **22**, 6.

scientia, -ae, [sciō, know], F., knowledge, science, experience, skill. I, **47**, 13; II, **20**, 8.

scindō, -ere, scidī, scissus, *a.*, split, cleave; tear down, destroy. III, **5**, 4.

sciō, 4. *a.*, distinguish; know, understand. I, **20**, 3.

scorpiō, -ōnis, M., *a military engine for hurling missiles.*

scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *a.*, write, describe by characters *or* in writing. II, **29**, 1.

scrobis, -is, M., F., pit. VII, **73**, 15.

scūtum, -ī, N., shield, buckler; *oblong, convex* ($2\frac{1}{2}$ x 4 *ft.*), *made of wood covered with leather* (*or iron plates*), *with a metal rim.* I, **25**, 7.

sēcius, *comp. adv.*, less: **nihilō sēcius**, none the less. I, **49**, 50; IV, **17**, 23.

secō, -āre, secuī, sectus, cut, cut off; reap.

sēcrētō, [**sēcernō**, separate], *adv.*, separately, apart, privately, secretly. I, **18**, 6.

sectiō, -ōnis, F., cutting; booty. II, **33**, 19.

sector, 1. follow eagerly, chase.

secundum, *prep. with acc.* [**sequor**, follow], by, along; after, next to; in accordance with, according to. I, **32**, 6; II, **18**, 8.

secundus, -a, -um, [**sequor**, follow], next (*in time or order*), second; (*of currents and winds as following a vessel and metaphorically of other objects*), favorable, propitious, prosperous. **rēs:** prosperous affairs, prosperity. I, **14**, 15.

secūris, -is, F., axe. VII, **77**, 50.

secūtus, *see* **sequor**.

sed, *conj.*, but, yet (*a stronger adversative than* **autem** *or* **at.**) I, **12**, 19.

sēdecim, *indecl. num.*, sixteen. I, **8**, 5.

sēdēs, -is [sedeō, sit], F., seat, chair; residence, abode, settlement. I, **31**, 37; IV, **4**, 12.

sēditiō, -ōnis, F., insurrection, meeting.

sēditiōsus, -a, -um, mutinous. I, **17**, 5.

Sedulius, -ī, M., *a chief of the Lemovices.* VII, **88**, 10.

Sedūnī, -ōrum, M., *a Helvetian people about modern Sitten.* III, **1**, 3.

Sedusiī, -ōrum, M. I, **51**, 9.

seges, -etis, F., growing grain, crop.

Sēgnī, -ōrum, M., *a Belgic tribe.*

Segovax, -actis, M., V, **22**, 4.

Segontiacī, -ōrum, M. V, **21**, 2.

Segusiāvī, -ōrum, M., *a tribe west of the Rhone, capital Lugdunum, now Lyons.* I, **10**, 17.

semel, *adv.*, once, a single time; but once, once for all: **semel atque iterum,** repeatedly; **ut semel,** as soon as. I, **31**, 17.

sēmentis, -is [**sēmen,** seed], F., seeding, planting, sowing. I, **3**, 4.

sēmita, -ae, F., lane, foot-path. V, **19**, 9.

semper, *adv.*, always, every time, constantly, ever. I, **18**, 13.

Semprōnius, -ī, M., see Rutulus, VII, **90**, 7.

senātor, -ōris, M., elder, senator. II, **28**, 8.

senātus, -ūs, [**senex,** old man], M., a body of old men, senate; *esp., the administrative council of Rome.* I, **3**, 12.

senex, senis, *adj.*, old: *as subst.*, old man. I, **29**, 5.

sēnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num.*, six each, I, **15**, 15.

Senonēs, -um, M., *a Gallic tribe about modern Sens.* II, **2**, 5.

sententia, -ae, [**sentio,** think], F., way of thinking, opinion, a sentiment, feeling, purpose; decision, verdict. I, **45**, 1; II, **10**, 16.

sentiō, -īre, sēnsī, sēnsus, *a.*, perceive, feel, be sensible of; experience, undergo; think, observe, be aware; decide. I, **18**, 2.

sentis, -is, M., briar, thorn. II, **17**, 18.

sēparātim [**sēparō,** separate], separately, apart, asunder.

sē-parō, 1. [**sē**=**sine,** without, aside], sever, separate: *in p. p. as adj.*, separated, marked off. IV, **1**, 14.

septem (VII), *card. num.*, seven. IV, **23**, 18.

septentriōnēs, -um, [**triōnēs,** ploughing oxen], (*the constellations of the Great Bear and Little Bear were compared to a wagon with oxen*), M., *the stars of the Great Bear, hence* the North: *in sing.* **Septentriō, -ōnis,** M., the North (*once*). I, **1**, 18.

septimus, -a, -um, *ord. num.*, seventh. I, **10**, 16.

septingentī, -ae, -a, *card. num.*, seven hundred. V, **13**, 15.

septuāgintā, *indecl. num.*, seventy, IV, **12**, 13.

sepultūra, -ae [**sepeliō,** bury], F., burial, sepulture. I, **26**, 17.

Sēquana, -ae, M., the Seine. I, **1**, 5.

Sēquanī, -ōrum, M., *a Gallic tribe between the Saone and the Jura.* I, **1**, 17.

sequor, sequi, secūtus, *dep.*, follow, follow after, pursue; accompany, attend. I, **4**, 3.

Ser., abbrev. for **Servius.**

sermō, -ōnis, M., conversation. VI, **13**, 19.

sērō, *adv.*, late.

serō, -ere, sēvī, satus, sow, plant. V, **14**, 4.

Sertōrius, -ī, M. III, **23**, 11.

servīlis, -e, [**servus,** a slave], of *or* like a slave, servile. I, **40**, 16; VI, **19**, 9.

serviō, 4. [**servus**], *a., n.*, be a slave, be subservient, follow, heed. IV, **5**, 11.

servitūs, -ūtis, [**servus,** a slave], F., slavery, servitude. I, **11**, 7.

Servius, -ī, M., *a Roman praenomen.* III, **1**, 1.

servō, 1. *a.*, save, preserve, maintain, keep; keep guard, watch. II, **33**, 5.

servus, -ī, M., slave, servant. I, **27,** 7.
sēsqui-pedālis, -e, of a foot and a half. IV, **17,** 8.
seu, see **sīve.** I, **23,** 8.
sevēritās, -tātis, F., gravity, sternness, severity.
sē-vocō, 1, call apart. V, **6,** 14.
sēvum, -ī, N., tallow, suet, grease.
sex, *card. num.*, six. I, **27,** 8.
sexāgintā(LX), *card. num.*, sixty, II, **4,** 16.
sexcentī, -ae, -a, *card. num.*, six hundred. II, **8,** 12.
Sextius, -ī, M., *a Roman nomen. e. g.*, (1) P. Sextius Baculus, *a centurion.* II, **25,** 8. (2). T. Sextius, *one of Caesar's lieutenant's.* VII, **90,** 10.
sī, *conj.*, if; to see if, whether: **Quod sī,** but if, now if. I, **7,** 20.
Sibuzātēs, -um, M. III, **17,** 4.
sīc, *adv.* (sī+*demonstr. particle* **-ce**], so, thus, in this manner. I, **38,** 7; II, **4,** 2.
siccitās, tātis, [**siccus,** dry], F., drought, dryness. IV, **38, 4.**
sīcubi, *adv.*, if in any place, if anywhere, wheresoever. V, **17,** 6.
sīc-ut, (-utī), *adv.*, so as, just as, as. I, **44,** 26; VI, **26,** 3.
sīdus, -eris, N., star; constellation. VI, **14,** 17.
sīgnifer, -erī, M., standard-bearer. II, **25,** 6.
sīgnificātiō, -ōnis [**sīgnum,** sign +**faciō**], F., making of signs, signal, indication, notice. II, **32,** 12.
sīgnificō, 1. [**signum+faciō,**], *a.*, make signs, show, indicate. II, **7,** 11.
sīgnum, -ī, N., mark, sign; military standard, banner; signal, watchword; statue; seal; **sīgna sequī,** follow the standard; **ab sīgnīs discēdere,** withdraw from the ranks; **sīgna īnferre,** advance; **sīgna convertere,** wheel about. I, **25,** 19.
Silānus, -ī. M., *a cognomen. See* **Iūnius.**
silentium, -ī, N., silence. VII. **71,** 13.
Silius, -ī, M., *a Roman nomen. E. g.*, T. Silius. III, **7,** 12.
silva, -ae, F., *a wood*, forest, woods. I, **12,** 12.
silvestris, -e, [**silva,** forest], of a wood *or* forest, wooded, woody. II, **18,** 6.
similis, -e, like.
similitūdō, -inis, F., likeness. VII, **73,** 22.
simul, *adv.*, at once, at the same time, together: **simul . . . simul,** both . . . and, partly . . . partly: **simul atque,** as soon as. I, **19,** 16.
simulācrum,-ī, N., image. VI, **16,** 9.
simul-atque, see **simul.**
simulātiō, -ōnis [**simulō,** make like], F., simulation, pretence, deceit. I, **40,** 32; IV, **13,** 12.
simulō, 1. [**similis,** like], make like, counterfeit, pretend. I, **44,** 34; IV, **13,** 12.
simultās, -tātis, F., dissension, rivalry.
sīn, *conj.* [**sī+nē**], if however, but if. I, **13,** 11.
sincērē, *adv.*, candidly, uprightly.
sine, *prep. with abl.*, without. I, **7,** 10.
singulāris, -e [**singulī**], one at a time, one by one, single, alone; singular, unique, remarkable, extraordinary, matchless. II, **24,** 12.
singulātim, (-illatim) [**singulī,** single], singly, one by one. III, **2,** 9.
singulī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.*, one each, one at a time, single, separate. I, **6,** 4.
sinister, tra, trum, left; **sub sinistrā,** on the left; *in fem. sing. as subst.* (*sc.* **manus**), the left hand. I, **25,** 9.
sinistrōrsus, (-um), *adv.*, to the left, VI, **25,** 6.
sinō, -ere, sīvī situs, permit. IV, **2,** 13.

sī quandō, *adv.*, if ever. III, **12**, 7.
situs, -ūs [sinō, let (*be in a place or condition*)], M., situation, site, position. III, **12**, 1
sīve, (seu) [sī, if+ve, or], *conj.*, or, if, whether, if either, **sīve . . . sīve**, either . . . or, whether . . . or. I, **12**, 16.
socer, -erī, M., father-in-law. I, **12**, 20.
societās, -tātis, F., association, alliance.
socius, -ī, [*cf.* **sequor**, follow], M., companion, partner, associate; confederate, ally. * I, **5**, 13.
sōl, sōlis, M., the sun. I, **1**, 21.
sōlācium, -ī, N., comfort, solace.
soldūriī, -ōrum, N., vassals. III, **22**, 3.
sōleō, -ēre, solitus sum, be wont, be accustomed. VI, **15**, 3.
sōlitūdō, -inis [**sōlus, alone**], F., loneliness, solitude; a lonely place, desert, wilderness. IV, **18**, 10.
sollertia, -ae, F., expertness, ingenuity.
sollicitō [**sollus=tōtus+cieō**, rouse], 1. *a.*, move violently, stir up, agitate; incite, tempt, instigate. II, **1**, 8.
sollicitūdō, -inis, F., anxiety.
solum, -ī, N., bottom, ground, soil; **agrī solum**, the bare ground. I, **11**, 13.
sōlum, *adv.* [sōlus, only], only, merely. I, **12**, 19.
sōlus, -a -um, *gen.* **sōlius**, alone, only, the only. I, **18**, 4.
solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtus, *a.*, loosen, untie, unbend, disengage; SC. **nāvēs**, weigh anchor, set sail, put to sea. IV, **23**, 2.
sonitus, -ūs, M., sound, din.
sonus, -ī, M., sound.
soror, ōris, F., sister. I, **18**, 17.
sors, sortis, F., lot; casting *or* drawing of lots; chance, fate. I, **50**, 13.
Sotiatēs, (Sont-), -um, M., III, **20**, 12.
spatium, -ī, N., space, distance, extent, interval, period, length (*of time or space*). I, **7**, 18.
speciēs, -ēī [*obsol.* **speciō**, see], F., seeing, sight, look, appearance. I, **51**, 5. II, **31**, 2.
spectō, 1. *a.*, look at, behold; look, face, lie. I, **1**, 20.
speculātor, -ōris, M., spy, scout II, **11**, 6.
speculātōrius, -a, -um, scouting, IV, **26**, 10.
speculor, 1, spy. I, **47**, 19.
spērō, 1. [**spēs**, hope], *a.*, *n.*, hope, hope for, anticipate. I, **3**, 24.
spēs, eī, F., hope, anticipation, expectation, I, **5**, 7.
spīritus, -ūs [**spīrō, breathe**], M., breath, air; high spirit, haughtiness, pride (*mostly in pl.*). I, **33**, 21. II, 4, 9.
spoliō, 1, strip, pillage, despoil.
spontis, *gen.* and **sponte**, *abl.* (*obs. nom.* **spōns**), F., of one's own accord, willingly, voluntarily, I, **9**, 3.
stabiliō, 4, fix. VII, **73**, 19.
stabilitās, tātis, F., steadiness. IV, **33**, 8.
statim [**stō**, stand], as one stands. *hence*, forthwith, immediately. I, **53**, 21. II, **11**, 5.
statiō, ōnis [**stō**, stand], F., standing or stationing; a military post *or* station; sentries, pickets, outposts. II, **18**, 8.
statuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [**status**, position], *a.*, put in position, set up, place; determine, judge, resolve; take measures. I, **11**, 15.
statūra, ae [**status**, *fr.* **stō**, stand], F., a standing upright, size *or* height of the body, stature. II, **30**, 9.
status, -ūs, M., position. VI, **12**, 25.
stimulus, -ī, M., goad. VII, **73**, 26.
stīpendiārius, -a, -um [**stīpendium**, tribute], under, *or* paying tribute, tributary; *in pl. as subst.* tributaries. I, **30**, 11.
stīpendium, -ī [**stips**, gift+**pendō**,

weigh], n., impost, tax, tribute (*paid in money, while the vēctīgal was paid in kind*); pay, stipend; term of military service. I, **36**, 13.

stipes, -itis, m., log; stake. VII, **73**, 10.

stirps, -pis, m., stock, root; source, race.

stō, -āre, stetī, status, stand. VI, **13**, 16.

strāmentum, -ī, n., covering, straw, thatch.

strepitus, -ūs [**strepō,** make a noise], m., noise, rattle, uproar. II, **11**, 2.

strūctūra, -ae, f., structure; mine. III, **21**, 11.

studeō, -ēre, uī, *n.*, be eager *or* zealous, desire, strive after, pay attention to. I, **9**, 8.

studiōsē, *adv.*, eagerly. VI, **28**, 5.

studium, -ī [**studeō,** be zealous], n., zeal, eagerness, enthusiasm; feeling; good will, devotion; profession, occupation. I, **19**, 9.

stultitia, -ae, f., folly. VII, **77**, 26.

sub, *prep. with acc.* (*with verbs of motion*) *and abl.*, under, near to just by, at the foot of; (*of time*) about, just at, during; *in comp.* (**subs-**), *adv.*, under, up *or* away (from beneath), secretly, in succession, slightly. 1, **7**, 15.

subāctus, *see* **subigō.**

sub-dolus, -a, -um, subtle, crafty.

sub-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus [**dūcō,** lead], *lead or draw from beneath;* draw *or* lead up; lead *or* draw off, withdraw. I, **22**, 8.

subductiō, -ōnis, f., drawing up *or* on shore. V, **1**, 6.

sub-eō, īre, īvī (iī), itus [**eō,** go], *a.*, come *or* go under, come up to, come up; undergo, encounter, endure. I, **5**, 8.

sub-iciō, icere, iēcī, iectus [**iaciō**], *a.*, hurl *or* put under *or* near; discharge below; place below, subject; throw from beneath, throw up. I, **26**, **10**.

sub-igō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctus, subdue; incite. VII, **77**, 36.

subitō, *adv.*, [**subitus,** sudden, *fr.* **subeō,** come up secretly], suddenly, unexpectedly, of a sudden. I, **39**, 7; II, **19**, 18.

subitus, -a, -um [**subeō,** come by stealth], unexpected, sudden. III, **7**, 5.

sublātus, *see* **tollō.**

sub-levō, 1. [**levō,** lift]; *a.*, lift from beneath, lift *or* raise up; sustain, assist, encourage. I, **16**, 17.

sublica, -ae, f., pile, stake, palisade. IV, **17**, 12.

sub-luō, -ere, luī, lūtus, wash. VII, **69**, 4.

sub-ministrō, [**ministrō,** wait upon] *a.*, furnish, supply, afford, give. I, **40**, 35; III, **25**, 4.

sub-mittō, -ere, mīsī, mīssus, *a.*, send up, send to one's assistance, reinforce. II, **6**, 14.

sub (sum-) -moveō, ēre, mōvī, mōtus [**sub+moveō,** move], *a.*, *move from beneath* or *near;* move *or* send away, remove, dislodge. I, **25**, 20.

sub-ruō, -ere, ruī, rutus [**ruō,** fall], *a.*, cause to fall from beneath, dig under, undermine. II, **6**, 8.

sub-sequor, sequī, secūtus, *a. n.*, follow closely, follow up *or* on, succeed to. II, **11**, 12.

subsidium, -ī [**subsideō,** *sit near or in reserve*], n., sitting in reserve, reserves; help, aid, assistance. I, **52**, 17; II, **6**, 14.

sub-sīdo, -ere, -sēdī, sessus, sit down, settle, remain.

sub-sistō, -ere, stitī, [**sistō,** stand] *a.*, *n.*, halt; remain. I, **15**, 9.

sub-sum, esse, fuī, futūrus [**sub,** under, near], *n.*, be under *or* below; be near *or* close at hand. I, **25**, 12.

sub-trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractus [**trahō,** draw], draw *or* carry off, take away, withdraw. I, **44**, 17.

subvēctiō, -ōnis, f., carrying up; conveying.

sub-vehō, -ere, vēxī, vēctus, convey. I, **16**, 6.
sub-veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus, come to help, aid, succor.
succēdō, -ere, cessī, cessus [**sub**+**cēdō**, go], *n.*, go *or* come under; go *or* come up from beneath, come up to, advance, come close to, take the place of; succeed, prosper. I, **24**, 12.
suc-cendō, -ere, cendī, cēnsus, kindle. VI, **16**, 10.
successus, -ūs, M., approach. II, **20**, 7.
suc-cīdō, -ere, cīdī, cīsus [**sub**+**caedō**, cut], *a.*, cut from beneath, cut through *or* down, fell. IV, **19**, 2.
suc-cumbō, -ere, cubuī, cubitus, yield. VII, **86**, 5.
suc-currō, -ere, currī, cursus, run to help. VII, **80**, 9.
sudis, -is, F., pile, stake. V, **18**, 6.
sūdor, -ōris, M., sweat; hard labor, weariness.
Suēbī, -ōrum, M., *a powerful people of central Germany consisting of several independent tribes, the modern* Swabians. I, **37**, 6; IV, **1**, 5.
Suēbus, -a, -um, of *or* pertaining to the Suevi (Suebi), Swabian. I, **53**, 9.
Suessiōnēs, -um, M., *a Gallic tribe about modern Soissons.* II, **3**, 5.
suf (sub)-ficio, -ere, fēcī, fectus, afford; suffice, be enough.
suf (sub-) -fodiō, -ere, fōdī, fossus [**fodiō**, dig], *a.*, dig under, stab *or* pierce underneath. IV, **12**, 9.
suffrāgium, -ī, N., ballot. VI, **13**, 24.
Sugambrī, -ōrum, M., *a German tribe.*
suggestus, -ūs, M., platform, stage.
suī, sibi, sē *or* **sēsē,** *reflex. pron. of 3d person,* himself, herself, itself, themselves; *as subj. acc. of infin.* he, she, they, etc. I, **1**, 4.
Sulla, -ae, M., *a cognomen. See* **Cornelius.**
Sulpicius, -ī, M., *a Roman nomen. E. g.,* P. Sulpicius Rufus, *one of Caesar's lieutenants.* IV, **22**, 21.
sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *n.*, be, exist, live; happen; serve for; stay, remain. I, **1**. 1.
summa, -ae, [*for* **summa, rēs**], F., the main thing *or* point, sum total, whole amount, aggregate; general management, chief, control. I, **29**, 6.
summus, -a, -um [*sup. of* **superus** high], highest, the highest part of, the top of; preeminent, greatest, chief, supreme. I, **16**, 13.
sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptus. [**sub**+**emō**, take], *a.*, take away, take, assume, employ, inflict, spend. I, **7**, 20.
sūmptuōsus, -a, -um, expensive. VI, **19**, 12.
sūmptus, -ūs, M., expense. I, **18**, 13.
sūmptus, *see* **sūmō.**
super, *adv. and prep.* with *acc.*, above, over, on.
superbē, *adv.*, haughtily. I, **31**, 43.
superior, -ius, *adj.* [*comp. of* **superus,** above], upper, preceding, higher, superior; previous, earlier, former. I, **10**, 13.
superō, 1. [**super,** over], *a. n.*, go over, overmatch, be superior to, surpass, conquer; be overmuch *or* in excess, abound; be left over, remain, survive. I, **17**, 9.
super-sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessus, refrain. II, **8**, 3.
super-sum, esse, fuī, futūrus [**super,** over], *n.*, be over *or* above, be left, remain, survive. I, **23**, 2.
sup (sub-) -petō, -ere, -īvī (iī), **-ītus** [**petō**, seek, obtain], *n.*, be near *or* at hand, be present *or* in store. I, **3**, 5.
supplēmentum, -ī, N., supplies, reinforcements.
supplex, -icis, suppliant. II, **28**, 10.
supplicātiō, -ōnis, [**supplex,** supplicating], F., public prayer, *in humiliation for misfortunes, but esp. in thanksgiving for successes,* thanksgiving. II, **35**, 11.
suppliciter, *adv.*, humbly. I, **27**, 4.
supplicium, -ī [**sub**+**plicō**, bend],

N., *bending or kneeling in supplication or to receive punishment;* supplication (*rare*); punishment. I, **19**, 11.

sup (sub-) -portō, 1. [**portō**, carry], *a.*, carry *or* bring up from beneath; bring *or* convey to; furnish. I, **39**, 25; III, **3**, 10.

suprā, *adv., and prep. with acc.*, above, before. II, **1**, 2.

sus-cipiō, -ere, cēpī, ceptus [**sub +capiō**, take], *a.*, take *or* lift up (*from beneath*), undertake, assume; begin; engage in; undergo, suffer. I, **3**, 9.

suspectus, -a, -um, distrusted.

suspicātus, *see* **suspicor**.

suspīciō, -ōnis [**suspicor**, suspect], F., suspicion, distrust. I, **4**, 11.

suspicor, 1. [**suspīciō**, suspect], *a.*, suspect, distrust. I, **44**, 34; IV, **6**, 4.

sustentō, 1, *a. n.*, (**sustineō**), to hold up, support, sustain, maintain; to hold out, endure, suffer. II, **6**, 4.

sustineō, 2, [**sub+teneō**, hold], *a.*, hold up from below, uphold, sustain; hold *or* keep back, check, restrain; hold out against, withstand, endure. I, **24**, 3.

suus, -a, -um [**suī**, himself, herself, etc.], *reflex. pron. adj. referring to subject*, of *or* belonging to himself, herself, etc., his own, etc., their own; his, hers, its, theirs; *in neut. as subst.*, one's property; **suī**, their men (friends *or* countrymen). I, **1**, 13.

T.

T. *abbrev. for* **Titus**. I, **10**, 8.

tabernāculum, -ī, N., hut; tent. I **39**, 16.

tabula, -ae, F., board; tablet; list. I, **29**, 1.

tabulātum, -ī, N., flooring *of boards;* story.

taceō, 2 *a. n.*, be silent *or* quiet, keep silent, pass over in silence; *in p. p. as adj.*, silent. I, **17**, 2.

tacitus, -a, -um, *see* **taceō**.

tālea, -ae, F., rod, bar. V, **12**, 9.

tālis, -e, such.

tam, so, so much, so very: **nōn tam . . . quam**, not so much as, less than. I, **14**, 11.

tamen, *adv.* (*opposed to some expressed or implied concession*), yet, nevertheless, notwithstanding, still, however. I, **7**, 18.

Tamesis, -is, M., the Thames. V, **11**, 19.

tametsī, *conj.* [**tamen+etsī**, even if], although, though, notwithstanding; and yet. I, **30**, 3.

tandem, *adv.* [**tam**, so+**-dem** (*cf.* **idem**)], *just so far;* at last, at length, finally; *in interrog. clauses to add emphasis*, pray now, then, now. I, **25**, 11.

tangō, -ere, tetigī, tāctus, touch. V, **3**, 3.

tantopere, *adv.*, so greatly. I, **31**, 11.

tantulus, -a, -um [*dim. of* **tantus**, so great], so small *or* little, of such diminutive (stature). II, **30**, 9.

tantum, *adv.*, only so much, only, merely, but. V, **19**, 12.

tantummodo, *adv.*, only. III, **5**, 12.

tantundem, *adv.*, just as great *or* far. VII, **72**, 4.

tantus, -a, -um, [*cf.* **tam**, so], so much, so great, such; **tantī** (*neut. sing. gen.*), of so great account. I, **15**, 8.

Tarbellī, -ōrum, M., III, **27**, 3.

tardē, *adv.*, slowly. IV, **23**, 4.

tardō, 1. [**tardus**, slow], *a.*, make slow, hinder, obstruct, check. II, **25**, 21.

tardus, -a, -um, slow. II, **25**, 10.

Tarusātēs, -ium, M., *a Gallic people on the west coast of Aquitania.* III, **23**, 2.

Tasgetius, -ī, M., *a chief of the Carnutes.*

taurus, -ī, M., bull, ox. VI, **28**, 3

Taximagulus, -ī, M., V, **22**, 4.

taxus, -ī, F., yew, yew-tree.

Tectosagēs, -um, M., VI, **24**, 7.

tēctum, -ī [**tegō**, cover], N., covering, roof; house. I, **36**, 18.
tēctus, *see* **tegō.**
tegimentum, -ī [**tegō**, cover], N., a covering. II, **21**, 12.
tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctus, cover. V, **18**, 7.
tēlum, -ī, N., *a weapon for fighting at a distance;* missle, dart, javelin. I, **8**, 16.
temerārius, -a, -um [**temerē**, by chance, rashly], rash, imprudent, reckless. I, **31**, 47; VI, **20**, 5.
temerē, [*cf.* **temeritās**, chance], *adv.*, by chance, rashly, blindly. I, **40**, 6; IV, **20**, 9.
temeritās, -tātis, F., rashness. VII, **77**, 26.
tēmō, -ōnis, M., pole (*of a wagon*). IV, **33**, 12.
temperantia, -ae, F., prudence, self-control. I, **19**, 11.
temperātus, -a, -um, moderate. V, **12**, 15.
temperō, 1. [**tempus**], *a.*, *mix in due proportion*, qualify, temper; restrain *or* control one's self, refrain, check, restrain. I, **7**, 17.
tempestās, -tātis [**tempus**, time], F., time, season; weather; *esp.* bad weather, storm, tempest. III, **12**, 13.
temptō, 1. [*freq. of* **tendō**, stretch], *n.*, handle, feel; make an attempt upon, attack; try, test, prove; try to win over. I, **14**, 9.
tempus, -oris, N., a division *or* section of time; time; occasion, crisis; **omnī tempore**, always; **in reliquum tempus**, for the future; **ūnō tempore**, at the same time. I, **3**, 15.
Tencterī, -ōrum, M., IV, **1**, 3.
tendō, -ere, tetendī, (tentus), tēnsus, stretch, stretch out, extend. II, **13**, 8.
tenebrae, -ārum, F., darkness. VII, **81**, 12.
teneō, -ēre, -uī, tentus, *a.*, hold, keep, retain, have; hold in, restrain, bind. I, **7**, 13.
tener, -era, -erum, tender. II, **17**, 17.
tenuis, -e, slim, thin; slight, insignificant; inferior.
tenuitās, -tātis, F., thinness; want, poverty; simplicity.
tenuiter, *adv.*, thinly, slightly. III, **13**, 10.
ter, *num. adv.*, three times. I, **53**, 21.
teres, -etis, rounded; smooth. VII, **73**, 16.
tergum, -ī, N., the back; the rear: **terga vertere**, to flee. I, **53**, 2; III, **19**, 10.
ternī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.* [**ter**, thrice], three each, three apiece, three by three. III, **15**, 2.
terra, -ae, F., earth, land, soil; *in pl.* earth, world: **orbis terrārum**, the world, all nations. I, **30**, 6; III, **15**, 11.
Terrasidius, -ī, M., *a Roman nomen. E. g.*, T. Terrasidius, *one of Caesar's officers.* III, **7**, 11.
terrēnus, -a, -um, of earth. I, **43**, 2.
terreō, 2, frighten. VI, **20**, 6.
territō, 1, alarm. V, **6**, 15.
terror, -ōris [**terreō**, frighten], M., fright, alarm, panic, terror. II, **12**, 2.
tertius, -a, -um [**ter**, thrice], *ord. num.* third. I, **1**, 2.
testāmentum, -ī, N., will. I, **39**, 18.
testimōnium, -ī [**testor**, be a witness], N., witness, testimony, proof; testimonial. I, **44**, 20; VI, **28**, 8.
testis, -is, M., F., witness. I, **14**, 23.
testūdō, -inis, F., tortoise; covered column; shed. II, **6**, 7.
Teutomatus, -ī, M., *a chief of the Nitiobroges.*
Teutonī, -ōrum (*or* **-um**), M., *a Celtic people from Jutland, who with the Cimbri overran Gaul,* 113 B. C. *and also suffered defeat from Marius.* I, **33**, 17; II, **4**, 7.
tīgnum, -ī, N., log, timber.
Tigurīnus, -a, -um, I, **12**, 12.
timeō, -ēre, -uī, *a.*, *n.*, fear, dread,

apprehend; be afraid *or* alarmed. I, **14**, 7.

timidē [**timidus,** fearful], fearfully, cowardly, timidly. III, **25**, 7.

timidus, -a, -um [**timeō,** fear], fearful, affrighted, cowardly, afraid. I, **39**, 22.

timor, -ōris [**timeō,** fear], M., fear, alarm, dread. I, **23**, 8.

Titūrius, -ī, M., II, **5**, 19.

Titus, -ī, M., *a Roman praenomen.* I, **10**, 8.

tolerō, 1. [*cf.* **tollō,** lift up], *a.*, bear up under, bear, endure; hold out; nourish, support. I, **28**, 8.

tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātus, *a.*, lift *or* raise up, elevate; take away, remove; do away with, destroy; *in p. p. as adj.*, elated. I, **5**, 7.

Tolōsa, -ae, F., III, **20**, 10.

Tolōsātēs, -ium, M., *the people of Tolosa in Gallia Provincia, modern Toulouse.* I, **10**, 3.

tormentum, -ī [**torqueō,** twist], N., means of twisting; an engine for hurling missiles, (e. g. *Catapulta* and *Ballista*); *fig.* torment, torture. II, **8**, 13.

torreō, -ēre, torruī, tōstus, parch, roast, scorch.

tot, *indecl. num. adj.* so many. III, **10**, 5.

totidem, *indecl. adj.* [**tot,** so many +**idem**], just as many, the same number. I, **48**, 12; II, **4**, 24.

tōtus, -a, -um, *gen.* **tōtīus,** *dat.* **tōtī,** the whole, the whole of, entire, all. I, **2**, 6.

trabs, trabis, F., beam; timber. II, **29**, 9.

tractus, *see* **trahō.**

trā-(trāns-) dō, dere, didī, ditus [**trāns**+**dō,** give], *a.*, give across *or* over, give up, surrender; intrust, confide; hand down, transmit. I, **27**, 10.

trā-dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductus [**trāns,** across], *a.*, lead *or* bring across, lead over, transfer, convey; draw *or* win over. I, **11**, 2.

trāgula, -ae [**trahō,** drag]., F., *a light Celtic* javelin *or* dart *attached to a strap by which it was hurled.* I, **26**, 10.

trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractus, *a.*, drag, draw; drag along *or* in. I, **53**, 14.

trā (trāns-) -iciō, -ere, iēcī, iectus, hurl across; pierce. VII, **28**, 4.

trāiectus, -ūs [**trāiciō,** cross over], M., crossing over, crossing, passage. IV, **21**, 6.

trānō, 1, swim across. I, **53**, 5.

tranquillitās, -tātis [**tranquillus,** calm], F., calmness *of mind or weather*, sereneness, stillness. III, **15**, 8.

trāns, *prep. with acc.*, across, beyond, over. *With geographical expressions to be translated* east of, west of, etc., *according to the context.* I, **1**, 10.

Trānsalpīnus, -a, -um, across the Alps.

trānscendō, -ere, -dī, -cēnsus, climb across *or* into; board; surmount. III, **15**, 3.

trans-eō, īre, īvī(iī), itus [**eō,** go], *a.*, *n.*, go across *or* over, pass, cross. I, **5**, 12.

trāns-ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, carry across, transfer. VI, **13**, 30.

trāns-fīgō, -ere, fīxī fīxus [**fīgō,** fix], *a.*, thrust *or* pierce through, transfix. I, **25**, 7.

trāns-fodiō, -ere, fōdī, fossus, dig *or* thrust through. VII, **82**, 4.

trānsgredior, -ī, gressus, *a.*, *n.*, (**trans**+**gradior**), to go *or* pass over; to cross. II, **19**, 8.

trānsitus, -ūs, M., crossing, passage.

trānslātus, *see* **trānsferō.**

trānsmarīnus, -a, -um, across the sea. VI, **24**, 12.

trāns-mīssus, -ūs, M., sending across; passage. V, **13**, 8.

trāns-mittō, -ere, mīsī, mīssus, send across.

trāns-portō, 1, [**portō,** carry], *a.*, carry across *or* over, convey, transport. I, **37**, 4. IV, **16**, 21.

Trānsrhēnānus, -a, -um trāns+ Rhēnus], beyond *or* across the Rhine; *in pl. as subst.*, the people across the Rhine. IV, **16**, 17.

trānstrum, -ī, N., cross-beam; thwart. III, **13**, 7.

trāns-versus, -a, -um, athwart. II, **8**, **11**.

Trebius, -ī, M., *a Roman family name;* Marcus Trebius Gallus, *a military tribune.* III, **7**, 11.

Trebōnius, -ī, M., V, **17**, 5.

trecentī, -ae, -a, *card. num. adj.* [**trēs-centum**], three hundred. IV, **37**, 2.

trepidō, 1, hurry with alarm, be disturbed *or* agitated.

trēs, tria, *gen.* **trium,** *card. num.*, three. I, **1**, 1.

Trēvir, -erī, M., *one of the Treveri.* V, **26**, 5. *Pl.* the Treveri, *a Celtic people.* I, **37**, 6; II, **24**, 12.

Tribocēs, -um, (-ī, -ōrum), M., *a German tribe on the Rhine about modern Strasburg.* I, **51**, 9; IV, **10**, 7.

tribūnus, -ī [tribus, tribe], M., tribune, *a magistrate elected by the people, voting in tribes, to defend the interests of the plebs;* **tribūnus mīlitum (mīlitāris)**, a military tribune. I, **39**, 10; II, **26**, 2.

tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtus [tribus, a tribe or division], *a.*, divide; assign, allot, ascribe; grant, pay, render. I, **13**, 15.

tribūtum, -ī, N., tribute. VI, **13**, 5.

trīduum, -ī, N., three days. I, **26**, 17.

triennium, -ī, N., three years. IV, **4**, 4.

Trīnobantēs, -um, M., V, **20**, 1.

trīnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.* by threes; triple. I, **53**, 13.

tripertītō, *adv.*, in three parts *or* divisions. V, **10**, 1.

triplex, -icis, [trēs+plicō, fold], three-fold, triple. I, **24**, 4.

triquetrus, -a, -um, triangular. V, **13**, 1.

trīstis, -e, sad, dejected. I, **32**, 5.

trīstitia, -ae, F., sadness. I, **32**, 7.

Troucillus, -ī, M., a Gallic name, see **Valerius.**

truncus, -ī, M., stem, trunk. IV, **17**, 26.

tū, tuī, *pers. pron.*, you.

tuba, -ae, F., trumpet. II, **20**, 3.

tueor, -ērī, tuitus (tūtus) sum, *a.*, look *or* gaze at, watch, regard, guard, protect. IV, **8**, 4.

Tulingī, -ōrum, M., *a German tribe on the Rhine, east of the Raurici.* I. **5**, 9.

tum, *adv.* [cf. **tam**], then, at this or that time (*coinciding with another period of time.*): **cum . . . tum,** both . . . and, not only . . . but also. I, **17**, **1**.

tumultuor, 1, make a disturbance.

tumultuōsē, *adv.*, in confusion, disorderly.

tumultus, -ūs [tumeō, swell], M., uproar, confusion, disorder, tumult. I, **40**, 16; II, **11**, 2.

tumulus, -ī, [tumeō, swell], M., swelling, mound, hill. I, **43**, 1; II, **27**, 11.

tunc, *adv.*, then, just then; thereupon.

turma, -ae, F., troop *or* squadron *of cavalry, the tenth part of an ala.* IV, **33**, 4.

Turonī,-ōrum (-ēs -um), M. II, **35**, 8.

turpis, -e, ugly, unseemly; shameful, disgraceful. I, **33**, 11; IV, **2**, 10.

turpiter, *adv.*, basely. VII, **80**, 16.

turpitūdō, -inis, F., disgrace. II, **27**, 5,

turris, -is, F., tower. II, **12**, 11.

tūtō [tūtus, safe], *abl. as adv.*, safely, securely. III, **13**, 22.

tūtus, -a, -um [*p. p. of* **tueor,** protect], protected, safe, secure. II, **5**, 16.

tuus, -a, -um, your, yours.

U.

ubi, *adv.* [**quō-bi** *fr.* **qui**], (*of place*) in which *or* what place, where; (*of time*) whenever, when. I, **5**, 3.

Ubiī, -ōrum, M., *a German tribe on the east bank of the lower Rhine,*

near Cologne. I, **54**, 3; IV, **3**, 5.

ubīque, in any place, everywhere. III, **16**, 5.

ulcīscor, -ī, ultus sum, *a.*, avenge, chastise, punish, take vengeance on. I, **12**, 20.

ūllus, -a, -um, *gen.*; **ūllīus** [*for* **ūnulus**, *dim. of* **ūnus**], any one, a single, any: *as subst.*, any one, anybody. I, **7**, 11.

ūlterior, -ius, *comp. adj.* [**ūltrā**, beyond], farther, more remote, ulterior. I, **7**, 4.

ūltimus, -a, -um [*superl. of* **ūlterior**], farthest, most distant *or* remote; the last part of. III, **27**, 5.

ūltrā, *prep. with acc.*, beyond, on the farther side of, past. I, **48**, 4.

ūltrō, *adv.* [**ūlterior, farther**], to *or* on the farther side, beyond; of one's own accord, voluntarily, spontaneously. I, **42**, 7; III, **27**, 2.

ultus, *see* **ulcīscor**.

ululātus, -ūs, M., yell. VII, **80**, 14.

umquam (**unq-**), *adv.*, at any time, ever. I, **41**, 8; III, **28**, 4.

ūnā, *adv.* [**ūnus**, one], one with, together *or* along with, together, at the same time. I, **5**, 11.

unde, *adv.*, (*of place*) from which place, from what (*country, etc.*), whence (*of substantives*), from whom (what). I, **28**, 6.

ūndecim, *card num.*, eleven. VII **69**, 11.

ūndecimus, *ord. num.*, eleventh. II, **23**, 9.

undique, *adv.*, from all parts, on all sides. I, **2**, 7.

ūniversus, -a, -um [**ūnus**+**vertō**, turn], turned into one, all together, whole, universal. II, **33**, 20.

ūnus, ūna, ūnum, *gen.* **ūnīus**, *card. num.*, one; same, single, only, sole, alone, one. I, **1**, 1.

urbānus, -a, -um, of *or* in the city.

urbs, urbis, F., city; *esp.* the city (Rome). I, **7**, 3.

urgeō (**urgueō**), **-ēre, ursī**, *a.*, press, press hard, impel, urge II, **25**, 2.

ūrus, -ī, M., wild ox. VI, **28**, 1.

Usipetēs, -um, M., *a German tribe beyond the Rhine below Cologne which, forced by the enchroachments of the Suevi to leave its home in eastern Germany, settled near the mouth of the Rhine.* IV, **1**, 2.

ūsitātus, -a, -um, wonted, ordinary, familiar.

ūsque, *adv.* [**us=ubs**, *fr.* **ubi**, where], all the way to, even to, as far as, even, till. I, **50**, **7**; III, **15**, 12.

usus, *see* **ūtor**.

ūsus, -ūs, [**ūtor**, use], M., use, experience, service, advantage; **ūsus est**, it is necessary; **ūsuī** (**ex ūsū**) of advantage, of service. I, **30**, 5; II, **9**, 13.

ut (**utī**), *conj with subj.*, that, in order that, to; that, so that, so as to; though, although; *after words of fearing*, that not: *with indic. as adv.*, as, as though, how. I, **2**, 4.

uter, utra, utrum, (*gen.* **utrīus**) which of the two, which. **I, 12**, 3.

uterque, utraque, utrumque, [**uter**, which (of two)+ **-que**), each (of two], both. **I, 34**, 3; **II**, **8**, 9.

ūtilis, -e, [**ūtor**, use], useful, profitable, serviceable. IV, **7**, 10.

ūtilitās, -tātis [**ūtilis**, useful], F., usefulness, utility, advantage service. IV, **19**, 17.

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, *a.*, *n.*, make use of, employ, use, avail one's self of; practice, have, enjoy; possess, show, manage. **I, 5**, 10.

utrimque [**utrin-**), *adv.*, on both sides. I, **50**, 7; IV, **17**, 18.

utrum, *conj.* [**uter**, which of two], *only translated with indirect and alternative questions* (*which of the two*) whether: *followed by* **an** *or* **necne**, *in alternative questions:* **utrum . . . an**, whether . . . or. **I**, **40**, 45.

uxor, -ōris, F., wife. I, **8**, 17.

V.

Vacalus, -ī, M., the Waal. IV, **10**, 3.
vacātiō, -ōnis, F., exemption. VI, **14**, 2.
vacō, 1. *n.*, be empty, void, *or* unoccupied; have leisure; lie waste. I, **28**, 11.
vacuus, -a, -um, [**vacō,** be empty,], empty, void, free, destitute, unoccupied. II, **12**, 5.
vadum, -ī, [cf. Eng. *wade*], N., ford, shallow, shoal. I, **6**, 9.
vāgīna, -ae, F., sheath, scabbard.
vagor, 1. [**vagus,** roaming], *n.*, roam about, rove, wander. I, **2**. 12.
valeō, 2. *n.*, be strong *or* vigorous, have weight *or* influence; avail; be well. I, **17**, 4.
Valerius, -ī, M., *a Roman nomen. E. g.*, (1) C. Valerius Troucillius, *a Gallic interpreter.* I, **19**, 14. (2) C. Valerius Flaccus, *Governor of Gaul 83 B. C.* I, **47**, 12. (3) C. Valerius Caburus, *a Gaul in Caesar's army.* I, **47**, 11. (4) C. Valerius Procillus, *son of No. 3.* I, **47**, 10. (5) L. Valerius Praeconinus, *a Roman legate before Caesar.* III, **20**, 5. (6) C. Valerius Domotaurus, *Son of No. 2.*
valētūdō, -inis, F., state of health. VII, **78**, 2.
vallis (vallēs,) -is, F., vale, valley, III, **1**, 14.
vāllum, ī- [**vāllus,** palisade], N., wall *or* rampart *of earth* (*set with palisades*); entrenchments, earthworks. I, **26**, 8.
vāllus, -ī, M., stake, palisade. VII, **73**, 13.
Vangiōnēs, -um, M., I, **51**, 9.
varietās, -tātis, F., diversity. VI, **27**, 2.
varius, -a, -um, [*cf.* **vertō**], variegated, diverse; changing manifold, various. II, **22**, 9.
vāstō, 1. [**vāstus,** waste]. *a.*, lay waste, ravage, make desolate, devastate. I, **11**, 7.
vāstus, -a, -um, waste; boundless. III, **9**, 22.
vāticinātiō, -ōnis, F., divination. I, **50**, 13.
vēctīgal, vectīgālis,] vehō, convey], N., taxes *or* rents (*conveyed to the pūblicānī*), revenue, income. I, **18**, 9.
-ve, *see* **vel.**
vēctīgālis, -e, [**vectīgal,** revenue], paying revenue *or* tribute, tributary. III, **8**, 7.
vectōrius, -a, -um, for transport. V, **8**, 13.
vehementer, [**vehemēns,** violent], violently, impetuously, zealously; strongly, powerfully. I, **37**, 9; III, **22**, 11.
vehō, -ere, vēxī, vectus, carry. I, **43**, 5.
vel, *conj.* [*imper. of* **volō,** *lit.* choose], or rather, or, even; **vel . . . vel,** either . . . or. I, **6**, 13.
Velānius, -ī, M., *a Roman gentile name:* Quintus Velanius, *a military tribune.* III, **7**, 12.
Vellaviī, -ōrum, M., *a Gallic tribe, tributary to the Arveni.* VII, **75**, 9.
Velaunodūnum, -ī, N., *a town of the Senones.*
Veliocassēs, -um, M., *a Belgic tribe on the Seine.* II, **4**, 27.
vēlōcitās, -tātis, F., swiftness. VI, **28**, 4.
vēlōciter, *adv.*, swiftly, speedily.
vēlōx -ōcis, swift, rapid. I, **48**, 13.
vēlum, -ī, N., covering, veil; sail; **vēla dare,** *or* **facere,** set sail, III, **13**, 9.
velut, *adv.*, just as. I, **32**, 12.
vēnātiō, -ōnis [**vēnor,** hunt], F hunting, the chase, hunting expedition. IV, **1**, 17.
vēnātor, -ōris, M., hunter, VI, **27**, 8.
vēndō, dere, didī, ditus [**vēnum,** sale+**dō**] *a.*, put to sale, sell at auction. II, **33**, 20.
Venellī, -ōrum, M., *a Gallic people in modern Normandy.* II, **34**, 2.
Venetī, -ōrum, M., *a Gallic people*

in modern Brittany near modern Vannes. II, **34**, 2.

Venetia, -ae, F., the country of the Veneti. III, **9**, 24.

Veneticus, -a, -um, Venetian. III, **18**, 14.

venia, -ae, F., indulgence, kindness, grace.

veniō, -īre, vēnī, ventus, *n.*, come, arrive, go, happen. I, **8**, 9.

ventitō, 1. [*freq. of* **veniō,** come], *n.*, keep coming, be wont to come, resort. IV, **3**, 9.

ventus, -ī, M., wind. III, **13**, 12.

vēr, vēris, N., the spring.

Varagrī, -ōrum, M., *a Gallic people on the Pennine Alps*, III, **1**, 3.

Verbigēnus, -ī, M., I, **27**, 9.

verbum, -ī, N., word. I, **20**, 13.

Vercassivellaunus, -ī, M., VII, **76**, 12.

Vercingetorīx, -īgis, M., VII, **68**, 1.

vereor, 2. *a.*, reverence, fear, dread. I, **19**, 12.

vergō, ere, *a.*, *n.*, look *or* lie towards, incline, slope. I, **1**, 18.

Vergobretus, -ī, M., I, **16**, 13.

vērīsimilis, -e, probable. III, **13**, 11.

veritus, *see* **vereor.**

vērō, *adv.*, [**vērus,** true], in truth, truly, in fact, assuredly; but, however; but in fact, indeed. I, **32**, 14; II, **2**, 9.

Veromanduī, -ōrum, M., II, **16**, 5.

versō, I, be versatile *or* busy; employ.

versor, 1, dwell; be engaged. I, **48**, 15; II, **1**, 9.

versus, *adv.*, turned towards, facing.

versus, -ūs, M., turning; verse. VI, **14**, 6.

Verticō, ōnis, M., *a Nervian, who carried dispatches from Cicero to Caesar.*

vertō, -ere, vertī, versus, *n.*, turn, turn around *or* about; **terga vertere,** flee. I, **53**, 2; III, **19**, 10.

Verucloetius, -ī, M., I, **7**, 9.

vērus, -a, -um, true, real, genuine; *in neut, as subst.*, the truth. I, **18**, 6.

verūtum, -ī, N., dart, javelin.

Vesontiō, -ōnis, M., *the chief town of the Sequani, situated on the Doubs, modern* Besancon. I, **38**, 3.

vesper, -erī, M., evening; **sub vesperum,** towards evening. I, **26**, 6.

vester, -tra, -trum, your, yours, VII, **77**, 24.

vestīgium, -ī [**vestīgō,** trace out], N., trace, track, footprint; spot place; point, moment, instant, IV, **2**, 9.

vestiō, 4, clothe. V, **14**, 4.

vestis, -is, F., clothing.

vestītus, -ūs, M., clothing. IV, **1**, 22.

veterānus, -a, -um, old, veteran. I, **24**, 5.

vetō, -āre, -uī, -itus, forbid. II, **20**, 13.

vetus, -eris, old, ancient, former: veteran (**mīlitēs**). I, **13**, 11.

vēxillum, -ī [*dim. of* **vēlum**], N., standard, banner, flag. II, **20**, 2.

vēxō, 1. [*intensive of* **vehō,** carry], *a.*, shake, agitate; injure, harass, plunder, waste, overrun. I, **14**, 10.

via, -ae, F., way, road, route, journey. I, **9**, 1.

viātor, -ōris, M., traveller. IV, **5**, 5.

vīcēnī, -ae, -a, *distr, num.*, twenty each. VI, **14**, 7.

vīcēsimus (vīcēns-), -a, -um, *ord., num.*, twentieth.

vīciēs, *num. adv.*, twenty times. V, **13**, 19.

vīcīnitās, -tātis, F., neighborhood.

vicis (*gen., no nom.*), change; *only in the adv. phrase* **in vicem,** alternately, in turn. IV, **1**, 11.

vīctima, -ae, F., victim. VI, **16**, 4.

vīctor, -ōris [**vincō,** conquer], M., conqueror, victor; *as adj.*, victorious. I, **31**, 31; II, **24**, 6.

vīctōria, -ae [**vīctor,** victorious], F., victory. I, **14**, 11.

vīctus, *see* **vincō.**

vīctus, -ūs [**vīvō**, live], M., living, life; provisions, food. I, **31**, 41; IV, **22**, 2.
vīcus, -ī [*cf.* Eng. -wick e. g. Berwick], M., *a collection of dwellings*, hamlet, village. I, **5**, 4.
videō, -ēre, vīdī, vīsus, *a.*, see, examine, understand, see to, take care; *in pass.* seem, appear, seem good *or* proper, seem best. I, **6**, 12.
Vienna, -ae, F., *a Gallic city on the Rhone, now Vienna.*
vigilia, -ae [**vigil**, awake], F., wakefulness, watching; watch, guard, sentinels; *the Romans divided the night into four watches.* I, **12**, 8.
vīgintī, *card. num.*, twenty. I, **13**, 4.
vīmen, -inis [**vieō**, bend *or* weave together], N., a pliant twig, switch, withe, osier. II, **33**, 7.
vinciō, -īre, vinxī, vinctus, bind. I, **53**, 14.
vincō, -ere, vīcī, vīctus [*cf.*, **vincio**, bind, restrain], *a.*, and *n.*, conquer, overcome, vanquish; excel; prevail. I, **25**, 19.
vinctus, *see* **vinciō**.
vinculum (vinclum), -ī [**vinciō** bind], N., bond, fetter, chain. I, **4**, 2.
vindicō, 1. [**vīs**, force *or* authority, **dīcō**], *a.*, assert authority, claim one's rights against; set free, deliver; avenge, punish, take vengeance upon. III, **16**, 9.
vīnea, -ae [**vīnum**, wine], F., a vineyard, vine arbor, *hence* a shed (*for the defence of a besieging party*). II, **12**, 8.
vīnum, -ī, N., wine. II, **15**, 10.
violō, 1, outrage. VI, **23**, 18.
vir, virī, M., man; husband; a man of distinction *or* honor: cf. **homō**, a human being; generic man. II, **25**, 8.
virgō, -inis, F., maiden, virgin. V, **14**, 11.
virgultum, -ī, *sing. or plu.*, N., thicket; sprouts. III, **18**, 19.
Viridomarus, -ī, M., VII, **76**, 12.
Viridovīx, -īcis, M., *a chief of the Venelli.* III, **17**, 3.
virītim, *adv.*, individually. VII, **71**, 16.
Viromanduī, -ōrum, M., the Viromandui, *a Gallic tribe in the modern Dept. de l' Aisne.* II, **4**, 27.
virtūs, -ūtis [**vir**, man], F., manliness, valor, merit, worth; *pl.* good qualities, virtues. I, **1**, 12.
vīs, vīs, F., force, might, energy, power; violence, severity; influence, weight; quantity, supply. I, **6**, 13.
vīsus, *see* **videō**.
vīta, -ae [*cf* **vīvō**, live], F., life; manner of life; mankind. I, **16**, 14.
vītō, 1, *a.*, avoid, shun, evade. I, **20**, 20.
vitrum, -ī, N., glass; woad. V, **14**, 5.
vīvō, -ere, vīxī, vīctus, live. IV, **1**, 16.
vīvus, -a, -um, living. VI, **16**, 10.
vix, *adv.*, with difficulty, hardly ever, hardly, scarcely. I, **6**, 4.
Vocātēs, -um, M., *a people of Aquitania, south of the Garonne.* III, **23**, 2.
Vocciō (Voctiō), -ōnis, M., I, **53**, 10.
vocō, [**vōx**, voice]; *a.*, call, summon; call upon, invoke. I, **19**, 13.
Vocontiī, -ōrum, M., *a Gallic tribe between the Isere and Durance.* I, **10**, 16.
Volcae, -ārum, M., VI, **24**, 7.
Volcacius, -ī, M., *a Roman nomen. E. g.*, C. Volcacius Tullus, *one of Caesar's officers.*
volgō (vulgō), *adv.*, [**volgus**, the common people], commonly, generally, everywhere, publicly, openly. I, **39**, 18; II, **1**, 14.
volgus, *see* **vulgus**.
volō, velle, voluī, wish, will. I, **7**, 20.
voluntārius, -a, -um, willing, of free will; *pl. as subst.*, volunteers.
voluntās, -tātis [**volō**, wish], F.,

willingness, good-will, desire, will, consent, approval. I, **7**, 12.

voluptās, -tātis [**volō**, wish], F., *what one wishes:* pleasure, delight, enjoyment, satisfaction. I, **53**, 16; V, **12**, 15.

Volusēnus, -ī, M., *a Roman gentile name.* Gaius Volusenus Quadratus, *a tribune of Caesar's army, afterward commander of cavalry.* III, **5**, 7.

Vosegus, -ī, M., Vosges Mountains. IV, **10**, 1.

voveō, -ēre, vōvī, vōtus, devote, vow. VI, **16**, 5.

vōx, vōcis [**vocō**, call] F., voice, cry, call, sound; word; *pl.*, words, language, speech. I, **32**, 8; II, **13**, 8.

Vulcānus (**Vol-**), **-ī**, M., Vulcan. VI, **21**, 5.

vulgō, see **volgō**.

vulgus (**volgus**), **-ī**, N. *and* M., the common people, crowd, rabble, the masses: *in abl. as adv.*, commonly, generally. I, **20**, 19.

vulnerō, (**vol-**), 1. [**volnus**, a wound]. *a.*, wound, injure, hurt. I, **26**, 10.

vulnus, (**vol-**), **-eris**, N., a wound; cut; calamity. I, **25**, 11.

vultus, -ūs [**volō**, wish], M., *wish shown by the expression of the countenance;* looks. I, **39**, 6.